THE HISTORY AND CULTURE
OF THE INDIAN PEOPLE

THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

FOREWORD BY
K. M. MUNSHI
B.A., I.I.B., D.LITT., L.L.D.
President, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan

GENERAL EDITOR
R. C. MAJUMDAR
M.A., Ph.D., F.A.S., F.A.S.B.
Professor of Ancient Indian History and Culture
Nagpur University
Hon. Chancellor and Professor of History
Dacca University
Hon. Head of the Department of History
Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan

ASSISTANT EDITOR
A. D. PUSALKER
M.A., I.I.B., Ph.D.
Assistant Director and Head of the
Department of Ancient Indian Culture
Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan

BOMBAY
BHARATIYA VIDYA BHAVAN
CONTRIBUTORS

D. C. GAN GUL Y
M.A., PH.D. (LONDON)
Secretary and Curator, Victoria Memorial Hall, Calcutta; formerly Reader in History, Dacca University

R. C. MAJUMDAR
M.A., PH.D., F.A.S., F.A.S.B.
Professor of Ancient Indian History and Culture, Nagpur University

P A R A M A T M A SARAN
M.A., PH.D. (LONDON)
Reader in History, University of Delhi

A. B. M. H A B I B U L L A H
M.A., PH.D. (LONDON)
Professor of Islamic History and Culture, University of Dacca (Pakistan)

D. C. S I R C A R
M.A., PH.D.
Government Epigraphist for India, Ootacamund

Late Dewan Bahadur

S. K R I S H N A S W A M I A I Y A N GAR
M.A., PH.D.
Retired Professor of Indian History and Archaeology, University of Madras

R. S A T H I A NAT H A I E R
M.A., L.T.
Professor of History and Politics, Annamalai University

U. N. G H O S H A L
M.A., PH.D.
Formerly Professor of History, Presidency College, Calcutta

M. A. ME H E N D A L E
M.A., PH.D.
Reader in Sanskrit, Deccan College Post-graduate and Research Institute, Poona

A. D. P U S A L K E R
M.A., LL.B., PH.D.
Assistant Director and Head of the Department of Ancient Indian Culture, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, Bombay

H. D. V E L A N K A R
M.A.
Joint Director, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan; formerly Professor of Sanskrit, Wilson College, Bombay

R. G. H A R S H E
B.A. (TILAK), D.LITT. (PARIS)
Formerly Registrar, Deccan College Post-graduate and Research Institute, Poona
CONTRIBUTORS

S. K. CHATTERJII
M.A. (CAL.), D.LITT. (LONDON)
President, Legislative Council, West Bengal; Emeritus Professor of Comparative Philology
University of Calcutta

K. R. SRINIVASA IYENGAR
M.A., D. LITT.
Professor and Head of the Department of English, Andhra University

H. C. BHAYANI
M.A., PH.D.
Professor and Head of the Department of Gujarati, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, Bombay

N. N. DAS GUPTA
M.A.
Lecturer in Ancient Indian History and Culture, University of Calcutta

H. L. JAIN
M.A., LL.B., D.LITT.
Director, Prakrit Jain Institute, Muzaffarpur

T. M. P. MAHADEVAN
M.A., PH.D.
Professor and Head of the Department of Philosophy, University of Madras

U. C. BHATTACHARJEE
M.A.
Formerly Professor of Philosophy, Presidency College, Calcutta

M. W. MIRZA
M.A., PH.D. (LONDON)
Professor and Head of the Department of Arabic, Lucknow University

S. K. SARASWATI
M.A.
Reader in Ancient Indian History and Culture, University of Calcutta

NIHAR RANJAN RAY
M.A., D.LETT. & PHIL. (LEYDEN)
Bagiswari Professor of Indian Art and Culture, University of Calcutta
FOREWORD

By Dr. K. M. Munshi

One of the objects of the Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, the Institution which sponsors this Series, is the "study of the forces, movements, motives, ideas, forms and art of creative energy through which it expressed it (Indian Culture) in different ages as one continuous process". An attempt has, therefore, to be made, consistently with this object, to present a view of the Age in flowing time.

I do so in all humility. I fully realise my inadequacy to do so; for, I have to rely upon whatever little study I have made and whatever I have observed, during the last fifty years, of the collective responses of our people to the events, movements, customs, institutions and values as also to men who have, through their life and teachings, evoked the unseen forces which have shaped the life of India.

The most crucial Age in Indian history began in A.D. 998, when the Turkish conqueror, Mahmūd, captured Ghazānī; it ended in A.D. 1292, when the Khalji Chief, Jalāl-ud-dīn, proclaimed himself the Sultan of Delhi. It can, however, be conveniently divided into two periods, the first ending in A.D. 1193, when Muʿizz-ud-dīn Ghūrī defeated Prithvirāja Chīhāmāna of Ajmer in the Battle of Tarain or Taraori and opened the gates of Madhya Pradesh to the foreign invader; the second ending in 1299.

This period, in my opinion, has not yet been studied from India's point of view; from the point of view of the trials she passed through; of the sufferings she underwent when foreign elements forced their way into her life-blood; of the manner in which she reacted to the situation; of the means which she found to meet, or to mitigate, the dangers that confronted her; of the ways in which she reconstructed, achieved and fulfilled herself.

Such a study is difficult for two reasons. First, the chronicles written by the protégés of the invaders or their successors throw a dubious but concentrated light on the narrow sector of life which their patrons dominated. This generally leads to the unconfessed impression that the vastly broad sector, which lies in obscurity for want of historical material, either did not exist or does not matter as much.
Secondly, the magnificence of Akbar's achievements in the sixteenth century, by an illusory retrospectivity casts a reflected glamour on the period of the Sultanate. Because the Mughal Empire was an experiment in a national monarchy presided over by a Muslim monarch, one comes to assume, by an easy transition, that the Muslim-dominated Sultanate was the chrysalis from which it sprang.

Unless, therefore, the period is viewed from a right perspective, its true picture cannot possibly emerge; nor would it be possible to assess the factors which, coming into existence during this period, affected the life of the people through the intervening centuries, and which still confront it with unsolved problems.

II

The year A.D. 1000 was a fateful year for India. In that year, Mahmud of Ghazni first invaded it. That event, in my opinion, divides Ancient from Medieval India.

For over 2000 years before this event, that is, from before the days of king Janamejaya Pārikshita, referred to in the Brāhmaṇas, the culture of the dominant classes, developing in almost unbroken continuity, had brought large sections of the people within its fold. It was, however, disturbed on occasions, for instance, by the raids of Alexander; by the influx of the Bactrian Greeks, the Kushānas and the Sakas; by the invasion of the Hūnas; by the Arab incursions in Sindh. But these inroads were only temporary episodes; the vitality of the culture and social organization found it easy to absorb most of the alien elements which were left behind in the country after they were closed.

This continuous vitality is a phenomenon, without appreciating which it is difficult to study the epochs of Indian history in continuous time. Several factors have maintained it. Of them, perhaps the most important was the 'Aryavarta-consciousness' which threw up values and institutions of great vigour and tenacity.

It was based on the faith that Bhāratavarṣa, in its ideal aspect often referred to as Aryavarta, was the sacred land of Dharma, 'the high road to Heaven and to Salvation'; where 'men were nobler than the Gods themselves;' where all knowledge, thought and worship were rooted in the Vedas, revealed by the Gods themselves; where the Dharmaśāstras prescribed the fundamental canons of personal life and social relations; where Chāturvarṣya, the divinely-


viii
ordained four-fold order of society, embraced all social groups; where, whatever the dialect of the people, Sanskrit, the language of the Gods, was the supreme medium of high expression.'

The Dharmasāstras—and by that is meant not only the Smritis beginning with the Manu-smriti, but the Mahābhārata—have played a very big role in the life of the country. Particularly Manu-smriti, as the Dharmasāstra of divine origin, has had an all-pervading influence from the time historical memory could reach back to moulding the mind and the life of men, not only in India but in the India beyond the Seas, in Burma, Siam, Annam, Cambodias, Java and Bali.

With the Mahābhārata and the Rāmāyaṇa, it has provided a background of continuity to the social and moral life; modified customary laws of tribes and communities in different stages of civilization; and built up the Collective Unconscious of our people, that subconscious source of integrative vitality which keeps a people together, leads them to feel and react as one in the face of certain circumstances, and provides the urge to collective action of a recurring character.

Century after century, the system, first formulated by the Manu-smriti, was accepted throughout the country, never by force of arms, less by royal fiat than the sanction implied in the belief that 'God gave it and the ancestors obeyed it'. It was found so acceptable because it had a revealing basis of reality: of a frank recognition of the temperamental inequalities of man; of the predominance of hereditary influences over environments; of the need for a synthetic framework for widely differing social groups in a vast country where culture had been staggered from not only region to region, but often from one group of villages to another. Its fundamental aim was to produce a synthetic urge towards human betterment, which treated economic, social, material, and ethical and spiritual well-being as indivisible; an aim which has yet to be improved upon by any other system.

These values gave continuity to the way of life of even those sections who did not accept the divine origin of the Vedas or Chātur-varṇa. They also provided homogeneity to widely differing communities and religious cults and forms. The universal urge which they provided to go on a pilgrimage, generation after generation, to the mountains, rivers, towns of ancient fame, and holy spots and shrines which were conceived as the physical manifestations of the

2. Saṅkara and Rāmānuja both treat Bhagavād-gītā as a smṛiti.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Land of Dharma, also kept alive an emotional awareness of unity and sanctity.

The 'Āryāvarta-consciousness' was mainly religio-cultural in content. Its political significance which, though often belied in practice, exercised considerable influence with the kings of an earlier age in North India when they faced foreign invasion; it is summed up by Medhātithi thus: “Āryāvarta was so called because the Āryas sprang up in it again and again. Even if it was overrun by the mlechchas, they could never abide there for long”.3 The tradition also had it that whenever a crisis arose, a chakravartin, a world-emperor, would rise in the land and re-establish Dharma. South India, however, which accepted the religio-cultural aspects of 'Āryāvarta-consciousness' and Manu's system, knew no such significance, for it had never to face the problem of the mlechchas till the fourteenth century.

The consciousness in its political aspect had all but disappeared during the few decades which preceded A.D. 1000 on account of the recurring upheavals in North India. The empire of Kanauj, which had stabilised North India for wellnigh 150 years and supported the Shāhī kings of the North-West4, has disintegrated. Now Rāghu- kulaḥāchakravarti, 'the World-Emperor of Rāghu's race', was merely a symbol of a vanished greatness, ruling over a small territory around Kanauj on the sufferance of his erstwhile feudatories. Some of them, however, like the Chandellas of Jejakabhukti, the Kalachuris of Dāhalā and the Paramāras of Mālava were engaged in struggling to found an empire on the ruins of old one, but with little success.

In Eastern India, the Pālas, the Chandras, the Varmans and the Gaṅgas fought each other with fluctuating success, struggling to retain whatever they had or to filch what they had not.

The Rāṣṭrakūṭas, the rivals of the Pratihāra-Gūrjaresvaras, had faded away; their empire, which for well-nigh two centuries had dominated most of South India, had also been dissolved. The Paramāras of Mālava and the Western Chāluṅkus, both feudatories of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, at one time or the other, were locked in a life and death struggle, while Rājarāja Chola (A.D. 985-1014), who ruled over the extreme South, was just emerging as a powerful and wise monarch.

At the turn of the tenth century, therefore, there was no generally accepted national focus in the country, as Kanauj had once

been, and no military power in North India strong enough to keep
the warring kings in check, or to co-ordinate their activities against
any foreign invader. Thus, when Mahmūd began his raids, India
was ill-equipped for successful resistance.

III

After the Hūgas had been repulsed in the sixth century, the
country had been free from any serious foreign visitation for about
two centuries. The Arab conquest of Sindh in the eighth century
had only been a frontier episode and the Pratihāras in the ninth
century appear to have reclaimed some parts which had been
 overrun by the Arabs. The Indian mind, thus lulled into self-com­
placency, was indifferent to, if not unaware of, the vast shifts of
power which were taking place across the frontier.

When the Sāmānīd Princes, Turks recently converted to Islam,
had grown weak, Alptigin, a slave of one of them, established him­
self at Ghazni on the borders of India as a quasi-independent chieftain.
His successor Sabuktīgin (A.D. 977-997), when he was safely
entrenched in power, began nibbling at the possessions of the Shāhi
kings, which included parts of Afghanistan, North-West Frontier
Province and the Punjāb.

On Sabuktīgin’s death, his son Mahmūd, with swift audacity,
captured Ghazni, which his father had left to another son. He was
a military leader of the highest order, gifted with a rare personality.
Developing a marvellous striking power, by A.D. 1000, he extended
his sway over considerable parts of Central Asia, Irān and Seistān.
Then he turned to India, giving her people a foretaste of total war
with which they had not been familiar since the days of the Hūgas.

The Indian kings, all of whom accepted, at any rate in theory,
the law of the Dharmasastras as inalienable, waged wars according
to certain humane rules. Whatever the provocation, the shrine, the
Brahmaṇa and the cow were sacrosanct to them. War being a special
privilege of the martial classes, harassment of the civilian population
during military operations was considered a serious lapse from the
code of honour. The high regard which all the Kshatriyas had for
the chastity of women, also ruled out abduction as an incident of
war.

The wars in Central Asia, on the other hand, were grim strug­
gles for survival, for the destruction of the enemies and for appro­
priating their womenfolk. No code circumscribed the destruc­
tive zeal of the conqueror; no canon restrained the ruthlessness of their
hordes. When, therefore, Mahmūd's armies swept over North India it saw torrents of barbarians sweeping across its rich plains, burning, looting, indulging in indiscriminate massacre; raping women, destroying fair cities, burning down magnificent shrines enriched by centuries of faith; enforcing an alien religion at the point of sword; abducting thousands, forcing them into unwilling marriage or concubinage; capturing hundreds of thousands of men, women and children, to be sold as slaves in the markets of Ghazni and other Central Asian markets.

Delhi, Kanauj, Jejakabhukti sent men and money to help the Shāhī kings to defend their frontiers. But the invader swept everything before him. All that the three generations of the Shāhīs, 'men of noble sentiments and noble bearings', who, according to Al-Bīrūnī, 'in their grandeur never slackened in the ardent desire of doing that which is good and rich', could do was, like heroes of frustrated destiny that they were, fight and die bravely.

Mahmūd annexed the Punjab, thereby opening the way to the hungry men from the steppes of Central Asia to descend upon this rich and fertile land in search of plunder. Nothing would withstand the Central Asian raiders eager to plunder and destroy. In a few years, Thaneswar, Mathurā, Kanauj and Prabhāsā Pattana were smoking ruins. The ruler of Kanauj accepted submission on abject terms. The raids of the Turk were, however, halted in the east by Vidyādharā Chandella at Kālañjara and in the south-west, where after destroying the temple of Somañātha, Mahmūd had to beat a hasty retreat through the desert of Sindh for fear of the federated armies of Paramadeva, whom I would identify with Bhaja Paramāra of Dhārā (A.D. 1000-1055).

In spite of the havoc worked by the raids of Mahmūd, life returned to normal as soon as their pressure disappeared. For instance, within five years of the invasion, in the course of which Mahmūd destroyed the temple of Somañātha, Gujarāt, richer and more powerful than before, had not only rebuilt the temple on a more magnificent scale, but created the artistic wonders of the Dilwārā temple. About the same time, the neighbouring kingdom, which included Mālāwa and parts of Gujarāt, was enjoying great prosperity associated with enthusiastic pursuit of learning, literature and art.

5. Munshi, Imperial Gurjaras, p. 139.
However, the destruction and the humiliation inflicted by Mahmūd’s raids shocked India’s sense of ancient superiority, bringing into play several political, social and psychological factors. With the Yamānis, the successors of Mahmūd, firmly established in the Punjāb, the ‘Aryāvarta-consciousness’ lost whatever significance it had. The belief that Chāṭurtvārya was a divinely appointed universal order, characteristic of the land, was shaken; for now a ruling race in the country not only stood outside it, but held it in contempt and sought its destruction.

Nationalism, familiar to the modern mind, is a non-religious group sentiment. It is associated with a fierce possessiveness over one’s own land however vast it may be, entertained by a people who have willed themselves into a quasi-organic solidarity. Naturally, the Indian kings could not develop it, because the country was too vast and the times unfavourable to the development of a non-religious group sentiment of this nature. Five more centuries had to elapse before nationalism became a force in Europe and two hundred more years had to pass before it was to become a human value in Asia.

The storm that blew in the wake of Mahmūd’s armies was sudden and overwhelming. It came before any of the feudatories of Imperial Kanauj could win the race for an unchallenged hegemony; when it blew over none was left strong enough to win it. The kings of South India, where the political aspect of the ‘Aryāvarta-consciousness’ had been so much as penetrated, also presented too persistent a menace to enable them to combine against a foreign enemy from the North-West. In the result, loyalties came to be confined to one’s own region, accelerating the trend to social and political particularism.

During this Age, the druṣjas had long ceased to be a compact, social group created by anuloma marriages and a common education received from Brāhmaṇa preceptors. The Brāhmaṇas, the Kshatriyas and the Vaiśyas were now separate castes to which was denied the dynamic fluidity throughout the country which it had under the earlier social order. To this was added another factor. The dynastic pride, always a great factor in stiffening the morale of royal houses, had deteriorated into vaingloriousness which grew in proportion as the kingdoms shrank in extent. A king, instead of being the only source of power, was no more than the first among the equals, the head of inter-related overlords, never in a position to overrule the wishes of his feudal lords.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

In consequence, the loyalties of the Kshatriyas became rooted in the region over which they and their king held feudal sway. This rendered annexation, the only possible source of establishing the core of an empire, extremely difficult. Even after a smashing victory, a conqueror sometimes seems to have found it expedient to restore the vanquished enemy or a member of his family to the throne in order not to alienate the local chieftains; but no sooner was his back turned, than they, more often than not, declared independence.

Under these conditions, scarcely any king could leave his realm for any length of time exposing it to the greed of his neighbours. He was always hard put to save his own kingdom and, on accession, had to make peace even with a foreign invader and divert his attention to his neighbour. In this way, social stagnancy and regional consciousness led to what has been called ‘small-state-mindedness’, the sure forerunner of political disintegration.

V

About the middle of the twelfth century, the Turks, then in occupation of parts of Central Asia, were forced first westwards and then eastwards by the pressure of their enemies. In A.D. 1175, the Turkish chief, Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad, the nephew of the ferocious ‘World-Burner’ of Ghür, invaded India. The impact of the invasion was borne by three powerful princes: Prithvirāja Chāhamāna of Ajmer, Jayachandra Gāhaḍavāla of Kanauj, and Mūlarāja II, Chaulukya of Gujarāt. Each one of them was powerful enough to defeat the invader singly; Mūlarāja drove him back in 1178; Prithvirāja, in A.D. 1191; but no two of them would combine. When the brave Prithvirāja lost the second Battle of Tarain in 1192, the turning point of history came. When Jayachandra Gāhaḍavāla, next to be vanquished, died fighting, the Turkish cavalry swept over the plains of the Gaṅga.

In A.D. 1206, Qutb-ud-din Aibak, who succeeded Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad, established the Turkish Sultanate of India at Lahore. It was transferred later to Delhi. The Sultanate was foreign in personnel and outlook, for “The Forty” as the leading Turkish chiefs, originally the slaves of Mu'izz-ud-din, were called, owned it in fee. Its principal concern was loot and conquest; and the slogan of jehad, supported by the 'Ulamā, came in useful to maintain the fanatic zeal of the army. To these invaders nothing was sacred. The description given by Padmanabhā in Kāhnaḍade Prabandha (c. A.D. 1456)
of what the armies of 'Alá-ud-din Khalji did, would equally apply to
the campaigns of the Turks:

"The conquering army burnt villages; devastated the land,
plundered people's wealth, took Bráhmanas, children and
women of all castes captive, and flogged them with thongs and
raw hide, carried a moving prison with it, and converted the
prisoners into obsequious Turks."

In the days of Mahmúd of Ghazni, in the words of 'Utbi, "the
blood of the infidels flowed copiously and apostasy was often the
only way of survival." On the testimony of so liberal a Muslim of
this Age as Amír Khusrav, "the land had been saturated with the
water of the sword and the vapours of infidelity (i.e. Hindus) had
been dispersed." Will Durant, in his Story of Civilization, aptly
says: "The Mohammedan conquest of India is probably the bloodiest
story in history. It is a discouraging tale, for its evident moral is
that civilization is a precarious thing, whose delicate complex of
order and liberty, culture and peace may at any time be overthrown
by barbarians invading from without or multiplying within". And
neither the ferocity nor the persistence of the invader could lead
the Indians to develop the military organisation or the ruthlessness
needed to match the opposing savagery.

The conquests so exultantly referred to by the court chroni-
clers of the Sultanate had an Indian side of the picture. It was one
of ceaseless resistance offered with relentless heroism; of men, from
boys in teens to men with one foot in the grave, flinging away
their lives for freedom; of warriors defying the invaders from fort-
rresses for months, sometimes for years, in one case, with intermis-
sion, for a century; of women in thousands courting fire to save their
honour; of children whose bodies were flung into the wells by their
parents so that they might escape slavery; of fresh heroes springing
up to take the place of the dead and to break the volume and mo-
momentum of the onrushing tide of invasion.

About the middle of the thirteenth century, the Mongols had
already established themselves in Afghanístán. In A.D. 1254, they
had taken Lahore; in A.D. 1255 they had entered Sindh. With his
retreat to the original homeland thus cut off, the Turk, compelled
to look to India as his permanent home, clung to the precariously
held kingdom of Delhi with tenacity. However, in spite of military
operations conducted for a century, the core of the Sultanate only
comprised the central military base of Delhi and the surrounding
districts within a radius of about 250 miles of it. The frontier dis-
tricts were no better than garrison outposts from which the Turkish
satraps carried on raids against the Indian chiefs, who held the rural areas. But even when the resistance was overcome, the satraps had to administer the conquered areas with the aid of hereditary Indian chiefs and officers, who were always on the look out for an opportunity to revolt. Some of the Indian chiefs carried their expeditions to the walls of Delhi and even across the Yamunā into the Doab. From the Indian point of view, therefore, the territory of the Sultanate in the thirteenth century was only an arena of resistance which neither wavered nor tired.

VI

This resistance was nowhere more characteristically symbolised than in the epic heroism associated with the Chāhamānas of Ranthambhor. From A.D. 1192, when Prithvirāja Chāhamāna lost the battle of Tarain, till A.D. 1301 when his descendant, the heroic Ḥammūrādeva, fell fighting in the battlefield and the fortress fell to ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khaljī, they defied the Sultanate year after year and generation after generation. And so did the Katehrs who were no less unyielding in their resistance.

The Indian kings, steeped in their tradition of tolerance, could scarcely envisage the danger to which their policies towards Islam exposed them. In spite of what was happening in North India, Indian kings permitted foreigners to settle freely in their kingdoms and granted them free exercise of their religious practices. Even before the Turkish invasion, some sects of Islam had drifted into the country and their religious and proselytising activities had not been interfered with. Jayāśīrha Siddharāja of Gujarāt (A.D. 1094-1143) punished some of his subjects for interfering with the worship of Muslims. Proselytising activities were freely carried out in the days of the Yādavas by a Sūfī teacher, Mūmin ‘Arīf, who settled near Devagiri in the South, and by Jullāl-ud-dīn Gānjrawān (died in A.D. 1254) another Sūfī from Irān. Sārāṅgādeva (A.D. 1294-1297) of Gujarāt gave a grant for a masjīd to the local Muslim community of Prabāṣa Pattana with the blessings of the high-priest of Soma-nāṣa when, for decades, the Turks had been destroying thousands of temples in Vārānasi and other sacred places.

Once the Turkish Sultanate was installed at Delhi and Islam came to be enthroned in political power, wherever the writ of the Sultan ran, the proselytising activities of Islam became active; the Hindus were denied the right to public worship and were subjected to civil disabilities and other indignities; and many communities, particularly in the lower strata of society, took to the new faith in
order to escape these hardships. This led to the emergence of a
distinct element in the population of the country, termed 'Mussal­
mans'. This community comprised the Turkish conquerors and their
 retainers; the foreign mercenaries pressed into their service from
time to time; the divines, scholars and adventurers who migrated
to India from foreign lands; the men taken prisoners in war or for­
ced into slavery; the converts who sought the new faith to secure
royal favour or protection; the Hindu women captured in war or ab­
ducted and their progeny.

This element in the population, which had behind it the politi­
cal and military support of the Sultanate and its governors, slowly
acquired the conquistador spirit of the Turks. Ever on the increase,
it began to look down upon the people from whom most of its mem­
bers had come, as infidels to be despised and converted or killed,
and in any event to be fought and overcome. It was this element
that in opposition to the ruling Turkish 'Fatehs', supported the Khal­
jis, who were not considered pure Turks, to capture the Sultanate
in A.D. 1290.

The aggressive attitude of this new element in the population
led to the religious, cultural and psychological resistance on the part
of the people of the country, who, in contradiction to it, came
to be referred to as 'Hindus'. The Hindus fought the conquistador
spirit of the Muslims by developing a challenging superiority com­
plex. They made compromises with the rulers when compelled to
do so; they served them when they could not help doing so. But
they would not let them defile the sanctity of their homes or castes,
social and religious observances by encouraging indiscriminate con­
tact with the Muslims.

The people while countering the invader by armed resistance
to the best of their ability succeeded in confining his authority
wherever he had acquired it, within the narrowest limits. They
also tried to protect religion, culture and social order, rebuilding
on the old foundations wherever they could. The Dharmaśastras were
given a higher sanctity; the edge of social ostracism was sharpened.
Women were segregated in their homes; infant marriages became
almost universal. Self-immolation by heroic women on the funeral
pyre, when their husbands lost their life in battle, became the
supreme form of martyrdom, which kept a sense of religious and
cultural superiority at white heat. Caste divided and sub-divided,
but remained unmixed. Even the process of social betterment
through which lower castes were progressively raised to a higher
status was slowed down or halted.

S.E.—B

xvii
At the same time, the conflicts and tensions, bitter and persist­ent though they were, provided areas of contact, and therefore of adjustment. The slaves captured in war and women acquired as wives or mistresses, were Muslims only in name. The new converts and their children were Islam more as an official badge, rarely giving up all the inhibitions and practices of the Hindus. Even the Sultan or his satrap, however intolerant, had to adjust himself to his Hindu feudal chiefs and officials, and, in spite of frequent pro­tests from the ‘Ulamā, framed his policies so as not to create strong disaffection among them.

Rebels from either camps sought refuge with the other. There was intercourse between the two communities in courts, fairs and festivals. Hindu artists, musicians and dancers thronged the courts and the camps of the Sultāns and their governors and reaped a rich harvest. Hindu and Muslim saints, not unoften, had a common appeal to both the communities, and the sects of both the religions, by way of action and re-action, and sometimes by challenge, influenced each other. The Mahānubhāva sect, a non-idolatrous and Gopāl Cult, founded by Chakradharasvāmi (died in A.D. 1272) about the time the first Sūfī saints settled in Aurangābād, is an instance in point.

The Hindus remained in the spheres of trade, commerce and banking. The Muslims, however intolerant, therefore, had to treat the Hindu mercantile community with consideration, though it was inspired by self-interest and often grudging. The foreign trade, on which the Sultanate depended, was mostly in the hands of Hindus of the west coast, who traded with Persia and Arabia. The extravagant young Muslims also found it impossible to indulge in a life of gaiety without the money, which the Hindu banker was not unwilling to provide in order to secure freedom from harass­ment or indignity.

These areas of contact would have hastened far-reaching ad­justments had not the perennial streams of Muslim adventurers and divines continued to flow through the North-Western passes. To feed their rapacity or fanaticism these immigrants kept alive viru­lent antagonism for the people whom they had come to exploit.

Except for a few buildings like the Qutb-minar, there is no­thing to relieve the dreary military character of the thirteenth cen­tury Sultanate. It made no contribution to the sphere of culture, except a little in the field of historiography and Persian literature. Some of the Sultāns, it appears, encouraged some new ideas and modes in architecture, paving the way for the Indo-Saracenic style.
of the future. They also made some crude experiments in administra-
tive policies as well as the fiscal revenue and currency systems.
In self-interest they also began to build a line of defence against the
Mongols in the North-West, halting their irresistible march. But the
harvest of whatever little they sowed was to be gathered in the next
Age in the reigns of 'Ala-ud-din Khalji and Muhammad bin Tughluq.

VII

Even within the areas in which Turkish armies operated, the
India of the Age belonged to the heroes of resistance; outside this
area lay considerable parts of the North and the whole of the
South—in fact, three-fourths of the country, where India followed its
unbroken way of life, where the Dharmasastras were honoured and
obeyed and where Hinduism flourished unobstructed.

Where the Indian kings ruled, their regional pride, exaggerated
though it was, had its compensatory feature. They vied with each
other in making their courts brilliant centres of art, learning and
literature. They gave generous grants to the poor and the learned,
built beautiful temples and lavished patronage on poets. People
lived within the regulated order which, though circumscribed by
ancient customs, was in no way oppressive.

In North India, girdling the area of military resistance, were the
old kingdoms of Dīhala, ruled by the Kalachuris (11th century to
1212); Jejakabhukti, ruled by the Chandellas (9th century to 1315);
Mālwā, ruled by the Parāmaras (10th century to A.D. 1305); and
Gujarat, ruled by the Chaułukyas and Vāghanas (A.D. 940-1299), the
most opulent and powerful of them all.

In the South, the Western Chālukyas (A.D. 973-1189), the Yāda-
vas (A.D. 1135-1317), the Kākatiyas (c. A.D. 1050-1322), the Eastern
Chālukyas (A.D. 999-1271) and later, Pāṇḍyas (A.D. 11th to 14th
centuries) and Hoysalas (c. A.D. 1106-1343) ruled over flourishing
kingdoms and in the middle of the thirteenth century the Pāṇḍyan
conqueror Jātavarman Sundara Pāṇḍya established hegemony over
several of them. Some of these kingdoms, at one time or the other,
were more powerful than the Sultanate except perhaps during the
reign of Iltutmish and Balban. If the prosperity and welfare of the
people, the patronage of art and literature provide any test, most of
them were decidedly great.

But the most important of them in extent and power—not ex-
cluding the Sultanate at its best—and the most brilliant in cultural
achievements, was the empire of the Cholas of Tanjore (A.D. 985-

THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(250) When North India was being raided by Mahmud, Rajarāja Chōla (A.D. 985-1014), one of the greatest rulers in Indian history, was laying the foundations of an empire. A pious man, he conquered far and wide, set up an efficient administration and ruled his people wisely and well. A great patron of art and literature, he built the Brihadiśvara (or Rājarājēśvara) temple at Tanjore, the most beautiful of Tamil edifices in the country. His empire at his death included the whole of South India up to the Tuṅgabhadra, the Maldives and a part of Ceylon, with Andhradesa in feudatory alliance.

Under his son, Rājendra Chōla Gaṅgaikonda (A.D. 1012-1044), the empire reached its zenith, comprising, besides the territories that had been acquired by Rājarāja, parts of what is at present Madhya Pradesh, the whole of Andhra, Ceylon, and parts of Orissa, Bengal and Bihar. The Chōla Emperors were the first to recognise the value of naval power. Their navy controlled the Bay of Bengal, which became a 'Chōla-Lake', and won a colonial empire which embraced Ceylon, the Nicobar Islands, the Malay Peninsula and Sumatra. Their administrative organisation had a strong centralised machinery and an efficient system of audit. They constructed the famous anicuts across the Kaveri in the Tanjore District; had land surveys made of their territories; built magnificent temples; established schools of Vedic and Sanskrit learning. Under them literature blossomed and art flourished and the south contributed valuable works in the field of philosophy, Dharmaśāstras, Saivism, dramaturgy, music and dancing.

During this period, the Hindu kingdoms of Suvarṇapura, which comprised the Malay Peninsula, Sumatra, Java, Bali, Borneo, kingdom of the Sailendras, Pagan and Kambuja in South-East Asia, formed part of Dvīpāntara-Bhārata, 'India beyond the Seas'. They had close contacts with India, and South India and Bengal influenced them considerably.

Within fifty years of the conquest of the great Sailendra empire of Malaya by the Chōla conquerors, the royal dynasty re-established its power to some extent, which came to an end only about A.D. 1264. The empire of Kambuja (Cambodia) reached its zenith in the twelfth century, when Sūryavarman II built the great temple of Angkor Vat, reckoned as one of the wonders of the world. At the end of the twelfth century, the Hindu kingdom of Champa (Indo-China) under Jayavarman VIII, extended from the Bay of Bengal on one side to the Sea of China on the other; it continued to flourish till A.D. 1312 when the Emperor of Annam reduced it to vassallage. Java also continued to be a powerful Hindu kingdom till the fifteenth century.

xx
When overpowered by the Muslims, the Hindu rulers, rather than renounce Hinduism, migrated with a large number of people to the small island of Bali, which had already been colonised by the Hindus. Hinduism flourishes in Bali even now. Several massive monuments like Angkor Thom in Kambuja and Barabudur in Java attest to the grandiose art of this glorious period of Dvipântara-Bhârata.

In A.D. 1044, the Hindu king, Aniruddha, ruling from Pagan or Arimadanapura in Burma, brought the whole country, excluding Tenasserim, under his rule. One of his successors, Narasirîhapati, in A.D. 1271, defied Kublai Khan for many years, till about the end of the thirteenth century, a grandson of Kublai Khan marched to Pagan which "perished amidst the blood and flame of the Tartar’s terror".

As a result of the resilience of the social order as had been developed under the influence of the Dharmasastras, most of the social activities were in the hands of autonomous groups outside the sphere of royal authority. The king waged wars. He lost battles or died fighting. His army was massacred. But the villages, more or less self-sufficient economic and social units, continued to lead their own life; the local panchayats continued to dispense justice; the Brâhmaṇas, to impart education and direct religious rites and duties; the Kshatriyas, to give protection; and the autonomous castes, to provide social security and to safeguard human relations.

During this age, therefore, in spite of the ravages of the Turks, India was still the land of great achievements.

By the end of the tenth century, Hinduism, with its vigorous cults inculcating the worship of Siva, Sakti and Vishnu, had absorbed Buddhism; asserted its universal supremacy; re-interpreted its popular doctrines, charging them with high philosophy, and thrown up vast movements of the spirit.

The Brâhmaṇas continued to exercise tremendous influence in the mind and faith of the people. In the main devoted to learning, rituals, worship, they led the renaissance, which can appropriately be called Puranic. Sanskrit, which remained their passport to a semi-divine status and their instrument of unifying the country, continued to be the language of religion, philosophy and sciences; of the courts where learning was lavishly patronised; of the Universities where the Shastras were studied and re-interpreted. The Indian kings of the period, whatever their other faults, never failed to promote
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

or to honour learning. But by the end of the thirteenth century, intellectual expansion of North India halted abruptly. This can only be traced to the vast destructions of the Universities and centres of learning in North India by the Turks.

In spite of the destruction of some great shrines and Universities in North India, literature in Sanskrit flourished in most parts of India. Whatever of it has come down to us includes mahākāvya and kāvyas, lyrical, didactic, satirical and historical poems; dramas of different varieties; prose romances and chāmpūs; tales, romantic and didactic; treatises on metrics, poetics and dramaturgy, on politics, mathematics, medicine, astronomy, architecture and philosophy.

It was the age of polymaths: of Kshemendra, Bhoja and Hemachandra. Though Kālidāsa’s Rāghuvamśa and Meghadūta and Bāṇa’s Kādambarī provided the model for many of the creative works, they tended to be learned, rather than living. The fashion of the time required that even epics should be so composed that every word had a double or treble entendre. For instance, every verse of the Devīrāya-mahākāvya of Hemachandra illustrates rules of grammar as also the history of the Chaulukyas.

Though most of the kāvyas were second-rate, Naishadhīya can stand comparison with the best of them. Kalhaṭṭa’s Rājataraṅgini is the best work on history in Sanskrit. The greatest creative work of the period—Jayadeva’s Gita-govinda—in which sound, sense and emotion have been mingled in exquisite harmony, and the beauty of words is invested with the intensity of erotic emotions, is a unique poem in the literature of the world, rare and exquisite, though oppressively scintillating.

IX

In the tenth century the castes were comparatively fluid and reconversion to Hinduism not impossible. But in this Age the fundamental values of Dharmaśastras were readjusted not only to restore continuity and stability to the social order, but to provide defensive ramparts in order to present a solid front to an aggressive alien culture and religion. The dynamic outlook of Medhatithi and Devala-smṛiti, therefore, gave place to a conservative outlook.

During this period, the great Dharmaśāstra texts—Mitākṣarā, Dāyabhāga, Smriti-chandrikā and Aparāraka śikṣa—reinterpreted the regulatory canons of life laid down by the earlier texts. Their authority, as judicial decisions show, held good till yesterday when in parts
it was superseded by the amendments of the Hindu Code. Châturvarâja, as envisaged by these texts, was the ideal pattern for the society to conform. Lapses might be many and varied, but provision was made to condone or remedy them by appropriate rituals. These law-texts, universally accepted as authoritative, more than any single factor, helped to conserve the social structure and the pattern of conduct in all human relations, which were held traditionally sacrosanct from the days of Manu.

Sanskrit had been placed on a pedestal of scholarship and sanctity, assuming a more learned character. Prakrit and Apabhraśa had receded in the background. Some of the dialects of the regions—desabhâshâs—thereupon had become the vehicles of the living thought and emotions of the people. This Age saw the literary activities in these dialects which laid the foundation of the modern Indian languages and their literature, including Marâthi, Bengali, Tamil, Kannada and Telugu, as also Old Gujarâti, sometimes called the Western Râjasthâni, of which modern Gujarâti, Jaipuri, Mârwâri and Mâlvî are the descendants.

With miraculous adaptability Brâhmanaś and non-Brâhmaṇas also carried to the masses the vision and the hope of the Epics and the Purâṇas, through the media of these languages. This brought about the later phase of the Puranic Renaissance, which kept ancient ideals and traditions through the desabhâshâs. This movement spread over many parts of the country. To the poets it gave fresh inspiration; to the Paurânikas, the readers of the Purâṇas, a new vocation; to the philosophers, a new outlook; to the village sects, something to live for. It made the glamour of the past, of which the people were already proud, live again. It displaced cumbrous ritual and abstruse doctrine, to make way for the bhakti—devotion—associated with joy, dance and prayer.

Before the rise of Śaṅkarāchârya, the Vaiśhāva mystics and saints, known as Alvârs in the South, had invested bhakti with the attributes of earthly love. When the Bhâgavata Purâṇa, one of the literary masterpieces of the world, recreated Śri Krîṣhâna as the supremely loveable child, youth, lover—God Himself—Śri Kṛishnâsa-tu Bhagurâdan smûrman, out of the statesman, World Teacher and avatâra of the Epic and the earlier Purâṇas, it was accepted as the gospel of bhakti throughout the country.

During this period, an aspect of bhakti also received a new emphasis. After A.D. 1000, Yâmunâchârya began his apostolic
career under the Chola kings. He propagated *praapatti* “Surrender to God”. Rāmānujaḥārya, who succeeded him, not only developed the doctrine by providing it with a philosophic background, but raised it to the level of a monotheistic religion. In this *bhakti* school of thought, which challenged the supremacy of the Vedānta of Śaṅkara, living dedication to God became the master idea giving the powerful emotional content to the *bhakti*.

When Rādhā came to be associated with Śrī Kṛṣṇa in the popular imagination, the *bhakti* movement received a still more powerful impetus. About A.D. 1150, Nimbārka founded a new school in Andhradesa, stressing the *bhakti* both of Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Rādhā. “We worship”, he says, “Rādhā, the daughter of Vrīśabhaḥānu, the goddess who joyfully adorns the left lap of the great deity Śrī Kṛṣṇa, as beautiful as Śrī Kṛṣṇa Himself, surrounded by thousands of damsels. She is the one who fulfills all desires.” Mādhava in Karnātak laid the foundation of a yet more vigorous Vaishnava cult.

These Achāryas were not merely philosopher saints. They were ardent evangelists, with an inspired sense of their mission. They and their followers travelled from one place of pilgrimage to another; worshipped at holy places or well-known shrines, particularly those associated with Śrī Kṛṣṇa; established contacts, composed philosophic treatises, held discourses and made disciples who wandered from countryside to countryside, singing the praises of the Lord.

The concept of *bhakti*, to which shape had been given by Śrī Kṛṣṇa in the *Bhāgavat-gītā*, and by the early founders of the Paścaḥārāatra doctrines, had already contributed a vital element in the Puranic renaissance. Later romantic and emotional elements were added to it by the devotional songs of the Ālvārs, the human appeal of the *Bhāgavata* and the glamour of the Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa sports of *Gītā-govinda* setting the imagination of the people aglow. Slowly, it penetrated, though often unperceived, into the dark undergrowth of frustration which had been taking possession of the Collective Unconscious of the people. Ever a vibrant force, in a hundred and fifty years, it was to blaze forth as the Bhakti Renaissance to give India the raptures of a fresh joy, which enabled her to save her soul.

We have a fairly reliable picture of the economic condition of Gujarāt in the ample materials which are available. Similar conditions are likely to have prevailed in some other parts of the country where the Turkish armies did not operate. The evidence shows that
the soil of Gujarat was fertile; its people adventurous, hard-working and well-behaved. Agriculture yielded bountiful harvests; industries flourished; internal trade and maritime commerce was brisk and profitable. In general, the masses in the country lived simply but well, drawing sustenance from a rich soil. The middle classes lived in comfort; the upper classes in wealth, plenty and pomp. Important shrines and Universities were richly endowed.

By the end of the thirteenth century, the textile industry of Gujarat had reached its high-water mark; Baroji and Kambayati, manufactured in Broach and Cambay respectively, are referred by Marco Polo and Al-Nowayri as the outstanding varieties of textile. It was also famous for its tanning and leather industries. "What more shall I tell you", writes the astonished Marco Polo, "you must know in very truth that in this kingdom are made the best and finest leather goods in the world and the most costly."

No less important were its industries of manufacturing gur and sugar, and the building industry. The flourishing condition of the latter is evidenced by the large residential quarters in the cities like Asahillapāṭaṇa, Dholka, Cambay and Broach; by the magnificent temples of Somanāṭha, Abu and Modhera; by the forts, the remnant of one of which can still be seen at Dabhoi; by the elaborate step-wells of the period which still survive. The use of iron implements of extreme fineness is also indicated by the exquisite stone carvings.

Trades were organised into guilds with a department of the State to look after them. Broach and Cambay, the two ports of Gujarat, carried on a large international trade. Idrisi speaks of the residents of Broach as being rich and engaged in trade. "They freely enter upon speculations and distant expeditions. It is a port for vessels coming from China and is also for those of Sind." Spices, dyes, leather goods and textiles formed the principal items of export; and so were locally made perfumes, which had a world wide demand. Imports comprised gold, silver and other commodities, particularly horses, of which 10,000 are recorded as passing annually through the port of Cambay alone. Prabhāṣa was also an entrepôt and its religious importance invested it with great prominence.

Large part of the overseas trade of Gujarat was controlled by Indians, though merchants of Arabia settled in different parts of the land had also a share in it. Jagadu, a merchant of international renown, is stated to have traded regularly with Persia and trans-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

imported goods to and fro in his ships. A brisk trade was carried on with Sumatra and Java. The wealth brought from the latter country has passed into a proverb: “He who goes to Java never returns; but if he does, he brings so much wealth that his grand-children’s grand-children will not be able to exhaust it.” Al-Idrisi testifies that Indian merchants were known for justice, good faith, honesty and fidelity to their engagements. Merchants of Lāṭa (South Gujarāt) received special encomium from Marco Polo, who says: “I assure you that these Brāhmaṇas are among the best and most trustworthy merchants in the world; for nothing on earth would they tell a lie and all that they say is true.”

* There is also evidence, though not so complete, of the conditions in other parts of the country. Date and cocoanut trees grew at Sandan and the latter were found in abundance at Saymur. Magadha was rich in rice, and Kalinga produced its best varieties suitable for the royal kitchens. Ginger and cinnamon came from the Pāṇḍya kingdom; camphor, from the mountain slopes between Quilon and Madurā; cardamom and pepper, from Malabar. Bengal produced spikenard and other spices, ginger, sugar and cotton. The Malaya hills supplied sandal-wood, while from Kāshmir came yellow sandal, saffron and grapes. Indigo of a fine quality was produced in Quilon. The Chola-manḍala abounded in ivory.

The textile industry also flourished in Vaṅga, Kaliṅga, the Chola-manḍala and Multān. Mālāvā provided large quantities of cotton cloth; Malabar manufactured “very beautiful and delicate buckrams;” Warangal, fine cotton fabrics and carpets; cotton stuffs with coloured silk threads formed part of the products of Chola-manḍala. The temples at Bhuvanesvarā, Puri and Konārak testify to the skill of the ironsmiths in manufacturing iron-beams of unwrought iron. The iron pillar at Dhāra is reputed to have been the highest pillar of its kind in the world. Palnad in South India specialised in iron manufactures including arms.

Malabar had important centres of pearl fisheries. Warangal produced diamonds of large size in abundance. At many centres in the country, articles of gold and silver of high artistic value were manufactured, and the art of jewellers had reached a high degree of specialised skill.

Malabar also had international centres of trade, visited by ships from the Persian Gulf, the Arabian Sea as also from South China.

xxvi
Its imports included metals, textiles, fabrics, frankincense, etc. Spices, precious stones, pearls, cloths of silk and gold, and ivory figured among the exports. Horses constituted by far the largest item among the imports. Chau Ju-Kua refers to the Arabs taking their horses to Quilon for trade. The merchants of Quilon and the officials of the Chola government employed in the port have been praised for their integrity by the Jewish traveller Benjamin of Tudela.

The pall of the purdah had not yet descended upon the land. Men and women, simply dressed but richly ornamented, moved about freely. Fairs and feasts were held in plenty. Flowers were in general use as personal ornaments. Dance, drama and music, vocal and instrumental, were very popular. So was wrestling and duel. Fights between birds and quails were often staged to popular delight. Large temples, built by kings or the pious rich were community centres where the humbler folk gathered, received instructions, held their fairs and festivals; where dramatic performances were held. Apart from the Sanskrit dramas, there were also entertainments of a popular variety. Hemachandra tells us that sometimes during such entertainments "even the sophisticated townsmen were impelled to laugh like villagers, at fat men, men with projecting teeth, lame men, hunchbacks, flat-nosed men, men with dishevelled hair; by ash coloured men, by men with buttock-bells, by the musicians of the armpit and the nose, by dancers of the ear and brow, by imitators of the speech of other people."

After the Classical Age, this Age was the most glorious epoch of Indian art, particularly in the spheres of architecture and sculpture, though their traditions had grown up in the earlier period. This was India's great age of temple-building. In several parts of North India, remnants of some of the magnificent temples of the period survive; many of the important ones in the South are still intact. More than anything else, they bear eloquent testimony to the faith and opulence of the times; to the high degree which artistic execution had attained in the country; above all, to the inspiring and conditioning factors in the social and emotional life of the people which nourished such a great art.

At the close of the Age, or perhaps a decade or two later, when the armies of the Turkish and Khalji Sultans overran the country, the creative vitality in terms of plastic art came to an end.
These remains also indicate the vigour of the religious movements which sustained the life of the people. Though the worship of Vishnu was popular among the well-to-do and the intellectual classes, the worship of Siva and Sakti, more than any other cult, exercised the most active influence and claimed the devotion of the bulk of the people. Most of the great temples of this Age, which survive to-day, are dedicated to Siva. Perhaps the shrines of the twelve jyotirlingas, to the deity, as the guardian deity of the universe, situated in different parts of the country, began to command the veneration of the whole country during this period. Anyway two of them—the one of Somanatha at Prabha, and the other of Mahakala at Ujjain—were shrines held in such veneration before Mahmud of Ghazni invaded the country. Temples dedicated to Siva also abounded on the banks of most of the rivers and in villages; for, he was the god whom the poor universally loved.

Siva and Parvati, with their colourful family, entered into the life of the people as devoted lovers, as affectionate parents, as dread destroyers, as the defenders of the righteous. As the destroyers of the demons Tripura and Mahishasura, they were not only the powers who supported the righteous in their crusade against the wicked, but were the presiding deities of conflict, whether of attack or defence.

Siva, as the wielder of the mighty trident, therefore, had an unchallenged place in the Indian heart not only in these three centuries but in the preceding and the succeeding centuries as well. His name was a challenging refrain in all heroic appeals. From before the medieval period, the warriors generally went to battle with his name on their lips. And they were to do so not only throughout the Era of Resistance, which began with this Age, but even till 1857, when Rani Lakshmibai of Jhansi and her heroic followers, in their fight against the British, courted martyrdom with 'Hara Hara Mahadev' on their lips.
FOREWORD

nagar; British Museum, London; Cleveland Museum of Art, U.S.A.; Colombo Museum; Dacca Museum, East Pakistan; Indian Museum, Calcutta; Lucknow Museum; Madras Museum; Musée Guimet, Paris; Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, U.S.A.; Museum Van Asiatische Kunst, Amsterdam; Patna Museum; Rajputana Museum, Ajmer; Rajshahi Museum, East Pakistan; Shikar Museum, Rajputana; Worcester Art Museum, U.S.A.; Asiatic Society, Calcutta; and Bharat Kala Bhavan, Hindu University, Banaras, who have supplied photographs for the different illustrations in this volume. Details of the materials lent by them are given in a separate "Acknowledgments" column. I am specially indebted to Messrs. Associated Advertisers & Printers Ltd., Bombay, who have seen the volume through the press, and to the staff of the Bhavan and the Press who looked after the preparation and printing of this volume with care and zeal. It is difficult to express adequately the deep debt of gratitude which the Bhavan owes to Shri G. D. Birla, the Chairman, and other members of the Board of the Krishnarpan Trust who have so liberally financed the preparation of this series.
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are indebted to the following institutions and individuals for permission to reproduce illustrations noted against each. While expressing our sincere thanks for such courtesies, we should add that reproduction in each case is prohibited without the permission of the authority concerned, the copyright being reserved.

2. Archaeological Department of Kashmir, Srinagar: No. 123.
8. Lucknow Museum: No. 129.
13. Patna Museum: No. 94.
14. Rajputana Museum, Ajmer: No. 120.
20. Mr. C. W. E. Cotton, London: No. 139.
21. Mr. S. Roerich, Kalimpong: No. 140.
22. Prof. S. K. Saraswati, Calcutta: Nos. 139, 142.

Our grateful thanks are also due to the following institutions and individuals for helping the publication by supplying the photographs for the illustrations as under:


We are further indebted to Sri A. Ghosh, Director General of Archaeology in India, New Delhi, for helping the publication by lending the block for No. 90.

xxx
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foreword by Dr. K. M. Munshi</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgments</td>
<td>xxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Maps</td>
<td>xlii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface by the General Editor</td>
<td>xlii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Illustrations</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>iv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER I

**GHAZNAVID INVASION**

By D. C. Ganguly, M.A., Ph.D. (London)

Secretary and Curator, Victoria Memorial Hall, Calcutta: formerly Reader in History, Dacca University

1. The Rise of the Ghaznavids                  1
2. Sabuktigin                                    2
3. Sultan Mahmud                                  5

## CHAPTER II

**NORTHERN INDIA DURING THE ELEVENTH AND TWELFTH CENTURIES**

By D. C. Ganguly

I. The Palas
   1. Mahipala                                      24
   2. Successors of Mahipala                        27
   3. Ramapala                                      29
   4. Successors of Ramapala                        31

II. Bengal after the Palas
    1. The Yadavas of Vaṅga                           33
    2. The Senas of Bengal                           35
    3. The Royal Family of Patṭikera                  41
    4. The Deva Dynasty of Samatata and Vaṅga         42

III. Assam                                         42

IV. Nepāl                                          45

V. Bhār
    1. The Karnātaka Dynasty of Mithilā               47
    2. The Guptas of Jayapura                         49
    3. The Senas of Pithi                             49
    4. Khayaravāla Dynasty of Jāpila                  49

VI. Kanauj                                        50
    1. The Rāṣṭrakūṭas                                50
    2. The Gāḥaadavaḷas                                50

VII. The Yaduvaṁśī Kings of Bayāna-Śrīpatha        55

VIII. The Kachchhapaghatas                         56

IX. The Chandellas                                 58

X. The Kalachuris                                  61
    1. The Kalachuris of Tripurī                      61
    2. The Kalachuris of Ratanpur                    64

xxxi
XI. The Paramāras
   1. The Paramāras of Mālava .......... 66
   2. Minor Branches of the Paramāras in Rājputānā
      (i) Mt. Abu (ii) Vagadā .......... 72
      (iii) Jālor, (iv) Bhānmāl .......... 73
XII. The Chaulukyas of Gujārāt .......... 74
XIII. The Chāhāmānas
   1. The Chāhāmānas of Śākambhārī .......... 81
   2. The Chāhāmānas of Raṇajūtābhāpura .......... 83
   3. The Chāhāmānas of Nāḍol .......... 86
   4. The Chāhāmānas of Jābālīpurā (Jālor) .......... 87
   5. The Chāhāmānas of Sātyāpura (Sāchor) and Devaḍā .......... 88
XIV. The Gūhilas of Mēwār .......... 89
XV. The Punjāb under the Yāmini Dynasty .......... 92
XVI. Kashmir
   1. First Lohara Dynasty .......... 97
   2. Second Lohara Dynasty .......... 99
   3. Advent of the Muslim Rule .......... 101

CHAPTER III
THE AGE OF PRITHVIRĀJA III
By D. C. GAguHy
The Age of Prithvirāja III .......... 104

CHAPTER IV
THE TURKISH CONQUEST OF NORTHERN INDIA
By Paramatma Saran, M.A., Ph.D. (London),
Reader in History, University of Delhi
and
R. C. Majumdar, M.A., Ph.D., F.A.S., F.A.S.B.,
Professor of Ancient Indian History and Culture, Nagpur University
1. The Muslim States in the East .......... 116
2. The Ghūrids .......... 117
3. Qutb-ud-dīn Aibak’s Conquests .......... 118
4. Ikhtiyar-ud-dīn Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī .......... 122
5. End of the Ghūrid Dynasty .......... 124

CHAPTER V
THE MAMLŪK SULTANS OF DELHI
By A. B. M. Habibullah, M.A., Ph.D. (London),
Professor of Islamic History and Culture, University of Dacca (Pakistan)
I. Qutb-ud-dīn Aibak and Itutmish .......... 130
II. Weak Successors of Itutmish .......... 136
III. Internal Disorder .......... 140
CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IV. Mongol Raids</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V. Revival of Hindu Power</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Balban Restores the Authority of Sultanate</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. The End of Balban’s Dynasty</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHAPTER VI
LATER CHALUKYAS AND KALACHURIS OF KALYANYA
By D. C. Ganguly

1. Taila II (A.D. 973-997) 161
2. Satyashraya (A.D. 997-1008) 164
3. Vikramaditya V (c. A.D. 1008-1014) 166
4. Jayasimha II (A.D. 1015-1043) 166
5. Somsvara I (A.D. 1043-1068) 167
6. Somsvara II (A.D. 1068-1076) 173
7. Vikramaditya VI (A.D. 1076-1126) 174
8. Somsvara III (A.D. 1126-1138) 177
9. Jagadekamalla (A.D. 1138-1151) and Taila III (A.D. 1151-1156) 178
10. The Kalachuri Usurpation (A.D. 1156-1181) 179
11. Somsvara IV (A.D. 1181-c.1189), the last Chalukya ruler 182

APPENDIX
THE SILAHARAS
By R. C. Majumdar

The Silaharas 184

CHAPTER VII
THE YADAVAS OF DEVAGIRI
By D. C. Ganguly

1. Bhillama V 185
2. Jaitugi 187
3. Sindhuna 188
4. Krishna 192
5. Mahadeva 193
6. Ramachandra 194
7. Satakradeva and Harapalaideva 196

CHAPTER VIII
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN
I-III By D. C. Ganguly
IV-VIII By D. C. Sircar, M.A., Ph.D., Government Epigraphist for India, Ootacamund

I. The Kataktyas 198
II. The Eastern Chalukyas 203
III. The Eastern Gangas 205
## THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IV. The Somavamsis</th>
<th>.....</th>
<th>.....</th>
<th>209</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V. The Nagas or Chhindakas</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. The Cholas or Telugu Cholas</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. The Rashtrakutas</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. The Tailapavamśis</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>.....</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CHAPTER IX

**THE HOYSALAS**

By the late Dewan Bahadur S. Krishnaswami Aiyangar, M.A., Ph. D.,

Retired Professor of Indian History and Archaeology, University of Madras

and

R. C. Majumdar

1. Origin of the Hoysalas ..... 226
2. Early Kings ..... 227
3. Ballala II, the first independent king ..... 230
4. Narasimha II and the Hoysala Empire ..... 231
5. Fall of the Hoysalas ..... 232

### CHAPTER X

**THE CHOLAS**

By R. SathianaThaier, M.A., L.T.,

Professor of History and Politics, Annamalai University

I. Political History

1. Rajaraja the Great (A.D. 985-1014) ..... 234
2. Rajendra I, Gangakooda Chola (A.D. 1012-1044) ..... 236
3. Rajadhiraja I (A.D. 1018-1052) and Rajendra II (A.D. 1052-1064) ..... 240
4. Virarajendra I (A.D. 1063-1070) and Adhirajendra (A.D. 1068-70) ..... 241
5. Kulottunga I (A.D. 1070-1120) ..... 242
6. Vikrama Chola (A.D. 1118-1135) and Kulottunga II (A.D. 1133-1150) ..... 245
7. Rajaraja II (A.D. 1146-1173) and Rajadhiraja II (A.D. 1163-1179) ..... 245
8. Kulottunga III (A.D. 1178-1216) ..... 246
9. Rajaraja III (A.D. 1216-1246) and Rajendra III (A.D. 1246-79) ..... 247
10. Kop-Purunjōga ..... 248

II. Political Organisation

1. Central Government ..... 249
2. Local Self-Government: the Mahāsabhā and the Vāryam ..... 252
3. Functions of the Mahāsabhā: Fiscal, Judicial and Ministrant ..... 253
xxxiv
CONTENTS

CHAPTER XI
THE LATER PÂNDYAS
By R. SATHIANATHA IER
1. Interval between the First and the Second Empire ... 256
2. Mañavarman Sundara Pândya ... 258
3. Jâjâvarman Sundara Pândya I ... 257
4. Mañavarman Kulasekhara Pândya ... 259

CHAPTER XII
CEYLON
By D. C. SKRAC, M.A., Ph.D.
Ceylon ... 261

CHAPTER XIII
POLITICAL THEORY AND ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANISATION
By U. N. GHOSHAL, M.A., Ph.D.,
Formerly Professor of History, Presidency College, Calcutta
I. Political Theory ... 269
II. Administrative Organisation—North India ... 274
1. The Kalachuris ... 274
2. The Chandellas ... 275
3. The Paramâras ... 275
4. The Gâhâdavâlas ... 276
5. The Senas ... 276
6. The Châhamânas ... 277
III. Administrative Organisation—South India ... 278
1. The Châlukyas ... 278
2. The Cholas ... 281
3. The Yadavas ... 282
4. The Hoysalas ... 283
5. The Pândyâs ... 294

CHAPTER XIV
LAW AND LEGAL INSTITUTIONS
By U. N. GHOSHAL
I. North India ... 287
II. South India ... 290
xxxv
CHAPTER XV
LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

A. Sanskrit

By M. A. MEHENDALE, M.A., Ph.D.,
Reader in Sanskrit, Deccan College Post-graduate
and Research Institute, Poona

and

A. D. PUSALKER, M.A., LL.B., Ph.D.,
Assistant Director and Head of the Department of
Ancient Indian Culture, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan

1. Introduction . . . . . 297
2. Belles-Lettres . . . . . 298
   I. Kavya . . . . . 298
      (A) Mahākāvyas . . . . . 298
      (B) Shorter Poems . . . . . 302
      (C) Historical Poems . . . . . 306
   II. Drama . . . . . 309
      (A) Legendary Plays . . . . . 309
      (B) Court Comedies . . . . . 310
      (C) Erotic and Farceical Plays . . . . . 311
      (D) Prakārānas and Semi-historical Plays . . . . . 311
      (E) Allegorical Drama . . . . . 312
      (F) Irregular Drama . . . . . 312
   III. Prose Romances and Champūs . . . . . 312
   IV. Story Literature . . . . . 313
      (A) The Bhāyahkathā and its Later Versions. . . . . 313
      (B) Romantic Tales . . . . . 314
      (C) Didactic Tales . . . . . 315
      (D) Fables . . . . . 316
   3. Scientific Literature . . . . . 317
      I. Lexicography . . . . . 317
      II. Grammar . . . . . 319
      III. Poetics and Dramaturgy . . . . . 321
         (1) Poetics . . . . . 321
         (2) Dramaturgy . . . . . 325
      IV. Metrics (By H. D. Velankar, M.A., Jt. Director,
           Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, Bombay) . . . . . 325
      V. Politics and Practical Life . . . . . 327
      VI. Medicine . . . . . 328
      VII. Mathematics and Astronomy . . . . . 328
      VIII. Music . . . . . 329
      IX. Ancillary Sciences . . . . . 329
   4. Religious and Philosophical Literature . . . . . 330
      I. Purāṇas . . . . . 330
      II. Dharmaśāstra: Commentaries, Nibandhas and
          Ritual Literature . . . . . 330
      III. Philosophy . . . . . 336
   5. General Review . . . . . 337

XXVII
## CONTENTS

### B. Sanskritic

#### I. PĀLI

By M. A. Mehendale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Language</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Non-canonical Literature</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### II. THE JAIN MAHARASHTRI AND OTHER PRAKRITS

By M. A. Mehendale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Narrative</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Stotras and Didactic Works</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Grammars</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Language</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### III. APABHRAṃSA

By M. A. Mehendale

| 1. Literature                  | Page |
| 2. Language                    | 348  |

#### IV. MARATHI

By R. G. Harshe, B.A. (Thak), D.Litt. (Paris),
Formerly Registrar, Deccan College
Post-graduate and Research Institute, Poona
Marathi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### V. BENGALI

By S. K. Chatterjee, M.A. (Cal.), D.Litt. (London),
President, Legislative Council, West Bengal; Emeritus Professor of Comparative Philology, University of Calcutta

| 1. Language                      | Page |
| 2. Literature                   | 357  |

#### C. Dravidian

By K. R. Srinivasa Iyengar, M.A., D.Litt.,
Professor and Head of the Department of English, Andhra University

#### I. TAMIL

| 1. Poetry                      | Page |
| 2. Saiva Siddhānta Literature  | 361  |

#### II. KANNADA

| 1. Viraśaiva Literature        | Page |
| 2. Jain Writers                | 367  |

#### III. TELUGU

| 1. The Origin                  | Page |
| 2. Deśi and Mārgi              | 372  |
| 3. Telugu Mahābhāratah         | 373  |
| 4. The Eleventh and Twelfth Centuries | 374  |
| 5. The Thirteenth Century      | 377  |
## THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

### CHAPTER XVIII
**EDUCATION**
By U. N. GHOSHAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Primary and Higher Education</td>
<td>508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Private and Public Endowments for Promotion of Learning</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CHAPTER XIX
**ECONOMIC CONDITION**
By U. N. GHOSHAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. The Village and the City</td>
<td>515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Agriculture, Industry and Trade</td>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. The Organisation of Industry and Trade</td>
<td>524</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CHAPTER XX
**ART**

#### I. ARCHITECTURE
By S. K. SARASWATI, M.A.,
*Reader in Ancient Indian History and Culture, University of Calcutta*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Formation of the Traditional Temple Styles</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Nāgara style</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Orissa</td>
<td>534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Central India</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Rājputāna</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Gujarāt and Kathāwār</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Deccan</td>
<td>583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Sindhu-Gaṅgā Valleys</td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Drāvīḍa Style</td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Chālukya Style</td>
<td>609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Exotic Types</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### II. SCULPTURE
By Nihār Ranjan Rañ, M.A., D. LETT. & PHIL. (LEYDEN),
*Bagiswari Professor of Indian Art and Culture, University of Calcutta*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. General Review</td>
<td>640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Growth of Regional Schools</td>
<td>640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Mediaeval Trend</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Cult-images and Canonisation</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Non-iconic Figure Sculptures</td>
<td>644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Eastern India</td>
<td>646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Bihār and Bengal</td>
<td>646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Orissa</td>
<td>650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Gaṅgā-Yamunā Valley</td>
<td>655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Central India</td>
<td>656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Vindhya and Madhya Pradesh</td>
<td>659</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6. Rājputāna</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Gujarāt</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Punjab Hill States</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Kāshmir, Nēpāl and Tibet</td>
<td>665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Deccan</td>
<td>668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. South India</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. General Conclusions</td>
<td>674</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. PAINTING
By Nihar Ranjan Ray

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The “Mediaeval” Factor</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Ellora (c. A.D. 750-800)</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. South India (c. A.D. 1100-1300)</td>
<td>684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Western India (c. A.D. 1100-1300)</td>
<td>687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Eastern India (Bengal, Bihār), Nēpāl and Tibet</td>
<td>690</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Text Figures... 700

### CHAPTER XXI
COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION
By R. C. Majumdar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 'Decline and Fall of the Šañjendra Empire</td>
<td>730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Decline and Fall of the Kambuja Empire</td>
<td>736</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Fall of Champā</td>
<td>742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Java</td>
<td>749</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Bali</td>
<td>753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Burma</td>
<td>755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Siam</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Culture and Civilisation</td>
<td>762</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) Religion</td>
<td>762</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Social and Economic Condition</td>
<td>765</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Literature</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Art</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Kambuja</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Other Colonies</td>
<td>772</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List of Bibliographies... 775
General Bibliography... 776
Genealogy... 845
Chronology... 868
Index... 880
Maps and Plates... at end
LIST OF MAPS

1. India in A.D. 1236.
2. South India, A.D. 1000-1300.
PREFACE

By Dr. R. C. Majumdar
General Editor

This volume covers the period, roughly speaking, from A.D. 1000 to 1300. But there has been a slight departure from these limiting dates both at the beginning as well as at the end. In the First Chapter the rise of the Ghaznavids has been traced from the very beginning in the latter half of the tenth century A.D. In Chapter V the history of the Delhi Sultanate is brought to a close with the accession of Sultan Jalāl-ud-din Firuz Shah in A.D. 1290. In both the cases the departure has been made with a view to giving a complete account of the Ghaznavids in this volume and of the Khaljīs in the next. For a similar reason the history of some Hindu ruling dynasties has been brought down to the fourteenth century A.D. when they were incorporated in the Delhi Sultanate. The most notable instances are the Yādavas of Devagiri, the Kākatiyas of Warangal, and the Hoysalas and the Pāṇḍyas of South India. But only a very brief outline is given in this volume of their history after A.D. 1300. More detailed account will be given in the next volume in connection with their Muslim conquerors. In some cases all controversial issues have been omitted in this volume and reserved for the next. For instance, the current and generally accepted views of the date of the first invasion of Devagiri by ‘Alā-ud-din Khalji and the name of the crown-prince who opposed him have been stated, but different views on both these points will be discussed fully with reference to authorities in the next volume.

This volume deals with the transition period that marks the end of independent Hindu rule and the beginning of the dominance of Turkish tribes over a large part, if not the whole, of India. Such dominance of foreign peoples, even from the same region in Central Asia, was no new thing in Indian history. Successive waves of Turkish hordes submerged a great portion of Northern India during the period that intervened between the fall of the Maurya and the rise of the Gupta Empire. And all these, like the later Turkish invaders, came to stay in this country. Nevertheless, they did not mark any turning-point in the history of India, nor any sudden break in the continuity of her history and culture. For they slowly and silently merged themselves into the population of the country, and became one with them in all respects without leaving any trace of their separate entity. This was, however, not the case with the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

later invaders. They not only kept severely aloof, and formed a
distinct unit, politically, socially and culturally, but drew into its
vortex a considerable number of indigenous people to swell their
ranks. The result was the emergence of a new element of consi­
derable power and magnitude, having hardly anything in common
with the old, excepting the land which they adopted as their own.

This was solely due to the religious faith, Islam, professed by
these peoples, which fundamentally differed from the religion they
found in India. Al-Birûnî, who flourished at the very beginning of
the period under review, tersely, but very correctly, observed: "The
Hindus entirely differ from us in every respect. We believe in noth­
ing in which they believe, and vice-versa." This radical difference
in religion and social usages and customs operated as an almost in­
surmountable barrier between the two which even nine hundred
years' residence as close neighbours failed to break down. Hence­
forth this difference constitutes the underlying thread, which wove
the Indian history into an altogether new pattern.

The intrusion of Islam and its existence as a separate unit in
India introduced, for the first time, the generic name Hindu. The
alien Muslim conquerors used this name, along with Kèfrî (infidels),
to denote the conquered peoples of India as a separate unit distinct
from them. It bore the same connotation as the term 'non-Muham­
madan' used in the Indian constitution during the last days of Bri­
tish rule. The use of the term Hindu in a narrower sense, to denote
the followers of orthodox Brahmanical faith, belongs to a later date.

The efforts of the Muslim Turks to obtain a permanent footing
in India and the resistance which the Hindus offered, or failed to
offer, to avoid this great catastrophe, forms the principal subject­
matter of this volume in so far at least as Northern India is con­
cerned.

The first Muslim invasion, ending in the conquest of Sindh, was
merely a passing phase, which hardly affected the history of India.
The triumphant progress, which marked the career of Islam in other
regions of the world, was checked by the powerful rulers of India
at this frontier state for more than four hundred years, and even
then the Arab rule in Sindh was more nominal than real. But the
advance of the Turks from Ghazni, with which this volume opens,
led to a very different result. They had their base much nearer to
India and were led by two distinguished generals of considerably
more than average military skill and ability. On the other hand,
India lacked any powerfully organised empire like that of the Pra­
thâras and the Râshtrakûtas. The Shâhi rulers, who guarded the
frontier of India, offered heroic resistance to the foreign invaders,
and were loyally supported by the Indians from the interior. But nothing availed against the repeated and stubborn onslaughts of Sabuktigin and Mahmūd. The resistance collapsed, and then the horrors of barbarian invasions, fired with the fanatic zeal for demolishing idols and temples, born of the crusading spirit of Islam, were let loose on the fair plains and cities of Hindustān. It is not possible to recount fully the sad tales of those dark and evil days, as we have no record from the side of the Indians; but the picture depicted by the victors themselves enables us to get a faint echo of the great tragedy which befell India during the first quarter of the eleventh century A.D. It was a tragedy big with future consequences. Not only was India drained of enormous wealth and manpower, but, what was far worse, the Muslims obtained a permanent footing in the Punjab which commanded the highway to her interior.

But a still more sublime tragedy was the comparative indifference of the Indian chiefs to this growing menace and the fancied security in which they chose to repose during the period intervening between the death of Mahmūd and the next invasion by the Ghūrīs. Some Indian kings defeated the Muslims, and checked their further aggressive campaigns. One of them even claims to have exterminated the Mlechchhas (Muslims) so that Aryāvarta again became true to its name, i.e. abode of the Aryas. But this rare evidence of a sense of national consciousness makes it all the more a matter of surprise, that instead of uttering such vain boast the Indian chiefs should not have taken concerted action in removing the thorn in their flesh by driving the Turkish conquerors out of India. Innumerable opportunities offered themselves to render this task a comparatively easy one. The kingdom of Ghazni passed through critical days and was overtaken by many dangers, both internal and external, till the nemesis overtook it, and its beautiful capital city, built on the ruins and plunder of India, perished in flames. But the powerful Indian chiefs, far from taking advantage of any such opportunity during the long period of a century and a half, were more intent upon aggrandising themselves at the cost of their neighbours than turning their whole-hearted attention to the great national task of freeing the Punjāb from the yoke of the foreigners of an alien faith.

An attempt has been made to delineate the essential features of the political history of India during this eventful period on the basis of reliable data. But our sources of information are scanty, and the picture is necessarily incomplete. Enough remains, however, to make this history a painful reading to every Hindu. Instances are not wanting that when a Hindu state was invaded by
The struggle for empire

Muslims, a neighbouring Hindu ruler seized the opportunity to invade it from the rear. It may appear ungracious to emphasise this humiliating and degrading aspect of Hindu character, but no nation can hope to survive if it seeks to avoid truth or fears to face it, and fails to learn the lessons of history. A genuine endeavour has been made to tell the unvarnished truth of the past, and to point to the morals that history teaches us, though it may appear unpalatable to some. The haze of glory in which Prithviraja lives in Indian memory is considerably dimmed, if one realizes the effect of his failure to take full advantage of his great victory at Tarain for removing the imminent danger which involved him and his country in a common ruin within a year. But it is the noble, though somewhat painful, task of history to demolish the false in order to enthrone the true.

On account of the vast size of India, its history cannot always be brought within one general category. The same period that saw the debacle of North India before the hammering blows of the Ghaznavids, witnessed the rise of a great power in full glory in the South. The Cholas established a vast empire that stretched along the eastern coast of India from the banks of the Ganga to Cape Comorin, and even beyond to Ceylon. But they did more than this. They fitted out a naval expedition that crossed the Bay of Bengal and laid low the mighty empire of the Sailendras in Malay Peninsula and Indonesia. Such an overseas campaign by an Indian ruler against a powerful foe is an achievement of outstanding importance, with immense possibilities for the future, but unfortunately it remains a unique event, almost a passing episode in the history of India, that has left no trail behind. It adds one more to the number of puzzles or insoluble riddles of Indian history.

It appears to us as passing strange that India, south of the Vindhyas, seems to have lived in a world apart from the rest of the country. Undisturbed by the ominous tidings of Muslim aggression, the ruling powers in the Deccan and South India were as busy as before with their petty domestic quarrels and dissensions, and military campaigns of aggrandisement against one another. During the hundred years that kept the Muslims fully engaged in consolidating their power in the North, the South went on in fancied security, as if nothing had occurred to disturb its equanimity or threaten the continuity of its history and culture. So little was the Muslim danger thought of even in the region immediately to the south of the Vindhyas that the powerful Yadava rulers of the Deccan attacked from the south the Chaulukyas of Gujarat at the very moment when they were engaged in a life and death struggle with the Muslim invaders from the North. Such incidents give a rude shock to the idea of fundamental unity of India.

xlvi
But the fact has to be clearly recognised that India south of the Vindhyas was under Hindu rule during the thirteenth century. Even in North India, during the same century, there were powerful kingdoms, not yet subjected to Muslim rule or still fighting for their independence. As has been clearly shown in Chapter V, even in that part of India which acknowledged the Muslim rule there was continual defiance and heroic resistance by large or small bands of Hindus in many quarters, so that successive Muslim rulers had to send well-equipped military expeditions, again and again, against the self-same region, though the patriotic Muslim chroniclers construed every one of them as a decisive victory against the infidels. As a matter of fact, the Muslim authority in Northern India, almost throughout the thirteenth century, was tantamount to a military occupation of a large number of important centres without any effective occupation, far less a systematic administration, of the country at large.

In view of all this, we feel justified in including the history of the Mamluk or Slave Dynasty in this volume, rather than relegating it, in conformity with the normal convention of the historians of India, to the next volume which deals with the Muslim period of Indian history. Even the long-standing usage and practice can hardly make the epithet Muslim appropriate to a period of Indian history in which the Muslims had no hold over more than half of India, and exercised a very limited political authority over only a part, however large, of the rest of the country.

The period covered by this volume is marked by the unsuccessful efforts of the early Turkish invaders in North India, of the Chalukyas in the Deccan, and of the Cholas in South India, as well as of individual rulers both in the north and in the south, to found an empire in India. Hence the title 'Struggle for Empire' has been adopted for this volume. It closes with the accession of the Khaljis to power. Though the new dynasty was a short-lived one, it was destined to establish the first all-India Muslim empire on the ruins of the Hindu kingdoms, and usher in a new era in Indian history in which the Muslims played the dominant role for more than four hundred years. That era had its own glory and triumph, in full measure, as will be described in the next two volumes.

The three centuries dealt with in this volume witnessed not only the gradual decay of the political authority of the Hindus, but also a definite set-back in the progress of their culture. Except in the domain of art, particularly the temple architecture, we find a steady process of decline and decadence, which had already set in in the preceding period, in almost all spheres of cultural activity.
The process was perhaps accelerated by the intrusion of Islam as a new element. The effect of the impact of aggressive Islam on Hindu religion and society cannot be clearly perceived during the period under review; at least our sources of information do not indicate that any great change took place in Hindu society and religion. Nevertheless, the destruction of temples and other seats of culture, and the proselytising activities of the Muslims, of which we have clear evidence, must have had their repercussion on the minds of the Hindus, and henceforth their main energy was directed to conserve rather than to create. But, on the whole, the picture of Hindu civilization given in this volume represents its final phase before it came into close contact with, or was affected by, Islam.

The progress of temple architecture is an index of the effect of aggressive Islam on Indian culture. The period under review witnessed the most brilliant epoch in the development of this art. But, as will be shown in Chapter XX, so far as extant monuments indicate, this art flourished mostly in those regions which were at a safe distance from centres of Muslim power, viz., in India south of the Vindhyas, and in Orissa and territories ruled over by the Chandellas and Chaulukyas who resisted the Muslim invasion till the end of the period under review. It is not merely an accident that the rich valleys of the Sindhu, the Ganga and the Yamuna, dominated by the Muslims, have nothing to show that could bear any comparison with the temples built in the regions just mentioned. The temples that existed there were ruthlessly destroyed, and the Hindus evidently did not feel inclined to build new temples which they were unable to protect. The obvious inference, which holds equally true for succeeding centuries, may be stated in the form of a general statement that the progress of temple architecture was in inverse ratio to the establishment of effective Muslim authority in any particular region in India.

Although the period dealt with in this volume is, generally speaking, one of decline and decadence, still it serves a very useful purpose in the study of Indian history. It holds out before us a complete picture of Indian culture and civilization just before it came into contact with Islam. If we compare it with the culture of the Hindus before the impact of Western influence gave it a new character, we can form a reasonable idea of the extent to which it has been influenced by Islam. Such a comparison alone would enable us to answer the question whether there is any such thing in present-day India which we may regard as 'Hindu' culture, or the present culture should more properly be called an 'Indian' culture which is neither Hindu nor Muslim, but a composite of both.
The Muslims, generally, are under no illusion in this respect, and they speak of Islamic culture in India as a distinct entity, separate from Hindu culture. It is for the Hindus to judge, in a dispassionate manner, free from prejudice or conventions engendered by recent politics, how far the main aspects of Hindu culture, viz. religion and philosophy, social conditions, art, language and literature, law and legal institutions etc., as described in this volume, were left intact at the end of the Muslim rule. Of course, additions or alterations in non-essential features, and among restricted groups of peoples or in limited localities, should be regarded as negligible factors when we think broadly of Hindu culture in India as a whole. The result of such a comparison is of great value in determining whether the Hindu culture, such as it was towards the end of the thirteenth century A.D., continued substantially in the same form, with normal evolutions, till it came under the influence of Western civilization, or lost itself by the impact of Islam into an all-embracing Indian culture. From this point of view the present volume is bound to be of absorbing interest to every student of Indian history.

For reasons, already explained in the Preface of Volume IV (p. xxxvii), the Chapter on Art in this volume contains the survey of the whole period from A.D. 750 to 1300. As this period is the most important so far as the temple architecture is concerned, the subject has been treated at some length with the result that this volume has been much bigger in size than any of the preceding ones. The Muslim architecture of the thirteenth century A.D. has not been included in this chapter as it will be more convenient to treat the Muslim art from the very beginning to the end of the Sultanate in the next volume.

The policy and the principles of editing referred to in the preceding volumes remain unchanged. I am grateful to the contributors for their sincere co-operation. I have to record, with deep regret, that one of our most valued contributors, Prof. H. D. Bhattacharyya, passed away while this volume was in the press. His profound knowledge of Indian philosophy and religion is evident in the sections which he has contributed to the different volumes of this history. His death has left a void in Indian scholarship which will be difficult to fill up. Death has also snatched away another eminent scholar, Dr. I. J. S. Taraporewala. He contributed the section on the Parsis in the preceding volume and promised to continue their history in the subsequent volumes. He was a great scholar in Comparative Philology and his death is a distinct loss to Indian scholarship. I take this opportunity to place on record my deep sorrow
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

at the death of these two scholars and my appreciation of the great services rendered by them to the cause of Indian history.

My esteemed colleague Dr. A. D. Pusalker, who has been working as Assistant Editor since the conception of the plan of this History, has intimated his desire to retire after the publication of this volume. I take this opportunity of placing on record my deep obligations to him for the valuable assistance which he has rendered to me in preparing the first five volumes of this series. His industry, scholarship, honesty, and amiable temper have not only been of inestimable value but rendered our close association in this work a source of great pleasure to me. On behalf of the Bharatiya Vidyā Bhavan and on my own behalf I offer my most cordial thanks to him, and have no hesitation in saying that whatever success The History and Culture of the Indian People has attained is, to a large extent, due to his valued co-operation.

In conclusion I beg to thank the editors of the various journals for their appreciative reviews of the preceding volumes. I also express my gratitude to those who have helped us by lending photos and blocks for illustration. Reference has been made in details separately under 'acknowledgments'.
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

(1) TEXT FIGURES (Pages 700-729)

12. Dilwara, Vimala's temple: Plan.
17. Sunak, Nilkantha Mahadeva temple: Elevation.
27. Balseme, Temple No. 2: Elevation.
33. Karishnagiri, Kailasanatha temple: Section.
38. Tanjore, Brihadeeswara temple: Plan.
41. Kukumur, Kailasavaram temple: Elevation.
42. Lakkundi, Jain temple: Plan.
43. Chaulasvaram, Mekhesisvara temple: Plan.
44. Hayari, Siddheswara temple: Elevation.
45. Lakkundi, Kailasvaram temple: Plan.
46. Itagi, Madhavendra temple: Plan.
47. Kuruvatti, Mallikarjuna temple: Plan.
52. Belur, Chenna Kesava temple: Plan.
55. Murtinad, Sun temple: Section.
56. Avantipura, Avantissvara temple: Elevation.
57. Paharpur, Great temple: Plan.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(2) PLATES (At the end)

I. Architecture

Plate Fig. Description


2. Bhuvanesvara, Old Temple by Vindusvaraya.


20. Gwalior, Tel-l-i-mandir.


22. Amarkantak, Paalilevara Temple.

23. Khajuraho, Vaman Temple.

24. Khajuraho, Adinath Temple.


26. Khajuraho, Ramachandra or Chaturbhuj Temple.


29. Konark, Parsvanath Temple.


32. Chandrahe, Circular Temple.

33. Khajuraho, Ghati Temple.

34. Osia, Temple No. 1.

35. Osia, Temple No. 7.


38. Dilwara, Shri Vimala Temple: Side Chapel.


40. Pindara, Temple of Gop type.

41. Konark, Old Temple.

42. Konark, Temple of Gop type.

43. Harshadwati, Temple of Gop type.

44. Bhedi, Sikhsara Temple.

45. Gwalior, Tel-i-mandir.

46. Bhedi, Sihkara Temple.

47. Bhedi, Sihkara Temple.


49. Gwalior, Old Temple.

50. Gwalior, Old Temple.

51. Gwalior, Old Temple.

52. Gwalior, Old Temple.
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

XXXII. 64. Sionar, Gopinathvara Temple: General View.
   65. Sarnal, Galleivara Temple.
   66. Ratnagiri, Amrutesvara Temple.
XXXIII. 67. Udayasvara, Nilakanthesvara Temple.
   68. Udayasvara, Nilakanthesvara Temple: Detail of sikha.
XXXIV. 69. Bajuras (Kula), Mahadeva Temple.
   70. Barakar, Temple No. IV.
XXXV. 71. Sat Deuliya, Siva Temple.
   72. Bahulakar, Sudhiesvara Temple.
   73. Sunderpuram, Satpuram Temple.
XXXVI. 74. Moncollaprapam, Shore Temple.
   75. Kāśichippuram, Kaśinatha Temple.
XXXVII. 76. Parshaktakal, Mahakārūnya Temple.
   77. Ellora, Kailās Temple: Elephants.
XXXVIII. 78. Ellora, Kailās Temple: General View.
XXXIX. 80. Tanjore, Brihādīśvara Temple.
   81. Itagi, Mahadeva Temple: General View.
   82. Itagi, Mahadeva Temple: Detail.
   83. Lakhumā, Kāśīvesvara Temple: Door Jamb.
XL. 84. Gadag, Soneśvara Temple.
   85. Đamboi, Dōda Basappa Temple.
   88. Sunnyāsurpur, Kesava Temple.
   89. Halebid, Hoysalesvara Temple.
XLIV. 90. Pāharpur, Great Temple.
   91. Prambanār (Java), Chandī Loro Jangrag.

II. SCULPTURE

XLV. 92. Ujoni, Baidha (Dacca Museum) East Pakistan.
   93. Nilambik, Avalokitesvara.
XLVI. 95. Kātivatnat, Kārīkārī (Kālī Mahādeva Temple, Bengal).
   97. Sankargarh, Dungāl Siva (Dacca Museum, East Pakistan).
   98. Chaṭṭā, Śūryā (Rajālī, Museum, East Pakistan).
   100. Jey-counter, Devī (British Museum, London).
   111. Khajurāho, Lady writing letter (Indian Museum, Calcutta).
LII. 112. Harshagiri, Dancers and Musicians (Shikhar Museum, Rajasthan).
   113. Central India, A Chedi head.
   118. Mahāvīrā, Siddhāndakā Lokesvara (Lakshen Museum).
LIV. 120. Dīlīwālī, Dīlīwālī Temple: Part of a ceiling.
   123. Terracotta sculpture.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

LVII. 127. South India, Siva Natarija (Museum van Asiatische Kunst, Amsterdam).
129. South India, Siva Natarija.

132. South India, Sundaramurtisvarna (Colombo Museum).
133. South India, Siva Vinâdhara (Musée Guimet, Paris).

III. Painting


141. Nativity of Buddha: Painting in above MS.
ABBREVIATIONS

AAWI. Architectural Antiquities of Western India, by Henry Cousens. London, 1926.
Abh. Abhādāhā-chintānāni of Hemachandra.
ABIA. Annual Bibliography of Indian Archaeology, Leyden.
ABORI. Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona.
AG. Archaeology of Gujarat (including Kathiawar), by H. D. Sankalia. Bombay, 1941.
AIIOC. (also PAIOC). All-India Oriental Conference, Proceedings and Transactions of.
Apar. Aparārka.
ARSIE. Annual Report on South Indian Epigraphy.
ASC. Archaeological Survey of India, Reports by Sir Alexander Cunningham.
ASI. Archaeological Survey of India (Annual Report).
ASS. Ānandārāma Sanskrit Series, Poona.
ASWI. Archaeological Survey of Western India.
AUS. Allahabad University Studies.
BDCRI. Bulletin of the Deccan College Postgraduate and Research Institute, Poona.
BG. Bombay Gazetteer.
Bh. List. A list of Inscriptions of Northern India, by D. R. Bhandarkar (Appendix to EI, XIX-XXIII).
BI. Bibliotheca Indica, Calcutta.
BISM Quarterly. Bharat Itihas Samshodhak Mandal Quarterly, Poona.
B.S. Bengali Sanskrit.
BSS. Bombay Sanskrit (and Prakrit) Series, Bombay (and Poona).
BV. Bhāratīya Vidyā, Bombay.
# THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

**CHI.**

**Ch. SS.**
*Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series*, Banaras.

**CII.**
*Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum*.

**COS.**

**CP.**
*Copper Plate*.

**Cult. Her.**
*Cultural Heritage of India*. Published by Ramakrishna Mission Institute of Culture, Calcutta.

**CW.**
*Collected Works of R. G. Bhandarkar*, Published by Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona.

**DHNI.**

**DLJ Series.**
*Seth Devchand Lalbhai Jaina Pustakodhara Series*, Bombay.

**DUS.**
*Dacca University Studies*.

**EC.**
*Epigraphia Carnatica*.

**EHD.**

**EHI.**

**EI.**
*Epigraphia Indica*.

**EIM.**
*Epigraphia Indo-Moslemica*.

**EISMS.**
*Eastern Indian School of Mediaeval Sculpture*, by R. D. Banerji. Delhi, 1933.

**EZ.**
*Epigraphia Zilanica*.

**FAS.**

**GIL.**

**GOS.**
*Gaekwad's Oriental Series*, Baroda.

**GSPP.**
*Gujarati Sahitya Parishad Patrika*, Bombay.

**H1AL.**

**HAS.**
*Hyderabad Archaeological Series*.

**HBR.**

**HCISL.**

**HIEA.**

**HIED.**
*History of India as told by its own Historians*. Trans. by H. M. Elliot and J. Dowson.

**HIIA.**

**HIL.**

**HISL.**
ABBREVIATIONS

Hodivala

HOS.
Harvard Oriental Series.

HPL.

HSI.

HSL.
History of Sanskrit Literature.

HSP.
History of Sanskrit Poetics.

HTB.

IA.
Indian Antiquary, Bombay.

IB.

IC.
Indian Culture, Calcutta.

ICPB.
List of Inscriptions in the Central Provinces and Berar, by Hiralal. 2nd Ed. Nagpur, 1932.

IHQ.
Indian Historical Quarterly, Calcutta.

IMP.

IND.

ISGDP.
Iśānāśīvaguru-deva-paddhati of Iśānāśīvaguru-deva Māra.

IT.
Indian Thought, Benares.

JA.

JAHRS.
Journal of the Andhra Historical Research Society, Rajahmundry.

JAOS.

JAS.
Journal of the Asiatic Society, Calcutta.

JASB.
Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, Calcutta.

JASS.
Jain Atmananda Sabha Series, Bhammargar.

JBBRAS.

JBORS.

JBRS.

JBTIS.
Journal of the Buddhist Text Society.

JDL.
Journal of the Department of Letters, University of Calcutta.

JGIS.
Journal of the Greater India Society, Calcutta.

JGRS.

JIH.
Journal of Indian History.

JISOA.

JKHRS.
Journal of the Kalinga Historical Research Society, Balangir.

JOR.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

JPTS. Journal of the Pali Text Society.
JRASML. Journal of the Saraswati Mahal Library, Tanjore.
JUB. Journal of the University of Bombay, Bombay.
Kashi SS. Kashi Sanskrit Series, Banaras.
K.E. Kalachuri Era.
KL. List of Inscriptions of Southern India, by F. Kielhorn (Appendix to EI, VII-VIII).
KM. Kāryamālā, NSP, Bombay.
KSS. Kathāśārītāgāra of Somadeva, NSP, Bombay.
MAR. Annual Report of the Mysore Archaeological Department.
MASB. Memoirs of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, Calcutta.
MASI. Memoirs of the Archaeological Survey of India.
Mhvs. Mahāvaṇṇa.
M.S. Mahārāṣṭra Sārasvata (in Marāṭhī) by V. L. Bhave.
NGGW. Nachrichten Göttingischer Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften.
NIA. New Indian Antiquary, Bombay.
NIS. New Imperial Series.
NPP. Nāgarī Prachārini Patrikā (in Hindi), Banaras.
NS. New Series.
NSP. Nirāyā Sāgara Press, Bombay.
NUJ. Nagpur University Journal, Nagpur.
OHRJ. Orissa Historical Research Journal, Bhubaneswar.
OS. Old Series.
PAIOC. (also AIOC.) Proceedings and Transactions of the All-India Oriental Conference.
PHTC. Proceedings of the Indian History Congress.
PTS. Pali Text Society, London.
Pud. Ins. Inscriptions of the Pudukkottai State, 1929.
iviii
ABBREVIATIONS

PWSBTS.  Princess of Wales Saraswatî Bhavana Text Series, Banaras.
QJMS.  Quarterly Journal of the Mythic Society, Bangalore.
SBE.  Sacred Books of the East, Oxford.
SBH.  Sacred Books of the Hindus, Allahabad.
SI.  Stone Inscription.
SII.  South Indian Inscriptions.
SIS.  Sino-Indian Studies, Calcutta.
SJS.  Singhi Jain Series.
SP.  Sanskrit Poetics.
SR.  Silpa-ratna of Kumāra.
SS.  Sanskrit Series.
SSP.  Sāhitya Parishad, Calcutta.
TA.  Tabaqāt-i-Akbari of Nizām-ud-dīn Akhmad.
TN.  Tabaqāt-i-Nāsirī of Minhāj-ud-dīn bin Sirāj.
TSS.  Trivandrum Sanskrit Series.
Vaij.  Vaijayaanti of Yādavaprkāśa.
Vij.  Vījñāneśvara.
VJV.  Vīrīḍha-jñāna-vīśṭāra (in Marāṭhī), Bombay.
VRS.  Varendra Research Society.
V.S.  Vikrama Samvat.
WZKM.  Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes.
Yaj.  Yājñavalkya.
ZDMG.  Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft.
CHAPTER 1

GHAZNAVID INVASION

1. THE RISE OF THE GHAZNAVIDS

It has been shown in the preceding volume that the conquest of Sindh by the Arabs was merely a passing episode in the history of Islam. The Arabs established one or more principalities in this region at the beginning of the eighth century A.D. and maintained a precarious hold over them for nearly three hundred years. But Islam, which had conquered a large part of the world from the Pyrenees to the borders of China, had not extended much beyond the Sindhu, and had an uncertain footing even in the valley of that river. But what even the mighty 'Abbasid Caliphs failed to achieve was accomplished by petty Turkish dynasties that arose from the ruins of their empire. In order to understand this properly it is necessary to pass in rapid review the great political changes that took place in the eastern regions of the Caliphate since the beginning of the ninth century A.D.

The powerful 'Abbasid Caliphate, founded in A.D. 749, began to show signs of decline even before the end of the first quarter of the ninth century A.D. Tahir, the trusted general of al-Ma'mūn (A.D. 813-833), was rewarded in 820 with the governorship of Khurāsān, which comprised all the territories east of Baghdad. He, however, soon assumed independence for all practical purposes, and his successors extended their dominion to the frontiers of India.

In A.D. 872 the Tahirids were superseded by a new dynasty founded by Ya'qūb ibn-Layth al-Šaffār who started life as a copper-smith in Sijistān. His conduct as the head of a band of brigands attracted the attention of the local governor who placed him in command of his troops. Šaffār succeeded his patron as governor and soon ruled over almost the whole of Persia. He also conquered Kābul, Zābul and Sindh as already mentioned above.1

Towards the close of the ninth century A.D. the Sāmānids of Transoxiana rose into importance. They were descended from Sāmān, a Zoroastrian noble of Balkh, and in A.D. 903 seized Khurāsān from the Šaffārids. During the reign of Nasr II (A.D. 913-43) the Sāmānid empire embraced Sijistān, Karman, Jurjan, Tabaristān, Transoxiana, and Khurāsān. Though nominally vassals of the 'Abbasids, the Sāmānid rulers were virtually independent. The
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Sāmānids finally brought the whole of Transoxiana under Muslim rule, and their capital Bukhārā, together with the city of Samarkand, rivalled and sometimes almost eclipsed Baghdād, the renowned capital city of the Caliphs, as centres of learning and culture.

The mighty kingdom of the Sāmānids experienced the usual fate. In the last decade of the tenth century A.D. two Turkish families divided it between themselves. The Ilāk Khāns of Turkistān, who captured Bukhārā in 990 and nine years later gave the final blow to the Sāmānids, became masters of all their territories lying to the north of the Oxus. The portion of the Sāmānīd kingdom lying to the south of that river passed into the hands of the Yamnī dynasty, better known to the modern students of history as the Ghaznavīds. As it was the rulers of this dynasty that repeatedly invaded India and paved the way for the final Muslim conquest of the country, their history requires a fuller treatment.

2. SABUKTIGN

The Yamnī dynasty claimed descent from Yazdi-jur-d-i-Shahryār, the last of the Persian monarchs. During the Caliphate of ʿUsmān Yazdi-jur-d-i-Shahryār lost his life at the hands of his enemies in a water-mill in the vicinity of the town of Marv. The family of the deceased fled to Turkistān and settled in the district of Nakhistān. They intermarried with the people of that country, and after two or three generations the descendants passed as Turks. While residing there, Sabuktigin, the founder of the Yamnī dynasty in Ghazni, then only twelve years old, was taken prisoner by a neighbouring tribe. He was sold as a slave to a merchant named Nāsr, the Háji, who after three or more years' time brought him to Bukhārā. There he was purchased by Alptigin, the Lord Chamberlain of the Sāmānīd ruler of Khurāsān, who took a fancy to him. Sabuktigin accompanied his new master to Tukhāristān and Khurāsān of which places the latter was governor. Subsequently Alptigin quarrelled with the Sāmānīds and left Tukhāristān. He seized Zabulistān together with its capital Ghazni from the Amlāk in c. A.D. 963, and there established an independent kingdom. He raised Sabuktigin to the position of a general. According to an authority quoted by Firishta2 Sabuktigin was engaged in frequent wars with the Indians and defeated them during the fifteen years' rule of Alptigin. But as the latter did not rule for more than a year, the statement about frequent raids into India by Sabuktigin can only refer to the interval between the death of Alptigin and his own accession to the throne which really covers a period of 15 years. Dr. Nazim says that Alptigin conquered a part of the kingdom of Kābul,3 but quotes no
GHAZNAVID INVASION

authority. It may be presumed from subsequent events that the Shahi kingdom did not suffer any material loss before the reign of Sabuktigin.

Alptigin died in A.D. 963, and was succeeded by his son Is-hāq. After the death of Is-hāq, in A.D. 966, Balkātım, the com­mander of the Turkish troops, succeeded to the throne. Sabuktigin, who had married the daughter of Alptigin, served both Is-hāq and Balkātım. When the reign of Balkātım came to an end in A.D. 972, Pirāī, a slave of Alptigin, succeeded to the throne. Pirāī was a cruel king. So the people invited Abū ‘Ali Lawīk, son of Abū Bakr Lawīk, to invade Ghaznī. The Shahis of India, whose kingdom extended up to the Hindu Kush, and who looked with dis­avour upon the establishment of a powerful Muslim kingdom just on the border of their own, made a common cause with Abū ‘Ali Lawīk against Pirāī. The Shahī king, who in all probability was Jayapāla, sent his son with an army to assist his ally in the invasion of Ghaznī. When the allied forces reached near CharKh, a place on the east bank of the Lohgar river on one of the routes from Kabul to Ghaznī, they were suddenly attacked by Sabuktigin who killed a large number of them and took many prisoners to Ghaznī together with ten elephants. This victory greatly enhanced his prestige. Misdeeds of Pirāī brought about his downfall in A.D. 977, and Sabuktigin was raised to power. Sabuktigin’s accession received approval from the Samanid king Nūh II of Bukhāra. Sabuktigin obviously enjoyed an independent political status, though perhaps he nominal­ly acknowledged the supremacy of the Samanids. Shortly after his accession Sabuktigin added to his kingdom Bust, Dāwar, Qusdar; Bamiyan, Tukharistan, and Ghūr. He also led frequent expeditions against the kingdom of the Shahīs of Udabhan, which, as has already been noted, extended as far as the Kabul Valley. 'Utbi regards these military campaigns as holy wars for the propagation of Islam. Sabuktigin plundered forts on the tops of hills in the outlying provinces of the Shahī kingdom, captured many cities, and acquired immense wealth. The Shahī Jayapāla obviously could not ignore these incidents. He organised his forces, which included huge elephants, and set out to punish Sabuktigin. At some place between Lamghan and Ghaznī he met with Sabuktigin and his young son Mahmūd. The battle between the two armies con­tinued for several days. According to Muslim chroniclers the Hindu army was rapidly gaining ground, and so Sabuktigin took recourse to unchivalrous means. There was near Jayapāla’s camp a lofty mountain, called the ‘Ukba Ghūzaq, in one of whose ravines there was a fountain of water. There was a popular superstition that if it
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

was contaminated with any filth, "black clouds collected, whirlwinds arose, the summits of the mountains became black, rain fell, and the neighbourhood was filled with cold blasts, until red death supervened." At the instance of Sabuktigin his men secretly threw dirty substance into the fountain and the dreadful consequences followed. There were hail storms, blast, and thunder; black vapour collected around the Hindu army impeding their progress, and many of them perished in the cold. Jayapala saved himself by concluding an ignominious treaty with the Amir. But as soon as he safely reached his own country he repudiated the treaty. Enraged at this treacherous conduct of the Shahi king, Sabuktigin forthwith led an army against him. After a strenuous fight Sabuktigin defeated his enemy, and succeeded in establishing his authority as far as the city of Jamghān, which was famous for its immense wealth and strong fortifications. Jayapala decided to make a determined effort to re-establish his control of it, and collected an army consisting of more than one hundred thousand troops. Firishta states that the Rajas of Delhi, Ajmer, Kālaśāra, and many other neighbouring countries supplied contingents to help the Shahi king on this occasion. This statement of Firishta is very important, as a confederacy of Indian rulers, united in opposition to foreign invasion, is a rare event in Indian history. If Firishta's statement could be accepted as true, it would go a long way in absolving the Indian rulers of the charge commonly levelled against them that they could not unite even in the face of a common danger threatening the safety of their motherland. Unfortunately, we have no independent testimony corroborating Firishta's statement, and, meagre as it is, it does not enable us to identify the rulers who joined Jayapala in defending their motherland against the onrush of Islam. The three capital cities mentioned by Firishta seem to suggest that the Tomaras, Chāhāmanās and the Chandellas sent troops to the aid of Jayapala. Even though we do not know the names of any of the "many other neighbouring countries" which joined the holy war against Islam, it is legitimate to conclude from Firishta's statement that Northern India was fully aware of the grave peril caused by the menace of Islam, and her people gave practical evidence of their love for their country and religion by willingly offering to sacrifice their lives in the bleak hills of far distant Afghanistan which was almost a terra incognita to them.

On receiving news of the advance of the Hindu army Sabuktigin stationed his troops in a strategic position on a lofty hill near Jamghān. Having made a general survey of the countless forces of Jayapala from his post, he divided his soldiers into batches of five hundred men, and sent them in succession to attack a particular point
GHAZNAVID INVASION

of the enemy line. Soon a confusion arose in the Hindu camp, and then all these detached squadrons made a united attack. There followed a close fight in which only swords could be used, and Hindus were killed in large numbers. After a short resistance the Hindu army fled in utter confusion leaving behind their property, arms, provisions, elephants, and horses. This is the account handed down to us by the Muslim historians, and we have no means to check it by comparing it with the version of the other side. Sabuktigin annexed the whole of the territory between Langhan and Peshawar and introduced Islam among the people of this region who were probably followers of Buddhism.

During the reign of the Samanid king Nuh II, son of Mansur, Abu 'Ali-i-Sunjur, governor of a part of Khurasan, revolted. Nuh II succeeded in putting down the revolt with the help of Sabuktigin and the latter's son Mahmud. In recognition of this service the Samanid king conferred the title Nasir-ud-din wa'd-Daulah on Sabuktigin and Saifu'd-Daulah on Mahmud. Mahmud was made the captain-general of the forces of Khurasan, and his headquarters were fixed at Nishapur. In A.D. 993 Abü 'Ali-i-Sunjur made a fresh attempt to capture Nishapur, but Sabuktigin and Mahmud succeeded in repulsing the attack.

Sabuktigin died on the Balkh frontier in A.D. 997 at the age of fifty-six. He was a king of great valour, and ruled his kingdom with equity and moderation. He left behind him four sons, Mahmud, Isma'il, Nasr, and Yusuf. Before his death he was prevailed upon by Isma'il, who was living with him, to nominate him as his successor. Isma'il declared himself king, and lavished wealth upon the soldiers to gain their support against his brother Mahmud. Hearing of this news of Isma'il's assumption of the royal power, following the death of his father, Mahmud wrote a letter to him proposing that he should give up his claim to the throne as he was inexperienced in the art of government, and that he could be given charge of the administration of the provinces of Balkh and Khurasan if he so desired. Isma'il rejected the proposal and advanced towards Ghazni, but was defeated by Mahmud. He was subsequently taken prisoner and was kept in confinement till his death. He ruled only for seven months.

3. SULTAN MAHMUD

Mahmud ascended the throne of Ghazni in A.D. 998. He was born in A.D. 971, and in his youth received education in sacred literature and in the art of warfare and government. It has already been mentioned that he fought under his father against Jayapala and
Abū ‘Ali-i-Sunjur. After his accession Mahmūd consolidated his position in Herāt, Balkh, and Bust, and was engaged in a conflict with the Sāmānīd king ʿAbd-ul-Malik and his associates in order to re-establish his authority over Khurāsān. He achieved his end by defeating his enemies in two successive engagements, and in A.D. 999 was recognised as the sovereign of all these countries by the Caliph al-Qādir Billāh, who sent him a robe of investiture and conferred on him the titles of Yamin-ud-Daulah and Amin-ul-Millah. Mahmūd is said to have made a vow to lead an expedition against India every year, and there is a general consensus of opinion that he had no less than twelve such expeditions to his credit. But the actual number is difficult to determine on account of the conflicting evidence of the different authorities.

In A.D. 1000 he led the first expedition against India, and seized some fortresses, which seem to have been situated in the neighbourhood of Peshāwar. In the following year Mahmūd again advanced with an army consisting of 15,000 picked cavalry, men, and officers, and encamped in the outskirt of the city of Peshāwar. On receipt of this news Jayapāla marched with 12,000 horsemen, 30,000 foot soldiers, and 300 elephants to resist the invader, and pitched his camp near that city. He avoided taking direct action for some time awaiting the arrival of more troops from the tribal area. Mahmūd realised the situation and attacked the enemy without further delay. The cavalry and elephant forces of Jayapāla, amidst beat of drums, plunged themselves into the thick of the battle, but before noon the Hindus were routed and 5,000 of them lost their lives. Jayapāla was captured together with his sons and grandsons, and they were detained at a place known as Mirand. Mahmūd obtained a huge booty, and succeeded in conquering the province around Peshāwar, which was larger and more fertile than Khurāsān. He next advanced on Waḥīnd, which is to be identified with Udabhanā, the capital of the Shāhīs, and pitched his tent near that city. At his approach the Hindus retreated to the passes in the neighbouring hills and the forests and jungles. While they were devising plans for an effective resistance, Mahmūd despatched an army against them, and dispersed them with a great deal of slaughter. He released Jayapāla on his promise to pay 250,000 dinārs and to deliver 25 elephants, and detained a son and a grandson of his as hostages for the fulfilment of the conditions of the treaty. After Jayapāla's return to his own kingdom his son Anandapāla, who was at that time residing somewhere to the east of the Sindhu, sent the stipulated sum of money and elephants to Mahmūd, and secured the release of the Shāhī princes. But Jayapāla, having suffered three successive defeats at the hands of the Muslims, considered himself unworthy of the throne and burnt himself on a
funeral pyre, which he is said to have kindled with his own hands. Anandapāla succeeded him shortly after A.D. 1001.

Mahmūd devoted the greater part of A.D. 1002 and A.D. 1003 to the war in Sistān and during these two years India enjoyed a respite from his attacks.

In A.D. 1004 Mahmūd renewed his invasion of India. He passed through Walishtān, modern Sibi, in Baluchistān, crossed the Sindhu near Multān, and reached Bhātiya. The city was surrounded by a wall of unusual height and a moat of great depth and breadth. It possessed enormous riches and was well-equipped with armaments and troops. The place has been variously identified with Bhera under the Salt Range, Uch, and Bhātinda, but none of these identifications can be regarded as certain. It was at this time ruled by Baji Rāy. Firishta says that Baji Rāy, who was a vassal under Anandapāla, antagonised the latter by refusing to pay him tribute. He is said to have also enraged Mahmūd by his hostile activities against the Muslim governors, whom the latter appointed to rule his Indian possessions. But these informations are not supplied by the early authorities. Baji Rāy was a brave general. He came out of the walls of the city with his elephant forces and took the aggressive. The battle continued for three days and nights. The Muslims lost heavily and were on the verge of defeat, when, on the fourth day, the Sultan made a last desperate attack, and succeeded in capturing some elephants which were defending the centre of Baji Rāy's forces. Baji Rāy resisted at every point, but by the evening was forced to withdraw into the fort. Mahmūd forthwith occupied the gates of the city, filled up the moat, and widened the entrances. When Baji Rāy realised that the city could not be defended any longer, he fled to a forest on the bank of the Sindhu, and took refuge on the top of a hill with a few of his followers. As soon as Mahmūd learnt of the enemy's flight, he sent off a contingent in hot pursuit. Baji Rāy was soon taken by surprise, and surrounded by the Muslim army. As there was no way out of this impasse left for him, he put an end to his life by plunging his dagger into his heart, and his attendants fell fighting bravely with the enemy. Mahmūd took Bhātiya easily by storm, and pillaged the city. All the wealth there, together with hundred and twenty elephants, fell into his hands. He stayed there for some time, making arrangements for the permanent annexation of the country and for the conversion of the Hindus to Islam with the help of some competent teachers. He started for Ghaznī in A.D. 1005 during the rainy season. As the rivers of the Punjāb were full and surging at that time, he lost almost all his booty while crossing them. His passage was also obstructed from time to time by his enemies in the mountainous country.
In A.D. 1005-6 Mahmūd resolved to lead an expedition against Multān to punish its ruler Abu-'l-Fath Dāūd for his heretical activities. Dāūd's grandfather Shaikh Hamīd Lodī had entered into a friendly relation with Sabuktigin, and the alliance between the two families was maintained for some time. But Dāūd's acceptance of the doctrine of the Ismā'īlī sect made him hostile to Mahmūd, who was a zealous defender of the Islamic faith. Mahmūd, as he marched towards Multān, found the Sindhu in a flooded condition after the rain, making it difficult for his cavalry to cross it. So he requested Anandapāla to allow him a passage through his kingdom. Anandapāla, who was an ally of Dāūd, refused to comply with the request. This led to a battle near Peshāwar in which Mahmūd severely defeated Anandapāla who fled to the Kashmir hills. The Sultan now found an easy route to Multān through the Shāhī kingdom. Dāūd lost all courage to meet the Sultan when he heard that a powerful king like Anandapāla had failed to cope with him. The Sultan reached Multān without encountering any opposition, besieged the city for seven days, and forced the defenders to capitulate. The people, who had endured extreme hardship, were forced to pay 20,000,000 dirhams. Dāūd was, however, allowed to rule over the kingdom on his promise to pay an annual tribute of 20,000 golden dirhams, and to follow the tenets of Islam.

About this time the Sultan received news of the invasion of the northern part of his kingdom by the Turks under their leader Ilāk Khān. He left Suhkapāla, grandson of Jayapāla, who was formerly converted to Islam under the name of Nawāsā Shāh, to look after the affairs of Hindustān, and himself rushed to Khurasan to meet the invader. When he was engaged in fighting with Ilāk Khān, Nawāsā Shāh declared independence, dismissed all the Muslim officers, renounced Islam, and made an alliance with the Indian chiefs. After the termination of his battle with the Turks in A.D. 1007 the Sultan marched to India to punish the rebel. Nawāsā Shāh fled to the hills, but was captured. The Sultan took possession of his treasures, amounting to 400,000 dirhams, and after settling affairs in Hindustān returned to Ghazni.

In the following year (A.D. 1008) Mahmūd led an army against Anandapāla to punish him for his conduct during the invasion of Multān. Mahmūd was opposed on the bank of a river near Waihind (Udabhānda) by Brahmapāla, son of Anandapāla. The Shāhī army was well equipped with white swords, blue spears, yellow coats of mail, and huge elephants. According to Firishta many Rājās of Hindustān despatched, on the appeal of Anandapāla, big contingents to his aid, as they did, about thirty years earlier, during the reign of
his father, on a similar occasion. The Khokars or the Gakkhars of the Punjab also joined the Shāhīs in full strength. The contending parties did not engage in any struggle for forty days. Mahmūd did not think it wise to take the offensive, and wanted his enemies to attack his entrenchments. He engaged six thousand archers to incite them to make the first move, and his plan met with success. The Khokars, 30,000 in number, with various weapons advanced swiftly against the enemy line and made a vigorous attack on it. In the dreadful battle that ensued 5,000 Muslims lost their lives within a short space of time, and it seemed as if the Sultan was on the point of losing the battle with disastrous consequences. But suddenly the battle took a different course, when a number of the Sultan's personal guards attacked the rear of the invading Hindu army. There was confusion and the Hindus fled in panic. Firishta says that an untoward incident led to the final defeat of the Hindus on this occasion. The elephant, which carried the leader of the Hindu army, i.e., Anandapāla, was struck by arrows showered by the enemies, got out of control, and fled from the battlefield with its riders. This was taken as the signal for flight by the Hindu army, which then deserted the battlefield in confusion. The same authority relates that Ḍabūlāh Tā'ī with 6,000 horse and Arsalān Jāzīb with 10,000 soldiers pursued the Hindus and killed 20,000 of them. The Sultan himself joined in the pursuit, and followed the remainder of the fleeing Hindu army up to Bhīmānagar, also known as Nagarkot, modern Kot Kangra. The fort of Bhīmānagar was built on the top of a steep and lofty hill surrounded by deep water. Great riches, presented by neighbouring chiefs and devotees from different parts of India during successive generations, had been accumulated there. Such an immense quantity of gold, silver, precious stones, and pearls was not to be found in the treasury of any king in India. The Sultan besieged the fort and made a vigorous onslaught with his archers. The Hindus inside the fort lost heart at the sight of the vast host of Muslims spreading over the spurs of the hills. After three days' resistance they surrendered and threw open the gates of the citadel. The Sultan entered it without any opposition, and seized control of the treasury which consisted of 70,000,000 royal dirhams, gold and silver ingots, 7,00,400 maunds in weight, jewelleries, and precious stones. Among the booty were superfine, soft, and embroidered cloths and garments, a house of white silver, 30 yards in length and 15 yards in breadth, parts of which could be disjoined at will, a canopy made of fine linen, 40 yards in length and 20 yards in breadth, provided with two golden and two silver poles, and a very costly throne. The Sultan himself took charge of the jewels and placed his two chamberlains Altuntāsh and Asīghtīn in charge of the gold, silver and other valuables. He
appointed one of his reliable officers to take charge of the fort, and returned to Ghazni carrying the booty and the treasure on the backs of camels. He could not keep Nagarkot under his control for any length of time. But on this occasion he succeeded in annexing all the territories to the west of Sindhu including the Shāhī capital Udabhāṅga. On reaching Ghazni he held an exhibition of the jewels, pearls, rubies, emeralds, diamonds and other articles, secured from Nagarkot, in the court-yard of the royal palace. Even ambassadors from Turkistān and other foreign countries came to see this fabulous wealth which he had acquired.

In A.D. 1009 Mahmūd led an army against Narāyana, situated in the heart of Hind. The place is identified by Cunningham with Narāyanpur, in the old Alwar State, Rājputāna. The king of Narāyana fought bravely in defence of his country, but was defeated. The Sultan broke the idols and returned to Ghazni with his booty, the captured elephants and horses. In the following year Mahmūd invaded the small country of Ghūr, situated between Ghazni and Herāt, took its ruler Muḥammad bin Sūrī prisoner, and placed on its throne the latter’s brother Abī-’Alī.

In the latter part of A.D. 1010 Mahmūd had to lead an expedition against Multān to bring it finally into a state of subjugation. Dāūd, the ruler of the country, had turned hostile again, and the Ismā'īlī sect was increasing in popularity. The Sultan killed a large number of the heretics, took Dāūd prisoner, and re-established his authority over that country.

These successive victories of Mahmūd made Anandapāla realise the futility of carrying on further wars against him. He entered into a treaty with the Sultan agreeing to send him annually 50 big elephants, laden with valuables, and accompanied by 2,000 men for service at the court of Ghazni. The Sultan on his part promised not to lead any more invasion against the Shāhī kingdom. Both parties strictly observed the conditions of the treaty till Anandapāla’s death. The relations between the two kingdoms became so cordial during this period that the caravans moving between Khurāsān and Hind enjoyed full security.

Mahmūd received information that Thāneswar possessed elephants of Ceylon breed, which were very useful for military purposes. There was also an idol in a temple there, which was held in high veneration by the people of Hindustān. In A.D. 1011 Mahmūd started with his army from Ghazni with a view to plundering that city. Anandapāla, in accordance with the treaty he had concluded, allowed Mahmūd a safe passage through his kingdom, though the latter rejected his fervent appeal to spare the sacred city of Thāneswar.
from plunder in return for adequate compensation. The Sultan, in course of his march, reached the bank of a river, where he was opposed by a Raja named Rama, the chief of Dera, who was also anxious to save the sacred city from pillage. The river, which is identified by some with the Sutlej, flowed swiftly through a mountain pass. Its banks were precipitous and its bottom was full of large stones. Rama, together with his elephants, cavalry, and infantry, took up his position in the ravines. At the Sultan's command two contingents of the Muslim army forded the river at two points and attacked the enemy on both sides. While the battle was in progress a third contingent marched up the stream, crossed the river, and attacked the vital position of the enemy. The fight continued fiercely till evening, when the Hindus fled from the battlefield leaving their elephants behind. After gaining complete victory over his enemies, the Sultan resumed his march. On receipt of the news of Mahmud's advance, the Raja of Delhi, in whose kingdom Thaneswar was situated, sent messengers to other chiefs of Hindustan requesting them to join him in defence of the sacred city. It was emphasised that if the invader was not checked at Thaneswar, the whole of Hindustan would be overwhelmed by the Muslims. But before the Hindus could rally their forces, Mahmud reached Thaneswar, plundered the city, and broke a large number of idols, sparing the principal one, which was carried to Ghazni and placed in a public square for defilement. He intended next to invade Delhi, but had to abandon this project as he could not rely fully on the co-operation of Anandapala. So he marched back to Ghazni, and on his way received due hospitality from the Shahi chief.

After the death of Anandapala (c. A.D. 1012) Mahmud renewed his hostility against the Shahis, whose capital at this time was Nandana, in the Salt Range. In the winter of A.D. 1013 Mahmud advanced with his army towards Nandana to crush the power of Trilochanapala, son and successor of Anandapala. As soon as he reached the border of Hind his passage was blocked by a heavy fall of snow. The roads, passes, and valleys were all lost under the snow drifts. He had to wait there until spring, securing additional supplies and army from the neighbouring provinces. After two months' troublesome journey over the hills and dales, and across torrential and deep rivers, the Sultan reached the vicinity of Nandana. He now divided his cavalry into three groups placing Amir Nasr, Arsalân Jâzib, and Abî 'Abdullâ Muhammad in charge of each of them. The central part of the army was placed under the leadership of Altuntash. Trilochanapala, who was not prepared for this sudden invasion, put the whole of his army under the command of his son Bhimapala, and sent invitations to his vassals to join him with their forces.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Bhimapāla posted himself together with his forces behind large blocks of stone in a narrow mountain pass, barring the entrance with elephants and awaiting the arrival of the vassals. On learning the design of the enemies, Mahmūd all on a sudden attacked them in that position with his Dailamite warriors and Afghan spearmen. The battle continued without a break for several days. But the Sultan could not dislodge the Shāhis from their strategic position. At this time Tunga, the general of the Lohara king Saṅgrāmarāja of Kāshmir, who was sent with an army to help Trilochanapāla, suffered a defeat at the hands of the Sultan for his injudicious movement. As soon as reinforcements came, Bhimapāla left the pass and came out into the plain to give battle against the Muslims. The elephant forces under him made a violent attack on the enemies, but were repulsed by the showers of arrows. Abū 'Abdullāh Muhammad, while fighting bravely in the midst of the enemies, received many wounds in his head and body, but was rescued by the Sultan's personal guard. An all-round battle continued for some time, and though the Shāhis fought bravely and contested every inch of ground, they were ultimately routed. A large number of them lost their lives on the slopes of the hills and in the valleys and ravines, and a host of elephants, which protected their defence lines, fell into the hands of the Muslims. Bhimapāla, along with his father, withdrew to the valley of Kāshmir, leaving a strong garrison behind for the defence of the capital. The Sultan readily marched to the capital and besieged its fort. Having failed to capture it by ordinary means, he ran mines under the walls and forced the defenders to surrender. He then entered into the fort without opposition, seized the treasure and other valuable articles, and appointed Sarugh as its Superintendent. The western and central portions of the Shahī kingdom were annexed to the Empire of Ghazni.

From Nandana Mahmūd marched towards the Kāshmir valley where Trilochanapāla had rallied his surviving forces. Trilochanapāla resisted him but, when he was defeated, he fled to the Eastern Punjab, probably Sirhind. Mahmūd plundered the Kāshmir valley, took many prisoners, converted some to Islam, and returned to Ghazni with a large amount of booty. On this occasion he carried with him such a large number of Indians as prisoners that they were sold as slaves at a very cheap price in Ghazni. Men, who occupied high positions in India, were seen to serve the shopkeepers there as slaves.

In A.D. 1015 Mahmūd came back to the Kāshmir valley in order to put down some refractory chiefs, and also to capture some forts which he could not conquer on the previous occasion. The hill-fort of Lohkot, modern Loharin, on the southern slopes of the central
GHAZNAVID INVASION

Pir Pantsal, was his first objective. The fort was famous for its invincibility. The Sultan made a fruitless effort to capture it before the end of the summer season. The situation became worse for the Muslim army when, as winter approached, there was a heavy fall of snow. In the mean time the Kashmirians made their position stronger by fresh reinforcement of troops. In this circumstance the Sultan had no other alternative but to raise the siege and retreat towards Ghazni. On his return journey he suffered incalculable miseries. Once, his guides misled him and his army into a big marsh, and a large number of men were lost. After struggling hard for several days he succeeded in extricating the surviving portion of his troops.

Mahmud could not lead any expedition against India in A.D. 1016 and 1017 as he was engaged in putting down revolt in Khvārazm. As soon as he was free from that trouble he formulated a plan to penetrate further into the heart of Hindustān, and to attack the imperial city of Kanauj. For this ambitious enterprise he raised a big army of 100,000 horse, and 20,000 foot, recruited from Turkistan, Māvarānu-n nahr, Khurasan, and other neighbouring provinces. Towards the end of A.D. 1018 he started from Ghazni and, marching through the Punjāb, crossed the Sindhu, Jhelum, Chenāb, Ravi, Beās, and Sutlej. The chiefs of the countries through which he passed submitted to him. Jānki, son of Shāhī, grandson of Bāmū, who controlled the southern passes leading into Kāshmir, offered his services to the Sultan as a guide. The Shāhī Trilochanapāla, who was ruling in the Eastern Punjāb, refused to pay allegiance to the Sultan, and fled to the Paramārā kingdom of Mālava. After a long and tedious journey through forests and jungles, the Sultan reached the Yamunā and crossed it on 2nd December 1018. Having overcome some hill-forts on the way he reached Baran, modern Bulandshahr, in U.P. The ruler of the place, Hardat, who was filled with alarm at his approach, did not put up any resistance against him. "Utbi states that Hardat surrendered to Mahmud with 10,000 men and was even willing to embrace Islam to save them from disaster. Gardizi and Nizām-ud-dīn Ahmad, however, relate that Hardat fled away, leaving the fort in charge of his followers. The garrison found their position untenable and purchased peace by paying the Sultan 1,000,000 dirhams and 30 elephants. From Baran Mahmūd advanced to attack Mahāban, on the Yamunā, in the Mathurā District. It was at that time ruled by a chief named Kulachand, who owned a large number of forts and maintained a strong army. Many neighbouring rulers had to submit to his military power. It is known from some epigraphic records that in the eleventh and twelfth centuries Mahāban and its environs were ruled by the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Yadu dynasty, and Kulachand was possibly a member of this family. As soon as Mahmūd invested Mahāban, Kulachand, along with his army and elephants, retreated to a fort in a dense forest, and kept every thing ready for battle. The Sultan, after a careful search, discovered the fort where Kulachand had concentrated his forces. A hand to hand fight with swords and spears ensued between the two armies. The Hindus, having failed to defend their position, jumped into the Yamuna and tried to cross it over in search of safety. Kulachand, finding no other way to escape, killed his wife first and then killed himself. Nearly 5,000 Hindus lost their lives, and the Sultan secured a large booty together with 185 war elephants.

The Sultan next directed his attacks against the sacred city of Mathūra. The city was surrounded by a massive stone wall, in which were two lofty gates opening on to the river. There were magnificent temples all over the city and the largest of them stood in the centre of it. The Sultan was very much struck by its grandeur. In his estimate it cost not less than 100,000,000 red dinārs, and even the most skilful of masons must have taken 200 years to complete it. Among the large number of idols in the temples, five were made of pure gold, the eyes of one of them were laid with two rubies worth 100,000 dinārs, and another had a sapphire of a very heavy weight. All these five idols yielded gold weighing 98,300 miskāls. The idols made of silver numbered 200. The city is said to have been within the kingdom of the Rāja of Delhi, but the Sultan captured it without meeting any opposition. He seized all the gold and silver idols and ordered his soldiers to burn all the temples to the ground. The idols in them were deliberately broken into pieces. The city was pillaged for 20 days, and a large number of buildings were reduced to ashes.

From Mathūra the Sultan marched on Kanauj. On his way he conquered many forts and obtained much booty. Sometimes he encountered strong resistance from the Hindus, but he triumphed over them. Kanauj, which served as the capital of so many successive imperial ruling dynasties, was a well fortified city, defended by seven lofty forts, and contained 10,000 temples. At Mahmūd's approach king Rajyapāla of the Pratihāra dynasty fled to the other side of the Gaṅgā, and took refuge in a place known as Bari. Kanauj was deserted by a large number of its citizens, who were anxious to save themselves from the fury of the Muslims, and in the absence of any strong resistance, all the seven forts fell easily into the hands of the Sultan. At his command the city was plundered, the inhabitants put to the sword, and the idols destroyed.
After plundering Kanauj Mahmūd invaded Munj, which is identified by some with Manjhawan, 10 miles south of Kanpur (Cawnpore), and by others with the place of this name, 14 miles north-east of Etawah. It was known as the fort of the Brāhmans. The garrison resisted the invader for 25 days, but it was of no effect. At last a large number of inhabitants threw themselves into fire together with their wives and children. Some sallied forth from the fort and dashed towards the enemy, only to be killed by the latter. Others threw themselves down from the battlements to embrace death. It was eventually found that not a single soul survived in the fort. Mahmūd took possession of all the valuables there and then advanced towards Asī, which is identified with Asni, 10 miles north-east from Fatehpur. The fort of Asī was surrounded by a wide and deep moat, and around it lay dense jungle full of venomous reptiles. Its ruler, Chandrapāl Bhūr, was one of the most powerful chiefs of Hindustān, and earned a great reputation as a military leader by inflicting defeats on many kings. He even succeeded in repulsing an attack of the Prathīrās of Kanauj after a prolonged fight. But his courage failed when Mahmūd invaded his fort, and he fled, leaving it to the mercy of the latter. At the Sultan’s order the fort was plundered and demolished, and the inhabitants were put to death. The Sultan next marched with his army to Sharva, which is identified by Cunningham with Sirsawa to the east of the Yamunā, near Sahāranpur. The fort there, made of massive stone, was of immense height. Its chief, Chand Rāi, held a high position among the rulers of Hindustān. Hearing the news of Mahmūd’s advance, Chand Rāi stealthily went out of his fort with his army and treasure, withdrew to a lofty hill, and hid in a thick forest. The Sultan plundered the fort of Sharva, and then pushed his way through the jungle, in pursuit of Chand Rāi. After covering a distance of 15 parasangs he succeeded in detecting the place where the enemy was residing. In the action that followed a large number of Hindu soldiers lost their lives. Chand Rāi seems to have fled away leaving his treasure behind. The Sultan secured for himself a huge amount of gold, silver, and pearls worth 3,000,000 dirhams, and many elephants. A large number of Hindus, rich and poor, were carried off as slaves, and eventually sold to the merchants of Māwarā-n nahr, ‘Irāq, and Khūrāsān. After his victory over Chand Rāi, which took place in January, 1019, Mahmūd returned to Ghazni with a huge booty and a large number of war prisoners. The expedition against Kanauj made the Sultan master of wealth amounting to 20,000,000 dirhams, 53,000 prisoners of war, and 350 elephants. Firishta states that after this glorious expedition the Sultan founded at Ghazni the famous Jamī Mosque, which was universally known.
as 'Celestial Bride.' Adjacent to this mosque the Sultan established a University well equipped with books in various languages, and a Museum full of natural curiosities.

Before we resume the story of Mahmūd's invasion of India we may refer briefly to his great adversary, the Shahi king Trilochanapāla, whose dominions were now confined to the Eastern Punjab. As Kalhaṣa says, he "displayed great resolution even after he had fallen from his position, and relying on his force of elephants, endeavoured to recover victory." In his new retreat at Sirhind, Trilochanapāla secured a respite from Muslim invasion for about five years. But during this period he had to fight a series of battles against Chānd Rāi, ruler of Sharva, mentioned above. These engagements resulted in a heavy loss of men and warriors on both sides. A peace was ultimately concluded between the two kings and, in order to make it a lasting one, Trilochanapāla sought the hand of his rival's daughter for his son Bhīmapāla. As soon as the Shahi prince reached Sharva for marriage, Chānd Rāi put him into prison and demanded retribution for the losses he had to suffer in the previous engagements. Trilochanapāla could not lead any big expedition against Chānd Rāi lest any serious harm was done to his son. Stray battles, however, took place from time to time between the two kings, until Mahmūd, on his way to Kanauj, reached that part of the country in A.D. 1018. Trilochanapāla left his kingdom and took shelter with the Paramāra Bhoja of Mālava.

As mentioned above, Mahmūd, after plundering Kanauj, returned to Ghaznī in A.D. 1019. But in A.D. 1020-21 he again came to Hindustān to chastise the Vidyādhara, who had attacked the Pratihāra king Rājyapāla and killed him for his cowardly submission to Mahmūd. On that occasion Trilochanapāla made an alliance with the Chandellas. So, when in A.D. 1020-21, the Sultan advanced with his army to punish Vidyādhara, and after some time reached the banks of a big river, he was opposed by the Shahi Trilochanapāla. 'Utbi mentions the name of this river as Rahib, and Firishta and Nizam-ud-din Ahmad call it Yamuna. Trilochanapāla camped on the eastern bank of the river with his infantry and elephants, and showed grim determination to fight. The Sultan hesitated to make an attempt at crossing the river as it was very deep and its bottom full of mud. He ordered eight men of his camp to swim over to the other bank on inflated skins. As these men were approaching, Trilochanapāla sent a contingent with five elephants to prevent them from landing. But these few Muslim soldiers succeeded in forcing their way through, throwing their enemies into wild confusion as they discharged their arrows. When the Sultan's plan had achieved this result, he ordered his troops to follow the same process. The
GHAZNAVID INVASION

Muslims readily jumped into the river and reached the other bank without any loss of life. Trilochanapāla attacked them with all his forces, but being defeated, fled from the battlefield. Many Hindus lost their lives in the encounter, and 270 elephants fell into the hands of the Sultan. Trilochanapāla now made an attempt to join Vidyādharā, but, on his way, was killed by some Hindus. His son Bhimapāla, who had obviously effected his escape from Sharva at the time when Mahmūd plundered the fort in A.D. 1019, survived him for five years without holding any royal position. The entire Shahī kingdom now formed a part of Mahmūd’s dominions.

The Shahis bravely resisted the Muslims for more than twenty-five years. The collapse of their power made a deep impression upon the minds of the people of that age. Al-Bīrūnī remarks with a note of pathos: “The Hindu Sāhiya dynasty is now extinct, and of the whole house there is no longer the slightest remnant in existence. We must say that, in all their grandeur, they never slackened in the ardent desire of doing that which is good and right, that they were men of noble sentiment and noble bearing.” The same sentiment is also echoed by Kalhaṇa in the twelfth century in his book Rājatāraṅgini.

After defeating Trilochanapāla Mahmūd advanced towards Bari, where the Pratīhāras had shifted their capital after the sack of Kanauj. But before the Sultan reached that place the Pratīhāra Trilochanapāla, son and successor of Rājyapāla, fled away in fear. The Muslims entered into the city without any opposition, and at the Sultan’s command razed it to the ground.

After the capture of Bari Mahmūd directed his attack against Vidyādharā who was ready to meet him on the border of his kingdom with 45,000 infantry, 36,000 cavalry, and 640 elephants.15 The Sultan sent an envoy to Vidyādharā asking him either to embrace Islam or to agree to pay an annual tribute, but the Chandella king rejected both the proposals with scorn. The Sultan, before issuing order for the attack, went to an elevated place to make an estimate of the strength of the enemy. His courage failed when he saw the vast gathering of Vidyādharā’s army, and he repented of undertaking this perilous expedition. In his despair, he fell flat on the ground, praying to the Almighty for assistance. In the evening there was a skirmish between Mahmūd’s general Abū ‘Abdullāh Muhammad at-Tā’i and a detachment of the Hindu army, in which the latter suffered a reverse. Greatly disheartened by the defeat, Vidyādharā, being panic-stricken, fled away with his army during the night under cover of darkness, leaving his bags and baggages behind. On the following morning the Sultan was surprised to hear that his enemies...
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

had fled. At first he suspected foul play, but when no trace of the enemy could be discovered in the neighbourhood, he entered the deserted camps and seized everything of value including elephants numbering 580.

Shortly after his return to Ghazni the Sultan led expeditions against Qirat and Nūr, places situated between the borders of India and Turkistān. Elliot identifies these places with Swat, Bājaur, and part of Kāfiristān. The inhabitants of these places, along with their rulers, were worshippers of idols. The chief of Qirat surrendered to Mahmūd without a struggle, and adopted Islam. Mahmūd's general Amir 'Ali overcame the ruler of Nūr, sacked his territory, demolished a Hindu temple of great antiquity, and forced the people to embrace Islam. Shortly afterwards, in A.D. 1021, the Sultan led an army against Lohkot, in Kāshmir, which he had failed to capture on a previous occasion. However, he did not fare better this time. After making a fruitless attempt for a month to take possession of it, he raised the siege.

In A.D. 1021-22 Mahmūd again launched an expedition against the Chandella Vidyādhara. On his way he attacked the fort of Gwālior, which was then in possession of the Kachchhapaghātas. The chief of the Kachchhapaghāta dynasty, who seems to have been Kirttirāja, after successfully defending his position for four days, lost courage and sued for peace. The Sultan received some valuable presents and 35 elephants from his adversary, and then resumed his march. He soon reached his destination and laid siege to the fort of Kālānjara. The siege had continued for a long time when Vidyādhara sent an emissary to the Sultan with the proposal for peace. He offered 300 elephants and other valuable presents for raising the siege. Hearing that the Sultan agreed to his terms Vidyādhara, to test the bravery of the Muslim soldiers, let loose the elephants, without riders, outside the gate of the fort. At the Sultan's command his Turkish soldiers brought them all under control and mounted them. The Hindus in the fort were amazed at this bold feat of their opponents, and no longer had any desire to fight. Vidyādhara sent over to the Muslim camp a verse in the Indian language in praise of the Sultan, who was very much pleased with the compliment paid him. He reciprocated this friendly gesture by bestowing on the Chandella king the government of 15 fortresses, and returned to Ghazni. It would appear from the above account in the Muslim chronicles that Mahmūd came all the way from Ghazni to Kālānjara only to be satisfied with a few hundred elephants and some rich presents. It would be more rational to hold that his invasion of Kālānjara was not a great success, and possibly a failure.
India enjoyed respite from the invasion of Mahmūd in A.D. 1023 because the Sultān in that year was busy fighting in Transoxiana. In the following year (A.D. 1024) he resumed his expedition against Hindustān. The object of his attack this time was the famous temple of Somanātha on the sea-shore, in Kāthiāwār, containing a Śiva-liṅga. The temple stood on huge blocks of stone, and its roof was supported by 56 wooden pillars “curiously carved and set with precious stones”. The pyramidal roof was made of 13 stories, and was surmounted by fourteen golden domes. The girth of the liṅga was 4 feet 6 inches, and its height above the base was 7 feet 6 inches. A portion of the liṅga, 6 feet in height, was hidden beneath the base. Adjacent to it under its pedestal there was the treasury containing many gold and silver miniature idols. The canopy over it was set with jewels and was decorated with rich embroidery. The dark chamber in which the liṅga was installed was illuminated by jewelled chandeliers. In front of the chamber there was a chain of gold, 200 māns in weight, attached to a bell, which was rung by shaking the chain from time to time for specific purpose. One thousand Brāhmaṇas were appointed to perform the worship of the liṅga and for conducting the devotees into the temple. There were three hundred barbers for shaving the heads and beards of the pilgrims. Three hundred and fifty persons, both male and female, were employed to sing and dance before the liṅga every day. All these people received daily allowances from the temple funds. The income of the temple was derived from the 10,000 villages endowed to it, and from the offerings of the devotees. The temple possessed vast wealth in gold, silver, pearls, and rich jewels, which had been accumulated in course of centuries.

The Hindus entertained a belief that Mahmūd could demolish so many idols in Northern India simply because these deities had forfeited the sympathy and support of Somanātha. It is stated that when Mahmūd heard of this belief of the Hindus he decided to destroy Somanātha with a view to striking at the root of their faith in the divinity of their chief idol. Mahmūd marched from Ghazni to Multān at the head of 30,000 cavalry and a multitude of volunteers. Thence he decided to advance along the desert route to reach his destination. Soldiers were provided with food, water, and forage for many days. Two hundred camels were employed to carry additional water and provisions to meet any contingency. In course of his wearisome journey the Sultān first reached Ludrava, modern Lodorva, 10 miles north-west of Jaisalmer, which was defended by a strong citadel and a body of brave soldiers. The Sultān captured it, and then, after a prolonged march through Mallani, reached the Chikūdar (?) hill, which is identified with Chikklodarmata hill, 17
miles north of Palanpur, in Gujarát. Next he advanced towards Nahrwala, identical with Asahaslapātaka, the capital of Gujarát. At the sudden and unexpected appearance of the Sultan, the king of the country, Bhima I, who belonged to the Chaulukya dynasty, fled, probably to Kanjīhakot, 16 miles north-east of Anjar, in Kutch (Cutch). The Sultan occupied the city and collected fresh provisions there. From this place he marched to Mundher and thence to Dewalwāra, modern Delvada, 40 miles east of Somanātha. In the course of his advance through the desert between Mundher and Dewalwāra, he had to fight his way through 20,000 enemy troops. He also met with stiff resistance at Dewalwāra, which he succeeded in breaking down after a short encounter. The people of the place were put to the sword and their temples demolished.

Mahmūd reached Somanātha in the middle of January, 1025, and found there a strongly defended fortress on the sea-shore. The Hindus, who assembled on the rampart of the fort, were passing their time in merry-making, fondly believing that Somanātha had drawn the Muslims there only to annihilate them for the sins they had committed in demolishing idols elsewhere. Their morale was high even though their leader had fled away in cowardice with his family to a neighbouring island. The following day the Sultan began the assault, and forced the Hindus to leave their position on the wall by discharging showers of arrows at them. The Muslims then speedily placed a ladder and climbed up to the battlements. This action was followed by a fierce fight in which a large number of people lost their lives. But before the Muslims could consolidate their position they were attacked violently by a fresh batch of Hindus, who came out of the temple of Somanātha after a prayer for strength and courage. The Muslims were unable to withstand this onslaught, and were forced to retreat from the city. Next day the Sultan renewed the operation with greater intensity, against which the brave resistance offered by the Hindus was of no avail. Having failed to check the enemy's advance, they all crowded in front of the gate of the temple of Somanātha. The Muslims pursued them there, and then followed a terrible carnage. Bands of Hindus in succession entered the temple to pray with all their hearts for victory, and then coming out of it rushed against their enemies, only to be killed. In this way more than 50,000 Hindus sacrificed their lives to defend the honour of their deity. The few survivors, who attempted to escape by sea, were pursued by the Muslims and put to the sword. The Sultan made a triumphal entry into the temple, broke down the Siva-liṅga into pieces, and took possession of the vast wealth it contained, said to have been worth 20,000,000 dirhams. The temple was then razed to the ground. The fragments of the
GHAZNAVID INVASION

Śiva-liṅga were carried to Ghazni, where they were made to serve as steps at the gate of the Jāmi Mosque—an act of profanity imitated by later Muslim rulers.

Mahmud halted at Somanatha for a fortnight. He was very much concerned about a safe return journey to Ghazni with the vast wealth he had acquired. The iconoclastic zeal which he showed at Somanatha deeply wounded the religious susceptibility of the neighbouring chiefs, who, under the leadership of Paramadeva, were now ready to obstruct him en route. So, to avoid any major clash, he decided to follow the way through Kutch and Sindh. In the course of his homeward march he arrived at an inlet of the sea between Kathiawār and Kutch. He forded it where it was shallow, at the risk of being submerged, and came in front of the fort of Kandahat, identified with Kaśṭhakot, in Kutch, where the Chaulukya Bhima I had taken shelter. Bhima fled when he heard the news of the Sultan's advance. The Sultan took over the fort and continued his march through Kutch. He crossed over to Sindh, and engaged a guide to conduct him safely over the desert. The guide, who was a devotee of Somanatha, was looking for an opportunity to avenge himself of the wrong done to his god, led the Muslim army to a dreary part of the desert where there was no water available for miles around. The treachery was immediately detected, and the guide was put to death. The Sultan, in despair, resumed his march praying to the Almighty for deliverance, and luckily reached a place where he got the necessary supply of water. He proceeded from that place to Mansūrah, about 43 miles north-east of Haiderābād, defeated its ruler Khātif, an apostate Muslim, and then, following the upper course of the Sindhu, advanced towards Multān. On his way thither he was greatly troubled by the Jāts. His long and perilous journey ended in A.D. 1026 when he reached Ghazni. Countries far and near showered praise on him for his success at Somanātha. The Caliph sent him a congratulatory letter, and conferred titles on him and on his two sons and brothers. He further communicated to him that whoever among his sons would be nominated by him as his successor to the throne of Ghazni would receive his recognition.

In A.D. 1027 Mahmūd again came to India to punish the Jāts, who gave him so much trouble on his return journey from Somanātha. As soon as he reached Multān he realised that a strong navy was necessary to overcome these enemies. So he ordered 1,400 boats, each to be provided with three projected iron spikes, one in the prow and one at either side. These iron bars were fixed up in order to smash into pieces the enemy's boats making an attempt to strike against them. Twenty soldiers with bows and arrows were placed in each boat. The Sultan advanced with this flotilla in the Sindhu
to attack his enemies. The Jats also made great preparations to meet the invader. They sent their women and children to the islands for safety, and themselves boldly came forward with 4,000 boats, each filled with valiant fighters. The battle between the two armies began with terrible intensity. Almost all the boats of the Jats were broken into pieces as they dashed against those of the Sultan. A large number of Jats were drowned in the river, and those who survived were killed by the Muslim archers. The Sultan next plundered the islands where the families of the Jats were kept with their valuables, and then returned to Ghazni. This was the last expedition of Mahmud launched against India, and he died three years later, in A.D. 1030.

The Muslim chroniclers naturally regard Mahmud as one of their greatest kings and a great champion of Islamic faith. His well-deserved title to fame rests on the great military skill he displayed on innumerable occasions. Even making allowances for the flattery of the court historians, his repeated invasions of India, carried out with consummate ability and success, and his brilliant victories mark him out as the greatest general of his age, comparable with the military leaders of the first rank that have appeared in the world from time to time. His patronage of art and literature in his own kingdom also distinguishes him as a great king. But his iconoclastic zeal and avarice, beyond measure, which figure so conspicuously in his Indian expeditions, inevitably loom large in Indian eyes, and all his great qualities pale into insignificance. By his ruthless destruction of temples and images he violated the most sacred and cherished sentiments of the Indian people, and his championship of Islam therefore merely served to degrade it in their eyes such as nothing else could. He drained India of enormous wealth and destroyed much of India's manpower by his repeated expeditions. This exhaustion of economic resources and manpower told upon the future political destiny of India. In particular the destruction of the Shahi kingdom, which barred the gates of India against foreign invaders, dealt a severe blow to its future independence. The inclusion of the Punjab and Afghanistan in the kingdom of Ghazni made the Islamic conquest of India a comparatively easy process. It was no longer a question of whether, but when, that mighty flood would overwhelm the country as a whole.
GHAZNAVID INVASION

4. This is the form of the name according to CHI, III, 11, but according to Dr. Nazim it should be Pirì or Pirltigin (op. cit., p. 27).
6. The battle probably took place about A.D. 986-7 (Nazim, op. cit., p. 29).
7. 'Utbi gives an incomplete description of Mahmud's conquest of Thaneswar after narrating his invasion of Nandana, which took place in 404 A.H. = A.D. 1013. Ibn'l-Athlr puts the date of Mahmud's conquest of Thaneswar in 405 A.H. = A.D. 1014. But Gardizi, a contemporary authority, fixes the date of this invasion in 402 A.H. = A.D. 1011. According to this authority the invasion of Thaneswar took place three years prior to that of Nandana. This finds corroboration in the chronicles of Firishta and Niz'am-ud-din Ahmad. Elliot, W. Haig, and M. Nazim accept the chronology of Mahmud's invasion as given by 'Utbi. W. Haig, however, points out that "al-'Utbl's topography is faulty, and he appears to be confounding this (i.e. Thaneswar) expedition with another" (CHI, III, 18 fn.). That 'Utbi had a confusion in his mind on this particular matter is also suggested by the fact that he abruptly closes his narrative after describing Mahmud's victory over Rama, a chief of the Punjab, on his way to Thaneswar. So the chronology of Mahmud's invasion as given by Gardizi, Firishta and Niz'am-ud-din Ahmad, mentioned above, has been adopted.
10. According to Firishta, Niz'am-ud-din gives the number of infantry as 145,000 and that of elephants as 390 (Bib. Ind., p. 12). But according to some manuscripts of this work the numbers are respectively 155,000 and 460.
11. The description of the temple is based on Muslim chronicles which differ in details. On the ruins of the particular temple destroyed by Mahmud several others were erected by later kings, as often as they were demolished by the fury of the Muslims. Steps are now being taken to erect a magnificent temple on the same spot. Cf. Somanatha, the Shining Eternal, by K. M. Munshi. The description of the temple broken by Mahmud, as given here, is based on the views of M. Nazim (op. cit., pp. 209 ff.).
12. Nazim, op. cit., p. 119. The site is described as an island in CHI, III, 25.
13. The Muslim chroniclers give conflicting accounts, both of Mahmud's march to Somanathā and of the part played by Bhima. Thus Firishta states that Mahmud came to Somanathā by way of Ajmer (Sāmbhār), and returned to Ghazni via Anahilapattaka, where he went from Kanthakota. W. Haig has accepted this view (CHI, III, 23, 25).

Firishta also says that Bhima joined in the fight against Mahmud in front of the temple at Somanathā. But this is not corroborated by any other authority. There are, however, reasonable grounds to believe that Bhima, after leaving the capital city, organised his forces to resist Mahmud, and it was mainly to avoid him that Mahmud chose for his return journey a shorter and less frequented, but more difficult, desert route. The army which opposed Mahmud at Kanthakota was perhaps sent by Bhima for this purpose, but it is doubtful whether Bhima was there in person (DHNI, II, 993 ff).
CHAPTER II
NORTHERN INDIA DURING THE ELEVENTH AND TWELFTH CENTURIES

I. THE PALAS

1. Mahipala

When Mahipala I ascended the throne after the death of his father Vigrahapala II about A.D. 988, the once mighty empire of the Palas had been shattered to the dust, and the territory ruled over by them was confined to Magadha or South Bihar. By a strange irony of fate they had lost their ancestral kingdom in Bengal and were forced to seek refuge outside its border. This is frankly admitted in the Bangarh Grant which extols Mahipala for having recovered his paternal kingdom which was usurped by others. Who these usurpers were the inscription does not tell us, but other evidences indicate, as noted above, that the rulers belonging to Kambuja family were in possession of North and West Bengal, and the Chandras were ruling in South and East Bengal.

The details of the struggle by which Mahipala recovered Bengal or at least a large part of it are not known to us. An inscription found on an image in a village in the Tippera District is dated in the year 3 of the reign of king Mahipala. There are good grounds to identify this king with Mahipala I, though there is no conclusive evidence in support of it. But if we accept this identification we must hold that Mahipala re-established his authority in East Bengal during the first two or three years of his reign. It also indirectly proves his hold over North Bengal before that time, for without it he could not have proceeded to East Bengal from his base in South Bihar. His possession of North Bengal is, however, definitely proved by his Bangarh Grant dated in his 9th regnal year. But although we are thus on sure grounds in respect of the recovery of Northern and Eastern Bengal by Mahipala, we cannot estimate the amount of success gained by his endeavour, if any, to reassert his authority over the other parts of Bengal. On the other hand, it would appear from the account of the Chola invasion, referred to below, that Mahipala had no hold over either South or West Bengal except perhaps a portion of the latter.

But Mahipala was more successful in his attempt to re-establish Pala suzerainty outside Bengal. His inscriptions have been found
in North Bihār while those of his three predecessors have been found only in South Bihār. It may be concluded, therefore, that he also recovered North Bihār. We learn from an inscription dated A.D. 1026, found at Sarnāth near Banaras, that Mahipāla built and repaired many sacred structures in that holy site of the Buddhists. It has been inferred from this record that Mahipāla’s kingdom extended up to Banaras. It may be argued that Banaras or Sarnāth, being sacred places of almost international reputation, the construction of sanctuaries therein does not necessarily imply political control over them. But as the whole of Bihār was certainly included within the kingdom of Mahipāla, it is not an unreasonable assumption that the neighbouring region in the West up to Banaras was also part of it, so long as we do not find any evidence to the contrary.

It was during the reign of Mahipāla that Rājendra Chōla invaded Bengal. This Chōla invasion has been dealt with more fully in Chapter X. It appears that the Chōla king successively defeated Dharmapāla of Daṇḍabhukti, Ranaśūra of Southern Raḍhā and Govindachandra of Vaṅgāla, and then fought with Mahipāla and conquered Northern Raḍhā. Daṇḍabhukti corresponds roughly to the present district of Midnapore, and Raḍhā, the rest of the Burdwan Division. Vaṅgāla denotes Southern, and probably also a part of Eastern, Bengal where two inscriptions of Govindachandra have been found. The Chōla records seem to indicate that Daṇḍabhukti, Vaṅgāla, and Southern Raḍhā were independent kingdoms at the time of the Chōla invasion (c. A.D. 1021), but Northern Raḍhā formed a part of Mahipāla’s dominions.

The object of Rājendra Chōla’s invasion was to take sacred water of the Ganga in order to purify his own country. According to some Chōla records the vanquished kings of Bengal were made to carry the water of the Ganga on their heads. As Prof. N. Sastri has observed, this is probably a mere boast without any foundation. He seems to be also correct in his assumption that Rājendra Chōla’s campaign “could hardly have been more than a hurried raid across a vast stretch of country.” In any case there is no reason to suppose that it made any deep impress upon the political condition of the country. Towards the close of his reign Mahipāla had to face the invasion of another powerful enemy, the Kalachuri ruler Gāṅgeyadeva. The latter claims to have defeated the ruler of Anga who cannot be any other than Mahipāla I. This claim is indirectly supported by a statement of the Muslim writer Baihaqi, that when Ahmad Niyāltigin invaded Banaras in A.D. 1034 it was in possession of Gang, who has been plausibly identified with the Kalachuri king Gāṅgeyadeva. As noted above, Mahipāla was probably in possession
of Banaras in A.D. 1026. It may be reasonably inferred, therefore, that the conflict between Mahipala I and Gangeyadeva, resulting in the conquest of Banaras region by the latter, took place some time between A.D. 1026 and 1034.

As we have seen above, the reign of Mahipala I coincides with the period of repeated incursions of the Ghaznavid rulers against India. Mahipala's name, however, does not figure in the confederacy of Hindu rulers organised by the Shahi kings to defend their country against the Muslim onslaught. Some writers have severely criticised Mahipala for this lack of patriotism, or indifference to the cause of Hinduism on the part of a Buddhist ruler. But such criticism does not take into account the difficulties he had to confront almost throughout his reign. His early life was spent in recovering his ancestral dominions, and before he had completed this task, he had to face invasions of his territory by two most powerful rulers of India of his time. Threatened by disruption within and invasion from abroad, Mahipala can hardly be blamed for not frittering away his strength and energy by sending a military expedition to the distant corner of the Punjab or North-West Frontier.

Nobody can dispute the fact that Mahipala not only saved the Pala kingdom from impending ruin, but also restored to a large extent the old glory and power of the Palas, and that this was achieved against tremendous odds. His success in this great task is highly creditable, and it is idle to regret that he had not done more. His achievements are remarkable and he rightly takes his rank as the greatest Pala Emperor since Devapala. Indeed Mahipala may justly be regarded as the founder of the second Pala Empire. This revival of the glory of the Palas was fittingly demonstrated by Mahipala by constructing and repairing a large number of religious buildings in such important places as Banaras (including Sarnath) and Nalanda. We learn from contemporary records that "hundreds of pious works" were made and some old famous Buddhist monuments of Sarnath were repaired by the orders of Mahipala. Further we hear that two temples were constructed at Bodh-Gaya, and several monuments at Nalanda, after they were damaged or destroyed by fire, were repaired and restored during the reign of Mahipala. His name is also associated with a large number of tanks and towns in Bengal. The long reign of Mahipala extending over nearly half a century was thus a memorable period in the history of Bengal.
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

2. Successors of Mahipāla

After the death of Mahipāla I in c. A.D. 1038 his son Nayapāla ascended the throne. Nayapāla's kingdom extended on the west up to Magadhā, beyond which lay the kingdom of the Kalachuris of Tripuri. He is referred to as the king of Magadhā in the Tibetan record. The Kalachuri Gāggeyadeva's son Karna cherished an ambition for pushing the boundary of his Empire further to the east at the cost of the Pālas. This involved the Kalachuris and the Pālas in a protracted war. Karna marched his army into Magadhā and tried to capture a city, which may be taken as identical with Uddanapura, modern Bihār, in the Patna District. Having failed to achieve his end he sacked the Buddhist monasteries in the open country, and destroyed the foodgrains. Nayapāla soon rallied his forces and inflicted a crushing defeat on the invading army. At this time Dipankara Srijāna, also known as Atiśa, the Rector of the Vikramāśīla monastery, was residing in the Mahābodhi monastery at Vajrāsana. He gave shelter to Karna and his vanquished forces and made arrangements for their safe departure to their own country. The great Buddhist teacher, who was in indifferent health, took the risk of travelling into the Kalachuri kingdom to the west of a great river more than once in order to establish peace between the two kings. A treaty was eventually concluded on condition of mutual restitution of the captured articles and payment of compensation except for the food grains which were destroyed. This battle between Karna and Nayapāla took place in the early part of the reign of the former. In this battle Nayapāla seems to have been materially helped by a Brāhmaṇ named Sudraka. Probably in recognition of this service he conferred on him the charge of the Gaya-mahāgiri.

Mahāsvāgupta Yasyāti, a Somavāṁśi king of Kosala, who flourished in the second quarter of the eleventh century, raided Gauḍa and Rādhā. His adversary in Gauḍa seems to have been Nayapāla. Nayapāla ruled at least for fifteen years, and was succeeded by his son Vigrāhapāla III in c. A.D. 1055.

During the reign of Vigrāhapāla the Kalachuri Karna renewed hostility with the Pālas. He invaded Gauḍa but was ultimately worsted by the Pāla king. A treaty seems to have been concluded between the Pālas and the Kalachuris in accordance with which Karna gave his daughter Yauvanaśrī in marriage to Vigrāhapāla III. Shortly before A.D. 1068 Vigrāhapāla had to suffer a defeat at the hands of the Chālukya Vikramāditya VI, who invaded Gauḍa on behalf of his father Someśvara I, king of the Deccan.
Inscriptions of Vigrahapala's reign prove that he was in possession of both Gauda and Magadha, and that he ruled for more than thirteen years. Besides the Kalachuri princess he had another queen, who was the sister of the Rāśṭrakūṭa Mathanadeva, chief of Anaga. He had three sons, Mahipāla II, Sūrapāla II, and Rāmapāla. Rāmapāla is known to have been born of the Rāśṭrakūṭa princess. It is not unlikely that Mahipāla II was the son of the Kalachuri princess. Vigrahapala died in c. A.D. 1070, and was succeeded by Mahipāla II.

Mahipāla II ascended the throne at a time when the foundation of the Pala kingdom had been shaken by the successive foreign invasions. Taking advantage of the weakness of the central authority the feudatories became very powerful. One of them was Viśvāditya, son of Śūdra, the ruler of Gayā-muṇḍula. The other seems to have been Īśvarāghoṣa, the chief of ścikakari. The situation became worse when Mahipāla took some drastic measures against his two younger brothers. Mahipāla was on the whole a good and a generous monarch, and was at first affectionate towards Sūrapāla and Rāmapāla. But on the report of some mischievous people that his brothers were conspiring against him, and without verifying the truth of it, he threw them into prison and made them suffer all sorts of indignities. Thus Mahipāla, "heedless of protecting truth and polity," deprived himself of the support of his brothers which he needed very badly in that critical period. When he was thus embroiled in his domestic affairs, a large number of vassals formed a confederacy and advanced to crush his power. Disregarding the advice of his competent ministers, he advanced with a small body of ill-equipped soldiers to meet the rebels, but had to pay very dearly for this impolitic action. The rebels inflicted a crushing defeat upon him. It follows from Sandhyakaranandi's Rāma-charita, which deals in detail with the history of the Palas of this period, that this invasion of the feudatories was part of a general revolt and not undertaken in protest against the incarceration of Sūrapāla and Rāmapāla. Mahipāla's suffering, however, did not end with his defeat. An officer of the State named Divya, who was a Kaivarta by caste, and "who took to fraudulent practice as a vow," brought about the death of the forlorn king, and occupied Varendra (North Bengal). Divya, obviously to screen his nefarious action, put forward the pretension that he undertook the heavy responsibility of the State from a paramount sense of duty. During this period of disorder and confusion, Sūrapāla and Rāmapāla succeeded in escaping from the prison. After the loss of Varendra the Pala kingdom was limited to Northern and Central Bihar. Sūrapāla ruled there for about a couple of years, and was succeeded by his younger brother Rāmapāla in c. A.D. 1077.
Divya ascended the throne of Varendri in c. A.D. 1075. He could not assert his supremacy over any other part of the Pala dominions, though he made violent attacks on Rāmapāla, apparently for the extension of his kingdom. He was himself attacked by Jātavarman of the Yādava dynasty of East Bengal, who claims to have won a victory over him. Divya was succeeded by his brother Rudoka, and the latter by his son Bhima. The fact that the three kings of the Kaivarta family ruled Varendri one after the other indicates that they succeeded in consolidating their power and position there. Even Sandhyākaranandi, who was inimical to the Kaivartas, candidly confesses in his book that Varendri became prosperous under the happy rule of Bhima. The poet further states that Bhima maintained excellent cavalry and elephant forces, and possessed great wealth; he was a man of learning, properly rewarded the virtuous men, and was a sincere devotee of Siva. Bhima, however, could not enjoy his prosperity for long. The Paramāra Lakshmadeva invaded his country. Rāmapāla was not also inactive. The Pala king realised that the army, which he commanded, was not strong enough to cope with Bhima. Moreover he was confronted with a fresh danger, probably due to the establishment of a new Karṣājak dynasty in Mithilā in the northern border of his kingdom. So he approached his feudatories, who were virtually independent, for military assistance. The most important of these allied chiefs was his maternal uncle Mathanadeva, ruler of Așga, who joined him with his two sons Kahanaradeva and Suvarnadeva and his nephew Śivarājadeva. The other allied chiefs were—

1. Bhimayasās, king of Pīthi, and lord of Magadha.
2. Viragūṇa, king of Koṭāvī, in the south.
4. Vikramarāja of Devagrama.
5. Lakshmīśāra, the lord of Apara-Mandāra, and the head-jewel of the circle of feudatories of the forest.
6. Śūrapāla, ruler of Kujavādi.
7. Rudraśikhara, ruler of Tailakampa.
8. Bhāskara or Mayagalasinhha, king of Uchchhāla.
11. Chaṇḍārjuna of Saṅkaṭagrama.
12. Vijayarāja of Nidrāvali.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Of all the places mentioned above Magadha (Central Bihar), Anga (Bhagalpur), Daññabhukti (Midnapore District), and Kayangala or Kajangala (south of Rājmahal) can be definitely identified. The other places, though they cannot be located with certainty, were in all probability situated to the south of the Gaṅgā. It was no doubt a great humiliation for Rāmapāla to beg help from his own feudatories, but the result was highly satisfactory. All the chiefs readily agreed to help the Pāla king and sent their forces to fight with the Kaivartas. After making a preliminary survey of the enemy’s position with the help of Śivarāja, Rāmapāla, along with the main body of his army, crossed over to the northern bank of the Gaṅgā in Varendri. Then followed a severe battle between the forces of Rāmapāla and Bhima. The two kings fought with each other at close quarter, and Rāmapāla ultimately succeeded in taking Bhima prisoner. This unnerved thousands of Bhima’s soldiers who became panic-striken and fled, but Hari, a friend of Bhima, rallied the Kaivarta forces, and made a violent attack on Rāmapāla. Rāmapāla’s son won Hari over to his side and this completed his victory. Bhima, with all his relations, was killed, and Varendri, after a long time, again passed into the hands of the Pālas.

After the re-conquest of Varendri, Rāmapāla undertook the work of reconstruction of the houses which were destroyed by the enemies. It is not unlikely that the city of Puñjāvaradhana was also considerably damaged. This might have prompted him to found a new capital city, which was named Rāmavati after him. Rāmapāla relieved the people of Varendri from oppressive taxes, which were imposed on them by the Kaivarta rulers, and normal cultivation of lands was resumed under his patronage. He honoured Hari by raising him to a position of great influence.

After consolidating his position at home Rāmapāla tried to restore the former glory of his family by launching expeditions against the neighbouring states. He pressed heavily on the Varmans (Yādavas) of East Bengal. The Varman king, who appears to have been Harivarman, surrendered to him chariots and elephant forces, and thereby saved his country from devastation. Rāmapāla sent an allied chief, who seems to have been Tiṅgyadeva, to conquer the countries in the east. Tiṅgyadeva conquered Kāmarūpa, and was made the governor of that country. Rāmapāla despatched an elephant force against the Gāhaḍavālas of Kanauj some time between A.D. 1100 and 1109, but it was repulsed by the Gāhaḍavāla prince Govindachandra. Rāmapāla wanted to assert his supremacy over Utkala where two rival factions were quarrelling for power. One of them was backed by Anantavarman Choḍagaṅga of the Gaṅga
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES
dynasty, and the other was supported by the Pāla king. Karṇakeśari, who seems to have been supported by the Gaṅgas, and who was once defeated by Rāmapāla’s feudatory Jayasimha of Daṇḍabhukti, appears to have secured the throne by superseding the claim of his rival, who belonged to the Somavamsa. Rāmapāla took up the cause of the latter and placed him on the throne after defeating Anantavarman. But he could not maintain his influence there for long. Some time before A.D. 1112 Anantavarman succeeded in re-instating either Karṇakeśari or his successor on the throne of Utkala. Rāmapāla gave protection to a king of the Nāga dynasty, who was harassed by the Nāgas. He is said to have even captured the Nāga capital. The Nāgas, referred to, might have been those of the old Bastar State, whose capital was Chakrakoṭa (Chakrakotta).

In the latter part of his reign Rāmapāla entrusted the cares of the government to his son Rājyapāla. On hearing the news of the death of his maternal uncle Mathanadeva, who was very dear to him, Rāmapāla committed suicide by drowning himself into the Ganga near Monghyr in c. A.D. 1120.

Such was the tragic end of an eventful and remarkable career. We are indebted to the Rāma-charita of Sandhyakarcmandi for supplying these details of Rāmapāla’s reign. He had passed through strange vicissitudes of fortune, but like Mahipala I he succeeded in restoring the fallen fortunes of the Pālas. The circumstantial narrative of how he did it fills our mind with admiration for his strength of mind, resourcefulness and wonderful personality. He had to struggle hard with adversity and tasted the bitter cup of humiliation to the full. But nothing daunted him or swayed him from his grim resolve to recover the dominions and restore the glory of his forefathers. His long life was full of military campaigns, but it was crowned with success. His romantic death was a fitting end to a career which is more suited to a drama than matter-of-fact history.

4. Successors of Rāmapāla

Rāmapāla was succeeded by his son Kumārapāla, and it is probable that Rājyapāla, who had acted as his father’s deputy, pre-deceased him. At the time of Rāmapāla’s death his kingdom comprised a large part, if not the whole, of Bengal, together with Bihār and Assam. But the signs of disintegration were already visible. Some petty chiefs of Magadha assumed the position of independent monarchs. One of them was Yaksha-pāla, son of Viśvāditya of Gayā-maṇḍala. Another was Varṇāmāna, who is described as the lord of Magadha, and whose son Rudramāna is known to have been
ruling in A.D. 1138. Nânyaadeva, king of Mithilâ, claims to have defeated the king of Gauḍa, who might have been Kumârapâla. Western Magadha up to Dinapore sub-division passed into the hands of the Gâhadavâla Govindachandra before A.D. 1124. In their fight with the Pâlas the Gâhadavâlas were helped by their allies, the Kalachuris of Tunmâna. Vallabharâja, a feudatory of the Kalachuri Râtnadeva II (c. A.D. 1114-1141), is said to have reduced the king of Gauḍa. Anantavarman Choḍânga conquered South and West Bengal. Vaidyadeva, the minister of Kumârapâla, resisted the invader for some time, but had to hurry to Kâmarûpa in order to put down the revolt of Tirhgyadeva. Taking advantage of his absence Anantavarman conquered all the territories up to Hooghly on the bank of the Gângâ. Vijayasena of the Sena family, who allied himself with Anantavarman Choḍânga, grew very powerful in Râjâhâ. Vaidyadeva, after putting down the revolt of Tirhgyadeva, became the governor of Kâmarûpa, and subsequently, probably in the next reign, became independent. Kumârapâla, who was obviously a weak ruler, was thus engulfed in a sea of troubles, and when he died in c. A.D. 1125, he left a tottering kingdom to his son Gopa III. Gopa III, who ruled for more than fourteen years, died an unnatural death, but the exact details of the incident are not known. He was succeeded by his uncle Madanapâla, the youngest son of Râmâpâla, in A.D. 1144.

Madanapâla tried to save the Pâla kingdom, but failed. Until the third year of his reign, his kingdom extended up to the Bihâr Hill, but some time before A.D. 1146, the Gâhadavâlas under Govindachandra conquered all the territories up to Monghyr. Madanapâla, however, reconquered Monghyr from the Gâhadavâlas before the 14th year of his reign, i.e. before A.D. 1157, with the help of his relation Chandradeva, son of Suvastrâdeva, and the grandson of the Râshtrakûta Mathanadeva, who was a Mahââdhipati of Añga. Madanapâla also destroyed the power of Govardhana, who cannot be identified, but was probably a rebellious feudatory. Madanapâla carried on hostilities with the Gaâgas of Kâlîgâ and Orissa, who occupied a large portion of Râjâhâ. It is known from the Râma-charita that he was looking for an opportunity to crush the power of the Snake king of Kâlîgâ (Kâlîgâ-Panâbhumijam, i.e. Ananta, the lord of serpents), who may be identified with Anantavarman Choḍânga. Madanapâla manfully struggled against all these neighbouring rulers. But his greatest enemy was inside Bengal. The growth of the power of the Senas of Râjâhâ, who had already made themselves masters of East Bengal, became a menace to the very existence of the sovereignty of the Pâlas. Madanapâla fought a severe battle near the Kâlîndi river, in the Malda District,
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

with an enemy, presumably the Senas under Vijayasena. He suc­ceeded in pushing the enemy to the Kālindi river but, some time after the eighth year of his reign, he had to surrender Varendri to Vijayasena. After being deprived of his home dominion, which never came back to the Pala, Madanapāla withdrew to the Aṅga country where he ruled till c. A.D. 1161. He is the last known king of the family of Gopāla and Dharmapāla.

A king named Govindapāla, who calls himself the lord of Gauḍa, is known to have been ruling in the Gayā District in the sixth de­cade of the twelfth century. He was probably related to Madana­pāla, but nothing is definitely known. His power seems to have collapsed in A.D. 1162. The colophons of some manuscripts and stone inscriptions bear dates which appear to have been the number of years counted, not from the beginning of the reign, but from the destruction of the kingdom of Govindapāla. Thus the Pāla dynasty, which at one time rose to the rank of the foremost imperial rulers of India, lost its sovereign power after a rule of nearly four hundred years.

II. BENGAL AFTER THE PALAS

1. The Yādavas of Vaṅga

Govindachandra of Vaṅga, who was defeated by Rājendra Chola, was probably the last ruler of the Chandra dynasty. After the fall of the Chandras, the Varmans came to power in East Ben­gal, in the second quarter of the eleventh century. The Varmans claim to have belonged to the Yādava race, which was graced by the birth of Krishṇa. The Belāva copper-plate of Bhojavarman states that the Varmans dominated Simhapura. This has led some scholars to suggest that Simhapura was the original home of the Varmans wherefrom they came to East Bengal. Attempts have been made to identify the place variously with Simhapura near Salt Range in the Punjab, referred to by Hiuen Tsang, Simhapura in Kaliṅga mentioned in the epigraphic records, and Simhapura in Rāgha mentioned in the Ceylonese Chronicle Mahāvamsa and iden­tified with Singur in the Hooghly District, which bears ancient ruins. But none of these identifications has gained general accept­ance. The earliest known member of the Varman dynasty is Vaj­ravarman, who is said to have been “the welfare (itself) of the vic­torious war expedition of the Yādava armies, and the god of Death to his enemies.” This seems to be referring to the conquest of East Bengal by the Varmans under his leadership. It cannot be ascertained from the Belāva inscription, the only record mention­ing the name of Vajravarman, whether he was a royal personage.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

This epigraphic record does not also mention the successors of Vajravarman definitely as kings in the introductory portion. In the prose portion only Bhojavarman, the author of the inscription, and his father Samaalavarman are given the title Mahârâjâdhirâja. The fact that Vajravarman belonged to a royal dynasty of Siñhapura and that he led successful expeditions against his enemies suggest that he occupied royal position. Some scholars, however, think that the Varmans occupied East Bengal after the death of Vajravarman, and that his son Jâtavarman was the founder of the greatness of the family. It was probably during the reign of Jâtavarman that the Kalachuri Kârââ invaded Vaṅga and conquered it. As Kârââ is known to have given his daughter Viraśri in marriage to Jâtavarman, it may be presumed that a treaty was eventually concluded between the Kalachuris and the Yadavas. During the reign of Jâtavarman there was a great political upheaval in North Bengal, which, as noted above, led to the accession of the Kaivarta Divya on the throne of that country. Jâtavarman led an expedition against Divya and won a victory over him. The Vaṅgâla army which, according to a Nândâ inscription, sacked the Buddhist monastery at Somapura, modern Pâhirpur, in the Rajshahi District, was in all probability the army led by Jâtavarman on this occasion. Jâtavarman’s victory over Divya brought him to the border of the Anga country, which was then ruled by the Râṣṭra-kûta Mathanadeva or his predecessor. Jâtavarman is said to have succeeded in asserting his supremacy over the Anga country. Though he won victory over Divya and Mathanadeva he could not permanently annex their territories to his kingdom. The anti-Buddhist propaganda carried on by Govardhana, the father of Bhaṭṭa-Bhavadeva, in East Bengal, was probably responsible for the persecution of the Buddhists by the Vaṅgâla army in Varendra. Jâtavarman invaded Kâmarâpa and defeated its king, who may be identified with Harshapâla. Prithu and Govardhana, who had to yield to the forces of Jâtavarman, cannot be identified.

Jâtavarman issued an inscription from Vikramapura which appears to have been the capital of the Varmans. He had two sons Harivarman and Samaalavarman by the Kalachuri princess, and the former succeeded him on the throne.

Harivarman’s minister of peace and war was Bhaṭṭa-Bhavadeva, who had the curious epithet Bâla-Balabhi-bhujângâ. Bhaṭṭa-Bhavadeva’s grandfather Adideva was minister of the king of Vaṅga, who may be identified with Vajravarman. Bhaṭṭa-Bhavadeva studied Siddhânta, Tantra, Gaṇita, and Astrology and wrote books on Horoscopy, Dhârmâsâstra, and Mīmâṃsâ. He rose against Buddh-
ism and enhanced the cause of the Brahmanical religion in Vaṅga. He built a temple of Ananta, Nārāyaṇa, and Nyūsīhāra. There is now good ground for rejecting the view, unanimously held for a long time, that this temple is identical with that of Ananta-Vāsu-deva at Bhuvaṇesvara, in Orissa, on whose wall was fixed the slab containing the inscription. It must have been carried there from Bengal.

As noted above, Harivarman was probably subjugated by Rāma-pāla. It seems that during his reign Nanyadeva of Mithilā raided Vaṅga. Harivarman ruled for more than forty-six years, and probably died at the end of the first quarter of the twelfth century A.D. He had a son, whose name is not known, but was succeeded on the throne by his younger brother Sāmalavarman.

Sāmalavarman had a number of queens, the chief of whom was Mālavayadevi, the mother of Bhojavarmen. Bhojavarmen, who succeeded his father, ruled for more than five years from the city of Vikramapura. He or his successor was overthrown by Vijayesena of the Sena dynasty in the middle of the twelfth century A.D. Varmans are not known to have asserted their supremacy on any country beyond East Bengal.

A number of Kulapañjas (genealogical books) of the Vaidika Brahmaṇas mention that a remote predecessor of their family settled in Bengal in S. 1001 (≈ A.D. 1079) during the reign of Sāmalavarman. A single manuscript, however, states that it took place during the reign of Harivarman.

2. The Senas of Bengal

The Senas of Bengal call themselves Karnaṭa-Kshatriya, Brahma-Kshatriya, and Kshatriya. They claim their descent from the mythical Virasena and others, who are said to have been the kings of Dakshināpatha. It may, therefore, be held that the original home of the Senas was in the Kannada speaking region in the south. There was in the Dhārvār District, Bombay State, a family of Jain teachers, who belonged to the Sena family (Senānava). It cannot be ascertained whether the Senas of the Dhārvār District had any connection with those of Bengal. Nor do we know how and when the Senas came to Bengal from Dakshināpatha. It is known from the records of the Pālas that the kings of this dynasty, from Deva-pāla downwards, appointed as officers many foreigners among whom were also the Karnāṭas. It may be that a remote predecessor of the Senas of Bengal, hailing from the Deccan, accepted service under the Pālas, and then his successors gradually rose to power and settled in Rādhā. It is not also unlikely that the founder of the Sena

---

NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES
family accompanied one of the Chalukya rulers who invaded Bengal, and ultimately settled there.

The earliest known member of the Sena dynasty of Bengal is Sāmantasena, who is said to have been born in the family of the Rājaputras, who adorned Rādhā. Rājaputra means a prince, but also designates an office, and generally scholars have taken the word Rājaputra to mean prince in this case. Sāmantasena, whose home was obviously Rādhā, is said to have defeated, in the southern quarter, an enemy who plundered the resources of the Karṇāṭa country. It is generally assumed that Sāmantasena fought this battle in the Deccan on the side of the Chalukyas against the Chōlas. Some are, however, inclined to think that Sāmantasena defended his adopted country against the incursion of the southern king Rājendra Chōla who, after vanquishing the Chalukya Jayasimha, king of the Karṇāṭa country, and many others, invaded Bengal. In his old age, Sāmantasena devoted his time to religious practices, and frequented the sacred hermitages in the forests on the bank of the Ganga. Though he is not definitely known to have assumed royal position, he may be taken to have been a ruling chief in Rādhā. He was succeeded by his son Hemantasena, who is given the title Mahārājadhīrāja in the record of his successor. Hemantasena seems to have consolidated his position in Rādhā during the troubled times that followed the occupation of that country by the Kalachuri Karna. The epithet, “the skilful protector of kings,” given to Hemantasena in the record of his son, may have some reference to his giving shelter to Śūrapāla and Rāmapāla after their escape from the prison of Varendrī. He was succeeded by his son Vijayasena in c. A.D. 1095.

Vijayasena was the greatest king of the Sena dynasty. In the early part of his life he married Vilāsadevi, a princess of the Śūra family, who gave birth to his son Vallālasena (Ballālasena). This Śūra family may be identified with the Śūra dynasty which ruled in Apara-Mandara about this time under its king Lakshmīśūra. It seems that when the disintegration of the Pala kingdom began after the death of Rāmapāla, Vijayasena made a bid for the conquest of the whole of Bengal. He strengthened his position by making an alliance with Anantavarman Chōdānga, king of Kālīṅga, who extended the boundary of his kingdom up to the Hooghly District. Vijayasena’s ambitious military scheme soon brought him into conflict with a number of rulers, and he defeated them all. He subdued Vira and Vardhana, who may be identified respectively with Viragulṛa of Koṭṭāvī and Dvorapavardhana of Knuśāmbī, the allies of Rāmapāla mentioned above. He led a naval expedi-
tion in the west along the course of the Gângâ, probably against Govindachandra of the Gâhañâvâla dynasty of Kanauj. Most likely it was on this occasion that he invaded Mithilâ and inflicted a defeat on its king Nânyadeva. About the middle of the twelfth century he overthrew Bhôjavarman of Vikramapura and conquered East Bengal. He also invaded Varendra, which was then ruled by Madanapâla. Though he seems to have suffered a reverse near the Kâlindi, he eventually succeeded in wrestling North Bengal from the Pâlas. The Deopâra, Barâckpore, and Paikore inscriptions of his reign prove his supremacy over Gauḍâ, Vañga and Râjñâ. On the south his kingdom comprised Kâlî-mañjâla, and built a temple of Pradyumnesvara Siva in the Rajshahi District. The poet Umapatidhara lived in his court and composed the famous eulogy (Deopâra Prasasti) from which we know the details of his reign. His queen Vilasadevi performed the Kanaka Tulapuṭusha Mahâdaṇâ ceremony in the royal palace at Vikramapura, which was one of the capitals of the Senas. The other one was Vijayapura, which seems to have been identical with Nadiya. Vijayasena was succeeded by his son Vallalasena in c. A.D. 1158. Vallalasena assumed the title Niśćaka-Śâṅkara. He claims to have defeated the king of Gauḍâ, which probably means that he put an end to the rule of Gauḍâśvarâ Govinda pâla2 in A.D. 1162. It is known from literature of a later period that he invaded Mithilâ during the reign of his father Vijayasena, and that his kingdom comprised Vañga, Râjñâ, Bâgdi, Varendra, and Mithilâ. It is also recorded that Gauḍâpura, Vikramapura, and Suvanâgrâma were the three capitals of this king. The authenticity of these reports cannot be verified. But an inscription, dated in the ninth year of Vallalasena, found at Colgong, on the Gângâ, in Bihâr, proves that the neighbouring region was comprised in his dominions.3 Vallalasena was a man of learning. He learnt all the Purânas and Sûrîtis under the guidance of his preceptor Aniruddha, and was an author of repute. He completed his book Dânasâgara in S. 1091 (= A.D. 1189), and had begun the composition of another book named
Adhyātasaṅgāra, one year before that. He died before he could finish this book, and it was completed by his son Lakṣhmānasena. Tradition ascribes the introduction of the social system, known as Kulinism, in Bengal to Vallālasena, but this does not find corroboration in any contemporary record. Vallālasena married Rāmādevi, the daughter of a Chālukya king, who may be identified with the Chālukya Vikramāditya VI. Vallālasena was a Śaiva, though he was inclined towards Vaishnavism. In his old age he handed over the reins of administration to his son Lakṣhmānasena, and retired along with his queen to a place known as Nirjarapura on the Triveni.

Lakṣhmānasena ascended the throne in A.D. 1178 and assumed the title Arirāja-Madana-śaṅkara. Altogether seven copper-plate inscriptions of his reign have been found in different parts of Bengal. Five of them, which were executed within six years after his accession, were issued from Vikramapura. The Madhānāgar Grant, the date of which cannot be restored, and the Bhawal plate, which is dated in the 27th year of his reign, were issued from Dhāryagrama. It seems that Lakṣhmānasena passed the early part of his career mostly at Vikramapura, and later resided at Dhāryagrama. His inscriptions prove that he succeeded in maintaining his supremacy over Gauḍa, Vānga, and Rādhā during the early part of his reign. Before the sixth year of his reign, probably out of administrative necessity, he separated northern Rādhā from the Vardhamāna-Bhukti, and placed it within a newly constituted Bhukti named Kaṅkagrama.

Lakṣhmānasena was a great military leader and the contemporary records give an account of his victories. While he was still very young he defeated the king of Gauḍa, which probably means that he participated in the battle which was fought by Vijayasena with the Pāla Madanapāla. He is also said to have defeated the king of Kaliṅga in his youth, and it is not unlikely that he fought this battle also under the leadership of his grandfather. During his reign he entered into a war with the king of Kaśi, who must be the Gāhādeva Jayachandra. Some time between A.D. 1183 and 1192 Jayachandra succeeded in pushing the eastern boundary of his kingdom at least up to Bodh-Gaya in Magadhā. By defeating him Lakṣhmānasena seems to have succeeded in checking the eastward progress of the Gāhādevālas. He also invaded Prāgjyotisha or Kāmarūpa, and won a victory over its king. The inscriptions of the successors of Lakṣhmānasena refer to the king’s victory over the rulers of Kaliṅga and Kaśi, and add that Lakṣhmānasena set up pillars commemorating his military victory at
Puri, Kāśi and Trivenī (Allahābād). This may be an exaggeration of the facts mentioned in the Madhāinagar and Bhawal copper-plates of Lakshmaṇasena. These two inscriptions, one of which was issued long after the close of Lakshmaṇasena’s career of conquest, do not mention any thing about his conquest of Allahābād.

The kingdom of the Senas began to disintegrate in the closing years of the twelfth century. Khaḍī-maṣḍāla was under the sway of Lakshmaṇasena in the early part of his reign. But in or before A.D. 1196 one Dommanapāla set up an independent kingdom in this region. While the Sena power was weakened by disruption within, it had to face the invasion of the Muslims who had by this time overrun the greater part of Northern India. Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī, a Turkish officer, conquered the city of Bihar, and entered Bengal with a large army. According to the account given by Minhaj-ud-din in his Tabaqat-i-Nāṣirī, the news of the advance of Muhammad Khaljī created such a panic into the minds of the citizens of Nadiyā, the capital city of Lakshmaṇasena, that most of them took to flight, but the king stayed on in the almost deserted city. Muhammad Khaljī, at the end of his march, advanced with only eighteen soldiers a little forward from the main body of the army, and entered Nadiyā without any opposition, as the guards and inhabitants of the city took them to be horse-dealers. By the time Muhammad reached the royal palace, the main body of his soldiers also got into the city, and Muhammad forced his way through the palace-gate with a drawn sword. The royal guards being attacked unawares, raised a hue and cry which reached the ears of Lakshmaṇasena, when he was taking his mid-day meal. The king at once fled by the back door, and proceeded to Vaṅga. Minhaj does not say from whom he heard this narrative, but it is clear that he had no reliable source of information. The whole story, however, reads like a romance and is hardly credible. It is, for example, very difficult to believe that though Lakshmaṇasena knew that the Muslims were advancing against him, he awaited their arrival in the capital without making any proper arrangement for its defence, or that a body of Muslim horsemen would be admitted into the city without any question. That Nadiyā was conquered by Muhammad Khaljī by defeating Lakshmaṇasena admits of no doubt, but the details of the conquest, as given by Minhaj, cannot be accepted as the whole truth. Even if we accept his story, we must admit that Lakshmaṇasena showed great bravery by not deserting his capital in the company of the other panic-stricken citizens long before the actual attack by the Muslim army, and considering the circumstances which forced him to leave the city, we can hardly blame him or regard it as an act of cowardice.
Muhammad Khalji conquered Nadiya in c. A.D. 1202, and shortly afterwards wrested North Bengal from Lakshmanasena. But East Bengal, and probably also South Bengal, remained under the control of the Senas. In the 27th year of his reign (A.D. 1205), i.e. three years after the loss of Nadiya, Lakshmanasena granted lands in the Bawal Pargana of the Dacca District.

Lakshmanasena changed his ancestral faith and became a devout Vaishnav. He was not only a distinguished soldier, but also a great poet, and some verses composed by him found place in Śrīdharaśāstra's Śūdaktiktāyūmītīta. It has already been noticed that he completed the text of Adbhutasāgara, which was begun by his father. His court was graced by a number of famous poets such as Jayadeva, the author of Gītagevīndā, and Dhoyi, the author of Pāṇamadūṭī, as well as scholars like Halayudha, the author of Brahmaṇāravasā, and Śrīdharaśāstra, the son of the Mahāsaṃanta-chāḍīmeśa Vaṇḍāsa. Śrīdharaśāstra himself was Mahāmaṅgalika under Lakshmanasena. The great writer Halayudha was his chief minister, and Saṅkaradhara, the minister for peace and war. Lakshmanasena had a number of queens, viz., Śrīyādevi, Kalyāṇadevi and Chāndrādevi and two sons, Viśvarūpaśena and Kesāvāsena.

An era which was in use in Bihār after the downfall of the Senas is associated with the name of Lakshmanasena. Different records yield different dates, ranging from A.D. 1108 to 1119, as the initial year of this era. If Lakshmanasena was the founder of this era, it is curious that he did not use it in his own records. Moreover, Lakshmanasena was probably not even born in A.D. 1119. For Minhāj states that at the time of the Muslim invasion of Nadiya Lakshmanasena was eighty years old, and this fixes the date of the king's birth in c. A.D. 1122. Laghubhāratā, a late work, states that Vallālāsaṇa received the news of Lakshmanasena's birth when he was marching against Mithilā. If there is any truth in this statement, Lakshmanasena was obviously born after the death of Rāmāpāla in c. A.D. 1120 when alone Vallālāsaṇa could have led an expedition against Mithilā. As a matter of fact the origin of the Lakshmanasena era cannot be ascertained now.

Lakshmanasena probably died shortly after A.D. 1205, his last known date. He was succeeded by Viśvarūpasena, who assumed the title Viśhahāśaka-Śaṅkara. Viśvarūpasena granted lands in the region of Viṅkramapura from his victorious camp at Phalugārāma. Minhāj states that about this time the Muslims ruled Rājdhā and Varendri from their capital Lakhnāwati, and in A.D. 1226 Ghiyās-ud-dīn Iwaz, the Sultan of Lakhnāwati, made an abortive attempt to
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

conquer Vaṅga. This is corroborated by the Sena records according to which Viśvarūpasena defeated the Yavanas, i.e. the Muslims. He had two sons Kumārasena and Purushottamasena, but these princes are not known to have ever ruled. Viśvarūpasena ruled for more than 14 years and was succeeded by his younger brother Kesāvasesa who assumed the title Asahya-SAṁkara.\(^6\) He also granted lands in the region of Vikramapura from Phalgugrama. Minhāj relates that Malik Saif-ud-din (AD. 1231-1233) sent an expedition to Vaṅga where he captured some elephants. Kesāvasesa, in all probability, succeeded in repulsing this invasion, for he is also stated to have won a victory over the Yavanas. The descendants of Lakshmaṇasena thus frustrated successive attempts of the Muslims to assert their supremacy over Vaṅga. How long Kesāvasesa ruled cannot be ascertained. It appears from Minhāj that the Senas occupied the throne of Vaṅga at least up to A.D. 1245, if not up to A.D. 1260. They were supplanted in Vaṅga by Danujamādhava Daśarathadeva of the Deva family not long after the middle of the thirteenth century. Both Viśvarūpasena and Kesāvasesa were devotees of Sūrya. But a king known as Madhusena, who was a devotee of Buddha, is known to have been ruling in some part of Bengal in A.D. 1289. His relation with the Senas of Vikramapura is not known.

3. The Royal Family of Paṭṭikera

The Varmans and the Senas are not known to have ever asserted their supremacy over that part of Bengal which lay to the east of the Brahmaputra. From the eleventh century onward the capital of this region seems to have been Paṭṭikera, the extensive ruins of which have been discovered on the Maināmati Hills, in the Tippera District. All memory of this kingdom is lost, but even now there is a Pargana named Paṭṭikera, or Paṭikera which extends up to the Maināmati Hills. A miniature label in a Nepalese manuscript, copied in A.D. 1015, mentions the city of Paṭṭikera. According to the Burmese chronicles, the kingdom of Burma, under Anoratha (A.D. 1044-1077), was bounded on the west by Patikkara. These Burmese sources narrate romantic stories which indicate that there was a close and intimate contact between the rulers of Paṭṭikera and Burma in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. Unfortunately the Burmese annals do not mention the name of any king of Paṭṭikera. We learn from an inscription, discovered in the Maināmati Hills, that a king known as Harikāladeva Raṇavaṇikamalla ascended the throne of Paṭṭikera in A.D. 1202-1203, and ruled there at least up to A.D. 1219. Harikāladeva or his successor was overthrown by the Deva dynasty.
The earliest known member of the Deva family is Purushottama, who was a headman of a village (grāma), possibly under the royal dynasty of Paṭṭikera. His son Madhusūdana, also known as Madhumāthana, is described as a king (nripati), and seems to have founded an independent principality in the southern part of the kingdom of Paṭṭikera. His son and successor was Vasiṣṭa, who was again succeeded by his son Dāmodara. Dāmodara, who claims to have been the overlord of all kings, issued inscriptions dated A.D. 1234 and 1243. He granted the village Mehara (now in the Chandpur subdivision of the Tippera District) in the Samatata-maṇḍala, and seems to have put an end to the rule of Harikaladeva's family in Paṭṭikera. King Danujamādāhava Daśarathadeva of the Deva family, who issued an inscription from Vikramapura, was the son and successor of Dāmodara. He claims to have obtained the kingdom of Gauḍa through the grace of Nārāyaṇa. This probably means that he wrested Vaṅga from the Senas, who claimed to have been the lords of Gauḍa even long after its conquest by the Muslims. As will be noted in Chapter V, Sultan Balban came to Sonargaon (now a Paraganā, in the Narayanganj sub-division, Dacca District) in A.D. 1283 and entered into an agreement with Danuj Rai to guard against the flight of Tughril Khan by water. There is no doubt that this Danuj Rai is identical with Danujamādāhava Daśarathadeva. The Ta'rīkh-i-Mubiirak Shāhi mentions an interesting episode connected with the meeting of Balban with Danuj Rai at Sonargaon. After the reign of Daśarathadeva in the latter part of the thirteenth century A.D., the kingdom of the Deva dynasty passed into the hands of the Muslims.

III. ASSAM

It has been mentioned above that after the death of king Tyāgasimha, the last ruler of the Śalambha or Prāḷambha dynasty, towards the close of the tenth century A.D., the people elected his kinsman named Brahmapāla as the king of Prāgyaṭiṣṭha. The capital of this newly established dynasty was at Durjayā, which is identified by some with Gauhati. Brahmapāla may be placed in the first part of the eleventh century. He was succeeded by his son Ratnapāla who granted lands in Uttarakula, which seems to be referring to the north bank of the Brahmaputra river. He is said to have fought successfully with the kings of Gurjara, Gauḍa, Kerala, and Dākshināṭya, and with the Bāhikas and Taṅkas. This seems to be a hyperbole. The kings of Gurjara, Gauḍa, and the Deccan about this time were respectively the Chaulukya Bhima I of Gujarāt,
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

Nayapala, and the Chalukya Somesvara I. Bhima I and Nayapala are not known to have led any expedition against Assam, but Somesvara I's son Vikramaditya VI is known to have led a successful expedition against Kamarupa shortly before A.D. 1068. Ratnapala ruled for more than twenty-six years. His son Purandrapala, who was a poet, predeceased him. So after the death of Ratnapala Purandrapala's son Indrapala ascended the throne. He is described in his own inscription as the light of the East (Prāchī-pradīpa). It was probably during his reign that Játavarman of the Yásava dynasty of East Bengal invaded Kamarupa. Indrapala was succeeded by his son Gopala, who was again succeeded by his son Harshapala. Harshapala's son and successor was Dharmapala, who may be taken to have flourished in the first quarter of the twelfth century A.D. Dharmapala is mentioned as the king of Kamarupa-nagara, which was probably identical with Durjayā. He was a man of learning, and composed a part of his own inscription discovered on the bank of the Pushpahhadā. He was the last ruler of the family founded by Brahmapala and seems to have been overthrown by Tiṅgyadeva, in the reign of Rāmapala of Gauḍa. As already mentioned, Tiṅgyadeva revolted and was defeated by Vaidyadeva, who subsequently ruled Kamarupa as an independent king. Whether he was succeeded by his brother Budhadeva is not known.

A copper-plate inscription from Assam mentions that in the Chandravāmśa there was Bhāskara, whose son was the king Rāyārīdeva Trailokyasīṁha. Rāyārīdeva is said to have vanquished the king of Vaṅga, who may be identified with Vījayasena. He was succeeded by his son Udayakara Nīhāṅkasīṁha, and the latter by his son Vallabhadeva, one of whose known dates is A.D. 1185. It is probable, therefore, that the three kings Rāyārīdeva, Udayakara and Vallabhadeva ruled in Kamarupa after Vaidyadeva. Vallabhadeva was probably the king who suffered defeat at the hands of Lākṣmīnaśaṇa.

Minhāj states that in A.D. 1205 Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī advanced with an army via Bārdhankot along the bank of the Begmati river (identified with Karatoya) for the conquest of Tibet. Before ten days had elapsed he had to cross a stone bridge within the territory of the king of Kāmrūd (Kamarupa). While returning from the Tibetan expedition he found the bridge broken by the Hindus of Kāmrūd and, realising the gravity of the situation, ordered his army to take shelter in a neighbouring temple. The 'Rāe of Kāmrūd' attacked the Muslims and killed a large number of them. Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī, with a few followers, jumped into the river and swam to the opposite bank. Mr. Blochmann
places this bridge near Darjeeling. An inscription on a rock at Kanaibashi, a mile to the north-east of North Gauhati, states that in A.D. 1205 the Turushkas, who came to Kāmarūpa, were slain. There is a broken old stone bridge on the channel of the Barnadi, eleven miles to the west of Kanaibashi. Some scholars are inclined to identify this bridge with that mentioned by Minhāj. This view does not seem to be convincing as Gauhati lies far off from the normal route to Tibet from Lakhnāwati. As a matter of fact the genuineness of the Kanaibashi inscription may be doubted. There is, however, no doubt about a conflict between Muhammad Bakhtyār Khalji and the king of Assam in which the former suffered severe losses. It cannot however be said definitely whether Vallabhadeva or his successor was the adversary of Muhammad Bakhtyār Khalji.

The chronology of the Kāmarūpa kings after Vallabhadeva cannot be definitely determined, but their conflict with the Muslim rulers continued. In A.D. 1227 Ghiyās-ud-dīn Ṭawāf of Lakhnāwati made an abortive attempt to conquer Kāmarūpa. In A.D. 1257 Ikhtiyār-ud-dīn Yuzbak Tughrī Khān invaded Kāmarūpa and at first obtained some success. Subsequently the Sultan was defeated and captured. He died of his wounds and his army was destroyed. The invasion of Kāmarūpa by Muḥammad Shāh in A.D. 1337 also ended in disaster for the Muslim army.

In the first half of the eleventh century the Mahānāsālīka Isvaragahosa was ruling at Dhékka. He granted land after bathing in the Jaṭodā river in the Gālījipītyaka-viśāṇva of the Piyolla-maṅgāla. The Kālīkā Purāṇa mentions that the Jaṭodā flows through Kāmarūpa. The river now passes through Jalpaiguri and Cooch-Behar. Isvaragahosa ruled for more than thirty-five years, and was either a feudatory under the Pālas of Gauḍa or a vassal under Rānapāla of the Pāla dynasty of Kāmarūpa.

In the eleventh and twelfth centuries a line of kings ruled in the kingdom of Śrīhatta. There were kings Kharavāṇa, Gokula-deva, Nārāyana, Keśavadeva, and Isānadeva, each being the son of his predecessor. Isānadeva ruled for more than seventeen years. Śrīhatta or Sylhet was conquered by Siṅgamāla Khān Ghāzī in A.D. 1303 during the reign of the Sultan Fīrūz Shāh.

The Ahoms, a branch of the Shan tribe, started under their leader Suṅgphā from Maulung in A.D. 1215, and crossed the hilly country of Patkai. They came in course of their wandering march to Eastern Assam, and settled at Charaideo in A.D. 1253. Suṅgphā was succeeded by his son Suteuphā, during whose reign the Kachāris gave the country to the east of the Dikhu river to the Ahoms.
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

Suteupha, who died in A.D. 1281, was succeeded by his son Subinphā, and the latter by his son Sukhāngphā in A.D. 1292. During this period the Ahoms carried on a protracted war with the Rājā of Kāmatā which was concluded by a treaty. Sukhāngphā married Rajani, the daughter of the Rājā of Kāmatā, and died in A.D. 1332. The Ahoms, who thus consolidated their kingdom in the thirteenth century, gave the name Assam to the country which was called Kāmarūpa and Prāgjyotisha in ancient days.

In the thirteenth century the Kāchāris also founded a kingdom along the south bank of the Brahmaputra from Dikhu to Kallang. It also included the valley of Dhansiri and the North Kāchār subdivision.

IV. NEPAL

As we have seen above, the dynasty of Guṇakāma was ruling in Nepal at the beginning of the eleventh century A.D. and king Nirbhaya was ruling jointly with Rudra in A.D. 1007. Rudradeva was succeeded by Bhoja. It appears from a palm-leaf manuscript, dated A.D. 1015, that when Bhoja was ruling, half the kingdom was enjoyed by Lakshmikāmadeva. Some take this to mean that Bhoja and Lakshmikāma ruled conjointly. But an undated manuscript refers to the reign of Bhoja only, and another manuscript, dated A.D. 1039, mentions the name of Lakshmikāma alone. According to the Tibetan sources, when Dipankara Aṭiṣa visited Nepal in c. A.D. 1039, on his way to Tibet, the king of the country was Grags-pa-mṭa-yas, which is restored as Anantakīrtti. The relation between Anantakīrtti and Lakshmikāma is not known. Lakshmikāma’s successor was Jayakīrtti, also known as Vijaya. Jayakīrtti revived the worship of Nāga. The tradition runs that he had no issue, and after his death the Thākuris of Nayakot elected one of them, named Bhāskara-deva, as king.

Bhāskaradeva is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1046. He is stated to have “repaired his paternal crown,” which probably means that his remote predecessors were royal personages. He was succeeded by Baladeva, also known as Balavantadeva, who was ruling in A.D. 1059. Baladeva’s successor Pradyumnakāmadeva, also known as Padmadeva, is known to have been on the throne in A.D. 1064 and 1065. Pradyumnakāmadeva was followed in succession by Nāgārjunadeva and Saṅkaradeva. The known dates of Saṅkaradeva range from A.D. 1068 to 1077. Vāmadeva of the Thākuri family of Patan, a remote descendant of Aṃśuvarman, overthrew the Thākuris of Nayakot in the latter part of the eleventh century A.D.
Vāmādeva is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1081. He may be taken as identical with Vāmādeva, son of king Yāsodēva, whose inscription on the pedestal of an image of Sūrya, found at Lalitapattana, is dated A.D. 1083. Vāmādeva’s successor Harshadeva was ruling in A.D. 1090 and 1093. The Vāṃśaśāstra of Nepāl mentions a date of Harshadeva as N.E. 219 (= A.D. 1095), which Bendall takes as the year of the king’s death. After Harshadeva the throne was occupied by Sīvadeva. The Vāṃśaśāstra, discovered by Bendall, mentions him as the son of Śāṅkaradeva. This shows that the Śāṅkuri of Nayakot again came to power. The known dates of Sīvadeva’s reign range from A.D. 1118 to 1123. The tradition relates that he built a city named Kirttipura near Kāntipura and Lalitapattana. He secured a large amount of gold by raiding the neighbouring countries and built with it a new roof for Pasupatināṭha. He introduced a new coin, made of copper and iron, and marked with the figure of a lion. His son and successor Indra, also called Mahendra, is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1128. The next king was Mānadeva. An inscription of the Rājādhīrāja Mānadeva, dated A.D. 1139, has been found near Kāṭmāṇḍu. He was associated in the government with his son Narendradeva (Narasiṅha), the known dates of whose reign are A.D. 1134 and 1141. Narendradeva’s successor Anandadeva is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1146 and 1148. Anandadeva is mentioned as the son of Sihadeva who may be taken as identical with Narasiṅha (Narendradeva). Anandadeva was succeeded by Rudradeva who, according to the chronicle, abdicated his throne, after seven years’ reign, in favour of his son, and devoted himself to religious practices. Wright’s chronicle mentions the name of this son of Rudradeva as Mitradēva. Bendall’s chronicle, however, states that Amritadeva, who was the other son of Sihadeva (Narasiṅhdēva), succeeded Rudradeva. Amritadeva (A.D. 1176) was followed in succession by Ratnadeva (A.D. 1183) and Somēśvara-deva, son of Mahendra. After Somēśvara ruled Gujakāmādeva II (A.D. 1187), Lakshmiśākṣamadeva (A.D. 1193), Vivaikāmādeva (A.D. 1196, 1197), Arimalladeva (A.D. 1201, 1216), Rājaśāha (A.D. 1221) and Abhayamalla (A.D. 1223–1252) one after the other. It is probable that Arimalla, referred to above, was the founder of the Malla dynasty in Nepāl. During the reign of Abhayamalla there were frequent earthquakes and a famine in Nepāl. Wright’s chronicle mentions that Abhayamalla had two sons, Jayadevamalla and Anandamalla. Anandamalla founded a city named Bhaktapura (Bhaktapura), and established his headquarters there. He also founded seven more towns, viz. Banapur, Panavati, Nala, Dhanbhāl, Khadpu, Chankot, and Sangha. Jayadevamalla (A.D. 1255, 1257), who ruled in
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

Patan and Kantipur, was followed in succession by Jayabhima (A.D. 1260), Jayasaha(malladeva, and Anantamalla (A.D. 1279-1307). Tradition relates that during the reign of Anantamalla the Khadas and the Magars of the western mountains, under the leadership of Jayatari and Mukundasena, led a series of invasions against Nepal, some time between A.D. 1287 and 1290, and carried on depredations and plunder. A pestilence, which broke out there about this time, forced the invaders to withdraw. Anantamalla was followed in succession by Jayanandadeva (A.D. 1318) and Jayarudramalla (A.D. 1320, 1326). Jayarimalla was a co-regent of Jayarudramalla, who died in A.D. 1326. Some time before his death Nepal was invaded by Harisinha of the Karnaataka dynasty of Simroon. Henceforth Harisinha and his successors were the supreme rulers of the Nepal valley, and Jayarudramalla's successors, Jayarjadeva (A.D. 1347-1355) and Jayarjunamalla (A.D. 1363-1376), ruled Nepal as their subordinates.

V. BIHAR

1. The Karnaataka Dynasty of Mithilā

The Palas of Gauḍa, as we have seen above, held sway over Magadhā and Tirabhukti for a long time. Tirabhukti (modern Tirhut), which was also known as Mithilā, was bounded by the Gandak, Kosi, Himalaya, and the Gaṅgā. Some time about A.D. 1097 Nanyadeva of the Karnaataka dynasty established his supremacy over this region, probably with the help of the Chalukya Vikramādiśya VI, who is known to have invaded Nepal shortly before A.D. 1068. Sylvain Lévi thinks that Nanyadeva at first accepted service under an unknown king and, taking advantage of the weakness of his master, wielded the sovereignty. It has already been noted that the Palas of Gauḍa had under them many Karnaataka officers. It is not unlikely that Nanyadeva was an officer under the Palas, and established a kingdom in Tirabhukti during the Kaivarta revolt. “A new danger” which confronted Rāmapāla on the eve of his fight with the Kaivarta Bhima, mentioned in the Rāma-charitra, may be referring to this incident. The capital of the Karnaataka dynasty was at Simarānapura, modern Simroon, within the border of Nepal north of the Champāran District.

Nanyadeva came in conflict with kings of Gauḍa and Vaṅga, who seem to have been respectively the Pāla king Kumārapāla and the Yādava ruler Harivarman. Vijayasena of the Sena dynasty of Rāgha invaded Mithilā and won a victory over Nanyadeva. Tradition relates that Nanyadeva conquered Nepal. If it be true, he could not certainly keep the conquered country under his control for a long time. For the contemporary king of Nepal, Sivadeva,
and his successors are known to have assumed the title *Rājādhīraja*. According to tradition Nānyadeva ruled for fifty years. He was succeeded by his son Gāṅgadeva. A manuscript of *Rāmāyana* was copied in Tirabhukti in Saṅ. 1076 during the reign of the *Mahārājādhīraja* Gāṅgadeva of the Soma family. Bendall, referring the date to Vikrama Saṃvat, takes it as equivalent to A.D. 1019, and identifies Gāṅgadeva with the king of this name belonging to the Kalachuri dynasty of Tripuri. Dr. R. C. Majumdar, by referring the year to Saka era, identifies Gāṅgadeva with Gaṅgadeva, successor of Nānyadeva. Tradition assigns forty-one years’ reign to Gaṅgadeva. He was succeeded by his son Nyāsiṃhā, who is said to have ruled for thirty-one years. Nyāsiṃhā’s son and successor Rāmasiṃhā is assigned thirty-nine years’ rule. Rāmasiṃhā’s successor Saktisiṃhā, after a rule of fifty-eight years, was succeeded by Bhūpālasiṃhā. Bhūpālasiṃhā was succeeded by Harasiṃhā, also known as Harasiṃhā.

The famous jurist Chaṇḍeśvara, his father Vireśvara, and his grandfather Devādityā served Harasiṃhā as ministers of peace and war one after the other. Devādityā’s second son Gaṇeśvara also acted as a minister under the same king. Ziya-ud-din Baranī states that in A.D. 1324 Ghiyās-ud-din Tughluq invaded Tirhut, whose king submitted without any fight. Firishtha relates that after conquering Tirhut Ghiyās-ud-din Tughluq handed it over to Ahmad Khān. But it is known from other contemporary sources that Harasiṃhā and his minister Chaṇḍeśvara succeeded in repulsing the attack of the Surattra (Sultan). It seems, therefore, that Harasiṃhā was able to resist the Muslims for some time. Chaṇḍeśvara claims that he conquered Nepal for his master and then performed the religious gift of Tulāpurusha in A.D. 1314; but the traditional date of the conquest of Nepal by Harasiṃhā is A.D. 1324. Henceforward the chiefs of Nepal ruled their territory as vassals of Harasiṃhā’s family. Tradition relates that Harasiṃhā established himself at Bhatgaon and ruled Nepal from that city. This indicates that, having failed to defend Tirhut along with Simraon against the incursion of the Muslims, he transferred his capital to Bhatgaon. That Tirhut was lost to the Karājākas is proved by the fact that Ghiyās-ud-din Tughluq’s son Muhammad Tughluq issued coins from the mint of Tirhut. The *Vaināśvali* of Nepal mentions Harasiṃhā’s successors as rulers of Nepal.

2. The Guptas of Jayapura

In the twelfth century A.D., a Gupta dynasty ruled from Jayapura, identified with modern Jaynagar, near Lakhisarai, in the
Northern India during 11th and 12th Centuries

Monghyr District. King Yajñesagupta, alias Jaya, was succeeded by Damodaragupta, also known as Chāmuṇḍarāja, whose son and successor was king Devagupta. These three kings, who may be taken to have flourished in the first half of the twelfth century, were obviously feudatories of the Pālas, for, as mentioned above, Monghyr formed a part of the Pala kingdom up to the middle of the twelfth century, though for a short period in the fourth decade of that century it was occupied by Gāḍaḍāvala Govindachandra. Devagupta was succeeded by his son Mahārājadhirāja Mahāsindhuśa Rajadityagupta. It appears from these titles that after the decline of the power of the Pālas Rajadityagupta assumed independence. His son Rajaputra Krishnagupta seems to have predeceased his father. Rajadityagupta was succeeded by his grandson Mahārājadhirāja Mahāsindhuśa Saradagramagupta, the son of Krishnagupta. Saradagramagupta may be taken to have been a contemporary of Lakhmiprasena, as the inscriptions of both have been referred on palaeographic grounds to the same period. He ruled for more than seventeen years. The power of the Guptas seems to have been destroyed by Muhammad Bakhtyar Khalji.

3. The Senas of Pithi

A Sena dynasty is known to have ruled in Pithi, which included the region round Gayā. Names of only two kings of this family are known. They are Buddhasena and his son Jayasena, who are to be placed in the second half of the thirteenth century.

4. Khayaravala Dynasty of Jāpīla

The Khayaravala dynasty ruled in the Shāhābād District, which formed part of Magadha, in the twelfth century A.D. Sādha is the earliest known member of this family. His son was king Ṛaṇadahava, whose son Pratāpadhavala is referred to as a Mahānāyaka of Jāpīla. Stone inscriptions of Pratāpadhavala dated A.D. 1158 and 1169 have been found in the Shāhābād District. He acknowledged the supremacy of the Gāḍaḍāvala Vijayachandra. Pratāpadhavala's son and successor was king (narāpati) Sāhasa. He had two sons Vikrama and Indrādahavala who occupied the throne of their father in succession. Indrādahavala, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1197, is mentioned as a great king (mahā-ṣṭhāpati) and Jāpīla. Nothing definite is known of the family after Indrādahavala. A king named Pratāpa, who is known to have been ruling in the Shāhābād District in A.D. 1223, might have been a successor of Indrādahavala.
VI. KANAUJ

1. The Rashtrakūtas

As we have seen above, the Imperial Pratiharas ruled Kanauj up to A.D. 1019, and Rājyapāla was the last king of this dynasty to be associated with that city. After the invasion of Mahmūd of Ghazni Rājyapāla and his successors ruled from Bari, about 30 miles to the east of Kanauj, which was in ruins even when Al-Biruni visited it some time before A.D. 1030. But an inscription of the Chaulukya dynasty of Lāṭa, dated A.D. 1050, associates a Rashtrakūta dynasty with Kanauj. Another inscription, found at Budaun, gives some account of a Rashtrakūta dynasty ruling in the Pañchāla country in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. The fourth king of this dynasty Gopāla is mentioned as the ruler of Gādhipūra, i.e. Kanauj, and it may be assumed that the early members of this Rashtrakūta family were all associated with this imperial city. The first known king of this family is Chandra, who seems to have established his supremacy over Kanauj during the period of disorder that followed the invasion of Mahmūd of Ghazni. He was succeeded by his son Vīghrapāla, and the latter by his son Bhuvanapāla, who may be taken to have flourished in the third quarter of the eleventh century A.D. During this period Chālukya Somesvara I of the Deccan and the Chola Virarājendra of South India invaded Kanauj. Bhuvanapāla’s son and successor was Gopāla, who, as has already been noticed, is referred to as the king of Gādhipura. It was apparently during the reign of Gopāla that Mahmūd, son of the Sultan Ibrahim of Ghazni, conquered Kanauj. After this disaster—the Rashtrakūtas appear to have settled at Vodanayūta or modern Budaun which soon grew into importance. Hasan Nizami states that Budaun is “one of the mothers of cities, and one of the chiefest of the country of Hind.” Gopāla was succeeded by his eldest son Tribhuvana. Tribhuvana’s younger brother and successor was Madanapāla, who was ruling in A.D. 1119, and whose kingdom extended up to Sahet Mahet, in the Gonda District. Madanapāla repulsed an attack of Sultan Mas‘ūd III of Ghazni. He was succeeded by his youngest brother Devapāla. By the year A.D. 1128 Sahet Mahet passed into the hands of the Gāhaḍavālas. Devapāla was followed in succession by Bhimapāla, Sūrapāla and Amritapāla, each being the son of his predecessor. Amritapāla was succeeded by his younger brother Lakhanapāla, who ruled in the closing years of the twelfth century. In A.D. 1202 Qutb-ud-din conquered the kingdom, probably from Lakhanapāla, and made Ilutmish its governor. In the early years of the thirteenth century the Mahāśīmanta Bharahadeva of the Rāṣṭhakūta dynasty ruled
somewhere in the country of Kanyakubja (Kanyakubja-devā). He might have been a successor of Lakṣaṇapāla. The Gāhaḍavāla Aśakkaṃalla was probably his overlord.

2. The Gāhaḍavālas

In the latter part of the eleventh century a dynasty known as Gāhaḍavāla came to power in Kanauj. No authentic evidence has hitherto been discovered to support the theory that the Gāhaḍavālas are identical with the Rāṣṭrakūṭas or the Rājputs. Yasovigraha, the earliest known member of the family, is said to have flourished when the kings of the Solar race departed from this world. His son Mahīchandra, also known as Mahītala and Mahīyala, is described as a king, and ruled in some part of Uttar Pradesh. Mahīchandra's son and successor was Chandradeva, during the early part of whose reign there was a great upheaval in the kingdom of Kanauj. After the invasion of Northern India by Ahmad Niyalṭigin in A.D. 1034 the Muslims did not launch any military campaign against Hindustān for some time. The cause of this inactivity on their part is not far to seek. During this period the Pora-māra Bhoja and Kalachuri Karnā, who occupied dominant position in Northern India, struck terror into the minds of the Muslims by their military power. Both are known to have led expeditions even into the heart of the Muslim territory of the Punjabi. After the death of Bhoja (c. A.D. 1055) and Karnā (c. A.D. 1072) the Muslims again cast their greedy eyes on Hindustān. Some time between A.D. 1086 and 1090 prince Mahmūd, the governor of the Punjāb, plundered Kanauj and Kālaṇjara and invaded Ujjain. On that occasion he found an ally in Kanauj named Chand Rāi, who may be identified with Chandradeva. During the troublesome period that followed the departure of Mahmūd from Northern India Chandradeva seized the throne of Kanauj from the Rāṣṭrakūṭa ruler Gopala, mentioned above. The inscriptions of the Gāhaḍavālas, dating from A.D. 1090, mention a tax called Turnakadça. Some suggest that it was an impost on the subjects of the Gāhaḍavālas to meet the expenses of resisting the invasion of the Muslims. Others think that the Gāhaḍavāla kings realised this tax from the people in order to make annual payment of tribute to the Sultāns of Ghaznī. If Chandradeva really got some political advantage from Mahmūd, the latter view seems preferable. It was probably to enforce the regular payment of this tribute that the Muslims led expeditions against Northern India from time to time.

Chandradeva is said to have defeated the Gaṇapati, Narapati, Triśankupati, and the ruler of Paṇḍhāla. The ruler of Paṇḍhāla was obviously the Rāṣṭrakūṭa ruler Gopala, Chandradeva claims
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

to have protected the holy places of Kuśika (Kanauj), Kāśi, Uttar-Kosala (Ayodhyā) and Indrasthāna. His further progress towards the east was checked by Bhimayasas, ruler of Magadha. The inscriptions of Chandradeva, the dates of which range from A.D. 1090 to 1100, prove that he was in possession of Kanauj, Banaras, and Ayodhyā. He conquered all the countries from Allahābād to Banaras from the Kalachuri Yasākara, king of Dāhala. Banaras (Kāśi) was made the second capital of the Gahaḍavālas. Some are inclined to identify Indrasthāna with Indraprastha or Delhi, and take it as the western boundary of Chandradeva's kingdom. But this is hardly likely, as about this time the Tomaras were ruling independently in Delhi. There was a city named Indrapura, modern Indor, in the Aramshahar sub-division of the Bulandshahar District. Indrasthāna may be identified with this, but no definite conclusion is possible. Chandradeva was succeeded by Madanachandra, also known as Madanapāla, some time between A.D. 1100 and 1104.

Madanachandra's inscriptions bear dates A.D. 1104 and 1109, and prove that he was in possession of Banaras, Bithaur sub-division of the Etawah District, and a part of the ancient Pāchāla-country. According to Muslim chroniclers Ala-ud-Daulah Maṣ'ūd III (A.D. 1099-1115) invaded HindusUin, the capital of which was Kanauj. He took Malhi, king of Kanauj, prisoner, who purchased his release by paying a large sum of money. Malhi is evidently identical with Madanachandra. Govindachandra, son of Madanachandra, is known from Indian records to have defeated the Muslims during the lifetime of his father. It is not unlikely that he forced the Muslim chief to release his father. Govindachandra, who was the de facto ruler of the country during the reign of his father, also repulsed an attack of Rāmapāla of Gauc;la. He ascended the throne of his father before A.D. 1114.

About forty-two inscriptions of Govindachandra's reign, bearing dates extending from A.D. 1114 to 1154, have been discovered. They prove that his kingdom extended at least up to Banaras, Fatehpur and Kānpur Districts on the south, Kanauj on the west, Gondā and Gorakhpur Districts on the north, and Dināpur, in the Patna District, in Bihār, on the east. Shortly after c. A.D. 1143 he conquered all the countries up to Monghyr from Madanapāla. But he had to surrender Monghyr to this Pāla king some time before A.D. 1158. He conquered the Gondā District from the Rāshtrakūṭa Madanapāla, or his successor before A.D. 1129.
The *Prākṛita-paśīgalams* states that the king of Kāśi fought successfully with the kings of Gaṇḍa, Vaṅga, Kuṅga, Telanga, Mahārāṣṭra, Saurāṣṭra, Champāraṇa, Nāpāla, Bhoja, China, Lohāvara (Lahore), Oḍra, and Mālava. There are good grounds to believe that the king of Kāśi, referred to, is Govindachandra. That Govindachandra came into conflict with most of the kings mentioned above can be proved by other evidence. His wars with the Pālas of Gaṇḍa and the Muslims of Lahore have already been noticed. The king of the West against whom Vijayasena advanced through the upper course of the Gaṅgā was in all probability Govindachandra. It is not unlikely that Govindachandra checked the westward progress of Anantavarman Chodaganga, king of Kaḷinga and Orissa, who conquered the countries up to the bank of the Gaṅgā. Nānyadeva of Mithilā was the immediate neighbour of Govindachandra, and there might have been a clash between these two kings. Someśvara III, the Chālukya king of the Deccan, who invaded Magadha, must have come into conflict with Govindachandra. It cannot be ascertained whether Govindachandra came into clash with the Kākatiyas of Telangā. It may be mentioned in this connection that the Kalachuri Jujjalladeva, king of Dakṣiṇa-Kosala, to the south-west of which lies the Telangā country, proudly asserts that he was honoured with fortune on account of his prowess by the king of Kāṇykubha. This king of Kāṇykubha was evidently Govindachandra. Nayachandra’s *Rambhāṃnājari* states that Govindachandra conquered Daśarā (Eastern Malava) on the day of the birth of his grandson Jayachandra. Daśarā was in the possession of the Chandella Madanavarman (A.D. 1129-1163), who is known to have been at war with the king of Kāśi. Saurāṣṭra formed a part of the kingdom of the Chauḷukyas of Aṣṭahillapāṭaka. Jayasimha-Siddharāja of this dynasty is stated to have sent a diplomatic agent to the court of Jayachandra, king of Banaras, which seems to be an error for Govindachandra in view of the fact that the Chauḷukya king closed his reign in c. A.D. 1143. The statement that Govindachandra invaded Nāpāla, China, and Tibet is obviously an exaggeration. It will appear from the above observations that Govindachandra came into conflict with the Pālas, Senas, Gaṅgas, Kākatiyas, Chāluṅkya, Chandellas, Chauḷukyas, the Muslims, and the Karṇāṭakas of Mithilā.

Govindachandra sent his ambassador Suhala to the court of king Jayasimha of the Lohara dynasty of Kāśmiṛ. An incomplete inscription at Gaṅgakoṅḍachola-puram, the capital of the Imperial Cholas, which was executed shortly after A.D. 1111, draws the genealogy of the Gāhaḍavālas from Yasovigraha to Chandra. It seems that the inscription was issued by a Gāhaḍavāla princess,
who was married to a king or a scion of the Chola dynasty, with a view to record some grants made by her. This reminds us of the inscriptions of the Vākāṭaka queen Prabhāvatidevi, who took scrupulous care to mention in them the names of her father, grandfather, and great-grandfather. Gold and copper coins of Govinda-chandra have been found. The king was acquainted with the various branches of arts. He had a number of queens one of whom was Buddhist Kumārādevi, the daughter of Devarakshita, king of Piṭhī and daughter’s daughter of the Rāṣṭraṅgūla Mathanadeva, maternal uncle of Rāmapāla. Govinda-chandra had three sons, Aspoṭāchandra, who was appointed a Yuvarāja, Vijayachandra, and Rājayāpāla. Aspoṭāchandra seems to have predeceased his father, and Vijayachandra succeeded to the throne some time after A.D. 1154.

The known dates of Vijayachandra are A.D. 1168 and 1169. Pratāpadhavala of the Khayaravāla dynasty was his vassal in western Magadha. Vijayachandra repulsed an attack of the Muslims, which was probably led by Khusrav Malik. He was succeeded by his son Jayachandra in A.D. 1170.

The inscriptions of Jayachandra bear dates ranging from A.D. 1170 to 1189. They prove that his kingdom included the Gaya District besides the Doab, Allahābād, Banaras and Patna. The Gaya District is known to have been ruled by Govinda-pāla up to A.D. 1162.10 Probably in his attempt to extend the boundary of his kingdom further east Jayachandra was opposed by Lākṣmaṇa-sena of Bengal. The Sena king claims to have defeated the king of Kāśi, who was obviously Jayachandra. The bards narrate a romantic story about the marriage between Jayachandra’s daughter Sainyogītā and the Chāhāmāna Prithvirāja III of Ajmer, but its authenticity has rightly been doubted by modern scholars. Jayachandra was a patron of poets, and according to some scholars, Śrīharsha, the author of Naishadha-charita, lived in his court. Jayachandra ruled his kingdom peacefully for more than two decades, but in the latter part of his reign he met with a severe disaster. Mu’izz-ud-din Muhammad Ghūrī, after conquering Delhi and Ajmer from the Chāhāmānas, advanced with a large army against Jayachandra in A.D. 1193. Jayachandra opposed him with all his forces in the vicinity of Chandawar in the Etawah District. In the battle that followed Jayachandra lost his life when seated on an elephant, and the Gahāḍāvāla army was totally defeated. The Muslims next captured the fort of Asnī (in the Fatehpur District) where the treasure of the king of Banaras was deposited. They then proceeded to Banaras and plundered the city. The government of the
country was entrusted to a responsible officer, but the Muslims could not keep their hold on the newly conquered territory for a long time. As Hariśchandra, son of Jayachandra, who was only 18 years old at the time of the battle of Chandawar, was in possession of Kanauj, Jaunpur, and Mirzapur Districts in A.D. 1197, it is obvious that he succeeded in wresting his paternal kingdom from the hands of the Muslims. The Chandella king Trailokyavarmān won a victory over a king of Kānyakubja, who may be identified with Hariśchandra. Aḍākkamalla, who belonged to the Gāhādvāla dynasty, seems to have been Hariśchandra’s successor. During the reign of Iltutmis one Bartu was the ruler of Awadh. Bartu fought with Iltutmis and is said to have killed one hundred and twenty thousand Muslim soldiers. He was overthrown and killed by Malik Nasir-ud-din Muhammad Shāh, the eldest son of Iltutmis, in A.D. 1226. Bartu might have been a feudatory of Aḍākkamalla, and it is not unlikely that he is identical with Bharahadeva of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa family.17 Kanauj was finally conquered by Iltutmis. After being deprived of his paternal kingdom Aḍākkamalla settled in the Nigod State, Central India. His feudatory Mahaṇḍadeva is known to have ruled there in V.S. 1294 (= A.D. 1237). The name of the successor of Aḍākkamalla is not known.

VII. THE YADUVAMŚI KINGS OF BAYANA-SRIPATHA

Tradition relates that a Yadu dynasty ruled in Bayāna, the modern Bayāna, in the old Bharatpur State, Rājputāna, the ancient name of which was Śrīgathā. The traditional list of kings of this dynasty, as given by the bards, is partly verified by the epigraphic records. These records prove that the kingdom of this dynasty comprised the old Bharatpur State and the Mathurā District. The king Jaitapala of the traditional list may be placed in the first half of the eleventh century. His successor was Vijayapala, who may be identified with the king Vijaya of the Bayāna inscription, dated A.D. 1044. Vijayapala’s successor was Tahanapala who, according to tradition, built the fort of Tahangarh, 14 miles south of Bayāna. Tahanapala was followed in succession by Dharmaṇḍa, Kunwarpāla and Ajayapala. Cunningham suggests that there is a chronological error in placing Kunwarpāla before Ajayapala. It is known from the Mahāśāṅkara inscription, found near Mathurā, that Mahārājābhiraṇe Ajayapala was ruling in A.D. 1150. The tradition mentions Haripala as the son and successor of Ajayapala. An inscription of Haripala, dated A.D. 1170, has been found at Mahāśāṅkara. Haripala was succeeded by Sohapala. An image inscription of the reign of Sahanapaladeva, dated A.D. 1192, has been discovered at Aghapur,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

in the old Bharatpur State. The traditional list describes Anangapāla as the successor of Sohapāla or Sahanapāla. But Sohapāla’s successor seems to have been Kunwarapāla who, according to tradition, was the predecessor of Ajayapāla. For Tāj-ul-Maṣāir states that in A.D. 1196 Mu’izz-ud-dīn Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Kunwarapāla, the Rai of Thangarh (Tahangarh), and handed the fort over to Bahā-ud-dīn Tughrīl. Anangapāla may be taken to have ascended the throne after Kunwarapāla. Anangapāla was followed in succession by Prithvipāla, Rājapāla and Trilokapāla, the last of whom may be placed at the end of the thirteenth century A.D.

VIII. THE KACHCHHAPAGHĀTAS

The Kachchhapaghātas are generally taken to be the predecessors of the Rājput clan Kachwāha, but this assumption is not based on any historical evidence. Three branches of the Kachchhapaghāta family are known. They ruled in Gwalior, Dubkund, and Narwar.

The earliest known chief of the Gwalior (ancient Gopādri) branch is Lakshmana, but the territory over which he ruled is not known. Gwalior was under the sway of the Chandella Dhanga, a feudatory of the Pratihāra Vinayakapāla of Kanauj, in the third quarter of the tenth century A.D. In or before A.D. 977 Mahācirihiśi Vajradāman, son of Lakshmanā, established his supremacy over Gwalior by defeating the king of Gadhinagara (Kanauj), who may be identified with the Pratihāra Vijayapāla. Vajradāman was followed in succession by Mangalaraja and Kirtiraja. Kirtiraja repulsed an attack of the king of Malava, who may be identified with the Paramāra Bhoja. It is probably Kirtiraja who surrendered to Mahmūd of Ghazni when the latter invaded Gwalior in A.D. 1021. He was succeeded by Mūladeva, Devapāla and Padmapāla, one after the other. Padmapāla probably had no son and, after his death, his brother (cousin?) Mahipāla, son of Sūryapāla, ascended the throne. Sūryapāla was probably a brother of Devapāla. Mahipāla, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1093, was succeeded by his son Ratnapāla some time before A.D. 1104. Names of the successors of Ratnapāla are not known. In A.D. 1196 the Muslims conquered Gwalior after repeated assaults extending over a year, as will be related later.

During the weak rule of Áram Shāh (A.D. 1210-11), son of Qutb-ud-dīn, the Pratihāra chief Vigraha established the supremacy of his family in Gwalior by defeating the Muslims. His son and successor Malayavarman, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1220, married the daughter of the Chāhāmāna Kēlhaṇa of
Nañol. Cunningham ascribes some coins, the dates of which extend from A.D. 1223 to 1230, bearing the name Malayavarman, to this king. Iltutmish conquered Gwalior by defeating Dewbul (Devavarma?), probably the successor of Malayavarman. It was probably during the rule of Rukn-ud-din, son of Iltutmish, that Gwalior was reconquered by Nrivarman (Naravarman), brother of Malayavarman, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1247. Naravarman's successor seems to have been Hariraja, who suffered a defeat at the hands of the Chandella Viravarman. Balban conquered Gwalior in A.D. 1258 and placed Malik Nusrat-ud-din in charge of it.

A branch of the Kachchhapaghata family ruled apparently from the city of Chañobha, which is to be identified with Dubkund, on the Kunu river, 76 miles south-west of Gwalior. The earliest known ruler of the family is Añjuna, the son of Yuvaraja, and a feudatory of the Chandella Vidyadhara. He killed the Pratháhára Rájapala of Kanauj, and his son and successor Abhimanyu was an ally of the Paramára Bhoja. Abhimanyu was succeeded by his son Vijayañála, who was again succeeded by his son Vikramasinha, the known date of whose reign is A.D. 1038.

A third branch of the Kachchhapaghata family rules in Narwar, the ancient Nalapura. Three generations of kings of this family are known to us. They are Gañgasinha, his successor Saradásinha, and the latter's successor Vírasinha, who issued an inscription from the Nalapura-durgu (fort) in A.D. 1120.

In the first half of the thirteenth century the Yajvápala or Jajapella dynasty established its supremacy over Narwar. The earliest known chief of this dynasty is Yajaválkiri, whose son was Chándrádeva. Chándrádeva captured Narwar and established his supremacy there. He was the greatest of the kings in the region of Gwalior, Chanderi, Narwar and Málava during this period. He had 5000 cavalry and 200,000 footmen. He built a fortress among the defiles and passes near Narwar, and inflicted a severe defeat on Malik Nusrat-ud-din Tayāsā, a general of Iltutmish, on the bank of the small river Síndh in A.D. 1234. Tayāsā is said to have never shown his back to the enemies in Hindustán except on this occasion. In A.D. 1251 during the Sultanate of Násir-ud-din his general Balban inflicted a defeat on Chándrádeva and plundered his fort but could not establish his supremacy there. Chándrádeva's coins bear dates extending from A.D. 1237 to 1254. He was succeeded by his son Nrivarman, who was again succeeded by his son Asaladeva. Asaladeva ruled from A.D. 1254 to 1279 and was succeeded by his son Gopál, who suffered a defeat at the hands
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

of the Chandella Viravarman. The reign of Gopāla’s son Gaṇapati covers the period A.D. 1291 to 1298. Gaṇapati conquered Kirttidurga, which is identified with Deogarh, in the Jhansi District. Nothing is known of the family after Gaṇapati.

IX. THE CHANDELLAS

The Chandella king Dhangā, who raised his family to the rank of the principal ruling dynasties of the age, was succeeded by his son Gaṇḍa some time after A.D. 1002. Gaṇḍa’s son and successor was Vidyādhara whose feudatory, Kachchhaphagāṭa Arjuna, killed the Pratihāra Rājyapāla. Once in A.D. 1019, and again in A.D. 1022, Mahmūd of Ghazni invaded Kālaṇjīra, but could not plunder it. He received a large amount of money from Vidyādhara, and established a friendly relation with him. Vidyādhara fought successfully with the Paramāra Bhoja, and Kalachuri-chandra, who seems to have been no other than Kokalla II of Tripuri. Vidyādhara’s son and successor Vījayaṇāla won a victory over the Kalachuri Gängeya-deva. Vījayaṇāla was succeeded by his son Devendravarman, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1050. After Devendravarman his younger brother Kirttivarman ascended the throne some time before A.D. 1073. In the early part of his reign the Kalachuri Karṇa defeated him and occupied his kingdom for some time. But eventually Gopāla, the chief of the vassals of Kirttivarman, succeeded in defeating Karṇa and reconquering the country for his master. Some time before A.D. 1090 Kirttivarman fought successfully with Mahmūd, governor of the Punjab under the Ghaznavids, who invaded Kālaṇjīra. Kirttivarman, who is described as the crest-jewel of Pitaśāla, and who is known to have resided for some time in the Pita mountain, fought a battle there with an enemy, who was probably Vapullaka, a general of Kalachuri Karṇa. His minister Vatsarāja wrested from the enemy the whole of the Maṇḍala and built the fort of Kirttigiri, which, as already mentioned, is identified with Deogarh, in the Jhansi District, where Kirttivarman’s inscription has been found engraved on a rock. Some gold coins of his reign have been discovered. He was succeeded by his son Sallakṣaṇavarman, who plundered Malava after defeating the Paramāra Naravarman, and won a victory over a Chedi king who was probably the Kalachuri Yāṣākarna. Sallakṣaṇavarman crushed the refractory elements in the Antarvedi (the land between the Gaṅgā and Yamunā), which was then ruled by the Gāhādavālas. In or before A.D. 1117 he was succeeded by his son Jayavarman who, after a short reign, abdicated his throne in favour of his uncle Prithvivarman, younger brother of Sallakṣaṇavarman. Prithvi-
varman was succeeded by his son Madanavarman, the extreme known dates of whose reign are A.D. 1129 and 1162. Madanavarman’s inscriptions prove that his kingdom included Bhilsa, Mau in the Jhansi District, Ajaigarh, 20 miles south-west of Kālañjara, and Chhatarpur, besides Khajrāho (also spelt as Khajurāho), Mahoba, and Kālañjara. He annexed Bhilsa by defeating the Paramār Yasovarman. He fought with the Gahadavāla Govinda-chandra, who also claims to have conquered Daśāra or the Bhilsa region. He vanquished in a fierce fight the king of Chedi, who is to be identified with the Kalachuri Gayākaraṇa. The Chaulukya Jayasinha-Siddhārāja of Gujarāt invaded Mahobā after his conquest of Dharā. Madanavarman successfully defended his capital, though he had to surrender Bhilsa to the invader. The coins of Jayavarman, Prithviravarman, and Madanavarman have been found. Madanavarman was succeeded by his grandson Paramardi, son of Yasovarman, shortly before A.D. 1165.

Inscriptions of Paramardi’s reign, which bear dates ranging between A.D. 1165 and 1201, prove that he succeeded in maintaining his paternal kingdom intact for a very long time. The fact that he assumed the title “the lord of Daśāra” indicates that he was able to recover Bhilsa from the Chaulukya—so some time after A.D. 1173, up to which date it is known to have formed a part of the kingdom of Gujarāt. In or before A.D. 1182 the Chālhāmāna Prithvirāja III defeated Paramardi and overran Jejakabhukti-maydala. In A.D. 1202 Qutb-ud-din invested Kālañjara. After offering some opposition Paramardi concluded a treaty with the Muslim general on condition of payment of tribute and elephants. His minister Aj Deo (Ajayadeva) disapproved of the ignominious conduct of his master, killed him before he could fulfil the treaty conditions, and renewed the fight. Ajayadeva had ultimately to surrender after a valiant defence due to shortage of water in the fort. Qutb-ud-din plundered Kālañjara and conquered Mahobā. Hazabhar-ud-din Hasan Arnal was appointed governor of Kālañjara.

The Muslims could not keep Kālañjara under their control for a long time. Paramardi’s son Trailokyavarman, also known as Trailokyamalla, inflicted a severe defeat on the Muslims at Kakadaha, modern Kakadwa, south-east of Bedwara, some time before A.D. 1205, and recovered all the territories including Kālañjara. His inscriptions, which bear dates from A.D. 1205 to 1241, prove that Lalitpur, Chhatarpur State, Panna State, Ajaigarh State, and Rewah State were included in his kingdom. In A.D. 1211-1212 he wrested Rewah, in Baghelkhand, and probably the
whole of Dāhala-mandala from the Kalachuri Vijayasimha. Dāhala formed a part of the kingdom of his grandson Hammiravarman. Śāmanta (feudatory) Sallakshaṇavarman of the Kaurava Vaśūśa, whose headquarters were at Kakaredikā, modern Kakeri on the border of the Panna and the Rewah States, owed allegiance to the Kalachuris. His son Harirāja and his grandson Kumārapāla transferred their allegiance to Trailokyavarman. One Bhojuka overran Bundelkhand and reduced Trailokyavarman to a critical position. Vāṣeka, an officer of Jayadurga i.e. Ajaigarh, defeated and killed Bhojuka and "made Trailokyavarman again the ornament of the princely families." Kielhorn identifies Bhojuka with the father of Abhayadeva, who is known to have lived in the neighbourhood of Ajaigarh in or before A.D. 1268 during the reign of the Chandella Viravarman. Vāṣeka's brother Ananda, who was in charge of Jayadurga, claims to have established peace and order in the kingdom of Trailokyavarman by subduing the wild tribes of the Bhillas, Śabaras, and the Pulindas. Malik Nusrat-ud-din Tayasai, a general of Ilutmish, invaded Kalañjara, and obtained vast wealth by plundering the townships of that territory. Trailokyavarman had not, however, to suffer any loss of territory on that occasion. He was succeeded by his son Viravarman whose earliest known date is A.D. 1254. Viravarman's inscriptions prove that he succeeded in maintaining intact the kingdom which he had inherited from his father. His officer Mallaya won victories over Harirāja of Gwālior, Gopāla of Nalapura (Narwar), and the king of Mathurā. His subordinate Rauta Abhi showed great value in a tussle with Dabhuyahājaravarman in a battle at Sondhi, which is identified with the Seondha fort, now called Kanhargarh, on the bank of the Sindh river in old Datiā State. Viravarman was succeeded by Bhojaivarman, who was probably his son, some time between A.D. 1285 and 1288. Bhojavarman ruled for a very short period and was succeeded in A.D. 1289 by Hammiravarman, who seems to have been his younger brother. Hammiravarman's inscription, dated A.D. 1289, draws the genealogy from Paramardi, but does not mention the name of Bhojaivarman. It gives the title Shāhi to all the Chandella kings it mentions. Hammiravarman's inscriptions prove that he was in possession of the Damoh and Jabalpur Districts, which were situated in the ancient Dāhala country. The last known date of his reign is A.D. 1308. In A.D. 1309 'Ala-ud-din Khalji wrested Damoh District from Hammiravarman or his successor. The next known king of Bundelkhand is Viravarman II, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1315. Nothing is known of the successors of Viravarman II.
X. THE KALACHURIS

1. The Kalachuris of Tripuri

The Kalachuris of Dāhala, the country round Jabalpur, in Madhya Pradesh, acquired more power and prestige during the reign of Kokalla II’s son Gangeyadeva, who assumed the title Vikramāditya. He involved himself in a number of wars with his neighbours for the expansion of his kingdom. He made a confederacy with the Paramāra Bhoja and Rājendra Chola, and invaded the Deccan, which was then ruled by the Chālukya Jayasimha II. But the Chālukyas succeeded in dispersing them. An inscription, dated A.D. 1019, states that Jayasimha defeated Bhoja and put to flight the confederacy of Mālava. This indicates that Gangeyadeva came to the throne before A.D. 1019. He invaded Kosalā, and defeated its king, who seems to have been the Somavamśī Mahāśālvagupta Yayāti. It is known from another source that Mahāśālavagupta Yayāti laid waste the Dāhala country after defeating the Chedis before the 8th year of his reign. His adversary on that occasion was either Gangeyadeva or his father Kokalla II. After victory over the Somavamśīs Gangeyadeva conquered Utkala and reached the shore of the sea. He was assisted in that expedition by Kamalarūpa of the Kalachuri family of Tumāla. It was probably after this that Gangeyadeva assumed the title ‘Trikalingadhipati’ or the lord of Trikalinga. Subsequently he quarrelled with his former ally Bhoja, who inflicted a defeat on him. His attempt to assert supremacy over Bundelkhand was frustrated by Chandella Vijayapala. On the north-east, however, he achieved a unique success. He was already in possession of Baghelkhand. Some time before A.D. 1034 he conquered Banaras and annexed it to his kingdom. Banaras formed part of the kingdom of Chandella Dhanga but, as suggested above, Pāla Mahipāla I was probably in possession of it in A.D. 1026, and Gangeyadeva conquered it from him. As about this time Pratihāra Yasahpāla was in possession of the Allahābād region, Gangeyadeva could not evidently extend his supremacy beyond Banaras on the west. On the east he led a successful expedition against Aṅga or Bhāgalpur, which was within the kingdom of Mahipāla I of Gauḍa, but could not annex any part of Magadha or Tīrabhukti. In A.D. 1034 Gangeyadeva had to bear the brunt of an attack of the Muslims. Ahmad Niyāltigīn, governor of the Punjabi under the Ghaznavids, plundered Banaras, and carried away immense riches. Gangeyadeva launched a successful expedition against the Kira country, modern Kāṅgrā valley in the Punjabi, which was under the sway of the Muslims.

Gold, silver, and copper coins of Gangeyadeva have been found in large number. He is said to have died in the sacred city of Prayāga.
(Allahābād) along with his one hundred wives. He was succeeded by his son Lakshmukarna better known as Karna. The latest definite date of Gāngeyadeva’s reign is A.D. 1034 when, as Baihaqi tells us, Gāngeyadeva was ruling in Banaras. The date of the Piawan rock inscription of his reign is read by Cunningham as (K.E.) 789 (= A.D. 1038), but both Kielhorn and Bhandarkar regard it as doubtful. Karna performed the annual śrīdhi ceremony of his father in A.D. 1042 and this has been taken by some to prove that Gāngeyadeva died in A.D. 1041. But this inference can hardly be regarded as correct. Attention may be drawn to the fact that Gahaśavāla Govindaçandra performed in A.D. 1117 the annual śrīdhi ceremony of his father Madanacandra, who died before A.D. 1114. So the date of Karna’s accession to the throne is to be placed between A.D. 1034 and 1042.

Karna was one of the greatest generals of the age. His inscriptions prove that Banaras and Allahābād were included in his kingdom and that he occupied Rāḍhā (West Bengal) for some time. He wrested Allahābād from Pratihāra Yasalpala some time after A.D. 1037 and, in course of conquest, reached the Kira country where he won a victory over the Muslims. His kingdom in U.P. was bounded on the west by that of the Rashtrakutas of Kanauj. On the east he led two expeditions, one against the Pāla Nayapāla, and the other against the latter’s son Vigrahapāla III. Both these expeditions eventually proved to be abortive. He concluded a treaty with the Pālas by giving his daughter Yauvanasri in marriage to Vigrahapāla. Though he could not assert his supremacy over any part of the kingdom of the Pālas he succeeded in occupying Rāḍhā probably by defeating king Raṇaśūra or his successor. He invaded Vaṅga, and claims to have conquered it. The king of Vaṅga at this time was Jātavarman who concluded a treaty with him and married his daughter Virasri. The Rewah inscription of Karna, dated A.D. 1048, states that “the ship of the king of the Eastern country (Pūrvañiraja-pota), being driven by the storm of unparalleled arrogance, was submerged in the ocean of his (i.e. Karna’s) forces, its joints being rent by (dashing against) the promontories of the mountains of his elephants.” It means that a king of the eastern country led an aggressive campaign against Karna but was repulsed by the latter. According to the lexicographers of this age Purva-desa or the Eastern country lay to the east of Banaras. So it is difficult to ascertain whether the king of the eastern country, referred to, was Nayapāla of Gauḍa, Vajravarman or Jātavarman of Vaṅga, or a successor of Raṇaśūra of Rāḍhā. How long Karna succeeded in keeping his hold over Rāḍhā cannot be ascertained. After the decline of the supremacy of Karna in that country, the Sena dynasty rose into power.
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11TH AND 12TH CENTURIES

Kāraṇa led successful expeditions against Odra and Kāliṅga. His adversary in Kāliṅga was Vajrahasta V of the Ganga dynasty. He overran Kāñcchi-vishāyaka, modern Conjeeveram, Madras, which was then ruled by the Chōla Rājādirāja or Rājendradeva. He claims to have defeated the Pallavas (of Nolambavāḍi), the Kuṅgas of Salem and Coimbatore Districts, Madras, the Muralas of the Malabar coast, and the Pāṇḍyas of Madurā. It is not unlikely that the chiefs of all these countries formed a confederacy under the leadership of the Chōla king, and opposed Kāraṇa. Kāraṇa won a victory over the king of Kuntala, who was obviously the Chālukya Someśvara I. His invasion of Southern India and the Deccan must have been completed before A.D. 1048, the date of the Rewah inscription, which mentions his fight with the people of those countries. Some time after A.D. 1051 Kāraṇa captured Bandelkhand by defeating the Chandella Kīrttiwarman. Subsequently Chāpala, a feudatory of the Chandellas, drove him out, and helped Kīrttiwarman in regaining his throne. Kāraṇa raided the Hūṇa-mārāśa, which was situated to the north-west of Mālava. He made an alliance with the Chālukya Bhima I of Gujarāt for a simultaneous attack on the kingdom of the Paramāra Bhoja from the east and west. When the battle between the Kālakuris and the Chālukyas on one side and the Paramāras on the other was in progress, Bhoja died of a disease in c. A.D. 1055, and Mālava was taken possession of by the invaders. In that difficult circumstance Bhoja’s son Jayasimha appealed to the Chālukya Someśvara I for help. Someśvara I sent his son Vikramādiṭya VI to render assistance to the Paramāras. Vikramādiṭya drove out Kāraṇa and Bhima and secured the throne of Mālava for Jayasimha. Subsequently a quarrel broke out between Kāraṇa and Bhima on the division of the spoils of their victory in Mālava. Bhima invaded Dāhala with a large army and forced Kāraṇa to surrender to him the golden manḍepikī, which he had wrested from Bhoja together with elephants and horses. Thus though Kāraṇa fought a number of battles with many powers far and near, throughout the greater part of his life, he did not get much material advantage from them. Allāhābād is the only country which he succeeded in adding to his paternal kingdom.

Kāraṇa assumed the title Trikalīṅgādiḥpāti. He built a temple at Banaras and founded a city near Jabalpur. He married Āvalaṅdevi of the Hūṇa family, who gave birth to a son Yāsakarṇa. In his old age Kāraṇa seems to have abdicated his throne in favour of Yāsakarṇa shortly before A.D. 1073.

In the early part of his reign Yāsakarṇa led two aggressive campaigns, one against Champāraṇa, modern Champārāṇ in North Bihār, and the other against the Andhra country, which was then
ruled by Vijayāditya VII of the Eastern Chālukya dynasty. He had to fight a number of battles in defence of his kingdom. Jayasiṃhā, younger brother of the Chālukya Vikramāditya VI, raided Dāhala before A.D. 1081, while Chandrādeva of the Gāhāḍavāla dynasty wrested Alāhābad and Banaras. Paramāra Lakṣmādeva plundered his capital Tripuri, and encamped on the Reva for some time. The Chandella Sarālaśaiva-vārman claims to have defeated a king of Chedi, who was in all probability Yaśākara. All these successive foreign invasions weakened the foundation of the Kalachuri kingdom. Yaśākara was succeeded by his son Gayākara some time in the first quarter of the twelfth century A.D.

Gayākara suffered a defeat at the hands of the Chandella Madana-vārman. Merutunga relates a story that Karna, king of Dāhala, led an army against king Kumārapāla of Gujātī. Once in course of his march when he fell asleep on the back of his elephant in the night time his necklace, caught in a branch of a tree, hanged him to death. If there is any truth in the narrative, the Dāhala king, referred to, is to be identified with Gayākara, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1151. He was succeeded by his elder son Narasiṃhā before A.D. 1155. Some time between A.D. 1159 and 1167 Narasiṃhā was succeeded by his younger brother Jayasiṃhā. The Kauravas of Kākāreli, modern Kakerī, on the border of the Panna and Rewah States, were his vassals. In the early part of his reign Jayasiṃhā fought successfully with the king of Gurjārā, evidently Chaulukya Kumārapāla, and the king of Kuntala, who is to be identified with the Kalachuri Bijjala of the Deccan. About this time he repulsed an attack of the Turuskhās. This Turuskhā invasion is obviously the one led by Khusrav Malik which was repulsed by the Gāhāḍavāla Vijiyayachandra. It cannot be said definitely whether Jayasiṃhā made a common cause with the Gāhāḍavālas against the Muslims on that occasion. Some time between A.D. 1177 and 1180 Jayasiṃhā was succeeded by his son Vijayasiṃhā, the last known king of this branch of the Kalachuri dynasty. Inscriptions of Vijayasiṃhā’s reign prove that he succeeded in maintaining his hold over Baghelkhand and the Dāhala-māndala up to A.D. 1211, but within a year Chandella Trailokya-vārman wrested from him Baghelkhand, and possibly the whole of the Dāhala-māndala. He had a son, named Mahākumāra Ajayasiṃhā, but nothing is known of him.

2. The Kalachuris of Ratampur

Kalīngarāja, a remote descendant of one of the younger sons of Kokallā I, the founder of the Kalachuri dynasty of Tripuri, conquered Dakshinā-Kosala and established his capital at Tuṃmānā, modern
village of Tumana, in the Lapha zamindari, Bilaspur District, Madhya Pradesh, in the early years of the eleventh century. He ruled there as a feudatory of the Kalachuris of Tripuri. His son and successor Kamalaraja helped his overlord Kalachuri Gangeyadeva in conquering Utkala. Kamalaraja was succeeded by his son Ratnaraja, who founded the city of Ratnapura, modern Ratanpur, 16 miles north of Bilaspur. Ratnaraja was succeeded by his son Prithvideva, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1079. It was probably during his reign that Ratanpur was made the second capital of his family. His son and successor Jajalladeva I, who issued an inscription in A.D. 1114, became independent during the latter part of Yasalakana's reign when the power of the Kalachuris of Tripuri began to decline. He was in friendly relation with Gahavala Govindachandra and Chandella Sallakshapavarman. He took as prisoner Somesvara, the Naga ruler of Chakrakota (in the Bastar State), who had occupied a part of Dakshina-Kosala. He invaded Orissa and defeated Bhujavala, the chief of Suvarnapura, modern Sonpur. He claims to have received tributes from the chiefs of the Mandalas of Dakshina-Kosala, Andhra, Khimidi, Vairagara, Lanjikka, Bhangara, Talahari, Daqidakapura, Nandavalli and Kukuta. Khimidi is Khimidi in the Ganjam District, Orissa; Vairagara is Wairagarh in the Chanda District, Madhya Pradesh; Lanjikka is Lanji in the Balaghat District, Madhya Pradesh; and Daqidakapura may be identified with Daqidakaka on the border of Seuna-deśa.

It is hardly likely that he levied any tribute from Andhra, which was within the kingdom of Kulottunga Chola I. Jajalladeva was succeeded by his son Ratnadeva II before A.D. 1126. Ratnadeva II repulsed an attack of Anantavarman Chojagasa, who was joined by one Jatesvara, and of Gokarna, a feudatory of the Kākatiya Prola II; and his minister Jagapāla conquered for him Talahāra-bhūmi. He was succeeded by his son Prithvideva II some time between A.D. 1128 and 1141. Prithvideva II also repulsed an attack of king Jatesvara, and his minister Jagapāla conquered the forts of Sarahāragadh, Mavakāsha(vā), and Bhramaravadra-deśa, and took Kāntāra, Kusuma-bhoga, Kandāse(hva)ra, and Kākayara-deśa. His younger son Jajalla II succeeded him after A.D. 1158, and this new king's reign period covered the years A.D. 1161 to 1167. Jajalla II succeeded in averting the trouble created by one Dhiru, who reduced him to such a critical position that he was about to lose his sovereignty. He was succeeded by his elder brother Jagaddeva who lived, before his accession, in the Eastern country (prāg-deśa). Some time before A.D. 1181 Jagaddeva was succeeded by his son Ratnadeva III, who was followed on the throne by his sons Prithvideva III and Pratapamalla in
succession. Pratāpamalla was a boy at the time of his accession and his kingdom seems to have been invaded by Vishnu, a minister of the Gaṅga Anāṅga-Bhima III of Kalīgā. He reigned at least up to A.D. 1218, but nothing definitely is known of his successor.

Petty chiefs of a Kalachuri family are known to have ruled in the region of Kasiā in the Gorakhpur District, U.P., from the ninth to twelfth century A.D.

XI. THE PARAMARAS

1. The Paramāras of Mālava

The Paramāras, who consolidated their power and position under Muṇja and Sindhuṛāja, rose to imperial rank during the reign of Sindhuṛāja's son and successor Bhōja, who ascended the throne of Mālava in c. A.D. 1000. Inscriptions of his reign bear dates ranging from A.D. 1020 to 1047, and his kingdom extended up to Chitor, Bāṅswāra, Dungarpur, Bhilsa, Khāndesh, Konkan, and upper courses of the Godāvari. In the early part of his reign he made a confederacy with the Kalachuri Gāṅgeyadeva and Rājendra Chōla of Tanjore for an invasion of the kingdom of the Chālukya Jayasiṅhā of Kālyāna. Though he and his allies at first won some victories they were ultimately routed by Jayasiṅhā. Jayasiṅhā's son Somaśvara I, who came to the throne of the Deccan in A.D. 1042, avenged himself of the wrong done to his father by plundering Dhārā, Ujjain, and Māndu, and forcing Bhōja to flee away from his capital.

During his southern campaign Bhōja inflicted a defeat on Indraratha, the ruler of Ādinagara, or Nagarā, modern Mukhalingam, in the Ganjam District, Orissa. He probably fought this battle in association with Rājendra Chōla, who also claims to have defeated this ruler of Ādinagara. In A.D. 1020 Bhōja conquered Konkaṇa, apparently by defeating the Silahāra Kēsīdeva, and annexed it to his kingdom. Kirttirāja of the Chālukya dynasty of Lāja or southern Gujarāt, whose kingdom lay to the north of that of the Silahāras, had also to bear the brunt of his sword. Bhōja's attempt to assert his supremacy over Bundelkhand was frustrated by Chandella Vidyādharā. Bhōja made an alliance with Kachchhaphaghaṭa Abhimanyu of Dubkund and received military assistance from him in his northern campaigns. He tried to capture Gwālor but was stoutly resisted by the Kachchhaphaghaṭa Kirttirāja. About this time he seems to have come into clash with the Rāṣṭrakūṭas of Kāṇ- yakubja, but could not gain any material advantage over them. He invaded Sākambhāri and forced Chāhamāna Viryārāma to submit. His endeavour to conquer Nāḍol, in southern Mārwār, by defeating
the Chāhāmānas met with disaster. The Chāhāmāna Aṭahilla killed his general Saṅha, and routed the Paramāra army. Bhoja’s general Surāditya claims to have stabilised the royal fortune of Bhoja by killing one Sāhavāhana in the battle. In A.D. 1008 Bhoja sent an army to help the Shāhi Anandapāla against Mahmūd of Ghazni. About A.D. 1019 he gave shelter to Anandapāla’s son Trilochanapāla, who was hard pressed by Mahmūd. In A.D. 1043 he seems to have joined a confederacy of the Hindu chiefs and conquered Hānśi, Thāneswar, Nagarkot and other dependencies of the Muslims and besieged the fortress of Lahore for seven months. Bhoja’s contribution to the defence of Northern India against the incursions of the Muslims was remembered by the Gāhāḍavālas even long after his death.

Bhoja’s relation with his western neighbour, the Chaulukyas of Gujarāt, was anything but friendly. In the early part of his reign he humiliated the Chaulukya Chāmuḍarāja, son of Mālārāja, by forcing him to give up his royal robe when the latter was passing through Mālava in course of his pilgrimage to Banaras. Chāmuḍarāja’s two sons Vallabharāja and Durlabhārāja naturally assumed a hostile attitude towards the Paramāras. Bhoja sacked Anahillapāṭaka, the capital of Gujarāt, during the reign of Durlabharāja’s successor Bhima I, who had wrested Mt. Abu from the Paramāra Dhanadhuka, a protegé of Bhoja. Bhima, probably realising that he alone would not be able to cope with the Paramāras, looked for an ally. Fortunately for him Bhoja also antagonised his eastern neighbour, the Kalachuris of Tripuri, by waging war against his former confederate the Kalachuri Gāṇgeyadeva, who had to yield to his forces. Now Bhima found a good ally in Gāṇgeyadeva’s son Karla against Bhoja, and invaded Mālava. While engaged in conducting the war against his neighbours in the east and in the west, Bhoja died of a disease, and Mālava fell into the hands of the Kalachuris and Chaulukyas in c. A.D. 1055.

Though Bhoja fought numerous battles throughout his reign he could not acquire any new territory except Koṅkana. He was not only a great soldier but also an erudite scholar. The authorship of more than twenty-three books on varied subjects is ascribed to him. He established schools for the education of his subjects. Dhanapāla, Uvaṭa, and many other men of letters lived in his court. He founded a city named Bhojapura and built a large number of temples in honour of Śiva. All these attainments of Bhoja in different spheres of life establish his claim to be regarded as one of the greatest kings of mediaeval India. He was succeeded by Jayasimha, who was probably his son.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Jayasimha got back his throne with the help of prince Vikramaditya VI of the Deccan, who forced the Chaulukyas and the Kalachuris to leave Málava. Henceforward Jayasimha became a staunch ally of Vikramaditya. He accompanied the Chaulukya prince in his invasion of the Andhra country and occupied Vengi. The Eastern Cháluksya king Vijayaditya VII eventually drove them out of the Andhra country with the help of the Chola Virarajendra. Jayasimha, by establishing friendly relation with Vikramaditya, antagonised king Someśvara II, who suspected that his younger brother Vikramaditya was conspiring against him. In order to punish Jayasimha king Someśvara II made an alliance with the Chaulukya Karṣa, son of Bhima I of Gujarāt, and invaded Málava. In the battle that followed Jayasimha lost his life and Málava was occupied by Someśvara II and Karṣa. In that serious situation Udayaditya, a brother or cousin of Bhoja, sought help from the Cháhamānas of Sākambhari. He recovered Málava after inflicting a severe defeat on the invaders with the help of the cavalry which the Cháhamāna Vīgraharāja III had sent to his assistance.

The inscriptions of Udayaditya’s reign bear dates A.D. 1030 and 1086. His kingdom extended at least up to the Nímār District on the south, Jhālawār State on the north, and Bhilsa on the east. He built the famous temple of Nilakanṭheśvara at Udepur, in Bhilsa. He had a number of sons and, according to an inscription dated A.D. 1104, two of them, Lakshmadeva and Naravarman, ruled one after the other after his death.

Lakshmadeva’s name is not found in any other record. He raided Gauḍa which was then under the supremacy of the Kāla-rātas, and plundered Aṅga and Kaliṅga, which were respectively ruled by the Rāṣṭrakūṭa Mathanadeva and Anantavarman Chōlaganga. During this campaign he seems to have come into clash with the Chola Kulottunga I whose kingdom extended up to Andhra. The statement that he conquered Paṇḍya and Ceylon is an obvious exaggeration. He won a victory over the Kalachuri Yaśāḷkarṣa and repulsed an attack of Mahmūd, governor of the Punjab, when the latter invaded Ujjain. On the north he is said to have led his army to the Kirā country, i.e. Kangrā valley in the Punjāb.

It is known from various contemporary records that Udayaditya had a son named Jagaddeva, who is mentioned in some Hoysala inscriptions as the Emperor of Málava. As regards his military achievements it is known that he invaded Dorasamudra in alliance with Cháluksya Vikramaditya VI, but was ultimately repulsed by the sons of Hoysala Ereyāṅga. He conquered Chakradurgā in old Bastar State, and defeated the kings of Malahara and the Andhra country.
He also defeated near Mt. Abu the king of Gurjara, who may be identified with Chaulukya Karna. There are good grounds for assuming that Lakshmadeva and Jagaddeva are identical. Jagaddeva was the youngest of the sons of Udayaditya. After a rule of some years he abdicated his throne, apparently in favour of Naravarman, “for fear of incurring the sin of superseding the elder brother.” On being invited by Vikramaditya VI he went to the Chalukya court and lived there for some time. After his abdication he ruled, at least up to A.D. 1112, the southern part of the Paramara kingdom which included the Yeotmal District in Berar and Adilabad District in the Hyderabad State. The Prabandha-chintāmaṇi states that Jagaddeva was given a province to rule by Vikramaditya VI. Jagaddeva’s military valour was proverbial and formed the theme of many romantic stories in the folk-lore of Western India in the subsequent ages.

Naravarman, who assumed the title Nireṇa-Nārāyaṇa, ascended the throne of Mālava before A.D. 1094, which is the earliest known date of his reign. His kingdom extended up to old Bundi State on the north, and Chānda District, Madhya Pradesh, on the south. The Nāgpur region, which was under the sway of Chalukya Vikramaditya VI in A.D. 1087, passed into his hands before A.D. 1104. Naravarman had to acknowledge defeat at the hands of the Chandella Sallakshanaavarman and the Chāhamāna Ajayadeva of Sākambhārī, who took prisoner Sulhaṇa, the commander of the Mālava army. A Pallava general under Vikrama Chola claims to have won a victory over a Mālava king, who was in all probability Naravarman. But Naravarman received the most severe blow from the Chaulukyas of Gujarat. After fighting for twelve years with Chaulukya Jayasimha-Siddharaja he fell a prisoner in his hands. He succeeded no doubt in securing his release, but his discomfiture on this occasion shook the foundation of the imperial power of the Paramāras. He gave shelter to Bhikshachara, a fugitive from the court of Kashmir, in or after A.D. 1128. He was a poet and patron of men of letters.

Yasovarman, who succeeded his father Naravarman before A.D. 1133, inherited a kingdom which was greatly shattered by the invasion of the Chaulukyas. It produced disruptive forces which he failed to control. One Vijayapala established an independent principality in the Dewās State in the heart of Mālava. Chandella Madanavarman forcibly occupied the Bhill region. Last of all the Chaulukya Jayasiṃha-Siddharāja, accompanied by the Chāhamāna Aśārāja of Naḍol, fell on him and took him prisoner. Jayasiṃha annexed the whole of Mālava, and assumed the title Avantinātha. Mālava remained under the sway of Jayasiṃha up to A.D. 1138.
What happened to Yaśovarman is not definitely known, but his son Jayavarman seems to have succeeded in recovering Mālava during the closing years of Jayasimha's reign. He issued an inscription from his residence at Vardhamanapura, which cannot be identified. He could not retain Mālava under his control for a long period. Chālukya Jagadekamalla of Kalyāna and the Hoysala Narasimha I invaded Mālava, destroyed his power, and seem to have placed one Ballāla on the throne of that country. Shortly after A.D. 1143 the Chaulukya Kumārapāla, successor of Jayasimha-Sīddharāja, de-throned Ballāla, and annexed the whole of Mālava up to Bhilsa to his kingdom.

For nearly twenty years Mālava remained a part and parcel of the kingdom of Gujarāt. During this period the princes of the Para-māra dynasty, designated as the 'Mahākumāras,' ruled Bhopāl and the districts of Nimār, Hoshangābād and Khāndesh as petty rulers. But in the seventh decade of the twelfth century Vindhyavarman, son of the Paramāra Jayavarman, recovered Mālava by defeating the Chaulukya Malarāja II. Vindhyavarman could not rule his newly conquered ancestral kingdom in peace. The decline of the power of the Chālukyas in the Deccan gave him no relief as the Hoysalas and the Yadavas, the successors of the Chālukyas, led successive invasions against Mālava. Some time before A.D. 1190 Vindhyavarman, in alliance with the Cholas, invaded the Hoysala territory in order to crush the growing power of the Hoysalas, but Ballāla II succeeded in repulsing them. Yādava Bhillama plundered Mālava some time before A.D. 1189.

In spite of all these, Vindhyavarman ultimately succeeded in repulsing his enemies, and when he died, shortly after A.D. 1193, the Paramāra kingdom was firmly consolidated. His son and successor Subhaṭavarman turned his arms against the kingdom of Gujarāt which began to decline after the death of Ajayapāla. He forced the Chaulukya feudatory, Sinha of Lāṭa, to transfer his allegiance to him. He plundered a large number of Jain temples at Dabhōi and Cambay, stormed Āṭahillapatiṇḍaka, and reached Somanāha with his army. There his progress was checked by Śrīdhara, the governor of that place under Bhīma II. Eventually Bhīma's minister Lavaṇaprāsāda forced him to withdraw from Gujarāt. Subhaṭavarman had to suffer a defeat at the hands of the Yādava Jaitugi. He was succeeded by his son Arjunavarman before A.D. 1210.

Arjunavarman fought successfully with Jayasimha, who had usurped the throne of Gujarāt for some time by dethroning Bhīma II. Arjunavarman's marriage with the daughter of Jayasimha, following a battle between the two kings, is the main theme of the drama.
named Purijitamajjar or Vijayasiri, composed by Arjunavarman’s preceptor Madana. Arjunavarman, like his predecessors, miserably failed in his contest with the Yadavas, who were then led by king Singha. In this encounter Arjunavarman’s feudatory Sindhuraja, brother of Siinha of Lata, lost his life. Arjunavarman wrote a number of books and his court was graced by Madana, Asadhara, and many other men of learning. Some time between A.D. 1215 and 1218 he was succeeded by Devapala, son of Mahakumara Harischandra, grandson of Mahakumara Lakshmivarman, who was the younger brother of Jayavarman.

Devapala’s kingdom extended from Broach District, Bombay, to Dhiisa, and included Nirmar and Hoshangabad Districts. Singha, the Yadava king, attacked Lata and took prisoner Devapala’s vassal Sanyramasinih, also known as Sankha, son of Sindhuraja. Sankha was released and a treaty was concluded between Singha and Devapala. Shortly afterwards, taking advantage of the absence of the Chaulukya minister Viradhavala, who went to the north to resist an invasion of the Muslims, Devapala and Sankha, in alliance with Singha, attacked southern Gujerat. Vastupala, governor of Cambay under Viradhavala, averted the danger by bringing about a dissension between Devapala and Singha with the help of secret emissaries. Subsequently Viradhavala wrested Broach from Sankha. Mala was invaded by the Muslims during Devapala’s reign. In A.D. 1233 Iltutmish captured Bhilsa and plundered Ujjain, but the Muslim victory was shortlived. Devapala was succeeded by his son Jaitugideva before A.D. 1243.

During the reign of Jaitugi Malava suffered a series of invasions. Krishna, the Yadava king, raided Malava; in A.D. 1250 Balban invaded it and, about the same time, Vaghela Visaladeva, king of Gujerat, sacked Dhara. Jaitugi was succeeded by his younger brother Jayavarman II before A.D. 1256. After Jayavarman II the succession of the Paramara kings can be traced only with the help of the known dates of the kings who followed him, but their relation with one another cannot be ascertained. The next known king after Jayavarman II is Jayasinha II, who was ruling in A.D. 1269 and 1274. The kingdom of Jayasinha II was invaded by the Chahamana Jaitrisinhva of Ranthambhor. The Paramara army was worsted by the Chahamanaas at Jhamplithaghasta, and Jayasinha himself was forced to retire to the fort of Manicha (Mandu). After his death in c. A.D. 1270 a quarrel broke out between his successor Arjunavarman II, who was probably his son, and his minister. After a severe contest each of them occupied a part of Malava. During the reign of Arjunavarman II the Chahamana Himmira of Ranthambhor, the Yadava Ramachandra, and the Vaghela Sarrangadeva in-
vaded Mālava. The next known king after Arjunavarman II is Bhoja II, who came to the throne shortly after A.D. 1283. During his reign Mālava was again plundered by the Chāhamāna Hammāra, and Sultan Jalāl-ud-dīn Khaljī also carried on depredation in that country. After Bhoja II we find Mahlak Deo ruling in Mālava in A.D. 1305 when ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khaljī invaded the country. Mahlak Deo, having lost his general Kokadeva in the battle, took shelter in the fort of Māndū. There he was killed by ‘Alā-ud-dīn’s general ‘Aīn-ul-Mulk and Mālava was finally conquered by the Muslims.

2. Minor Branches of the Paramāras in Rājputāna

(i) Mt. Abu

In the latter part of the tenth century Vākpātī-Muṇḍa, king of Mālava, placed his son Arāgayāja on the throne of Mt. Abu, Sirohi State, Rājputāna, with its capital at Chandravatī. Arāgayāja’s successors were Krīṣṇāvrajā, Dharaṇīvarāṇa, Mahipāla alias Dhruvabhāṭa (A.D. 1002), and Dhanḍhuka. Dhanḍhuka was dethroned by the Chaulukya Bhīma I of Gujārāt before A.D. 1030, but was subsequently restored to power by the Chaulukya king at the request of Vīmāla of the Prāgvalī family. Dhanḍhuka had three sons, Puruṣapāla, Dantīvarman, and Krīṣṇa II, all of whom ascended the throne one after the other. Puruṣapāla (A.D. 1042, 1045) declared independence, but Bhīma I brought Mt. Abu again under his control in the later part of his reign. Since then the country remained a part and parcel of the Chaulukya kingdom. Krīṣṇa II was succeeded by Dantīvarman’s son Yogarāja, who was succeeded by his son Rāmadeva. After the reign of Rāmadeva the throne of Mt. Abu seems to have been usurped by Krīṣṇa II’s son Kākala deva, who was succeeded by his son Rāmadeva. After the reign of Rāmadeva the throne of Mt. Abu seems to have been usurped by Krīṣṇa II’s son Kākala deva, who was succeeded by his son Rāmadeva. Rāmadeva’s son Yāsodhāvala on the throne of Mt. Abu. Yāsodhāvala, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1145 and 1150, fought with Ballāla, king of Mālava, on behalf of his overlord Kumārapāla, and killed him. He was succeeded by his son Dhārāvarsha some time before A.D. 1063. Dhārāvarsha helped Kumārapāla in his war against Mallikārjuna of Koṅkāra, and his younger brother Prahālādana saved the power and prestige of the Chaulukya Ajayapāla, successor of Kumārapāla, by defeating the Guhīla Sāmantasimha of Medapāla. It is stated that Raṇāsimha, son of the Paramāra Vikramasimha, defeated the warriors of Mālava on the banks of the Pārīḍ and obtained Antara. It is further stated that Dhārāvarsha got back his territory through the favour of Raṇāsimha.

It may only be suggested that Raṇāsimha, son of the deposed Vik-
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

Ramasisinha, usurped the throne of Mt. Abu some time after the death of Kumārala, but restored Dharavarsha to power after a short reign. Dharavarsha repulsed an attack of the Chāhāmāna Prithvirāja III against Bhima II of Gujarāt. In A.D. 1197 he suffered a defeat at the hands of Qutb-ud-din's general Khusrav near the foot of Mt. Abu. He helped Viradhavala of Gujarāt in repulsing an attack of Sultān Iltutmīsh, and was succeeded by his younger brother Prahlādana after A.D. 1219. Prahlādana is the author of the drama Pṛthva-parākrama. Some time before A.D. 1230 Prahlādana was succeeded by Dhāravārsha's son Somasisinha, who declared independence. Somasisinha's son and successor was Kṛishnarāja. Kṛishnarāja's son Pratāpasisinha, also known as Pātala, reconquered, with the help of the Vāghelas, his paternal throne, which was occupied by Guhila Samarasirīha. He ruled his kingdom as a vassal of the Vāghela Sāraṅgadeva, and was succeeded by his son Arjuna, who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1290. Some time before A.D. 1320 Mt. Abu passed into the hands of Chāhāmāna Luṇḍiga of South Mārwār.

(ii) Vāgadā

In the middle of the tenth century A.D. Dhanika, a remote descendant of Dāmbarsisinha, younger son of Upendra,23 founded a kingdom in Vagadā, modern Bānswāra and Dungarpur States, the capital of which was Uthūnpaka, modern Arthuna in the Bānswāra State. Dhanika's successor Chāchcha fought on the side of Siyaka II against Rāśṭrakūta Khoṭtiga, and lost his life in the battle. Chāchcha was followed by Chalakapa and Satyarāja one after the other. Satyarāja assisted Bhoja in his war against the Chaulukyas. After Satyarāja ruled Līmrājā, Manḍalika (A.D. 1059), Chāmuṇḍarājā (A.D. 1079, 1100), and Vījarājā (A.D. 1108-09). About the middle of the twelfth century Vagadā was occupied by the Guhilas.

(iii) Jālor (Jābālipura)

Vākpati-Muṣija's son Chandana was the first king of the Jālor branch of the Paramāra family. He was followed in succession by Devarājā, Aparājita, Vījjala, Dharavārsha, and Visalā (A.D. 1117). The last known king of the family is Kuintapāla, who had to surrender Jālor to the Chāhāmāna Kirttipāla of Nāṉḍol in the latter part of the twelfth century.

(iv) Bhīnmāl

Sīndhurājā's son Dūsala is the founder of the Bhīnmāl branch of the Paramāra dynasty. In the early years of the eleventh century Devarājā of this family obtained Maru-maṇḍala from the Chāhāmāna

73
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Durlabharaja of Sakambhari. Krishnaraja (A.D. 1060, 1086), grandson of Devaraja, was put into prison by the Chaulukya Bhima I. He was released by the Chahamana Balaprasada of Nâdog and ruled as an independent king. After Krishnaraja his son Sochharaja, Udayaraja and his son Someśvara (A.D. 1140, 1161) occupied the throne. Udayaraja's might is said to have spread as far as Choja, Gauḍa, Kangāṭha and Mālava, but his son Someśvara is said to have regained his lost kingdom through the Chaulukya Jayasimha-Siddharaja. The next known king after Someśvara is Jayatasimha (A.D. 1182), who seems to have been succeeded by Salakha. In the early years of the thirteenth century Bhimāl came under the supremacy of the Chāhamānas of Southern Mārwār.

XII. THE CHAULUKYAS OF GUJARĀT

By the beginning of the eleventh century A.D. the Chaulukyas had firmly established themselves in Gujarāt. In A.D. 1009-10, king Chāmuḍaraja, after the death of his son Vallabharaja, handed the sovereignty over to his second son Durlabharaja to whom Chāhamāna Mahendra gave his sister in marriage in a svayamvara sabhā (an assembly for the selection of bridegroom) at Nādog. The chiefs of Mālava, Mathurā, Hāṣa country etc., the disappointed suitors for the hand of the princess, attacked Durlabha on his way back to his own country, but he defeated them all. He plundered Lāṭa, which was then ruled by Kirttiraja, son of Vatsaraja and grandson of the Chaulukya Bārappa. Lāṭa was not, however, annexed to the kingdom of the Chaulukyas on that occasion. After Kirttiraja his son Vatsaraja and his grandson Trilochanapāla ruled Lāṭa at least up to A.D. 1051. In his old age in c. A.D. 1022, Durlabha abdicated the throne in favour of his nephew Bhimadeva I, son of Nāgadeva.

Bhima had to suffer a great disaster three years after his accession. In A.D. 1025 Mahmūd of Ghaznī overran Gujarāt and plundered Somanātha. Bhima had fled to Kanḍhakoṭ in Kutch at the approach of the Muslim army, but returned to his capital after the departure of the invader. Some time before A.D. 1031 he wrested Mt. Abu from Paramāra Dhandhuka, and appointed Vimala of the Prāgāṇḍa family as its governor. Vimala built there the famous temple of Ādīnātha. Subsequently Bhima restored Dhandhuka to power, whose son Pūrṇapāla is known to have been ruling there in A.D. 1042 as an independent chief. The Mt. Abu inscription of Bhima, dated A.D. 1062, proves that the country again passed into his hands in the closing years of his reign. It remained a part of the kingdom of Gujarāt till the end of the thirteenth century. Bhima annexed Bhīmāl and threw its ruler, the Paramāra Krishnaraja, into prison.
His attempts to assert his supremacy over southern Mārvār were, however, baffled by the Chāhamāna Ahila of Nādol and the latter's successor Aṇāhilā. Aṇāhilā's son Bālaprasādā forced him to release Krishnarāja. The Dvyārāya relates that Bhima went to the Punjāb, crossed the Sindhu by means of a stone bridge built by him, and defeated Hammuka, ruler of Sindh. Merūtuṅgā relates that during this time, taking advantage of Bhima's absence, the Paramāra Bhoja's general Kulachandra plundered Aṇāhilapātaka. After his return to Gujarāt Bhima sent batches of soldiers to Mālavā from time to time for marauding purposes. It has been noticed above that in the middle of the eleventh century Bhima and his ally the Kali-churi Kālāra made an organised attack on Mālavā. Bhima's final battle with Bhoja and his subsequent quarrel with Kāraṇa have been noticed above. The statement in the Dvyārāya that he won victories over Bhadrabhat, the ruler of the distant Gajabandha desā, and defeated the kings of Dāśārūpa, Kāśī, Ayodhyā, and Yantī desā does not find support in any other record. The same source relates that the rulers of Punjāra and Andhāra entered into friendly relations with him.

Bhima had three sons, Mūlarāja, Kṣemarāja, and Kārṇa. Mūlarāja predeceased his father, and Kṣemarāja, whose mother was of low birth, declined to ascend the throne. So Bhima handed the sovereignty over to Kārṇa in c. A.D. 1064, and retired to a place of pilgrimage for penance.

The kingdom of Kārṇa, who assumed the title Trailokya-ramalla, extended on the south up to Navsārī, in Bombay State. In alliance with the Kārṇas, he conquered Mālavā by defeating and killing Paramāra Jayasiṁha, but was ultimately repulsed by the Paramāra Udāya-ditya. In the latter part of his reign he had to suffer a defeat at the hands of the Paramāra Jagadeva. He subdued a Bhilla chief named Āsā, residing at Āsāpālī, modern Asaval, near Ahmadābād. His invasion of Southern Mārvār was repulsed by the Chāhamāna Prithvipāla of Nādol. He married Mayālalladevi, the daughter of the Kadamba Jayakesin, king of Goa, and was succeeded by his minor son Jayasimha in c. A.D. 1094. Mayālalladevi acted as a regent for her son for some time.

Jayasiṁha, who assumed the title Siddharāja, was one of the greatest kings of his dynasty. Inscriptions of his reign prove that his kingdom extended up to Bali in Jodhpur and Sāmbhar in Jaipur on the north, Bhilsa on the east, and Kāthiāwār on the west. He put down the revolt of the non-Aryan Barbara, who was troubling the ascetics of Siddhapura. After a protracted battle he defeated and imprisoned Navaghana, the chief of the Ābhiras of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Saurashtra, and appointed his Daṇḍādhipati Sajjana governor of that country. On the north he annexed Bhinmal by defeating the Paramāras before A.D. 1129, and continued his hereditary fight with the Chāhāmnās of Nāḍol. It seems that when Jayaśiṁha was young, Chāhāmāna Jojalla sacked Anahillapākaka. Jojalla's successor Āśārāja submitted to Jayaśiṁha and ruled his territory as his vasal. Jayaśiṁha pushed his arms further north and conquered Śākambhari, modern Sāmbhar, after defeating the Chāhāmāna Arṇorāja. He gave his daughter in marriage to Arṇorāja and allowed him to rule his territory as his vasal. He conquered Vāgaḍha, and being assisted by Arṇorāja of Nāḍol, invaded Māḷava. After a long-drawn battle he took Paramāra Naravarman prisoner, but subsequently released him. Some time before A.D. 1136 he took Naravarman's son Yaśovarman prisoner and annexed Apañ to his kingdom. He invaded Kālaśājara and Mahobā, and forced the Chandella Madanavarman to surrender Bhilas to him. On the south Jayaśiṁha came into conflict with the Chālukya Vikramāditya VI of Kalyāṇa and won a victory over him. He was in friendly relation with the king of Dāhalā, who seems to have been Gayakarāṇa. During the closing years of his reign Jayaśiṁha could not keep his control over some of the newly annexed territories. The Paramāra Jayavarman, son of Yaśovarman, became independent in Māḷava, and the Chāhāmāna Āśārāja of Nāḍol, having freed himself from the control of the Chaulukyas, declared hostility against Jayaśiṁha.

Jayaśiṁha was a devotee of Śiva and built the temple of Rudra-Mahākāla at Siddhapura. He established schools for learning Jyotisha Sāstra, Nyāya Sāstra, and Purāṇa, and his court was graced by the great Jain scholar Hemachandra. The last known date of Jayaśiṁha is V.S. 1200 (= A.D. 1143). He had no son, and Kumārapāla, the great-grandson of Kehemāraṇa, who was a son of Bhide I by a concubine, was a claimant to the throne. In view of the low origin of Kumārapāla Jayaśiṁha did not approve of his claim, and adopted Bāhaṅga, the son of his minister Udayana, as his successor. Kumārapāla's father Tribhuwanapāla was killed, and he was driven into exile. But after the death of Jayaśiṁha, some time between A.D. 1143 and 1145, Kumārapāla secured the throne for himself with the help of the Jains and his brother-in-law Krīṣṇa. Bāhaṅga fled to Śākambhari, and took service under the Chāhāmnās.

The inscriptions of Kumārapāla's reign show that his kingdom extended up to Barmer in Mallani, Pāli in Jodhpur, and Chitor in Udaipur on the north, Bhilā on the east, and Kāthiāwar on the west. Immediately after his accession Kumārapāla put to death the ministers who conspired to kill him, and blinded for insolence his sister's husband Krīṣṇa, who had helped him in securing the throne.
In the early part of his reign he was threatened with invasions by his northern and eastern neighbours. The Chāhāmāna Arjorāja of Sākambhari took up the cause of Bāhāḍa and made an alliance with Ballāla, king of Ujjain, and the chiefs ruling on the banks of the Para river against Kumārapāla. Arjorāja and Ballāla made a simultaneous attack on Gujarāt from the north and the east. Kumārapāla despatched his generals Vijaya and Kṛishṇa against Ballāla, and himself marched with an army to meet Arjorāja. Arjorāja received a severe wound in the battle, and concluded peace which was cemented by the marriage of his daughter to the Chauñukya king. Kumārapāla then attacked Mt. Abu, dethroned Paramārā Vikramasiṁha, who had become hostile to him during his war with the Chāhāmānas, and made the nephew of the latter, Paramārā Yasodhavala, its king some time before A.D. 1145. He, then, along with Yasodhavala, joined his generals Vijaya and Kṛishṇa, who were fighting with Ballāla. Ballāla was killed in the battle and the whole of Mālava up to Bhilsa was again annexed to the kingdom of Gujarāt. At this time Suñīvara, a chief of Saurāśṭra, revolted, and the Chauñukya minister Udayana lost his life in an attempt to put him down. Kumārapāla sent another contingent to Saurāśṭra and brought Suñīvara under his control. The Chāhāmāna Āḷādāna, son of Āśārāja of Naḍol, gave him substantial help on this occasion and probably in recognition of this service he gave him Kūrākapā (near Bārmēr) and some other territories to rule. Kumārapāla defeated Rajyapāla of Naḍol and handed the kingdom over to his Dvēṇāṇāyaka Vajjaladeva, who administered it from c. A.D. 1154 to c. A.D. 1159. Paramārā Someśvara of Bhinmāl, whose kingdom extended up to Kīrāḍu, acknowledged his sway. In A.D. 1150 Kumārapāla led an aggressive campaign against the Chāhāmāna Arjorāja of Sākambhari, as the latter had insulted his queen, the daughter of the Chauñukya Jayasiṁha. He devastated the Sapādalaksha country and defeated Arjorāja, but allowed him to rule his territory. Some time between A.D. 1160 and 1162 he despatched his minister Ambaga with a large army against Mallikārjuna of Konkāna, who was killed and whose kingdom was annexed to Gujarāt. The Paramārā Dhārāvarsha and prince Someśvara, second son of the Chāhāmāna Arjorāja, assisted the Chauñukya army in this battle.

The Jain chronicles of Gujarāt claim that Kumārapāla came under the influence of Hemachandra, the erudite Jain scholar and author of a large number of books, who lived in his court, and embraced Jainism. This is corroborated by an epigraphic record which further shows that the king changed his creed before A.D. 1164. The Gujarāt chronicles state that the king forbade animal sacrifice, and his order was obeyed in Saurāśṭra, Lāṭa,
Mālava, Abhīra, Medapāta, Meru, and Sapādālakṣaṇa. The Brah­
manas, who were not allowed to violate this order, had to offer
sacrifices of grains. There are epigraphic records to prove that
Kumārapāla’s feudatories in Southern Mārvār issued order prohibit­
ing the slaughter of animals. The inscriptions of Kumārapāla show
that though he changed his creed, he was reverential to his family
deity Śiva, and built temples for both the Jains and the Brahmanas.
He abrogated the law empowering the State to confiscate the pro­
erty of those who died intestate, and stopped gambling, which was
very popular both with the nobles and the common people.

After the death of Kumārapāla in A.D. 1171-72 there was a
struggle for the throne between his sister’s son Pratāpamallā, who
was apparently backed by the Jains, and Ajayapāla, son of Kumāra­
pāla’s brother Mahipāla, who seems to have been supported by the
Brahmanas. Ajayapāla came out victorious, and ascended the
throne. He maintained his control over the kingdom of Mālava,
which extended up to Bhilsa on the east, and Pūrṇa-Pathaka, on the
bank of the Purna, on the south. He led an army against Śūkambarī
and forced its king Someśvara to surrender to him a golden mūg­
pikā as a tribute. The Guhila chief Sāmantashīnha of Mewār invad­
ed Gujarāt and wounded Ajayapāla in the battle. On that occasion
the Paramāra Prahladana, younger brother of Dharavarsha of Mt.
Abu, saved the prestige of the Chaulukya king by inflicting defeat on
the invader. The Jain chronicles allege that Ajayapāla was a per­
secutor of the Jains, that he demolished Jain temples, mercilessly
executed the Jain scholar Rāmachandra, and killed Ambaḍa, a
minister of Kumārapāla, in an encounter.

Ajayapāla lost his life at the hands of the Pratihāra Vayajaladeva
in c. A.D. 1176, and was succeeded by his young son Mūlarāja II,
whose mother, queen Nāikidevi, the daughter of the Kadamba Para­
mardin, king of Goa, acted as regent. In A.D. 1178 Mu‘izz-ud-dīn
Muḥammad Ghūrī attacked the kingdom of Gujarāt. Nāikidevi,
“taking her son (Mūlarāja) in her lap,” led the Chaulukya army
against the Muslims and defeated them at Gadaragahṭa near the
foot of Mt. Abu. Though the Muslim historians mention the name of Mu‘izz-ud-dīn Muḥammad Ghūrī’s adversary on this occasion as
Bhima (II), the overwhelming internal evidence leaves no doubt
that the battle was fought during the reign of Mūlarāja II. About
this time the Paramāra Vindhyavarman wrested Mālava from the
Chaulukyas. Mūlarāja II died in the early part of A.D. 1178, and
was succeeded by his younger brother Bhima II, who was obviously
a minor.
Bhima II's inscriptions, the dates of which extend from A.D. 1178 to 1239, prove that he was in possession of Barmer, Godwar in Jodhpur, Dungarpur, and Kathiawar. Internal disorder and foreign invasions reduced Bhima to the position of a titular king, and taking advantage of his young age the provincial governors and the ministers divided the kingdom among themselves. In that predicament Bhima had to rely on the support of the Vaghelas who rose into prominence in Bhimapalli under Dhavala of the Chaulukya family, the husband of Kumara-pala's maternal aunt. Dhavala's son Arjoraja had fought on the side of Kumara-pala against the chiefs of Medapaṭa and Chandravatī. In recognition of this service Kumara-pala granted him the village Vyāghrapalli, 10 miles south-west of Anāhīlāpāṭaka, where he settled along with his family. It is after the name of this village that the successors of Arjoraja are called Vaghelas. Arjoraja came to the rescue of young Bhima II, and brought the recalcitrant elements under control, but lost his life while thus consolidating the power of Bhima. Arjoraja's son Lavanasprāsāda then took charge of the administration on behalf of the Chaulukya king. He fixed his headquarters at Dholka, the chief city in Khetaka, modern Kaira, and the two brothers Tejāpala and Vastupala of the Pragvīta family served him as ministers. The weakness of the sovereignty of the Chaulukyas invited the foreigners to invade Gujarat about this time. The Yadava Bhillama and his son Jaitugil led successive expeditions against Bhima. The Paramāra Subhāṣavarman annexed Lāṭa and overran Gujarāt, but was ultimately routed by Lavānaprāsāda. The Muslims under Qutb-ud-din occupied Ajmer in A.D. 1193-94. In 1195 Bhima sent an army to help the Hindus against the Muslims, and the Chaulukya army pursued the Muslims up to the vicinity of Ajmer. In A.D. 1197 Qutb-ud-din, with a fresh contingent from Ghaznī, invaded Gujarāt. He forced his way through Mt. Abu by defeating Rai Karan and Dharivarsha, and plundered Anāhīlāpāṭaka, but shortly after withdrew from Gujarāt. In the early years of the thirteenth century the Chaulukyas under Bhima established their supremacy over Godwar, in Jodhpur, by defeating Sāmantasimha, and posted there the Chāhamāṇa Dhanḍhāladeva as their governor.

Some time before A.D. 1210 one Jayasimha usurped the throne of Anāhīlāpāṭaka. The usurper, who had suffered defeat at the hands of the Paramāra Arjunavarman of Mālava, was dethroned by Bhima II some time between A.D. 1223 and 1226. Bhima is not known to have taken any part in defending Gujarāt against the aggression of the foreigners, and all arrangements for defence were made by Lavānaprāsāda and his able son Viradhavala. They put Tejāpala in charge of Dholka and posted Vastupala at Stambha.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(Cambay) as a governor to defend southern Gujarat. Lavaṇa-prasāḍa repulsed a number of invasions led by the Yādava Sinhaśa. On one occasion, when Sinhaśa reached the Mahi river with his army, Lavaṇa-prasāḍa and Viradhavala had to hurry to the north to meet the attacks of some Māravāḍa chiefs, who made an alliance with the Chāhāmāna Saṅkha of Lāṭa and Ghughula, king of Godhra. Though Sinhaśa did not press his advantage further, his ally Saṅkha attacked Vastupāla, but was defeated in the battle at Vata-kūpa. Lavaṇa-prasāḍa and his son succeeded in repulsing the attacks of the Māravāḍa chiefs and making their position secure on the north. On another occasion Sinhaśa, in alliance with Devapāla of Malava and Saṅkha, attacked southern Gujarāt, just at the time when the Muslims under Iltutmish had invaded northern Gujarāt. Viradhavala, leaving Vastupāla in charge of the southern frontier, himself went to the north and repulsed the invaders. Vastupāla also succeeded in dispersing Sinhaśa and his allies. Lavaṇa-prasāḍa entered into a treaty with Sinhaśa before A.D. 1231, and the two countries maintained friendly relation for some years. Shortly after A.D. 1231 Lavaṇa-prasāḍa retired and Viradhavala became the de facto ruler of Gujarāt. Viradhavala killed the two rebel chiefs Saṅgana and his brother Chāmunḍa of Vāmanasthali, subjugated Bhimasiniha of Bhadreśvara, and took king Ghughula of Godhra prisoner. Viradhavala had three sons, Pratāpamalla, Virama, and Vīsvamalla (Visala). Pratāpamalla died at an early age leaving behind a son named Arjuna. How long Viradhavala ruled Dholka cannot be ascertained. Mahāmangaleśvara Virama is found ruling from Vidyutpura as a vassal of Bhima II in A.D. 1239. A colophon of a manuscript of the Yogāśtra bears the date V.S. 1295 (= A.D. 1238) and is stated to have been written during the reign of the Mahāmangaleśvara Visaladeva. The Gujarāt chroniclers state that the two brothers were hostile to each other, and Visala forced Virama to take shelter in Jābālipura (Jālor) under his father-in-law Udayasiniha, where he was killed at the instigation of Vastupāla. The authenticity of this account cannot be verified. The Sundha Hill inscription (A.D. 1201), on the other hand, states that Chāchiga, son of Udayasiniha (A.D. 1206-49), destroyed the Gurjara lord Virama. It follows from this evidence that Virama occupied the throne of Gujarāt, and was defeated by Chāchiga some time after A.D. 1249. This, however, goes against the testimony of the Jain literature, according to which Virama never occupied the throne and his brother Visala became king in A.D. 1243.

The last known date of Bhima II’s reign from his inscriptions is A.D. 1239. He was succeeded by Tribhuvanapāla, who was ruling in Aṇaḥillapāṭaka in A.D. 1242. It seems that during the reign of
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

Tribhuvanapāla the Yadava Siṅghaṇa, the Paramāra Jaitugi of Mālava, and the Guhila Jaitraśīṃha of Mewār invaded the kingdom of Gujarāt. Visaladeva helped Tribhuvanapāla in routing all these enemies. Tribhuvanapāla seems to have been superseded by Viśara, who was again deposed by his brother Viśala before A.D. 1251. Viśala abdicated the throne of Anāhilapātaka in favour of his nephew Arjuna, son of Pratāpamalla, between A.D. 1261 and 1264. Arjuna had two sons, Nāma and Sāraṅgadeva, and was succeeded by the latter in A.D. 1274. It is known from Sāraṅgadeva’s inscriptions that Kāra in Gujarāt, Kāthiāwa, Kutch, and Anāhilapātaka were within his kingdom. Some time before A.D. 1285 he was reduced to a precarious condition by the Muslims under Balbān, but succeeded ultimately in repulsing them with the help of the Guhila Samaraśīṃha. Subsequently this Guhila chief became hostile to Sāraṅgadeva, who thereupon helped the Paramāra Pratāpāsīṃha in reconquering Mt. Abū from Samarasīṃha. Sāraṅgadeva won a victory over Arjunavarman II of Mālava and repulsed an attack of the Yadava Rāmachandra of Devagiri. He was succeeded by his nephew Karṇa, son of Nāma, in A.D. 1296. In A.D. 1299 Ulugh Khān and Nusrat Khān, two generals of ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khāji, wrested the whole of Gujarāt from Karṇa and captured his queen Kowladevi (Kamaladevi) who was subsequently admitted into the harem of ‘Alā-ud-dīn. Karṇa fled with his daughter Devaladevi to Devagiri under an escort. But on the way she was captured by the Muslims and sent to Delhi. Karṇa fought bravely for some time with Alaf Khān but, having failed to cope with the invader, fled to Devagiri. His subsequent career is not known. He was the last king of the dynasty, and evidently died a fugitive.

XIII. THE CHĀḤAMĀNAS

1. The Chāḥamānas of Sākambhari

The Chāḥamānas of Sākambhari, as we have noted above, were already a rising power under Durlabhārājā at the close of the tenth century. Govindārājā II, also known as Gaṅḍa, son of Durlabhārājā, seems to have come into clash with Muḥammad of Ghaznī, but did not suffer much. Govindārājā II’s successor Vākpatārājā II defeated Guhila Ambaprasāda. The next king Vyārāma, younger brother of Vākpati II, was badly worsted in a battle with the Chāḥamāna Anāhilā of Nāḍol and subsequently lost his life in a battle with the Paramāra Bhoja. Vyārāma was followed in suc-
cession by his brother Chāmundaśāja, Singhaśa, and Dūsala (Dur­
labhāraśa III). Durlabha, the brother of Singhaśa, lost his life in
a battle with the Mātangaś, i.e. the Mlechchhas, and was
succeeded by his brothers Virasimha and Vigraharāja III one after
the other. Vīgraharāja helped the Paramāra Udayaditya with a
cavalry force against the Chaulukya Karna. Vīgraharāja’s son and
successor Prthvirāja I, who is known to have been ruling in
A.D. 1105, killed 700 Chaulukyas who went to Pushkara to rob the
Brahmanaś. From the time of Prthvirāja I’s son and successor
Ajayarāja, the Chāhāmānas of Śakambhari began to launch aggressive
campaigns against their neighbours in order to establish an empire.
Ayayarāja invaded Ujjain and captured in battle Sulhā, the com­
mander of the army of the king of Mālava, who seems to have been
the Paramāra Naravarman. He killed three kings, viz. Chāchiga,
Sindhuśa, and Yāśorāja, in engagements, and founded the city
of Ajayameru, modern Ajmer. Silver and copper coins of his reign
have been found, some of which bear the names of his queen Somala­
devi. He was succeeded by his son Ārvorāja, also known as Anaka
and Analladeva, before A.D. 1133.

Ārvorāja defeated and killed a large number of the Turushkas,
i.e. the Muslims, who attacked the Šapādalahasha country by way of
Marusthāli (desert). He overran the kingdom of Kusavarana, which
cannot be definitely identified. He had to acknowledge the suze­
rainty of the Chaulukya Jayasimha, who gave him his daughter
Kāfchanadevi in marriage, and suffered two defeats at the hands of
the Chaulukya Kumārapāla who married his daughter Jalvāna. His
wars with these two Chaulukya monarchs have been described above.
In addition to Kāfchanadevi Ārvorāja had another queen named
Sudhavā, who was the daughter of a chief of Avichi in the desert.
Kāfchanadevi gave birth to a son Someśvara. while Sudhavā had
three sons. Arvora was killed by the eldest son of Sudhavā, for
some unknown reason, before A.D. 1153. This parricide, who may
be identified with Jugadeva, ruled for a short time, and appears to
have been supplanted by his younger brother Vīgraharāja IV, also
known as Visaladeva.

The known dates of Vīgraharāja extend from A.D. 1153 to
1163. The Chāhāmānas established a big empire for the first time
during his reign. He conquered Dhillikā (Delhi) from the Tomarās,
and took possession of Aśika, modern Hánsi in the Hissār District in
the Punjāb. While carrying on conquest in the Punjāb, he fought a
number of battles with the Muslims. In the south he plundered
Pallikā (Pāl in Jodhpur), burnt Jābālipura, modern Jālor, and sack­
ed Nāgol. All these territories were in the kingdom of the Chau-
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

Lukya Kumárapála, and the Paramára Kumtaípa was his adversary at Jábálípurá. Vigraharája is said to have also defeated one Sajjana. Delhi Siwalik Pillar inscriptions of his reign prove that his kingdom extended up to the Siwalik Hill, Saharánpur, U.P., on the north. The epigraphic records of his reign also establish that Jápípur District, in Udaípur, was within his territory. Vigraharája composed the Haráckeli-ná̄jaka, fragments of which are found engraved on a stone at Ajméer. The Mahákási Somadeva composed in honour of this king the Lalita-Vigraharája-ná̄jaka, some portions of which are found engraved in a mosque at Ajméer. Vigraharája was a king of great power and strength, and his claim that he made Aryavartá again the land of the Áryas by repeatedly defeating the Mlechchhas or the Muslims is not an empty boast. He was succeeded by his son Apara-Gángeya, who died young. After Apara-Gángeya Prithvíbháta or Prithvírája II, son of the eldest son of queen Sudhává, occupied the throne. As Prithvíbháta claims that he defeated the king of Sákambhári, it seems that he wrested the sovereignty from young Apara-Gángeya. His inscriptions bear two dates, A.D. 1168 and 1169. He put his maternal uncle, the Guhíla Kíhalá in charge of Ásiká (Hánsí) to keep the Muslims in check. Kíhalá burnt a city named Panchapúra, which is identified with Panchapáta on the Sutléj, and took its ruler prisoner. His adversary on this occasion appears to have been Khusráv Malik of the Yamini dynasty, who came into conflict with the Gáhaválá Vijayáchandra of Kanauj. Kíhalá also defeated a prince named Vasáta.

Prithvírája II was succeeded by his uncle Someśvara, son of Árnerája by the Cháulúkya princess Káñchánadeví, in A.D. 1168-69. In the early part of his life Someśvara lived in the court of Gujárát during the reigns of his grandfather Jayásírha and Kumárapála. While living there he fought on the side of Kumárapála against Malákkárjuna of Kónkana and is said to have killed his adversary. About this time he married a Kálachuri princess, who gave birth to two sons, Prithvírája (III) and Harírája. After the death of Prithvírája II, Someśvara went to Sapádalakshá on the invitation of the ministers of State, along with his queen and two sons, and ascended the throne. His kingdom extended up to Bijóli in Udaípur on the south. He was succeeded by his son Prithvírája III in A.D. 1177. The career of Prithvírája III and the circumstances under which the rule of the Cháhmánapas came to a close in Ajméer will be discussed in the following chapter.

2. The Cháhmánapas of Rayástambhapúra

A collateral branch of the Cháhmánapas of Ajméer ruled in Rayástambhapúra, modern Ranthambhór, in Jaípur, in the thirteenth
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

century. The kings of this family claim to have been born in the lineage of Prithviraja III. The statement in Nayachandra Suri's *Hammira-Mahakavya* that Govindaraja, the founder of the family, was a grandson of Prithviraja III, cannot be accepted as true in view of the fact that Prithviraja III was a minor in A.D. 1177. Govindaraja, who came to power in the closing years of the twelfth century, was a scion of the Chahamana family of Ajmer. It is stated that having been banished by Prithviraja III he founded a kingdom at Ranastambhapura; and that after the capture of Ajmer by the Muslims, the family and followers of Hariraja, younger brother of Prithviraja III, took shelter with Govindaraja, who was very much affected at the news of Hariraja's death, and received them cordially. According to the Muslim source, however, Ranthambhor came under the influence of the Muslims during the reign of Hariraja, and its ruler was their protégé. Govindaraja was succeeded by his son Bālhanadeva, generally identified with Gaḍhapati Valapadeva, who was ruling in A.D. 1215 as a feudatory of Sultan Iltutmish, and whose kingdom extended up to Manglāna, 19 miles west of Maroth, in Jaipur. Bālhanā probably threw off the yoke of the Muslims some time after A.D. 1215, but in A.D. 1226 Iltutmish led an army against Ranthambhor and conquered it. It appears from *Tabaqat-i-Nasiri* that Ranthambhor was under the supremacy of Iltutmish till his death in A.D. 1236, but after the close of his reign the Hindus laid siege to that fort. Raziyā sent to its rescue her general Qutb-ud-din Hasan Ghūrī who took the Muslim army out of the fort, demolished it, and returned to Delhi.

It is difficult to reconcile the reports of the Muslim historians with that supplied by Nayachandra Suri's *Hammira-Mahakavya*, which is virtually the only authority that gives a continuous narrative of this branch of the Chahamanas. Nayachandra relates that Bālhanā had two sons, Prahlāda and Vāgbhāta. As he grew old and feeble he installed Prahlāda on the throne and appointed Vāgbhāta as his Prime Minister. Prahlāda lost his life in a hunting excursion, and was succeeded by his young son Viranarayana. It is said that once when Viranaraya started for Amarapura (Amber) to marry the daughter of the Kachchhavah prince of Jayapura he was attacked on his way by Sultan Jalāl-ud-din of Delhi. Having failed to overcome him the Sultan invited him to Delhi and killed him, and Ranthambhor fell into the hands of the Muslims. Subsequently Vāgbhāta who, being insulted by Viranaraya, had left his service and proceeded to Mālava, killed the Mālava king and wrested Ranthambhor from the Muslims. The fact that no Sultan of the name of Jalāl-ud-din is known to have ruled in Delhi about this time casts doubt on the whole story. It may only be suggested that Iltutmish occupied Ranthambhor by defeating
Viranārāyaṇa, and Vāgbhaṭa reconquered it during the reign of Raziyā. Ulugh Khan (Balban) led two invasions against Ranthambhor in A.D. 1248 and 1253, when it was ruled by Bahar-deo, who is described as the greatest of the Rais of Hindustān by Minhāj. On both these occasions the Muslims had to rest content only by securing some spoils. Bahar-deo may be identified with Vāgbhaṭa who, according to Hammira-Mahākāvya, stationed a large number of forces at different places along the frontier to keep off the Muslims. He was succeeded by his son Jaitrasinhā.

The Balvan inscription of Hammira supplies some valuable information about Jaitrasinhā’s military activities. The king harassed a chief named Jayasinīna in Maṇḍapa, who is generally identified with the Paramāra Jayasinīna of Mālava. The Paramāra Jayasinīna was in possession of Maṇḍapa, i.e. Māndu in Dīār State, but there was a Maṇḍapa-durga where Balban stopped while advancing towards Ranthambhor from Delhi and a lake called Jaitrasāgara was situated near that. Jaitrasinhā defeated hundreds of brave warriors of the Mālava king at Jhampāthāghaṭṭa, and kept them as prisoners at Ranthambhor. He killed a Kurma king and a king of Karkarālagiri. According to Hammira-Mahākāvya Jaitrasinhā paid tribute to the Sultan of Delhi, and he was probably the king of Ranthambhor who, according to Minhāj, was defeated by the army of Sultān Nāsir-ud-dīn in A.D. 1259. Jaitrasinhā had three sons, Hammira, Surattraṇa, and Virama, and was succeeded by Hammira in A.D. 1283.

Hammira’s kingdom included Seopur District in the Gwālīor State, and Balvan in the Kotah State. Sārṅgadārha, whose grandfather Rāghava was a courtier of Hammira, refers to this king as a ruler of the Sākambhari country in his Padhātī, composed in A.D. 1363. It is not unlikely that the kings of this family held sway over Sākambhari from the time of Bālhaṇa, whose kingdom is known to have been extended up to Māroth in Jaipur. The Hammira-Mahākāvya gives a description of Hammira’s digvijaya. The king defeated Arjuna of Sarasapura, an unnamed chief of Gaḷhamaṇḍala, and Bhōja II of Dīār. He marched to Chitrakōṭa, ravaged Medapata, and extorted submission from the ruler of Abu. Then he sacked Vardhamānapura, modern Wadhwan in Kāṭhīāwār, and proceeded to Pushkara by way of Ajayamēru (Ajmer). From Pushkara he went to Sākambhari, plundering on his way a number of towns, and from that place to Ranthambhor. His adversaries in Medapāṭa and Mt. Abu were respectively the Guhila Samarasiṇa and the Paramāra Pratāpasinīna, a subordinate of the Vāghela Sārāṅgadeva of Gujarāt. The Balvan inscription of his reign mentions his victory
over Arjuna, king of Mālava. This suggests that he led two expedi­tions against Mālava, once during Arjunavarman's reign and again during the reign of Bhōja II. The Prākṛtī-paīnāgālam relates his victory over Mālava and Gurjara and describes his prolonged fights with the Muslims of Delhi. It is known from the Muslim source that Jalāl-ud-dīn Khaljī led an unsuccessful invasion against Ranthambhōr in A.D. 1290. ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khaljī also declared war against Hammīra because the latter stopped the payment of tribute and gave shelter to some rebels from Gujarāt. He sent a number of expedi­tions against Ranthambhōr under his general Ulugh Khān, but failed to overcome the enemy. Then ‘Alā-ud-dīn himself led the army. After a strenuous fight he defeated and killed Hammīra and captured Ranthambhōr in A.D. 1301.

3. The Chañhamānas of Nāgol

The Nāgol branch of the Chañhamānas played an important role in the history of this period. In the early years of the eleventh cen­tury Aśvapaḷā was on the throne of Nāgol, and his son and successor Āhila repulsed an attack of the Chaulukya Bhima I. Āhila's paternal uncle and successor Anāhilla, son of Mahendra, defeated the Chau­lukya Bhima I, killed Sādha, a general of the Paramāra Bhōja, cap­tured Sākumbīhari, which was then ruled by the Chañhamāna Virya­rāma, and fought successfully with the Turushkas, i.e. the Muslims of the Punjāb. Anāhilla's son and successor Bālaprasāda forced the Chaulukya Bhima I to release the Parmāra Krīshaṅaṇa of Bhīmnāl. Jindurāja, the brother and successor of Bālaprasāda, whose inscrip­tion is dated A.D. 1075, won a victory in a battle at Sandera, modern Sanderao in the Jodhpur State. Jindurāja's son Prithvipāla repulsed an attack of the Chaulukya Karna. Prithvipāla's brother, king Jojalla, whose inscription is dated A.D. 1090, captured Anāhilla­pāṭaka for a short time, probably during the early part of Jayasīṁha's reign. Jojalla was succeeded by his youngest brother Aṣārāja, whose inscriptions bear dates from A.D. 1110 to 1143. Aṣārāja had to surrender Nāgol to his nephew Ratnapāla, the son of Prithvipāla, between A.D. 1115 and 1119. Ratnapāla was succeeded by his son Rāyapāla, whose inscriptions bear dates from A.D. 1132 to 1145. Aṣārāja, being deprived of his supremacy over Nāgol, ruled in Dali in Godwar. He acknowledged the sway of the Chaulukya Jayasīṁha and helped him in his war against the Parmāra Naravarman. In the closing years of his reign he became hostile to Jayasīṁha, though he obeyed the authority of the latter in A.D. 1143. Aṣārāja's son Katuśeṭa occupied Nāgol for a short time in A.D. 1143-44, but Rāyapāla reconquered it before A.D. 1145. He had, however, to sur­render it to the Chaulukya Kumārapāla before A.D. 1154, and his
son Pūnapākṣhadeva ruled as a vassal in the region of Ratanpur in Jodhpur. His other son Sahajapāla was the ruler of Mandor, north of Jodhpur. Kumārapāla’s general, the Chāhāmāna Vaijalladeva, took charge of the administration of Nādol before A.D. 1154 and continued till A.D. 1159. Ālhaṇadeva, second son of Aśārāja, helped Kumārapāla in his war against Saurāṣṭra, and probably in recognition of this service he obtained from the latter Kṛṣṇādu (Kirādu, Mallana), Lāshāhrada, and Sīvā before A.D. 1152. He got back the throne of Nādol through the favour of Kumārapāla some time between A.D. 1159 and 1161. Ālhaṇadeva’s kingdom extended on the north up to Mandor, north of Jodhpur. About this time Vigrahārāja IV of Ajmer plundered Nādol.

Ālhaṇadeva had four sons, Kelhaṇa, Gajasiriṇa, Kirttipāla, and Vijayasiriṇa. He was succeeded by Kelhaṇa, the dates of whose inscriptions extend from A.D. 1163 to 1192. Some time after A.D. 1178 Kelhaṇa declared independence. He was assisted in his royal business by his brother Kirttipāla, also known as Kitu, and the two brothers, in alliance with the Chaulukyas, repulsed at Kāsāhrada an attack of Mu‘izz-ud-dīn Muhammad Ghūrī who plundered Nādol in A.D. 1178. Kirttipāla conquered Mewār by defeating the Gūhila Sāmantasiriṇa, but was driven out of that country by Sāmantasiriṇa’s brother Kumārasiriṇa. He also defeated Asala of Kṛṣṇādu, the vassal of Chaulukya Bhīma II, and wrested Jābālipura from the Pāramāras. Kirttipāla’s successors, known as Sonigaras, ruled in Jābālipura or Jālor for more than a century. Kelhaṇa repulsed an attack of the Yādava Bhillama, and was succeeded by his son Jayatasiṇa before A.D. 1194. During Jayatasiṇa’s reign Qutb-ud-dīn invaded the kingdom of Nādol in A.D. 1197. Mahaṛāja Sāmantasiriṇa, who was ruling in Godwar and over a part of the Sirohi State from A.D. 1199 to 1201, might have deposed him or might have been his legitimate successor. Dr. Bhandarkar’s identification of this Sāmantasiriṇa with the Gūhila king of the same name is untenable on chronological ground. Dhamdhaladeva, son of one Visadhavaladeva of the Chāhāmāna family, ruled Godwar as a vassal under the Chaulukya Bhīma II from c. A.D. 1209 to 1226. The Chaulukyas were superseded there by the Chāhāmāna Udayasiriṇa of Jālor, and Godwar remained under the rule of the Chāhāmānas even in the fourteenth century.

4. The Chāhāmānas of Jābālipura (Jālor)

It has been noticed above that Kirttipāla of Nādol is the founder of the Sonigarā branch of the Chāhāmānas at Jālor. The name Sonigarā is the contraction of the name Suvarṇāgarī, a hill-fort at Jālor. Kirttipāla was succeeded by his son Samarasiṇa, who issued in-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Scripions in A.D. 1182. Samarasiýha had two sons, Mánivasinsíha and Udayasisíha, and one daughter Lilàdevi, who was married to the Chaulukya Bhima II. After Samarasisíha. Udayasisíha ruled at Jàlır. Mánivasinsíha, whose successors constituted the Devaûa branch, is not known to have occupied the throne of his father. Udayasisíha, whose inscriptions bear dates extending from A.D. 1205 to 1249, asserted his supremacy over Nàgal, Jábélîpura, Mándavápura, Vághhtaňameru, Súràchná, Ráthrádra, Kheða, Rámasáinyà, Srimála, Ratanápura, and Satyápura. Mándavápura is Mandor, Vághhtaňameru is Barmer, Súràchná is Surachand, Ráthrádra is Raddhuda in Mánallí, Kheða is in Mánallí, Rámasáinyà is Ramseń, Srimála is Bhinmal, Ratanápura is Ratanpur, and Satyápura is Sàńchor. Udayasisíha’s kingdom thus extended from Mandor to Sàńchor and from Mánallí to Godwar. He reconquered Nàgal after A.D. 1226 from the Chaulukya Bhima II, and defeated the Châhámná Sûndhurája of Láta. Ilútumish invested the fort of Jàlır between A.D. 1211 and 1216. Udayasisíha, who capitulated after a strenuous resistance, was allowed to rule his territory by the Sultán. Some time later, while Ilútumish advanced against Gujârát counting upon the support of Udayasisíha, the latter joined the Gujârát army, and helped the Vághéla Vírâdhavâla in repulsing the Muslims. According to some Jain writers of Gujârát, Udayasisíha gave his daughter in marriage to the Vághéla Vírâmadëva. He was a man of learning and mastered the works of Bharatá, i.e. Bháratya-Nátya-sástra. He was succeeded, before A.D. 1262, by his son Châchíga who claims to have destroyed the power of the Vághéla Vírâmadëva and defeated some princes named Sâlýa, Pútuká, Sâga, and Nahara. Châchíga was succeeded by Sámantasisíha between A.D. 1277 and 1282, and the latter by his son Kânháda after A.D. 1296. In A.D. 1310-1311, ‘Alá-ud-din Khälji defeated and killed Kânháda and his son Vírâma, and captured Jàlır and Sàńchor.

5. The Cháhámná of Sàńtpúra (Sàńchor) and Devaûa

Vijaçáisyíha, son of king Alhâna of Nàgal, was the founder of the Sàńtpúra (Sàńchor in Jodhpur) branch. He was followed in succession by Pádamasisíha, Sóbhitá, and Sálá, all of whom were feudatories of the Cháhámnás of Jàlır. Sálá claims to have liberated Bhinmal from the hands of the Muslims, and probably wrested it from ‘Alá-ud-din or his successor after A.D. 1310-11, when the southern part of Jodhpur was occupied by the Muslim army. Sálá was succeeded by Vikrámasisíha, Sángrámasíha and Prâtápasíha (A.D.1387) one after the other.

The Devaûa branch of the Cháhámnás was founded by Vijaçá also known as Devarâjá, the son of Prâtápa, and grandson of Mánava-
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11th AND 12th CENTURIES

Simha, who was the son of Samarasimha of Jalore. The name Devaśā is said to have been derived from Devarāja. Vijāda-Devarāja is referred to as the lord of Maruśṭali-mūrṭida. He had four sons, the eldest of whom, Lūṇiṅga (Lāvanyakarṣa), succeeded his father, and conquered Mt. Abu from the Solankis (Vaghelas) with the help of his brothers. His successor was his younger brother Lūṇiṅga (Lauḍhī), who is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1315 and 1320. Lūṇiṅga was succeeded by Lūṇiṅga’s son Tejasinīha (A.D. 1330, 1336), who was succeeded by his son Kānhaḍadeva in A.D. 1337.

XIV. THE GUHILAS OF MEWAR

After the termination of the reign of the Guhila Śaktikumāra in the closing years of the tenth century, his son Ambāprāśāda ascended the throne of Medapāṭa or Mewār. From this time Āghāṭa, modern Ahar, in Udaipur, served as the second capital of this dynasty. Ambāprāśāda lost his life in a battle with the Chāhanamsa Vākpati II of Sōkambhārī. After Ambāprāśāda the throne of Medapāṭa was occupied by Suraṇivarman, Naravarman, Anantavarman, Kirttiwarman alias Yaśovarman, Yogarāja, Vaiṭa, Hāṁsapāla, Vairisiniha, Vijayasiṃha, Arisiniha, Čoḍasiṃha, Vitramasiṃha, and Raṇasiniha alias Karpā. Of them Vijayasiṃha, whose father-in-law was the Paramāra Ādayāditya and whose son-in-law was the Kālachuri Gayākarpā, is definitely known to have been ruling in A.D. 1108 and 1116. Karpā had three sons, Mahana, Kheṇasiṃha, and Rāhaṇa. The successors of Kheṇasiṃha were known as Rāval or Rājakula, and the successors of Rāhaṇa, who ruled as vassals of the Rāvals at Sisoda, were known as Rājas. Karpā was succeeded by Kheṇasiṃha, whose son and successor Śāmantasiṃha is known to have been ruling in Mewār in A.D. 1171. The Chaulukya Kumbārapāla was in possession of Chitor in A.D. 1151, but it is not certain whether he could bring the Gujaratis of Medapāṭa under his sway. Kumārapāla’s successor Ajayapāla invaded that country but received a severe wound in a battle with Śāmantasiṃha, and the Paramāra Prahāḍāna of Mt. Abu saved the Chaulukya king from disaster on that occasion. Shortly after this battle Kirttīpāla, the younger brother of Kēḷhaṇa of Nājōl, took possession of Medapāṭa by defeating Śāmantasiṃha, who thereafter ruled only over a part of the Jodhpur State. Kirttīpāla was driven out from Mewār by Kumārasiniha, younger brother of Śāmantasiṃha who, with the help of the Gurjara king, established himself at Āghāṭa. The Gurjara king might have been Ajayapāla or Mularāja II. Kumārasinīha occupied Mewār before A.D. 1182 and was followed in succession by Mathanasiṃha, Padmasiniha, and Jaitrasinīha.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

The Guhilas of Mewār gained a high political status during the reign of Jaitrassinīha whose known dates range between A.D. 1213 and 1252. Chitrakūṭa, modern Chitor in Udaipur, is known for the first time to have been included in the Guhila kingdom during his reign. In the early part of his reign the Muslims under Sūltān Ilūutmish overran Mewār and destroyed the Guhila capital Nāgāhradā. Jayatala, who was obviously Jaitrassinīha, king of Mewār, suffered a heavy loss of men and property on that occasion. But on receipt of the news that the Vāghela Viradhavala was advancing with his forces to render assistance to Jaitrassinīha the Muslim army withdrew.

Jaitrassinīha plundered Nāgol where his adversary seems to have been the Chāhamāna Udayasiinīha of Jalor. He invaded the territory of the Chaulukyas of Gujarāt, and one of his generals lost his life in a battle while capturing Koṭādaka from the Chaulukya Tribhuvanapāla. He was ultimately repulsed by the Vāghela Vīsaladeva. Madana, son of Jaitrassinīha's officer Kshema, fought on behalf of Jesala with the Pujchalagnātha Jaitramalla on the battlefield of Utthūnaka, which is identified with Arthuna, the capital of Vāgaḍa. Jesala may be taken as identical with Jaitrassinīha, who was also known as Jayasisinīha. Jaitramalla is identified with the Paramāra Jaitugideva of Mālava but he seems to have been a chief of the Guhila dynasty of Vāgaḍa. Jaitrassinīha fought successfully with a king of Śākambhara, who may be identified with a Chāhamāna king of Ranthambhōr. The Śindhuka army, which he defeated, cannot be identified.

Jaitrassinīha was succeeded by his son Tejasīnīha, who is known to have occupied the throne of Aghāta before A.D. 1260. An inscription of his reign, which refers to Chitrakūṭa-mahādāruga, has been found at Chitor. This is the earliest known epigraphic record of the Guhilas of Mewār found at Chitor. Tejasīnīha was succeeded by his son Samarasisinīha between A.D. 1267 and 1273. Samarasīnīha's inscriptions, which bear dates ranging between A.D. 1273 and 1301, prove that his kingdom extended from Chitor to Mt. Abu. He wrested Mt. Abu from the Paramāra Kṛishnārāja, but could not hold it for long as Kṛishnārāja's son Pratīṣṭasinnīha reconquered it with the help of the Vāghela Sārāṅgadeva between A.D. 1285 and 1287. Some time before A.D. 1285, while the Turushkas, apparently under Sūltān Balban, overran Gujarāt, Samarasisinīha helped the Vāghela Sārāṅgadeva in routing the Muslims, but in the closing years of the thirteenth century, when Ulugh Khān, the brother of 'Alā-ud-dīn Khaljī, was marching against Gujarāt, Samarasisinīha saved his country from devastation by paying
Northern India during 11th and 12th centuries

Homage to the Muslim general. Samarasimha was succeeded by his son Ratnasimha, one of whose known dates is A.D. 1302. Ratnasimha met with a severe catastrophe after a rule of a couple of years. 'Ala-ud-din Khalji, desiring to assert his supremacy over India, invaded Chitor and pitched his camp on the bank of a river in the vicinity of that place. Ratnasimha resisted the Muslims for two months. He had a daughter named Padmini, who was married to the Guhila Lakshmaṇasimha of the Sisodiyā branch. Lakshmaṇasimha, along with his sons Arisimha and others, came to help Ratnasimha in that perilous war. Ratnasimha, despairing of his success, stealthily got out of his fort without consulting his relatives and lieutenants, flowed down the river, reached the Sultan's camp, and ignominiously surrendered to him. The Sultan put him under restraint and made a vigorous attack on the fort. Lakshmaṇasimha and his sons lost their lives in their endeavour to defend the citadel, while the relatives of Ratnasimha, along with Padmini, fled to the hilly tracts. 'Ala-ud-din made a triumphant march into the fort of Chitor in A.D. 1303, posted there his son Khizr Khan, and returned to Delhi among with the captive king Ratnasimha. He expressed his willingness to release the Guhila monarch if he agreed to make an arrangement for the surrender of his daughter Padmini.

The proposal was communicated to his relations by Ratnasimha and the Guhilas utilised this opportunity to effect the release of Ratnasimha by a device. The conquest of Chitor, which was only an outlying fortress in the Guhila kingdom, did not make 'Ala-ud-din the master of Nagahrada and Âghaṭa, which served as capitals of the Guhilas at least up to the time of Samarasimha. After his release Ratnasimha carried on depredations in the territories around the fort of Chitor, and the Sultan did not think it safe to keep Khizr Khan there any longer. He recalled him, and handed the fort over to his ally Mâladeva, younger brother of the Chahamana Kânhâda-deva, and the sister's son of Ratnasimha. Mâladeva ruled Chitor for seven years as a vassal under 'Ala-ud-din Khalji. Nothing more is known of Ratnasimha.

It has been noticed above that the Sisodiyā branch of the Guhilas was founded by Râhapa, the son of Ratnasimha alias Karṇa. The Ekalingaji inscription, dated A.D. 1652, mentions that Râhapa's successors were Narapati, Dinakara, Jasakara, Nagapala, Karṇapala, Bhuvanasimha, Bhimasishta, Jayasimha, Lakhaṇaśimha, Arasi (Arisimha), Hammira, etc. An inscription of Râḍâ Kumbhakarṇa, dated A.D. 1439, states that Jayasimha was the son of Bhuvanasimha, and Lakshaṇaśimha had two sons, Ajayasishtâ and Arisiṇa. The gallant fight of Bhuvanasimha, Lakshmaṇasimha, and Arisimha, against 'Ala-ud-din for the defence of Chitor has already
XV. THE PUNJAB UNDER THE YAMINI DYNASTY

The great conqueror Sultan Mahmūd of Ghazni died in A.D. 1030, leaving behind three sons, Muhammad, Mas'ūd I, and 'Abd-ur-Rashid. Muhammad and Mas'ūd were born on the same day. Mahmūd expressed his desire that after his death Muhammad would be the ruler of Ghaznī and the country of Hind, and Mas'ūd would receive Khurāsān, 'Irāq, and Persia. As soon as Mahmūd died the nobles of the court placed Muhammad on the throne of Ghaznī. Mas'ūd, who was at ‘Irāq about this time, marched towards Ghaznī and defeated his brother, who had been on the throne only for seven months. Muhammad was blinded and thrown into prison by Mas'ūd, who ascended the throne of Ghaznī in A.D. 1031. Arīyāruq, who was appointed governor of the Punjab by Sultan Mahmūd, still held that post, but his tyrannical and oppressive actions led Mas'ūd to call him back. Though he avoided his presence by excuses for some time, he was imprisoned and subsequently put to death. Mas'ūd then appointed Ahmad Niyațtīgan governor of the Punjāb. Niyațtīgan, after assuming his office, began to quarrel with Abu-'l-Hasan, ‘the Shirāzi Qāzi’ who was in charge of the revenue administration of the Punjāb. Both submitted complaints to the Sultan charging each other with serious offence. Mas'ūd supported Niyațtīgan, asking the Qāzi to limit his sphere of work to the collection of revenue. Being thus secured in his position, Niyațtīgan launched expeditions against the Indian chiefs. In A.D. 1034 he exacted tribute from the Thakurs, crossed the Gaṅgā, and following its left bank quite unexpectedly arrived at the city of Banaras, which was within the kingdom of Gaṅg, i.e. the Kala-churi Gaṅgayeveda. He plundered the markets of the drapers, perfumers, and jewellers from morning till mid-day, and returned to the Punjab with a large amount of gold, silver and jewels. The Qāzi, who was very much dejected at this success of his rival, sent a report to the Sultan that Niyațtīgan deposited only a portion of the riches which he had obtained as tributes from the Thakurs and also by plundering Banaras. The Sultan also received letters from independent sources mentioning Niyațtīgan’s association with the Turkomans and numerous turbulent chiefs of Lahore. All these alienated the Sultan from Niyațtīgan, and he sent a force under the command of a Hindu named Tilak against him. Tilak reached Lahore and defeated Niyațtīgan in a severe engagement. Niyațtīgan
fled away but was killed by the Jāts, while Tilak returned to the royal court after settling the affairs of the country. In A.D. 1036 Mas'ūd sent his second son Majdūd as the governor of the Punjab and next year organised a big army to fight for the expansion of his empire in Hindustān. In vain did his advisers try to persuade him to give up the project in view of the fact that the Saljuqs were threatening to conquer the northern part of his empire. The Sultan marched to the Punjab and encamped on the bank of the Jhelum near Dinarkotah. Thence he went to Hānsī, in the Hissār District, Punjab, and invested the fort. After a strenuous fight Hānsī fell into his hands. He then marched to Sonpat and defeated its governor Dipāl Har. From Sonpat he advanced towards the kingdom of Rām Rāi, who saved himself from molestation by offering him valuable presents.

Mas'ūd had very soon to pay the penalty for wasting his resources in Hindustān. In A.D. 1040, being hard pressed by the Saljuqs, he left Ghazni and proceeded towards Hindustan with his family, including his blind brother Muhammad, and treasure. On his way, in the pass of Marigāla, his Turkish and Hindu slaves revolted, took him prisoner, and declared Muhammad as king. In the same year Mas'ūd was slain in the fort of Giri.

On receipt of these news, Mas'ūd's son Maudūd, who was at Balkh, hastened to Ghazni, ascended the throne, and marched towards India to punish his uncle. Muhammad had enjoyed royal position only for four months. He confronted his nephew at Nangrahār between the Sindhu and Ghazni, but fell a captive in the battle along with some of his sons. All of them were soon put to death, and Maudūd returned to Ghazni. Muhammad the blind had appointed his younger son Nāmi governor of Peshāwar and Multān. Maudūd despatched an army against Nāmi, who lost his life in the engagement. Maudūd's brother Majdūd, who was appointed the governor of the Punjab by Mas'ūd and was then in the possession of the country from Hānsī to the Sindhu, refused allegiance to him. So the Sultan sent an army against him from Ghazni. Majdūd also marched from his residence at Hānsī to resist his brother's army and reached Lahore, where Maudūd's forces arrived a day or two later. The two armies were preparing for the final battle, when one morning Majdūd was found dead on his bed. The next day his vizier Khwāzā Ayāz was also found dead. It was suspected that they were secretly poisoned. Majdūd's army now joined Maudūd, and the Punjab easily passed into the hands of the latter.

Though Maudūd succeeded in asserting his supremacy over the Punjab, his position at Ghazni was made miserable by the succes-
sive attacks of the Saljuqs. The situation became worse when, in A.D. 1043, some Indian chiefs formed a confederacy under the leadership of the Raja of Delhi to put an end to the Muslim rule in the Punjab. They wrested Hansi, Thaneswar and other places from governors who were posted there by Maudud. After capturing Nagarkot they marched to Lahore and invested it for seven months. The Muslims, in despair, sallied forth from the fort and attacked the invading army which, being taken unawares, took to flight. The Indian chiefs retained their hold over Nagarkot, Hansi and other conquered places for some time. The Raja of Delhi who led the confederacy, was obviously a chief of the Tomara dynasty. The Paramara Bhija, the Kalachuri Karna, and the Chahamana Agahilla were probably among those who formed the confederacy.28

After the death of Maudud in A.D. 1049 some of the royal servants placed Maudud's young son Mas'ud II on the throne. But after a few days the ministers and the nobles deposed the young boy and declared his uncle 'Ali Abu-'l-Hasan, son of Mas'ud I, as king. During the reign of 'Ali, in A.D. 1049, an officer named 'Ali bin Rubia broke open the treasury, secured a heavy amount of gold and jewels, and fled to Peshawar with some household troops. There he raised an army from the natives and reduced Multan and Sindh. In A.D. 1051 Sultan 'Ali was deposed by 'Izz-ud-daulah 'Abd-ur-Rashid, the sixth son of Sultan Mahmud, who was released from prison after a long confinement. The new Sultan succeeded in persuading 'Ali bin Rubia to come back to Ghazni, and appointed Nushetgin Habis the governor of the country to the east of the Sindhu. Nushetgin captured Nagarkot, which had been in the possession of the Hindus since A.D. 1043. 'Abd-ur-Rashid was dethroned and murdered by Tughril Habis, a slave of Sultan Mahmud, who declared himself king of Ghazni in A.D. 1052-53. Tughril was on the throne for forty days only. He asked Nushetgin to owe allegiance to him, but Nushetgin refused to obey his order, marched to Ghazni, and took an active part along with the nobles in destroying his power. He placed Farrukheid, a son of Mas'ud I, on the throne in A.D. 1052 and himself became his vizier. The new Sultan ruled till A.D. 1059, and was succeeded by his brother Ibrahim, another son of Mas'ud I.

Ibrahim led many expeditions against Indian chiefs, and conquered Tabarhindah (modern Sirhind), Bura (modern Burya on the Yamuna in Ambala), Dhangan, Jalandhar, Ajindhan (modern Pak Pattan), and Rupal on the summit of a hill, and reduced the fort of Darah, in the neighbourhood of Rupal. In A.D. 1075 he appointed his son Mahmud governor of the Punjab. Mahmud led an expedition into the heart of India, and conquered Agra by defeating its chief
Jaipal. Kanauj, which was ruled by a Bāshtrakūta family, passed into his hands, and he engaged Chand Rai, apparently Chandradeva of the Gāhādvāla dynasty, to look after his elephant forces there. He next invaded Jījain, but was repulsed by the Paramara Laksīmdēva. He also invested the fort of Kālānjarā, which was then ruled by the Chandella KirttiVARman. Mahmūd’s expeditions against the Indian chiefs were nothing more than plundering raids.

Ibrāhīm was succeeded by his son ‘Alā-ud-Daulah Mas‘ūd III in A.D. 1099. During the reign of Mas‘ūd III Amir ‘Uzd-ud-Daulah was in charge of the government of the Punjāb. Hajib Tughātgin, an officer under the Sultān, crossed the Gangā and carried on conquest in Hindustān. Malhi, the king of Kanauj, who was in all probability the Gāhādvāla Madanachandra, was taken prisoner by the Sultan’s army. Madanachandra’s son Govindachandra defeated the Muslims, and secured the release of his father. In A.D. 1099 Mas‘ūd conferred the sovereignty of Ghur on Malik ‘Izz-ud-dīn Husain, who kept on terms of friendship with the Sultāns of Ghazni. This proves that the Shansabānī chiefs of Ghur still acknowledged the supremacy of the Sultāns of Ghazni. But during this time the Saljūqs deprived the Ghaznavīs of a large portion of their kingdom, and Lahore virtually became the seat of the royal family.

Mas‘ūd was succeeded by his son Kamāl-ul-Daulah Shīrzād in A.D. 1115. Shīrzād ruled only for a year and was succeeded by his brother Arsalān ‘Abd-ul-Malik. Arsalān, after his accession, imprisoned all his brothers except his step-brother Bahram, who succeeded in escaping to his maternal uncle Sultan Sanjar Saljuq, in Khurāsān. Arsalān also treated Bahram’s mother with indignity. Sanjar took up the cause of his nephew and invaded Ghazni. Arsalān, being defeated, fled to Lahore, and Sanjar, having placed Bahram on the throne, retired to his own dominion. But as soon as he withdrew from Ghazni Arsalān came back and wrested it from Bahram, who again took shelter with his uncle. In A.D. 1118 Bahram, with an army supplied by his uncle, captured Ghazni. Arsalān, who was taken prisoner, was released, but shortly afterwards he was put to death for conspiring against Bahram.

Bahram led an expedition to the Punjāb, and forced Muhammad Bāhlīm, who was appointed governor of that country by Arsalān, to acknowledge him as his master. After the departure of the Sultan, Bāhlīm shifted with his family and treasure to Nāgaur where he built a fort, and declared independence. He organised an army and plundered the adjoining territories of the Indian princes. Sultan Bahram marched against the rebel and defeated him in a battle at Mūltān. Bāhlīm and his sons died of an accident while fleeing for
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

safety. Bahram handed over the charge of the administration of the Punjas to Salar Husain, son of Ibran Alvi. In the latter part of his reign Bahram came into conflict with the Shansabani princes of Ghur, who acknowledged the supremacy of his predecessors. Qutb-ud-din Muhammad, Malik-ul-jibal of this family, quarrelled with his brothers and withdrew to Ghazni. Bahram had him killed by poison on receipt of the news that he was plotting against him. This led to the outbreak of hostility between the Mahmudi family and the Shansabani, which lasted for a long time and brought about disaster on the former. Qutb-ud-din’s younger brother Saif-ud-din, king of Ghur, in order to avenge the death of his brother, marched against Bahram, defeated him, and captured the throne of Ghazni. Bahram fled to Lahore, and Saif-ud-din established himself at Ghazni, being the first Sultan of his family to rule there. He placed his brother Bahadur-din Sain in charge of Ghur, and sent there the major portion of his army at the approach of winter. As soon as the cold set in, and the roads and passes from Ghur to Ghazni were blocked by snow, Bahram came back from Hindustan and conquered Ghazni in AD. 1149. Saif-ud-din was treated with indignity and then cruelly murdered. On receipt of this news Bahadur-din Sain marched from Ghur with a large body of soldiers to punish Bahram. But as soon as he reached the district of Kidan he fell ill and died. When the news of Bahadur-din’s death reached Ghur his brother ‘Ala-ud-din Husain, whom he had left in charge of administration there, rallied his forces and lost no time in leading an expedition against Bahram. He defeated his adversary in three successive engagements and forced him to flee to Hindustan. He took the city of Ghazni by storm, carried on arson and plunder there for seven days and nights, and completely destroyed the magnificent city. For this work of destruction he was known in history as “Jahansuz,” “the world-burner.” After pillaging the edifices and palaces of the Mahmudi dynasty in the city of Bust, ‘Ala-ud-din returned to Ghur. Shortly afterwards, when ‘Ala-ud-din was engaged in a battle with Sultan Sanjar Saljuq, Bahram recovered Ghazni. He died in AD. 1152, and was succeeded by his son Khusraw Shah, during whose reign the larger portion of the empire of the Mahmudi dynasty passed into the hands of the Sultans of Ghur. Shortly after AD. 1157 Khusraw Shah was driven out of Ghazni by the Ghuzz (Turks), and Ghazni was lost to the Mahmudi dynasty for ever. Khusraw Shah proceeded to Lahore where he ruled till AD. 1160. He was succeeded by his son Khusraw Malik during whose reign the governors and the chiefs under him assumed almost independent powers. About this time there was a change in the government at Ghur. Sultan ‘Ala-ud-din Husain, “the world-burner,” had put into prison his two
nephews Shams-ud-din Muhammad and Shiháb-ud-din Muhammad, sons of Bahá-ud-din Șim. ȘAf-ud-din's son and successor Saif-ud-din released them. After the death of Saif-ud-din, Shams-ud-din, under the name of Ghiyás-ud-din, ascended the throne of Ghur. Ghiyás-ud-din wrested Ghazni from the Ghuzz in A.D. 1173, and placed on its throne his brother Shiháb-ud-din Muhammad, who was known as Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad after his success in Khurásan. Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad made incursions against Hindustán every year, and in A.D. 1181 reached the gate of Lahore. Khusraw Malik concluded a treaty with him, and surrendered as a hostage one of his sons, whom Fírísthta mentions as Malik Sháh. In 1184 Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad again invaded Lahore but, having failed to capture it, ravaged the neighbouring districts. On his way back he captured the fort of Siālkot, and posted there Husain, son of Khar-mil. As soon as he left Hindustán Khusraw Malik invaded Siālkot, but met with failure. In 1186 Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad, for the third time, led an army against Lahore. Khusraw Malik got frightened and sued for peace. As he came out of the fort to settle the terms of the treaty, Mu'izz-ud-din seized him and captured Lahore. Thus the rule of the Yamini dynasty came to an end. Khusraw Malik, along with his son Bahrrım, was sent to the Sultan Ghiyás-ud-din Muhammad at Firúzkúh. In A.D. 1192 when Ghiyás-ud-din and Mu'izz-ud-din were involved in a quarrel with Sultan Sháh Jalál-ud-din Mahmúd of Khvárazm, Khusraw Malik and his son Bahrrım were put to death in order to avoid future trouble.

XVI. KASHMIR

1. First Lohara Dynasty

The Lohara dynasty came to power in Káshmir in the early years of the eleventh century. Saingrámárājaa, the first king of the dynasty, sent his minister Tunga to help the Sháhi Trílochanapálá against Mahmúd of Ghazni. Mahmúd led several expeditions to conquer Lohara during his reign, but failed to achieve his end. Saingrámárājaa was succeeded in A.D. 1028 by his son Harirájaa, who died after a rule of 21 days and was succeeded by his younger brother Ananta. Vígráharājaa, the elder brother of Saingrámárājaa, advanced with his army to dethrone his nephew, but lost his life in the engagement. Ananta put down the revolt of the Dánaras and repulsed an attack of the Darads. His queen Súryamáti, a princess of Jalandhara, helped him in the administration of his kingdom. Being thus relieved of the burden of looking into the affairs of the state he devoted his energy to launching expeditions against his neighbours. He overthrew Síla, also known as Sálaváhana, the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

ruler of Champā (Chamba), and placed his own nominee on its throne. He asserted his supremacy over Darvabhisiṣāra, Trigarta, and Bhartula, but his invasions against the hill states of Uraśa and Vallāpura met with failure. In A.D. 1063 he abdicated in favour of his worthless son Kalaśa under the influence of his queen. Very soon they realised their error and resumed the royal power, though they allowed their incompetent son to occupy the throne. About this time the Lohara king Kāśītirāja, son of Vigraharāja, and cousin of Ananta, bestowed his sovereignty upon the young Utkarsha, the second son of king Kalaśa, to prevent his rebel son Bhuvanarāja from succeeding him. Ananta forced the chiefs of Rajapuri and the neighbouring states to pay him tribute, but when he was thus acquiring new fortunes, the licentious habits of Kalaśa greatly marred his domestic happiness. He could not keep him under restraint due to the intervention of Sūryamati, who had a weakness for her son, and so in disgust he left Srinagara, and settled at the Tīrtha of Vijayēśvara in A.D. 1079, taking with him his troops and treasure. The queen also accompanied him there, but the quarrel between the father and the son continued for some time. Ananta tried to place Harsha, son of Kalaśa, on the throne, but Kalaśa crippled his father’s power considerably by setting fire to the town of Vijayēśvara and destroying a part of his treasure. He also pressed him for going into exile at Parṇotasa. In order to get rid of all these difficulties Ananta committed suicide in A.D. 1081, and Sūryamati also followed him to the funeral pyre. The death of his parents brought about a change in the mind of Kalaśa for the better. He made up his difference with his son Harsha, and carried on administration with success. He sent his army twice to assist the young king of Rajapuri, named Śaṅgrāmapāla, against his uncle Madanapāla, who was trying to usurp the throne. Madanapāla was ultimately taken prisoner to Kashmir. Kalaśa’s general conquered Uraśa and, after crossing the Krishnā (Kishanganga) river, raided Abhayā’s kingdom. In A.D. 1087 the rulers of eight hill states, viz. Kirtti of Baddhapura (?), Asata of Champa (Chamba), Kalaśa of Vallāpura, Śaṅgrāmapāla of Rajapuri, Utkarsha of Lohara, Saṅgata (?) of Uraśa, Īmbhiśasīha of Kānda, and Uttamarāja of Kāśītavātā assembled in his capital. Though Kalaśa’s foreign policy met with conspicuous success, he could not close his reign in peace. His son Harsha gave him so much trouble that he had to put him into prison, though reluctantly. To make matters worse he again indulged in debauchery which he had given up after the death of his parents. Immediately before his death in A.D. 1089, his ministers brought his son Utkarsha from Lohara and inaugurated him as king. Utkarsha took stringent measures to keep Harsha under restraint.
Within a few days after his accession Utkarsha alienated his ministers by his injudicious acts. His step-brother Vijayamalla revolted and attacked the royal palace. In order to secure the support of Harsha he released him, but Harsha joined Vijayamalla, captured the throne for himself, and took Utkarsha prisoner. Utkarsha committed suicide in his captivity.

Harsha's character was a strange admixture of virtue and vice. He displayed energy and activity in the early part of his reign and brought prosperity to his kingdom. Vijayamalla, who fled to the country of the Darads (Darad-desa) after his failure to obtain the throne, led an expedition against Kāshmir, but was accidentally killed by an avalanche. Harsha, with the help of his commander Kandarpa, succeeded in maintaining his hold over Lohara, and in subjugating Saṅgrāmapāla, ruler of Rājapuri, who had turned hostile. But he soon lost the valuable support of Kandarpa by suspecting his loyalty, for Kandarpa, along with his family, retired to Banaras. In order to replenish the exchequer Harsha plundered the properties of temples and imposed various taxes on his subjects. He also became addicted to debauchery, and the state of things degenerated to an alarming extent. Harsha led an expedition against the chief of Rājapuri, who again became hostile, but met with failure. Similar result followed when he tried to capture from the Darads the fort of Dugdhaghāta, modern Dudakhut, which guards the pass leading to the Darad territory of the Kishangangā valley. On this occasion two brothers Uchchala and Sussala, who belonged to a collateral branch of the Lohara dynasty, attracted his attention by their bravery. A serious situation developed when, in A.D. 1099, the country was visited by a devastating famine and the king still levied oppressive taxes. Uchchala and Sussala fled for their lives from the capital in A.D. 1100 as the king suspected them to be the rivals of his son Bhoja for the throne. Shortly afterwards the two brothers, with the help of the Dāmaras, forced their way into the capital and burnt the royal palace. The king took shelter in a hut below Śrīnagarā where he received the news of the treacherous murder of his son Bhoja. He himself lost his life in an encounter with the enemies in A.D. 1101. He was a man of learning and a patron of poets. He introduced the system of wearing head-dress and ear-ornament among the Kāshmīrians.

2. Second Lohara Dynasty

Uchchala, who now ascended the throne, is regarded as the founder of the second Lohara dynasty. He was descended from Kāntirāja, an uncle of Saṅgrāmarāja, the founder of the first Lohara dynasty in Kāshmir. He tried to appease his ambitious brother by
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

making him an independent king of Lohara. This did not satisfy Sussala, who led an expedition against him from Lohara, which, however, met with failure. Uchchala condemned to death Bhikshachara, son of Bhoja and grandson of king Harsha, apprehending that his royal position might be challenged by him. Bhikshachara saved his life by taking refuge with the Paramara Naravarman of Malava. About this time the birth of Sussala's son Jayasirihha brought about a reconciliation between the two brothers. The rise of the Damaras, a class of barons, became a source of danger to Uchchala and a menace to the Kāshmirian politics of this period. In A.D. 1111 Uchchala lost his life at the hands of the city-prefect named Chuddha, whose brother Radha occupied the throne for a night only. He was killed by a powerful Damara of Lohara named Gargachandra, who set up Salhaṣa, a half-brother of Uchchala, on the throne. Gargachandra also repulsed an attack of Sussala who, at the news of the death of his brother, rushed with his army to capture the throne of Kashmir. Not long afterwards, Gargachandra, finding that Salhaṣa was friendly to his rivals, formed an alliance with Sussala who easily captured the capital and took Salhaṣa prisoner in A.D. 1112.

After his accession Sussala could not keep on friendly terms with Gargachandra. After a protracted quarrel he put Gargachandra and his three sons to death in A.D. 1118. He dethroned Somapala, the ruler of Rājapuri, and placed Nāgapala on the throne. But as soon as he left Rājapuri Nāgapala lost his throne. In A.D. 1120 Bhikshachara, who had returned from Malava and had been intriguing for the throne for some time, defeated Sussala with the help of the Damaras, and declared himself king. Sussala fled to the fort of Lohara. In A.D. 1121 he inflicted a crushing defeat on Bhikshachara's army which was advancing to conquer Lohara, and within a short time succeeded in recovering the throne of Kāshmir. Bhikshachara retired to the village Pushyānandā, which was within the territory of Somapala of Rājapuri. Sussala could not destroy the power of the Damaras, who led successive invasions against him. The situation was aggravated by a devastating fire in the city, which was followed by a famine. The death of the queen about this time added to the misery of the king, who in disgust brought his son Jayasimha from Lohara and abdicated in his favour in A.D. 1123. But Jayasimha soon fell into the disfavour of his father, who retained his hold over the main business of the state and looked for an opportunity to put him in prison. In A.D. 1128 Sussala fell victim to a conspiracy and lost his life.

Jayasimha won over the powerful reactionary forces to his side by his diplomatic skill. In A.D. 1130 he succeeded in putting to
death Bhikshchāra, who made frequent attacks to regain the throne of Kāshmir. Suvacāla’s half-brother Lothana revolted in Lohara and Jayasimha’s army, sent against it, met with disaster. In A.D. 1131 Lothana was deposed by his own partisans. Mallārjuna, a half-brother of Jayasimha, then occupied the throne, but in A.D. 1132 Jayasimha wrested Lohara from him. He deposed king Vikramādiṭṭaya of Vallāpura and placed Gulhaṇa on its throne. Yāsodhara, king of the Darad country, was friendly to the kings of Kāshmir. After his death two rival factions fought for the throne. Jayasimha, in order to maintain his supremacy over that country, took up the cause of one of them. But Viṭṭaṇaṇa, the leader of the opposite party, who usurped the whole power, frustrated his object. He also encouraged Loṭhana, the deposed ruler of Lohara, to renew hostility against Jayasimha. Lothana formed alliance with Alainkāra-chakra, a powerful Dāmarā of Kaṇāha, Vigrāharāja, a half-brother of Jayasimha, and Bhoja, a son of the king Salhaṇa, and advanced against Kāshmir, but Jayasimha besieged them in the fort of Siralāsila. Bhoja managed to escape from the fort, while Alarilkarachakra purchased peace by surrendering Lothana and Vigrāharāja to the royal army. Bhoja surrendered after making a futile attempt to defeat Jayasimha with the help of Viṭṭaṇaṇa of the Darad country and some Mlechchha chiefs of the upper Sindhu valley. Jayasimha put down all the refractory Dāmarās and ruled his kingdom in peace during the remaining part of his life. He crowned his minor son Gulhaṇa as a king of Lohara and was in friendly relation with some kings of India. The Gāhadavāla Govindachandra sent his ambassador Suhala to his court, which was also visited by Tejakalātha, the ambassador of the Silhāra Aparādiṭṭaya of Koṅkaṇa. Jayasimha ruled up to A.D. 1155.

Jayasimha was followed on the throne by his son Paramāraka (A.D. 1155-1165) and his grandson Vantideva (A.D. 1165-1172) one after the other. Vantideva was the last king of the dynasty.

3. Advent of the Muslim Rule

After the close of Vantideva’s reign the people elected one Vuppadeva as their king. Vuppadeva was succeeded in A.D. 1181 by his brother Jassaka, and the latter by his son Jagadeva, in A.D. 1199. Jagadeva was poisoned by one of his officers in A.D. 1213, and a rival faction placed his son Rājadeva on the throne. Bāḷaḍhyachandra, the chief of Lohara, deposed the authority of Rājadeva and occupied half of Śrīnagarā. Rājadeva was succeeded in A.D. 1236 by his son Saṅgrāmadeva during whose reign the sons and relations of Kalhaṇa assumed great power. They forced him to take refuge with the ruler of Rājadpurī, and though some time afterwards the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

king recovered his power, he was killed by his enemies. He was succeeded in A.D. 1252 by his son Ramadeva, and the latter by the Brāhmana Lakshmadeva, whom he adopted as his son, in A.D. 1273. A Muslim named Kajjala killed Lakshmadeva in a battle in A.D. 1286 after which anarchy broke out in Kashmir. One Sinhdadeva succeeded in establishing his authority but lost his life in a love intrigue. In A.D. 1301 his brother Sūhadeva asserted his supremacy over the whole of Kashmir, but during his reign the kingdom was overtaken by a severe calamity. Dulucha, a general of a great king Karmasena, overran Kashmir with an army of 60,000 men consisting of the Tājikas, Turushkas, and the Mlechchhas. The situation became worse when just at this time a Tibetan named Rūchana plundered the capital. Dulucha, being afraid of the excessive cold of Kashmir, left the country, taking with him a large number of Kāshmirians as slaves. Sūhadeva, who showed abject cowardice all along, seems to have lost his life in A.D. 1320. According to Ain-i-Akbari Dalju (Dulucha) was the commander-in-chief of the king of Kandahār. One Rāmachandra, probably a relation of the deceased king Sūhadeva, fought with Rūchana, but was treacherously murdered by his adversary. Rūchana, who assumed the royal power, fell victim to a conspiracy, and died in A.D. 1323. His young son Haidara was deposed by his officer Sāhamera, a Muslim, who placed Udayanadeva on the throne. After the death of Udayanadeva in A.D. 1338 Sāhamera, under the name Shams-ud-din, seized the throne of Kashmir where his successors ruled for a long time.

2. IV, 47.
3. See above, p. 25.
4. See above, p. 25.
5. See above, p. 29.
6. See above, p. 33.
6a. HIQ, XXX. 211-2.
6b. According to Dr. D. C. Sircar there was no king named Kesavasena, but Sīryasena, a son of Vīsvariipasena, occupied the throne for some time during the lifetime of his father (HIQ, XXX. 216-7). This theory, however, rests on a very weak basis.
9. The account of this dynasty is based on Punchehh C.P. (JBORS, V. 582 ff).
11. Author’s History of the Paramāra Dynasty, 100-101; El, l. 225, V. 19; the Kalchuri Karna raided Kira or Kangra Valley in which was situated Nageshwar, an outlying fortress within the kingdom of the Yaminis of Ghuzni.
12. HIEd, IV. 518 ff; Author’s “The Historical Value of Divān-i-Salāmān,” Islamic Culture, October, 1942, Vol. XVI, 424 ff; Author’s History of the Paramāra Dynasty, 156 ff.
13. HIEd, IV, 518 ff; Islamic Culture, October, 1942, p. 424.
15. See above, p. 38.
16. See above, p. 33.
NORTHERN INDIA DURING 11TH AND 12TH CENTURIES

17. See above, pp. 50-51.
20. Brigg's Firishta, I, 118; Author's History of the Paramiira Dynasty, 101.
22. An inscription from Atru, in the Kotah State, belongs to the reign of king Jayasimhha. Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar, who first noticed it, read its date as 14 and referred it to the Simha era which would make it equivalent to A.D. 1127. Subsequently he changed his view and restored the date as (13)14, which, referred to the Vikrama era, corresponds to A.D. 1257. If the latter view proves to be correct the inscription is to be referred to the reign of the Paramiira Jayasimhha II, who will have to be identified with the Paramiira Jayavarman II.
23. Vol. IV, p. 94.
27. Amir Khusrav does not state anything about 'Ala-ud-din's relation with the Guhilas after his conquest of Chitor. He does not also mention anything about Padmimi. Firishta pursues the narrative and introduces the Padmimi episode which is also referred to by other later sources. Amir Khusrav's silence on the incidents relating to Padmimi has led some scholars to suggest that the entire episode is a myth (cf. e.g. G. H. Ojha, History of Rajputana; K. R. Quanungo, Prabhat, a Bengali monthly, 1337 B. S. Falgun; R. R. Halder, IA, LXI, 295). It does not, however, carry conviction as it is based on negative evidence. Firishta's statement that 'Ala-ud-din conquered Jalor finds support in contemporary Sanskrit literature, though Amir Khusrav is silent about it. It does not follow from this that 'Ala-ud-din's conquest of Jalor is a myth. As a matter of fact Firishta's account of this matter may be taken as a supplement to that of Amir Khusrav. Prof. Habib thinks that there is an indirect reference to Padmimi in Amir Khusrav's book (JIH, 1929, p. 369 f; IHQ, VII, 287 f).
29. Vol. IV, p. 120.
30. The Rājatarangini, from which we derive the detailed information of Kāshmir, closes with the reign of this king, and relates the history of Kāshmir only up to A.D. 1148-49. For the subsequent history that follows we are indebted to Jonarajā's supplementary work which continues the narrative from that year and is known as Desitāya Rājatarangini.
CHAPTER III

THE AGE OF PRITHVIRĀJA III

The Chāhāmāna Someśvara, as noted in the preceding chapter, lived in the court of Gujarāt in the early part of his life. He married there Karpuradevi, the daughter of Achalarāja of the Haihaya dynasty of Tripuri, who gave birth to a son named Prithvirāja. In the opinion of some writers the astronomical data in the Prithvirāja-vijaya indicate that the birth of the prince took place in A.D. 1166. But the correctness of this conclusion may reasonably be doubted. The Prithvirāja-vijaya relates that Karpuradevi’s second son Harirāja was younger to Prithvirāja at least by one year and eight months, and that both were born during the lifetime of king Vigraharāja IV. The last known date of Vigraharāja IV is V.S. 1220. He was succeeded by Apara-Gāṅgeya, who was again followed on the throne by Prithvirāja II. The earliest known date of Prithvirāja II’s reign is V.S. 1224. It is therefore reasonable to conclude that the reign of Vigraharāja IV was over some time before V.S. 1224, and Prithvirāja was born prior to V.S. 1223 (= A.D. 1166). As the prince is known to have been a minor in A.D. 1177 his birth may be dated some time between A.D. 1162 and 1165.

In A.D. 1168-9 Someśvara went along with his queen and two sons to the Sapadalaksha country from Gujarāt, and ascended his paternal throne. During the reign of Someśvara Prithvirāja was properly educated in letters and military science. Someśvara died in c. A.D. 1177 when Prithvirāja was still a minor, and his mother Karpuradevi acted as the regent. At this time Kadambavāsa served him as the chief minister of the State. He is said to have “guarded the six virtues of Prithvirāja and sent the imperial armies in all directions to add to the glory of his sovereign.” Karpuradevi appointed as the commander of the army Bhuvanaikamalla, who was a scion of her father’s family of the Kalachuris of Tripuri. Prithvirāja-vijaya states that “as Rāma and Lakṣhmaṇa suffered trouble owing to Meghanāda’s sarpa-pāsa (serpent noose) and Garuḍa eventually saved them from the pāśa (noose), so, in this birth, Bhuvanaikamalla, the incarnation of Garuḍa, ever served Rāma and Lakṣhmaṇa (Prithvirāja and Harirāja) loyally.” The enemies who proved dangerous to the safety of these two Chāhāmāna princes were evidently the Nāgas, whom Bhuvanaikamalla is said to have exterminated. The country of these Nāgas cannot
now be definitely identified. During the regency Ajayamuru of Ajmer became very prosperous. The city was densely populated, and it was beautified by many gardens, parks, and wells. The period of regency does not seem to have covered more than a year as Prithviraja appears to have assumed the charge of the government in A.D. 1178.

The *Prithviraja-vijaya* refers to Prithviraja's forthcoming marriage with a princess of extraordinary beauty. But as the manuscript of this book is incomplete, further details of the marriage and the name of the bride are not known. The *Prithviraja Raso* of Chand Bardai, a work of a very late period, states that Prithviraja had a number of queens, the eldest of whom was Ichchhan-devi, the daughter of the Paramara Jaita, king of Mt. Abu. The name of another queen is given as Saśivratā, the daughter of Bhāna of the Yādava dynasty, king of Devagiri. But the throne of Mt. Abu was occupied by the Paramāra Dhārāvārsha at this time, and no king of the name Bhāna is known to have ruled in Devagiri during this period. The youngest of Prithviraja's queens, according to Rāso, is Sānyogitā, the daughter of the Gahadavāla Jayachandra of Kanauj. The story runs that Sānyogitā entertained a keen desire to become the consort of Prithviraja when she heard of his prowess. As her father Jayachandra was a hereditary enemy of Prithviraja, she had to keep her desire secret. She, however, carried on correspondence with the Chahamana king without the knowledge of her father. Jayachandra called an assembly of the princes at Kanauj for the selection of a bridegroom by his daughter. In order to humiliate Prithviraja he did not send him any invitation on that occasion, but placed his statue at the entrance of the hall in the position of a door-keeper. In the assembly Sānyogitā did not choose any of the attending princes as her husband, but moved to the door, and, to the surprise of all, garlanded the statue of the Chāhamāna king. Prithviraja, who was hiding near by with his attendants, rushed to the spot and rode off with the princess. The army of Jayachandra, which pursued them, was strongly opposed by the followers of the Chāhamāna king. Prithviraja safely reached his capital and married the Gahadavāla princess. This marriage is said to have taken place in the interval between the first and second battles of Tarain. The details given by Rāso in connection with the above marriage are so improbable and romantic that the authenticity of the whole story may reasonably be doubted.

Besides Kadambavāsa and Bhuvanaikamalla, Prithviraja had a number of other officers of great ability. Sōdha was the minister
of peace and war to king Somesvara. He had two sons Skanda and Vamana, who were given the posts of the chief councillors by Prithviraja. In addition to this the Chahamana king conferred on Skanda the post of the commander of the army, and entrusted Vamana with the post of the minister of peace and war. Udayaraja, a resident of the Gauja country, was another military officer, and Somesvara, another minister of Prithviraja.

After his assumption of the charge of the government, Prithviraja found himself confronted with grave dangers. In A.D. 1178 Shihâb-ud-dín Muhammad, also known as Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad, marched towards Gujarât by way of Multân, Uch, and the tractless desert. At this time he sent a diplomatic agent to the court of Prithviraja at Ajmer for negotiation, as he learnt that the latter was bitterly hostile to the Muslims. The details of the representations made by him cannot be known, as the relevant pages of the Prithviraja-ciyâya are missing. Subsequent incidents, however, show that his mission to establish an alliance with the Chahamana king miserably failed. Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad reached Kirâdu, near Barmer, in Mârwâr, in A.D. 1178, and plundered the temple of Somesvara there. He then took possession of Nagol (NaMula), the capital of a collateral branch of the Chahamanas. When the news of the fall of Nagol reached Ajmer, Prithviraja resolved to crush the invaders, but refrained from taking any hasty action on the advice of his minister Kadambavasa, who deemed it wise to allow the enemy to exhaust himself by fighting with the Gurjaras. Just about this time a messenger from Gujarât came to Ajmer and informed Prithviraja that the king of Gujarât had utterly routed the Muslim invaders. This obviously refers to Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad's defeat at the hands of the Chaulukya Mularaja II at Kâsaharada at the foot of Mt. Abu. Prithviraja was greatly delighted at this news and handsomely rewarded the messenger. He also showered high praises on Kadambavâsa for the valuable advice he gave in that critical moment.

During this period Prithviraja had to fight with his own cousin named Nâgârjuna, the son of his uncle Vigrahârâja IV. The young age of the king seems to have encouraged Nâgârjuna to raise the standard of revolt. He captured a city named Gudâpura, which cannot now be identified, and established himself there. Prithviraja left behind Kadambavâsa and Bhuvanaikamalla, and himself marched against the rebel. He besieged the city of Gudâpura wherefrom Nâgârjuna fled like an abject coward. The army of Nâgârjuna resisted him for some time under the leadership of Devabhâta (?), apparently a lieutenant of Nâgârjuna, but all the chief
combatants lost their lives in the encounter. Guḍapura was occupied by Prithvirāja, who took the mother, wife, and the attendants of Nāgarjuna prisoners. He then proceeded to Ajayameru along with the captives, and is said to have hung the severed heads of his enemies on the gates of the fort of that city. This he did probably to serve as a deterrent to Nāgarjuna and his surviving associates.

Some time before A.D. 1182 Prithvirāja invaded the country of the Bhāḍānakas, which cannot be identified but probably comprised the modern Rewari Tahsil, Bhiwani and its adjoining villages, and a part of the old Alwar State. The chief of the Bhāḍānakas resisted the Chāhāmāna king with his powerful elephants but was severely defeated.

The Kharataragachchha-paññāvali of Jina pāla states that Pri thvirāja went out for digvijaya (conquering of the quarters) in A.D. 1182, but does not mention the names of the countries which were invaded by the Chāhāmāna king. It is known from other sources that in this year Prithvirāja led an army against Jejakabhukti or the modern Bundelkhand. The tradition relates that the Chandella Paramardi, also known as Paramāl, king of Jejakabhukti, had two able generals named Alhā and Udāl, sons of Jasarāja of the Banāfār clan. The king grew suspicious of the loyalty of these two brothers on the report of a designing man, and dismissed them. Thereafter the two generals left Jejakabhukti and accepted service under the king Jayachandra of Kanauj. Shortly afterwards Prithvirāja invaded Jejakabhukti, forcibly captured Sirswa on the Pahuj, a tributary of the Sind, and reached the border of Mahohā. At this Paramardi got frightened and sent a messenger to Kanauj to bring Alhā and Udāl. The two brothers at first refused to leave Kanauj, remembering the ill-treatment they received from Paramardi. Subsequently their love for their motherland triumphed over every other consideration, and they returned to Mahohā. In the battle that ensued they fought bravely and sacrificed their lives. Prithvirāja defeated Paramardi and plundered Mahohā and Kalanjara. The authenticity of this story, as narrated by the bard, cannot be verified. But that there was a conflict between Prithvirāja and Paramardi is known from reliable sources. Merutungi, in his Prabandha-chintāmāni, makes a confusion between Paramardi, who is identical with the Chāḷukya Vikramāditya VI of the Deccan, and the king of this name of the Chandella dynasty. He associates Paramardi with Siddharāja-Jayasirha in one place, and connects him with Prithvirāja of the Sapādalaksha country elsewhere. Paramardi in the latter reference is evidently the Chandella king of
This name. It is stated that this king entered into a war with Pri-
thviräja, but his army was defeated and he fled to his capital. The
Sārgadhāra-paddhati also refers to this conflict. Madanpur is a
village 35 miles south-south-east of Lalitpur. Some stone inscrip-
tions found there in a temple of Śiva state that Prithvirāja, son of
Someśvara of the Chāhāmāna family, devastated Jejakabhukti in
A.D. 1182. All these leave no doubt that Prithvirāja defeated
Paramārī in a battle and plundered the Chandella kingdom in
A.D. 1182. The Chāhāmānas could not, however, maintain their
control over Jejakabhukti for a long time. Two inscriptions from
Kāraṇjāra and Mahābā prove that the Chandellas were in posses-
sion of them in A.D. 1183.

Prithvirāja entered into a war with the Chaulukya Bhima
II of Gujarāt, whose kingdom extended up to Kirāgu and
Nā dol in southern Mārwar. The Chāhāmānas of Nā dol and
the Paramāras of Mt. Abu were vassals of the Chaulukyas. The Pri-
thvirāja-vijaya states that Kadambavāsa advised Prithvirāja not to
involve himself in a war with Mu'izz-u-d-dīn Muḥammad, pointing
out to him that it would be to the advantage of the Chāhāmānas
if the Muslims and the Chaulukyas, both of whom wanted to assert
their supremacy over Śākambhāri, exhausted themselves by fight-
ing with each other. This shows that the relation between the
Chaulukyas and the Chāhāmānas was inimical from the very begin-
ing of Prithvirāja's reign. Shortly before A.D. 1187 Prithvirāja
launched a campaign against the kingdom of Gujarāt. The Para-
māra Dharavarsa and Jagaddeva Pratīhāra, the prime minister of
Bhima II, opposed his advance. Dharavarsa claims that he re-
pulsed a night attack of Prithvirāja, the king of the Jāngala-dēsa.
The Jāngala-dēsa comprised Bīkaner and the northern part of Jodhp-
ur. Its capital was Ahichchatrapura or Nāgapura, modern Nāgaur, in the old Jodhpur State. Jagaddeva Pratīhāra also is stated
to have won a victory over Prithvirāja. But the result of the battle
was not very much unfavourable to the Chāhāmāna king. Bhima
II ultimately concluded a treaty with his adversary, which he tried
to observe with meticulous care. In A.D. 1187 some people from
the Chāhāmāna kingdom visited Gujarāt with some valuable arti-
cles. The Daṇḍanāyaka Abhayāṇa sent a messenger to Jagaddeva
Pratīhāra seeking his permission to seize the property of these visi-
tors. Jagaddeva Pratīhāra is said to have replied that he had re-
cently concluded a treaty with Prithvirāja after taking a lot of
trouble. "If Abhayāṇa therefore laid his hands on the people of
Ṣapādalaścha, he would have him sewn in the belly of a donkey."
On the receipt of this peremptory order Abhayāṇa treated the tra-
vellers with care, and allowed them to proceed to their destination.
THE AGE OF PRITHVIRAJA III

All these wars waged by Prithviraja against his neighbours do not seem to have resulted in any acquisition of territory. He inherited from his predecessors a kingdom which extended up to Hissār and Sirhind, in Patiala, on the north-west, and Delhi on the north. It was bounded on the south by the kingdom of the Guhilas of Mewār, and the territories of the Chāhamānas of Nādol, who were vassals of the Chaulukya Bhima II; on the east by the kingdoms of the Yadvānas of Bayāna-Sṛipatha, the Kachchhapaghātās of Gwālor, and the Gāḍāvālas of Kanauj; and on the north-west by the kingdom of the Yaminīs of Lahore. Altogether six inscriptions of Prithvirāja’s reign have been discovered, with dates ranging between A.D. 1177 and 1188. The Kāshmirian poet Jayānaka, the author of Prithviraja-vijaya, lived under the patronage of Prithvirāja. The Jain teacher Astaḍhara, the author of a large number of books, lived in Sapādalaksha in the early part of his life. It is known from the Kharataragachchha-pattavali of Jinapāla that the poets Vidyapati Gauḍā and Vāgīsvara Janādana visited the court of Prithvirāja. Prithvibhaṭṭa served this king as the royal bard. Some silver and bullion coins issued by Prithvirāja have been found.

Prithvirāja could not enjoy his well established kingdom for many years. Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad of Ghūr, who was repulsed by the Chaulukya Mālarāja II near Mt. Abu in A.D. 1178, overthrew in A.D. 1186 Khusrav Malik, the last ruler of the Yaminī dynasty of Ghaznī, and strengthened his position by the annexation of the western Punjab. This brought the kingdom of the Maliks of Ghūr up to the border of that of the Chāhamānas. Mu'izz-ud-din carried on successive military excursions into the kingdom of the Chāhamānas in the Punjab for some time. He then made a bid for the conquest of Hindustān. He marched at the head of a well-organised army from Ghaznī and reached Tabarhindah, which was situated in the kingdom of Prithvirāja. Tabarhindah may be identified with Sirhind, in the old Patiala State. The Sultan took the fort by storm and placed it under the charge of Malik Ziya-ud-din. Twelve hundred horsemen were posted there with adequate munitions of war. They were instructed to hold it for eight months until the Sultan returned from Ghaznī. The advance of the Muslims as far as Sirhind caused great consternation into the minds of the feudatories of the Chāhamānas in the west. Chandraraja, son of Govindarāja, the governor of Delhi, came to Ajmer along with other chiefs on delegation to Prithvirāja. Chandraraja reported to the king that a Muslim named Shihāb-ud-din “had pillaged and burnt most of their cities, defiled their women, and reduced them altogether to a miserable plight. There is scarcely a moun-
tain-pent valley in the country but is filled to suffocation with Rāj­puts who have fled thither for protection from his tyranny. The noblest of the Rājput families have disappeared before him, and he has now established his capital at Multān.” The chiefs of the west sought his assistance against this unrelenting enemy. Prithvirāja was very much excited when he heard this woeful tale, and readily agreed to render all possible help. He set out with two hundred thousand horse and three thousand elephants to punish Mu'izz-ud­din Muhammad. Govindarāja of Delhi and many other Indian princes accompanied him. While making arrangement for departure from Tabarhindah Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad received the news of the advance of Prithvirāja against him. He met his enemy in the battlefield of Tarain, 14 miles from Thaneswar and 80 miles from Delhi, in A.D. 1190-91. When the battle was in progress, the right and the left wings of the Sultan’s army broke down and fled. The central division also became very thin. At this time the Sultan was informed by one of his confidential attendants about the disinte­gration of his army, and was advised to retreat. He scornfully re­jected the advice, unsheathed his sword, and along with the few soldiers still sticking to their posts rushed to attack the enemy. His movement suddenly caught the attention of Govindarāja, who forthwith drove his elephant towards him with all speed. The Sultan finding him in front darted a spear, which succeeded in breaking two of his teeth. Govindarāja in return threw a javelin which caused a deep wound in the Sultan’s arm. The Sultan was about to fall from his horse in agony when a Khalji soldier rushed to his rescue. The valiant warrior sprang on the horse with a lightening speed, gave him support with his arms, and took the horse out of the battlefield. The Sultan was carried to a place 40 miles off where he met his fleeing forces. After the departure of the Sultan there was disorder in the Muslim army in the battle­field and it was readily overpowered by the Chāhāmānas. Skanda, the general of Prithvirāja, took a prominent part in this battle, and brought success to his master. According to Hammira-Mahākavya Prithvirāja took Shihāb-ud-dīn captive in this battle but subsequent­ly released him and allowed him to go back to Multān. This seems to be an exaggerated account of the victory of Prithvirāja over the Muslims.

After his success in the battle of Tarain Prithvirāja marched with his army to Tabarhindah, and besieged the fort. The com­mander of the fort, Malik Ziyā-ud-din, defended his position for thirteen months and then capitulated. Prithvirāja took possession of it and the supremacy of the Chāhāmānas was re-established in the Punjāb.
In order to avenge himself of the defeat sustained at the hands of Prithvirāja, Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad organised at Ghazni, after a strenuous labour, an army of one hundred and twenty thousand men. He came with this force to Lahore via Peshāwar and Mul-tān. The Hammira-Mahākāvyā relates that the Sultan, in order to strengthen his forces, sought help from the king of the Ghaṭāika country, who readily complied with the request by despatching many horses and men. The Ghaṭāika country cannot be identified. About this time the Sultan sent an emissary named Rukn-ud-din Hamzah to Ajmer with a proposal to Prithvirāja for embracing Islam and acknowledging his supremacy in order to avoid the dreadful consequence of the war. The Chāhamāna king treated the proposal with the contempt it deserved, and rallied his forces, which consisted of 300,000 horse, 3,000 elephants and a large body of infantry. Many Rājas of Hindustān helped him, and one hundred and fifty chiefs joined him with the determination of either defeating the Muslims or dying on the battlefield. The Hammira-Mahākāvyā's report that Prithvirāja, elated with his former success, marched on this occasion with a small body of soldiers to meet the Muslims, does not seem to be correct. Skanda, the commander of the army, who brought success to Prithvirāja's arms in the last battle with the Muslims, was engaged in a war elsewhere, and could not accompany the king. Another lieutenant named Udaya-rāja, who was to join him, delayed in starting from the capital. Govindarāja of Delhi joined him on the way. When Prithvirāja was advancing against his enemy, the minister Somesvara tried to persuade the king not to proceed further. The king suspected him of treachery, cut off his ears, and dismissed him. Somesvara turned a bitter enemy of the king and joined the Muslims. Prithvirāja, with his vast army, reached the battlefield of Tarain. Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad, after conquering Tabarhindah, met him there. Prithvirāja sent a letter to him, requesting him to withdraw his army, being content with the possession of Tabarhindah and the Punjāb. This gave the Sultan an opportunity to defeat his enemy by a stratagem. He replied that he could not retreat without the permission of his brother at whose command he led this invasion. He, however, agreed to a truce till he received instruction from his brother on this matter. The Chāhamāna army, relying on the assurances of the Sultan, went on merrymaking during the night. The Sultan instructed a batch of soldiers to keep the light in the camp burning in order to make a show before the enemy that the Muslims were encamped, and made preparation for a sudden attack. He marched with the main body of his soldiers throughout the night by a different route, forded the river before dawn, and attacked the
rear of the enemy. A confusion broke out in the Chāhamāna army. But Prithvirāja skilfully brought out his cavalry and frustrated the attempt of the Sultān, who returned discomfited to his camp. He now took recourse to a new artifice. He divided his army into five divisions, one consisting of 12,000 cavalry, and the remaining four of 10,000 light-armed horsemen each. These four smaller divisions carried on successive attacks on the Chāhamānas on the right, left, front, and the rear from the morning onward. Each time the latter made counter-attacks on them with their elephant, cavalry, and infantry, they retreated, pretending flight. By the afternoon the Chāhamānas got extremely tired, when the Sultān with the bigger division made a vigorous attack and completely overpowered them. One lakh of the Hindu soldiers lost their lives. Govinda-rāja, the chief of Delhi, fell fighting on the battlefield, and the Sultān recognised him through the absence of his two teeth which he had broken in the last engagement. In this predicament Prithvirāja got down from his elephant and, mounting a horse, fled away. He was overtaken by the Muslim army in the neighbourhood of Sursuti, which seems to be identical with the Sarasvati, and was taken prisoner. This battle took place in A.D. 1192. After conquering Hānsi, Sursuti, Kuhrām or Guhrām, and Sāmāna, the Sultān marched towards Ajmer with the captive king, and took that city by assault. He demolished the temples there, and built mosques and Islamic colleges on their ruins. The captive Prithvirāja, who was granted immunity from punishment, made an intrigue against the Sultan. The conspiracy was detected and at the order of the Sultān Prithvirāja was executed.

The above account of the defeat and death of Prithvirāja at the hands of Mu‘izz-ud-din Muhammad is based on the authority of the early and later Muslim historians. The Sanskrit sources also throw light on this subject. The Viruddhavidi-viddhavāsa, a nearly contemporary authority, states that when Prithvirāja’s general Skanda “went to another battle, the king, whose intellect was shrouded by the vice of sleep, who, though alive, was as good as dead in battle, was slaughtered by the Turushkas.” The Prabandhachintāmaṇi relates that the minister Someśvara, who was dismissed by Prithvirāja, conducted the Muslims to the camp of the Chāhamāna king. At this time Prithvirāja was enjoying a deep sleep, and a severe encounter took place between the Muslims and the heroes of Prithvirāja’s vanguard. Prithvirāja was taken prisoner when he was still excessively drowsy. The king of the Muslims took the Chāhamāna king to the latter’s capital, and resolved to reinstate him on the throne. But the sight of a picture in the royal palace, depicting the Muslims as being killed by a drove
of pigs, greatly infuriated him, and he readily put Prithviraja to
death. It is difficult to take these accounts seriously.

Prithviraja was evidently a general of high order, but he lack­
ed political foresight. It was a grave defect with the Indian chiefs
that in their fight with the Muslims they always chose to be on the
defensive. The result was that their adversaries, even when they
were defeated, could escape annihilation if they could only with­
draw from the battlefield. Prithviraja was not free from this
drawback. At this time the rule of the Maliks of Ghur was not
firmly established in the Punjab. Prithviraja ought to have pur­
sued the disabled Sultan to the Punjab after his victory in the first
battle of Tarain, and made an attempt to root out the Muslim rule
there. His task would have been easy, as it was not possible for
his opponents there to avail themselves of the service of their great
leader. But far from doing this, and even without making any
suitable arrangement for the defence of the fort of Tabarhindah,
which guarded his north-western frontier, he retired to Ajmer, and
the dreadful consequence followed.

The defeat of Prithviraja in the second battle of Tarain not
only destroyed the imperial power of the Chahamanas, but also
brought disaster on the whole of Hindustan. The morale of the
ruling princes and the people completely broke down, and the entire
country was seized with panic. Many of those who were accustom­
ed to peaceful pursuits fled with their family and settled in the
south. The Jain teacher Aśādha states that when Sapadalaksha was
conquered by Shihāb-ud-din, he, for fear of being molested by the
conquering armies, left his native country, and migrated with his
family to Mālava. This state of things obviously made it easier for
Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad and his generals to establish a firm foot­
ing in the heart of Hindustan.

The Viruddhavidhi-viddhavaniśa states that after the death of
Prithviraja his general Skanda placed the king's brother Hariraja
on the throne of Śākambhari. The Hammira-Mahākavya relates
that on the death of Prithviraja his brother Hariraja performed his
funeral ceremonies and then ascended the throne. Hasan Nizāmi,
on the other hand, reports that after the execution of Prithviraja
Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad placed the deceased king's son on the
throne. As Prithviraja was a minor in A.D. 1177 his son was
apparently very young at this time. After settling the affairs at
Ajmer the Sultan marched to Delhi and invested the fort. After
a short resistance the son of Govindaraja and his lieutenants sur­
rendered and agreed to pay him tributes regularly. The Sultan
left for Ghazni, posting an army in Delhi, and appointing his gene-
Qutb-ud-din, governor of Guhram and Sâmâna. Shortly afterwards Qutb-ud-din finally took possession of Delhi. But about this time he received a report, sent by Rukn-ud-din Hamzah from Ranthambhor, that Hiraj (Harirâja), the brother of the Rai of Ajmer, had gone into rebellion, and threatened to invade Ranthambhor. The son of Prithvirâja was also living in Ajmer in a precarious condition. Qutb-ud-din forthwith marched towards Ranthambhor, and at his approach Harirâja fled away with his army. Qutb-ud-din presented a robe of honour to the son of Prithvirâja, and received from him immense wealth for the service of the State.

After Qutb-ud-din’s return to Delhi, Harirâja, with the help of the general Skanda, overthrew the son of Prithvirâja and wielded the sovereignty of Ajmer. The Indian sources, referred to above, do not mention the events which happened between the fall of Prithvirâja and the accession of Harirâja. A stone inscription of Harirâja’s reign, dated A.D. 1194, proves that he was in possession of Ajmer in that year. He sent an army to the borders of Delhi, which oppressed the Muslims and plundered their property. This induced Qutb-ud-din to lead an invasion against him. Harirâja’s position in Ajmer was not very strong. He fell into disfavour of his subjects due to his licentious habits. Bhima II, the king of Gujarat, in order to be friendly with him, presented him some dancing girls. Harirâja was so much enamoured of their beauty that he spent day and night in their association, and squandered the revenue. When Qutb-ud-din invaded his kingdom, he was not prepared for resistance. He did not, however, choose to sacrifice his honour by surrendering to the enemy. He entered into the fort and died along with all the members of his family by ascending the funeral pile. Harirâja had no son. His followers, in despair, left Ajmer and took shelter under Govindarâja of Ranthambhor. Ajmer fell into the hands of Qutb-ud-din without any fight. Hasan Nizâmi fixes the date of this conquest of Ajmer by Qutb-ud-din in A.D. 1193. This is obviously an error as Harirâja, as has already been noted, was ruling in Ajmer in A.D. 1194, and Qutb-ud-din’s conquest of Ajmer must, therefore, have taken place after this date. Qutb-ud-din settled the affairs in Ajmer, posting there a governor, and returned to Delhi. Thus the rule of the Imperial Chûhâmânâs came to an end.
The Age of Prithviraja III

1. The account of the war between Prithviraja and Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad is found in the nearly contemporary works, viz. Viruddhavidhi-viddhavamsa, Jami'at Hikayat, Taj-ul-Masir, and Tabaght-i-Nasiri, and later works, viz. Prabhanda-chintamani, Hammira-Mahakavya, Firishta, Tabaght-i-Atberi, etc.

2. Commenting on the name of the fort Tabarhindah Raverty observes that all the copies of the text have Tabarhindah or Tabarhind. Ta'rikh-i-Afli, Zubdat-ta'wirikh, and BudaunI have Tarhindah. BudaunI says that it was the capital of Jaipal. The printed text of Tabaqiit-i-Nisiri, and many works of late date, viz. Tabaght-i-Abberi, Mir'at-i-Jahin-Nama, and Khusirat-ul-Taqwirikh, etc., have Sirhind. Firishta calls it Pathindah. The Lubb-ul-Tawirikh-i-Hind says that Tabarhindah is now known by the name Bithandah (Raverty, Tabaqa.t-i-Nisiri, p. 457, n). Some are inclined to identify the place with Bhatinda, in Patiala, and some again take it as identical with Sirhind in the same State. As the distance of Bhatinda from Tarain is double that of Sirhind I am inclined to agree with the latter view.

3. The Hammira-Mahakavya narrates the final battle between Prithviraja and Mu'izz-ud-din in a different way. It states that Shihab-ud-din (Mu'izz-ud-din) succeeded in seducing Prithviraja's master of the horse and the royal musicians. As soon as the Muslims made an onslaught on the camps of the Chahamanas a confusion broke out. The master of the horse designedly supplied a horse named Natyarambha for the use of the king at this critical juncture. When the king mounted on it the musicians played on a tune favourite to him. Natyarambha started dancing, and the king, being attracted by the music, forgot the grave task he was to perform. Taking advantage of the king's indifference the Muslims made a severe attack on the Chahamanas. Prithviraja got down from his horse, and killed many Muslims with his sword, but he soon fell a captive, and was taken to Delhi. When Udayaraja besieged the city for the release of his master, the Sultan, in order to avoid future trouble, threw the captive king into the fort. The king died there a few days after, and Udayaraja, in despair, rushed upon the Muslims and died fighting. The Hammira-Mahakavya's report goes against the testimony of Taj-ul-Ma'asir.
CHAPTER IV

THE TURKISH CONQUEST OF NORTHERN INDIA

1. THE MUSLIM STATES IN THE EAST

A brief reference has been made above, in Chapter II, to the part played by the Saljuq Turks and the Shansabāns of Ghūr in bringing about the fall of the Ghaznavids. In order to understand more clearly the background of the events that followed and ultimately led to the Muslim conquest of India, it is necessary to review briefly the history of these and other Muslim states in the east in the eleventh and twelfth centuries A.D.

As noted above, Sultan Mahmūd had to bear the brunt of Ilāk Khān’s attack and to buy peace by allowing him to capture the rich plain north of the Oxus. But soon another and far more numerous horde, the Ghuzz Turks, rose into prominence. Starting from the Kirghiz steppes of Turkistan, their chieftain named Saljuq had settled in the region of Bukhārā about the middle of the tenth century A.D. His grandsons, Chaghri Beg and Tughril Beg, rose to power by helping the Sāmānids against Ilāk Khān. But soon after Mahmūd’s death they crossed the Oxus, conquered Merv and Nishāpūr from the Ghaznavids, and brought under their sway the whole of Khūrāsān and northern Persia, the petty kingdoms of the land falling before them just as the Indian kings had succumbed before Mahmūd. In A.D. 1054 Tughril marched against Baghdad, revived the dying Caliphate, and gave it a lease of life for another two centuries. The greatest service that the Saljuqs rendered to Islam was to re-unite middle Asia from Afghanistan to the Mediterranean under one political authority, which made it possible for the Muslims to check the progress, first of the Byzantine Emperors, and later of the Crusaders.

The next important event in the politics of Central Asia in this age was the rise of the house of Khvārazm Shāh. Khvārazm (the modern Khiva) was bounded on the west by the Caspian, on the east by Bukhārā and the Oxus, and on the south by Khūrāsān. It passed from the hands of the Sāmānids to the Ghaznavids, and from these to the Saljuqs. Ever since the Sāmānīd days the governors of Khvārazm had enjoyed the title of Khvārazm Shāh. In the last quarter of the eleventh century the Saljuq Sultan Malik
Shah appointed his cup-bearer Anushtegin governor of Khvārazm. Either he or his son Atsiz declared himself independent, and founded the dynasty of Khvārazm Shāh, which was destined to play for a century the leading role in the history of Central Asia.

At this time there entered into the arena of Central Asiatic politics a new force, the Qara Khitai Turks, who moved westward owing to the pressure of the Mongols and Chinese from the East. These Turks were not Muslim. In A.D. 1141 their leader (known as Gur Khān or Universal Lord) inflicted a crushing defeat upon Sulṭān Sanjar and shattered the power of the Saljūqs beyond recovery. This left the field free for the Khvārazm Shāhs to increase their power and possessions at the expense of the Saljūqs, and the Ghūrids or Chiefs of Ghūr to aggrandize themselves at the expense of the Ghaznavids. Thus the two great powers, the Saljūqs in Persia and the Ghaznavids in Afghanistan and Khurāsān, were supplanted respectively by the Khvārazm Shāhs and the Ghūrids. At a later date, ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khvārazm Shāh (A.D. 1199-1220), the more powerful of the two, drove the Ghūrids out of Khurāsān, and the Qara Khitais back into China, and extended his sway from Persia to Bukhārā and Samarqand. In A.D. 1214 he also drove out the Ghūrids even from Ghazni and Afghanistan. But before we come to this period we shall deal in some detail with the ruling house of Ghūr which laid the foundation of the Muslim empire in India.

2. THE GHŪRIDS

The Ghūrids inhabited the region between Ghazni and Herāt. Some writers think that they were Afghāns, but most probably they were eastern Persians. With the decline of Ghaznavid Sulṭāns they gradually asserted their power and finally the nephew of the “World-burner,” Ghiyāhs-ud-dīn Muhammad, ascended the throne of Ghūr as Sulṭān in A.D. 1163. He drove the Ghuzz Turks from Ghazni and made his brother Shihāb-ud-dīn Muhammad governor of that province in A.D. 1173. The latter, also called Mu‘izz-ud-dīn Muhammad bin Sām, tried to emulate the exploits of Sultan Mahmīd and led several expeditions against India.

The early expeditions of Muhammad were made through the Gomāl Pass, west of Dera Ismail Khan, and not through the Khyber, because the former was the safer and shorter route. Consequently Multān and Uch, which were the first to fall on his way, were wrested from their Qaramitah chiefs in A.D. 1175. By A.D. 1182 the Sūmra chief of lower Sindh was compelled to acknowledge Muhammad’s suzerainty. So far the direction followed by Muhammad was correct. But when he attempted to cross the desert and penetrate
into Gujarāt, forgetting the experience of Mahmūd, he was acting against the dictates of geography. It would seem that some Turkish warriors had been frequently raiding the Rājput kingdoms from that quarter in the twelfth century, but all the attacks had been repulsed by the Gujarāt rulers. Following this tradition Muhammad crossed the desert and reached the foot of Mt. Abu in A.D. 1178, with an exhausted and famished army. The Turkish army was beaten with great slaughter by the forces of Molarājā II, the Chaulukya king of Gujarāt, but Muhammad luckily managed to escape with the poor remnant of his ruined army. This reverse left no other course for him except that of entering India by the northern route and, consequently, of first wresting the Panjāb from the Ghaznavids. Soon an opportunity offered itself. Chakradeo, the ruler of Jammu, invited the Ghūrī Sultān to help him against Khusrav Malik, the Ghaznavid, as the latter was supporting the tribesmen, known as Khokars, who had rebelled against the authority of the Jammu chief. Muhammad accordingly invaded India. Peshāwar was taken in A.D. 1178, Siālkot fell in A.D. 1185, and the following year Lahore was captured by treachery from Khusrav Malik, the last of the Ghaznavids, as has been described above.

Muhammad's fight with the Chāhamāna or Chauhān king Pri-thvīrājā, ending in the defeat and death of the latter in the second battle of Tarain in A.D. 1192, has been described in the preceding chapter.

After this great victory Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad conquered Delhi, but, as noted above, Hindu chiefs were allowed to rule both in Ajmer and Delhi as tributary kings. He then occupied and garrisoned the military outposts of Hansi, Kuhram, Sursuti and Sirhind. After these brilliant victories Muhammad returned to Ghazni, leaving his favourite general Malik Qutb-ud-din Aibak with an army at Indarpat, about ten miles from Delhi.

3. QUTB-UD-DIN AIBAK'S CONQUESTS

Qutb-ud-din Aibak had full powers to deal with the Hindu chiefs and to make further conquests. A Hindu chief having besieged the garrison at Hansi (A.D. 1192), Aibak at once rushed to its relief and defeated and slew the chief near Bāgar. Then he captured and garrisoned Meerut and Baran (modern Bulandshahr) in the upper Doāb, the latter place having fallen because of the treachery of Ajaipāl, a relation of the Dhor chief, who was a vassal of the Gāhaḍavālas. These two places served as military bases for operations in the east.
THE TURKISH CONQUEST OF NORTHERN INDIA

For consolidating the conquest it was necessary to settle at a central place, Indarpat being only a temporary camp. Aibak, therefore, drove away the Chauhan chief, who was suspected of hostile designs, from Delhi, and made it his capital early in A.D. 1193. Aibak had already occupied and garrisoned the mighty fort of Ranthambhor, but the Chāhmanas, under the leadership of Harirāja, brother of the late Prithvirāja, recovered both Ajmer and Ranthambhor. Aibak immediately moved against them, and on his approach they withdrew. Meanwhile the dispossessed chief of Delhi again revolted, and Aibak had to go against him leaving Harirāja unsubdued. In the midst of all these preoccupations the Turkish general was called away by his master to Ghazni, probably to help him against the Khvārazmian menace, and was away for six months. It is surprising that this long absence of Aibak was not utilised by the Indian chiefs to make an effective combination to drive out the foreigners from the land and to prevent their future entry into it. A splendid opportunity was thus missed by them. There were only stray risings and revolts which were easily put down, and soon after the conqueror returned, he occupied the Doāb as far as Kol (Aligarh) and garrisoned it.

(i) The Gahāḍavālas

All this happened within an year and Aibak had prepared the ground for another avalanche from Ghūr. In A.D. 1193 Mu’izz-ud-dīn marched with fifty thousand cavalry against the Gahāḍavālas, and was met by Jayachandra near Chandawar on the Yamunā, between Btāwah and Kānuj. A hard contest followed, and Jayachandra had well nigh scored a victory, when he received a deadly wound from an arrow and fell. His force was thrown into confusion and the lucky invader turned it into a rout. An orgy of extensive and ruthless massacre, rapine, and pillage followed. Temples and shrines were razed to the ground and relieved of their fabulous treasures. Banaras and the fort of Asni which contained the treasury of the Gahāḍavālas were the first to be occupied. One thousand temples are said to have been destroyed at Banaras alone, and mosques raised in their places. This victory added extensive territory in Hindustān, as far east as Banaras and Chandrāvati, to the dominions of the conqueror. But, as noted above, the Gahāḍavālas recovered some of the territories.3

(ii) Ajmer, Gujarāt, Bāyānā and Gwāllōr

Muhammad gathered the hoard of treasures and departed for Ghazni, leaving Aibak to deal with the affairs in India. Aibak had enough work on hand to keep him occupied. The Hindu chiefs
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

were far from being effectively subdued, and the country was seething with hostility and revolt. Kol was being besieged by Dhor Rajputs; Ajmer was invested by Hariraja again, and an army led by Jhat Rai, under Hariraja's direction, was proceeding to recapture Delhi. But Aibak, nothing daunted, proved equal to the task. Detaching a part of his force to guard the capital, he proceeded towards Ajmer and cut off Jhat Rai on the way. The latter fell back to Ajmer which was then closely besieged by Aibak, reducing Hariraja to such straits that he, finding escape impossible, burnt himself on a funeral pyre to save himself from the humiliation of defeat and captivity. Aibak then set aside his protegé, the son of Prithviraja, and appointed one of his officers to govern it. Ajmer was thus annexed to the Delhi dominions in or shortly after A.D. 1194. It was at this time that Aibak erected the Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque at Delhi from the materials of 27 Hindu or Jain temples which were demolished. This was followed about A.D. 1196 by the erection of another mosque, which came to be popularly known as Aghâi-din-ka-Jhompâ, at Ajmer on the site of the Sanskrit college of Visaladeva. This mosque was completed in A.D. 1200.

In A.D. 1195 Mu'izz-ud-din returned to round off the conquest of Northern India by annexing the petty principalities of Bayâna and Gwâilor. The chief of Bayâna, Kunwarpâla, evacuated his capital and entrenched himself in the neighbouring fort of Thangarh (Tahangarh), but surrendered after a short siege. The several strongholds and strategic outposts of the locality were then occupied and garrisoned, and the command of this frontier between Râjputâna and Doib was entrusted to Baha-ud-din Tughril. The latter founded another military station, which he named Sultankot, to serve as a base of operations both in the east and the west. After this the Ghûri chief laid siege to the mighty fortress of Gwâilor. This fort was not easy to subdue and the siege was prolonged. Therefore when the Parihar chief Sallakshana opened negotiations for peace, Muhammad welcomed the opportunity, raised the siege, and retired, leaving Tughril to complete the reduction of the fort. The latter then so harried the Parihar chief by his frequent forays for more than a year that he was compelled to surrender his fort which was thus annexed to the Delhi Sultanate.

There was however no respite for Aibak. In A.D. 1195-6 the Mher tribes of Ajmer combined with the Chaulukyas to expel the Turks from Râjputâna. Aibak had to rush to the help of the Turkish governor of Ajmer. Finding the Mhers camping near Ajmer he engaged them in a battle, but when the enemy were reinforced by the Chaulukya ruler's army, Aibak was forced to withdraw into
THE TURKISH CONQUEST OF NORTHERN INDIA

the city. Here he was closely besieged and his position became very precarious. But the fortunate approach of reinforcements from Ghazni at this critical moment saved him. On the approach of this force the Rajputs raised the siege and retired.

To avenge this attack Aibak early next year mustered a powerful army and advanced on Aahillapāṭaka (Anhilwāra). It seems that Bhima II of Gujarāt, on the approach of Aibak’s force, retired to some distant fortress. But, as noted above, Rai Karan, assisted by Dhārāvārsha Paramāra of Abu, collected a huge army and awaited the Turks at the foot of the Abu hills. Aibak quailed before this enormous horde or perhaps he feigned fright, and resorted to shock tactics. When the Rajputs, thinking that Aibak was trying to avoid engagement, came out into the open, the Turks made a sudden onslaught. The superior manoeuvres and quicker movement triumphed over superior numbers, and the Rajputs met with a terrible reverse. Fifty thousand men are said to have been slain and twenty thousand taken captive. The Muslims mercilessly sacked the capital city Aahillapāṭaka, defiled and demolished its temples, and plundered its palaces. According to Firishta a Muslim officer was placed in charge of Gujarāt and Aibak returned to Delhi. But, shortly after, Bhima came out of his hiding place, and the Turks were gradually driven out of Gujarāt. Some scholars suppose that it was due to the valour shown by Bhima II that the Turks did not venture to attack Gujarāt for one full century. But the immunity of Gujarāt from Turkish invasion was probably due mainly to its being situated at a long distance from the capital with the important territory of Rajputana intervening between the two. These obstacles were not easy to overcome for a general who was kept preoccupied with insurrection and revolt rampant in the country around the capital.

(iii) Northern Doāb and Rājputāna

In the following year the country beyond the Gaigā, Katehr and Budaun (Badayun), was reduced to submission, and Chandawar and Kanauj had again to be captured. Some expeditions were also probably undertaken into Rājputāna which compelled the Chāhāmnās (Chauhāns) of Nādol to migrate to safer places. These Chauhān chieftains founded the houses of Kotah, Bundi and Sirohi. Nevertheless Aibak could not establish a firm and lasting foothold over Rājputāna.

(iv) The Chandellas (Chandels)

The conquest of the northern Doāb and the surrounding country being complete, it was now the turn of the next great king-
dom which touched the south-eastern border of the Turkish dominions. This was the kingdom of the brave Chandellas of Jejkalbhukti (modern Bundelkhand). Their kingdom extended as far as Kālipi and Asni in the north and beyond the line of the Yamuna in the east. Their country was rugged, full of ravines, and waterless, and they possessed a number of mighty forts perched on the summits of hills, the mightiest of these being Kālānjara (Kalafjar) and Mahobā. The king of the Chandels at this time was Paramārī or Paramāl (c. A.D. 1163-1203).

Border raids and hostilities had been going on between the Turks and Chandels ever since the former's occupation of the northern country. But the final attack by Aibak was made in A.D. 1202. Paramārī withdrew and shut himself in the fort of Kālānjara, which was besieged by Aibak. Cut off from contact with the outside world and deprived of the necessary supplies, Paramārī was constrained to sue for peace and offered to pay tribute. But before the terms of the treaty could be put into execution the Chandel ruler died, and his minister Ajayadeva, relying on a newly discovered supply of water, repudiated the treaty and decided to continue hostilities. He, too, however, could not resist long and retired to Ajayagarh fort, leaving Kālānjara, Mahobā and Khajurāho to the Turkish general. Hasan Arnal was entrusted with the government of this territory.

4. IKHTIYAR-UD-DIN MUHAMMAD BAKHTYĀR KHALJĪ

In their original design of conquest neither Mu'izz-ud-din nor Aibak had probably dreamt of penetrating beyond the Gāhāsavāla dominions in the very first thrust. It was due to the sheer dare-devil adventure of a reckless soldier that the eastern lands were also added to the dominion of the Turks.

Among the many free-lances who had come in the entourage of Muhammad Ghūrī, was a daring adventurer named Ikhtiyar-ud-din Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī. The handicap of an uncouth personal appearance stood in the way of his getting employment at Ghaznī and Delhi. Nothing daunted by these disappointments, he at first took up a humble soldier's job under Hijabr-ud-din Hasan Adib of Budaun in A.D. 1193, and some time later, under Malik Hisām-ud-din Aghūl Bak, who had established himself in Awadh. Here he was entrusted with the work of reconnoitring the adjacent territories and was assigned some villages for his upkeep. This afforded him an opportunity to give full play to his adventurous spirit. From his small income he got together a small contingent of adventurers and, about the year A.D. 1200, commenced raids on the
Magadha territory beyond the Karmanāśā which was probably the western boundary of the Sena kingdom. It is surprising that he met with no opposition whatsoever by the Sena ruler who, indeed, seems to have taken no notice of these raids. Within a short time Bakhtyar amassed enough fortune from his plunders to build up a large force. Finding these districts utterly prostrate and incapable of any resistance, he was emboldened to push as far as the Vihāra (monastic University town) of Odantapuri (Bihār) and, obtaining permission from Aibak, made a final attack upon that town. There were no soldiers to defend it. But some feeble resistance was offered by the helpless shaven-headed Sramaṇas (Buddhist monks), who were taken by Bakhtyar to be Brahmin priests and were slaughtered.

After capturing Odantapuri Bakhtyar visited Aibak at Budaun and secured permission for further conquests, but on condition of relying on his own resources without expecting any help from the chief. Within a year of the Bihār expedition Bakhtyar set out on his campaign against Nadiya. How he captured this city and conquered a large part of Bengal has been described above. 9

Nadiya was not occupied permanently; presumably on account of its strategic position it was not easy, and probably even dangerous, to hold it. Bakhtyar therefore sacked it and retreated to a safer place which he could also use as his military base for further operations. This place was Lakhnāwati (Lakshmanāwati), the northern capital of the Senas on the Gāṅgā (near the site of Gaur, in District Malda). Bakhtyar's phenomenal success in Bengal had fired him with the ambition of conquering even Tibet. He therefore marched with a large army, led by a Koch guide, presumably along the Brahmaputra, and arrived at a spot where there was a stone bridge across the river, leading into the hills. Here his guide took leave of him and, as the Khaḷja warrior was about to proceed, he received a message from the king of Kamarūpa (Assam) advising him to postpone his campaign till the following year when he would reinforce him. Bakhtyar paid no heed to this and plunged forward, reaching on the 16th day the open country of Tibet. Here he met with a tough resistance and heard that an army of 50,000 Turks was on its way to meet him. This report unnerved him and his forces, and he decided to beat a hasty retreat. Due to the hostility of the hillmen, it became a veritable rout, and much of the force was destroyed on the way. When he reached the bridge where he had crossed the river, he found that it had been demolished by an Assamese army, and he was forced to seek shelter in a neighbouring temple. But, on being besieged there, he dashed out with the remnant of his followers and all desperately threw themselves into
the river to ford or swim across it. The river was deep and the current very swift, so that most of his men were washed away. Bakhtyar managed to reach the shore with hardly a hundred men. Here his guide met him and conducted him back to Devakot. Crushed and broken by the weight of this disaster Bakhtyar sickened and rapidly sank until the merciful knife of one of his own lieutenants, 'Ali Mardan, relieved him of all his troubles (c. A.D. 1206).

5. END OF THE GHURID DYNASTY

We may now revert to the last days of Mu'izz-ud-din Ghūrī's career. The Khvārazmian house constituted the greatest menace to the rise and expansion of the Ghūrids. Instigated by the Caliph of Baghdad whom the Khvārazmian Takash had offended, and taking advantage of a civil war which had ensued on the death of Takash (A.D. 1200) between his son and grandson, the Ghūrid princes occupied Khurasan and captured its important towns, Nishāpūr, Tus, and Merv, early in A.D. 1201. Their triumph was, however, shortlived. 'Alā-ud-dīn, who eventually succeeded Takash, proved to be more than a match for the Ghūrids. He soon recovered Nishāpūr and other Ghūrid conquests including even Herāt (A.D. 1201).

Ghiyās-ud-dīn, the elder brother of Mu'izz-ud-dīn, died in A.D. 1202, and the latter ascended the throne of Ghūr. The hostility with the Khvārazmians continued, and in A.D. 1205 Mu'izz-ud-dīn sustained such a severe defeat at their hands at Andkhīū that his military reputation and prestige in India suffered a fatal blow. The Khokars and other tribes in India rose in rebellion and defeated the governor of Multān. They also plundered Lahore and closed the road between that city and Ghazni. Mu'izz-ud-dīn, bent upon taking revenge against the Khvārazmians, at first asked Aibak to deal with the outbreak, but was ultimately convinced by the seriousness of the situation that his presence was necessary. He accordingly left Ghazni on October 20, 1205, and within a month defeated the Khokars in a hotly contested battle between the Jhelum and the Chenāb rivers. The Khokars fought bravely from the morning to the afternoon, and were on the point of gaining victory, when the arrival of Aibak with the forces of Hindūstān turned the tide against them. The Khokars were treated with ferocious cruelty. Large numbers were killed and taken prisoners, and a body of them, who took shelter in a dense jungle, perished miserably as the Muslims set the forest on fire. Mu'izz-ud-dīn reached Lahore on February 25, 1206, and after settling affairs there, proceeded towards Ghazni. On the way he was stabbed on March 15 in his tent at Damysak on the bank of the Sindhu river.
The identity of the assassins has not been satisfactorily established. Some hold that they were Khokars who had lately suffered so severely at his hands. But others believe that they were "fanatical Shiahs of the heretical Isma'illi Sect" who got possession of Khurasan and held it until they were crushed by Mu'izz-ud-din in A.D. 1199.

The body of Mu'izz-ud-din was carried to Ghazni and buried there. But the Ghurid empire did not long survive him. His nephew and successor Mahmud had to acknowledge the Khvārazm Shāh's suzerainty, and after his death the bulk of the Ghūri empire passed under the sway of the Khvārazmians. For a short while Tāj-ud-din Yildiz, a slave of Mu'izz-ud-din, managed to retain hold of Ghazni. With his expulsion in A.D. 1215, the Ghūri empire in Central Asia came to an end, and the Khvārazm Shāh took the place of lords of Ghazni. The Indian conquests of the Ghūris, however, proved far more stable. The story of this empire will form the subject of the next chapter.

6. CAUSES OF THE COLLAPSE OF HINDU RULE

The astounding rapidity of the Turkish conquest constitutes an important problem for the students of Indian history. It is puzzling, nay almost baffling, to explain the almost complete collapse of Northern India, within an incredibly short time, before the onslaught of invaders whose power and resources were hardly equal to those of some of the bigger Hindu States, not to speak of a combination of them. It is natural that men should seek to solve the mystery and find out the real causes that lay behind the great political catastrophe that overwhelmed India. History would appear to be meaningless if facts of such outstanding importance cannot be viewed in their true perspective against a proper background. It is no wonder, therefore, that various speculations have been made and diverse solutions offered to the problem.

Certain general considerations must, however, be borne in mind, while we approach the question in a critical spirit. To begin with, we are not sure of the essential facts on which all theories must necessarily be based. The history of the Muslim conquest of India is known, almost in its entirety, from the chronicles written by the Muslims. Apart from a few incidental notices or brief allusions, the Hindu sources are silent on this great episode. But the picture of a victor, as painted by himself alone, can hardly be regarded as a reliable representation, or even an approximation to truth. The general outline may indeed be fairly correct, but it is impossible to accept, without question, those numerous details which colour the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

narrative and necessarily form the principal materials for our judgment. This is well illustrated by the current story about the conquests of Muhammad Bakhtyar, mentioned above. On the face of it, it appears incredible that Lakshmisanasena should not have taken adequate steps to defend his frontier against a probable, one might say a known, danger, or that his guards should have admitted, without question, the Turkish horsemen inside the capital city at a time when an invasion was apprehended at any moment. The extreme improbability of the situation almost necessarily implies that we have not the full story before us, and that if the defenders' version were known, much that appears incredible to-day would have appeared in a different light and we could have taken a more rational view of the whole situation.

So long, at least, as the main facts are not definitely established, it is idle to speculate on the causes that led to the debacle of the Hindus. It is equally unwarranted to attribute it solely to the social and religious peculiarities of the Hindus, for our ideas about them are also vague and indistinct, and based on no sure knowledge of facts. It is true that we have a mass of literature and other data on this subject, but it is difficult to explain their bearing on the social evolution in different parts of India at different periods of time.

We have thus to grapple with the great difficulty caused by the uncertainty in regard to facts—political, social and religious—which must form the essential data in any endeavour to probe the deeper cause underlying the broad fact of the Turkish conquest of India. This should make us pause in our laudable attempt towards a philosophical interpretation of historical facts, and turn our attention to the serious defects underlying all suggested solutions of the very interesting problem. In any case, we must moderate our zeal and fully realise that while it is incumbent on us to discuss the problem, any solution that we may offer at the present state of our knowledge cannot claim any scientific basis, far less, finality in character.

Subject to these natural limitations we may refer to some of the causes of the downfall of the Hindus that appear probable in the light of the available data. The foremost among these seem to be the iniquitous system of caste and the absence of contact with the outside world. The first resulted in a fragmentation of Indian society into mutually exclusive classes, among whom the privileged minority preserved their vested interests by depriving the masses of many civic rights, specially of education and of free intercourse and association on equal terms with their fellowmen, and further, by imposing on them the most irritating disabilities on the one hand, and a tremendous weight of innumerable duties and obli-
gations towards the privileged classes on the other. And this evil led to another. It bred among the leaders of the Indian people a vain pride in isolationism and insularity and that attitude of arrogance which has been noticed by Al-Biruni. "The Hindus", says he, "believe that there is no country but theirs, no king like theirs, no science like theirs... If they travelled and mixed with other nations they would soon change their mind." Al-Biruni also remarks that "their ancestors were not so narrow-minded as the present generation." This spirit of exclusive superiority was created and maintained by a process of intellectual fraud, inasmuch as almost the entire literature of the period was utilised for this purpose and the masses were asked to follow it blindly in the name of the Holy Writ, to question whose authority was an unpardonable sin. It became thus a part of the Hindu dharma not to cross the seas or even the territorial limits of certain hallowed areas! This insularity contributed largely to the supineness of the Indian chiefs, and their utter lack of appreciation of the higher values of patriotism and national freedom in the context of India as a whole, apart from the narrow geographical regions in which they lived. Consequently they were unable to comprehend the far-reaching importance of, and the proper measures for, frontier defence, in view of the great political changes and evolution in military tactics which were taking place in the world outside.

The degraded level to which the majority were pushed down made them indifferent to country-wide dangers and kindred problems. This alone made possible the woeful situation that while the invaders swept across the country, the masses mostly remained inert. The people of the land, with a few exceptions, were indifferent to what was happening around them. Their voice had been hushed in silence by a religio-social tyranny. No public upheaval greets the foreigners, nor are any organised efforts made to stop their progress. Like a paralysed body, the Indian people helplessly look on, while the conqueror marches on their corpse. They look staggered, for a moment, only to sink back into a pitiable acquiescence to the inevitable to which they have been taught to submit.

Then, again, the false ideals of Kshatriya chivalry, taught them by their mentors, made the Rajput princes paralyse one another by perpetual internecine conflicts, and what was more fatal, made them oblivious of a broad national vision and patriotic sentiment.

This alone can explain why, or how, at a time when the country was threatened with a grave peril, the rulers of the land devoted the best part of their energies in mutual fighting. The enormous wealth of the country was spent in building and enrich-
ing the temples which they proved unable to protect, whereas the most appropriate use for these resources should have been to organise a common defence against the invaders, backed by a national effort. On the contrary it was the very fabulous wealth of these defenceless temples and sacred towns which invited the foreigners and contributed greatly to the consequent disaster.

History had no meaning for the Hindu kings who presided over the destinies of this woe-stricken land. The repeated warnings of the past went unheeded. The onslaught began with the Arab conquest of Sindh in the eighth century when the Hindus got a foretaste of what might happen in the future. But it assumed formidable proportions under the lead of Mahmūd at the end of the tenth and beginning of the eleventh century. The next century and a half witnessed a cessation of this onslaught, barring a few comparatively minor and irregular raids. But when the offensive was resumed by another Turk, even though he was far inferior to Mahmūd, he found the victim as ready for slaughter as it was two centuries earlier. As noted above, it is passing strange that Prithvirāja had not taken any adequate measure after his victory at Tarain to prevent the second invasion of Mu'izz-ud-din Ghūri. Nor is there any evidence to show that the great Sena king bestirred himself early enough to stop the marauding excursions of Muhammad Bakhtyar in Bihar and Bengal. While individual courage and bravery were certainly not wanting, there was lack of wisdom and statesmanship, of the knowledge of the outside world, and of a desire to keep abreast with the spirit of the time. No realistic adjustment, no far-sighted approach to the problem which had stared them in the face for centuries and threatened their very existence, no improvement in outlook, no elevation of political vision from their petty jealousies and parochial ideals, and consequently no preparation for a concerted defence commensurate with the extent of the danger—these were the conspicuous traits of the Hindu rulers and their priestly conscience-keepers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. National consciousness, love of country, and pride of freedom were smothered under the weight of a mass of rituals and social conventions, a petty-minded vanity, and narrow selfishness. Add to this the not infrequent cases of treason and treachery on the part of ministers and other officials, and we shall have a fairly complete picture. But whether it fully reveals the reasons of the collapse or not, one thing seems to be reasonably certain. The utter and precipitate prostration of such a vast and ancient land, endowed with resources far superior and greater to those of her invaders, can be the result mainly of internal decay and not merely of external attacks, which were its effect rather than the cause.\(^9\)
THE TURKISH CONQUEST OF NORTHERN INDIA

1. See above, pp. 96-7.
2. See above, p. 78.
3. See pp. 54-5.
4. See above, pp. 55-6.
5. See p. 79.
7. See p. 39.
8. Cf. 'Hindu Reaction to Muslim Invasions' by R. C. Majumdar in M. M. Potdar Commemoration Volume, pp. 341-51.
CHAPTER V

THE MAMLŪK SULTĀNS OF DELHI

I. QUTB-UD-DIN AIBAK AND ILTUTMISHT

The victories of Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad Ghūrī, related in the last chapter, had only initiated a process whose completion, requiring sustained military direction, seemed foredoomed by the implications of his sudden death on the bank of the Sindhu. The Andkhūi disaster had robbed him of his Central Asian empire; his assassination at Damyak threatened Ghazni itself. For, the Khvāram Shāh was now free to extend his empire beyond the Hindu Kush and the annexation of the Ghūr kingdom was only a question of time. Because of their affiliation with the doomed kingdom, the Indian provinces also lay exposed to the perennially unstable politics of Central Asia where, towards the east, stirrings of a yet another race movement could already reach the discerning ear. Within India, the tide of Turkish conquest seemed to be turning. Even before Bakhtyar’s disastrous defeat in Assam, Kālājāra was reconquered by the Chandellas, while in the Doab, Gāhāqavāl princelings held out in defiant independence.

A unified command in India, unhampered by considerations of trans-Indus politics, was urgently called for, but to achieve this was in itself a major task. For, Mu'izz-ud-din left no son but a band of slaves to claim his dominions. His nephew Ghiyās-ud-din Mahmūd, “a prince in whose disposition, conviviality, pleasure and jollity were dominant”, was satisfied with his ancestral principality of Firozkoh and nursed no greater ambition than to be asked to manumit the bond-slaves of his family. Among these was the able and ambitious Tāj-ud-din Yūldiz who, purporting to fulfil his master’s wish, possessed himself of Ghazni and so felt qualified to claim suzerain status. To this was opposed the ambitions of two of his co-slaves, Nāṣīr-ud-din Qābācha and Qutb-ud-din Aibak, both holding extensive commands in India. The latter enjoyed an extra distinction as being placed in general charge of his master’s Indian conquests and thus exercising de facto authority of a viceroy from Delhi.

Aibak’s assumption of supreme power in Lahore in June 1206, therefore, meant no formal change in the government, for he adopted no sovereign titles and issued no coin of his own. But the step implied severance of India’s ties with Ghazni and so forestalled Yil-
diz's claims. In order to keep himself ready for the latter's enmity, Aibak mostly lived in Lahore, and the task of extending authority over the outlying areas could receive only his passing attention. Qabacha, in any case, could not be immediately interfered with in his sovereign authority over Sindh, nor could military action be resumed to arrest the revival of native powers in India. For, on the west the situation was changing fast. In A.D. 1208 the Khvārazm Shāh pressure forced Yildiz out of Ghaznī, and as he sought shelter in the Punjāb, Aibak, fearing an extension of Khvārazm aggression to India, promptly drove him out and then moved to occupy Ghaznī. The venture, however, failed, for the citizens secretly facilitated Yildiz's sudden return and Aibak had to beat a hurried retreat.

Except for a passing attention to the affairs of Lakhnāwati where Khalji lieutenants of the deceased Bakhtyar had set up a clannish oligarchy and so had to be forced to admit Delhi's suzerainty, Aibak remained preoccupied with the problem of preserving his government's separate entity and of establishing a political frontier. That task was still unaccomplished when he died in A.D. 1210. But he had successfully initiated a State and outlined its foreign policy.

As an instrument of this State a dynastic leadership was, however, essential, and in the circumstances a contest appeared the only means of stabilizing it. While his son, an untried youth named Aram, succeeded Aibak in Lahore, a more powerful faction at Delhi favoured his son-in-law, Iltutmish, lately the muqHi (Governor) of Baran and an officer of proved ability and tact. The schism, though lasting not more than eight months and ending with the death of Aram while leading his forces on Delhi, intensified the immediate problems. Qabacha pushed to Multān and extended his hold over Lahore, Bhātinda, and even Sursutī; the Hindu feudatories showed increasing defiance, and Ranthambhor, originally placed under Prithvirāja's son, ceased to own vassalage; the Pratiharas, commonly known as Pariharas, reoccupied Gwālīor; and in Lakhnāwati Aibak's nominee 'Ali Mardan declared independence. A more pressing danger came from the north-west where Yildiz was fast losing ground to the Khvārazm Shāh and yet waxing in imperial pretensions.

Iltutmish eschewed Aibak's impetuosity and acted with circumspection. His own position was still insecure, and a fierce rising of the jándars (guards) of Delhi in support of Arām was suppressed with difficulty. He therefore preferred to placate his rivals and even pretended to accept an investiture from Yildiz. He also
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

affected complete indifference when the latter's troops expelled Qabacha from Lahore and occupied most of the Punjab. But he took advantage of the vacuum and quietly tightened his grip on the cis-Sutlej districts of Sursuti, Bhâtinda and Kuhrâm. By the time political developments across the Sindhu came to a head, and a decisive action on his part became unavoidable, he had greatly strengthened his position and established a firm hold on the country up to Banaras. When, therefore, Yildiz was finally driven out of Ghazni in A.D. 1215 and, falling back on Lahore, sent imperious orders to send forces from Delhi to aid him, Iltutmish faced him with confidence, and captured him in an open battle at Tarain.8

A straight march on Lahore would have been a natural sequel to the victory, but Iltutmish preferred to measure his steps. Qabacha's reoccupation of the city was therefore acquiesced in, while he reorganised his newly extended western frontier. Two years later he seized upon an alleged breach of agreement and moved his troops across the Beas to Lahore. Qabacha fled in haste to Uch, and Delhi officers took the city without any opposition.9

This steady advance towards the Sindhu basin, however, received a serious set-back when, like an avalanche, the Mongols of Tartary swept across Central Asia and drove an incalculable number of refugees—princes and people alike—into the safety of the Punjab. The Khvârazmi empire was rolled up in the process, and the crown-prince of Khiva, Jalâl-ud-dîn Mangbarnî, chased through Khurâsân and Afghanistân, was sent flying across the Sindhu. There Chingiz Kân stopped, posted troops to watch the border of the Sindhu and search for the fugitive prince, and returned to die shortly after in A.D. 1222.

These sudden catastrophic changes gravely imperilled the kingdom of Iltutmish. All his exertions to keep away from the trans-Indus power-politics appeared frustrated when Jalâl-ud-dîn's continued sojourn in the Punjab threatened to invite Mongol operations. It severely taxed Iltutmish's diplomacy to refuse the prince's request for shelter and armed assistance against the pagan Mongols, and yet show his solidarity with the Muslim cause. To the irresistible Mongols he gave a wide berth, and, when they came to search for Mangbarnî in the Salt Range, he pretended not to take offence. He took no action when the prince moved away from the Mongols towards Lahore but got an army ready to oppose his progress further eastwards. Thus confined, the prince forced an alliance on the Hindu chief of the Salt Range, gathered a straggling army of fugitive tribes and, moving up and down the Sindhu valley, caused enormous devastation in Qabacha's kingdom. The re-

132
THE MAMLUK SULTANS OF DELHI

region north of Multan became practically a no man’s land, and it
was therefore sought to be made a Khvārazmian principality.
When Mangbarni passed through lower Sindh on his final exit via
Kerman, he set fire to Uch, seized Schwān, and put the ruler of
Debal to flight. To follow up the territorial advantages secured
by such methods, he left two of his officers, Hasan Qarlugh and
Uzbek Pai who, pressed inexorably by the Mongols from the west,
steadily fell back on lower Sindh as a thorn in Qabācha’s side.
Following a Mongol siege of Multān shortly after, the first of a
series of such raids, a large horde of Khalji tribesmen broke into
Sehwan for shelter, and the effect of all they left Qabācha gasping
for breath.10

All this advanced Iltutmish’s plans against his rival, if not his
scheme for the consolidation of the frontier. Advancing from
Lahore, which he reoccupied shortly after Mangbarni’s departure,
he forced Qabācha out of Multān and Uch, and, almost without a
battle, drove him to seek shelter in the island fortress of Bhakar,
and eventually to a watery grave in the Sindhu (A.D. 1228).11

Delhi’s frontier now ran along the lower courses of that river,
but in the north Iltutmish found himself facing a far more diffi­
cult problem. The Sindhu basin had become a Mongol operational
area with a tendency to spread eastward as Hasan Qarlugh and
Uzbek Pai continued to yield ground. They were useless as
buffers, and assistance to them meant inviting Mongol aggression,
and yet their complete elimination would bring the unwelcome
Mongols nearer still. Iltutmish was thus constrained to watch the
situation, while instructing his officers on the border to reduce the
Chenāb and Jhelum valleys without giving direct offence to the
Mongols. Before his death he managed to extend his rule up to
Sialkot and Hajner in the north, but failed to make much headway
on the west beyond a preliminary advance on Nandana in the Salt
Range.

Nevertheless, Iltutmish had solved the major problem of terri­
torial integration under a single command. Immediately after
Mangbarni’s departure from India Iltutmish recovered enough
confidence to attempt a reconquest of Lakhnāwati, the province
in the east, where ‘Ali Mardān’s misrule had been followed by the
assumption of power by Hisām-ud-dīn ‘Īwaz Khaljī, one of Bakht­
yār’s junior associates. The latter had assumed sovereign status,
and by good government and profitable raid into neighbouring
Hindu states had increased his resources. By a show of force Iltut­
mish succeeded, in A.D. 1225, in inducing the Khaljī king to agree to
a limitation of his sovereignty and to relinquish his hold on Bihār.
Within a year, however, Iwaz broke the agreement, and seized Bihār. This brought upon him Iltutmish's crown-prince, Nāsir-ud-din Mahmūd, who, from his base in Awadh (Oudh), swooped on Iwaz's capital and slew him in battle. But the province did not immediately settle down to a subordinate status. Within two years Nāsir-ud-din Mahmūd died in Lakhnāwati, and a Khalji chief, who acknowledged Delhi's suzerainty, was pushed out by another named Balkā whom Iltutmish had to defeat by a personally conducted campaign in A.D. 1229. 12

With equal energy and determination, but with less decisive results, he set to work to wrest the military initiative from the Hindu princes. In the area south of the Chambal, the Parihāras, starting from the recaptured Gwālior as their base, had expanded their rule over Jhansi and Narwar. 13 At Ranthambhor the Chāhāmana (Chauhān) family under Govindarāja had also found strength to follow an independent course of expansion and to impose paramountcy over the neighbouring states, despite a nominal allegiance to the “Suratrum” Iltutmish of Yoginipura (Delhi)”. A collateral branch, ruling at Jālor in apparent repudiation of the vassalage imposed by Aibak, also extended overlordship over a large area in south-west Rājputāna and claimed even to have repeatedly humbled the Turks. 14 In the north, the Yoduvañā or Jādonbhātis controlled the approaches to Alwar and so practically sealed off Bayāna, Thangir and even Ajmer.

The extent of the revival of Hindu Powers and the difficulties facing the Delhi troops were heavily underlined by the inconclusive results of Iltutmish's operations in Rājputāna. Opening the campaign in A.D. 1226, he took Ranthambhor and Mandawar and humbled Jālor, but was repulsed with heavy losses by the Guhilots from Nāgā. Rājput records speak also of his failure in an attack on the Chaulukyas of Gujarāt. A similar expedition, conducted by one of his officers against the Chauhāns of Bundī, also ended in failure. While he recaptured Bayāna and Tahangarh, and widened the Ajmer base by garrisoning the neighbouring positions of Lawah, Kasili and Sāmbhār, the success proved temporary, for it failed to arrest the Chauhān revival. A seemingly successful raid into Mālwa in A.D. 1234-35 similarly gave Iltutmish more plunder and righteous satisfaction than political or military advantage, for the Pāramārās remained in undisturbed possession of the country for the rest of the century. 15

No more decisive results attended his efforts along the southern frontier. He recaptured and garrisoned Gwālior, but his raids produced no effect on the Chandellas whose hold on the country as
THE MAMLUK SULTANS OF DELHI

far as Jhansi showed no sign of slackening. A foretaste of the rising power of a new dynasty was also provided to the Delhi commander, Malik Tayasai, who led an expedition through Central Indian defiles against the Chandellas. On his return march he was defeated by the powerful “Rana Chāhir Ajari”, Chāhaḍādeva of the Jajapella (Yajvapāla) dynasty which was just rising to power around Narwar (Gwālīor State) and was to supplant the Parīharas in Gwālīor.16

Even in the heart of the kingdom, the Gaṅgā- Yamunā area, Iltutmish launched operations whose successful termination he was not destined to see. Although Hariśchandra, the last of the imperial Gaṅḍāvāla line, is not heard of again, in the districts north of the Gaṅgā round Budaun, Farrukhābad, and Bareilly, numerous Hindu chiefs had found sheltered bases against the Turkish posts in the Doāb. In Anola the Katehriya Rājputs had formed a strong hold and, with the remnant of the Rāṣṭrakūta family of Budaun, not only barred Turkish expansion across the Gaṅgā but encroached even on Awadh, which area, in itself, harboured not a few resisting chiefs. Iltutmish’s operations in the region are not sufficiently detailed, but the inclusion by his chronicler of Budaun, Kanauj and even Banaras among his conquest, can be understood only in this context, for these places had figured in Aibak’s initial conquests also. Since the Katehriyas continued to engage the Sultanate’s forces throughout and far beyond the thirteenth century, Iltutmish’s reported capture of Katehr can only indicate the range of his operations. Some idea of the nature of the fighting in these areas may be formed from reference to Prince Nasir-ud-din Mahmud’s waging continuous “holy wars against the refractory Hindu tribes” and to his overthrowing a chief “named Bartu, beneath whose sword a hundred and twenty thousand Mussalmans had attained martyrdom”. Armed insurrection prevailed in the Doāb also, and governors emphasised their success by such reports as the capture “of the son of the Raja of Chandwar”.17 Most of these were, however, personal triumphs, shortlived and local in effect, and they could do little to help the Delhi Government in reducing the extent and power of the Hindu resistance.

Iltutmish died in A.D. 1236. His greatest achievement was the initiation of a dynastic monarchy, and in utilising it in welding the loosely conquered territories into a political unity. To have preserved the Sultanate’s separate entity and escaped the repercussions of earlier affiliations with Central Asia when Chingiz Khān swept through the Continent was a very difficult task which he accomplished with great foresight and skill. It was sheer ability which earned him, an ex-slave, almost a sacrosanct right to the crown, and
the Caliph's investiture, received in A.D. 1229, only confirmed the status which his dynasty and state had acquired. Working on the outlines drawn by Aibak, he filled in the details of a military state and richly deserved his position as its first king.

II. WEAK SUCCESSORS OF ILTUTMISH

For thirty years after the death of Iltutmish the Sultanate was confronted with problems which nearly destroyed its structure. Due to the absence of well-defined rules of succession, struggles for power recurred frequently, and the Government, with its energies distracted by such internal strife, was unable to maintain continuity of action against the Mongols or the Hindu States.

On the unexpected death of his crown prince, Nasir-ud-din Mahmūd, in A.D. 1229, Iltutmish had nominated, after some hesitation, his eldest daughter, Raziyya, to succeed him, in supersession of his other grown-up sons. No legal difficulty bothered him or his courtiers; nor was any doubt entertained about her abilities, for she had been tested frequently when her father left her in charge of the government during his campaigns. But practical considerations of pitting a young woman against the jealousy of her grown-up brothers and of the proud nobles seemed to have weighed with him towards the end, for, before his death, he summoned his eldest surviving son, Firuz, from Lahore with a view, as was interpreted by interested parties, to his succession. The prince, in any case, secured the support of the provincial governors who had assembled in the capital to join the king's last expedition which his illness caused to be abandoned, and got himself proclaimed king on the night of his father's death.

If he had abilities he could possibly have disarmed all opposition, but he proved a colourless rake who left all power to his mother Shāh Turkān, a low-born, jealous woman, whose vicious rule almost immediately drove her own supporters to revolt. The governors of Multān, Lahore, Hānsī, Budaun and Awadh, resolved to end this petticoat rule, moved their forces towards Delhi, from where even the wazir, Junaid, deserted his post to join them. Firūz marched out to meet the rebels, but his own army officers revolted on the way, murdered his body-guards, and returned to the capital, to find that during the Friday prayer the aggrieved Raziyya had cleverly exploited the popular discontent against Shāh Turkān and, in the name of her father, had induced the populace to seize and throw her into prison. The army officers completed the process by proclaiming Raziyya's accession, and so Firūz returned only
to find the shackles ready for him. His death in prison followed an inglorious reign of seven months.

The new sovereign received popular acclaim when she asked for a chance to prove her abilities “far better than any man”; but the coup displeased the insurgent governors who were converging on Delhi with the obvious intention, not only of deposing Firūz, but also of making their own choice of a king. Opposing not so much the new ruler as the method by which she captured the throne, they encamped opposite the city and began a siege by cutting all communication with the outlying provinces. But the queen proved equal to the task. Having no strong military force at her command at the moment, and unable to summon reinforcements from loyal provinces, she resorted to the well-known trick of dividing her enemies. She persuaded two of the insurgents to agree to join her secretly and betray their comrades, and then spread this news among the latter who thereupon took fright and fled. Many were pursued and slain while the wāzir died a lone fugitive in the Sirmur hills.

Raziyya’s reign of three years forms a brief interlude in a decade of oligarchic misrule increased by factiousness. Aware of the powers claimed by her father’s freedmen, and aware also of the need for vigorous exercise of the Crown’s authority in a state which was still military in nature and function, she tried to compensate for the disability, supposedly attaching to her sex, by foresight, firmness and kingly demeanour which her courtiers hardly expected from a young woman. She discarded female attire, rode out in public, and held open court; she selected for high offices men of her own choice and, deliberately, not always from among Ilutmish’s freedmen who came to be known as ‘the Forty.’ Among these new appointees was the Abyssinian Jalāl-ud-din Yaqūt whose promotion to the post of Amir-i-Akhur (Master of the Stables), a sinecure carrying more prestige than power, was obviously calculated to counter the Forty’s monopolistic control of all such offices. Like her father Raziyya showed a realistic prudence when she firmly but tactfully turned down an invitation to form an alliance with Hasan Qarlugh, the Khvārazmi representative, who was then struggling singly against the Mongols in the western Sindh Sāgar Doab.

The ‘Forty’ could hardly tolerate such calculated undermining of their position. By the third year of Raziyya’s reign a conspiracy was set afoot to depose her or at least to curb her liberty of action. With Altīgin, the Amir-i-Haḍīb (Grand Chamberlain), at the head, and with all the Turkish officers in and outside the court in collu-
sion, the conspirators tried to stage a coup. Since this was not found possible during her stay in the capital, where she enjoyed strong popular support and kept a vigilant watch, they planned to decoy her to a distant province where they could isolate her by force while partisans seized the capital. A revolt was accordingly staged by the governor of Lahore early in A.D. 1240, but the queen confounded the conspirators by the energy and speed with which she marched out, chased the rebel as far as the Chenāb, and compelled him to surrender unconditionally, before his friends could join him. Within a fortnight of her return, however, another rebellion was reported from Bhātinda, then under the command of Malik Altūniya. Disregarding the heat and the inconveniences of the month of Ramazān, the queen again marched out with all available forces. On arrival the conspirators in her retinue rose against her, murdered Yaqūt and her other supporters, and imprisoned her in the Bhātinda fort. Working on a pre-arranged plan, and before the return of the ring leaders, the Delhi partisans immediately occupied the palace and proclaimed the accession of their nominee, Iltutmish's third son, Mu'izz-ud-din Bahram (April, 1240).21

Bahram's installation was the reward, as it transpired, for his agreeing to leave all effective power to the conspirators; he was to retain his prerogatives but the government was to be entrusted to one of their nominees designated Naib-i-Mumlikat (Deputy of the State) for "at least one year". It was an experiment with immense possibilities for constitutional progress, although its immediate aim was to assure the continued domination of the 'Forty' so dangerously threatened by the late queen.22

As the leader of the conspiracy, Ikhtiyar-ud-din Aitigin's appointment to the new post was proclaimed on his return from Bhātinda. Aitigin, however, soon piqued the young king Bahram by marrying one of his sisters and by violating the royal prerogative by keeping an elephant and naubat at the entrance of his house. Within three months the king's annoyance impelled him to take decisive action, and so the deputy was murdered in his office with Bahram's connivance.

The crime shook the power of the 'Forty' but did not improve matters for the king, for his Amir-i-Hajib (Grand Chamberlain) Badr-ud-din Sunqar now quickly assumed control over the administration. Some of the 'Forty' left the court to organise another rebellion with Altūniya who was closely guarding the captive Raziyā, while the wazir, resentful of the new domination, planned revenge. Aitigin's murder had ruined Altūniya's hopes for a due share of reward for his part in the late conspiracy, and he now
THE MAMLUK SULTANS OF DELHI

found it wiser to ally himself with his captive and thus to acquire the latter's rights in support of his demands. Raziyya agreed to marry him, and the two organised an advance on Delhi to wrest back her crown. But their mercenary troops, recruited mostly from the Khokar tribe, proved no match for the regulars of the Delhi government, and they were easily repulsed. Flying before the pursuing troops Raziyya halted at Kaithal, where her mercenaries deserted, and she was murdered by Hindu robbers while resting under a tree (25 Rabi I, 638=13 October, 1240).23

Meanwhile, a timely betrayal by the wazir of a conspiracy organised by the Amir-i-Hajib and a few ecclesiastics to depose Bahram, had led to the fall of Sunqar and, in the resulting vacuum, the wazir was ruling with a great show of power. Nursing his earlier grudge against Bahram the wazir rejoiced when the king offended the ecclesiastics by brutally killing one of their members, on the instigation of a dervish. In A.D. 1241 the report of a Mongol advance on Lahore gave the wazir a chance to overthrow the king. He accompanied the troops sent to reinforce the besieged city, but as they neared Lahore he spread consternation and anger among the officers by disclosing the king's alleged secret order for their execution. The army at once revolted and turned back to depose the tyrant. On this news Bahram sent the Sheikh-ul Islam to reassure and remove their suspicions, but as a promoter of the plot, the latter worked for the opposite effect. The troops returned to find the king's partisans put up a gallant defence of the capital, but an insurrection organised by the wazir's men aided the attackers, and when the city fell, Bahram was seized and executed (May, 1242).

Although exactly the same conditions were imposed on the new king,24 Iltutmish's 16-year old grandson 'Ala-ud-din Mas'ud, and a Naib with wide powers was appointed in the person of the refugee prince Qutb-ud-din Husain of Ghor, it was yet the wazir who naturally monopolised all power. He filled the administration with his own nominees, mostly ecclesiastics and dissidents from Aitigin's party, and even attempted to exclude the 'Forty' from positions of power. The latter therefore leagued once again and murdered the wazir, appointed the submissive Najm-ud-din Abu Bakr to the vacant post, and nominated one of their junior members named Balban for the office of Amir-i-Hajib.

By superior ability Balban soon overshadowed his party men, and with a correct understanding of the problem, diverted their energies to campaigns against Mongols and Indians. With apparent tranquillity Mas'ud's reign thus lasted four years until in A.D. 1246, a secret plot, apparently motivated by personal ambition, and in
which Balban also seems to have shared, led to his replacement by Iltutmish's youngest son, Mahmūd, who was proclaimed as Sultan Nāsir-ud-dīn Mahmūd.25

The new reign meant no change in the policy, for Balban, now in firmer control, filled the key positions with his nominees and set about to break the power of his erstwhile comrades. He gave his daughter in marriage to the king, obtained the post of Naib for himself, and nominated his younger brother Khashi Khān as the Amir-i-Hajīb, while his cousin Sher Khān got the important governorship of Lahore and Multān. Mahmūd proved a pliant sovereign and willingly left all initiative to the deputy. The latter's policy of monopolizing all offices for his own kinsmen, however, provoked an opposition in which the non-Turkish elements, headed by an Indian Musli named 'Imād-ud-dīn Raihān, took the leading part. Raihān managed to secure for himself the important post of Wakil-i-dar (Superintendent of the King's Household establishment) and then contrived to replace Balban and his kinsmen by his own supporters. As could be foreseen, this 'Hindi rule' proved loathsome to the Turks, who entertained an extreme feeling of racialism and considered the Delhi Sultanate as their exclusive heritage. A counter-move, therefore, soon started in which Balban took the leading part. Most of the Turkish officers posted in the provinces round Delhi joined their forces and prepared to march on the capital to end the non-Turkish domination. Mahmūd was advised to resist and the royal forces set out to oppose the insurgents. But near Samānā, despite Raihān's best efforts to encourage the king to adhere to his decision even at the cost of an armed conflict, Mahmūd lost heart and was glad to end the tension by accepting the opponents' terms. Raihān and his associates were accordingly dismissed from court and Balban regained his former ascendancy.26

Except for this brief interruption (A.D. 1253-54), Balban held all effective power during the whole of Mahmūd's reign, and is even reported to have used the royal insignia. His period of vicerency can thus be said to have shaded off into his reign when, on the death of the childless Mahmūd in A.D. 1265, he assumed the crown, thus starting a new dynasty but no new regime.

III. INTERNAL DISORDER

Of the problems which had accumulated through all these years of changes on the throne, one of the most serious was the increasing tendency among the provincial governors to flout the king's authority and thus to threaten the unity which Iltutmish had envisaged. Military ineffectiveness of the Central government tempt-
ed the officers in the western provinces to lean conveniently on the neighbouring Mongol power, who was thus enabled to extend its pressure across the Sindhu and the Chenāb rivers. In the East, the governors fought each other and even declared independence at will, while the Awadh and Doab provinces, because of their proximity to Delhi, sharply reacted to events in the capital. All this, in turn, heartened the Hindus to greater and concerted aggressions. It was almost a miracle that the Sultanate escaped total dissolution.

Even in Iltutmish’s lifetime Lakhnāwati had become a problem province. His final arrangement, effected after three expeditions, proved ineffectual. Tughān Khān, whom he had appointed to succeed Sufūr-ud-dīn Aibak in Lakhnāwati, forcibly seized Bihār and, although he kept up a show of loyalty during the reigns of Raziyya and Bahram, early in A.D. 1242 he advanced to take possession of the provinces of Kara-Mānīkpur and Awadh. The Awadh governor’s appeal brought little help from Masʿūd’s government, and Tughān Khān’s easy occupation of the town was averted only by the persuasion of the respected ecclesiastic Minhaj who was then on his way to the eastern province. On his return to Lakhnāwati Tughān repulsed an Orissan attack on his frontier and pursued the retreating Hindus into Jāñnagar. At Katasingh (near Midnapore) he was, however, routed, and as he fell back, the Orissan forces came up in close pursuit. While he sent an urgent appeal to Delhi, the Hindu forces captured his frontier post of Lakhanor and advanced to besiege Lakhnāwati itself. A timely report of the despatch of reinforcements from Delhi, however, saved the situation, for the Orissan commander thereupon raised the siege, plundered the countryside, and withdrew. Reinforcements arrived shortly after, but instead of pursuing the Orissans, the commander picked up a quarrel with Tughān and blockaded his capital. The latter defended himself ineffectually and was at length obliged to hand over his province to the commander, Tamar Khān. Balban’s hand in this curious proceeding becomes evident when we find Tughān Khān being compensated with the vacant governorship of Awadh where he died two years later.27

This camouflaged imposition of Delhi’s authority could hardly last. Yūzbak, who was appointed to the province some time after A.D. 1249, followed Tughān’s example, occupied Awadh, and even had the khatūba read in his name. Although a reported approach of Balban’s troops made him withdraw, he crowned his insubordination by proclaiming sovereignty immediately on Balban’s return. Even his death in course of a rashly conducted invasion of the Brahmaputra valley soon after failed to restore Delhi’s authority, for within
two years the officiating governor, Yahya, was dispossessed, and killed in open violation of authority by Arsalan Khan, the governor of Kara and Awadh, who thereupon installed himself in Lakhnawati. He is not known to have assumed full sovereignty, but against his continued unauthorised occupation of the provinces of Awadh, Bihâr and Lakhnawati Mahmud's government could take no effective action, so that Arsalan's son Tatâr Khan, who quietly succeeded to the position, boastfully called himself "Chief of all the Malik's of China and East".28

Although comparatively tranquil during the earlier years, Awadh and Doab also latterly reacted against the manner of Balban's restoration to power. Following his dismissal from the court, and transfer to Bahraich, 'Imad-ud-din Raihan allied himself with Qutlugh Khan, the king's step-father who held Awadh and was noted for his antagonism to Balban, and prepared to negative Mahmud's authority in the trans-Ganga region. An armed expedition, which was ineffectually opposed by Qutlugh as it passed through Awadh, however, eventually succeeded in driving Raihan from Bahraich. But when Qutlugh was transferred to Bahraich, he revolted and defeated a Delhi force. On Balban taking the field in person he fled to the Himalayan foothills, but returned immediately on the former's departure, seized Awadh and even threatened Kara-Manikpur. He was, however, repulsed by the local governor and took refuge with the chief of Santurgarh who refused to give him up, suffering, in preference, the ravaging of his territories by Balban in A.D. 1257.

IV. MONGOL RAIDS

It was on the west that Delhi's hold was most seriously jeopardised by continued Mongol pressure. Soon after the accession of Uktai to the supreme Mongol Khanate in A.D. 1229, aggressive campaigns were launched along the Sindhu basin, and by A.D. 1241 they were extended up to Lahore. Its reinforcement was undermined, as noticed earlier, by the intrigues of the wazir and it had consequently to be evacuated by the governor. The Mongols plundered the city, destroyed the fortifications and withdrew, but Lahore province henceforth became "the frontier". By A.D. 1247 it became a Mongol dependency when a close siege, unresolved by any hope of aid from Delhi, compelled the governor to pay tribute and accept Mongol suzerainty.29 Control over Multan and Uch proved equally insecure. These two cities, held rebelliously by Kabir Khan throughout Mas'ud's reign, suffered, in turn, an occupation by Hasan Qarlugh, the Khvârazmi representative finally driven from
the west, and then by the Mongols who came in his pursuit. Balban managed to recover temporary control by quickly garrisoning the towns immediately on the Mongol withdrawal, but the new governor, Kishlū Khan, had to face another Mongol raid and then lost Multān once again to Hasan Qarlugh. He was dispossessed of Uch by Sher Khan, the governor of Bhātinda, who, in accordance with Balban's wish, refused to restore it to Kishlū. In revenge, the latter joined Raiḥān and, on Balban's dismissal in A.D. 1253, was re-instated over the two provinces. On Balban's return to power Kishlū broke with Delhi and, shortly after A.D. 1255, made a present of the whole Sindh province to the Mongols by formally transferring his allegiance to Hulāgū Khan, the Mongol viceroy of Iran. A further constriction of the western frontier resulted from the Mongol help secured by prince Jalāl-ud-din Mas'ūd, Mahmūd's younger brother, who, dissatisfied with his status in life, had taken himself to the Mongol Khan, Mangu, at Qaraqoram, and was given armed assistance for installing himself as the vassal over the territories extending from the Sindhu to the Sutlej. Although the prince, following the failure of an attempt to get reconciled with Mahmūd's government, is reported to have disappeared from the scene, and Sher Khan, despite his treasonable contact with the Mongol court, was soon after reconciled and was induced to take action against the Mongol protégé, yet the boundary line was not appreciably advanced on the west. Within a couple of years it even receded to the old bed of the Beas up to which the Mongols moved freely "to harass the frontiers of Delhi". A grave danger threatened the government when in A.D. 1257 Kishlū Khan, now a Mongol protégé and holding Sindh, marched his troops along the Beas to attack Delhi in conjunction with Qutlugh Khan whom Balban had failed to draw out from the Sirmur Hills. They had partisans among the Delhi ecclesiastics who promised to deliver the city. The rebels therefore evaded Balban's forces sent out to oppose them at Sāmānā, and reached the capital, only to learn, however, that their partisans had been discovered and banished. Kishlū thereupon withdrew and shortly after journeyed to 'Iraq to induce Hulāgū to sanction a full-scale invasion of the Delhi Sultanate.

Hulāgū refused, but promised him protection. The Mongol forces, stationed in Sindh under Sali Bahadur, were ordered to destroy the Multān fortifications, but they were not to cross the Delhi frontier under any circumstances. This forbearance, suggesting a desire to stabilise the frontiers, was quickly reciprocated by the Delhi Government, who disbanded the special force raised to meet Sali Bahadur's expected invasion. Mahmūd's government thus
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

tacitly acquiesced in the loss of Sindh and the Punjab west of the Beas line. An anxiety to avoid hostilities, even with the Mongol vassals, was evident when, in A.D. 1258, Balban transferred Sher Khan to the interior provinces of Kol and Gwálior from the frontier area of Bhátinda where he was conducting operations against Kishlú Khan for the possession of Uch and Multán. Balban even made friendly overtures to Hulágú, who warmly responded and in A.D. 1259 sent a goodwill mission to Delhi, where the envoys were accorded a magnificent reception.33

Whether a formal agreement resulted from all this is not definitely known, but Balban must have discerned some change in the attitude of the Mongols towards their protégé Kishlú Khan to feel encouraged to dispossess him of Multán a few years later. Kishlú is reported to have taken refuge in Baniyan, the area west of the Sindhu, and to have made fruitless attempts to recover Upper Sindh which, from the beginning of Balban’s reign, appears in effective control of Delhi.34 Whether the Mongol forces withdrew across the Sindhu under military pressure, or in accordance with the agreement, is equally uncertain. But they remained in undisturbed possession of west Punjab, and Lahore was not reannexed until a few years after Balban’s accession.

V. REVIVAL OF HINDU POWER

Dominating the entire background, however, were the Hindus whose revived striking power, only feebly met by Iltutmish’s efforts, found fresh opportunities during the weak regime of his successors. Along the undefined border, and inside the vaguely dominated country, the Sultanate was normally confronted with a standing military challenge which intensified with every local or individual disaffection. The difficulties of ensuring the governor’s loyalties had made Lakhnawatí, for example, an uncertain possession; within eight years of Iltutmish’s death Orissa’s confident aggressions threatened its very existence. The failure of Tughán Khan’s private adventure in the Awadh province and his implied rejection of Delhi’s authority offered Narasimha I his chance of striking at the Lakhnawati frontier in A.D. 1243. Although promptly repulsed, the attack signified more than it accomplished, for it highlighted the role which the Hindu power now began to play on all the contiguous areas. As mentioned earlier, Tughán Khan’s counter-attack also failed, and he was chased back to his capital which the Orissan forces closely besieged. Until aid from Delhi could arrive, the Hindu forces had a free run of the country, and even when they withdrew across

144
THE MAMLUK SULTANS OF DELHI

Lakhnor which they plundered, military action for its recovery was hardly possible.

Although of no major territorial consequence, the episode put Lakhnawati on the defensive, with Orissa free to substantiate her claim to have “despatched the Yavanas of Rājha and Varendri”.35 Her progress in this direction is not evidenced in the records, but when, under Yūzbak, Lakhnawati resumed military action ten years later, the earlier pattern was repeated. After two minor triumphs, a major reverse in Orissa obliged him to seek Delhi’s aid with which he captured what he thought was the ‘Rai’s capital’, but which, from its name “Arzbadan” (or Umurdan), is probably to be identified with the village now known as Garh Mandaran, on the Hooghly-Midnapore border, thus indicating the region along which the successive campaigns were fought. The Lakhnor area evidently remained with Orissa, but Yūzbak gained in the south what he lost in the west; for he occupied Nadiyā and the adjacent Bhāgirathī basin effectively enough to commemorate it by a special issue of silver coins in A.D. 1255 “struck from the kharaj of Arzbadan and Nodia”.36 But the success did little to affect the overall pattern of the military situation, for Orissa’s frontier remained on the lower Bhāgirathī till a subsequent push, towards the end of the century, completed the annexation of the coastal region.

From East Bengal, where the Sena dynasty still continued, the Turks apprehended no great danger, but in the Brahmaputra valley their offensive power suffered an unparalleled set-back when, encouraged by his success in southern Bengal, Yūzbak launched a similar campaign in the north-east, against the Kāmarūpa kingdom, then comprising the country from the Karatoya to Gauhati. As he crossed the river, the Kāmarūpa Rājā withdrew his troops, thus allowing the invader to march unopposed to Gauhati, where he proclaimed himself king of Lakhnawati and Kāmarūpa. He spurned the Rājā’s request for reinstatement as a tributary vassal and, assured by the rich crop then ripening in the fields, even foolishly sold his own grain stock to the latter’s agents. His folly dawned on him only when he found the standing crops totally destroyed by floods caused by the Rājā’s cutting the embankments of the swollen rivers. Yūzbak was forced to retreat, which ended in disaster. Trying to avoid the flooded valley he moved along the unexplored and hostile Garo-Jaintiā Hills, and in the defiles was caught between the hill tribes and the Kāmarūpa forces. He was taken prisoner and died of his wounds while his army was annihilated.37

This disaster emphasised once again the altered military situation which was perceptible almost simultaneously in other parts
of the kingdom. Turkish hold on the narrow riverine strip of the Patna-Monghyr-Bhagalpur districts was rendered precarious by the extended activity of the surviving Hindu princes of South Bihar whose existence was never seriously affected by the conquest. Round Bodh-Gaya were the Sena rulers of Pith to whose continuous occupation of the district the votive records of the Hindu chiefs of Sapadalaksha and Kumâyun bear indirect evidence. Extension of Muslim rule in Shâhâbâd, where power of the Mahâñâyakas of Rohtâgarh could not have entirely disappeared, was hardly possible, and it is only the late Tibetan traditions which ascribe Turkish suzerainty over Bodh-Gaya. Early in Mahmûd's reign even the town of Bihar had to face Hindu assaults, and the local governor lost his life in resisting what was evidently a siege. The attack failed, but it was a defensive achievement which retained control over the route to Lakhnâwati.

More positive evidence of Hindu revival comes from the Sultanate's southern frontier. The Chandellas had effected a speedy recovery, and by A.D. 1241 had earned recognition as overlord by the Mahârânyaka of Kakarêdikâ (modern Rewah). They advanced steadily towards the west and claimed, in an inscription of A.D. 1263, to be ruling over Jhânsi; a subsequent record implies overlordship over Nalpur (Narwar), Gopal, Madhuban (Mathurâ), and Gopagiri (Gwâlior). The situation became grave for the Sultanate as these localities formed the nucleus of the growing power of the Jajapelâs (Yajvâpâla), who already in Ilutumish's reign had compelled notice as the dominating power in the country round Narwar, "the greatest of all the Rais of Hindustân". Their pressure on Gwâlior latterly increased to such an extent that reinforcing the garrison proved ineffective and, as mentioned before, Râziyya was obliged to abandon the fortress. By A.D. 1251 the dynasty, under Chahtâdeva, had extended its power to Chanderi and even to Malwâ, and Balban's expedition in that year against the "Rânâ Châhir Ajaî" produced no more abiding result than a temporary capture of Narwar and Gwâlior; for in the dynasty's epigraphic and numismatic records these places continue to figure uninterruptedly to as late a date as A.D. 1298.

Just south of the Yamuna, between Mahobâ and Hamirpur, the Bhar Rajputs threatened the security of the Doâb province. The rising power of the Vâghelas in Rewah who, in two generations, acquired control over most of the country south of Chunâr and along the Tons river, not only barred Turkish expansion southwards but even endangered the cis-Yamuna area. Exertions put forth by the governor of Awadh against the territory of "Bhatigor" (an old name of the Tons valley) failed to control this rising power; even a full
scale expedition led by Balban in A.D. 1247 into the country between Kālaijara and Kara achieved little beyond raiding the chief's stronghold.\textsuperscript{40}

Even within the provinces administered by the Sultanate an intensification of Hindu resistance was in evidence. The half-subdued countryside offered enough manoeuvring space for the local tribes who, in the absence of organised military leadership, took to a form of guerrilla warfare. Balban was obliged to wage two sanguinary campaigns to obtain even a temporary control over the Aligarh District, where local tribes, infesting the highways and forests, were to engage the government's undivided attention even in the next reign. In A.D. 1247 it required another campaign to recover portions of the Kanauj District from a Hindu chief. In the northern fringe of the present Uttar Pradesh Delhi government encountered heavier and more protracted resistance from the Hindus. Notable among these were the tribes settled in Budaun, Sambhal and Aonla, described as the Katehriyas, whose aggressions involved the Delhi government in bloody campaigns even far into the fourteenth century. Their frequent raids on the towns of Budaun and Sambhal rendered Delhi's power in those parts almost nugatory. In order to supplement the local governor's attempts against them, Balban conducted a big expedition in A.D. 1254 and pushed through Bijnaur as far as the Rāmganga. The Katehriya resistance caused heavy casualties in the Delhi forces, and if the campaign could be described as a success, it was so only as a retaliatory measure, for control over the trans-Gāngā districts remained as costly a process as it was before. The reported success of the governor of Meerut in overthrowing "Ranahs and other independent Hindu tribes inhabiting places as far as Rurki and Miapur", and in reducing the Bijnaur area, could have meant no more than preliminary operations for the establishment of a military station in Amroha.\textsuperscript{41}

The most serious set-back was in Rājputāna. Ilutmish's death found the Chauhāns pressing on Ranthambhor, and Raziyā was obliged, as in the case of Gwālior, to withdraw from the fortress which thenceforth became the seat of the later Chauhān dynasty under Vāgbhāta.\textsuperscript{41a} It became the centre from which Chauhān power radiated over a lengthening arc enclosing northern Rājputāna and the collateral houses of Kotah, Bundi and Jālor. In inscriptions of even the smaller principality of Mewār, ranging in dates from A.D. 1213 to 1252,\textsuperscript{42} victory over the Turushkas provides special items of laudation. Against this tide of Rājput power, the military hold over Ajmer could be of little consequence, for loss of the recently
established defensive outposts at Lawah, Kasili and Sambhar practically sealed it off.

Punitive expeditions availed but little to arrest this trend of the military situation. In A.D. 1248 Balban's raid on the Chauhan stronghold was repulsed; ten years later we read again of similar but apparently ineffective raids into the territories "of the infidels of Ranthambhor, Bundi and Chitrur". A factor which very seriously hampered Delhi's striking power in Rajputana was the continuing depredation of the turbulent people of the northern Alwar region designated as the "Roh-payah" of Mewāt. These were the Yaduvānsāḥ Rājputs who, following the loss of their strongholds of Bayānā and Tahangarh, spread themselves over the countryside, and kept up an armed resistance which intensified as the century progressed, and which increasingly tended to merge in the general Rājput offensive. They harried the districts of Siwalik, Harianah, and Bayānā, and towards the end of Mahmūd's reign, terrorised even Delhi itself. Heavily distracted by their raids, which in A.D. 1256 reached as far as Hānsī, Balban had to follow up his earlier exertions by two full-scale campaigns in A.D. 1258. But he could accomplish little beyond plundering a few Mewāti villages and capturing some of their leaders. Although not directed by the Chauhāns, the Mewāts yet appear to have operated as their spearheads which kept Delhi engaged in its neighbourhood while Ranthambhor accumulated strength and territory.43

VI. BALBAN RESTORES THE AUTHORITY OF SULTANATE

An effective solution of these multiplying problems called for a stable central direction which, in the circumstances, could only come from a strong king, realistic in approach and severely efficient in execution. For, external dangers arose as a direct consequence of internal weakness, which was due to the state's incomplete consolidation. The need for concentrating on this primary task was therefore the lesson which the politics of the last three decades clearly brought home to Balban. The initial expansionist motives of Mu'izz-ud-din and Aibak had qualified Īltutmish's attention to internal problems and had become a political tradition with his dynasty. To break with this tradition and reverse the emphasis, therefore, required unquestioned power and strong resolution.

Such power Balban had in effect wielded as the Deputy of the State (Nāib-i-Māmlīkat); he was even known to have used some of the royal insignia. He gave form and content to Mahmūd's kingship in such a personal manner that when his name formally appeared on the coins on the latter's death in A.D. 1265,44 it evoked little comment or disapproval, for it seemed a natural process that the old dynasty
THE MAMLUK SULTANS OF DELHI

would merge in his family. Old loyalties were thus continued, but the new king sought to reinforce them still further by formulation of theories of dynastic monarchy expressed in such regalia and decorum that it set the standard for future kings. Like Iltutmish, he also belonged to the Ilbari clan of Turks, but while the former's supreme status rested more on practical ability than on inherited distinction, Balban tried to buttress his crown and also his undoubted abilities with claims of noble lineage; for he regarded himself as descended from Afrasiyab, the Turkish hero of Persian mythology. On the gradually spreading myth of Turkish racial superiority was thus superimposed a cult of family prestige which effectively replaced the acquired status of the older dynasty.

A supporting theory of kingship was also formulated on the lines of the Sassanian monarchy. Balban ignored Islamic constitutional principles, and far outreached his master when he spoke of kingship as a “divine gift”, and of the king as a “unique personage”. Such a king ruled not merely by protecting Islam, but by insisting on the absolute acceptance of his superhuman status. This involved a technique of government which must suppress all notions of Tribal or Islamic republican equality, and which therefore depended on the king's undoubted ability to compel the people's unquestioning obedience.

Acting on such ideas, matured during his deputyship, and in sharp contrast to the conduct of the meek, unassertive Mahmūd, Balban inaugurated his reign by adapting the court ceremonial to the new conception. This included a rigid insistence on the zamīnbos and paibos (prostrating before and kissing the king's feet or the throne), two of the non-Islamic practices which Iltutmish was vainly requested by the jurists to regard with disfavour. Since the king's person was to be unapproachable, Balban surrounded himself with body-guards—a picked band of impressively uniformed, fearsome soldiers with drawn sabres glittering in the sun. In public, he never talked except to his officials, and that only through the Grand Chamberlain; once he administered a sharp rebuke to a courtier who pleaded with him to grant an interview to a private citizen, a rich merchant of Delhi, who offered all his wealth for this honour. Even in private life, the consciousness of his 'unique' status hampered his naturalness, for he was never seen even by his immediate attendants to laugh. When his eldest son died in battle, the sorrow corroded his heart, but, god-like, he remained unmoved, and his conduct or countenance showed no trace of his inner feelings. Acting on the same motive he gave up his earlier habit of drinking and prohibited the same to his courtiers. The fear and dignity which he sought
to earn by such frightful correctness of conduct was heightened by
the effects of the Mongol conquests which sent princes and eminent
scholars flying for asylum to his court.

Even more emphatic were the governmental expressions of his
autocracy which had to justify itself by pitiless efficiency. As one
of the departments through whose working the king's power and
correctness are usually assessed, the judiciary received his vigilant
attention. Justice was administered with ruthless impartiality, for
it was not so much the Law which had to be vindicated, as the king's
god-like power which can suffer no distinction in its exercise. The
exemplary punishment he gave to the governors of Budaun and
Awadh, for reported cruelty to their domestic servants, was not so
much a judicial act, as the exercise of the king's right to seek out
and punish those who impinged on his absolute guarantee of security
to all. To this end he improved the espionage service and reporters
were selected with the greatest care.

The prevailing insecurity round the capital afforded him fuller
opportunity to vindicate this sovereign guarantee. The mounting
Rajput offensive, added to the Mongol pressure and the rebellious
uprising of the Turkish chiefs, had created a situation which strain­
ed the government's resources almost to the breaking point. Robbers
stalked the countryside, communications were unsafe, and dense
forests near Delhi sheltered marauders who menaced even the city
life. In the Doabd and Awadh Hindu peasants suffered little control,
and with the ever-turbulent Katehriyas holding Budaun and Amroha
under constant threat, the king's prestige was at a fearfully low ebb.
Balban studied the problem carefully, and almost immediately on
his accession set to work on it with fierce determination and sense
of urgency. Within a year forests round the capital were cleared,
and robbers hunted out. On the south-western approach to the city
he erected military posts and garrisoned them with seasoned Afghan
troops to guard against the Mewatis. Other approaches were simi­
larly fortified. Next year operations were extended to the east, and
the affected areas of Awadh and the Doabd were divided into military
commands, with troops detailed to campaign relentlessly against the
insurgents. This concentrated drive produced quick results, and
within a year brigandage ceased, forests were cleared, and peasants
returned to normal obedience. In the neighbourhood of Kampil and
Patiali (Farrukhâbâd District), where the later Gâhadavâlas had
founded strongholds, Balban conducted the operations personally,
clearing forests and building new roads. Fortresses were erected at
strategic points, and permanent colonies of Afghan soldier-farmers
were established in and around to ensure their safety and provide a
THE MAMLUK SULTANS OF DELHI

local militia. News of a fresh Katehriya incursion on Budaun interrupted the king’s operations in these areas. In terrible anger he returned to fit out a larger force from Delhi and, moving as on a hunting expedition, suddenly fell on Katehr like lightning. A frightful slaughter of the besieged insurgent population then followed, their houses were burnt and bodies lay rotting for days on end, the stench fouling the area as far as the Gangā. This calculated ferocity thoroughly cowed down all potential rebels in the neighbourhood, and the districts returned to peace. Forests were cleared and a network of roads spread to facilitate administrative control.

With security problems as his primary occupation, Balban thus kept an unceasing watch on the slightest manifestation of those ailments which had paralysed the government during the past few decades. The conquest was yet to lead to settlement in the country; the governmental machinery had to shed its inchoate and improvised character and had to work primarily towards integrating the loosely co-ordinated provincial army commands. There was no longer any organised Hindu opposition on a large scale in the conquered area, but, ill-defined though it was, the Sultan’s government had to fight its way through the countryside. All round the state were Indian powers, whose energies the Sultanate’s recent weakness had tended to revive to such an extent, that the original war of conquest seemed once again to be in progress. A supremely dangerous complication was the Mongol who controlled the major areas of the Punjab and pressed on up to the Beas. As a foreigner the Turk was cut off from his homeland, and shortage of man-power therefore threatened his dominating position in the Sultanate.

During his deputyship Balban had made a correct appraisal of these recent developments, and inevitably decided on adopting the only possible course of action, namely conservation of strength primarily for consolidation rather than expansion. This involved a departure from the policy hitherto guiding the Sultanate, and when his courtiers, unable to outgrow the earlier tradition, urged him to acquire new territories, he told them that he could ill afford to employ his limited man-power and resources in occupying hostile states, for it will endanger internal security. The problem of safeguarding the western frontier governed his foreign policy and limited his striking power. With regret—for he was no pacifist—he had to restrain himself from the temptation of leading “his well-prepared forces to capture the distant Rānās”. He constantly reminded himself of the prudent counsel not to overstrain oneself by trying to subjugate others. He would certainly defend his borders against aggression, but if he was to maintain the dominant position of the
This last point deserves attention. It explains the ruling temper of the Mamlūk state which had resulted in the main from the race-movements conditioning the initial conquest. A feeling of racial superiority sustained the otherwise loose federation of the conquering Turks both against the Hindus and the Mongols. The State inevitably took the character of a Turkish proprietary concern, and the non-Turk Indian Muslim found, as in the early years of Mahmūd’s reign, that any attempt to claim a share in the administration intensified the opposition of the ruling race. The House of Iltutmish jealously championed this racialism.

In itself, this was an untenable policy; the effect of the Mongol conquests made it dangerously so. Pure-born Turks were rapidly diminishing in number, for no more immigrants came through the Mongol barriers. Mixing of blood was fast producing a generation which had little direct contact with the racial traditions of the Turks, and had greater community of feeling with the Indian Muslims. Even as regards the Hindus, a sense of community of interest had to be fostered in order to put forth the maximum resistance to the Mongol barbarian. And through all these years, by immigration and conversion, non-Turki elements tended to increase as much in number as in quality. What was therefore easy for Iltutmish was impossible in the age when Balban reigned. His striking power was limited by his racialism, for he had to extend the basis of his state in order to command those forces which proved so irresistible when used later by the Khaljis.

But Balban sought to resist this process of time and employed his extraordinary energy and will-power to perpetuate a racial polity which, in its ultimate form, merged with his absolutism. He symbolised the primacy of the Turk, with his own power exercised primarily in the interest of his race. Expansion of the kingdom was therefore of less immediate importance than perfecting the coercive instrument with which to vindicate this superiority. In devoting his energies to this end he, however, helped in a necessary historical process, though with an objective which, as will be seen presently, could not stand the ultimate pressure of events.

Since defence required improvement of the army, Balban expanded it with more and abler personnel. Defects in the cavalry organization, discovered in course of an expedition to Lahore early in the reign, were remedied by reallocation of the revenue assignments among better recruits and cashiering the unserviceable men, to make
that radical approach to the problem of army organization which brought outstanding result to his successor dynasty.

His vigilance nevertheless proved a compensating factor, and along the western border defence measures against the Mongols proved effective. Balban's cousin Sher Khan held the frontier provinces of Multan and Dipalpur till his death a few years after the Sultan's accession, and was reported to have been "like the walls of Gog and Magog to the Mongols". When appointing a successor, Balban decided on reducing the extent of the governor's administrative responsibility so that his striking power remained unhampered. While Multan and Dipalpur were placed under his eldest son Muhammad, the eastern district of Bhatinda was separated to become the forward base of the Sunam-Samana provincial command which, under his second son Bughra Khan, was detailed to hold the Beas line. While Prince Muhammad was made the supreme commander of the entire frontier region, under each of the two commanders a picked force of eighteen thousand horsemen was provided to hold the strategic points, while an equally strong reserve force, based on Delhi, was to supplement the defence as occasion demanded. The result of this arrangement was a vast improvement in the defence strategy, ensuring quick and co-ordinated action. Although Lahore remained as a border region, yet the Mongols were effectively checked, and we are told that whenever they tried to cross the Beas, the three forces quickly converged, and "as a result of the several victories obtained over them they never dared to approach the river any more". A greater concentration was effected towards the end of the reign when, in view of Bughra's proposed transfer to Lakhnawati, the Sunam-Samana command was divided into smaller regional units, all co-ordinated to work under the overall command of Prince Muhammad. The effect of this strategy was soon felt by the Mongols, for the prince easily kept them beyond the Sindhu, and annually sent to Delhi captives taken from among the raiders.47

Contemporary accounts bear eloquent testimony to the security which directly resulted from all these measures. The king was held in awe, and the governing machinery worked with ruthless efficiency for peace. The only incident which marred this picture was a rebellion in the distant Bengal, but its costly failure only emphasised the terrible strength of the will which worked that machine. Lakhnawati had shown persistent disapproval of her subservience to Delhi, and throughout the Mamluk period the province was in chronic distemper, distance and climatic hazards adding to the ease with which ambitious governors often flouted the central government. During the last decade of Mahmud's reign Lakhnawati enjoyed, as mentioned
earlier, unmolested autonomy under Arsalân Khân, who annexed Bihâr and bequeathed the territories to his son Tâtâr Khân. One of the latter’s inscriptions, dated A.D. 1265, claims almost imperial status for him, but he appears to have avoided open proclamation of sovereignty, and even to have placated Balban by sending token presents. Whether he died or was removed shortly after is uncertain, but Delhi’s control over the province was firm enough to enable one of Balban’s freedmen, named Tughril, to be appointed governor. Tughril, however, lost no time in imbibing the country’s political tradition, for, having earned popularity by liberal and efficient administration, and increased his resources by raids into the neighbouring Hindu states, he allowed, as the chronicler puts it, “the bird of rebellion to lay eggs in his brain”. Balban’s alleged infirmity, due to advanced age, was considered to offer a good opportunity, and so, some time in A.D. 1280, Tughril signified his rebellion by withholding the king’s share of the booty captured in his latest expedition. This he followed up by a formal declaration of sovereignty, clothed with the regal title of Sultân Mughis-ud-dîn. He defeated the force sent by Balban under Amin Khân, the governor of Awadh,—most of the Royal troops deserting to his side, as Hindu tribes harassed their retreat.

The news of this reverse hurt Balban’s pride and the vanquished general was hanged for his failure to vindicate the king’s authority. But when the next two succeeding expeditions also met with a similar fate, the king decided to stake everything on this challenge to his prestige. Vowing never to return without the rebel’s head, he set out personally at the head of a large force of provincial and special troops, and ignoring the hazards of the rainy season he marched expeditiously through Awadh and North Bihâr. He encountered no opposition, and found on arrival that the city of Lakhnâwati had been evacuated by the rebel. Tughril was frightened by the unexpected hardening of the octogenarian king’s will, and was reported to be hiding in the eastern districts. His plan was obviously to depend on the climate and the water-logged country to wear out the king’s forces. But Balban pushed towards Sonârgâon where the local ruler Danujamâdhava of the Deva dynasty was persuaded to co-operate in preventing the rebel’s flight by the water-routes of his kingdom, which, it appears, extended to the Feni river. 48 With the rivers thus closed to him, Tughril moved by land towards the Tippera frontier, but Balban scented his trail and sent detachments to scour the countryside. One of these eventually came upon the rebel camp, fell on the unsuspecting troops, and cut off Tughril’s head as he tried to escape. With the rebel’s adherents in chain, Balban returned to Lakhnâwati to execute everyone suspected of the
slightest sympathy with him. Their corpses, hung on gibbets, lined the main bazaar, and while advising his son Bughra Khan, whom he left in charge of the province, he tellingly pointed to these emphatic proofs of the king's unconquerable power.

As he returned triumphantly after three years, governors and chiefs hastened to congratulate and to reaffirm their subservience. Perfect peace and order prevailed in every part of the kingdom, and the Sultan's prestige was at its height. Balban could feel legitimate pride in restoring order and in completing Iltutmish's work, for he had almost recreated the Sultanate. This he never tired of instilling into the mind of his heir apparent, his eldest son Muhammad, a prince whose qualities evoked warm praise from all his contemporaries. Muhammad, however, was not destined to succeed his father, for early in A.D. 1286 he was killed in a fierce engagement with the Mongols in course of one of their periodical raids on the Lahore-Dipalpur border. This meant no military setback, as the Mongols were eventually expelled, but the prince's death, frustrating all his hopes, came as a fatal shock to the old monarch. For Bughra Khan was no substitute. The iron king remained calm in public but melted in tears in his nightly solitude.

Balban lived for a year more, weighed down by sickness and anxiety. He summoned Bughra to be near his death-bed and assume the eventual responsibility. But the prince, avoiding a direct refusal, waited for the king to recover slightly, and then slipped away from the hazards of the Delhi throne to the enervating ease of Lakhnawi. On the way he heard of his father's relapse but he stuck to his decision. With his end approaching fast, and thus left with a choice between his two grandsons, both adolescents, the king, resigned to his predicament, nominated Kaikhusrav, son of the deceased Muhammad. In so doing he only provided for his dynasty, but for carrying on his policy he depended ultimately on his friends, notably the Kotwaîl and the Wazir, to whom his dying request was to render the prince all necessary help and guidance. He breathed his last in A.D. 1287.

In keeping alive the traditions of the Sultanate's founders, Balban had ruthlessly held back the new forces which insistently demanded adjustment. His achievement lay in the strength with which the State was regenerated, and it was obvious that he was irreplaceable in the scheme in which the Sultanate was meant to function. His courtiers, therefore, had reason to mourn the death of this stern king, for, as the Kotwaîl put it, he was their only guarantee "against every upstart who would now aspire to the crown", and against the consequent "destruction of the old aristocracy".49
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

VII. THE END OF BALBAN’S DYNASTY

Since Balban resisted the new social forces, adjustment through violent process became inevitable when his ruthless will was stilled by death. The history of the next reign of three years was a quickening of this process, the king’s incapacity giving a handle to his jealous and more conservative nobles to raise a wall round their power without the necessary ability to reinforce it. The bursting that resulted was less violent than it could have been, but more revolutionary in implications than what Balban had striven to oppose.

How his pervasive strength of will was necessary to divert the latent factiousness of the Turk was seen, by contrast, when on the night of his death, and flouting his wish, the Kotwâl, who bore personal animosity to prince Muhammad’s family, manoeuvred Kaikhusrav out of the capital and had Kaiqubâd, Bughrâ Khân’s son, proclaimed king. Kaikhusrav was sent off as governor of Multân, and his supporters, headed by the Wazir, were all imprisoned and exiled. The government thus became a family oligarchy in which the Kotwâl’s scheming and able son-in-law Nizâm-ud-din was enabled quickly to gather the strings of power.

Nizâm-ud-din sedulously encouraged the youthful king’s thirst for sensuous pleasure, denied to him by the austere grandfather. Wine, women and song kept the Sultân busy, and the gaiety soon infected the court and became the norm of city-life. The administrative machine was kept going only by the momentum gathered in the last reign, and the frontier defences retained enough strength and cohesion to repeat the earlier triumphs over the Mongols. Nizâm-ud-din possessed the dictator’s ability, and although officially only the city-magistrate (Dad-beg) of Delhi, his authority as the de facto ruler was openly admitted. With the king completely under his control—he sent his wife to supervise Kaiqubâd’s harem—the dictator used his opportunities towards consolidating his power for the final usurpation which to everyone appeared inevitable and even necessary. Within six months Kaikhusrav was murdered, supposedly under the king’s orders; the new Wazir, Khwâja Khatir, was next removed, and a charge of sedition was trumped up to replace a large number of influential officers by Nizâm-ud-din’s own creatures.

But he was not to reap the fruit of his labour. Report of Kaiqubâd’s heedless gaiety and his impending fall reached his father in Lakhnâwati, and the family shirker was at last roused to a sense of paternal responsibility. Letters and messages being of no avail,
Bughra eventually decided to meet his son, and a meeting was arranged on the border of Awadh. Some writers, including Amir Khusrav who wrote a long poetical account celebrating the occasion, refer to political motives actuating the father who, in any case, moved in full military strength. Kaiqubad also marched with an army to the camp on the Saraju river and, under Nizam-ud-din's instructions, insisted on the Lakhnawati ruler coming over from the other side and paying respects due to the Sultan of Delhi. A protracted exchange of arguments on points of procedure, punctuated by occasional threats, was ended by the father finally agreeing to do homage to Balban's successor. The meeting that followed is one of the tenderest incidents of medieval history. Kaiqubad affected stern dignity as Bughra Khan, bowing and kissing the ground, approached his feet, but his feeling welled up at length, and the audience broke into sobs as the son tearfully clasped his father. For three days Bughra Khan gave him paternal advice to mend his ways and realise his responsibilities, repeating what he had himself heard in vain from Balban, and, while taking leave, whispered a request to "get rid of men like Nizam-ud-din".

Kaiqubad's impulsive resolution to heed his father's advice and correct his ways, however, gave way even before he reached Delhi, but Nizam-ud-din's rivals sought opportunities to remind him of Bughra's parting advice. The dictator lacked the daring and quick decision of a soldier, and so used backstairs method to destroy his rivals while putting off the final action. The governor of Multan provoked his jealousy by his famed victories over the Mongols, and so was killed; Malik Tuzaki, the recently appointed army minister, was similarly removed. But then, in a drunken fit, Kaiqubad, reminded of his father's advice, ordered Nizam-ud-din to proceed to Multan as governor, and, on his hesitating to comply, caused him to be poisoned.

The sudden disappearance of this one dominant and stable factor in the government, however, created a vacuum which neither the king nor any of his courtiers was able effectively to fill. Ziya-ud-din Barani pictures the resulting state of affairs as a chaos in which jealous, power-loving men of no ability kept pursuing each other, while the king sank rapidly under the cumulative effects of his excesses. Two of the new court functionaries, the Amir-i-Hajib Malik Kachhan and the Barbak Malik Surkha, controlled the king's establishment, and so were enabled to initiate policy. Seeking to safeguard their power as guardians of Balban's heritage, they planned a rigid enforcement of his racialism which, as evidenced by some of the recent appointments, was tending to lose its primary
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

stress. Deciding to begin with a purge of all undesirable non-Turki elements in the administration, they drew up a list of men whose elimination was to be effected urgently and under the king's authority. As the afflicted Kaiqubād had become unserviceable even as a titular head, the policy-makers took the radical step of finding a new king for their use, in the person of the three year old prince Kayūmers who was formally proclaimed king as Shams-ud-din. In A.D. 1289 Kaiqubād's reign thus faded into that of his son.

But before the Regency Council, formed by Kachhan, Surkha and the Kotwāl, could begin implementing the new programme and strike at the listed men, the initiative was seized by the opposing forces. Heading the black list was Malik Yaghrash Firūz, leader of an influential and numerous clan known as the Khalji, who, because of their early separation from Turkistān, were universally, though erroneously, believed to be of non-Turki stock. His recent appointment to the army ministry was considered a dangerous violation of Balban's principles, but since his open dismissal was likely to prove ineffective as he had the army's support, Kachhan had volunteered to assassinate him. One of his servants, named Ahmad Chap, however, happened to be the Khalji chief's nephew, and so apprised the latter of the conspiracy. Firūz thereupon collected his kinsmen, and shifted his headquarters from Delhi to the suburban village of Giyaspur where an army muster had been scheduled. Unaware of all this, and anxious to decoy him from his people, Kachhan one day rode up to deliver an urgent summons from the king's court. Firūz begged for time to finish the parade, and then as Kachhan relaxed in the tent-shade, cut off his head. He followed it up with an immediate raid into the king's palace, and carried away the boy-king before the Delhi citizens could realise the significance of these happenings. But the initial coup proved decisive. On the persuasion of the Kotwāl the citizens restrained themselves from streaming out to an unequal contest, and a feeling of hopelessness seized most of the Turkish officers. With the king now in his control, Firūz was able to legitimise his victory and dispense the offices. Both the Kotwāl and Balban's nephew having disdained to receive the office of the Naib (Deputy of the Kingdom) from him, Firūz accepted it himself, and for three months continued this fiction of Balban's dynasty. How this fiction was finally closed and Kayūmers disappeared from history, is not recorded, but Firūz only gave form to the realities of the situation and symbolized the coming of a new age, when he proclaimed his own accession as Sultān Jalāl-ud-din Firūz on June 13, 1290.
1. The Mamlik Sultans of Delhi

2. This dynasty is usually referred to as Slave Dynasty in Indian history. But of the nine rulers, only three, Aibak, Iltutmish and Balban, began their political career as bond-slaves; all the others were freemen. Among the three it was only Aibak whose manumission followed his accession to sovereign power, Iltutmish and Balban both having obtained their freedom early in their life. None of these rulers in any case assumed the insignia of royalty while still a slave. To describe the entire series of these rulers as the Slave Dynasty, is, therefore, inappropriate, even if it is overlooked that they belonged not to one but to three dynasties or families. And yet they have obvious difference with the later Turkish dynasties,—difference emphasised by the domination of freed-men grouped round leading members of the same class and functioning as a closed oligarchy and seeking reinforcement only from similar bondsmen. These features are exactly paralleled in contemporary Egypt where the Turks, supplanting the Ayyubide dynasty in 1250 ruled up to the Ottoman conquest through a series of ex-slaves recruited and trained by means of a rigidly controlled organization and who never cared for the principle of hereditary succession. To medieval historians they are known as the Mamluks, lit. 'owned' (from Arabic 'malak', to possess), based on the Quranic term for a slave, "and what your right hands possess" (xvi, 77). Being of such long usage in Muslim history and indicative of what seems to be a widespread Turkish practice in the Middle Ages the term Mamlik has thus greater applicability to the thirteenth century rulers of Delhi than the word 'slave' which implies a lifelong servitude.

3. See above, p. 124. Andkhii is also spelt as Andkhéed.

4. The long-drawn struggle between the Indian States and the Sultanate of Delhi has been described in detail in connection with the history of those states in Chs. II and III above.

5. For coins evidencing Paribhára rule, including those of Malayvarmanadeva, in Narwar, Gwallor and Jháma, see Ojha, Rájputána-Adh.-Tíkhána, I, p. 166; IA, 1918, p. 341; also Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Reports, II, 315, 378-381. Account of Ranthambhór's recovery of independence under Govindaraja is to be found in the fragmentary Rajput ballad, Hamir-Paládá, IA, 1879, p. 89. See also a reference to Ranthambhór's suzerainty over Jaitla Singh of Manjála, in IA, XVI, p. 86.

6. See note 7 above.

7. For coins evidencing Prabhára rule, including those of Malayvarmanadeva, in Narwar, Gwallor and Jháma, see Ojha, Rájputána-Adh.-Tíkhána, I, p. 166; IA, 1918, p. 341; also Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Reports, II, 315, 378-381. Account of Ranthambhór's recovery of independence under Govindaraja is to be found in the fragmentary Rajput ballad, Hamir-Paládá, IA, 1879, p. 89. See also a reference to Ranthambhór's suzerainty over Jaitla Singh of Manjála, in IA, XVI, p. 86.

8. See note 7 above.

9. For coins evidencing Prabhára rule, including those of Malayvarmanadeva, in Narwar, Gwallor and Jháma, see Ojha, Rájputána-Adh.-Tíkhána, I, p. 166; IA, 1918, p. 341; also Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Reports, II, 315, 378-381. Account of Ranthambhór's recovery of independence under Govindaraja is to be found in the fragmentary Rajput ballad, Hamir-Paládá, IA, 1879, p. 89. See also a reference to Ranthambhór's suzerainty over Jaitla Singh of Manjála, in IA, XVI, p. 86.


11. For coins evidencing Prabhára rule, including those of Malayvarmanadeva, in Narwar, Gwallor and Jháma, see Ojha, Rájputána-Adh.-Tíkhána, I, p. 166; IA, 1918, p. 341; also Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Reports, II, 315, 378-381. Account of Ranthambhór's recovery of independence under Govindaraja is to be found in the fragmentary Rajput ballad, Hamir-Paládá, IA, 1879, p. 89. See also a reference to Ranthambhór's suzerainty over Jaitla Singh of Manjála, in IA, XVI, p. 86.

12. See note 7 above.

13. For coins evidencing Prabhára rule, including those of Malayvarmanadeva, in Narwar, Gwallor and Jháma, see Ojha, Rájputána-Adh.-Tíkhána, I, p. 166; IA, 1918, p. 341; also Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Reports, II, 315, 378-381. Account of Ranthambhór's recovery of independence under Govindaraja is to be found in the fragmentary Rajput ballad, Hamir-Paládá, IA, 1879, p. 89. See also a reference to Ranthambhór's suzerainty over Jaitla Singh of Manjála, in IA, XVI, p. 86.

14. See note 7 above.

15. For coins evidencing Prabhára rule, including those of Malayvarmanadeva, in Narwar, Gwallor and Jháma, see Ojha, Rájputána-Adh.-Tíkhána, I, p. 166; IA, 1918, p. 341; also Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Reports, II, 315, 378-381. Account of Ranthambhór's recovery of independence under Govindaraja is to be found in the fragmentary Rajput ballad, Hamir-Paládá, IA, 1879, p. 89. See also a reference to Ranthambhór's suzerainty over Jaitla Singh of Manjála, in IA, XVI, p. 86.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

18. TN, p. 174. For a silver commemorative coin, see Thomas, Chronicles of the Pathan Kings of Delhi, no. 28, and Wright, op. cit. p. 18, no. 59c.
19. These Turks had, during the reign of Iltutmish, divided among themselves all the great fiefs and all the highest offices in the State.
20. TN, p. 174. For a silver commemorative coin, see Thomas, Chronicles of the Pathan Kings of Delhi, no. 28, and Wright, op. cit. p. 18, no. 50c.
23. TN, p. 197.
24. TN, p. 199.
CHAPTER VI

LATER CHÂLUKYAS AND KALACHURIS
OF KALYÂNA

1. TAILA II (A.D. 973-997)

Taila II, who re-established the sovereignty of the Châlukyas in the Deccan after overthrowing the Râshtrakûta Karkka II in A.D. 973-74, claims to be a remote descendant of the Châlukya dynasty of Bâdami. The Châlukya Kirttivarman II of that dynasty, who was dethroned by the Râshtrakûta Dantidurga in the middle of the eighth century,1 is said to have had an uncle whose name was possibly Bhima. Bhima was followed in succession by Kirttivarman III, Taila I, Vikramâditya III, Bhima II, Ayyana I, and Vikramâditya IV.2 Of them Ayyana I is known to have married the daughter of the Râshtrakûta Krișna II of Mânya-khetâ, and Vikramâditya IV married Bonthâdevi, the daughter of the Kalachuri Lâkshmanâ of Tripûri. Vikramâditya IV’s son and successor was Taila II. Two inscriptions, dated A.D. 957 and 965, disclose that Taila II was, in the early part of his life, a feudatory of the Râshtrakûta Krișna III in Tardavâdi 1000 country. Tardavâdi is now represented by the small village of Taddevâdi on the south bank of the Bhîmâ, in the Indi Tîluk, Bijâpur District, Bombay State. The Bâgewâdi Tîluk of this district was also included in it. It may be assumed that the predecessors of Taila II also ruled this country as feudatories of the Imperial Râshtrakûtas. A number of other Châlukya families also ruled in the Deccan as vassals of the Râshtrakûtas during this period, but their relation with the main line is not known.

Circumstances leading to the overthrow of the Râshtrakûtas by Taila II in A.D. 973-74 have been described above.3 Taila II was variously known as Tailapa, Tailappa and Tailappayya. He assumed the titles Ahâvamalla and Bhuvanaikamalla, and his capital was Mânya-khetâ at least up to A.D. 993. Immediately after his accession Taila II devoted his energies to the consolidation of his power. He found in Gaṅga Pâñchaladeva, who made himself master of the kingdom of the Gaṅga Mârasîhâ II, his strong rival. Pâñchaladeva’s kingdom included Mûlguṇḍa 12 (modern Mulgund, in the Dhârwar District) in Belvola 300, in A.D. 975, and is said to have extended up to the Kriśnâ on the north. Pâñchaladeva, who
is described as the ‘Chālukya-pañcāhana,’ i.e. a very lion to the Chālukyas, challenged the authority of Taila II. Taila II, along with his general Nāgadeva, the Ganga Bhūtigadeva, and many feudatory chiefs, confronted his rival in the battlefield. Bhūtigadeva, who was the governor of Kogali 500, the country round the village Kogali, in the Hadagalli Tīluk, Bellary District, Madras State, under the Rāṣṭrakūṭa Khoṭēga in A.D. 972, seems to have been dislodged from his position by Pāṇchaladeva. In the initial stage of the battle that followed Pāṇchaladeva reduced Taila II into a very precarious condition, as the Chālukya feudatories, who were in the rear, took to flight. The situation was eventually saved by Bhūtigadeva, who succeeded in defeating and killing Pāṇchaladeva. In recognition of this service Taila II honoured him with the title Abhavamalla, and made him the feudatory of Toragalā, modern Torgal, on the confines of the Dharwār District. The defeat of Pāṇchaladeva, which took place before A.D. 977, enabled Taila II to establish his supremacy over the countries up to northern Mysore. The central and southern Mysore were under the Ganga Rāchamalla, son and successor of Mārasiṁha, in A.D. 977. About this time Taila II defeated and killed Rāṇastambha, who was an ally of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa Karkka II. Some time before A.D. 980, Taila II came into conflict with the Chōla king Uttama ChoTa and won a victory. After settling the affairs in the south Taila II looked for conquest towards the western region. The strip of land between the Western Ghats and the sea and between the Pāṛā river and Goa was known as the Konkāṇa country (Konkan). A branch of the Śilāhāra dynasty had been ruling in Southern Konkan, with its capital at Valīpattana and as vassal of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, from the second half of the eighth century. Taila II with the help of his general Kesāvājīya brought Southern Konkan under his sway, and the Śilāhāra Avasara III or his son Raṭṭarāja acknowledged his supremacy. The Northern Konkan, which had its capital at Thānā, and was at this time ruled by Aparākṣita Mṛigyāka of a collateral branch of the Śilāhāra dynasty, remained outside the limits of the kingdom of the Chālukyas. The Yādava Bhillama II, ruler of Seuṇa-deśa (the country round Daulatsbūd, in the Aurangābād District, Hyderabad State), transferred his allegiance from the Rāṣṭrakūṭas to the Chālukyas. Taila II made an attempt to assert his supremacy over the countries in the north, which once formed parts of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa empire. He invaded Lāṭa (the country between the Sābramati river in Gujarāt and the Ambikā river in Surat, Bombay), conquered it, and placed it under his general Bārappa of the Chaulukya family. To the north of Lāṭa was the kingdom of Gūrāra, ruled by the Chaulukya Mularāja I. About
LATER CHALUKYAS AND KALACHURIS OF KALYĀṆA

this time, when the kingdom of Mūlarāja was invaded by the Chā­hamāna Vigrāharāja I of Śakambhari, Bārappā attacked Mūlarāja from the south. He gained some success, for an inscription credits Tālā II with a victory over the Gurjara. But Vigrāharāja over­ran the Gurjara country, and reached Bhṛgukaccheha forcing his way through the kingdom of Bārappā. The Chāhamāna occupation of Gurjara and Lāṭa was, however, shortlived. Mūlarāja concluded a treaty with Vigrāharāja and sent his son Chāmanḍarāja to fight with Bārappā, who was killed in the battle. It cannot be ascer­tained whether Tālā II could maintain control over the successors of Bārappā who ruled Lāṭa for some time.

Tālā II wanted to assert his supremacy over Mālava, which was formerly included in the Rashtrakūṭa empire. He led six invasions against that country, but was repulsed on all those occasions by the Paramāras under their king Muṇja, also known as Upalā. At last Muṇja took the offensive in order to put a stop to the further aggressions of the Chālukyas. He crossed the Godāvari, and led a campaign against Tālā II. Tālā II, with the help of his feudatory the Yādava Bhillama II of the Seuṇa-deśa, defeated him and took him prisoner to his capital Māṇyakheṭa. The general Kesavaihya claims to have won the admiration of Tālā II for the military skill which he showed on the bank of the Godāvari. It seems to have re­ferred to the last battle of Tālā II with Muṇja. Tālā II’s victory over the Paramāras on this occasion made him master of the southern portion of the Paramāra kingdom. Muṇja was kept confined in the prison of the Chālukya capital. The story runs that Tālā II’s sister Mnālāvatī, who was detailed to attend the captive king, fell in love with him, but when she came to learn that Muṇja’s ministers made secret arrangements for his escape, she reported the matter to her brother. Thereupon Tālā II treated Muṇja with great indignity and executed him shortly afterwards.

Tālā II and his successors are mentioned as kings of Kārṣāṇa, Kuntāla, or Raṭṭapāḍī seven and a half lākh country. The kingdom of the Chālukyas at this time included the Shimoga, Chitaldroog and Bellary Districts in the south, Southern Konkan and the border of Northern Konkan in the west, and extended up to the upper course of the Godāvari, and possibly even the Narmadā on the north. Tālā’s feudatory Brahmārāsa governed Banavāsī 12000 and Sāntalīge 1000. Banavāsī comprised the Shikārpur and Sorah Tālūks of the Shimoga District, and Sāntalīge, Nagar and Tārthahallī Tālūks of the same district. The tract of the country round Dāvanagare Tāluk of the Chitaldroog District was known as Kādambalīge 1000. It was govern­ed by the feudatory Mūluguṇḍa Śinda Jātaras. The Kādamba
Aryavarman and the Kadamba Adityavarman administered in succession Kogali 500, Kisukād 70, and Sundavatti. Sundavatti is identical with Sindavāḍ, which is to be located in the Alur Taluk of the Bellary District. Kisukād is the modern Lingsugur, Hyderabad. The Raṭṭa feudatory Kārttavirya I ruled the Kōṇḍi country from its capital Venugrāma, modern Belgaum, in the Bombay State. Sāntivarman of the Baisa family administered Saundatti, now in the Belgaum District.

Taila II married Jākabba, the daughter of the Raṭṭa Bhammaha, and had by her two sons Satyasrāya and Daśavarman also known as Yasovarman. Daśavarman acted as a Governor during the reign of Taila II. The last known date of Taila II from inscription is A.D. 996. He ruled for twenty-four years and was succeeded by Satyasrāya in A.D. 997.

2. SATYASRAYA (A.D. 997-c.1008)

Satyasrāya, also known as Sattiga and Sattima, assumed the titles Irivabegāṇa, Āhavamalla, and Akalankacharita. The earliest known date of his reign from inscription is A.D. 999. Satyasrāya came into conflict with his northern neighbours soon after his accession. The Paramara Sindhuraṇa led an army against him and reconquered territories which were wrested from Mufija by Taila II. The Kalachuri Kokalla II of Tripuri claims to have forced the king of Kūntala to live in exile (vanaṅaṅa). There is obviously a pun on the word vanaṅaṅa which refers to the country of Banavasi. The Kūntala king, who was Kokalla II’s adversary, seems to have been Satyasrāya.

The Silaharas of Northern Konkan, who did not submit to Taila II, fell a victim to the attack of Satyasrāya. Satyasrāya reduced the Silahāra Aparājīta to a precarious position. It is stated that “hemmed in by the sea on one side, and the Satyasrāya’s army on the other, Aparājīta trembled like an insect on a stick both the ends of which are on fire”. Aparājīta eventually saved himself by taking resort to the sea. Satyasrāya burnt the city of Anṇavagāra in the kingdom of the Silahāras, received twenty-one elephants from them, and asserted his supremacy over all the territory up to the sea shore. Aparājīta and his successors were, however, allowed to rule Northern Konkan as feudatories of the Chāluṅkya. After his conquest of Konkan Satyasrāya seems to have invaded the Gūrjara kingdom and inflicted a defeat on the Chauṅkya Chāmuṇḍarāja, son of Mūlarāja I.

Satyasrāya had to face a grave situation in the southern part of his kingdom. Choḷa Rājarāja, the Great, the successor of Uttama
Later Chalukyas and Kalachuris of Kalyāṇa

Chola, invaded the Deccan with 800,000 soldiers, and after conquering the southern divisions of the Chalukya kingdom, viz. Santalige, Banavasi, Kadambalige, and Kogali, captured the fort of Unkallu, modern Unkal, in the Dhārwar District. Lenka Keta, the commander of the fort, gave up his life in the battle with the Cholas while defending the stronghold. Rājarāja next pitched his camp at Dhanvur, modern Donur, in the Bāgewadi Tāluḵ of the Bijapur District. An inscription of the third year of Rājendra Chola, son of Rājarāja, states that Rājendra Chola conquered Iḍiturai-nāḍū, Banavasi, and Kollipakkai. Iḍiturai-nāḍū is the same as Eḍedorenāḍ, the country comprising a large part of the Raichur District between the Krishnā and the Tungabhadrā, and Kollipakkai is the modern Kulpak, about 45 miles north-east of Hyderabad. These conquests seem to have been made by Rājendra Chola during his father’s campaign against Satyasraya. Rājarāja, while encamping at Donur, ravaged the surrounding country, killed women, children and the Brahmatyas, forcibly carried away the Brahmanā girls, and gave them in marriage to the people of different castes. Satyāśraya made a desperate attempt to free his country from the tyranny of the Cholas, and a fierce battle ensued. Śrutimāṇ Nakkan Chandiran, the chief of the elephant forces of Rājarāja, made a charge on the enemy at the order of his master, but lost his life. Rājarāja, being defeated, made a hasty retreat, but Satyāśraya pursued him and captured a large train of his baggage wagons. Rājarāja returned to his own kingdom with some booty of gold flowers, which he dedicated to the temple of Tanjore. Satyāśraya then led aggressive campaigns against his southern neighbours. He brought all the territories up to the Kurnool and Guntur Districts under his sway. A stone inscription of the reign of Satyāśraya, found in the Bāpatli Tāluḵ of the Guntur District, is dated A.D. 1006. In A.D. 1004 Satyāśraya is known to have been residing in Śriparvata, also known as Śrisailam, in the Markāpur Tāluḵ of the Kurnool District.

Bhimarasa continued to govern Banavasi during the reign of Satyāśraya. Sobhanarasas ruled Belvola 300, Kundur 500, Pūrigere 300, Halsasige 12000, and Kukkanur 30. Māsavāḍi was administered by Taila, and one of Satyāśraya’s officers governed Pānūṅgal 500. Satyāśraya had a feudatory named Kundamarasa, often described as his son, who distinguished himself in the Chola war. Satyāśraya’s younger brother Daśavarman had three sons, viz. Vikramādiṭṭha V, Ayyaṇa II, and Jayasiṅhha II, and one daughter, Akkādevī. Satyāśraya was succeeded by his nephew Vikramādiṭṭha V.
3. VIKRAMADITYA V (c. A.D. 1008-1014)

Vikramaditya V assumed the titles Tribhuvanamalla and Vallabha-narendra. Dates of the inscriptions of his reign range from A.D. 1008 to 1013-14. During this period the Chalukyas turned their attention to the expansion of their kingdom towards the east. The general Kesavajjya, who was sent with an army in that direction, claims that he pleased Vikramaditya (V) by his conquest of the Kosala country. At this time, the king of Kosala, i.e. South Kosala, appears to have been Somavamśi Bhimaratha Mahābhavagupta II. It may be noted in this connection that a Somavamśi king, who cannot be definitely identified, claims that he defeated the king of the Karṣāga country.

Kundamarasā ruled Banavāsi 12000 and Sāntalige 1000 as a governor under Vikramaditya V, the Danḍānāyaka Kesava administered Belvola 300 and Purigere 300, and Vikramaditya V's sister Akkādevī was the governor of Kiskāla 70 in A.D. 1012.

4. JAYASIMHA II (A.D. 1015-1043)

Vikramaditya was succeeded by his younger brother Ayyaṇa II in A.D. 1014. Ayyaṇa II did not rule for more than a year, and was succeeded by his youngest brother Jayasimha II in or before A.D. 1015.

Jayasimha II, also known as Śiṅgadeva, assumed the titles Jagadekamalla II, Trailokyamalla, Mallikāmoda, and Vikramasimha. The dates of his inscriptions range between A.D. 1015 and 1043. Shortly before A.D. 1019 the Kalachuri Gangeyadeva, the Paramāra Bhoja, and Rajendra Chola formed a confederacy and made simultaneous attacks on the Deccan. Jayasimha claims to have repulsed all of them, but Bhoja succeeded in annexing Northern Konkan to his kingdom. Rājendra Chola claims that he defeated Jayasimha at Musāṅgī, which is identified with Maski in the Raichur Doab, and conquered Rāṭapāla seven and a half lakh country. There is no doubt, however, that Jayasimha succeeded in driving out the Cholas from his kingdom. Along with his general Chavanarasa, he pursued Rājendra Chola up to the Gaṅgāvati and the Chera countries. He plundered Dorasamudra, modern Halebid in Mysore, and Baleyavattana, modern Beliapatam, in the Chirakkal Tāluk, Malabar, and the country of the Malepas. Some time before A.D. 1024 Jayasimha II and his general Chavanarasa reconquered Konkan, apparently after defeating the Paramāra Bhoja.

The general Chavanarasa claims to have conquered Panīla, also called Pragāla and Parṇāla, modern Panhālā, 12 miles north-west
of Kolhapur, which was then apparently ruled by the Silhāra Jatīga II, and stormed the fortress of Bijavo9.i. Jayasimha II's feudatory Bijjarasa, the officer in charge of Sāntalige, is said to have defeated Bhillama and Chaṭṭuga, seized Bhaṭa, and conquered Paṭṭarali, Paṭṭahakoṭa, and Toragale. Bhillama, referred to, is Bhillama III of the Yadava dynasty of Se1ll}.a-desa, who married the daughter of Jayasimha II. All these facts indicate that the Chālukya kingdom was torn asunder by internecine quarrel for some time during the reign of Jayasimha. This assumption is confirmed by an inscription, which states that the generals and vassals of Jayasimha II revolted, and even made a plot to murder the king. Jayasimha II succeeded in averting the danger and bringing under control all the hostile forces with the help of his general Kālidāśa.

The kingdom of Jayasimha II included Shimoga, Tumkur, Anantapur and Cuddapah Districts in the south. Its boundary on the east lay beyond Kulpak, 45 miles north-east of Hyderabad. Several inscriptions, dated in A.D. 1028 and subsequent years, prove that Jayasimha II ruled from his capital Kalyāṇa or Kalyāṇi, modern Kalyani, in Bidar, Hyderabad. The Chālukya capital was shifted there from Manyakheṭa some time after A.D. 993. Kundamarasa governed Banavāśi and Sāntalige from the capital Balipura, modern Belgami, in the Shikarpur Tiiluk, Shimoga District, at least up to A.D. 1031. A certain Satyāśraya administered Sāntalige under him. Vikramāditya V's sister Akkadevi ruled Banavasi, Belvola, and Puligere jointly with Mayūrarvarman from A.D. 1037. The Kadamba Shashthadeva, ruler of Gove or Gopaka-paṭṭana, modern Goa, acknowledged his supremacy. Jagadekamalla Noṭama-Pallava Udayāditya governed Kādambalige, Kogali, Ballakunche, Edelore etc. from his headquarters at Kampili, modern Kampli, in the Hospet Tiiluk, Bellary District. The Haihaya Revarasa administered the Gulbarga District, and the Sinda Nāgaḍitya was in charge of the administration of Bāgalkot, Bijapur District. Jayasimha II was succeeded by his son Someśvara I in A.D. 1043-44.

5. SOMEśVARA I (A.D. 1043-1068)

Someśvara I assumed the titles Āhavamalla, Traḷokṣamalla and Rājaṇārāṇyana, and was also known as Vīra-Mārtavāja. Dates of the inscriptions of his reign range from A.D. 1043 to 1068. Immediately after his accession in A.D. 1043-44, he was involved in a protracted war with the Chōlas. The Chōla Rājāḍhirāja invaded the Chālukya kingdom with a big army. He was opposed at Pūṇḍi by Vichchaya or Bāchcharasa, feudatory of the Chālukyas in the Rayadurg Tūluk, in the Bellary District, who subsequently fled away.
The northward march of the Cholas was next opposed by the Chalukya generals Nulumba (Nanni-Nolamba), Chāmullarāja, the ruler of Banavāsi, Kalidāsa, Kommayya, and Villavarāja. But it was of no avail. The next resistance to the advance of the Cholas was given by Someśvara I at Kolūru, on the bank of the Bhimā, near Chitapur Railway Station, in the Shorāpur District, Hyderabad. Though the Cholas suffered a heavy loss on this occasion, they forced Someśvara I to withdraw. Rājādhiraṇāja next made a triumphant march to the Chalukya capital Kalyāṇa, pillaged the city, and burnt the royal palace. He celebrated his victory there by performing the Viḍeśhiṣṭeṅka, and assuming the title Viṣṇujīrṇendra. It was probably from Kalyāṇa that he advanced towards Kollippakkai. Someśvara, along with his son Vikramaḍītya, Vijayāḍītya of Vengī and his commanders Śāṇgamaya, Gaṇḍappaya, Gaṇgādhara and others, gave the Cholas there a stiff resistance, but Kollippakkai could not be defended. Gaṇḍappaya and Gaṇgādhara lost their lives in the encounter and Someśvara I fled away like a coward. Rājādhiraṇāja returned to his kingdom after overrunning the Deccan.

Some time before A.D. 1047 Rājādhiraṇāja led another campaign against Someśvara I, defeated the Chalukya generals Gaṇḍar-Dīnakara, Nārāyaṇa, Gaṇapatī, and Kalidāsa's son Madhusūdana, and captured Kampili. After sacking the city of Pūṇḍur, on the bank of the Kṛṣṇa, where there was a cantonment, he seized a place named Maṇḍandippai. In consequence of these Chola invasions the normal life in the Deccan was greatly disturbed. An inscription, dated A.D. 1050, from the Dharwar District, states that some ministers and administrative officers granted the renewal of corporate constitution of some Seṭṭis, which was partly broken down in the stress of the war with the Cholas. Someśvara I, however, did not suffer any loss of territory on this occasion. His general Chāmullarāja, governor of Banavāsi, succeeded in driving out the Cholas before A.D. 1047.

In A.D. 1051-52 Rājādhiraṇāja invaded the kingdom of Someśvara I for the third time, and was accompanied by his brother Rājendrā on this occasion. He seized Kollāpuram, burnt down many Jain temples, and defiled and damaged the Jain sanctuaries. Someśvara I took a bold stand, and not only checked the further progress of the Chola army, but even pursued the enemy which was retreating southward. For the final trial of strength the Cholas and the Chalukyas confronted each other in the battlefield of Koppam, a celebrated place of pilgrimage on the bank of a big river. Some suggest that the place is identical with Khidrapur on the right bank of the Kṛṣṇa, about 30 miles east by south of Kollāpur. Some again think that it is to be identified with the ancient Kōpāna or Kupanapura,
modern Kopal, on the left bank of the stream Hirehalla, a tributary of the Tungabhadra in Lingsugur. When the battle was in progress Rājādhārāja, seated on an elephant, was mortally wounded by Someśvara I's feudatory Per(ma)la Madarasa. At the death of their king the Cholas were retreating in confusion, when the deceased king's brother Rājendra II rallied the Chola forces with great skill and renewed operations against the enemy. Someśvara I's brother Jayasinha, and the Chālukya generals Pulikesin, Daśapamman, Nanni-Nojamba, Aśokaiyan, Araiyan, Moṭajaiyan and many others lost their lives in the battle. Someśvara I, together with his generals Vanniya-Revan, identified with the Haihaya feudatory Revarasa, Tuttan, Kuṇḍamaṇyan, and many others fled away. After this victory Rājendra II crowned himself king in the battlefield and returned to the Chola country, but he could not annex any part of the Chālukya kingdom.

The earliest known date of the inscriptions referring to the battle of Koppam is A.D. 1054. In that year Someśvara I was encamping at Kampili on the Tungabhadra, and led some aggressive campaigns against the Cholas from time to time. Shortly before the battle of Koppam he, along with his general Pulikesin, who lost his life at this battle, invaded Kāśchi and captured that city, wherefrom the Chola governor fled away. Bihāra's statement of the conquest of Kāśchi by Someśvara I is corroborated by an inscription of the reign of this king dated A.D. 1058. In A.D. 1058-59 Someśvara I is known to have led another expedition to the Chola country. Some time between A.D. 1059 and 1061 Someśvara I, together with his son Vikramādiya and his general Valadeva, made an attack on the kingdom of the Cholas. The Chola Rājendra II and his son Rājamahendrā advanced to resist the invaders. A battle took place at Muḍakāru, which seems to be the same as Muḍukakkere on the bank of the Tunga river, in the Channagiri Tīluk, Shimoga District. Someśvara I suffered defeat and fled away with Vikramādiya and the general Urugaiyan, while Valadeva lost his life in the engagement. The intensity of the struggle between the Chālukyas and the Cholas greatly increased during the reign of Rājendra's successor Vira-rājendra. An inscription issued in the latter part of Virarājendra's reign states that the king saw the back of Āhavamalla five times in battle. It means that he fought with his adversary at least five times. Someśvara, along with his son Vikramādiya and some feudatories, met Virarājendra first in the battlefield of Gangavādi, i.e. central Mysore. They were defeated and pushed back to the bank of the Tungabhadra. The next battle between the two kings was fought in the Andhra country.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Some time before A.D. 1049 Somesvara asserted his supremacy over the Eastern Chālukya king Rājarāja of the Andhra country. A stone inscription of Someśvara’s reign, dated A.D. 1057, has been found in the Rāmchandrapur Taluk of the Godāvari District. Someśvara I’s son Someśvara II, while serving his father as a governor in A.D. 1049 and 1053, assumed the title ‘the lord of Vengi.’ Vijayāditya VII, successor of the Eastern Chālukya Rājarāja, turned hostile to Someśvara I, and sought the protection of Virarājendra. After the battle of Gangavādi Virarājendra marched to Vengi, the capital of the Andhra country, to lend support to Vijayāditya against his enemies. In the battle that followed, the Chālukya general Chāmuḍaraja, the governor of Banavasi, lost his life, the nose of the queen of Irugaiyan, who was the daughter of Chāmuḍaraja, was cut off, and the Chālukya army under the leadership of Irugaiyan was routed.

Shortly after his success in the Andhra country Virarājendra met Someśvara I at Kūḍaḷ-saṅgamam, also mentioned as Kōḍal. According to Fleet it is the confluence of the Pañchagangā and the Krishna in the neighbourhood of Khidrapur. Mr. V. K. Pillai takes it to be the junction of the Tunga and Bhadrā. It is known from a record of Vikramāditya VI that in A.D. 1073 he granted land to the god Sāngamesvara at Kūḍaḷ. This Sāngamesvara temple is situated in the village Singepalle in the Rayadurg Taluk of the Bellary District. Kūḍaḷ-saṅgamam may be identified with this place. Someśvara I, along with his two sons Vikramāditya and Jayaśīhna, his feudatory Śiṅgan, who was the chief of Kośāl(a), his lieutenants Kēśava, Kettarasāṇ, Mārayan, Pottarayan, Ireechchayān, Aṅgalaṅ, and Māduvaṅaṅ, fought with all their might in the battle, but failed miserably. Śiṅgan fell fighting and Someśvara I, together with his sons and generals, fled away. Virarājendra claims to have seized Someśvara’s wives, family treasures, parasols etc. on this occasion. The victory at Kūḍaḷ was one of the greatest military achievements of the Cholas of that age, and they remembered it with pride for many generations.

In A.D. 1063-64 Someśvara led an expedition against the Cholas and encamped at Muḷukkākere on the Tunga, in the Shimoga District. He was opposed by Virarājendra there and was defeated. Virarājendra claims to have won victory over the Chālukyas at Muḷakkaru, which, according to some, means a winding river, but may be taken as identical with Muḷukkākere. It appears that not long after this engagement Virarājendra fought a sanguinary battle on the bank of a river with a number of generals, who seem to have
been the officers of Someśvara I, and killed many of them. Shortly afterwards Virarājendra accepted the challenge of Someśvara to try his strength with him again at Kūţal and reached with his army at Kāndai, a place in the neighbourhood of Kūţal. Someśvara, instead of meeting his adversary there at the appointed time, fled to the western coast, and his generals Devanāthaḥ, Sitti and Keśi retired. Virarājendra, having waited for the enemy for a month, overran Raṭāpādi and planted a pillar of victory on the Tungabhadrā. About this time Someśvara I succeeded in regaining his position in the Andhra country, and so Virarājendra moved from the Tungabhadrā towards Ve新格局. He inflicted a defeat on the Chalukya generals Janaṇātha of Dhārā, Rājamayan, and Mupparasan on the bank of the Kṛṣṇā near Visaiyavāḍi (Vijayawadā), and claimed to have restored Vījayāditya of the Eastern Chālukya family to power. All these wars between Someśvara I and the Chols were fought before the fifth year of Virarājendra’s reign (A.D. 1067). In A.D. 1067-68 Vikramāditya, son of Someśvara I, marched against the Chōla capital Gaṅgaikόṅḍa and plundered it. Someśvara I fought with the Chols for nearly a quarter of a century, and yielded to their military forces on many occasions. His enemies, however, could not wrest from him any part of his kingdom.

Besides the Chols Someśvara I had to fight with many other ruling dynasties of his time. The Śilāhāra Aparājita of Northern Konkan had two sons Vaijjaṇa II and Arikeśarīn (A.D. 1017). Vaijjaṇa II had three sons Chittarāja, Nāgārjuna, and Mummuṇi. After Arikeśarīn his nephews Chittarāja (A.D. 1026) and Mummuṇi ruled in succession. There was a civil war in Northern Konkan during the reign of Mummuṇi. Some time before A.D. 1047 Someśvara I, together with his generals, the Kākatiya Prola, Kadamba Chāmuṇḍarāja of Banavasi, the Yādava Ajjavasa, the Haihaya Revarasa, Madhusūdana alias Madhuva, and Pulikesin, invaded that country, overthrew Mummuṇi, and placed his own nominee on its throne. How long Someśvara kept Konkan under his control cannot be determined. Mummuṇi’s nephew Anantapāla, son of Nāgārjuna, claims that he defeated those enemies “who at a time of misfortune from relatives that had become hostile, having obtained power, devastated the whole Konkaṇa district, and harassed the gods and Brāhmaṇas.” Anantapāla’s adversaries seem to have been the Chālukyas. About this time Someśvara I raided Lāṭa and Gujārat. His adversary in Gujārat was the Chaulukya Bhima I, and in Lāṭa the Chaulukya Vatsarāja or his successor Trilochanapāla. He also invaded the adjoining territory of Mālavā with the assistance of his generals Nāgadeva, Guḍamaya, Jomaras, and Madhusūdana, and plundered Māṇḍapa (modern Māndu, in Dhār, Madhya Bhārat),
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Ujjayini, and Dhara, the capital of the Paramara Bhoja, who fled away. In A.D. 1055, when the Kalachuri Karṇa and the Chaulukya Bhima forcibly took possession of Mālava, Vikramāditya VI, at the order of his father Someśvara I, defeated them and restored Jayasimha, successor of Bhoja, to power. Some time before A.D. 1048 Someśvara came into conflict with the Kalachuri Karṇa. Bilhaṇa states that Someśvara I utterly destroyed the power of Karṇa, who, on the other hand, claims that he defeated the king of Kuntala. Pṛthvīra-parāngalam mentions that Karṇa vanquished Vikrama, i.e. Vikramāditya VI.

Someśvara I and his feudatory, the Kakatiya Prola, raided Kosala, and conquered Chakrakoṭa, in the Bastar State, after defeating a king of the Nāga dynasty. It is not unlikely that he came into clash with Virarājendra and Rājendra Chōja II at Chakrakoṭa. Prola claims to have defeated a chief named Bhadrāṅga (?), Kaḻḍaṛi, and killed Gonna, the chief of Purakūṭa. Vajrahaṭa V, king of Kaliṅga, suffered defeat at the hands of Someśvara I. Some time before A.D. 1047 Someśvara I, assisted by his son Vikramāditya and his feudatory Chāmuṇḍarājya, invaded Kerala or Malabar coast and defeated and killed the king of that country. Nāgadeva, the general of Someśvara I, subdued the revolt of the Yādavas of Seuṇa-deśa shortly before A.D. 1060. Someśvara I’s feudatory, the Kadamba Jayakesin I, son of Shashthadeva, who is referred to as the king of Koṅkana, conquered the Ālupas, king of Kāpardikadvipa, and uprooted Kāmadeva.

Several inscriptions of Someśvara I’s reign, with dates commencing from A.D. 1050, mention that he conquered Vaṅga, Magadha, Nēpā, Kanauj, Paśchāla, Kuru, Khasa, and Abhira. Bilhaṇa states that the prince Vikramāditya VI led expeditions against Gauḍa, Kāmaruṣa, Pāṇḍya, and Ceylon. But one may doubt the authenticity of all these claims, though there may be historical basis for some of them. In any case he must be regarded as a great king.

Someśvara I had four sons, viz. Someśvara II, Vikramāditya VI, Vīshṇuvardhana-Vijayāditya, and Jayasimha, all of whom occupied administrative posts under him. Someśvara II was in charge of Belvola and Purīgera, Vikramāditya VI governed Gaṅgavāḍi, Banavāsi, Sāntalīge, and Nolambavāḍi, and Jayasimha was in charge of Uchchāṅgi, Maṇḍalī, Sulungal etc. Jayasimha acted as subordinate of Vikramāditya VI. In recognition of the Kakatiya Prola’s military service Someśvara I granted him the Anmakōṇḍa-viṣhaya, modern Warangal District, Hyderabad. Someśvara I’s kingdom extended in the south up to Shimoga, Chitalḍroog, Anantapur, and

172
Kurnool Districts. He appointed his son Somesvara II as his successor, and died in March, 1068.

6. SOMESVARA II (A.D. 1068-1076)

Somesvara II, who assumed the title Bhuvanaikamalla, was involved in a war with his brother Vikramāditya immediately after his accession. Vikramāditya strengthened his position by marrying the daughter of Virarājendra who, in or before the sixth year of his reign (A.D. 1068-69), led an expedition against Somesvara II to secure the throne of the Deccan for his son-in-law. Virarājendra burnt the city of Kampili, set up a pillar of victory at Karadikal (modern village of Karadi, in the Lingsugur Taluk, Raichur District, Hyderabad), and declared Vikramāditya as the king of Raṭṭapāḍi seven and a half lakh country. Somesvara II, with the help of his cavalry forces, routed Virarājendra and established peace and order in his kingdom. After this Vikramāditya submitted to his brother and lived with him cordially, at least up to A.D. 1074. After his victory over the Chōjas, Somesvara II made a confederacy with the Chaulukya Karṇa of Gajarat, defeated the Paramā Jayasīhīha, successor of Bhoja, and occupied Mālava. He could not retain possession of it for a long time as the Paramāra Udayāditya, with the help of the Chāhamānas, drove him and his ally out of Mālava.

Vikramāditya VI is known to have been governing Bellary, Anantapur, Chitraladroog, and Dhārwār Districts from his headquarters at Govindavāḍi (modern Govindavada, a village in the Bayadrug Taluk, Bellary District), at least from A.D. 1071 to 1074. In A.D. 1072 Jayasīhīha, the younger brother of Vikramāditya, was in charge of Chitaldroog District. As all these territories are known to have been within the kingdom of Somesvara II during this period, both the princes must have administered them as his subordinates. That Vikramāditya was in the service of Somesvara II and was in cordial relation with him is proved by the Nriai lig inscription, dated A.D. 1074, which states that the Mahāmaṇḍalesvara Vikramāditya and Vishnuvardhanā-Viṣayaḍitya were then at Bankipura (in Dhārwār District) in the service of the king Bhuvanaikamalla. After the death of Virarājendra there was anarchy in the Chola country.

Vikramāditya VI, as a feudatory of Somesvara II, put down the revolt and placed Virarājendra's son Adhirājendra on the throne. Shortly afterwards, when Rājendra Chōla II alias Kulottunga I occupied the Chōla throne after the death of Adhirājendra in a popular commotion, Vikramāditya marched against the usurper but failed to dethrone him. Bilhaṇa's statement that about this time, i.e. in A.D. 1070, Vikramāditya overthrew Somesvara II is erroneous.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Inscriptions of Kulottunga I supply much information about his conflict with Vikramaditya VI during this period. An inscription of the year A.D. 1074 records his victory over the king of Kuntala, and another of A.D. 1076 mentions that Vikramaditya and Jayasiniha, having suffered defeat at his hands, plunged into the river. His inscription of A.D. 1080 states that he fought with Vikramaditya VI between Naigilli (in the Kolar District) and the Tungabhadra and captured two countries Gaagampaandaalam and Singanam. But in the midst of these conflicts with the Cholas Vikramaditya seized the Chalukya kingdom.

The Vikramadhakadeva-charita and a number of inscriptions of Vikramaditya VI's reign state that Someśvara II became vicious and neglectful of his royal duties; so Vikramaditya VI, with the help of the Hoysala Ereyanga and Pandya of the Chola family, defeated Someśvara, took him prisoner, and wielded the sovereignty of the Deccan. It is difficult to say whether this represents the whole truth. Unfortunately no further details of this palace revolution are known to us. The last known date of Someśvara II's reign is A.D. 1076 which is also the year of Vikramaditya VI's accession.

7. VIKRAMADITYA VI (A.D. 1076-1126)

Vikramaditya VI, also known as Permadheva, assumed the title Tribhuvanamalla. Immediately after his accession in A.D. 1076 he started a new era, called after his own name. An inscription dated in the second year of the Chalukya-Vikrama era has been found. Jayasiniha governed Banavasi, Sintalige, and Kadur as a subordinate of his brother Vikramaditya VI at least up to A.D. 1082. Some time after his marriage with the Silhara princess Chandralekha, Vikramaditya received the news that Jayasiniha had turned hostile to him and advanced with his army to the bank of the Krishnä, where he was joined by many feudatories. He opposed his brother there and suffered defeat at the initial stage of the battle. Eventually he succeeded in taking Jayasiniha prisoner, but released him shortly afterwards.

After a long period of peace following his accession Vikramaditya VI marched against the Cholas and took Kâñchi some time before A.D. 1085. Some time between A.D. 1091 and 1093 he, along with his general Govindarasa, burnt Vengi, defeated the Velanâši Gonka I, and wrested Andhra from Vira-Chola, son of Kulottunga Chola I. In the latter part of A.D. 1099 Kulottunga reconquered Veengi from the Chalukyas and retained his control over it till A.D. 1117. In the closing years of Kulottunga's reign, when his son Vikrama Chola, the viceroy of Andhra
LA TER CHALUKYAS AND KALACHURIS OF KALYÀÑA

country, left for the Chola capital to secure his succession, Vikramaditya VI annexed it again to his kingdom. Inscriptions of Vikramaditya prove that he was in possession of the Andhra country from A.D. 1118 to at least 1124.

Vikramaditya VI came into conflict with the Hoysalas of Gaṅgavādi, which included Hassan, Tumkur, and part of the Mysore Districts, and had its capital at Dorasamudra. The Chalukya Someśvara I had married a Hoysala princess, and the Hoysala Nṛpākāma’s son Vinayāditya (A.D. 1047-1101) acknowledged the supremacy of Someśvara I, Someśvara II, and Vikramaditya VI. Shortly after his death the Hoysalas tried to assert their independence. About this time the Paramāra Jagaddeva abdicated the throne of Mālava in favour of his brother Naravarman, and became an ally of Vikramaditya VI. The Chalukya emperor sent Jagaddeva to put down the revolt of the Hoysalas. The Hoysala princes Ballāla I, Vishnuzvardhana and Udayāditya, sons of Ereyaṅga, and the grandsons of Vinayāditya, gave stiff resistance to the Chalukya army under Jagaddeva, and won some initial successes over the invader. But Jagaddeva eventually succeeded in forcing his way into Dorasamudra and bringing the Hoysalas under control. A Śravaṇa Belgola inscription, dated A.D. 1118, states that the Hoysala Vishnuzvardhana’s general Gaṅgarāja made a night attack on the army of the Chalukya Triṃhuvaṇamalla, encamped at Kannegal under the command of the twelve sāmans, and defeated it. The Śinda chief Acha II of Erambarage is stated to have pursued and prevailed against Hoysala at the command of the universal emperor Vikramaditya. Vishnuzvardhana’s inscriptions claim that the king conquered Belvola, Hānuṅgal, Banavāsi, and Noḷambavādi, and his horses, in course of his victorious march, bathed in the Krṣṇa river some time before A.D. 1120. These, no doubt, reflect the different phases of the conflict between the Hoysalas and the Chalukyas in the early part of the twelfth century. Though the relation between these two dynasties became acrimonious from time to time, the inscriptions of Ballāla I and Vishnuzvardhana, dating from A.D. 1101, prove that they acknowledged the supremacy of Vikramaditya.

The Kadamba Jayakesin I of Goa, son of Shashṭhadeva, owed allegiance to Vikramaditya VI at least up to A.D. 1071. Jayakesin I had two sons, Guvaladeva II and Vijayāditya. Guvaladeva was ruling in A.D. 1098. His successor Vijayāditya seems to have revolted against the Chalukyas. The Śinda Acha II of Erambarage, at the order of Vikramaditya, took Gove, burnt it down, and put to flight Lakshma, a commander of the Kadamba army. Thereupon
the Kadambas submitted to Vikramaditya. Vijayaditya's son Jayakesin II, whose known regnal years are A.D. 1125 and 1147, married Mailaladevi, daughter of Vikramaditya VI, and ruled his territory along with Koṅkaṇa 900, Halasige 12000, Payve 500, and Kavaḍi-dvipa 125000 jointly with his queen as a subordinate of the Chālukyas. Acha II also put down the revolt of a Pāṇḍya chief of Ucchaṇga.

A branch of the Silhāra dynasty ruled at Karahāṭaka, modern Karāḍ, in the Sāṭāra District, from the tenth century A.D. Kolhāpur and Panhalā were the other headquarters of this family. The Chālukya Jayasirhiṇa II asserted his supremacy over it. Vikramaditya VI married Chandralekhā, the daughter of a king of this family, who seems to have been Mārarāṇa. Mārarāṇa had five sons, Guvala II, Gaṅgadeva, Ballāla, Bhoja and Gaṇparaṇāditya, who ruled in succession. Bhoja, who came to the throne after A.D. 1086, revolted and attacked the territory of the Sindas of Erambarage, but the Sinda Acha II succeeded in repulsing him. Vikramaditya VI led an expedition against the rebel Bhoja and encamped at Appayanaṇadakuppa on the Bhimarathi river in A.D. 1100. But as Bhoja is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1108, he could not evidently be brought under control.

An inscription, dated A.D. 1078, states that Seven Koṅkaṇas became like bracelets to Vikramaditya through the aid of his brother Jayasimha. Vikramaditya's conquest of Koṅkaṇa is mentioned in another inscription. An inscription, dated A.D. 1113, records that the Chālukya Kāmadēva ruled the Koṅkaṇa-vṛṣṭra as a feudatory of Vikramaditya VI.

The Yādavas of Seula-dēsa, whose kingdom extended from the Ahmadnagar District to the Narmada, were feudatories of Vikramaditya VI. Iramadeva, son of Seulañchandra of this family, acknowledges the supremacy of Vikramaditya VI in an inscription dated A.D. 1100. Vikramaditya VI put down the revolt of the Yādavas, who declared hostility against him about this time.

Some time before A.D. 1088 Vikramaditya crossed the Narmada and brought Kanama and some other chiefs under his control. It was probably on this occasion that he plundered Lāja and burnt the city of the Gurjara king, who seems to have been the Chaulukya Karṇa. A fragmentary inscription relates that Vikramaditya's feudatory Bījāla, son of Piṭṭa, had some relation with Jayasirhiṇa of Gurjararāṇa, i.e. Jayasirhiṇa-Siddharāja, son of Karṇa. The Kalachuri king Jājalladeva of Ratanpur (the capital of Dakshina-Kosala) pushed the western frontier of his kingdom near the border of the empire of the Chālukyas, but Vikramaditya checked his fur-
LATER CHÂLUKYAS AND KALACHURIS OF KÂLYÂNA

ther advance towards the west. Some time before A.D. 1124 his feudatory Pândyadeva of Nolambavâdi chased at his command the king of Ratânpur, who was apparently Jâjalladeva I. A large number of Vikramâditya VI's inscriptions, with dates beginning from A.D. 1077, state that he conquered Gurjara, Dâhala, Konkaça, Maru, Nepâla, Barbara, Kashmir, Sindhu, Turushka, Abhira, Nallura, Vidarbha and Vaṅga. Vikramâditya probably made some of these conquests before his accession, but much of it seems to be mere panegyrics.

Vikramâditya VI's empire extended up to Hassan, Tumkur and Cuddapah Districts in the south, Khammamett District in Hyderabad and Godâvari District in the east and south-east, and the Narypad in the north. The Hoysalas of Dorasamudra, Kadambas of Goa, Pândyas of Nolambavâdi, Sântaras of Patti-Pomburcha (modern Humcha in the Nagar Taluk, Shimoga District), Sindas of Emarbarage, Yadavas of Sêu-ba-deśa, and the Kâkatiyas of Telûgâna were his vassals. Vikramâditya VI had at least three sons, Mallikârjuna, Jayâkarâ, and Someśvara III. Mallikârjuna was the governor of Tardavâdi, and Jayâkarâ administered Kaladgi and Belgaum Districts. In A.D. 1083 Vikramâditya VI sent an embassy to the court of Vîjâyabahu, king of Ceylon. The Kâshmirian poet Bûhiâ, the author of Vikramândâkâdera-charita, and Vijiânesvara, the author of Mitâkhâhârâ, graced his court. He erected a big temple and founded a city, which was given the name Vikramapura. The last known date of his reign is A.D. 1126. He was succeeded by his son Someśvara III in that year.

8. SOMEŚVARA III (A.D. 1126-1138)

Someśvara III assumed the titles Bhûlokamalla and Tribhuvanamalla. The Hoysala Vishuvardhana led an expedition against the kingdom of the Châluâyas during his reign, captured Barâvâsi, assaulted the Uchehângi fort, and laid siege to Pânuigal, ruled by the Kadamba Mallikârjuna. The Hoysalas were, however, ultimately routed by the Châluâyas. It is known from an inscription found in the Shîkârpur Taluk of the Shimoga District, dated A.D. 1129, that Someśvara III came to the south in course of an expedition and encamped in Hulluri tîrtha. He had to surrender the Andhra country to Kulottuṅga Chola II before A.D. 1134, though he is credited with conquests of Andhra and Drâmila countries in an inscription of this period. The statement that he conquered Magadha and Nepâla cannot be verified, but it probably refers to the rule of Kârâja dynasties in these kingdoms.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Somesvara III, who was given the title Sarvajña-bhūpa or Sarvajña-Chakravartti for his extensive knowledge, composed the book entitled Mānasollāsa or Abhikāśhitārtha-chintāmāni. He had two sons, Taila III and Jagadekamalla II. Taila III governed Sindavaḍī in A.D. 1120 under Vikramaditya VI, and continued to hold that position during the reign of his father. The Kadamba Taila administered Banavasi as a feudatory of Someśvara III, and Vira Pāṇḍya was the vassal of this Chāḷukya monarch in Nolambavaḍī, the capital of which was Ucchāṅgā. Someśvara III was succeeded by Jagadekumalla II in A.D. 1138.

9. JAGADEKAMALLA (A.D. 1138-1151) AND TAILA III (A.D. 1151-1156)

Either in the latter part of the reign of Someśvara III or in the early part of that of Jagadekamalla, the Hoysalas of Gangavaḍī, the Kadambas of Goa, and some other feudatories revolted, but the Sinda Permāḍideva, son of Acha II of Erambarage, helped the Chāḷukyas in putting down the revolt. An inscription of Permatīleva, issued during Jagadekamalla II’s reign, states that Permāḍideva defeated Kulaśekharāṅka, besieged Chaṭṭa and beheaded him, pursued Jayakeśin, invested Dorasamudra, and pursued the Hoysala Vishñuvardhana as far as Belupura and took the city. He finally came to the mountain pass of Vāhāṇa in pursuit of his enemy. Jayakeśin referred to is Jayakeśin II of the Kadamba family of Goa. Chaṭṭa seems to have been Chaṭṭa II, ruler of Toragale (modern Torgal), whose grandson Barma is known to have been ruling in A.D. 1188. The Hoysala Vishñuvardhana increased his power and prestige and stationed himself at Baṅkāpura in Dharwar, but paid nominal allegiance to the Chāḷukyas.

About the year A.D. 1143 Jagadekamalla, together with the Hoysala Narasimha, invaded Mālava, dethroned the Paramāra Jayavarman, and placed one Ballāla on the throne. It was probably on this occasion that Jagadekamalla plundered Lāṭa and won a victory over the Gurjara king, who was Kumārapāla. In the south Jagadekamalla fought successfully with Chola Kulottunga II and Anantavarman Chōḍaṅgāga of Kalinga, and also put down the revolt of a Nolamba-Pallava chief. Vira Pāṇḍya of Nolambavaḍī, Goravadevarasa of Banavasi, Jagaddeva Sāntara of Pomburcha, Keśavagovinda of Belvola etc, Iruṅgulachola of Anantapur, and Sinda Permāḍideva of Erambarage were his feudatories. The last known date of Jagadekamalla II is A.D. 1151 in which year he was succeeded by his brother Taila III.
Later Chalukyas and Kalachuris of Kalyana

Taila III, who assumed the title Trailokyamalla, was also known as Nurmac Taila. His inscriptions prove that he was in possession of Shimoga, Cuddapah, and Kurnool Districts in the south. Some time before A.D. 1153 he succeeded in repelling the attacks of the Chalukya Kumārapāla and the Chola Kulottunga II. At this time, the Kākatiyas of Telengāna revolted. Taila III, along with the Santara Jagaddeva, marched to Warangal to punish the rebels, but was taken prisoner by the Kākatiya Prola, who is said to have released him forthwith out of devotion for him. This incident gave a crushing blow to the prestige of the Chalukyas. Ere long the Chalukya empire was shattered by internal revolts. In A.D. 1156 the feudatory chief Bijjala of the Kalachuri dynasty practically wielded the sovereignty of the Deccan. Bijjala and the other feudatories, however, acknowledged the nominal sway of the Chalukyas till the death of Taila III. An inscription from Hanamkonda, dated A.D. 1163, states that Taila III died of dysentery for fear of the Kakatiya Rudradeva. The Deccan was ruled by Bijjala and his successors for nearly a quarter of a century, till the fortunes of the Chalukyas were restored by Somesvara IV, son of Taila III.

10. The Kalachuri Usurpation (A.D. 1156-1181)

Bijjala, who wrested the sovereignty of Kalyanā from Taila III, was a member of one of the many branches of the Kākatiya family, which ruled in different parts of the Deccan as feudatories of the Chalukyas. Krishnā, an early member of this family, is said to have conquered Kālaṇjara and Dāhala. In his lineage was born Kannama, who flourished in Maṅgaliveḍa, in the country of Tārakāḍu in Kuntāla. Maṅgaliveḍa is the modern Maṅgalavēḍa, in the old Sangli State. Kannama's son was the king Rāja, whose sons were Amrūgū, Saṅkama I, and Jogama. Jogama, who is said to have attained to the mighty splendour of primitive kings, was succeeded by his son Permati, also called Hemmati. Hemmati is known to have been governing Tardavadi (in the Bijapur District) in A.D. 1129 as a feudatory of the Chalukya Somesvara III. He was succeeded by his son Bijjala before A.D. 1147, in which year the latter served the Chalukya Jagadekamalla II as a feudatory. Bijjala also served Taila III in that capacity for some time, and got the charge of the administration of the southern divisions of the Chalukya kingdom, which included Banavasi and Nolambavadi in addition to Tardavadi. Taila III's defeat at the hands of the Kākatiyas of Telengāna encouraged Bijjala to bid for the sovereignty of the Deccan. With the help of the Silahāra Vijayāditya, son of
Gaṇḍarāditya, ruler of Karahāṭa, and the Daṇḍadhīnāṭha Rā́čha, the officer in charge of Nagarakhaṇḍa in Banavāśi, he seized the throne of the Chālukyas.

Bijjala assumed the titles Tribhuvanamalla, Niśākamalla, Saṇīvārasiddhi, and Giriḍurgamalla. Several inscriptions of his reign prove that he ascended the throne of the Deccan in A.D. 1156 and occupied Kalyāṇa before A.D. 1160. He, however, acknowledged the nominal sway of Taila III so long as the latter was alive. He devoted the early years of his reign to putting down disturbances in the south. Some time before A.D. 1162 he is known to have been encamping at Balligāve in the Banavāśi-nāḍ in order to subdue the southern region. He destroyed Tagarate in the Shimoga District, defeated the Sāntara Jagadeva of Pomburpa, and laid siege to the fort of Gutti (Gooty in Anantapur), which was destroyed. The Hoysala Narasimha I suffered a reverse at his hands on the bank of the Tungabhadra. The Pāṇḍya chief Vijaya Pāṇḍya, also known as Kāma, who refused to acknowledge his supremacy, was brought under control. Bijjala fought successfully with the Cheras of the Malabar coast, the Chola Rajarāja II, Velayath Rajendra-Chōla II of Andhura, the Ganga Rāghava of Kalīṅga in the south, and the Chaulukya Kumārapāla, whose kingdom included Gurjara, Lāṭa, Saurāṣṭra, and Mālava, in the north. He inflicted a defeat on the Kalachuri Jayasimha of the Chedi country, but his victory over this Kalachuri monarch was not decisive, as the latter also claims to have won a victory over the king of Kunṭala. The statements in some inscriptions of the successors of Bijjala that he invaded Śīhala, Nepala, Turushka, Anga, Vanga, and Megadha are obviously hyperboles. Keśapaṇya-Nāyaka of Banavāśi, Vijaya Pāṇḍya of Nolambavādi, Barma or Bammidevaras of Sindavādi, Sindia Chāvuṇḍa II of Erāmbaragre, Sridhara of Tardavādi, Kadamba Somadeva of Hangal (Hīnugal), Silahāra Vijayaśi-ditya of Karahāṭa, and the Raṭṭa Kartavirya III of Saundatti were his feudatories.

Some works of the late period, viz. the Basavapurāṇa, Channabasavapurāṇa, and Bijjalarāja-charita narrate stories referring to Bijjala’s quarrel with Basava, son of Madiraja, the founder of the Lingayat sect. It is stated that Bijjala, a patron of the Jains, appointed Basava as his minister, but soon quarrelled with him as he was using his office for the propagation of his creed. Basava murdered the king through his agents and himself committed suicide to avoid the extreme punishment at the hands of the son of the deceased king. The authenticity of the story may reasonably be doubted as the contemporary evidence proves that Bijjala abdicated.
1.ATER CHALUKYAS AND KALACHURIS OF KALYANA

the throne in favour of his son. An inscription of this period from Ablur states that Ekantada Rāmāyya, a great devotee of Śiva, who brought discredit on the Jains by performing some miracles, won the admiration of Bijjala. Bijjala gave him a jaya-patra (a certificate of victory) over the Jains and honoured him by laving his feet.

Bijjala had four sons, Someśvara, Saṅkama, Ahavamalla and Sīnghāna, and one daughter Siriyādevi, who was given in marriage to Sinda Chāvulaći II of Erambarage. An inscription reports that in the 18th Kalachuri (Bijjala) year (8. 1900 = A.D. 1168) Bijjala abdicated his throne in favour of his son Someśvara. Another inscription, dated A.D. 1165, mentions Someśvara as the king of Kuntala. It seems that Someśvara was associated in the government with his father from A.D. 1165.

Someśvara, also known as Somadeva and Sovideva, assumed the title Rāja-Murārī. His inscriptions fix the date of his accession in A.D. 1168. The Shimoga District was included in his kingdom. He was also in possession, in A.D. 1174, of the Kṛishṇā District which was probably annexed by Bijjala. Someśvara is said to have conquered Chola, Gurjara, and Lāṭa countries before A.D. 1172. At this time the Chola country was ruled by Rajarāja II, and Gurjara and Lāṭa were ruled by Chaulukya Kumārapāla. Some time before A.D. 1174 Someśvara is stated to have plundered Khasa, Kalinga, Kimmira, Turushka, Chera, and Saurāṣṭra. During this period Kalinga and Kimmira (Kimide, modern Kimide, in the Ganjam District, were under the sway of the Ganga Rajarāja II. Someśvara’s feudatory, the Kadamba Sovideva, took prisoner in battle the Changalva king Mahādeva, who ruled western Mysore and Coorg. Someśvara’s minister Bayalike Keśimaya governed Banavasi, Sindavādi, Tardavādi, and Hānuṅgal. The last known date of Someśvara’s reign is A.D. 1177, which is also the earliest known date of the reign of his younger brother and successor Saṅkama.

Saṅkama II had an able general named Kāvaṇa, who had seventy-two officers to serve him. Kāvaṇa defeated the Velanāṇṭi Rājendra-Chōla II of the Andhra country, won victory over the Chola Rajarāja II, led an expedition to the south through Banavasi, and fought successfully with the Hoyala Ballāla II. The Kadamba Vijayāditya of Goa and the Silhāra Aparāditya II of Northern Konkan yielded to his forces. He claims to have worsted in battle the king of Gurjara, who was the Chaulukya Bhīma II. An inscription of his reign makes the very extravagant claim that he conquered Gauḍa, Magadha, Turushka, and Śīṅhala. The Sinda
İśvara-bhūpa, who governed Banaväsi, Edevatte etc., and the Sinda Vikkayya, son of Chāvuṇḍa II of Erambarage, were his feudatories. He was succeeded by his younger brother Ahavamalla.

Ahavamalla's inscriptions fix the date of his accession in A.D. 1180. Like his predecessors he carried on campaigns against his neighbours. With the help of his generals Kesimayya, Lakshmāṇa, and Chanḍjugideva, he defeated the Velanāṭi Gotkā III of the Andhra country, plundered Kāñcchi after defeating Kulottuṅga Chola III, won victory over the Hoysala Ballāḷa II, and subdued the Kadamba Vijayāditya of Goa. He also worsted in battle the Silāhara Aparāditya II of Northern Konkan, and the Paramāra Vindhyavarman of Mālava. An inscription, dated A.D. 1181, gives him credit for conquering the Chaulika army. This may be referring to his success in frustrating an early attempt of the Chalukya Somesvara IV to conquer the Deccan. His governor in Banavāsi, Śantalige, etc., was his general Kesimayya. In A.D. 1181 Somesvara IV succeeded in wresting from Ahavamalla the larger portion of the Deccan including Kalyāṇa. After this discomfiture Ahavamalla continued to rule Belvola and Banavāsi for two more years. The last known date of his reign is A.D. 1183, and he was succeeded by his youngest brother Sinhaḷa in that year.

11. SOMESVARA IV (A.D. 1181-c. 1189), THE LAST CHALUKYA RULER

The political status of Somesvara IV, son of Taila III, during the rule of the Kalachuris is not known. Some suggest that he resided at Annigere in the Dharwar District during this period. In any case he ascended the throne in A.D. 1181-82 and assumed the title Tribhuvanamalla. Within two or three years, as noted above, he defeated the Kalachuri rulers Ahavamalla and Sinhaḷa and recovered his ancestral kingdom. In this he was greatly helped by his general Brahma, also called Bomma and Bammayya.

An inscription from Kurgod, in the Bellary Tāluk of the Bellary District, states that in A.D. 1181-82 Somesvara IV was on the throne of Kalyāṇa and that, under him, the Sinda Rachamalla ruled over Ballakunde from the fort of Kurugodā. Modern Kurgod. Other inscriptions of his reign prove that Shīmoga, Chittaldrog, Bellary and Bijāpur Districts were included in his kingdom. Kāmadevārāśa
of Banavasi and Hānuṅgal, Hoysala Ballāla II of Dorasamudra, and Vijaya Pāṇḍya of Nolambavāḍi were his feudatories.

Somasēvara IV invited the Saiva Ekantāda Ramayya to his palace and showed him reverence. He ruled the Deccan up to the Godāvari river in the north till at least A.D. 1184, and the last known date of his supremacy over the Bellary and Shimoga Districts is A.D. 1189. He was deprived of his sovereignty of the Deccan by the Yiḍava Bhillama in or before that year. He then took shelter with the Kadamba Jayakeshīn III of Goa, who acknowledged his suzerainty at least up to A.D. 1198. Nothing further is known of Somesvara IV.

2. This genealogy, given in later grants, is not regarded as reliable by either Bhandarkar or Fleet (Bom. Gaz. Vol. I, Part II, pp. 211, 378-9, 427). Altekar takes the same view (Nāratrakutas, p. 127).
4. An inscription in the Ambarnath temple belongs to the Mohāmdeśavēra Mahāvanrajā (KL, No. 398). Some identify this chief with the Siḥtiha Mummunī. The date of the record is read by some as S. 982 = A.D. 1060. If the reading of the date is correct, Mummunī is to be taken to have been overthrown after A.D. 1060. But Kielhorn remarks that the reading of the recorded numerical figure as 8 is doubtful.
5. See p. 47.
6. Cf. Ch. XV for the contents of the Manasollāsa.
7. About this time some chiefs of the Chāḷukya dynasty were wielding political power in the southern part of the kingdom of the Chāḷukyas. An inscription, dated A.D. 1160, found in the Sagar Tīluk, Shimoga District, states that the Sāntara Jagaddeva ruled Banavasi and Santalige as a feudatory of Bhūlokamalla. An inscription from the same Tīluk, issued in the same year, mentions Trāṭikyamalla as the overlord of Jagadeśa. Some inscriptions, dated A.D. 1164, relate that the Chāḷukya Trāṭikyamalla was ruling Shimoga, Tumkur, and Kadur Districts, and the Hoysala Narasimha of Gaṅgavatī was his vassal. Another epigraphic record reports that in A.D. 1170 Malādeva Chōla-Mahārāja was ruling Govindavatī as a subordinate of Trāṭikyamalla. An inscription, dated A.D. 1184, from Dāvanagrī Tīluk, Chapaladog District, records that when the Chāḷukya Jagadekamalla, who conquered Lātade, Pallava, and Kallīgā, was ruling his kingdom, the king Bijjāla's feudatory Vījaya Pāṃḍya was ruling Nolambavāḍi. Another record, dated A.D. 1165, from the same locality, states that Vījaya Pāṇḍya ruled Nolambavāḍi as a subordinate of Jagadekamalla. An inscription discloses that when in A.D. 1109 Jagadekamalla was ruling from Kālyāna, his vassal Malādeva Chōla was administering Anantapur District. The Chāḷukya Jagadekamalla is known to have been ruling the Bellary and Tumkur Districts in A.D. 1172, 1179, 1181, and 1183. The Hoysala Ballāla's acknowledgment of the supremacy of Jagadekamalla is proved by his inscriptions dated A.D. 1187 and 1194. The identity of these three Chāḷukya kings Bhūlokamalla, Trāṭikyamalla, and Jagadekamalla cannot be established.
APPENDIX

THE ŚILĀHĀRAS

Reference has been made above, more than once, to the Śilāhāras. There were three distinct families of this name, ruling respectively in Northern Konkan, Southern Konkan, and the South Marāṭhā country comprising the districts of Kolhāpur, Miraj and Karhād. They were founded in the times of the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas and were feudatories to them. The title Tagarapura-vardhāvāra, borne by all of them, indicates that they once ruled at the city of Tagara.

The first two of these dynasties, founded about the middle of the ninth century A.D., passed through vicissitudes of fortunes during the suzerainty of the later Chālukyas of Kalyāṇa. These have been referred to in course of the general narrative in this chapter.

The third Śilāhāra family, founded in the tenth century A.D. by Jātiga, with his capital probably at Karhād, had a more distinguished career. The chiefs ruled as independent or semi-independent sovereigns after the fall of the Rāṣhṭrakūṭa empire. Southern Konkan was added to their dominions some time before A.D. 1058.

Gaṇḍarāditya of this family, who ruled in the first half of the twelfth century A.D., was a famous figure, and is said to have fed a hundred thousand Brāhmaṇas. He constructed a large tank called Gaṇḍasamudrā (sea of Gaṇḍa) in the Miraj District, placed on its margin images of Buddha, Jīna and Śiva, and assigned land for the maintenance of each.

Vijayadāitya, the son and successor of Gaṇḍarāditya, enabled the Northern Śilāhāras to recover their independence, and aided Bījāla in his revolt against the Later Chālukyas. During the reign of Bhoja II, son and successor of Vijayadāitya, the Kalachuris wanted to establish their authority over him, but without success. Bhoja II formally declared independence, but Śiṅghaṇa defeated him and annexed his principality to the Yādava dominions, as mentioned above.

The Śilāhāras carried the Suvarṇa-Garuda-Dhvaja (banner of a golden Garuḍa), and used the title Śrīman-Mahālakṣmi-labdha-vara-prasūda. Thus Mahālakṣmi was their tutelary deity and they were followers of the Puranic and Vedic religion. An epigraphic record 1 describes the Śilāhāra family as “the best of the Sinhala kings”, indicating some real or fancied connection with the island of Ceylon. According to the same record, the Śilāhāras were descended from Jimūtavāhana, the lord of the Vīdūḍharas, son of Jimūtaketu, who gave his life to Garuḍa.

1. EI, III. 292.
CHAPTER VII

THE YĀDAVAS OF DEVAGIRI

The predecessors of the Yādavas of Devagiri ruled over a country comprising Khandesh, Nāsik, and Ahmadnagar Districts in the Bombay State, as vassals of the Rāṣṭrakūtas of Manyakheta and the Chālukyas of Kalyāṇa for more than three hundred years. The founder of this feudatory family was Dṛḍhāprahāra, who is said to have been the son of Subahu, king of Dvārakātapaṇa, modern Dwāракā, in Kāthiāwār. Dṛḍhāprahāra flourished in the first half of the ninth century A.D., and established his capital at Chandrādityapura, modern Chāndor, in the Nāsik District. His son and successor Seulaṣṭacandra I founded a city called Seulaṇapura and also gave the name Seulaṇa-desa or Sevulaṇa-desa to his kingdom after his own. It was situated on the confines of Dāṇḍaka, and included Devagiri, modern Daulatābād, in the Aurangābād District. The successors of Seulaṣṭacandra are referred to as the Seulas in their own inscriptions as well as in those of their neighbours. A remote successor of Seulaṣṭacandra was Karna, whose son Bhillama V was the first independent king of the dynasty.¹

1. BHILLAMA V

Bhillama ascended the throne in A.D. 1185, when there was a great political upheaval in the Deccan. Though the Chālukya Someśvara IV Tribhuvanamalla succeeded in recovering his empire from the Kalachuris with the help of his general Brahma, he failed to consolidate his power by putting down all the refractory elements. This offered a favourable opportunity to Bhillama to bid for paramount power in the Deccan. He had a number of able generals, such as Jaitraśhāha, Peyiya Sahilāi, Mayideva, and Lakhkhaṇa. With their help he organised an army of more than two lakhs of infantry and twelve thousand cavalry, and launched an aggressive campaign. He wrested from Someśvara IV not only Kalyāṇa, the capital of the Chālukyas, but also Kisukā-sūdrā, the capital of which was Erambarage (modern Yelburga, Lingsugur, Hyderabad), Tārdavādis-pūrṇa (country round Mutgi in the Bāgawāli Tālūk, Bijapur District), Belvola (country round Gadag, in the Dharwar District), and the adjoining territories. The Chālukya Emperor, in his distress, took shelter with the Kadambas of Goa, and was acknowledged as suzerain by the Kadamba Jayakesi III
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

at least up to A.D. 1198. About this time the chief of Maṅgalavesṭaka (modern Maṅgalveṣṭaka in the old Sāṇglī State) lost his life in an engagement with the Sevūnas (Sevūnas). Bhillama next invaded the kingdom of the Hoysalas of Dorasamudra, who had also taken advantage of the weakness of the Chāḷukyas to declare independence about this time. In vain did Ballāla II, the king of the Hoysalas, try to defend his kingdom against the incursion of the Sevūnas. Bhillama overran the Hoysala kingdom and reached Seringapatam, in the Mysore District. During this campaign he also invaded the territory of the Cholas and won a victory over Kulottuṅga III. In the meantime Ballāla II organised another strong army, and confronted the Sevūnas at Ingalakuppe, modern village of Ingalaguppe, in the Seringapatam Taluk. In A.D. 1188-1189 he inflicted a severe defeat upon Bhillama which forced the latter to withdraw from the Hoysala country. Inscriptions of Bhillama’s reign refer to his supremacy over Belvola, Tardavadi, and Madaghaḷ in the old Jath State. The Sīlāhāras of Northern and Southern Konkan, Kadambas of Goa, and the Rājas of Saundatti do not seem to have acknowledged his suzerainty.

Bhillama also led expeditions against his northern neighbours. He wrested the city of Srīvāḍhana, near Nagpur, from a chief named Antala. At this time the Paramāra Vindhyavarman was ruling in Māḷava, the Chaulukya Bhima II was ruling in the Gūrjara country, and the Chāḷukya Kēlaṅga was ruling in Naḍūla (Naḍulā). Bhillama overran Māḷava and Gūrjara after defeating Vindhyavarman and Bhima II and reached the border of the Naḍūla kingdom in the old Sīrohi State. Kēlaṅga proved himself equal to the occasion and baffled all the attempts of the Sevūnas to make further advance in that direction. After this discomfiture Bhillama retired to his own kingdom. The other adversaries defeated by Bhillama, viz. the Vārāḷas, Malla, Mallaṇjī, Mūrvī, and Anṇa cannot be identified. The statement of the Mutgi inscription of his reign that he won victories over the Kālingas, Gaṅgas, Vaṅgas, Anṇas, Nepāḷas, and the Paṇḍhaḷas seems to be a hyperbole.

In the closing years of his reign Bhillama was again engaged in a terrible struggle with the Hoysalas. Ballāla II launched an aggressive campaign against the Sevūnas and readily captured Virāṭa’s fort (Hangal), Guttī, and Raṭṭapalli. The Hoysala army next attacked the fort at Soratur, twelve miles south of Gadag. Jaitraśīṅhha, Bhillama’s general of the southern forces, finding his position untenable there, withdrew to the fortress at Lokkīguṇḍi, modern Lokkundi, six miles east of Gadag, where there was a big concentration of the Sevūna army. Ballāla II pursued him there
and compelled him to surrender the fort. After this unique achievement Ballala advanced towards Erambare, which was defended by a number of fortresses. Within a short time the city was besieged and taken possession of by the Hoysala army, which finally advanced up to the Krishna river in pursuit of the Sevunas. All these conquests, which were made between A.D. 1191 and 1192, made Ballala master of Huligere (the country around Lakshmeshwar, Dharwar District), Belvola, Kiskuḍa and the adjoining territories up to the Heddoḍ, i.e. the Krishna river. After finishing his northern conquest he encamped at Lokkigulḍi for some time in A.D. 1193. He made Erambare his capital for the northern countries and is known to have resided there in A.D. 1196.

According to Hemārdi Bhillama founded the city of Devagiri and presumably transferred his capital there. The earliest mention of Devagiri as the capital of the Sevunas is found in an inscription of Jaitugi, also known as Jaitrapāla, son of Bhillama, dated A.D. 1196. The last known date of Bhillama is A.D. 1193, but an inscription of Jaitugi is dated A.D. 1192. Another inscription of this king bears a date corresponding to A.D. 1196, which was the sixth year of his reign. All these point out that Bhillama associated with him his son Jaitugi in the government from A.D. 1191 and died shortly after A.D. 1193.

2. JAITUGI

Jaitugi failed to dislodge Ballala II from Kiskuḍa and Belvola. He however succeeded in wresting the eastern portion of Sindavāḍi country in which was situated the modern Adoni Tēḷuḍ of the Bellary District. Though he claims victory over the Pāṇḍyas, apparently of Nolambavāḍi, who were feudatories of the Hoysalas, he could not push the boundary of his kingdom further south. Ballala II is known to have been ruling the Siraguppa and Bellary Tēḷuḍ of the Bellary District even after the death of Jaitugi.

About this time the northern part of the Kurnool District seems to have passed into the hands of the Sevunas. The extension of the kingdom of the Sevunas up to the confluence of the Krishna and the Tungabhadrā brought Jaitugi near the border of the kingdom of the Kāṭatiyas and he now pressed hard on them. The Kāṭatiya Mahādeva, who ascended the throne shortly after A.D. 1195, used all his forces to resist the advance of the enemies, but failed. In the engagement that followed he lost his life, and his young son Gaṇapati was taken prisoner. The whole of the Kāṭatiya kingdom lay prostrate before Jaitugi. About this time Jaitugi seems to have successfully fought with Anaṅgābhīma II of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

the Gaṅga dynasty of Kaliṅga and Kulottuṅga III of the Imperial Chola dynasty. Subsequently Jaitugi took compassion on the young Gaṅgapati, released him, and placed him on his paternal throne.

Like his father Jaitugi also waged wars against his neighbours to the north of the Narmāḍā. The Paramāra Subhaṭāvarman and the Chauḷukya Bhirma II yielded to his force and their kingdoms were plundered by the Sevūṇa army. Probably about this time Jaitugi came into clash with the forces of Qub-ud-dīn Aibak, who were carrying on depredation in Gujarāt in A.D. 1197.

Jaitugi’s minister was Murāri Keśava, and two brothers, Mallideva and Sahadeva, were the commanders of his army. The king ruled at least up to A.D. 1198 and was succeeded by his son Siṅghaṇa about the year A.D. 1200.

3. SIṆGHANĀ

Siṅghaṇa, who was the most distinguished member of his family, made an extensive preparation for establishing an empire in the Deccan. But the Hoysalas proved a great obstacle to the further expansion of the Sevūṇa kingdom in the south. With the assistance of his able general Bichana, Siṅghaṇa launched an expedition against the Hoysala Ballāla II in A.D. 1211. Vīkramaḍītya of the Śinda family, who was ruling the Kūsakṣa country from his capital Eřambarage as a vassal under the Hoysalas, submitted to him. Belvola, Ģulīgere, Masaviḍi, and Ḥaṃ不相信 (Hangal) fell before him one after the other. Vīra-Vīkramaḍītya II of the Guttā family of Guttā, near Hāveri, in the Dharwar District, transferred his allegiance to him. All these conquests brought Siṅghaṇa to the northern border of the Banavāsi country, the capital of which was located at Balligrāma, modern Belgami, in the Shīkāṛpur Tāluk of the Shimoga District, Mysore. The country consisted of at least three divisions, viz., Nagarkhaṇḍa, Jīḍdulige, and Edavatte. The headquarters of Nagarkhaṇḍa were at Bandanike, modern Bandaliṅka, in the Shīkāṛpur Tāluk, and those of Jīḍdulige at Udḍare, modern Udri, in the Sorāb Tāluk of the Shimoga District. Adjacent to Banavāsi was Sāntalige, the country round the village of Pundahalī, in the Shīkāṛpur Tāluk, the capital of which was at Hosa-gūḍa. Mallideva of a collateral branch of the Śinda family was at this time ruling Banavāsi and Sāntalige as a feudatory under the Hoysalas. Ballāla II made extensive preparations for the defence of Banavāsi. But a fiercely contested battle soon enabled Siṅghaṇa to establish his authority over Balligrāma. The Sevūṇa king then advanced towards Bandaliṅka where Ballāla gave him a stiff opposition. But the Hoysalas capitulated as soon as they
found that their grain store was seized by the Sevuna army. Within a short time Uddāre shared the same fate with Balligrama and Bandalike. By the year A.D. 1213 Singhaṇa conquered the whole of Banavasi and Sāntalige and reached the banks of the Tunga river. This brilliant success emboldened him to make a bid for the whole of the Hoysala kingdom, and he marched towards Dorasamudra. Yelavare, son of Malleya-Nāyaka, an officer of Ballāla, lost his life in an attempt to arrest the advance of the Sevuna army. Singhaṇa, like his grandfather Bhillama, reached the Kāveri river in course of his conquest, and defeated Jagatdeva, the ruler of Ranga or Seringapatam, Mysore. About this time he also defeated Kakkalīs, king of Vīrā. But he had eventually to withdraw to the north of the Tunga river which formed the southern boundary of his dominion. Stone inscriptions of his reign have been found in large numbers in the Shikāpur and Soraṅ Tīluk. Singhaṇa directed another expedition against the Hoysalas. Two Sevuna generals Vikramapāla and Pāvusa lost their lives in that engagement.

Singhaṇa also turned his arms against the petty chiefs of the western coast of the Bombay State. The Kadamba Tribhuvanamalla, son of Jayakesī III, king of Gove (Goa), and Kārttīvīrya IV of the Raṇa family of Veṇugrāma, modern Belgaum, which was the capital of the Kūpī country, submitted to him. Singhaṇa put an end to the rule of the Kolhāpur branch of the Silāhāra family by overthrowing Bhoja II, who resided at the fort of Pranāla, modern Panthāla, twelve miles to the north-west of Kolhāpur. An Abhira chief named Lākṣmīdeva, ruler of Bhamābhirī, presumably modern Bhamar in Pimpalner Tīluk of the West Khandesh District, submitted to him. Singhaṇa does not seem to have made any attempt to bring the Silāhāras of Northern Konkan under his sway. On the south-east he annexed the larger portion of the Anantapur District, Madras State, apparently by defeating the Hoysalas. His attempt to extend his power into the Kākatiya kingdom, which lay to the east of Anantapur, was foiled by the Kākatiya Gaṇapati. On the east Singhaṇa, in course of his conquest, reached Chāhaṇḍa, modern Chāndā District, Madhya Pradesh, where he inflicted a defeat upon the Paramāra Bhoja, who belonged to a minor branch of the Paramāra dynasty ruling in that part of the country. Hemādri, whom the Sevuna king worsted in a battle, was the king of Parakkheja, which seems to have been situated in Berār.

After making himself master of the Deccan, Singhaṇa turned his arms against his hereditary enemies, the Paramāras of Mālava and the Chaulukyas of Gujārāt. About this time the country of Lāṭa with its capital Bhīṣigukachchha formed a part of the kingdom
of the Paramāra Arjunavarman, and was ruled by a chief named Sindhurāja. Śīṅghaṇa, assisted by his Brāhmaṇa general Kholesvara, crossed the Tapti river and attacked Bhṛigukachchha. Arjunavarman and his feudatory Sindhurāja gave battle but were defeated, and the latter lost his life. The Sevūḷa army next invaded the Gurjara country, which was passing through a crisis under the weak rule of the Chaulukya Bhīma II. Lavāṇaprasāda of the Vaghela family, who was the de facto ruler of the country, failed to withstand the onslaught of the invaders, who after a successful raid withdrew to their own country. Some time afterwards Śīṅghaṇa again attacked Lāṭa and defeated Sāṅkhya, son of Sindhurāja. During the reign of Sāṅkhya, also known as Śāṅgrāmasimha, the son and successor of Sindhurāja, Śīṅghaṇa led two more expeditions against Lāṭa. Though on the first occasion Sāṅkhya succeeded in repulsing the invaders, he fell a captive in their hands on the second occasion. When Sāṅkhya was produced before the Sevūḷa king he succeeded in securing his release by asserting his influence over the victor. Henceforward he acted as one of the allies of the Sevūḷas. Śīṅghaṇa also led two more expeditions against Gujarāṭ. During the first campaign when his approach was announced in the Gurjara country, the people became very much panicky. In apprehension of the tyranny of the foreign army, they gave up the work of the construction of new houses and also of the storing up of foodgrains, and thought only of securing large numbers of carts for the transport of their valuables from the war zone in times of emergency. As Śīṅghaṇa advanced nearer and nearer, burning villages on his way, the crowd of the Gurjaras retreated farther and farther, ascertaining the position of the enemy from the smokes arising out of the burning villages. Lavāṇaprasāda and his son Viradhavala arrayed their army on the bank of the Mahi against the Sevūḷa king. But the situation became perilous to the Gurjaras as Lavāṇaprasāda was forced to hurry to the north to meet the invasion of a confederacy of the Maravāḍa chiefs. But curiously enough Śīṅghaṇa, for some unknown reasons, did not avail himself of this opportunity, and retreated to his own country. Some time between A.D. 1221 and 1229 he made a confederacy with the Paramāra Devapāla, king of Mālava, and his vassal Sāṅkhya, ruler of Lāṭa, for another invasion of the Gurjara country. On receipt of this news Viradhavala made arrangement for a suitable resistance. But the disquieting news of the advance of the Muslim army against northern Gujarāṭ compelled him to rush to the northern border of the Chaulukya kingdom, leaving his minister Vastupāla in charge of the defence of the southern front. Vastupāla
thought it injudicious to confront the vast army of Sīṅghaṇa and his allies with the forces at his command, and took recourse to a skilful stratagem. Some well-trained spies employed by him soon succeeded in creating suspicion into the mind of Sīṅghaṇa about the integrity of his allies. The Sevana king, in disgust, dissolved the confederacy, and abandoned the project of the invasion of Gujārāt. Some time before A.D. 1231 he concluded a treaty with Lavaṇāprasāda, which laid down that “the contracting parties should not encroach on each other’s territory and should be confined to the limits of their respective kingdoms. If either of them was attacked by a strong enemy both should join hands in resisting him. A recalcitrant prince from the countries under the contracting parties should not be given shelter.” As a guarantee for the proper observance of these conditions, the contracting parties had to give suitable surety. Sīṅghaṇa acted up to these conditions so long as Lavanaprasāda and Viradhavala were alive, but renewed hostilities against Gujārāt during the early years of the reign of Visaladeva, successor of Viradhavala. The Sevana army crossed the Narmada under the leadership of Kholesvara’s son Rama, but was repulsed by the Vaghela chief, and Rama lost his life in the battle. Thus Sīṅghaṇa’s aggressive operations in the north ended in signal failure. During one of these campaigns he came to clash with the Turushkas. His Muslim adversary might have been Sultan Iltutmish, who is known to have plundered Malava in A.D. 1233-34.

Sīṅghaṇa’s empire extended from Khandesh up to the Shimoga and Anantapur Districts, and from the western coast (excluding Northern Konkan) up to the eastern parts of Hyderabad and Berār. Nikumbha family of Durgapur (Khandesh), Rattas of Veṇugrāma, Kadambas of Goa, and the Sindas of Erambarage ruled their territories as his vassals. Dennyaka, whose headquarters were at Ambāḍapurā, modern Ampur in the Buldana District, was his governor of Berār. His officer for the administration of the Sindavādi country was Jagadala Soma Nāyaka. He appointed Vaṅkuva Ṛavuta the viceroy of the southern countries, viz. Belvola, Huligere, Bana-vāsi, and Basavura. Mallideva, governor of Belvola, the Guttas of Guttal, and the Sindas of Banavāsi were placed under his supervision.

The astrologers Chaṅgadeva and Ananda-deva received patronage from Sīṅghaṇa. During the reign of this king Sāṅgadāra wrote a treatise on music entitled Sāṅgitaratnākara. Sīṅghaṇa was on the throne at least up to June 1247. He had two sons Jaitugi II and Sa(n)rapāṇi. Jaitugi predeceased his father leaving behind two sons Kṛishṇa and Mahādeva. It seems that after Sīṅghaṇa’s death a civil war broke out between Sa(n)rapāṇi and the sons of Jaitugu
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

for the throne. Krishna gained the upper hand and forced his uncle to leave the kingdom of the Sevunas. Samirapapi in his distress took shelter with his hereditary enemy, the Kakatiyas of the Telinga country. He was ruling Panuṅgal in A.D. 1267 under the Kakatiya Rudrāmba.

4. KRISHNA

Krishna ascended the throne in the latter part of A.D. 1247. He continued the foreign policy of his grandfather, which aimed at the expansion of the Sevuna dominions in all directions. He sent his general Chāmunaṇḍa against Someśvara, the king of the Hoyalas. Chāmunaṇḍa succeeded in wresting only the Kogali Division, which consisted of Hadgalli Tāluk in the Bellary District, and the Dvānagere Tāluk in the Chitaldroog District, Mysore, and which was situated in the Nolambavādi country. Krishna also sent another contingent under Malla against the Silahāras of Northern Konkan, who ruled the Thāṇā, Alibāg, and Ratnagiri Districts, and the southern part of the Surat District. Though Malla claims victory over the king of Konkan, who appears to have been the Silahāra Someśvara, he could not make any territorial gain in that direction. Malla also claims to have defeated the Pāṇḍyas, who seem to have been those ruling in Nolambavādi. On the east Krishna led his army as far as the South Kosala country, modern Raipur and Bilāspur Districts, Madhya Pradesh. During this campaign he seems to have come into clash with the Kakatiya Gauapati. He also carried on the traditional hostilities with the Paramāras of Malava and the Vāghelās of Gujarāt, and gained some success. About this time the Sevuna army encountered some Muslim forces, probably those who invaded the Paramāra kingdom in A.D. 1250 under the leadership of Balban. Krishna fought successfully with the Abhiras and two other chiefs, Heñḍari-Rāya and Kāmapāla.

Stone inscriptions of Krishna have been found in the Shimoga, Chitaldroog, Bellary, Dhārwar, and Belgaum Districts. Obviously he succeeded in maintaining the dominions he had inherited from his grandfather. His viceroy of the southern countries, viz., Belvola, Banavasi, Ḫāṅṅgal, Tardavādi, and Kogali, was Chauḍāḍeṭṭi. The existence of the rule of the Raṭṭas over the Kūṇḍi country cannot be traced after A.D. 1228. During the reign of Krishna Malla-Ṣetti was the governor of this country, the capital of which was Veṇugrāma. Krishna’s chief administrative officer in the Sindavādi country was Jagama Rāhuta, and his feudatory in Goa was the Kadamba Sivachitta Sashṭhadeva II. Jalhaṇa, the author of Sūktimuktāvalī, was his counsellor and the commander of the army.
THE YADAVAS OF DEVAGIRI

Although he had a son named Rāmachandra, Kṛṣṇa appointed his brother Mahādeva, his heir apparent (Yuvarāja), shortly after his accession. He probably made this arrangement in recognition of the service rendered by Mahādeva during the civil war. Mahādeva succeeded him on the throne in A.D. 1261. 6

5. MAHĀDEVA

Mahādeva continued hostilities with the Hoysalas, the Silāhāras of Northern Konkan, the Vāghelas of Gujarāt, the Paramāras of Mālava, and the Kākatiyas of Teluṅga country. He made an abortive attempt to penetrate into the heart of the Hoysala kingdom. The Hoysala Narasimha III claims that he forced Mahādeva to flee away leaving behind his cavalry forces. Chanagiri Tīluk of the Shimoga District, which is on the other side of the Tunga river, and which was under the sway of the Hoysalas at least up to A.D. 1233, is known for the first time to have been included in the Sevūga empire from an inscription of Mahādeva.

The most noteworthy achievement of Mahādeva is his annexation of Northern Konkan. The Silāhāra king Somesvara lost his life in a naval engagement with him. After this victory Mahādeva seems to have appointed one Jaitugi the governor of that country. Mahādeva also advanced against Gujarāt and won a decisive victory over the Vāghela Visaladeva. Hemādri refers to Mahādeva’s invasions of Mālava and the Teluṅga countries. It is stated that at this time Mālava was ruled by a king who was an infant, and Teluṅga was ruled by a woman named Rudrāma. Mahādeva defeated both of them in successive fights but did not kill them as one was a child and the other was a woman. The Mālava king seems to have been the Paramāra Jayasimha II, and Rudrāma was evidently the daughter and successor of the Kākatiya Gaṇapati.

Hemādri was the minister of Mahādeva. A particular style of architecture is called Hemādpanti after his name. Mahādeva closed his reign in A.D. 1270-1271. After his death a civil war broke out between his son Āmaṇa, and Rāmachandra, son of king Kṛṣṇa. Āmaṇa assumed the royalty of Devagiri, which, Rāmachandra thought, really belonged to him. It was not, however, possible for him to capture the impregnable fort of Devagiri with the forces at his command. So he had to take recourse to unchivalrous means in order to achieve his end. One evening he introduced a body of soldiers in the guise of dancers into the fort for giving a musical performance. When Āmaṇa and his retinue were absorbed in the entertainment, the soldiers threw off their mask and took the royal guards by surprise. 7 The palace revolution continued for some time.

193
causing heavy casualties. Cart-loads of wounded soldiers were sent out through the villages. The neighbouring villagers got panicky at the news of the turmoil and fled away pell mell. Amaīa fell a captive into the hands of Rāmachandra who subsequently blinded and killed him.

6. RAMACHANDRA

In the early years of Rāmachandra’s reign the Sevūnas made a desperate attempt to crush the power of the Hoysalas, and a large body of soldiers, under the leadership of the most eminent generals, was despatched against the Hoysala kingdom. Sāluva-Tikkama, Jeyideva, Haripāla, and Irungala-Chola I of Niragūṇḍa overran the Belavādi country, modern Belur in the Hassan District, Mysore, and besieged Dorasamudra. A detachment of the Sevūna army under the great general Kannaradeva, and the ministers Chāvuṇḍarasa and Vanadevarasa attacked Doravādi, in the Kurūgodu country, modern Karugodu, in the Manjarabad Tīluk of the Hassan District. Though Siṅgeya-Nāyaka, the officer-in-charge of the place under the Hoysalas, succeeded in killing Vanadevarasa, he had to yield to the invading army. The Sevūna army engaged in storming Dorasamudra, however, could not achieve its end. Chikkadeva, Aṅka Nāyaka, and Khaṇḍeyya Rāya Rāṇeyya, generals under the Hoysala Narasimhi III, killed a body of 12000 Sevūna cavalry and pursued the retreating Sāluva-Tikkama and his associates up to Dummi on the border of Shimoga and Chitaldroog Districts. This was the last invasion of the Sevūnas against the Hoysalas, which ended in disastrous failure. Rāmachandra’s military operation against Gujarat was also foiled by the Vāghela Sarangadeva. He was, however, successful in his campaigns against the chiefs of Dāhalā (modern Jabalpur and the adjoining territories), Bhāŋgārā (modern Bhandāra in Madhya Pradesh), and Vajrākara (modern Wairagarh in the Chand District, Madhya Pradesh), and also defeated the petty chiefs of Paill, Mahima, Saṅga, and Kheṭa. The claims that he drove out the Muslims from Banaras, and that the king of Kanyakubja submitted to him are evidently without any historical value.

Inscriptions of Rāmachandra prove that in the early years of his reign he succeeded in maintaining intact the empire he had obtained from his predecessors. His Ramtek and Lanji inscriptions further prove that he succeeded in pushing the eastern boundary of his dominions up to the Nāgpur and Bālaghat Districts. Bhimadeva-Bāng and Vāsadēva-Nāyaka were his governors in Sindavādi and Kīskādi respectively. Northern Konkan was governed by Achyutā-Nāyaka, Krīṣṇa, and Jaideva in succession. The Sāntara chief
Timmarasa ruled Santalige as a vassal of Rāmachandra. Hemādri, Śrīdhara and Purushottama served him as ministers. But the most trustworthy officer of the king was Rāghava, who administered the Empire as his deputy.

When Rāmachandra was peacefully ruling his empire, 'Ālā-ud-dīn Khaljī, who was the governor of Kara under his uncle Fīrūz Shāh Khaljī, invaded Devagiri by way of Ellichpur in A.D. 1294. At this time a large body of the Sevūla army was away from the capital, and was engaged in escorting Rāmachandra’s son Śaṅkaradeva and the queen to places of pilgrimage. Rāmachandra made a fruitless attempt to resist the invader at Lasura in the vicinity of Devagiri and ultimately withdrew to the citadel. 'Ālā-ud-dīn pursued him there and pillaged the city. The Sevūla king was forced to conclude a treaty on payment of a heavy amount of gold. On receipt of the news of the invasion of Devagiri by the Muslims Śaṅkaradeva hastened back to Devagiri and, disregarding his father’s advice, attacked the retreating Muslim army. He was overpowered by 'Ālā-ud-dīn who then forced Rāmachandra to agree to more stringent terms. Though 'Ālā-ud-dīn withdrew from the Deccan, the signal failure of Rāmachandra even to save his own capital from rapine and plunder irretrievably impaired the political prestige of the Sevūlas. Their hereditary enemies in the east and south now began to press hard on them. In the early years of the fourteenth century the Kākatiya Prataparudra succeeded in pushing the western border of his empire at least up to Medak and Raichur in Hyderabad. In A.D. 1303 the Hoysala Ballāla III, successor of Narasīhha III, sent his general Gaṅgaṇā Śaṅhaṇi with a big contingent for the invasion of the Sevūla dominions. Gaṅgaṇā Śaṅhaṇi encamped in Banavāśi and fought a battle at Sirise in the Kādambalīge country with the Sevūlas. In A.D. 1305 Ballāla III himself led an army against Rāmachandra and wrested from him Banavāśi, Santalige, and Kogali. There is no evidence to prove that Shimoga and Chitaldroog Districts were within the Sevūla empire after A.D. 1300. On the other hand a minister of Ballāla III is known to have been administering Sāntalige in A.D. 1307.

When the Sevūlas were fighting for the defence of their dominions in the south the Deccan was again raided by the Muslims. The story runs that some time after the conquest of Gujarāt 'Ālā-ud-dīn Khaljī ordered his officers to capture Vāghela Kāraṇ's daughter Devaladevi, who was betrothed to Śaṅkaradeva. When Śaṅkaradeva’s younger brother was conveying the princess from Nandurbār, in West Khāndesh, to Devagiri, she was seized by the Muslims, who then sent her to Delhi. If there is any truth in this story the un-

195
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

toward incident certainly made the relation between the Sevuṇas and the Muslims acrimonious. In any case Rāmachandra swerved from his allegiance to the government of Delhi, and in A.D. 1307 'Alā-ud-dīn Khaṇji sent Malik-Nāib Kāfūr with an army to the Deccan to chastise him. Malik-Nāib overran the Sevuṇa kingdom and took Rāmachandra prisoner, who was then carried to Delhi. After a period of six months Rāmachandra was released with honour and was allowed to rule his kingdom as a vassal under the Sultanate of Delhi. In 1308 Malik-Nāib, on his arrival at Devagiri with his army for an invasion of Telingāna country, received substantial help from Rāmachandra. Rāmachandra also furnished the Muslim army with equipments when Malik-Nāib marched against Ballāla III of Dorasamudra in February, 1311.

7. ŚANKARADEVA AND HARAPALADEVA

The last known date of Rāmachandra from the epigraphic source is September, 1310. He was succeeded by his son Śankaradeva some time after February, 1311. Śankaradeva antagonised the Sultan by his hostile activities. In A.D. 1313 Malik-Nāib, with the consent of 'Alā-ud-dīn, directed an expedition against the Deccan, killed Śankaradeva, and assumed the government of Devagiri. But he had soon to leave Deccan as his service was urgently needed by the ailing Sultan. The government of Delhi was passing through stress and strain on the eve of 'Alā-ud-dīn's death. Taking advantage of this situation Harapāladeva, who was the son-in-law of Rāmachandra, and seems to have been identical with his general Haripāla, revolted and declared independence. He captured the fort of Devagiri with the assistance of Raghava, who was the deputy and minister of Rāmachandra. In A.D. 1317 Mubārak, son and successor of 'Alā-ud-dīn, recovered Devagiri after defeating and killing Haripāla. Raghava, with 10,000 cavalry, retreated to a hill where he was pursued by Khusrav Khān, the commander of Mubārak's army. Raghava received a severe wound in the engagement and fled. The kingdom of the Sevuṇas then finally passed into the hands of the Muslims.

1. These chiefs claimed descent from the Yidavas who, it is stated, were at first lords of Mathūrī, and then, from the time of Kṛṣṇa, became sovereigns of Dvārakācapital. The usual Purānic genealogy from Bhrāmahā, through Atri, Śoma, Yādu, etc., appears first in a record of A.D. 1000 and is given more fully in Hrdayā's Vṛttābhāṣa (thirteenth century A.D.). According to this authority, Subhūtī was a universal sovereign, but he is not mentioned in any epigraphic record. His son Dvīrāpatrāhāra, who is mentioned in the Bassein grant of A.D. 1069 (LA, XII. 119), may be regarded as the first historical king of this family.

It may be mentioned that the kings of this dynasty had the hereditary title of Dvīravatī-vrata-śrītihāra (supreme lord of Dvāravatī, the best of towns)
THE YÁDAVAS OF DEVAGIRI

and Vishun-varápatibhava (born in the race of Vishnu). They carried the Śurana-Garuda-dhvaja (banner of a golden Garuda), which also appears as the device on the seals of their charters, sometimes alone, and sometimes along with the figure of Hanumān. In at least one case, the monkey-god alone appears as Īlalokana or crest.

Not much is known of the twenty chiefs who flourished between Dridhaprāharā and Bhullaṇa V, though their names are given both in Vṛata-khaṭa and the epigraphic records. According to these, the queen of Bhullaṇa II was probably the daughter of a Śilākara chief and "sprang on her mother's side from the Rāśtrakūṭa family". Bhullaṇa is said to have fought against Mullaṇḍa on behalf of Ranaranagahāma, who has been identified with Taḻapāda. Bhullaṇa's father Vādīṣṭa is, however, represented as a follower of Kṛishṇarāja, probably Kṛishṇa III of the Rāśtrakūṭa dynasty. The family thus transferred their allegiance from the Rāśtrakūṭas to the Chāḷukyas of Kāḻīgaṇa when the latter overthrew the former.

There is a curious discrepancy among the different authorities, about the parentage of Bhullaṇa V. While Vṛata-khaṭa and several inscriptions of the thirteenth century A.D. give his father's name as Malayug, a record of the time of Bhullaṇa himself, dated A.D. 1191, definitely says that his father was Karna. It is no less curious that in Bombay Gazetteer Vol. I, Part II (pp. 230 ff. 511 ff.), which may be regarded as the chief authority for the history of Yādavas, so far published, the two different views are supported respectively by Sir R. G. Bhandarkar (p. 238) and Dr. Fleet (pp. 516 ff).

2. EC, XIV. 207, No. 255.
3. Ibid, XI, Jg. 30, p. 135. But the Panungal inscription mentions Jājāla as the king of Kāḻīgaṇa (Hyderabad Archaeological Series, No. 13).
4. Inscriptions of Sīghhaṇa make extravagant claims that he defeated the kings of Aṅgū, Vaiṣṇā, Kaliṅga, Magadha, Nēpāla, Kāṭi, Mādhura, Sīndh, Bābdika, Cēra, Chōl, and Tūraṅapāti.
5. EI, XIX, 13, v. 12 1Blommaṭṭa-rāṣṭrapa Vaddiga-chakravati etc.
6. HYD. Arch. S. No. 15.
8. HYD. Arch. S. No. 15.
9. HIED, III, 368. Khusru Khān's fight with Rāghu has been mentioned in Amīr Khusru's Nāv Sipīr, the historical value of which has been ignored by the modern scholars without reason. Rāghu, mentioned here as the deputy and minister of Rāmaucharana, is most probably identical with Rāghuva of the Rāmāte inscription (EI, XXV. 8, ll. 16-17), who was the most important of the officers of Rāmaucharana.
10. Dates of the Yādava kings are given differently by different authors (cf. HSI, 190 ff.; JOI, XII. 47-52).
CHAPTER VIII

DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

1. THE KAKATIYAS

The Kakatiyas, who were members of the Durjaya family, were Śādra by caste. They believed that their remote ancestor Kari-kālachola founded or first settled in Kakatipura, which cannot be now identified.¹ The kings of the Kakatiya dynasty always took pride in calling themselves the “lords of Kakatipura”, though they are sometimes referred to as kings of the Andhra or Teluṅga country. The earliest known king of the dynasty is Beta I, who is said to have belonged to “the feudatory family of the working class.”² Beta I was a subordinate of a Pallava king, and was overthrown by the Cholas, probably during Rājendra Chola I’s northern campaigns. Some time after the departure of the Chola Emperor, Era, a subordinate of Beta I, defeated the Chola governor and placed his master on the throne. Beta I flourished in the first half of the eleventh century and ruled the Koravi country which included at least a part of the Nalgonda District of Hyderabad State. He was succeeded by his son, the Mahāmaṇḍalesvara Prola I.

Prola I acknowledged the supremacy of the Chālukya Someśvara I Trailokyamalla (A.D. 1043-1068). He fought successfully, apparently on behalf of the Chālukyas of Kalyāṇa, against the Nāgas of Chakrakoṭa, Silahāras of Koṅkana-maṇḍala, Bhadraśa, and the son of Dugga of Kaḍaparti, and killed in battle Gonna, the chief of Purakūṭa. Probably in recognition of this military service he “obtained permanently from king Trailokyamalla, by way of grant, Anmakōṭa-vishaya,” the country round Hanamkonda, in the Warangal Tāḷuk (Warangal District, Hyderabad State). Prola was succeeded by his son Tribhuvanamalla Beta II, who acknowledged the suzerainty of the Chālukya Vikramāditya VI Tribhuvanamalla (A.D. 1076-1126) of Kalyāṇa.

Stone inscriptions of Beta II’s reign, dated A.D. 1079 and 1090, have been found in Hanamkonda and Kāzipet. Some time before A.D. 1090 Beta II won victories over the Paramāra Udayāditya, king of Mālava, and Kuloṭṭuṅga Chola I of Tanjore, obviously under the leadership of the Chālukya Vikramāditya VI. Evidently after this achievement he saw the Emperor in his capital, who rewarded him with the ownership of Sabbisayīra one thousand. Sabbisayīra
one thousand seems to be identical with Sabbināgdu, which is located in or near the Karimnagar District, in Hyderabad State. Beta II established his capital at Anmakonda where he built a tank called Sivapuri and a temple after his own name. He was succeeded by his son Prola II, whose earliest known date is A.D. 1115.

In the early years of his reign Prola II owed allegiance to Vikramāditya VI, after whose death in A.D. 1126 the Chalukya empire began to disintegrate. Taking advantage of this situation Prola II revolted and attacked the feudatories of the Chalukyas in the Telenganā and Andhra countries. He defeated Govindarāja and handed his kingdom to a feudatory, in the Krishnā District, over to Udaya or Choḍodaya, whose brother Mahāmeṣālīvarā Gokarnaḍoḥoḍa was ruling as his feudatory near Panugal (Nalgonda District). He also defeated and killed Gunda, also described as Mantena or Manthanya Gunda, ruler of Mantrakūta (modern village of Mantena, in the Nuzvid Taluk, Krishnā District) and annexed his kingdom. Prola's attempt to push his arm further into the Velanāṭi kingdom was frustrated by the Mahāmeṣālīvarā Choḍaraja. Hostile activities of the Kākatiyas led the Chalukya Tailapa III (A.D. 1151-1162) to invade the Telugu country along with his feudatory Jagaddeva of the Sāntara family of Patti-Pomburchapura. They advanced as far as Anmakonda and besieged it. But Prola rose equal to the occasion, took Tailapa III prisoner, and forced Jagaddeva to withdraw his army. The Emperor was subsequently released. Henceforward the Kākatiyas began to rule as independent chiefs and even cherished an ambition for the establishment of an empire. Prola had two sons, Rudra I and Mahādeva. Rudra succeeded him on the throne some time before A.D. 1158.

Some time before A.D. 1162 Rudra I attacked Tailapa III and dealt the final blow on him. It is stated that out of fear for him "the king Tailapa with body completely overcome by dysentery died". During the early part of the reign of Rudra I there was a general revolt of the feudatories in the Kākatiya kingdom. The king brought under control Domma and Meḍa, who was a chief of the Pākhāl Tāluk to the north-east of Warangal, and deprived Mai-ligideva of his kingdom of Polavāsi-deśa (modern Polas, in the Yelgandāl District in Hyderabad State). The Kākatiya army burnt the city of Choḍodaya, the ruler of Konḍapalli, who is said to have died about this time out of fear for the king. Bhima, who poisoned his brother Gokarnaḍoḥoḍa to death, fled to the forest leaving his capital Vardhamānapura at the mercy of the Kākatiyas. Thus by the year A.D. 1162 Rudra succeeded in establishing peace and order in the Kākatiya kingdom. To the south of his kingdom was the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

kingdom of Andhra, consisting of the Kurnool, Guntur, Krishnâ, and the Godavâri districts, which was ruled by the Velanântî chiefs as feudatories of the Imperial Cholas. Shortly before A.D. 1173 the supremacy of the Cholas in the Andhra country was ended by the Kalachuri Sovideva of Kâlyâga. Loss of the support of the Cholas greatly weakened the military strength of the Velanântî chiefs, who were forced to surrender Kurnool District to Rudradeva some time before A.D. 1185.

Rudra I was a well-known writer, and the Sanskrit work Nitisâvâ is said to have been written by him. During his reign temples were built in Annakonaḍa, Pillamari, and Mantrakûṭa. The city of Orungallu, modern Warangal, was at this time rising into prominence; Rudra founded there a number of quarters and built a temple of Siva. He was succeeded by his younger brother Mahâdeva shortly after A.D. 1195.

Mahâdeva was devoid of princely qualities. He came under the influence of the Saiva teacher Dhrusvâvara, and devoted his time to religious performances. An inscription, apparently of his reign, states that after acquiring the sovereignty he "cared a straw for it and became one completely engrossed in the worship of Siva." He had, however, to pay the penalty for his neglect of administrative duties. The Yadava Jaitugi, king of Devagiri, attacked the Telunâga country with all his forces. In vain did Mahâdeva and his son Gaçapati try to resist the invader. Mahâdeva lost his life in the battle, and Gaçapati, whose life was spared, was taken prisoner. Subsequently, Jaitugi took compassion on the young prince and installed him on his paternal throne.

Gaçapati ascended the throne in A.D. 1198. He was a contemporary of the last three Chola Emperors, Kulottunga III (A.D. 1178-1216), Râjârâja III (A.D. 1216-1246), and Râjendra Chola III (A.D. 1246-1279). Chola empire began to disintegrate from the time of Kulottunga III. A protracted struggle began between the Kâkatiyas, Hoysalas, and the Pâşyâs for supremacy over the territories of the Cholas. Gaçapati occupied the kingdom of Andhra to the west of the Godâvari river by putting an end to the rule of the Velanântî chiefs, and forced the Gaçga Anangabhima III, king of Kâliâga, who only shortly before carried his arms into the Vengi country, to surrender to him the Godâvari District to the east of the Godâvari river. Koças of Amarâvatî, Telugu-Chódas of Guntur, Nâthâvâdî chiefs of the Krishnâ District and many other chiefs acknowledged his supremacy. He next conquered Nellârapura (Nellore) after defeating Manuma Gaçâgopâla. Gradually all the territories up to Kâñchî or Conjeeveram passed into his hands. The
extension of the Kākatiya kingdom up to the Kurnool and Cuddapah Districts brought it to the border of the kingdom of the Hoysalas, who had asserted their supremacy over the Bellary and Anantapur Districts. Though Gaṇapati claims to have won a victory over the Kāḷakātas i.e. Hoysalas, he could not wrest any territory from them. In the third decade of the thirteenth century Śiṅgaṅgaṅa, king of Devagiri, ousted the Hoysalas from the Bellary and Anantapur Districts and established there the authority of the Yādavas. Somewhere in this region Gaṇapati seems to have come into conflict with king Śiṅgaṅgaṅa. As both the kings claim victory, the result of the battle was evidently indecisive. In the north-east Gaṇapati fought successfully with a chief of Tumāṅaṅa, in the Biḷāspur District, Madhya Pradesh. Stone inscriptions of Gaṇapati’s reign have been found in the Warangal, Nalgonda, and Mahbubnagar Districts, in the Hyderabad State, and in the Godavari, Krishna, Guntur, Kurnool, Nellore, Cuddapah, Chitpur, and Chingleput Districts, in the Madras State. His empire thus extended from the Godavari District up to Chingleput, and from Yelgandal, in Hyderabad State, up to the sea. He put two of his able generals, viz. Śamanta-Bhoja and Gaṅgeya Sāhaṅa, in charge of the defence of the bordering districts in the west. Śamanta-Bhoja, who issued an edict of the Emperor from Kāḷīchī, was connected with Chingleput and Chittur. Gaṅgeya Sāhaṅa, who successfully repulsed the attacks of the rebellious chiefs Dāmodara of the west and Rakkasa-Gālīgarasa, administered the Kurnool and Cuddapah Districts. Gaṇapati, however, could not keep this newly established empire intact up to the end of his reign. Some time after A.D. 1250 Jaṭāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya (A.D. 1251-1268) of Madura, after subduing the Cholas and the Hoysalas, invaded Kāḷīchī. A sanguinary battle was fought between the Kākatiyas and the Pāṇḍyas at Muddūr “in which the dead bodies were strewn up to the banks of the Peraru.” Gaṇapati was defeated, and Jaṭāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya conquered Kāḷīchī and occupied Nellūrapura. Stone inscriptions of this Pāṇḍya king have been found at Conjeeveram and Nellore.

Gaṇapati transferred his capital from Anmakoṅḍa to Orguṅgallu (Warangal), also known as Ekaṅlāṅagari, which enjoyed that privileged position till the final collapse of the Kākatiyas. Gaṇapati encouraged over-sea trade by abolishing oppressive taxes on the foreigners. Motupalli, now in the Krishna District, was an important sea-port in his kingdom, frequently visited by cargo vessels. Beautiful temples were erected at Ramappa, Palampet, Pillamari and in many places during his reign. He himself built the
beautiful gateways in the Warangal fort. Under his benevolent patronage the great Saiva teacher Visvesvara Samhbu, an inhabitant of West Bengal, established useful institutions in the Andhra country for the benefit of the villagers. Ganaṭapati had no son, and only two daughters, Rudrāmbā and Ganaṭapambā. He designated Rudrāmbā, who was married to Chālukya Virabhadrēsvāra, by a male name Rudradeva, and associated her with the government from A.D. 1258-59. The last known date of Ganaṭapati's reign is A.D. 1261.

After the assumption of the royal power Rudrāmbā had to encounter a series of troubles. The Yādavas of Devagiri were the sworn enemies of the Kākatīyas. Some time after the death of the Yādava Śiṅgaha the Kākatīyas gave shelter to his younger son Satīṣuṣapā, who was deprived of the throne of Devagiri by his brother Jaituji II's sons Krīṣṇa and Mahādeva. This Yādava prince was appointed to rule the territory of Pāṅgāla, modern Panungal (Nalgonda District). The Yādava Mahādeva (A.D. 1261-1271) could not tolerate his rival to the throne of Devagiri flourishing under the care of the Kākatīyas. He invaded the Telūṅga country and captured some elephants and musical instruments by defeating Rudrāmbā, but spared her life as she was a woman. This victory of the Yādavas greatly impaired the political power of Rudrāmbā. Her feudatory Ambadeva-mahārāja, whose headquarters were at Vallurī-patťana, established friendly relation with her enemies, the Yādavas and the Pāṇḍyas, and declared independence in the Kurnool and Cuddapah Districts. He also defied the power of the Kākatīyas by placing one Mummā-Gaṇḍagopala, who was formerly dethroned by Ganaṭapati, on the throne of Nellārapura. The Kākatīyas could not reconquer Nellore, Cuddapah, and Kurnool during the reign of Rudrāmbā. About this time the Pallava Kop-Puruṉingga of Sendamangalam, who took possession of Kaṭēchi in A.D. 1260, won a victory over the Kākatīyas.

The Venetian traveller Marco Polo, who visited Motupalli about A.D. 1293, speaks highly of the administrative qualities of Rudrāmbā. Her feudatory Ambadeva-mahārāja, whose headquarters were at Vallurī-patťana, established friendly relation with her enemies, the Yādavas and the Pāṇḍyas, and declared independence in the Kurnool and Cuddapah Districts. He also defied the power of the Kākatīyas by placing one Mummā-Gaṇḍagopala, who was formerly dethroned by Ganaṭapati, on the throne of Nellārapura. The Kākatīyas could not reconquer Nellore, Cuddapah, and Kurnool during the reign of Rudrāmbā. About this time the Pallava Kop-Puruṉingga of Sendamangalam, who took possession of Kaṭēchi in A.D. 1260, won a victory over the Kākatīyas.

The Venetian traveller Marco Polo, who visited Motupalli about A.D. 1293, speaks highly of the administrative qualities of Rudrāmbā. Rudrāmbā adopted Mummā-Gaṇḍagopala's son Prataparudra as her successor to the throne, and associated him with the government from A.D. 1290.

Immediately after his accession Prataparudra engaged himself in the task of restoring the lost territories of the Kākatīyas. Ambadeva was dethroned and his kingdom was annexed. Prataparudra's general Aḍidamma attacked Nellore and killed its ruler Mummā-Gaṇḍagopala, but could not take possession of the city. Vijaya-Gaṇḍagopala alias Rāja-Gaṇḍagopala, presumably a succes-
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

sor of the deceased chief, ruled Nellore at least up to A.D. 1315. In the early years of the fourteenth century the war-like activities of the Muslims under the Sultán ‘Alā-ud-dín Khālji created an alarming situation in the Deccan. Pratāparudra had to postpone his military campaigns in the south in order to make suitable arrangements for the defence of his kingdom against the new danger. He fought bravely with Malik Kāfūr, the general of ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khālji, when he invaded Warangal in A.D. 1309-1310, but despairing of victory purchased peace by surrendering all his treasures to the invader. Some time after the departure of the Muslim army Pratāparudra re-opened his southern campaigns. He wrested Nellore from Vijaya-Ganḍageopāla and having captured Kāñchi by defeating Ravivarman Kerala, installed there as governor his own protégé named Māṇavira. This brilliant achievement encouraged Pratāparudra to push his arms further south. Within a very short time he conquered all the countries up to Trichinopoly, which was then ruled by the Hoysalas, and even defeated the Pāṇḍya king. He also fought an indecisive battle with the Yādava Rāmachandra. Stone inscriptions of his reign have been found in the Trichinopoly, Chingleput, Cuddapah, Kurnool, Nellore, Guntur, Kṛṣṇa and Godavari Districts in the Madras State, and in the Nalgonda, Warangal, Raichur, and Medak Districts in Hyderabad State. Thus in the latter part of his reign the Kākātiya kingdom extended from the Godāvari river to Trichinopoly and from Medak to the sea. Pratāparudra could not enjoy this vast empire for a long time. In A.D. 1322 Ulugh Khān, son of the Sultán Ghiyās-ud-dīn Tughluq, invaded Warangal and took Pratāparudra prisoner. The whole of Telingiḻuṟa was conquered by the Muslims, who appointed their own officers for its administration. According to Shams-i Siraj‘Afif Pratāparudra died on his way to Delhi. But this seems to be erroneous in view of the fact that a stone inscription of Pratāparudra’s reign, dated A.D. 1326, has been found in the Guntur District. Nothing further about the political activities of this monarch or his successor is known. He was a patron of poets. His court was graced by Vidyānātha, the author of Pratāparudra-yasobhaṇḍa.

II. THE EASTERN CHALUKYAS

As noted above, the Andhra country was torn asunder by civil war towards the latter part of the tenth century A.D., and Saktivarman I, son of king Dānārnava, who ascended the throne in A.D. 999, restored peace and order by putting down all refractory elements. He was succeeded by his younger brother Vimalāditya in A.D. 1011. The Eastern Chalukyas ruled the Andhra country as
protegés of the Imperial Cholas. Vimalāditya married Kundavā, the daughter of the Chola Rājarāja the Great, who gave birth to his elder son Rājarāja. His other queen, also a Chola princess, gave birth to his younger son Vijayāditya. He was succeeded by Rājarāja in A.D. 1018.

Rājarāja's coronation took place in A.D. 1022. He maintained friendly relation with the Cholas, but could not rule peacefully due to the hostile activities of his half-brother Vijayāditya. The latter revolted, carved out a small kingdom in the eastern corner of the Chālukya kingdom in the Visakhapatnam District, and performed his coronation ceremony there in A.D. 1030. Rājarāja married Ammangādevi the daughter of his maternal uncle, the great Rājendra Chola I, who gave birth to his son Rājendra Chola II, later known as Kulottunga Chola I. In the early part of his life Rājendra Chola II lived in the Chola capital under the care of his grandmother, the queen of Rājendra Chola I. In A.D. 1060 a serious disaster befall Rājarāja. His half-brother Vijayāditya usurped the throne of Vengi when he was away from the capital.

Vijayāditya abdicated the throne in favour of his son Śakti­varman II, whose coronation took place in A.D. 1061. After a rule of one year Śakti­varman died and Vijayāditya again assumed the royalty. About this time Veṅgi became the target of attacks of the neighbouring kings. Vijayāditya was dislodged from his throne by the combined forces of the Chālukya Vikramāditya VI and the Paramāra Jayasiṅha. But the Chola Virarājendra (A.D. 1063-1070) came to his rescue, and having defeated the Chālukyas and the Paramāras reinstated him on the throne. Vijayāditya enjoyed his kingdom without further trouble so long as Virarājendra occupied the Chola throne. Within a short time after the death of that monarch there was a civil war in the Chola country, which ended in A.D. 1070 with the accession of Rājendra Chola II alias Kulottunga Chola I, nephew of Vijayāditya. After consolidating his position in the Chola country Kulottunga Chola demanded the throne of Andhra from his uncle. The situation became worse for Vijayāditya when, shortly before A.D. 1073, the kingdom of Veṅgi was plundered by the Kalachuri Yaśākarna of Tripuri. It was not possible for him now to check the onrush of the Chola army. He surrendered the Andhra country to Kulottunga and took shelter with the Ganga Rājarāja I of Kaliṅganagara, who allowed him to rule over a small territory on the western part of his kingdom. Kulottunga annexed the Andhra country to the Chola empire in A.D. 1076. He and his successors, who were in reality princes of the Eastern Chālukya dynasty, occupied the throne of the Cholas up to A.D. 1271.
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

III. THE EASTERN GANGAS

The history of the Eastern Gaṅgas, up to the accession of Vajrahastra Anantavarman, has been traced in a preceding chapter. This king, Vajrahastra V, was anointed king in A.D. 1038. He issued a number of inscriptions from the capital Kaliṅganagara, and assumed the title *Trikalingādhipati*. His mother was a Vaidtina princess, and he himself married the daughter of a Haihaya king. During his reign Kaliṅga was invaded by the Kālacuri Karna, who also assumed the title *Trikalingādhipati*. He was succeeded by his son Rājarāja I Devendravarman, who was crowned in A.D. 1070.

Rājarāja antagonised Kulottunga Chola I by giving shelter to Vijayāditya VII, the deposed king of the Andhra country. Kulottunga sent his son Mummaḍi-Chola with an army to chastise the Gaṅga king shortly after A.D. 1076. Rājarāja, who was then associated with his son Anantavarman Chodagāṇa in the government, succeeded in repulsing this attack. About this time the grave political situation in the Utkala or Orissa country, which was under the rule of the Somavamsi kings, encouraged Rājarāja to make an attempt for the expansion of his kingdom in that direction. The last known king of the Somavamsi dynasty from epigraphic sources is Uddyotakesari, who flourished some time in the eleventh century. In the latter part of this century there were two rival claimants to the throne of Orissa. Rājarāja supported the cause of one of them, whose name seems to have been Karṇakesari, and succeeded in placing him on the throne. He had an able general named Vanapati, who claims to have defeated the king of the Chola country, the army of Utkala, the king of Vengi, kings of Kimiśi, Kosala, and the Guśrisingi countries, and killed one Daddarāva. Rājarāja’s queen was Rājasundari, the daughter of Kulottunga Chola I, who gave birth to his son and successor Anantavarman Chodaganga.

Anantavarman Chodaganga was anointed king in A.D. 1078. In the early part of his reign Kulottunga Chola I sent a big army against Kaliṅga under his general Karuṇakara. The Chola army took possession of Vīśakhapatṭaṇa (Visakhapatnam) and changed its name to Kulottungaśālokaṇaṇa. Anantavarman could not resist the advancing Chola army. The whole of Kaliṅga up to the border of Orissa fell into the hands of Karuṇakara, probably shortly after A.D. 1083, the date of a stone inscription at Mukhalingam of the reign of Anantavarman. If there is any truth in the claim that Rājarāja Chodaganga (A.D. 1084-1088), son of Kulottunga Chola I, and the viceroy of Vengi, held sway over a territory extending up to the Mahendra mountains, the position of Anantavarman must have been very serious indeed. But even in this predicament he
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE
did not lose heart. Within a few years he not only recovered his
throne, but also wrested the Visakhapatnam District from the Cholas
before the year A.D. 1090. After the death of Kulottunga the Chālukyas under Vikramāditya VI captured the Andhra country and
ruled it for some years. As soon as Vikramāditya VI died (A.D.
1126) Anantavarman attacked the Andhra country and brought all
the territory up to the banks of the Godāvari under his sway. But
he could not enjoy this new possession in the Godāvari District for
a long time. Some time before A.D. 1134 Kulottunga Chola II.
with the help of his feudatories Manḍa II and Velanāṭi Rājendra-
Choḍa, drove out the Gaṅgas from the Godāvari District. Visakhap-
hatnam District, which was ruled by the Eastern Chālukyas for seve-
ral centuries, became a part and parcel of the kingdom of the Gaṅ-
gas from the time of Anantavarman.

Anantavarman also looked for the expansion of his kingdom
to the east. About this time Karnākesari, king of Utkala, and a
protégé of the Gaṅgas, was overthrown by Rāmapāla, king of Ben-
gal, who placed his own nominee on the throne of that country.
Anantavarman could not take this challenge lying down. He de-
teated the nominee of Rāmapāla and restored Karnākesari or his
successor to power. Some time before A.D. 1118 the whole of
Orissa was annexed to the kingdom of the Gaṅgas. Henceforward
the kings of the Gaṅga dynasty assumed the title “the lord of Utkala”
along with the title “the lord of Trikaliṅga”. After the death of
Rāmapāla the kingdom of the Pālas began to break up. The weak-
ness of the Pāla kings made their feudatories in south Bengal help-
less. This offered Anantavarman a favourable opportunity for
further expansion of his kingdom. His advance into south Bengal
was held back by Vaidyadeva, the minister of Kumārapāla, son of
Rāmapāla, for some time. But as soon as Vaidyadeva was called
to Assam by a more critical situation, Anantavarman renewed
his military operations. He defeated the chief of Mandāra, pil-
laged his capital Āramaṇa, modern Arāmbāgh (Hooghly District),
and pursued him up to the bank of the Gaṅgā. During these wars
he seems to have received the co-operation of Vījayaśena, a ruling
chief in Rādhā. The kingdom of Anantavarman now extended from
the Gaṅgā up to the Godāvari, and his epigraphic records and those
of his successors boldly claim that he exacted tributes from his
subjects living in the countries between these two rivers. His
attempts to push the boundary of his realm further to the north
were, however, frustrated by the Kalachuri Ratnadeva II (A.D. 1120-
1135), king of Southern Kosala, and the Paramāra Lakshmadeva
(A.D. 1083-1094), king of Mālava. Stone inscriptions of his reign
have been found in the Ganjam and Visakhapatnam Districts, and, in Draksharama, in the Ramchandrapur Taluk of the Godavari District.

Anantavarman founded the magnificent temple of Jagannatha at Puri. Satananda, a resident of Puri, composed the astronomical work Bhāsavatī during his reign, in A.D. 1099. Anantavarman had a number of queens and had by them four sons, Kāmarāja VII, Rāghava, Rājarāja II, and Aniyakabhima or Anangabhima II. He anointed Kāmarāja VII king in A.D. 1142. The last known date of Anantavarman is S. 1072 (= A.D. 1150).

Kāmarāja VII (A.D. 1148-55) was succeeded by his half-brother Rāghava (A.D. 1157-1170) during whose reign Vijayasaena put an end to the supremacy of the Gangas in south Bengal and established there the authority of the Senas. After Rāghava his two half-brothers, Rājarāja II (A.D. 1171-1192) and Anangabhima II (A.D. 1192), ruled in succession. From the time of Anangabhima’s son and successor Rājarāja III (A.D. 1205-1206) Orissa (Jajnagar) became a target of attacks of the Muslims who had firmly established themselves in west and north Bengal. In A.D. 1205 Muhammad Bakhtyar sent Muhammad-i-Sharan and his brother Ahmad-i-Sharan at the head of an army towards Lakhanor and Jajnagar. But the premature death of Muhammad Bakhtyar forced the Sheran brothers to retreat to Devakota. Rājarāja III wrested the Godavari District to the east of the Godavari from the Velanaññī chiefs. During the reign of his son and successor Anangabhima III (A.D. 1216-1235) Khalji Ghiyās-ud-din Tawaz, the Muslim ruler of Bengal, invaded Orissa, but was repulsed by the Gaṅgas. This invasion took place some time between A.D. 1211 and 1224. Anangabhima III led a successful military campaign against the Kalachuri Paramarī of Tumilāta and established a friendly relation with him by giving his sister in marriage to him. From the time of his father Rājarāja III the Godavari was the western boundary of the kingdom of the Gaṅgas. Anangabhima III invaded Veği to wrest the Andhra country from the Velanaññī chiefs. Though he won some preliminary victories the Kākatiya Ganapati forced him to surrender even the whole of the Godavari District to the east of the Godavari river some time between A.D. 1230 and 1237.

Anangabhima III was succeeded by his son Narasimha I in c. A.D. 1238. His reign marks a glorious period in the history of Orissa. He was one of the few Hindu kings of this age who thought it more prudent to launch aggressive campaigns against the Muslims than to play the defensive part. The Muslims were now in possession of the greater part of Rādhā (W. Bengal), but large parts of Hooghly and Nadiā districts were still unsubdued. Towards the end of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

A.D. 1243, Narasimha sent an army to Bengal, and the Muslim historian Minhaj-i-Siraj characteristically refers to it as 'molesting' the kingdom of Lakhnawati. Tughril-Tughân Khân, the Muslim ruler of Bengal, took the field against Narasimha in March, A.D. 1244, and the historian Minhaj also joined in "this holy war". The Orissan army made a strategic retreat, without fighting, to the fortress of Katasingh on their frontier, a region full of dense jungles and cane-bushes. In April, 1244, the Muslim forces made an assault on the fort and obtained some initial success. But while they were taking rest at mid-day, the Hindu soldiers appeared both in their front and rear. The Muslim army was seized with panic and fled in hot haste, pursued by the Orissan forces. Tughril Tughân was unable to make a stand even in his own fort of Lakhanor, 70 miles north-west of Katasingh. It was a veritable disaster for the Muslims.

Narasimha I captured Lakhanor and put an end to the Muslim rule in Râdhâ. He then invaded Varendra (N. Bengal) and advanced as far as Lakhnawati (March, 1245). Tughril, who had already sent swift messengers to Delhi asking for military assistance, shut himself in his capital city. Fortunately for him the Sultan ordered the Governors of Kara-Manikpur and Awadh to proceed at once to "exterminate the infidels" of Orissa. Their united forces reached the vicinity of the Rajmahal hills when Lakhnawati was besieged by Orissan forces. On hearing of this reinforcement, Narasimha raised the siege of the capital city but maintained his position in Râdhâ. His dominions now extended to the GâNGâ river which, according to one of his inscriptions, "assumed the dark countenance of the Yamuna by the collyrium-stained tears of the Yavana women of Râdhâ and Varendra (West and North Bengal)."

It was not till the end of A.D. 1253 that the new Muslim Governor of Bengal, Yûzbak, made an attempt to recover Râdhâ. He was stubbornly opposed by a feudatory of Narasimha who is called Savantar in Muslim chronicles, which probably stands for Oriya Santra. This feudatory chief was a son-in-law of Narasimha and ruled as his vassal over a strong principality with its capital at Madâran in Hooghly District. Three battles were fought in the last of which Yûzbak suffered a defeat with heavy loss and implored assistance from the Sultan of Delhi. Towards the end of A.D. 1255 Yûzbak again invaded Râdhâ and captured Madâran. He succeeded in re-establishing Muslim authority over Râdhâ.

Although Narasimha could not maintain his hold in Bengal, his aggressive campaign and success against the Muslim forces for a period of ten years entitles him to a high place of honour among the Hindu kings of Northern India during this age. He has also
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

earned undying fame by building the magnificent Sun Temple at Konarak, which has been described in the chapter on Art.

The reign of Bhānudeva I (A.D. 1264-79), son and successor of Narasimha I, was an uneventful one, from political point of view. But during the reigns of Bhānudeva I and his son Narasinhha II (A.D. 1279-1306) the great religious teacher Narahari Tirtha lived and preached in Orissa, and gave a great impetus to Vaishnava religion which replaced Saivism as the dominant creed of the country. As the reign of Narasinhha II introduced a new phase in the history of Orissa, it will be treated in the next volume.

IV. THE SOMAVĀMṢIS

The history of the Somavāṁśis up to the death of Yayāti Mahāśivagupta I has been narrated above.13 Yayāti Mahāśivagupta I was succeeded by his son Bhimaratha Mahabhavagupta II who ruled probably about the beginning of the eleventh century (c. A.D. 1000-15). During this reign, Siṁhadatta continued to serve as minister for war and peace. One of the feudatories of Mahabhavagupta II was the Māhāra chief Puṇja who resided at Vāmaḍapālī, possibly the same as modern Bāmrārgārī in the old Bāmra State. Puṇja, who was a Paraṁ-māheśvara like his overlord but was also devoted to the goddess Kālēśvari (probably a form of Kāli, the consort of Śiva in Hindu mythology), has been described as Samadhigata-pancha-mājasabda, Mānalika-Rājaṭaka and Panchadasa-pallikādhīpāti (i.e. "lord of fifteen small villages"). His seal bears the swan emblem.

The latest known date of Bhimaratha is the thirteenth year of his reign. According to the Balijhari14 (Narsinghpur State) and Bhuvaneswar15 inscriptions of Uddyotakesari, Bhimaratha Mahabhavagupta II was succeeded by his son Dharmaratha (c. A.D. 1015-20), probably styled Rājamalla and Mahāśivagupta II. Dharmaratha died without leaving a son and was succeeded by his brother Nahusha (Nadhusha), probably styled Mahabhavagupta III. There is evidence to show that Nahusha ruled in troublous times (c. A.D. 1020-25). According to the Bhuvaneswar inscription, which does not mention Nahusha, some time passed after Dharmaratha had died without leaving a son, when various combatant chiefs (bhatas) were devastating the whole rāṣṭra (i.e. the Somavāṁśī dominions) and a great hero, no doubt pointing to Chalukhara (Yayāti) belonging to the royal family, was passing his days elsewhere. This Chalukhara, who was the son of Abhimanyu, grandson of Vichitravīra, and great-grandson of Janamejaya Mahabhavagupta I, was then raised to the throne by the amāṭyās (ministers). The new king (c. A.D. 1025-35) freed both the rāṣṭras (Kosala and Utkala) from
enemies. The Balijhari inscription says that Nahusha was succeed­
ed by his onuja (younger cousin in this case) Yayati (Cha⁰l̥ihara), styled Mahāśīvavagupta III, who freed both the rāṣṭras of Kosala and Ukala which had been seized (avaśhtābāda) by combatant chiefs (bhaṇas). It is thus clear that Kosala and Ukala were regarded as two component parts of the Somavāṃśi dominions about the middle of the eleventh century, and that both the countries had been over­run by enemies shortly after the death of Dharmaratha. But when and under what circumstances exactly the dominions of the Karas passed to the Somavāṃśis cannot be determined in the present state of our knowledge. Who moreover were the enemies of the Somavāṃśis with whom king Nahusha seems to have been engaged in a struggle for existence? Although there is evidence to show that the Kalachuris were encroaching upon Somavāṃśi territories about this time, it is tempting to suggest that the enemies referred to were the Cholas who, according to their records, defeated and seized king Indraratha of the Chandrakula (i.e. Somavāṃśa), together with his family, at the battle of Yayatinagara,16 and captured, probably as a result of this success, Oḍravishaya and Kosalanāḍu, shortly before A.D. 1023. There is no doubt that Indraratha, also known from the Udayapur prāasti17 to have been defeated by the Paramāra king Bhoja, belonged to the family of Bhimaratha and Dharmaratha, but he can hardly be placed between any two of the Somavāṃśi rulers discussed above without disturbing the probable regularity of the alternate occurrence of the two names Mahīśavagupta and Mahā­śīvagupta in the family. It is, therefore, not improbable that Indra­ratha was just another name of Nahusha Mahābhavagupta III who was a brother of Dharmaratha and possibly a son of Bhimaratha. It may be mentioned in this connection that a Chola chief named Yaśorāja, whose successors are known to have acknowledged the suzerainty of the Chhindaka-Nāgas of Bastar, is said to have carved out a kingdom in Kosala about the middle of the eleventh century. It is unknown whether Yaśorāja’s success was at the expense of the Kalachuris or the Somavāṃśis. Thus Cha⁰l̥ihara-Yayati Mahāśīvavagupta III seems to have freed Kosala and Utkala (apparently the same as Oḍrā of the Chola records), probably from Chola occupation, some time in the second quarter of the eleventh century. He appears to have been a power­ful ruler. To him no doubt belongs the Maranjamura (also called Jatesinga-Dungri) inscription18 written by the Mahīśandhīvigrāhin Rudradatta, who was the son of a brother of Simhadatta (minister under Mahāśīvavagupta I and Mahābhavavagupta II) and the grandson of Harṣhadatta. According to this record Mahāśīvavagupta III con­quered Trīkālīṅga by his own prowess19 and became the lord of
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

Kalinga, Konoda (in the Ganjam District), Utkala and Kosala. He also claims to have come into conflict with the kings of Karna, Laja, Gurjara, Raghur and Gauḍa. Although the description may, no doubt, be taken as a mere eulogy (praśasti), it may be noted that it suits Mahāśāvatāra III better than any other king of the family bearing the same name. The reference to his struggle with the Karna probably points to a date earlier than the eastern expeditions of Chalukya Vikramaditya VI. A defective passage of the record seems to speak of the king's success against Dravida meaning the Cholas. The king is further described as a Parama-mahesvara and as Mahabhavagupta-śūrdhyāta, possibly pointing to his predecessor Nahusha, who, as suggested above, appears to have been also known as Indraratha and Mahabhavagupta III. The Maranjamura grant was issued in the king's third regnal year. The actual duration of the rule of Mahāśāvatāra III cannot be determined.

Chandihara-Netflix Mahāśāvatāra III was succeeded by his son Uddyotakesari Mahabhavagupta IV (c. A.D. 1055-80) some time about the middle of the eleventh century. Uddyotakesari was a devout Saiva like his father. His hold over both the Sambalpur tract and lower Orissa is proved by the Balijhari charter issued in the fourth regnal year from Yayatinagara, recording a grant of land in Orissa, and by the Bhuvaneswar inscription recording the construction, in his eighteenth regnal year, of the temple of the deity Brahmesvara at Ekāmra (i.e. Bhuvaneswar) by the king's mother Kolvātī who was born in the solar dynasty. His father's minister for war and peace, named Rudradatta, who is known from the Maranjamura grant to have been the grandson of Harshadatta and the nephew of Sinhadatta, is mentioned in the Balijhari grant of the earlier year of Uddyotakesari's reign as the Mahasandhivigrahin for both the countries of Utkala and Kosala. The same minister Rudradatta is mentioned as the son of Devadatta in the Kesarkella grant of the eleventh regnal year of king Mahabhavagupta who seems to have been no other than Uddyotakesari. The seal attached to this charter bears the Saivite emblem of a horned bull surmounted by a crescent. The mention of Rudradatta as minister for Utkala and Kosala is interesting as the earlier ministers of the Datta family were only in charge of the Kosala country. This seems to suggest that the Utkala country formed a part of Somavamshi kingdom some time about the second quarter of the eleventh century.

Uddyotakesari Mahabhavagupta IV was the last great king of the family. The Bhuvaneswar inscription credits him with victory over the rulers of Daśala, Oḍra, and Gauḍa. That he came into
conflict with the Kalachuris of Central India and the Pālas of Bengal is not improbable; but the ruler of Oḍrā was probably one of his father's adversaries. Uddyotakesarī, whose latest known date is his eighteenth regnal year, appears to have been a contemporary of the Gaṅga king Anantavarman Vajrahasta III (A.D. 1038–70) of Kālīgaganaga (in the Srikakulam District) and the latter's son Rājarāja I (A.D. 1070–78) who claims to have defeated the kings of Utkala and Kōsala. Rājarāja's son Anantavarman Chodagaṅga (A.D. 1078–1150) is described as having, at first, reinstated the fallen lord of Utkala, and later, not only as having defeated the king of Utkala, but also as having been decorated with the full sovereignty of the whole of Utkala. The claims that Chodagaṅga exacted tribute from the whole land as far as the Gaṅgā in the east, and that he destroyed the capital of the king of Mandāra (probably Garh Mandāran in the Hooghly District), show that by A.D. 1112, which is the date of Chodagaṅga's Korni grant, independent Somavāṃśī rule must have been terminated in lower Orissa by the Gaṅgas and that Uddyotakesarī's rule had ended some time before that date.

The king of Utkala named Kanṭakesarī, mentioned in the Rāmacarita as having been defeated by Jayasimha, the feudatory ruler of Daṇḍabhukti under king Rāmapāla of Bengal, seems to have been a successor of Uddyotakesarī and probably a subordinate ally of Chodagaṅga who shortly afterwards extirpated Somavāṃśī rule from Orissa.

Ranakesarī, another king probably of the same family, is known from his Govindapur (old Nayagarh State) inscription which seems to be dated in the Gaṅga year 611, corresponding to A.D. 1107–09. He may have been a subordinate ally of Chodagaṅga and a claimant for the Somavāṃśī throne. According to the Mādalāpāṇi, which gives a legendary account of the Somavāṃśī rulers that is hardly reliable, Suvaṇṇakesarī was the last Somavāṃśī ruler extirpated by Chodagaṅga. But nothing definite is known about him.

It may be pointed out in this connection that the capital (or secondary capital) of the Somavāṃśīs in Utkala was probably Jājpūr (in Cuttack District), apparently a corruption of Yaśātipura, named probably after Yaśāti Mahāśivagupta III, who seems to have been the first Somavāṃśī king of lower Orissa. In the days of the Somavāṃśīs, Jājpūr seems to have been called both Yaśātipura and Yaśātinagarā, the latter being also the name of the capital of the Somavāṃśīs in Kōsala. The Muslim chronicles referred to Orissa as the kingdom of Jānjagar, probably because Jājpūr (Yaśātipura or Yaśātinagarā) became for a short period a secondary capital of the Gaṅgas after the extirpation of the Somavāṃśīs from Utkala.
The Somavamśīs, who were ousted from the southern part of their dominions by the Gaṅgas, also lost Kosala. In the first half of the eleventh century, probably during the reign of Kalachuri Gaṅgeya of Dāhala, a Kalachuri prince named Kaliṅgarāja established himself at Tunīmāna (modern Tunmāna in the Bīlāspur District) in the western part of Dakṣiṇa-Kosala, and apparently became a thorn in the side of the Somavamśī kings. His son Kamaḷarāja endeavoured to equal Gangeya in prosperity and claimed, like Gangeya himself, a victory over the ruler of Utkala, probably a Somavamśī king. Kamaḷarāja’s grandson Pṛthvīdeva I, whose Amoda grant of A.D. 1079 describing him as Mahāmangaleśvara and Samadhigata-paṭhāmahāśābda shows that he was still a feudatory of the house of Dāhala (Tripuri), seems nevertheless to have been a semi-independent ruler who assumed the title Sakalā-Kosalādhipati (lord of the entire Kosala country), apparently as the result of a successful campaign against the Somavamśīs. Pṛthvīdeva’s son Jajaḷa I, whose Ratanpur inscription is dated A.D. 1114, claims to have defeated and captured Someśvara, while another record refers to his victory over Bhujabala, king of Suvarṇapura (Sonpur in the eastern part of Dakṣiṇa-Kosala in the kingdom of the Somavamśīs). Now the northern enemies of the Somavamśīs stood face to face with their southern adversaries, and it is interesting to note that Jajalla’s son Ratna II claims to have defeated Choḷaganga.

We have seen that the greatest achievement of Jajalla I (A.D. 1114) is described as a victory over Someśvara in one record and over Bhujabala of Sonpur in another. This may suggest that Bhujabala or Bhujabalāmaḷa was a virudha of Someśvara. Someśvara, defeated by the Kalachuris of the western part of Dakṣiṇa-Kosala in the early years of the twelfth century, seems to be no other than the Somavamśī Kumāra Someśvara, lord of Paśchima-Laṅka (probably the district round Sonpur), who issued the Kelga plates from Suvarṇapura. Someśvara calls himself Kumāra and Kumāra-ādhikīrīja (cf. the case of the Pāramarī Mahākumāra), but also assumes the imperial titles Paramesvara and Paramabhattaraka. He seems to have ruled over the district round Sonpur when the other parts of the Somavamśī dominions were occupied by the enemies. He issued the Kelga plates after the end of the rule (aśīpī-vṛtta) of Abhimanyu who had been installed in the Kosala kingdom presented to him by Uddyotakesari. It appears that Uddyotakesari, during the latter part of his rule, made Abhimanyu, apparently a prince of his own family, a sub-king of that part of his kingdom which lay in Kosala, while he himself ruled in Utkala. This arrangement might have been devised to check Kalachuri and Chhindaka-Choḷa encroachment upon Kosala and Gaṅga aggression against Utkala. As
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Somesvara seems to have ruled in the early years of the twelfth century, Abhimanyu may be assigned to the last quarter of the previous century. The position of Somesvara and Abhimanyu in the genealogy of the Somavamsis cannot be determined; but the latter may have been a grandson of Abhimanyu (son of Vichitravîra and grandson of Mahabhânavagupta I) and a brother or cousin of Uddyotakesari. As to the extirpation of Somavamsi rule from Kosala, it may be pointed out that the Chhindaka (Nâga) king Somesvara (c. A.D. 1090-1110) of Bastar, and Yasorâja, who was probably a Chola feudatory of the Chhindakas and flourished in the middle of the eleventh century,29 claim to have conquered Kosala or parts of that country. Yasorâja's great-grandson Râja Somesvara, who claimed himself "lord of the whole of Kosala" and flourished probably in the first quarter of the twelfth century, actually issued his charters from Suvarnapura (Sonpur). Considering the date of this Chola lord of Kosala (Somesvara), who appears to have been a feudatory of his Chhindaka-Nâga namesake (Somesvara, c. A.D. 1090-1110), it seems very probable that these two Somesvaras were responsible for the extirpation of their Somavamsi namesake, Kumâra Somesvara, lord of Paśchima-Lâñkâ.

The name of the Somavamsi Kumâra may suggest that for a time the Somavamsis acknowledged the suzerainty of the Chhindaka-Nâga king Somesvara I. This is not improbable in view of the Telugu-Chola influence on the style of Somavamsi Somesvara's charter. In that case, Kumâra Somesvara's short rule may have been the result of a successful revolt against Chhindaka-Nâga authority.

V. THE NAGAS OR CHHINDAKAS

A number of inscriptions of a dynasty of rulers belonging to the Chhindaka family of the Nâga race have been found in Bastar in Madhya Pradesh. These Chhindaka-Nâgas are sometimes described as the kings of Chakrakoṭâ (also called Chakrakoṭâ, Chakrakoṭa, etc.), which was the old name of Bastar. They appear to have ruled from Bârasûru (modern Barsur about 55 miles from Jagdalpur, chief city of Bastar). They belonged to the Kâyapâ gotra and had the snake-banner and the 'tiger-with-cub' crest. One of their significant titles was "the lord of Bhogavati (Bhogavati), the best of cities." Bhogavati was the mythical capital of the snake-demons, called Nâgas, who lived in Rasâîlala, forming a part of Pâṭêla or the subterranean world.

The above informations about the Chhindaka-Nâgas of Bastar clearly point to their close relationship with the Sindas of the...
Kannad country. The land of the Sindas, called Sindavägli, comprised parts of northern Mysore, Bellary, Dhärwär and Bijäpur, and is mentioned in a record of A.D. 750. The Sinda families ruled from Bägalokot and Yelburga in Bijäpur and Hollavür and Belagütti in Mysore. There is no doubt that the family name Chhindaka, preferred by the Nágavänśiis of Bastar, is the same as Sindä, although the Sindas fabricated a mythology to explain their family name as derived from the name of the river Sindhu. The fabricated genealogy of the Sindas sometimes says that the eponymous progenitor of the dynasty was a "long-armed" Sinda who was the human son of a snake king named Dharaíndra and that he was born at Ahichchhatra near the Sindhu and was reared by a tiger. Elsewhere, however, the same mythical Sinda is described as the son of the god Siva from the river-goddess Sindu and as brought up by the snake-king with tiger’s milk. We have no such explanation of the family name in the inscription of the Chhindakas; but it is quite significant that, like them, the Sindas also claimed the Naga lineage, the snake-banner (sometimes explained as the banner having the figures of the Nāga-chiefs Ananta, Vāsuki and Takshaka represented on it), and the hereditary title “lord of Bhogavati, the best of cities.” It may be suggested that the Chhindakas left their original home in the Kannada country before the fabrication of the above genealogy by the Sindas, some time after the middle of the eleventh century.

The earliest Nágavänśi inscription in Bastar is a fragmentary record from Errakot, about ten miles from Jagdalpur. The name of the Chhindaka-Naga king mentioned in it cannot be fully read, but may be Nripatibhūshaña (or Kshitibhūshaña?). It is said that the inscription bears a date in Saka 945 (= A.D. 1023). This date seems to suggest that the Chhindakas entered Bastar in the train of the army of the Chola king Rajendra I, which is known to have invaded the said area some time before A.D. 1023. It should, however, be noted that personal names in this family like Dharavarsa and Kanharma would suggest its original subservience to the imperial house of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, while the popularity of the name Somesvara in this dynasty and also in that of its Telugu-Chola feudatories seems to indicate that both of these houses acknowledged the suzerainty of the Chāluksya monarch Somesvara I Ahavamalla (A.D. 1043-68) of Kalyāga. This may have been a result of the expedition led by Vikramādiyā VI, son of Ahavamalla, against the East Indian countries some time during his father’s reign.

An inscription from Barsur, which bears a date in A.D. 1060, refers to the reign of a Chhindaka-Naga king named Mahärāja Dhä-
rāvarsha alias Jagadekabhūṣaṇa. It is stated that his feudatory
Mahāmaṇḍaleśvara Chandrāditya-mahārāja, who belonged to the
Telugu-Chōḍa family and was the lord of Ammagrāma, built a Śiva
temple and excavated a tank at Bārasūr (modern Barsur, the find-
spot of the record in question). Chandrāditya is further said to
have purchased a village from his overlord and dedicated it in
favour of the deity installed in the temple. King Dhārāvārsha Jagade-
kabhūṣaṇa is stated to have been present when this transaction
was made. Now the above fact appears to indicate that the feudat-
tory chief Chandrāditya had his headquarters at Ammagrāma while
his Chhindaka-Nāga overlord ruled from the city of Bāra śūr.

King Dhārāvārsha Jagadekabhūṣaṇa does not appear to have
survived long after A.D. 1060 as the Chhindaka-Nāga throne was
occupied by another member of the family, named Madhurāntaka,
some time before the fifth of October, 1065, the date of the
latter's Rājapura plate.33 It cannot be determined whether the
fragmentary Dantewara inscription34 of A.D. 1061 belongs to Dhā-
rāvārsha or Madhurāntaka. King Madhurāntaka was soon ousted
from the throne by Dhārāvārsha's son Someśvara I whose earliest
known date is A.D. 1069. The names of these two rivals of the
same family for the Chhindaka-Nāga kingdom of Bastar may sug-
gest that Someśvara was supported by the Chāḷukyas of Kaliṣa, while
Madhurāntaka received help from the Chōḍas. It is inte-
resting to note in this connection that a Chōḷa inscription35 of A.D.
1074 refers to certain victories achieved by Kulottūnga I at an
earlier date in Vaiṭirāgaram (Wairagarh in the Chāṇḍā District)
and Sakkarakoṭṭam (Chakrakoṭṭa).

The Rājapura copper-plate inscription of Madhurāntaka, bear-
ing the date A.D. 1065, records the grant of the village of Rājapura
(findspot of the record, 22 miles north-west of Jagdalpur) in the
Bhramarakotya (Bhramarakoṭṭa)-maṇḍala, probably as a compen-
sation for supplying victims for human sacrifices. The Bhramara-
koṭṭa-maṇḍala was either identical with Chakrakoṭṭa or a part of
the latter. The king was a Saiva and had the banner bearing the repre-
sentation of a lotus and a plantain leaf on the back of Airāvata
instead of the snake-banner used by other members of the family.

Someśvara I, son of Dhārāvārsha Jagadekabhūṣaṇa, is known
from several records, the earliest of which, as indicated above, is
dated in A.D. 1069. The latest known date of this king is A.D. 1097.
One of the two Kuruspal (22 miles from Jagdalpur) inscriptions26
of Dhārāpamahādevi, the second queen of the Chhindaka-Nāga king
Someśvara I, bears a date in the Khara Saṅvatsara which fell in
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

A.D. 1069. Two other inscriptions of the reign of the same king, one from Kuruspal and another from Gadia, are dated in A.D. 1097.

The most important record of the reign of Somesvara I is a fragmentary inscription from Kuruspal. This epigraph mentions the king’s son Kanhara and seems to have been engraved late in his reign. Somesvara is stated in the inscription to have acquired the sovereignty of Chakrakūta (Chakrakotī) through the grace of the goddess Vindhyavāsini. He is further said to have killed king Madhurāntaka who is undoubtedly the issuer of the Rājapura plates of A.D. 1065. Madhurāntaka was a ruler of Chakrakūta of which Somesvara I claimed to have been the hereditary king. The record also credits Somesvara with many other military activities such as the burning of Veṇgi, the subjugation of Bhadrapattana and Vajra, and the seizure of the six lakhs and ninety-six villages of Kosala (South Kosala). Veṇgi, the kingdom of the Eastern Chalukyas, was now a part of the Chau-Chalukya empire, and Virachochā, also mentioned in the record under review, was governing it in A.D. 1078-84 and 1088-92 as the viceroy of his father Kulottunga I (A.D. 1070-1120). We have already noticed that Kulottunga claimed some success against Wairagarh (probably the same as Vajra in Somesvara’s record under discussion) and Chakrakotī, achieved by him some years before A.D. 1074. Bhadrāpattana of the inscription has been identified by scholars with modern Bhandak in the Chanda District. According to the Padma Purāṇa, the conventional or traditional number of grāmās in Kosala was ten lakhs, although this is certainly an exaggerated statement if the word grāma or village is taken in the ordinary sense of the term. The Chhindaka-Naga king Somesvara I thus seems to have claimed the possession of a large part of South Kosala. This success may have been achieved at the expense of both the Kalachuris and the Somavāṃśis. In this connection, we cannot ignore the fact that Yaśorāja I, father of the Telugu-Chola chief Chandrāditya who was ruling at Ammagrama as a feudatory of Somesvara’s father, also claimed to have carved out a kingdom in Kosala. It is not altogether unlikely that Yaśorāja I entered Kosala as a lieutenant of Somesvara I and was rewarded by the governorship of a portion of the country he had conquered on behalf of his overlord. Another interesting fact is that Kumāra Somesvara of Suvarṇapura and Paśchima-Lankā, who belonged to the Somavāṃśa that was overthrown by the descendants of Yaśorāja I, was probably named after the Chhindaka-Naga king Somesvara I. This may suggest that for a time the later Somavāṃśis had to acknowledge the supremacy of the Chhindakas. The suggestion seems to be supported by the in-
fluence of the Telugu-Choḍa grants on the style of the copper-plate charter of Somavāṃśi Somesvara. The inscription of Chhindaka Somesvara I under review also mentions the king of Ratnapura (capital of the Kalachuris of South Kosala) as one of his antagonists and points to the fact that he came into conflict with the Kalachuris as well. Some scholars are inclined to identify the king named Somesvara, whom the Kalachuri king Jájalla I claimed to have seized in a battle some years before A.D. 1114, with the Chhindaka-Nāga ruler Somesvara I.

According to the Kuruspal inscription, besides the antagonists mentioned above, Chhindaka Somesvara I came into conflict also with the kings of Udra (Orissa), Lājji (in Bālaghāt District) and Lemnā (Lavana in Bālaghāt District). The king of Udra was possibly the Somavaṃśi ruler Udayotakesari.

The Nārāyanpāl inscription of A.D. 1111 mentions Ganga-Mahādevi who was the queen of Dhārāvarsha, mother of Somesvara I, and grand-mother of Kannara. It is clearly stated that Kannara was then ruling after the death of his father. Thus Somesvara I must have ended his reign some time before A.D. 1111.

A Barsur inscription, dated Saka 1130 (A.D. 1208), mentions Gāṅga-Mahādevi as the queen of the Chhindaka-Nāga king Somesvara, who may be identified with king Rājabhūṣhana Somesvara II known from the Gadia inscription. Rājabhūṣhana-mahārāja is also known from an undated Dantewara inscription. An inscription from Barsur similarly mentions a king named Kannara who seems to be a later member of the family and may be styled Kannara II. Hiralal, however, believed that the date of Ganga-Mahādevi’s inscription is a mistake for Saka 1030 (A.D. 1108) and that she was a queen of Somesvara I, son of Dhārāvarsha Jagadekabhūshaṇa.

The Jatanpāl inscription of A.D. 1218 and the Dantewara inscription of A.D. 1224 speak of a Chhindaka king named Jagadekabhūshaṇa Narasinnha who seems to be identical with Mahārāja Jagadekabhūshaṇa mentioned as the worshipper of the goddess Mājikyadevi (modern Danteswari of the Dantewara temple) in an inscription from Bhairamgarh. The undated Sunarpal inscription mentions another king of the family, named Jayasimha, whose relation with Jagadekabhūshaṇa Narasinnha is unknown. King Harischandra of Chakrakoṭa, possibly a later member of the Chhindaka-Nāga family, is mentioned in the Temara inscription of A.D. 1324.
VI. THE CHOLAS OR TELEGU-CHOJAS

The Kumarisimha and Patna Museum plates of Somesvara II, the first in the eleventh and the second in the seventeenth year of his reign. He belonged to the Kaśyapa gotra and the Chola or Choḍa family which is described as the race of the sun. He was a devotee of Śiva as well as Vīṣṇu, and is described as a worshipper of the god Vaidyanātha whose temple is situated on the Tel, about 12 miles from Sonpur. A significant title of the king is Kāverinātha (lord of the river Kāveri) which points to his claim of descent from the Cholas of Karikāla's house. He claims to have enjoyed the title "lord of the entire Kosala (South Kosala)," although his subordinate position is clearly indicated by the feudatory titles Rāṣṭra, Mahāmāyādeśīvara, and Mahāśyāhapati. The king is also called Ayyana-gandhāvīra, which was a Kannada title known to have been assumed by the feudatories and generals of the Chalukya emperors of Kalīyāna. He had the rākta-dhvaja or blood-red banner and the sīnha-lāṅchhana or lion crest. The Kumarisimha and Patna Museum plates of Somesvara II of the Chola or Choḍa family were issued from Suvarṇāpura which had been previously one of the capitals of the Somavallīs of Kosala. This Somesvara appears to have flourished about the first quarter of the twelfth century and to have been responsible for the final expulsion of the Somavallī Kumāra Somesvara from Suvarṇāpura.

The Kumarisimha plates describe Somesvara II as the son of Yasorāja II and the grandson of Chandrāditya, while the Patna Museum plates inform us that Chandrāditya was the brother of Somesvara I, son of Yasorāja I, and grandson of Challama of the Chola family sprung from the sun. Yasorāja I is stated to have carved out a kingdom in the Kosāla (South Kosala) country.

The Barsur and Potinar inscriptions of A.D. 1060 speak of Mahāmāyādeśīvara Mahārāja Chandrāditya, ruler of Aṃmagrāma, as the feudatory of the Chhindaka-Nāga king Dharavārsha Jaga-dekabhiśāna, who had his headquarters at Bārasūr, modern Barsur in Bastar. The date of these records would suggest that Chandrāditya and his brother Somesvara flourished in the third quarter of the eleventh century. Thus Chandrāditya's son Yasorāja II and grandson Somesvara II may be roughly assigned respectively to the last quarter of the eleventh and the first quarter of the twelfth century A.D. Similarly his father Yasorāja I and grandfather Challama may be roughly placed in the first half of the eleventh century, although, as indicated above, Yasorāja I may have been serving as a general of the Chhindakas even after A.D. 1000.
Chandraditya is stated to have built a temple of the god Chandradityesvara, excavated a tank called Chandraditya-samudra, and planted a garden called Chandraditya-nandanaavana, all at Barasiiru, the capital of his overlord. He also granted two villages (one of which is said to have been purchased from his Chhindaka overlord Dharavarsha) for the maintenance of the temple and the garden. All the epithets of the Telugu-Choc;las are attributed to Chandraditya who is further stated to have been a scion of the Karikula family ruling from the city of Orayuru (modern U;ayiir near Trichinopoly) and holding sway over the region of the Kaveri.

These Cholas of Bastar and South Kosala enjoyed the same birudas as the Telugu-Choc;las flourishing in different parts of the Cuddapah, Kurnool and Anantapur Districts. There is, therefore, little doubt that they migrated to Bastar from the Telugu country. As many of the Telugu-Choc;la chiefs of the Andhra country are known to have owed allegiance to the Chalukya emperors of Kalya;a, it is not unlikely that Challama or his son entered Bastar in the train of Vikramaditya VI who is known to have led an expedition against the eastern countries some time during the reign of his father Someśvara I Ahavamalla (A.D. 1043-68). The popularity of the name Someśvara among the Chhindakas and their Telugu-Choc;la feudatories, the Kannada title Ayyana-gandhavaram assumed by these Telugu-Choc;la chiefs, and the history of the Rashtrakutas of Vagharakotta discussed separately suggest that these ruling families acknowledged the supremacy of the Chalukyas of Kalya;a at least for some time.

The Mahada plates were published long ago with an inaccurate transcript, and the charter was wrongly assigned to a ruler named Yogeśvaradevavaran. Actually this grant was issued by a Telugu-Choc;la chief named Someśvaradeva-varman who was the son of Dhāralladeva-varman and the grandson of another Someśvara. The date of the charter is the issuer's twenty-third regnal year. It is stated that the grant was made when the ruler in question was standing before Lankavarttaka on the banks of the Chi;trotpala (Mahanad). Lankavarttaka seems to indicate a deity that was worshipped on the Lankesvari hillock in the bed of the Mahanadi at Sonpur. The description of the issuer of the Mahada plates is strikingly similar to that of the Telugu-Choc;la chiefs of Chakrakoṭṭa and Kosala, and there is no doubt that he was closely related to Someśvara II who issued the Kumarisimha and Patna Museum plates. But Someśvaradeva-varman of the Mahada plates appears to have flourished at a later date and may have been a grandson of Someśvara II. The comparative lateness of the Mahada plates

220
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

is suggested by the fact that the issuer of the charter is endowed with the epithets Pañchamahasabda-samanvita, Mahāmahimaṇḍaleśvara, Mahābhūpati and Chakravarttin. In these we find a combination of both paramount and subordinate titles, which shows that Someśvaradeva-varman owed only a nominal allegiance to the family of the overlords of his predecessors. This is further indicated by the fact that Mahāmahimaṇḍaleśvara and Mahābhūpati are clearly deliberate modifications of the feudatory titles Mahāmaṇḍaleśvara and Mahāvīrahaṇapati enjoyed by Someśvara II. Moreover, the issuer of the Mahada plates as well as that of the Varanasi and Patna Museum plates apparently ruled over the same region with headquarters at the same city (Suvarṇapurā or Sonpur). We are therefore inclined to take Someśvaradeva-varman of the Mahada plates as Someśvara III, grandson of Someśvara II. He seems to have flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. Nothing is known about his father Dharalāla.

VII. THE RĀṢṬRAKUṬAS

Various Rāṣṭrakūṭa ruling families are known to have flourished in different parts of India. But so far no family of Rāṣṭrakūṭa origin was traced in Orissa. The recently discovered Bargarh plates of Parachakrasālyā prove the existence of a Rāṣṭrakūṭa ruling family in the Sambalpur tract of Orissa about the twelfth century A.D.

The Bargarh plates may be assigned to the twelfth century A.D. on palaeographical grounds. The charter is dated in the year 56, probably of the Chālukya Vikrama era of A.D. 1076. The date of the grant thus seems to be A.D. 1131. It was issued by Rāṇaka Parachakrasālyā who was the son of Dhaṁsaka and grandson of Mahāmaṇḍaleśvara Mahāmaṇḍalika Rāṇaka Chamaravīra who is described as a devotee of Śiva and an ornament of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa lineage. As Dhaṁsaka is mentioned without any epithet, he seems to have predeceased his father, and Parachakrasālyā probably succeeded his grandfather. In spite of the Śaiva religion preferred by the family, the seal of the Bargarh plates bears the figure of Garuḍa, Viṣṇu’s vihāra. An interesting epithet of Chamaravīrā is Lītālola-viṁśirgata, apparently pointing to the original home of the family at Lītālola. This Lītālola is undoubtedly the same as Lattalūra, otherwise called Lattalūr, Lattanūr, Latanaura, etc., the traditional home of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas of the Deccan. A feudatory of the Western Chālukya emperor Vikramāditya VI (A.D. 1076-1126), who belonged to the Mahā-Rāṣṭrakūṭa lineage, is described
as "emigrated from Latalaura"55 exactly like Chamaravigraha in the Bargarh inscription.

The description of Chamaravigraha as having the Garuda-darpasadhvaja reminds us of the fact that the Rāṣṭrākūṭas of the Deccan enjoyed the Pālidhvaja, Oka-ketu and Garuḍa-lāṁchhana. Chamaravigraha claims to have frightened his enemies with the sound of the trivali, which undoubtedly refers to the musical instrument of the same name which is known to have heralded the Rāṣṭrākūṭa rulers of the Deccan in public. Chamaravigraha is further stated to have enjoyed the white umbrella and the yellow chowrie.

The description of the issuer of the Bargarh plates and his grandfather and predecessor may raise the suspicion that these Rāṣṭrākūṭas had really nothing to do with Orissa, although the plates were found in a locality in the Sambalpur tract. Such a contention is, however, completely negatived by the epithet ashtadasa-ghatta-Gondram-adhipati applied to Chamaravigraha. “Lord of the eighteen Gondramas” or “lord of all the Gondramas” is a typical epithet of many early rulers of Orissa. The “eighteen” (really meaning “many”) Gondramas are now believed roughly to indicate the same thing as Oriya athara-gac;la-jata, a collective name for all the native states recently merged in Orissa. The earliest reference to the “eighteen” states in an Orissan record seems to be that in the Kanasa plate of A.D. 599-600 which describes the kingdom of Tosali (Orissa) as comprising eighteen ṛaṇa-rājyas.

The Bargarh plates were issued from Vāgharakoṭṭa which was apparently the name of a fort. Vāgharakoṭṭa, which was no doubt the capital of Rāṣṭrākūṭa Parachakraśalya, may be modern Bargarh in Sambalpur, although it is difficult to be definite on the point. The Rāṣṭrākūṭas appear to have ruled over a small district around their capital. Their relations with other ruling families of Upper Orissa are as yet unknown.

These Rāṣṭrākūṭas of Kannāḍa origin may have entered Orissa in the train of the eastern expedition led by Chāluva Vikramādiṭya VI some time before the death of his father in A.D. 1068. This seems to be suggested not only by the history of the Chhindaka-Nāgas and Telugu-Choc;las, discussed above, but also by the establishment, some time in the eleventh century, of the Senas, claiming Karṇāḍa descent, in Bengal and of the Karṇāṭaka family in Mithilā.
DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

VIII. THE TAILAPAVAMSI

Like the Rashtrakutas of Orissa, another ruling family of Kannada origin, settled in the Eastern Deccan in the same age, is known from an inscription discovered at Upalada in the Parlakimedi Taluk of the Ganjam District. The epigraph may be assigned on palaeographical grounds to the eleventh or twelfth century. It records the grant of the village of Upalavala (the same as Upalada where the inscription was found) by Rāṣṭaka Rāmadeva.

Rāmadeva was a feudatory ruler. This is indicated by his title Rāṣṭaka as well as by his epithet samadhigata-paśīcha-mahāsābda. Rāṣṭaka Rāmadeva was a devout worshipper of the god Śiva; but he also claims to have enjoyed the favour of the goddess Agidevi, apparently a form of the Mother-goddess.

It is stated in the Upalada inscription that Rāṣṭaka Rāmadeva sprang from the Tailapa-vamsa, i.e. the Tailapa dynasty. Tailapa, from whom Rāmadeva apparently claimed descent, seems to be none other than the Western Chalukya monarch Tailapa II who overthrew the Rashtrakutas and re-established Chalukya sovereignty in the Deccan about A.D. 973. He was the great-great-grandfather of Vikramāditya VI who is known to have led an expedition against Eastern India. It is not unlikely that Rāmadeva or one of his immediate predecessors came to the east coast country in the company of Vikramāditya VI in his eastern expedition. But the way in which Rāmadeva claims descent from the Chalukya emperor Tailapa seems to suggest that he was not a member of the Chalukya family, but was merely the son or descendant of a princess of the Chalukya house.

1. There were villages Kākati-khanḍa and Kākati-pallika in the Visakhapatnam and Ganjam Districts (EJ, V. 189, IMP, Gj. 167). Gaṅga Sāhāni, a feudatory of the Kākatiya Rukrāmhā, who ruled in the Cuddapah District, calls himself a prince of Kākatiya-varam (IMP, Cd. 63).
2. Sāṃsattavālta-vāṃśa.... (IND, p. 25).
3. The Kaxipet inscription (IND, 30) seems to be suggesting that Durgā Tribhubanamalla was the son and successor of Beta II. There is no other evidence to corroborate it.
4. Hemāvī, in his Vṛata-khaṭṭaka, states that the Yādava Jātugī killed Raudra, king of Tailanga (END, 232, v. 41). Sir R. G. Bhandarkar takes Raudra, which means the son of Rādha, to be error for Rudra. But in view of the fact that Jātugī killed Mahādeva, brother and successor of Rādha, the expression Raudra seems to be referring to this unfortunate Yādava king.
5. The Pākhāl inscription of Gaurapati gives a long list of countries conquered by the king (Hyd. Arch. Series, No. 4; IND, p. 52).
6. Pratāparudra of Vīstärādhya gives a long list of countries conquered by Pratāparudra when he was a Yuvadhya (RSE, LXV, Int. XIV, XV).
8. Vol. IV, Ch. VI.
9. Vol. IV, Ch. VI.
10. The latter part of the name of these rulers is written either as “kesari” or “kesarl.”
11. Vol. IV, Ch. VI.
12. V. Rangacharya wrongly reads the date of a stone inscription of Kulottunga Chola I in the Vizagapatam Dist. as of Si 1021 (cf. Hist. Ins. 91).
13. See p. 32.
14. The extreme known dates of the kings mentioned in this para have been given in the parenthesis. No attempt has been made to determine the years of their accession with the help of stone inscriptions bearing regnal years along with dates in Shaka year, as there is no agreement between them. Sometimes regnal years given in the stone inscriptions exceed the reign-periods mentioned in the copper-plates. In order to meet these difficulties M. M. Chakravarti suggests that regnal years given are as a matter of fact anta years which will have to be calculated by a particular method in order to get the actual figures (Cf. JASB, LXXII, 166; G. Ramdas, JBORS, XVII. 285; Subba Rao, JAIRS, VI. 288). But the application of this system also does not lead to the correct solution of the problem.
16. JBORS, XVII. 15 ff; HQ. XXII, 300 ff.
17. See JARSI, XIII. 63 ff. The Bhubaneswar inscription actually reads the names of Yayati I (1.4), Bhimaratha (1.5) and Dharmaratha (1.6). The reading of the second and third names as Dhiraratha and Apavara is not supported by the published eye-copy.
18. JBORS, II. 52.
19. It is sometimes suggested that the epithet suh-bhupapajita-trikalicsipati would indicate only the first king of the family of the Somavamsi lords of Tripalkula. This is not convincing, as the title could have been assumed after averting any danger to the succession or to the state; cf. the epithet suh-cirty-dhigata-raja applied to Pallava Skandavarman I (1) of the Cengul grant No. 1, who was not the first of the Pallava family (Sue. St., p. 201).
20. The charter records the grant of two villages in the Ungoja and Gandharavali districts, both attached to Kosala. Gandharaavali seems to be no other than Gandhatapati mentioned in an inscription of Mahâraja Pata I, which has been discussed above. Gandhatapati is the modern Gandharavali in Bahrúth.
22. The eye-copy suggests the reading dâhalonis chau-oudra-gaulau and not nihalensis choda-gaudae.
23. JAIRS, VIII. 40.
24. The date was read by B. Misra as 811.
25. EI, XIX. 78.
26. EI, I. 32.
27. EI, XXII. 159.
28. EI, XII, 239; XXVIII, 321.
29. See Sections V, VI, above (pp. 214-221).
30. Bm., Gaz., I, ii, pp. 372 ff; EI, III, 230 ff; Sewell, HISI, pp. 392-3 etc.
33. Himalal, op. cit., 163-64.
34. Ibid, p. 165.
35. Sewell, op. cit., p. 84.
37. Ibid, p. 163.
38. EI, X. 25 ff.
40. See JBRŚ, XL, i, 8 ff.
41. EI, I. 38.
42. Ibid, IX. 311 ff, 161-62.
43. Ibid, IX. 162.
44. Hirralal, op. cit., p. 179.
45. Ibid, p. 166.
47. Ibid, p. 164.
49. Hirralal, ibid, p. 165.
50. JIHRŚ, I. 229 ff.
51. EI, XIX. 97 ff.
53. EI, XI. 343-44.
54. Ibid, XII. 218 ff; XXVIII, 283 ff.
56. EI, XXII. 141 ff.

DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN
CHAPTER IX

THE HOYSALAS

1. ORIGIN OF THE HOYSALAS

The Hoysalas had their origin in the hilly tracts to the north-west of Gaṅgavāḍi in Mysore. The original home of the Hoysalas is traditionally located in a village in Muddenėr Taluk of the Kaḍur District, Mysore, where there is a Vasantikā temple. The story runs that a Jain resident of the locality went to the Vasantikā temple for worship and found in the temple a Jain ascetic wrapt in meditation in front of the goddess and oblivious to all else outside. A tiger from the forest, finding him in that condition, was about to spring upon him but, at the word of the ascetic “poy, Sāla”—“strike, Sāla”, the lay worshipper, without the slightest hesitation, drew out a dagger from his waistband and killed the tiger after a struggle. Appreciating the achievement of the man, the saint bespoke the favour of the goddess Vasantikā and promised him sovereignty over the territory round about; hence the line of kings was called Poy­sala or Hoysala. This is the legend recorded in the earlier inscrip­tions of the Hoysalas. We find, however, a similar story of a wrestle with a tiger ending in its death mentioned as the distinct achieve­ment of another immigrant chieftain of the locality, Irungo Vel of Araiyam, who came 48 generations after the Mahābhārata war. This is found in an address by the poet Kapilar, who appealed to the chieftain to accept for his spouse one of the daughters of his friend, the patron Pāri, who died before marrying off the girl suit­ably. Like the Hoysalas, this early Tamil chieftain also claimed descent from the Yādava stock.

The Hoysala kingdom lay between the Chōja and the Later Chāluṅka territories, a region much disputed between the rival powers. Ever since the emergence of the Chāluṅkas in A.D. 973 they became heirs of the Rashtrakūṭas to the rivalry against the Chōjas for the possession of Gaṅgavāḍi. Since the days of the Chōja Rājarāja the Great, Chōja authority superseded that of the Gaṅgas in this region, viz. the Gaṅgavāḍi 96,000 and parts of Nolamba­vāḍi in the neighbourhood reaching up to the border­land of Banavāsi to the north-west of both. Rājarāja's author­ity in that region became well established before A.D. 1000, and hostilities went on, as noted below, during the subsequent reigns of Rājendra and his sons with undiminished vigour on both sides.
THE HOYSALAS

In course of the struggle between the Chalukyas and the Cholas, the hill chieftains in the intervening region had their opportunities to display their valour and acquire small principalities. The most successful of them seems to have been the Hoysala chief-tain, who distinguished himself in various wars and ingratiated himself with his liege lord, the Chalukya ruler. The Hoysala chieftains thus achieved prominence and became in a way the trusted lieutenants of the Chalukya emperor on this border. Rising from this subordinate position, they created a kingdom for themselves under the Chalukya supremacy. When the Chalukya power declined, the Hoysalas stood forth as the independent successors in authority over the southern territory of the Chalukyas.

2. EARLY KINGS

Sāla, the first chieftain of the line and the hero of the tiger story, may perhaps be identified with Nripakāma, though some deny any connection between the two. The achievement of killing the tiger seems to have been a historical fact, as the later Mackenzie manuscripts definitely state that Nripakāma was engaged in hunting and killing the tigers of the locality and was rewarded by the payment of an annual fee of one pañca for the service. This seems far more likely than the other story about the tiger and the saint; but it might as well be a rationalization of the legend. He gradually made himself headman and hero of the locality round about his village, Sāsavīr, or in Sanskrit Saśakapura. He seems to have been a man of ability and assumed the title Rājamanḍara Perumāḥi Aḍī, which superseded his ordinary name Kāma Hoysala. His son and successor, Vinayāḍītya, was a feudatory of the Chalukyas under Vikramāditya VI. Vinayāḍītya's reign-period coincided with that of the protracted struggle between the Cholas and the Chalukyas for the possession of the Gaṅgaṇāḍi province. As stated above, the Cholas were in possession not only of Gaṅgaṇāḍi, but of a considerable part of Noḷambavāḍi, right up to the frontier of the Western Ghāṭs and Banavāsi. These had to be conquered after a severe struggle which provided the opportunity for a talented chieftain, well placed on the frontier, to achieve a position for himself. Both Vinayāḍītya and his son Ereṇāga fought loyally for the Chalukyas, and the latter was known as the right-hand man of the Chalukya emperor. Some of the Hoysala inscriptions credit Vinayāḍītya with rule over the territory bounded by Koṅkāna, Aluvakheḍā, Bāyalaṅḍu, Taḷakaṅḍi, and Sāvimalai. This is exactly the boundary of Gaṅgaṇāḍi, which we find later on under Hoysala Vishnuvardhana. In all the campaigns of Vinayāḍītya, his son was associated with him.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

until he predeceased his father. When Vinayāditya died in A.D. 1101, his eldest grandson Ballāla I succeeded him. He shifted the capital from Sosāvīr to Belūr (or Velapura), although Dvārasamudrā (modern Halebid) was an alternative capital. He married the three daughters of a military officer in the same pavilion, as one of his grants declares. He conducted a campaign against the Changāvas in A.D. 1104 and, along with his brother Vishnu, made a successful invasion of the Pāṇḍya dominion of Nolambāvādī. He is also said to have repulsed the Paramārā prince, Jagaddeva, as noted above. The inscriptions of Ballāla’s time are all dated in the Chālukya-Vikrama era, which means that he regarded himself as a feudatory of the Chālukya emperor.

3. BIṬṬIGA OR VISHNUVARDHANA

When Ballāla died some time about the year A.D. 1106, his younger brother Bīṭṭiga or Bīṭṭideva succeeded to the throne. This Bīṭṭideva, generally known by the synonymous title Vishnupardhana assumed by him, is the real maker of the Hoysala kingdom, corresponding to modern Mysore. The name Bīṭṭideva is the vernacular equivalent of what in Sanskrit would be Vishnudeva; the somewhat sacerdotal title Vishnupardhana is thus not exactly a new name, but only the old name put in a new form. The first mention of him occurs in A.D. 1100 in association with his brother Ballāla, the last of whose records is dated A.D. 1106. It is ten years later that inscriptions speak of him and his exploits. He began by carrying on successful invasions against Nolambavādī and Gangavādī, and it is the conquest of most of these two divisions after years of war that constitutes his title to greatness. The capture of Talakād in A.D. 1117 marks the climax of this conquest, credit for which is claimed by Bīṭṭideva as well as a number of generals. The capture of Talakād seems to have been a decisive event as after that he assumes the titles Viragandga and Talakāḍu-gosda. He toured through his dominions and advanced as far as the eastern frontier of Kolār, as a record of his mentions his having been in Bethamangalam, when his younger brother Udāyāditya’s daughter died. He had to carry on an expedition against Nolambavādī again in which he won a victory at a place called Dumme on the border between Shimoga and Chitaldroog Districts. By A.D. 1117 Vishnupardhana had become ruler of Gangavādī and claimed portions of Nolambavādī. He is said to have defeated successively one after the other, the various chieftains who occupied territories in the immediate neighbourhood, and built up a little kingdom for himself, the boundaries of which are given as Nangili in the east, Koṇgu, Cheram and Anamalais in the...
THE HOYSALAS

south, Barakanur in the west and Savimalai in the north. This would mean that he had already taken possession of what came to be recognised as the Hoysala kingdom later on. Nangili is the village on the eastern frontier of Kolār. The Kongu country is Salem and Coimbatore Districts, Cheraam is the Chera country westward, and Anamalais are the hills to the south of the Pālghāt gap; Barakanur is in S. Kanara at the end of the main road leading over the Western Ghāts from the Shimoga District into the coast region. Savimalai is yet unidentified, but the northern boundary at one time extended to the Krishṇa.

We have a record of A.D. 1121 which shows Vishnuvardhana, resident at Dvārasamudra, his capital, making a grant to the Siva temple, which apparently was a foundation of the Cholas. The remarkable fact about this is that he made the grant in full darbar with his Jain queen Śāntaladevi and the five great ministers, who were responsible advisers, most of them, if not all, being Jains. His younger brother Udayaditya died and Visnuvardhana made a grant for the merit of his soul. He made the grant of a village to his Jain wife Śāntaladevi, which was converted into a Brāhmaṇa settlement with 220 houses. It is a big Brāhmaṇa village even today, and goes by the name Śāntalagrama. In A.D. 1125 he made a grant to a Jain divine Śrī Pala. He is found in his palace at Yadavapura in A.D. 1128 and from there makes a grant to Marbalatirtha, the Siva temple on the Chāmudī hill. This grant exhibits his catholic attitude in religion, for he had adopted the Vaishnava teachings of Rāmanuja and was proclaimed a Vaishnava.

Having secured the southern frontier against the Cholas he began to carry on wars of aggression in the north. He was in possession of Gāṅgavāḍi, and had annexed a good part of Nolambavāḍi to his territory. This attracted the attention of emperor Vikramādiya, who directed a number of his Mahāmañḍalesvaras in the neighbourhood to check the advance of Vishnudevathana. Though Bīṭṭideva’s generals claim a victory against the imperialists, his advance towards the north must have been checked. His preoccupations during these years were all along the northern frontier. An inscription, dated A.D. 1131, claims for him rule over Gāṅgavāḍi 96,000, Nolambavāḍi 32,000, the Banavāśi 12,000 and Hānuṅgal 500. This would mean the whole of the modern state of Mysore and considerable portions of the borderland outside the Mysore frontier in the north. Along with the Pāṇḍya of Uchchaśīgī and Kadamba Jayakesī II, Bīṭṭiga advanced up to the Krishṇa, but Vikramādiya, aided by Sindā Āchugi II, drove him back to his territory and enforced the acknowledgement of his suzerainty.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

In A.D. 1131 Bittiga also made a grant to the Śiva temple at Maddr, which was otherwise called Narasimhayachaturvedimangalam, the land granted having been claimed as a gift by the Ganga king Śivaśāma, whose copper-plate grant was exhibited in evidence. The same year his queen Sāntaladevi died, and two years later his right-hand man, general Gangaśāma, who captured Talakāḍ, also died. This Gangaśāma had the reputation of having restored all the Jain shrines destroyed in course of the Chola invasions. His son Bappa, who succeeded him as Vishnuvardhana’s commander-in-chief, built a Jain shrine at Halebid in honour of his father and got it consecrated by a Jain divine Nayakirti. This shrine is in existence now, and is exhibited to visitors. The consecrated food from this shrine was sent to Vishnuvardhana while he was in camp on the banks of the Kṛishṇā in course of his northern campaigns. Simultaneously messengers came bringing the happy news that his queen Lakṣmidevi had given birth to a son and heir. These messengers reached him as he was returning victorious to his camp from the battlefield. Hence he ordered his baby son to be named Vijaya Narasimha and the Jain shrine Vijaya Pārvanātha.

Vishnuvardhana’s records proclaim him as a feudatory of the emperor Somesvara III. He had his capitals at Talakāḍ in the south and Baṅkāpura in the north, two fortified places which he occupied as occasion demanded. It was in A.D. 1137 also that he performed the great ceremony of Tulāpurusha, which may be interpreted as the symbol of his assuming royal power. The next year, however, he had to campaign again beyond the Tungabhadra. The emperor Somesvara III died in that year and was succeeded by his son. Vishnuvardhana is described as being encamped at Baṅkāpura, victorious against his enemies, in the year A.D. 1147. He ruled probably up to A.D. 1152, possibly till A.D. 1156, but the date cannot be definitely determined. Vishnuvardhana may be regarded as the maker of the Hoysala kingdom, although he did not assume independence, which was to come half a century later under his grandson.

4. BALLALA II, THE FIRST INDEPENDENT KING

Vishnuvardhana Hoysala was succeeded by his son Vijaya Narasimha I, who was associated in the government with his father almost from his very birth. On his death in A.D. 1173, he was succeeded by his son Ballala II. Ballala successfully maintained the position of precedence that Vishnuvardhana had established in the course of his long and active reign, though he had to fight hard against the Nolambas and the Kalachuris, two of the most active
feudatories of the Chalukya empire. His prolonged fight with the Yādavas has been discussed above in Chapter VII. After the first twenty years of his rule, marked by hard fighting, he felt confident that he could assume independence. The empire proved to be powerless to assert its authority against the Kalachuri usurpers and had to struggle for existence against the powerful feudatories, the Yādavas, who were rising into prominence. Vira Ballāla himself was constantly engaged in fighting against the imperial feudatories, primarily the Kadambas in the south-west corner of the Banavasi division, and it was as the result of a successful campaign against them that he felt that the empire was as good as non-existent. He, therefore, solemnly declared himself ruler of his territories in the year A.D. 1193, from which time we may date the independence of the Hoysala kingdom. He aided the Chola Kulottunga III and Rājarāja III against Sundara Pāṇḍya whom he compelled to restore the Chola country to its rulers (A.D. 1217). He seems to have died about A.D. 1220, and was succeeded by his son Narasimha, the second of the name in the dynasty.

5. NARASIMHA II AND THE HOYSALA EMPIRE

Narasimha's reign began about A.D. 1220 and lasted on to A.D. 1234. From the beginning of his reign, the northern frontier of the Hoysala was exposed to attacks by the Yādavas. Narasimha Hoysala had to intervene again to save the Cholas from Pāṇḍya aggressions. Māṇavarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I claims great achievements against the Chola kingdom; among others, to have burnt down the capital cities of Tanjore and Uḻaiyur. Simultaneously Rājarāja III was very hard put to it to hold his own against his refractory vassal, the Kājava Kop-Perunjiṅga, round about Cuddalore and Kānchi. Narasimha II intervened in A.D. 1231, defeated Sundara Pāṇḍya at Mahendramangalam on the Kāveri, and released and restored to the throne Rājarāja III who had been thrown into prison by Kop-Perunjiṅga. In the course of these activities, it became clear that the Chola kingdom was in constant danger of being overwhelmed by the aggressive Pāṇḍyas, and Narasimha's son and successor, Someśvara (A.D. 1234-1263), felt it necessary to establish himself in the south for the protection of the Chola kingdom against the Pāṇḍya menace. He built for himself a capital at Kaṇganūr, about four to five miles from Srirāgām, on the northern bank of the Celercoen, and renamed it Vikramapura. From there he was able to offer effective protection to the Chola against his powerful feudatories, the Sambuvārayas of North Arcot and Kop-Perunjiṅga of Cuddalore, not to mention the others. He had to leave the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

administration of his kingdom proper to his elder son Narasimha III and keep with him the younger prince Ramanatha. He had to fight against the Pandyas vigorously, and Jatāvarman Sundara Pandyas lays claim to several victories over him. The wars between the Pandyas and the Hoysalas became very frequent and grave till at last the Pandyas ruler could boast of having driven Somesvara from his southern capital, taken possession of the Chola kingdom, and marched northwards unmolested. Somesvara's fight with the Yadava Krishna and consequent loss of territory have been mentioned above.

6. THE FALL OF THE HOYSALAS

When Somesvara was killed in course of one of these campaigns, about A.D. 1263, his kingdom was partitioned. The elder son Narasimha III took possession of the Hoysala territory proper, while the southern region was governed by his younger brother Vira Ramanatha from the southern capital at Kanbanur. As mentioned above Narasimha repulsed the Yadava invasions under Mahādeva and Rāmachandra, and held the Hoysala frontier in the north successfully against Yadava aggressions till A.D. 1291, when he died. Meanwhile Ramanatha and his ally, the Chola Rajendra III, suffered defeat at the hands of Pandyas Māgarvarman Kulaśekhara in A.D. 1279. Ramanatha, who thus lost his kingdom in the Tamil land, now started a war with Narasimha and occupied part of his territory which he ruled from Kundānī in the Bangalore District. After he died, his son had but a brief rule of a few years, and the two parts of the kingdom were united again under Ballāla III, the son of Narasimha. Ballāla ruled from A.D. 1291 to his death at Trichinopoly in A.D. 1342. His successful aggressive campaigns against the Yadavas have been noted above. He had also to fight hard against the powerful rebellious feudatories of the empire. He ably ruled over his kingdom and protected his southern frontier against powerful Pandyas rulers, inclined to be aggressive if opportunity offered. He recovered Kāţga, Mugadai, and Tondālā, and Kātechī and Tiruvannāmalai became his subsidiary capitals. He thus maintained his kingdom successfully till about A.D. 1310 when Malik Kāfūr invaded it during the reign of Alā-ud-dīn Khālji to which a detailed reference will be made in the next volume. The Hoysalas had to pursue a policy of alternately submitting to the superior power and trying to re-establish his authority. His capital was overthrown in one of the Muhammadan invasions, and his son was sent as a prisoner to Delhi. The capital itself suffered destruction and Ballāla had to reconstruct it. When at last the Khalji rulers
THE HOYSALAS

were supplanted by the Tughluqs. Ballāla had to defend himself against invasions of Muhammad Tughluq and his generals. Subsequently, when the Tughluq empire fell, a Muhammadan dynasty ruled over Madurā, with a strong garrison of Muhammadans established at Kaṇḍyanā. These were like nails driven into the coffin of the Hoysala kingdom. Vira Bāllāla, as he is called, struggled hard in order to clear South India of these Muhammadan garrisons, but after years of campaigning he lost his life in a battle against the Mādurā Muhammadans at Trichinopoly, almost at the moment of victory. That is the last we hear of the Hoysala kingdom, although a son of his succeeded and ruled for a short while. The Hoysala dynasty, from the time of Vīṣṇuvardhana, ruled in great glory for more than a century, but came to an inglorious end at the moment of success, and it was left to another Hindu dynasty to achieve what its last ruler attempted to do, viz. to turn out all the Muhammadan garrisons from South India and to assure Hindu independence. This was successfully accomplished by Vijayānagara at a later date, but the way was paved for it to a great extent by the struggle of the Hoysalas, particularly the last one, Vira Ballāla III.⁵

1. See pp. 234 ff.
2. See p. 175.
3. Rice fixed A.D. 1141 as the date of Vīṣṇuvardhana’s death, but cf. K. A. N. Sastri’s views in PIHC, XI. 129.
4. There is some difference of opinion among scholars regarding the dates of Hoysala kings. Cf. The Hoysala Vamsa by W. Coelho (Bombay, 1950).
   Prof. K. A. N. Sastri has suggested the following dates in his latest publication, A History of South India (1955), p. 215:
   1. Nīrapāka (1022-47): 2. Vinayāditya (1047-98); 3. Ereyanga (1063-1100);
   4. Ballāla I (1100-10); 5. Vīṣṇuvardhana (1110-32); 6. Narasimha I (1132-73);
5. Further account of Vira Ballāla will be given in Vol. VI.

233
CHAPTER X

THE CHOLAS

I. POLITICAL HISTORY

Rājarāja the Great (A.D. 985-1014)

Rājarāja I, the son of Sundara Chola, ascended the throne in June-July, 985. His brother Aditya II was murdered at the instance of Uttama Chola, who had made Rājarāja heir apparent. Consequently, he was enabled before his accession to the throne to acquire extensive knowledge of public affairs during several years. His early titles were Rājakēsari Arumōli and Māmmādi Chola, the latter meaning “three times Chola”, similar to the surnames Immōli (twice) and Nārmaḍī (hundred times). The inscriptions of Rājarāja range from his second to his thirty-first regnal years. He started the practice of prefixing ‘historical introductions’ to his inscriptions, which was followed by his successors, and these official records of public events are thus of great help to the historian of the Cholas. No other contemporary accounts of Rājarāja are extant.

The Tanjore inscription of the twenty-ninth regnal year of Rājarāja mentions his warlike achievements in its ‘historical introduction.’ “He was pleased to destroy the ships (at) Kandalur-Sālai, and conquered by his army, which was victorious in great battles, Vengai-nāḍu, Gāngāpāḍi, Tadigailpāḍi, Noḷampāḍi, Kujamaḷai-nāḍu, Kollam, Kalingam, Iḷamḍalam (which was the country) of the Siṅgalas who possessed rough strength, the seven and a half lakṣas of Irattapāḍi and ‘twelve thousand ancient islands of the sea’, deprived the Śeḻiyas of (their) splendour at the very moment when (they were) resplendent (to such a degree) that (they were) worthy to be worshipped everywhere.” The first great triumph of Rājarāja was secured early in his reign when he destroyed the Chera navy at Trivandrum. The Tamil expression ‘Kandaḷaḷaḷi-lakṣ-Kaḷamuttuṟṟu’ means “pleased to destroy the ships in the roadstead of Kandalur (Trivandrum)”. We learn from another source that Viḻiṟam was destroyed before the seizure of Kandalur-Sālai. Inscriptions state that Kollam or Quilon was attacked separately. The Kerala ruler during this period was Bhāskara Pandyag (A.D. 987-1036). Rājarāja next conquered Madurā and seized Amarabuṅgaṇa Pandyag; subsequently he turned his attention to Kujamaḷai-nāḍu or Coorg and got into possession of the stronghold of Udagai,
THE CHOLAS

in order to check the power of the Pāṇḍyas and the Cheras. The expedition to Ilamādalam or Ceylon resulted in the dislodgement of Mahendra V and the annexation of the northern part of the island. Rājarāja ruined Anurādhapura, made Polonnaruva his capital, and built there a substantial stone temple, the Śiva Devāle.

Gaṅgavāḍi, Taṭigaivāḍi and Nolambavāḍi were political divisions of the Western Gaṅga country. Rājarāja conquered them all about A.D. 991 and they remained a part of the Chola empire till about A.D. 1117. The Chola army invaded Iraṇṭapāḍi or the kingdom of the Western Chālukyas during the reign of Saṭyārāya, and ravaged it so mercilessly that children and Brāhmaṇas were massacred and women dishonoured according to a Chālukya inscription of A.D. 1007. But soon Saṭyārāya succeeded in recovering his position and confining the Cholas to the south of the Tungabhadra.

Rājarāja's interference in Eastern Chālukya affairs was the result of the distracted condition of the Veṅgi kingdom during the tenth century. As noted above he helped Saṭkīvārman to secure the throne after the long interregnum from A.D. 973 to 999. The Chola emperor did so partly in order to frustrate the scheme of Saṭyārāya to combine the resources of the Western and Eastern Chālukyas against the Cholas. Putting an end to the civil war in Veṅgi, Rājarāja claimed to be its conqueror. The alliance between the powers was cemented by the marriage of Kundavā, Rājarāja's daughter, with Viṃalāditya (A.D. 1011-1018), the younger brother of Saṭkīvārman I. Ultimately this marriage prepared the way for the union of the Eastern Chālukyas and the Cholas.

Rājarāja's conquest of Kaḷiṅga must have followed his subjugation of Veṅgi, as Kaḷiṅga sought to aggrandize itself at the expense of its southern neighbour. Lastly, Rājarāja conquered the Maldives islands, "the 12,000 ancient islands" of the inscription. His empire included the whole of South India up to the Tungabhadra, the Maldives, and a part of Ceylon; the Andhradesa was in feudatory alliance with him. Some of his titles reflect his achievements: Mummaṭi Chola; Cholaṁartāya; Jayamūna; Pāṇḍyakulēśani; Keraḷāntaka; Siṅgāḷantaka and Teḷiṅgaṇakāḷa.

Rājarāja was one of the greatest sovereigns of South India, a famous conqueror and empire-builder, an administrator of ability, a pious and tolerant man, a patron of art and letters and, above all, an amiable personality. He not only conquered extensively, but saw to it that the conquered territory was properly administered. He started a great land survey in A.D. 1000, strengthened the imperial administration, and encouraged local self-government throughout his dominions. In A.D. 1012 he associated in the government of
the empire his only son Rājendra who had already been active on
the battlefield, and the latter's reign period was reckoned from his
coronation as yuvarāja. This system improved the administration
by placing, in future, the energies of several princes at the service
of the empire. It prevented struggles for succession and familiaris-
ed the heir apparent with imperial affairs. This sort of joint rule
accounts for the overlapping dates of Chola dynastic history.
Rājarāja, who was devoted to Śiva, assumed the title of Śiva-pāda-
ēchāra. The great Rājarājeśvara temple at Tanjore, the most beauti-
ful and perfect Tamil temple, was completed in A.D. 1010, and was
maintained by the revenue of many villages scattered throughout
the empire. Rājarāja's policy of religious toleration is indicated by
some Buddhist sculptures in the Tanjore temple and the erection of
temples for Viṣṇu which enjoyed his patronage and that of his
sister. He co-operated in the construction of the Chūḍamaṇḍ Vihāra,
a Buddhist monastery at Negapatanam, by the Sālendra Emperor
Māravijayottunga-varman (of Malay Peninsula, Java and Sumatra) in
A.D. 1006 and gave away the village of Ānaimangalam to the Budha
of that monastery.3 The great and solid work of Rājarāja was the
foundation upon which Rājendra built; the work of the son is the
most authentic testimony to the work of the father. Rājarāja had
several queens including Loka Mahādevi, the greatest of them all;
one son and three daughters including Kundava. His mother,
Vānavaṃ Mahādevi, was a Malaiyaman princess and she committed
suicide on the death of her royal husband in A.D. 973. The most respected
lady of the imperial household was Sebbiyan Mahādevi, the queen
of Gaṇḍakītīya, who lived on till A.D. 1001. The Chera queen of
Sundara Chola also lived till that date. Rājarāja had a sister also
named Kundavā.

2. Rājendra I, Gaṅgaikoṇḍa Chola (A.D. 1012-1044)

As noted above, Parakesari Rājendra took an active part in
public affairs before his accession to the throne, and was associated
with his father in the government of the empire. He ruled from
A.D. 1012 to 1044, and made his son Rājādirāja heir apparent as
early as A.D. 1018. The inscriptions of Rājendra describe his wars
and conquests and exhibit his greatness as a conqueror. The famous
Tiruvālaṅgūdu grant (thirty-one copper-plates) of his sixth regnal
year (A.D. 1017) recites his achievements, and additions were made
to the account in Sanskrit about A.D. 1025 after his conquest of
Kāṭāha or Kaḷārām.

Another important record of Rājendra is his Tirumalai rock
inscription issued in his thirteenth regnal year (A.D. 1024), which
THE CHOLAS

gives a complete list of his continental conquests. “Parakasairvarman Elvis the lord Sri Rajendra Chola-deva, . . . seized by (his) great, warlike army (the following): Issaiurainadu; Vanavasi . . . . Kolpillapakkai; Manaiakkadakkan, the crown of the king of Ilam . . . .; the beautiful crown and the necklace of Indra which the king of the South (i.e. the Pandyas) had previously deposited with that (king of Ilam); the whole Ilamaandala . . . ., the crown praised by many and the garland of the sun, family-treasures which the arrow-shooting (king) of Kerala rightfully wore; many ancient islands . . . ., the crown of pure gold . . . ., which Para-surama, having considered the fortification of Sandimmattivu impregnable, had deposited (there) when, in anger, he bound the kings twenty-one times in battle; the seven-and-a-half-lakshas of Ira(tapadi), (which was) strong by nature (and which he took), together with immeasurable fame, (from) Jayasinha, who turned his back at Musangi and hid himself; Sakkarakkottam, whose warriors were brave; Madura-mandala . . . ., Nama(nakkonnam) . . . ., Paichappalli . . . ., the good Masunideya . . . ., Indraratha of the old race of the Moon together with (his) family in a fight which took place (at) Adinagar . . . .; Ojda-vishaya, which was difficult to approach . . . ., the good Kosalai-nadu where Brhma(nas) assembled; Taodhabutti, in whose gardens bees abounded (and which he acquired) after having destroyed Dharmapala (in) a hot battle; Taakcanalaam, whose fame reached (all) directions (and which he occupied) after having forcibly attacked Rana(sura); Vaangala-dea, where, the rain-water never stopped (and from which) Govindachandra fled . . . .; elephants of rare strength, women and treasure (which he seized) after having been pleased to put to flight on a hot battlefield the strong Mahipala together with Sangu . . . .; Uttiralaam . . . ., and the Ganaga . . . .”

Regarding the identification of the names mentioned above, there is no agreement among scholars in some cases. Issaiurainadu is the Raichur Doab; Vanavasi is Banavasi; Kolpillapakkai is Kulpak, near Hyderabad; Manaiakkadakkan is Mandyakeha, Malkhed; Ilam is Ceylon; “many ancient islands” refer to the Maldives; Sandimmattivu is an island in the Arabian Sea famous in legend; Ira(tapadi) is the Western Chalukya country; Jayasinha (II) is the Western Chalukya king (Jagadekamalla I) who ruled from A.D. 1015 to 1043; Musangi or Muyangi is Maski in Hyderabad State; Sakkarakkottam is a place in Bastar; Madura-mandala, namekonnam and Paichappalli may be regarded as parts of Masunidealam or Bastar under the Naga(.va)si rulers; Adinagar is Jajnagar in Orissa; Indraratha was probably a Somavanasi king; Ojda-vishaya is Orissa; Kosalai-nadu was on the banks of the Mahanadi; Taodhabutti is Da埫mahukti (Midnapore District); Dharmapala, Rana(sura) and Govindachandra were

237
local rulers in Bengal; Mahipäla was Mahipäla I of the Päla dynasty of Bengal and Bihär and Sāngu was probably his general; Takkanalājam and Uttiralājam were southern Rādhā and northern Rādhā which together comprised that part of Bengal which lies to the south of the Gaṅgā; and Vaṅgājadesa was eastern and southern Bengal.

The Tirumalai inscription refers at the beginning to the military achievements of Rājendra as Yuvarāja. In A.D. 1018 Ceylon was completely conquered, followed by destruction and looting on a large scale. Rājendra redeemed Parāntaka I's failure by seizing the Paṇḍya crown and other royal insignia in the custody of the Sinhalese ruler; he also took away the crowns of the king and queen of Ceylon. The conquered country was governed as a province, and several Śiva and Viṣṇu temples were erected. In the same year he deprived the Chera ruler also of his crown. In A.D. 1018-1019 Rājendra appointed his son as viceroy of Madura, where a palace was built, and Kerala was subsequently added to his charge. Though Jayasimha was defeated at Musangi (Maski) in A.D. 1021, he soon recovered the Raichur Doab, re-established his authority up to the Tuṅgabhadrā and even penetrated into the Bellary region. Therefore the statement in the Tirumalai inscription that Rājendra conquered the whole of Iraṭṭapaṇi can only be regarded as royal rodomontade.

The next military effort of Rājendra was the expedition to Eastern India, which was entrusted to his general. Crossing the Godāvari and passing through Bastar and Orissa, the Chola army reached Western Bengal, defeated two rulers, crossed the Gaṅgā, overthrew another ruler, recrossed that river, triumphed over Mahipāla I and returned home. The victorious general received the congratulations of his sovereign on the banks of the Godāvari. Water was brought from the Gaṅgā and poured into the Choḷa-gaṇgām, the large irrigation tank excavated near the new capital, Gaṅgaikōṇḍaṭholapuraṁ (Uḍaiyarāḷayam Tōluk, Trichinopoly District, near Chidambaram), built by Rājendra who assumed the title 'Gaṅgaikōṇḍaṭholā'. The northern raid was not perhaps without some permanent results. Some scholars attribute to it the settlement of some South Indian chiefs in Bengal and Mithilā leading to the foundation of the Sena principality of Bengal and the Karṇāṭa dynasty of Mithilā. Besides, we have clear evidence of the establishment of Śaivas from Northern India in the Tamil country.

The Tamil epigraphical account of the campaign of Rājendra against Kaḍāram runs as follows: "(who), having despatched many
THE CHOLAS

ships in the midst of the rolling sea and having caught Saṅgrāma-Vijayottuṅga-varman, the king of Kaḍāram, together with the elephants in his glorious army, (took) the large heap of treasures which (that king) had rightfully accumulated; (captured) Śrīvijaya . . . ; Paṅnai . . . ; the ancient Malaiyūr . . . ; Māyiruṅgīam . . . ; Ilaṅgāsoka . . . ; Māppappāḷam . . . ; Mēvilūmbangam; Valaippandiyu . . . ; Talaitṭakkolam; Mādamālīngam . . . ; Ilānūrīdesam . . . ; Māpkkavāram . . . ; and Kaḍāram of fierce strength which was protected by the deep sea." Śrīvijaya was a kingdom in Sumatra; Paṅnai was on the east coast of the same island; Malaiyūr was probably between Śrīvijaya and Paṅnai; Māyiruṅgīam may be located near Ligor in Malaya, to its south was Ilaṅgāsoka; Māppappāḷam was probably near the isthmus of Krā. The next two places cannot be identified. Talaitṭakkolam is identical with Takkola and was near the isthmus; Mādamālīngam was perhaps near the Bay of Bandon in Malay Peninsula; Ilānūrīdesam (mod. Lamtri) was in northern Sumatra; Māpkkavāram is the Nicobar Islands; and Kaḍāram may be identified with Kedah, near Penang. Thus Rājendra's oversea expedition was confined to Sumatra and Malay Peninsula.

It seems that Rājendra seized the various divisions of the kingdom of Saṅgrāma-Vijayottuṅga-varman and finally his capital Kaḍāram, in one and the same campaign. It is, however, difficult to guess the real object of the expedition. For the Sailendra emperor was the successor of Māra-Vijayottuṅga-varman, who had founded a Buddhist monastery at Negapatam in the twenty-first regnal year (A.D. 1006) of Rājarāja I, and Rājendra, at the commencement of his reign, had renewed his father's grant of the village of Ānaimāṅgalam to the Buddha of that monastery. We cannot say how the friendly relation between the two great powers changed into one of hostility during the decade between Rājarāja's death in A.D. 1014 and Rājendra's expedition to Kaḍāram about A.D. 1025. Probably the Chola emperor desired to increase the prestige that had accrued to him from his Gangetic expedition, by a naval demonstration against the Sailendra empire. It is also not unlikely that the Chola king was actuated by the motive of controlling the rich trade between India and the Far East. We do not also know whether his mastery over this region was only temporary and whether his conquests in Sumatra and Malay were maintained by him and his successors.

Rājendra's warlike activities did not cease after the conquest of Kaḍāram. About A.D. 1029 a struggle for independence started in Ceylon. There were also rebellions in the Pāṇḍya and Chera countries, which were put down by Rājadhirāja, the heir apparent since

---

239
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

A.D. 1018. The last years of Rājendra witnessed the Chola invasion of the Western Chālukya dominions ruled over by Somesvara I Āhavamalla (A.D. 1043-1068). Rājadhīrāja won a victory at Pūndi on the Kṛishṇa, sacked Kalyāṇa, and brought home the devarāḷakā (door-keeper) image which is now found at Dārāsūrām (Tanjore District). The Chola invasion was particularly ruinous and humiliating to the Western Chālukyas. Minor campaigns were conducted in some parts of Mysore, with the result that “cows were carried off and women’s girdles were unloosed.” The Chotas offended seriously against the ethics of warfare even in the days of Rājarāja the Great and Rājendra the Gaṅgaikōṇḍaḥoḷa.

Rājendra, the greater son of a great father, was active for about thirty-two years in extending the power and prestige which the Chola Empire had acquired during the previous reign. His most famous titles epitomise his greatness: Muḍikōṇḍa, Gaṅgaikōṇḍa, Kaḍāraṅgōṇḍa and Paṇḍita Chola. The first title means that he captured the crowns of the Paṇḍya, Kerala and Ceylonese kings; the second and third indicate his great continental and oversea achievements; the fourth receives substance and reality from an inscription at Eḻṇāyirām (South Arcot District), assignable to about A.D. 1025, which records the provision made at an important Vaishnavī centre for a Vedic College with 340 students learning the Vedas, Vyākaraṇa, Mīmāṁsā, and Nyāya under fourteen teachers. Three of them taught the Rgveda; four the Yajurveda; two the Sāmaveda; and five the Śatras, the Rāgavāṭāra (a work giving the elements of grammar), Vyākaraṇa, the Mīmāṁsā of Prabhakara and Vedānta. Teachers and pupils received a daily allowance of paddy which was supplemented by a money payment. The highest salary was paid to the teacher of Vyākaraṇa, but the teacher of Vedānta received no money payment. This institution was maintained from the produce of forty-five velis of land. The educational policy of Rājendra was continued by his successors. Inscriptions mention four of his queens. His three sons, Rājadhīrāja I, Rājendra II, and Virarājendra I ascended the throne in succession, and his daughter, Ammaṅgādevi, was the queen of Rājarāja I of Vengi and mother of Kuloṭunga I.

3. Rājadhīrāja I (A.D. 1018-1052) and Rājendra II (A.D. 1052-1064)²³

Rājadhīrāja was made joint ruler with his father as early as A.D. 1018. During his independent reign from A.D. 1044 to 1052 the Ceylonese troubles continued. Drastic steps were taken to remove them, including barbarities like the mutilation of the nose of the
THE CHOLAS

The war with the Chalukyas, also characterised by the destruction of their cities and buildings, culminated in A.D. 1052 in the hard fought battle of Koppam, in which the Chalukya king Someśvara was defeated, but the Chola emperor lost his life. His younger brother, Rājendra II, who had been chosen heir apparent, in supersession of the claims of Rājādhiraja's sons, crowned himself on the battlefield, where he had distinguished himself by his bravery. He advanced to Kolhpur and erected a pillar of victory there. In spite of the frequent defeats of the Chalukyas and the serious injury done to some parts of their dominions, the Cholas failed to reduce them to vassalage or annex permanently any portion of their territory. Rājādhiraja performed a horse sacrifice about A.D. 1044 and pursued an uninterrupted martial career for more than thirty years. An inscription of A.D. 1048 at Tribhuvani, near Pondicherry, mentions a Vedic college with an endowment of seventy-two velis of land and with 260 students and twelve teachers, who were exempted from service on the committees of the local assembly. The inscriptions of Rājādhiraja's successors refer to him as Anaimerrujina or “who died on the elephant back.”

Rājendra II (A.D. 1052-1064), the hero of Koppam, marched against Someśvara in A.D. 1062 in order to check the growth of his power and prevent his interference in the affairs of Veṅgi and defeated him as mentioned above.7 Rājendra's eldest son, Rājamahendra, became Yuvarāja about A.D. 1059, but after his death his place was occupied by Virarājendra I. Rājendra's daughter Madhurantakī married the Eastern Chalukya prince Rājendra who was later known as Kulottuṅga I.

4. Virarājendra I (A.D. 1063-1070) and Adhirājendra (A.D. 1068-70)

Rājendra II was succeeded by his younger brother, Virarājendra I (A.D. 1063-1070), who invaded the Western Chalukya empire in A.D. 1067 in response to a challenge of Someśvara to meet him at Kūḍal-Saṅgamam again. But the latter did not turn up, and the Chola army returned home after erecting a pillar of victory on the banks of the Tungabhadra and offering insults to the effigy of Someśvara, who was then suffering from an incurable fever which subsequently led to his suicide by drowning in the Tungabhadra. The Chola inscriptions say that Virarājendra “saw the back” of (defeated) Someśvara five times. The Chola emperor proceeded to Veṅgi, defeated the Western Chalukyas near Vijayawada, strengthened his hold on Veṅgi, and returned to Gaṅgaikondacholapuram, the Chola
capital from the days of Rājendra I. Virarājendra sent an expedition to Ceylon and crushed the rebellion there. He is said to have conquered Kaḷāram and placed a friendly ruler on its throne about A.D. 1069. Virarājendra came into conflict with Someśvara II (A.D. 1066-1076), the son of Someśvara I, and both sides claimed victory. It seems that Someśvara II and his younger brother, Vikramādiṭṭya VI (A.D. 1076-1126), quarrelled, and on the latter's appeal to the Chōla emperor, the former was forced to surrender a part of his dominions to his brother, who married a Chōla princess. Virarājendra assumed a number of titles like Āhavamallakaḷakalakaḷa or destroyer of the family of Āhavamalla (great in war) Someśvara I, and Vallābha-vallābha, or lord of the Western Chālukyas who called themselves Medinivallabhas or lords of the world. An inscription of A.D. 1067 mentions the provision made for a Vedic college with a hostel and hospital at Tīrumukkulal (Chingleput District), and the medical staff consisted of two doctors, two nurses and others. There were beds for fifteen in-patients, and water scented with cardamoms and Khas Khas (cus cus) roots was brought from Perambalūr (Trichinopoly District).

Virarājendra I was succeeded by his son Adhirājendra, who ruled from A.D. 1068 to 1070 with his father, and only for a few months as a sole monarch. His unnatural death and the accession of Kulottunga I resulted in the extinction of the Vijayalaya line. It is not easy to explain the confusion which followed Virarājendra's death, the intervention of Vikramādiṭṭya VI and his return, the death of Adhirājendra in the rebellion which broke out and the part played in these affairs by Kulottunga I. Adhirājendra is regarded by some as the Kṛimikṣaṭha (diseased neck) Chōla of Vaishnav tradition; he seems to have been the persecutor of Rāmānuja though some scholars regard Virarājendra I or Kulottunga as the enemy of that Vaishnava saint and philosopher.

5. Kulottunga I (A.D. 1070-1120)

Rājendra II Eastern Chālukya or Kulottunga Chōla I was the great-grandson of Rājarāja I Chōla in two ways: his mother, Ammaigādevi, was the daughter of Rājendra I Chōla (son of Rājarāja I Chōla), and his father, Rājarāja I Eastern Chālukya was the son of Kundaśā (daughter of Rājarāja I Chōla) and Vimalādiṭṭya of Vēṅgi. Thus Kulottunga I was seventy-five per cent Chōla by blood. The career of this Chālukya-Chōla from the death of his father in A.D. 1060 to his own occupation of the Chōla throne in A.D. 1070 is obscure. During this period he fought successfully with some chiefs of Bastar and even with Vikramādiṭṭya VI as prince. It is likely
that Kulottunga was on good terms with Virarājendra I and helped him in the re-establishment of Chola authority in the kingdom of Vengi in A.D. 1067 against the encroachments of the Western Chālu­kyas. It is probable that his accession to the Chola throne was regard­ed with satisfaction as the confusion of the previous reign necessitat­ed the restoration of the integrity and strength of the empire, though in the light of the conflicting evidences we cannot satisfactorily account for his advent to the Chola throne. No doubt the internal confusion in the Chola empire afforded a good opportunity, but the supposition of a struggle between him and Adhirajendra, or of a prolonged fight for the throne, is untenable.

About A.D. 1073 Yaśākara Kalachuri raided the Vengi country without any appreciable results. Vijayabahu I (A.D. 1055-1110) of Ceylon took advantage of the anarchy in the Chola empire before the accession of Kulottunga, captured Polonnaruva about A.D. 1070, crowned himself king of Ceylon in A.D. 1073, and became independent of the Cholas; Kulottunga made peace with him in A.D. 1068, and gave his daughter in marriage to a Sinhalese prince. The Chola conflict with Vikramaditya VI broke out in A.D. 1076, and in the statement of its result, the Chola and Chalukya records are not in agreement. Anyhow it is clear that the great emperor of Kalyāna persis­tently thwarted the plans of Kulottunga, especially the union of the Eastern Chalukya and the Chola kingdoms. After the death or ejection of Vijayaditya VII Eastern Chalukya in A.D. 1076, Kulottunga appointed his sons as viceroys of Vengi. The troubles of Kulottunga during his early regnal years led to the revolt of the Pāṇḍya and Chera countries, but they were reconquered. Military colonies (nilaippaṭai) were established in these countries to keep them under control, but in matters of internal administration they were left free. Kulottunga claims to have destroyed Kagaram, but about A.D. 1090 an embassy came from its king and at his request, Kulottunga exempted from taxes the village granted to the Buddhist monastery at Nega­patam. The rebellion of Velāg about A.D. 1098 was put down by Naralokavira, a famous general of Kulottunga.

Kulottunga twice invaded Kaliāga. His first expedition about A.D. 1096 quelled the revolt of Southern Kaliāga, a part of the Veṅgi province. The second and more important expedition in A.D. 1110 is dealt with in the Kaliāgattupparaṇā of Jayaṅgoṇḍār, the court poet of Kulottunga, in which both the bright and seamy sides of warfare are brought out. The expedition started from Kāṇchi and was led by a reputed general of Kulottunga, named Karuṇākara Tōḍaiṁān. He was a Pallava chieftain ruling over Vaṭṭuvāṇjēri (Tanjore Dis­trict), or Vaṭṭalur (Chingleput District) according to some scho-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Anantavarman Chōjagān̄ga (A.D. 1078-1150) of Kalinganagara, the son of the Chola princess Rājasundari, was defeated. We do not know exactly why the Chōla emperor waged war with Kalinga; but the failure of its ruler to send in the annual tribute is mentioned in the poem of Jayaṅgūḷā. Anyhow the second Kalinga war led to no annexations.

Kulottunā's inscription of A.D. 1111 shows his friendly relations with the Gāḍādāvāḷas of Kanauj. About A.D. 1115 the Chōla empire was almost as extensive as in the days of its glory, except for the loss of Ceylon. But within two or three years from that date Kulottunā lost the Gaṅgavāḍi and Veṅgi provinces.

As noted above, Vishṇuvardhana Hoysala conquered the Chōla provinces of Gaṅgavāḍi and Noḷambavāḍi, captured Tālakāḍ and assumed the title of Tāḷakāḍugūṅḍa; he is also said to have invaded the Tamil country and raided it as far as Rāmeśvaram. An inscription states that his attempt to carry away some images from Āduṭurai (Trichinopoly District) to Halebid was frustrated. About A.D. 1118 the province of Veṅgi came under the control of Vikramādiṭṭha VI, who maintained it till his death. This was his greatest victory over Kulottunā with whom he had always been on terms of hostility. Thus during the last decade of his long reign, Vikramādiṭṭha realised the object, cherished from the beginning of his reign, of separating the Eastern Chāḷukyas and the Chōlas.

Though Ceylon was permanently and wholly lost to the Chōla empire, Veṅgi and parts of Gaṅgavāḍi were later recovered. It was Kulottunā who for the first time made Veṅgi an integral part of the Chōla empire, but he was wise enough not to make any attempt to alter the Tūṅgabhadrā frontier. He gave a fresh lease of life to his empire by conferring on his subjects the benefits of internal peace and benevolent administration. Though Gaṅgakōṅṭaḷaḷapuraṁ continued to be the imperial capital, the importance of Kāṇchi steadily increased. Kulottunā assumed the titles of Tribhuvanachakravartin (Emperor of Three Worlds), Virudarājabhayakṣaka (a terror to Virudarāja i.e. Vikramādiṭṭha), and Śaṅgendevīrīrtta or who abolished tolls, but the character of this fiscal reform is not known.

He ordered a land survey in A.D. 1086, the date of Domesday Survey of England by a strange coincidence; and another survey was made in A.D. 1110. Kulottunā's queens were Madhurāntakī who died about A.D. 1100, Tyāgavallī and others. Seven sons and a daughter of his are known. Among the sons, Chōdagaṅa, Mūmmatha Chōla, Vīra Chōla, and Vikrama Chōla were viceroys of Veṅgi under their father; his daughter married a Ceylonese prince.

244
6. Vikrama Chola (A.D. 1118-1135) and Kulottunga II (A.D. 1133-1150)

Kulottunga I was succeeded by his son Vikrama Chola who became sole ruler in A.D. 1120. He seized the opportunity afforded by the death of Vikramaditya VI in A.D. 1126 to restore the Chola power in the Vengi kingdom, and also recovered Kolār and some other parts of Gaṅgavādī. About A.D. 1125 North and South Arcot Districts suffered from floods and famine. The year A.D. 1128 is memorable for the king's handsome donations to the Nataraja temple at Chidambaram which had been favoured by the Chola emperors since the days of Parāntaka I and which had become particularly important in consequence of the change of the capital from Tanjore to Gaṅgaikondacholapuram, not far from Chidambaram. Vikrama Chola toured frequently, and was living in his palace at Chidambaram in A.D. 1130. His surnames, Tyāgasamudra and Akalasāka, suggest his liberality and moral purity. An inscription of A.D. 1121 refers to a Medical School at Tiruvarur (Tanjore District) teaching the Saalādhī of Charaka and the Asthāngahārya Saādhī of the younger Vagbhata.

Vikrama Chola was succeeded by his son Kulottunga II (A.D. 1133-1150), who became independent ruler after his father's death in A.D. 1135. He continued his predecessor's benefactions to the Chidambaram temple. He, however, exhibited religious intolerance by throwing the image of Govindarāja into the sea, though the antiquity of the Vaishnava shrine is proved by Mānjikkavāhakar's reference to it. Kulottunga II has been identified by some scholars with the Kṛimikavaṭha Chola of Vaishnava literature, the Chola whose neck was diseased, or infected with germs, because of his irpičity. His reign is an epoch in literary history; he and his feudatories patronised Oṭṭakāttān, Śekkīlar and Kamban.

7. Rājarāja II (A.D. 1146-1173) and Rājādhīrāja II (A.D. 1163-1179)

During the reign of Kulottunga II's son, Rājarāja II, a civil war broke out about A.D. 1169 between Parākrama Pāṇḍya and Kulaśekhara Pāṇḍya, and the latter seized Madurā and killed his opponent along with some members of his family. The help sought for by Parākrama Pāṇḍya from Parākrama-bahu the Great, king of Ceylon, came too late. Laṅkāpura, the Sinhalese general, conducted a destructive campaign in the Pāṇḍya country necessitating Chola intervention on behalf of Kulaśekhara, won a victory over him, and put Vira Pāṇḍya, the son of Parākrama Pāṇḍya, in possession of the country. But soon Kulaśekhara was reinstated by the Cholas, who invaded
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Ceylon. Parākramabāhu changed his policy suddenly and allied himself with Kulaśēkharā, who in consequence turned against the Chōlas. Therefore they also changed their policy and enthroned Vira Pāṇḍya. This protracted warfare continued beyond the reign of Rājaśāhī II till about A.D. 1177. Thus, a century after the accession of Kulottaṅga I, the growth of trouble from the feudatories reached its climax and revealed the central weakness of the Chōla empire. Rājaśāhī II (A.D. 1163-1179), the successor of Rājaśāhī II and another grandson of Vikrama Chōla, brought the Pāṇḍya Civil War to a close.

8. Kulottaṅga III (A.D. 1178-1216)

Kulottaṅga III was chosen by Rājaśāhī II to be his successor but the relation between the two is not known. Though the help of Rājaśāhī secured the throne for Vira Pāṇḍya, the latter intrigued with Ceylon and turned against the Chōlas. Probably about A.D. 1182, he was dethroned by Kulottaṅga who enthroned Vikrama Pāṇḍya, perhaps related to Kulaśēkharā Pāṇḍya. About A.D. 1189 Vira Pāṇḍya again created trouble with the aid of the Keraḷa king, sustained defeat at the hands of Kulottaṅga, and took refuge in Quilon. Ceylon joined in the fray as usual, and while Kulottaṅga claims a victory over her, Niṅsantkamalla, the Sinhalese ruler, is said to have invaded the Pāṇḍya country thrice, and appears to have seized Rāmeśvaram. Between A.D. 1190 and 1194 the Chōla authority was asserted in the Kōṅgudeśa. The relations of Kulottaṅga with his Telugu-Chōla feudatories, who occupied the region between the North Arcot and Nellore Districts, were generally good, but about A.D. 1196 he recovered Kāśchī from them after their occupation of it for some time. About A.D. 1203 the third Pāṇḍya expedition was sent against Jāṭāvarman Kulaśēkharā, probably the son of Vikrama Pāṇḍya, who was defeated but reinstated. Kulottaṅga, however, ravaged the country and destroyed the coronation-hall at Madura. He despatched an expedition to the Andhradesa about A.D. 1208. Towards the close of his reign Kulottaṅga reaped the fruit of his harsh Pāṇḍyan policy; he was overpowered by Māravārman Sundara Pāṇḍya I (brother of Jāṭāvarman Kulaśēkharā) who could not however exploit his victory fully because of the Hoysala intervention on behalf of the Chōlas.

Gangākōṇṭaḻñolapuram remained the capital of the Chōla empire. Kulottaṅga gave much attention to Pāṇḍya affairs and was largely successful except at the end of his reign. He assumed the title of Maduraiyum Pāṇḍiyarumudittalaigām Kōṅgarulinya “who was pleased to take Madura and the crowned head of the Pāṇḍya.” He exercised firm control over the Telugu-Chōdas. Famine conditions
prevailed in A.D. 1201 and 1202 and relief works were started by private agency, according to an inscription at Tiruvannamalai (North Arcot District). An inscription of A.D. 1213 mentions an institution for the study of Viṣṇuṣṭhāna at Tiruvoyyārūr near Madras. Kulottunga was active in building temples and improving them and the finest work of his reign is the temple at Trivibhumāna (Tanjore District), with striking Rāmāyana reliefs. Though he maintained his empire and its administrative system intact, his difficulties bring into relief the dangers that threatened his position. His personal qualities were responsible for the continuance of the empire under him, and he may be regarded as the last great Chōla. Many feudatory chieftains rose to power, such as Telugu-Chōlas, Bānas, Sambuvarāyas, Kādavas, Malayamāns, Adigamams and others, and this impaired the strength of the central authority. At last, the imperialism of the Pāṇḍyas ruined the Chōla empire in the thirteenth century.

9. Rājarāja III (A.D. 1216-1246) and Rājendra III (A.D. 1246-79)

The relationship of Rājarāja III to his predecessor or successor is not definitely known, and his inscriptions refer to Kulottunga III as Periyadesar or the great king. Perhaps he was the son of Kulottunga, and father of Rājendra III. Rājarāja was confronted with a difficult political situation, consequent on the rise of the Pāṇḍyas, the Hoysalas, the Kādavas, the Telugu-Chōlas, and the Kākatiyas, and his incompetence and folly aggravated his difficulties. He brought about a conflict with the Pāṇḍyas by violating the treaty with them. They inflicted a sanguinary defeat on him and seized his capital. A contemporary historical romance, the Gadṛṣṭakarṣṇāmrīta of Kālaśalabha, refers to the flight of Rājarāja, his capture after a battle by the Kādavariya, Kop-Puruṣija, and the Hoysala intervention in his favour.

One of the queens of Hoysala Ballāla II (A.D. 1173-1220) was a Chōla princess. His son, Narasiṃha II (A.D. 1220-1234), provoked by the audacity of Kop-Puruṣija, who had imprisoned Rājarāja at Śendamaṅgalam (South Arcot District) and ruined the Chōla country and its temples, left his capital Dvārasamudra and pitched his camp at Pāṭhechhūr, near Śirāṅgām. After directing his generals against Kop-Puruṣija, Narasiṃha, who had captured Śirāṅgām and Kānchi, marched as far as Rāmeśvaram where he is said to have erected a pillar of victory. The Tiruvendipurām (South Arcot District) inscription of Rājarāja III, dated A.D. 1231-2, narrates the story of Kop-Puruṣija’s revolt, of his imprisoning the king, of the march of the Hoysala generals, Appaṇḍa and Samudra Gopayya, to Śendamaṅgalam, of their liberation of the royal prisoner, and the death
of a Ceylonese prince who had befriended the Kāṭava. Narasīhna became famous as the Cholārājya-pratishṭhāpanāchārya, or the founder of the Chōla kingdom. After the defeat of the Pāṇḍyas, the Hoysala king entered into matrimonial relations with them. Thus Rājarāja became dependent on the Hoysalas. The administration of the Chōla country deteriorated, and the feudatories freed themselves from imperial control. Though the Hoysalas saved the Chōla power from extinction for the time being by their intervention, they consolidated their position in the Chōla country and attempted with success to play the role of arbitrators in the affairs of the Tamils. Narasīhna's son Someśvara (A.D. 1234-1263) established his position at Kaṇṭanūr, near Trichinopoly, about A.D. 1239 and played a part in the affairs of the declining Chōla empire.

Rājendra III (A.D. 1246-1279), more capable and energetic than Rājarāja III, attempted to increase his power and prestige with the help of the Telugu-Chōlas. It is probable that he triumphed over Māraṇavarman Sundara Pāṇḍya II, and the Hoysalas then inclined towards the Pāṇḍyas against the Chōlas. But the accession of Jāṭāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I, the greatest of his line, changed Someśvara's hostile attitude towards Rājendra into one of friendship and co-operation. About A.D. 1250 Kāṇehipatī Kākāṭiyā. Taking advantage of this state of affairs Jāṭāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya executed a grand military march which almost revolutionized the political condition of South India. Someśvara was defeated and slain in battle. The Chōlas were subdued; Kop-Peruṇjiṅga was converted into a subordinate Pāṇḍya ally; the Telugu-Chōlas were vanquished; the Kākāṭiyās were expelled from Kāśichī; and Nellore was seized. Rājendra's political position was consequently that of a Pāṇḍyan feudatory from about A.D. 1258 to 1279. Thus the mighty royal power founded by Rājarāja and Rājendra came to an ignoble end. Gāṅgapāṇḍaṇaḥolapuram continued as the capital down to the last days of the Chōla empire.

10. Kop-Peruṇjiṅga

The career of Kop-Peruṇjiṅga or Mahaṇājasiśiṇha (A.D. 1229-1278) of Sendamaṇgalam best illustrates the decline of the Chōla empire. He started as a loyal feudatory of Rājarāja, but defeated him about A.D. 1231 at Teḷḷārū, near Wandiwash, and imprisoned him at Sendamaṇgalam. After the intervention of Hoysala Narasīhna II Kop-Peruṇjiṅga again became a Chōla feudatory. But in A.D. 1243 he assumed titles indicative of his independent status. Kop-Peruṇjiṅga defeated the Hoysalas in A.D. 1252-3 at Perambalūr (Trichinopoly District), seized their ladies and expiated his guilt by gifts to the temple at
THE CHOLAS

Vriddhâchalam. But Jatâvarman Sundara Pândya besieged Sendamângalam, reduced him to vassalage in A.D. 1255, and secured his cooperation in his own northern campaigns.

The inscriptions of Kop-Perûnjîra are largely found in the South Arcot, North Arcot, and Chingleput Districts and to a lesser extent, in the Tanjore, Kurnool and Godâvari Districts. He claims to have conquered the Cholâs, the Hoysalâs, the Pândyas and the Kâkâtîyas. From his stronghold at Sendamângalam he controlled Cuddalore, Chidambaram, Vriddhâchalam and Kâñchi. He was devoted to God Nâtarâja at Chidambaram and built the eastern Gopura of the temple there. His titles are not only political, military and religious but also literary. There is some truth underlying the titles Pâñdymândalas-hâponsa-sãstrâdhâra, Sahodara-sundara, Kârûjakalakhmi-luṣṭâka, Kâthaka-kula-tîlaka, and Pëllâra-dëmnîtha. There is ample justification for his titles of Sarvajña Khâdgamalla, Vishâleperumâj and Kanakasabhâpati-sabhâ-aravakîrya-servakâla-nirevâhaka. But whether his literary titles like Kavisârâ-bhauma and Sâhitya-ratnâkara are well founded is more than one can say, though the title Bharata-malla may be justified by the sculptures of dance-poses he caused to be engraved on the eastern gateway of the Chidambaram temple; he shows self-restraint in describing himself as Kârûri-kâmsa. He claims to be a Kâluveti or Pallava by descent. His character and achievements before and after A.D. 1243 exhibit a remarkable inner unity. During an age of stress and storm, he established his power and prestige and his forceful personality and unbounded energy made his name and family famous in the triangular political contest among the Pândyas, the Hoysalâs, and the Kâkâtîyas for control of the fast declining Cholâ empire.

II POLITICAL ORGANISATION

1. Central Government

The extent and resources of the Chola empire increased the power and prestige of its sovereigns. The pomp of kingship was augmented not only by the great capitals like Tanjore, Gangai-kondacholapuram, Madhîkondâ and Kâñchi, the large imperial household and imposing state banquets, and the magnificent dânas or donations made in lieu of the Asvamedha and other sacrifices of old, but also by the giving of royal names to idols and the installation and worship of the images of kings and queens in temples. The system of hereditary succession to the throne was occasionally modified by the ruling king's choice as Yuvarâja of a younger prince in preference to his seniors. The princes were associated with the
ruling sovereigns and actively employed in war and peace. The absolutism of monarchy was tempered both by a ministerial council and by an organised administrative staff, the heads of departments being in close contact with the king, and often consulted by him. Royal tours contributed to the efficiency of the administration and the officers were paid by land assignments, and honoured and encouraged by titles. The higher officials enjoyed the status of perundaram, and the lower ones sirtaram. Administrative activities, as well as military and trade movements, were facilitated by peruvahis or trunk roads. There was brisk commercial intercourse with China, Sumatra, and Java in the east, and Arabia and other countries around the Persian Gulf in the west. Some merchant guilds were gigantic international organisations. Industries were in a flourishing condition, particularly jewellery and metal work, weaving, and manufacture of salt. Public revenue was derived mainly from land and collected in kind, or in cash, or in both, by village assemblies. Land was possessed by individuals and communities. There were peasant proprietorship and other forms of land tenure. Agricultural prosperity was ensured by the special attention given to irrigation by government as well as local authorities. The proper utilisation of the water of Káveri and other rivers was supplemented by great tanks. Village assemblies were to perform the functions of maintaining tanks in good condition and of reclaiming forest and waste lands. The state's demand of land revenue seems to have been one-third of the gross produce in the time of Rajaraja I. This proportion was fixed after an elaborate land survey and we have already mentioned the surveys ordered by that emperor and by Kulottunga I. There were periodical revisions of the classifications of land and of the assessment of land revenue. The other items of public income were customs and tolls, taxes on various kinds of profession, mines, forests, salt-pans, etc. The numerous taxes, though uneconomical from the modern point of view, were intended to supplement the land revenue with its fluctuations due to remissions in hard times. There were occasional famines, general or local; the visitation of A.D. 1152 evidently belonged to the former category. Unpaid labour was frequently employed. Though there is evidence of the sympathetic administration of the tax system—Kulottunga I earned fame by abolishing tolls—some cases of oppression are on record. Further, the rise into power of the feudal chiefs must have increased the tax burdens of the people. Failure to pay the land revenue involved the sale of the land in question, not excluding temple lands. The chief items of public expenditure were: the king and his court,
THE CHOLAS

army and navy, civil administrative staff, roads, and irrigation tanks and channels besides temples and religious endowments.

The army consisted of elephants, cavalry and infantry—mānu­
yukai-mahāsenai or the great army with three limbs. As many as seventy regiments, named after royal titles, are mentioned in inscriptions. They possessed a corporate organisation, participated in civic life, and made grants to temples. Attention was given to their training and discipline, and cantonments (kaṅgāram or paḍaiyidu) existed. There were recruits from Kerala in the army. The strength of the elephant corps was 60,000 and that of the whole army, about 150,000. It was composed chiefly of Kaikkolais (lit. men with strong arms) or Seegundar (lit. spear-wielders). The Veṭai­
kāras were the body-guard of the monarch, sworn to defend him with their lives and often ready to immolate themselves on his funeral pyre. Very costly Arabian horses were imported in large numbers in order to strengthen the cavalry, but most of them were short-lived in South India. Kings and princes led armies, and Rājāditya and Rājādhirāja I died on the battlefields of Takkolam and Koppam. Commanders enjoyed the rank of Nayaka, Senāpati, or Mahāda­
ḷanāyaka; they were Veṭāḷais, Brāhmaṇas and others. Wars some­
times started with cattle-lifting. Titles like Kshatriyaśīkhamaṇi were conferred upon men with a distinguished record. The terri­
ble character of Chola warfare was exhibited in the invasions of Iruṭṭapādi, Pandyāmaṇḍalam and Ceylon. Much injury was done to the civil population, women not excepted, and mutilations like nose-slitting are on record. When we speak of the glories of tem­
ples and of the luxuries of kings and chieftains, we cannot forget that they obtained enormous spoils of war by the infliction of unspeakable miseries on their neighbours. Even the sanctity of am­
bassadors was sometimes violated.

The naval achievement of the Cholas reached its climax during the reign of Rājarāja the Great and his successor. Not only were the Coromandel and Malabar coasts controlled by them, but the Bay of Bengal became a Chola lake. But we cannot form any idea of the technique of their naval warfare or of other details related to the navy. Some think that merchant vessels were employed in transporting the army and that Chola naval fights were land battles fought on the decks of ships.

The empire of Rājarāja the Great was divided into about eight maṇḍalams or provinces, and the latter, into vaḷanāṭhas and nāṭus. The next administration sub-divisions were kuṭṭams or koṭṭams each consisting of a number of autonomous villages playing a vital and conspicuous part in the administration. We have seen that princes were in charge of the provinces of Vengi and Madurā.
2. Local Self-Government: the Mahāsabhā and the Vāriyam

Though there was corporate activity in economic and religious life and in territorial divisions like niicī,us and nagarams (towns), it was the village assemblies that exhibited the greatest and the most comprehensive group activity. The village and town assemblies were primary assemblies while those of niicī,us were representative institutions. Of the two kinds of assemblies called the Ur and the Sabhā or Mahāsabhā which were gatherings of the adult male members of the local community, the former was of the general type and the latter was the assembly of the agrahāra or Brāhmaṇa settlement, and it is this type that looms large in Chola inscriptions.

Inscriptions referring to the Mahāsabhā or describing its activities are largely found in Tondaimandalam and Cholamandalam. The assemblies are found concentrated in certain regions, the major concentration being around Kāñchī and a minor one encircling Madras.

The two Uttaramerūr records of Parantaka I of A.D. 919 and 921 contain the resolutions passed by the local Mahāsabhā on the constitution of vāriyams or Executive Committees, the second resolution improving on and superseding the first. According to the regulations of A.D. 921, each of the thirty wards of the village was to nominate for selection persons possessing the following qualifications:—Ownership of more than 1/4 veli (about an acre and a half) of land; residence in a house built on one’s own site; age between thirty-five and seventy; the knowledge of the Vedic mantra-brāhmaṇas; in the alternative one-eighth veli of land and knowledge of one Veda and a Bhāṣya. The following among others were excluded:—those who had been on any of the committees for the past three years; those who had been on the committee but had failed to submit the accounts, together with all their specified relations; those who had committed incest or other great sins as well as their relations (specified); those who had stolen the property of others; etc.

From among the persons duly nominated, one was to be chosen for each of the thirty Kuḻambus or wards by Kuḻāralai (lit. pot-ticket) or lot for a year in the manner prescribed. Of the thirty so selected twelve, who were advanced in age and learning and had served on the garden and tank committees, were assigned to the sankeatsara-vāriyam or annual committee; twelve to the toṭsvariyam or garden committee; and six to the eri-vāriyam or tank committee. Two other committees were similarly selected—the pañcachārīra-vāriyam (a standing committee) and the pon-vāriyam (gold committee). The lot system was worked on the following lines: Names
of eligible persons were written on palm-leaf tickets which were put into a pot and shuffled, and a young boy was directed to take out as many tickets as there were members to be chosen. Inscriptions in other places than Uttaramerūr mention additional committees for justice, wards, and fields, the udāśīna committee and so on. The term udāśīna has been interpreted as ascetics, but it is better to take it as referring to strangers or foreigners. The number of committees and of members varied from village to village, and no payment was made for their services. The members of the committee were called Vāriyappumakkal; the Mahāsabhā was called Perunikuru and its members, perumakkal. Ordinarily the assembly met in the village temple and occasionally under a tree or on the bank of a tank. There are no references to voting or to a quorum. General questions were discussed in the assembly and resolutions (vyavasthai) were passed and recorded.

Membership of the Committee required very high qualifications, regarding age, property, learning, capacity for committee work, and moral purity not only of one’s self but also of one’s relations; and no membership of any of the Committees was permitted until three years had elapsed from the period of last service on a Committee. Such a personnel rendering honorary service would have been available only in prosperous, enlightened and virtuous villages. To run the Mahāsabhā successfully, a village should have men, honest and true, learned and capable, self-supporting and experienced. The lot system would produce the best results only under such conditions. Otherwise it may give a chance to anybody irrespective of his qualifications; without the principle of rotation in office, it may do injustice to competent candidates. Uttaramerūr avoided the pitfalls of the Kuṭavolai system and it was the model for other sabhās in the Chōla empire.

3. Functions of the Mahāsabhā; Fiscal, Judicial and Ministrant

The extent of village autonomy may be gauged from the functions performed by assemblies. The Mahāsabhā possessed proprietary rights over communal lands and controlled the private lands within its jurisdiction. It did everything preliminary to conveyance of property, which required the sanction of the central authority. The Mahāsabhā was concerned with the reclamation of forest and waste lands. It co-operated with royal officials in estimating the produce of cultivated land and assessing the land revenue due from the village. It collected that revenue and in cases of default had the power to sell the land in question by public auction. Disputes about land and irrigation rights were settled by it and in special cases assemblies from the neighbourhood were requested to co-
operate with it in reaching a decision. General surveys were under­taken by the Central Government, but the approval of the Mahā­sabhā was necessary for any change in the classification of land within its sphere. It had powers of taxation for purposes connect­ed with the village, and of remission of such taxation for specific reasons. Instead of paying land revenue every year, a landowner might pay a fixed sum to the assembly and compound all his future dues to the local and central authorities, the assembly regularly paying all such dues thereafter in perpetuity. Such arrangements were made in the case of lands set apart for charitable purposes.

The Committees looked after the village administration with the assistance of paid officials, who detected crime. The judicial committee, Nyayattār, of the assembly settled disputes, pronounced on the innocence or guilt of the accused, and awarded punishments. The establishment of the guilt by a popular committee is the basis of the remark that the jury system prevailed under the Cholas. Inscriptions reveal that various forms of homicide were distinguish­ed and capital punishment was not inflicted in all cases. When death was caused by accident as in hunting, the guilty man was required to endow a perpetual lamp to be lighted in the village temple for religious merit of the deceased. Even in some cases of murder, the extreme penalty of the law was not meted out. The Chola admini­stration of justice may thus be regarded as unduly lenient. The Uttaramerūr inscriptions discussed above emphasise the gravity of such offences as incest, adultery, theft, and forgery, and hint that “riding on an ass” was a punishment for some serious crimes.

The Mahāsabhā performed other functions like the maintenance of roads and irrigation works including tanks (the major public works being executed by the Central Government as their construc­tion was beyond the resources of local bodies), supervision of endow­ments (religious, medical and eleemosynary) by the dharmavīryam, and provision for learning, etc. from its own limited resources. Thus the Central Government concerned itself with external defence, the maintenance of internal peace and order, the promotion of the general prosperity and cultural progress of the empire, and left the village assemblies largely to themselves, exercising a general control and interfering in their affairs only in cases of conflict or other excep­tional situations. Unions of villages might be effected with the approval of the Central Government. The administration of vil­lages was well organised on popular lines, conducive to the progress and prosperity of their inhabitants, and it was such villages exhibit­ing corporate activity which, though in a state of decline, early in the nineteenth century, formed the “little republics” that extorted the admiration of famous Anglo-Indian administrators.
THE CHOLAS

2. See Vol. IV, p. 129.
3. Cf. Suvarnadvipâ, by R. C. Majumdar, Part I, p. 188, and also infra, Ch. XXI.
5. For these identifications and the Chola conquest of this region, cf. Suvarnadvipâ by R. C. Majumdar, Part I, pp. 167 ff, who holds that “the Chola emperors tried to maintain their hold on the distant oversea empire, at least for nearly a century.”
6. The dates of these and some subsequent kings are given somewhat differently by different writers. Thus K. A. N. Sastri gives the following dates in his second edition of the ‘Colas’ (published in 1955) which differ from those given above:
   Râjarâja I (A.D. 1018-1044).
   Virañjendra (A.D. 1082-1099).
   Kulottunga III (ruled up to A.D. 1217-18).
   In ‘A History of South India’, also published in 1955, K. A. N. Sastri gives A.D. 1016 as the date of Râjarâja’s death (p. 206) instead of A.D. 1014, as given in the text above, and also in his ‘Colas’ (p. 183).
7. See above, p. 170.
9. Mudikonda-Cholapuram: known as Palaiyârî (near Kumbhakonam) and Nandi-puram before the eleventh century (Pandurathar, op. cit., 83).
CHAPTER XI

THE LATER PĀṇḍYAS

1. INTERVAL BETWEEN THE FIRST AND THE SECOND EMPIRE

The first empire of the Pāṇḍyas was ruined by their defeats at Teḷḷāru, Arichilt, and Śripuramābyam, and Rājaśīhha II was overthrown by Parāntaka I about A.D. 920. But the battle of Takkolam revived their importance and Rājarāja I found them to be very powerful. He reconquered them and Rājendra I seized the Pāṇḍya crown from Ceylon, appointed one of his sons as the Chōla-Pāṇḍya Viceroy and constructed a great palace at Madura. But his successors were troubled by Pāṇḍya princes in alliance with Ceylon. The anarchy during Adhirājendra's reign gave scope for their intransigence which was put down with a strong hand by Kulottunga I, who changed the system of administration by Chōla princes and established military colonies on the highways of the Pāṇḍya country without, however, attempting to control its internal affairs. The further marks of Pāṇḍyan subordination were the Chōla names given to places and the payment of tribute. The inscriptions of the Pāṇḍyas increase and those of the Chōlas diminish in number during the period of Kulottunga and his successors. The steady growth of Pāṇḍya power was however paralysed by a civil war, which lasted from A.D. 1169 till about A.D. 1177. This gave the Chōlas another chance of asserting their power in the southern kingdom. We have sketched above the three Pāṇḍya campaigns of Kulottunga III about A.D. 1102, 1109 and 1205. In the last of these campaigns, he overpowered Jatavarman Kulasekhara (A.D. 1190-1216) who was a great ruler and the harbinger of his country's independence. His inscriptions are found in the Madura, Rāmānad and Tinnevelly Districts, and Travancore was subordinate to him. He seems to have assumed the title of Rājagambhirā.

2. MĀṆAVARMAN SUNDARA PĀṆḌYA

Māṇavarman Sundara (A.D. 1216-1238), probably the brother of Jāţāvarman Kulaśekhara, inaugurated the second empire of the Pāṇḍyas which lasted right through the thirteenth century. An inscription of his third regnal year describes him as Sonaṇuvulaniyaguruliya, “who was pleased to effect the rendition of the Chōla country.” Quite at the beginning of his reign he invaded the kingdom of Kulottunga III, burnt Uraiyur and Tanjore, drove the Chōla king into the wilderness, and marched as far as Puliyur or Chidambaram.
THE LATER PÂNDYAS

Hoysala intervention prevented Sundara Pândya's reaping the full benefits of his victory, and he had to give back the conquered territory to the vanquished enemy who accepted the position of a vassal. Kulottunga died soon after his reinstatement. Mâravarman's later inscription states that "the Chola (Rajaraja III) no longer considered it the proper course to owe allegiance to the Pândya who had bestowed the crown on him on a former occasion. He began once more to feel that his security lay in his own fertile country and declined to do the usual honour to the commands (of the Pândya), refused to pay the usual tribute, and instead despatched a large army". Râjarâja's violation of the peace proved disastrous to his kingdom, and again Hoysala intervention was necessary for repairing the effects of his stupidity. Mâravarman defeated the Chola, and occupied large parts of his territory. Râjarâja was seized and imprisoned by his vassal, Kop-Peruñjîga, and the Hoysalas interfered, released the prisoner, defeated the Pândyâs, invaded their country and obliged them to acquiesce in the restoration of the Chola emperor. Thus both the victories of Mâravarman against the Cholas were rendered nugatory. But he ruled over a powerful kingdom. Besides his own country his dominions included parts of the Trichinopoly District and Pudukkoṭai, and he assumed titles indicative of his seizure and rendition of the Chola country. He was succeeded by Mâravarman Sundara Pândya II (A.D. 1238-1251), whose weakness was taken advantage of by Râjendra III. The inscriptions of the latter describe him as "an expert in cutting off the crowned head of the Pândya", "who plundered the Pândya country", etc. It is probable that his overlordship was acknowledged by Mâravarman Sundara Pândya II.

3. JÂTÂVARMAN SUNDARA PÂNDYA I

Jâtâvarman Sundara Pândya I (c. A.D. 1251-1268) was the greatest king of his line. His grand imperial career started with the defeat of the Chera king, Udayamârtanda. Jâtâvarman overcame the Hoysalas at Kamânur near Trichinopoly, caused their withdrawal from the Kâveri region, reduced the Chola to subordination, proceeded against Sendamaṅgalam (the capital of Kop-Peruñjîga), rejected the Kâţava's offer of tribute, defeated him and seized his territory, but subsequently reinstated him as a subordinate ally. Between A.D. 1254 and 1256 Northern Ceylon was reduced to vassalage. Thus, during the first six years of his reign, Jâtâvarman conquered the Chera, Hoysala, Chola, Kâţava and Sinhalese powers, and his authority extended from Travancore to the South Arcot District. Subsequently, he marched against Gândapâla the Telugu-Chola chief, defeated and killed him, captured Kâţichi, overcame
The struggle for empire

Gaṇapati Kākatiya, and reached Nellore, where he celebrated his victories by a Virābhiseka. We are in the dark regarding the exact order of Jatāvarman's conquests. He annexed the Koṅgadēśa, and in another conflict with the Hoysalas killed their king Somēśvara in the neighbourhood of Śrīraṅgam in A.D. 1262.

Jatāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya's imperialism was thorough-going, and the Chola kingdom was incorporated in the Pāṇḍya Empire; in the language of his inscription the Ponni (Káveri) land (the Chola country) became the Kanni land (the Pāṇḍya country). The whole region from Ceylon to Nellore and Cuddapah, excluding Mysore, was under his imperial control. He assumed many imposing titles: Samastajagadādāhāra or support of the whole world; Emmanuḷalāmum Koṅdarulīya or who was pleased to take every country; Hemāchchhādanarāja or the king who covered (the temple) with gold; Mahārājahirāja-śīparamēsvara; Marakata-prithví-bhṛīt or the emerald king; Kīnchipuramkoṅgān; Ellāndalaiyānān or supreme over all. His conquests made him exceedingly rich and he largely endowed the Chidambaram and Śrīraṅgam temples. His numerous gifts to the latter temple, amounting to eighteen lakhs of gold pieces, are enumerated in his Śrīraṅgam inscription. He provided the Chidambaram and Śrīraṅgam temples with golden roofs and built a golden hall in the Chidambaram temple. He crowned himself at Nellore and Śrīraṅgam and performed many tuḷābhīras at these two places. His records emphasise his warlike qualities, his liberality, his love of pomp and display, and above all, his profound appreciation of the extent of his empire and of the credit accruing to him therefrom. His Śrīraṅgam inscription begins by recording the death of "the moon of the Karṇaṭaka family" (Somēśvara Hoysala), and mentions the overthrow of the king of Karnāṭaka (Kop-Perunjīnga) besides specifying the king's various gifts to god Rāganāthā. Further, his superiority as "the Sun among kings" is emphasised by the frequent use of the phrase Rājatapana and its numerous synonyms.

The chronology of the later Pāṇḍyas is characterised by overlapping dates. Thus we find Jatāvarman Vira Pāṇḍya (A.D. 1253-1275) ruling along with Jatāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I. Marco Polo refers to the "five Royal Brothers," and the reference is supported by Chinese evidence. The Muslim historian, Wassaf, mentions the king's three brothers who were independent rulers. Hence arose the theory of the joint rule of five Pāṇḍya brothers. But overlapping dates occur in Chola and Sinhalese chronology as well, and are explained with reference to the position of the Yuvārājas. Inscriptions do not exhibit the Pāṇḍyan kingdom as divided into five separate parts. Moreover the rule of five brothers is hardly ever
feasible. Therefore it is generally held that the later Pāṇḍyan monarchy was a single monarchy, of which the unity was by no means impaired by the presence of ‘sub-kings.’ Most of the achieve­ments, with which Jaṭāvarman Vira Pāṇḍya is credited in his records found in the Madurā, Rāmānd and Tīnnevelly districts and in Pudukkoṭai, are those of Jaṭāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I himself. Therefore the former must have played a prominent part in the affairs of the realm during the reign of Sundara.

4. MAṆṆAVARMAN KULASEKHARA PÂṆḌYA

During the reign of the last great Pāṇḍya Māṇavarman Kulasekhara (c. A.D. 1268-1310), the following four princes co-operated with him in the administration of the empire: Jaṭāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya II, Māṇavarman Vikrama Pāṇḍya, Jaṭāvarman Vira Pāṇḍya II, and Jaṭāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya III, who came to power in A.D. 1276, 1283, 1296 and 1303 respectively—the two last being sons of Kulasekhara. The emperor assumed the titles: “the conqueror of all countries,” “who had no equal,” and “captor of Kollam” (Quilon). His inscriptions say that he conquered Kerala, Koilgu, Cholamar;galam, Toľfr;lamal)Jgalam and Ceylon. He inflicted final defeat on Rājendra III Chola and Hoysala Rāmanātha in A.D. 1279, and annexed their territories. About A.D. 1284, his general, Arya Chakravarti, invaded Ceylon and returned home with the Tooth Relic of Buddha during the interregnum in Ceylonese history from A.D. 1283 to 1302. Parākramabahu III (A.D. 1302-1310) submitted to Kulasekhara and recovered the Tooth Relic by peaceful negotiation during a visit to Madurā.

The greatness of Māṇavarman Kulasekhara is vouched for by Marco Polo and Muslim historians like Wassaf. Marco Polo, who visited the Pāṇḍya country about A.D. 1293, observes: “The great province of Ma’bar (the coast of South India from Quilon to Nellore) . . . is styled India the Greater; it is best of all the Indies . . . the finest and noblest in the world. At this end of the province reigns one of those five royal brothers, who is crowned king, and his name is Sonder Bandi Davar (Sundara Pāṇḍya Devar). In his kingdom they find very fine and great pearls . . . Cail (Kayal at the mouth of the TamraparI:li) is a great and noble city, and belongs to Ashar (Sekhar?) the eldest of five brother kings. It is at this city that all the ships touch that come from the west, as from Hormos and from Kis (an island in the Persian Gulf) and from Aden, and all Arabia, laden with horses and with other things for sale . . . There is a great business done in this city . . . The king possesses vast treasures and wears upon his person great store of rich jewels. He maintains great state and administers his kingdom with great equity, and ex-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

tends great favour to merchants and foreigners so that they are very glad to visit his city." The Venetian traveller's account of social life refers to the king's 500 wives, the nakedness of the people and absence of tailors, the prevalence of sati, the belief in omens and astrology, and the dancing girls attached to temples. Marco Polo draws pointed attention to the speedy death of most of the imported horses, owing to mismanagement and absence of farriers, and to the consequent colossal financial loss. He also notes the poor fighting equipment of the warriors who are described as "most wretched soldiers."

The remarks of Wassaf are very valuable. "The curiosities of Chin (China) and Machin (Canton) and the beautiful products of Hind and Sind, laden on large ships .... sailing like mountains with the wings of the winds on the surface of the water are always arriving there. The wealth of the Isles of the Persian gulf in particular, and in part the beauty and adornment of other countries from Irak and Khurasan as far as Rum (Turkey) and Europe are derived from Ma'bar, which is so situated as to be the key of Hind.... Kalks Dewar (Kulašekhara Devar), the ruler of Ma'bar, enjoyed a highly prosperous life, extending to forty and odd years, during which time neither any foreign enemy entered his country nor any severe malady confined him to bed. His coffers were replete with wealth inasmuch that in the treasury of the city of Mardi (Madura) there were 1200 crores of gold (dinars) deposited.... Besides this there was an accumulation of precious stones, such as pearls, rubies, turquoises and emeralds more than is in the power of language to express." Muslim historians inform us further that some Arab merchants occupied a high place in the councils of the Pāṇḍyas. Abūdīr Rahman is described as Prime Minister in charge of the customs to which office his son and grandson succeeded.

Māṅgarman Kulaśekhara had two sons, the legitimate Jñā­varman Sundara Pāṇḍya and the illegitimate Jñā­varman Vira Pāṇḍya. The association of Vira Pāṇḍya in the government as early as A.D. 1296 and choice of him as heir apparent caused Sundara Pāṇ­dyā to usurp the throne after murdering his father in A.D. 1310. Expelled from Madurā by Vira Pāṇḍya, Sundara Pāṇḍya appealed for help to 'Alā-ud-dīn Khaljī or Malik Kāfür. Vira Pāṇḍya aided Vira Ballāla III Hoysala (A.D. 1291-1342) against Kāfür. Malik Kāfür who would probably have invaded Ma'bar in any case, as a part of the imperial policy of the Khaljīs even if there had been no Pāṇḍya war of succession, or any other cause of complaint, led an expedition against the Pāṇḍya kingdom. The sequel of this inva­sion will be described in the next volume.

1. See p. 246.
The story of the liberation of Ceylon by Vijayabahu I Śrīsaṅghabodhi (c. A.D. 1055-1110) from the Chola yoke about A.D. 1070 has been narrated in the previous volume. The period of about a century and a half after Vijayabahu's success against the Cholas is regarded by historians as the Polonnaruva age of Ceylonese history. Vijayabahu changed the name of the city from Pulatthinagara (Polonnaruva) to Vijayarājapura. An important feature of the history of this period is the rivalry between the Pāṇḍya and Kaliṅga factions at the Ceylonese court.

Vijayabahu I invested his next younger brother Virabahu with the dignity of Uparāja, and made over to him the province of Dakshina-desa. On his youngest brother Jayabahu he conferred the dignity of an Adhipāda, and bestowed on him the province of Rohaṇa. Līlavatī, daughter of king Jagatipāla (c. A.D. 1042-46) who was a former ruler of Ceylon, escaped from the Chola country and came back to the island. She was consecrated by Vijayabahu I as his Mahishī (Queen). The king's daughter from Līlavatī was married to Viravarman who was made viceroy of the province of Merukandara. The king also brought to the island princess Trilokasundari of the royal family of Kaliṅga and consecrated her as his Mahishī. Trilokasundari must have been related to the contemporary Imperial Ganga monarch Rajaraja I (A.D. 1070-78) of Kalinganagara. She gave birth to Vikramabahu and several daughters. Her kinsmen Madhukāravā (Madhukāmāravā?), Bhimarāja and Balātkāra came from the Kaliṅga capital Siṅhapura and settled in Lanka on receipt of befitting maintenances from the king. Trilokasundari's daughter Ratnāvalī, married to Mānābharasa, gave birth to Parākramabahu who became the ruler of the island in the latter half of the twelfth century. A sister of the Kaliṅga princes settled in Lanka, named Sundari, and queen Līlavatī's daughter's daughter bearing her name, were given in marriage to prince Vikramabahu. Two of Vijayabahu's daughters from Trilokasundari were married to his younger brothers Virabahu and Jayabahu. On the death of Virabahu the king made Jayabahu the Uparāja and Vikramabahu an Adhipāda, conferring on the latter the viceroyalty of Rohaṇa. King Vijayabahu gave his sister Mitrā in marriage to a prince of the Pāṇḍya royal house of South India.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Vijayabahu built many Buddhist monasteries, repaired a number of tanks and vihāras, and invited and settled in his kingdom numerous monks from Rāmānuya (Ramānūya, Lower Burma). He tried to maintain diplomatic relations with the Kānāja (Western Chālukya) and Chōla kings. In the 30th year of his reign (c. A.D. 1085) the king declared war against the Chōlas; but the Tamil mercenaries settled in Ceylon and known as the Velakkāras were unwilling to fight with their kinsmen across the sea and rebelled. Vijayabahu succeeded in subduing the revolt. In the 45th year (c. A.D. 1100), the king was preparing for defence against a Chōla attack; but the Chōlas did not appear. The king ruled for 55 years (50 or 80 years according to some traditions).

On Vijayabahu’s death in c. A.D. 1110 his sister Mitra with her Pāndya husband’s help raised Jayabahu to the throne at Polonnaruva and her own son Mānabharaṇa to the dignity of Yuvarāja, although prince Vikramabahu of the Kaliṣa faction was entitled to this latter position. This led to a struggle between North and South Lanka. Vikramabahu (II), who was the vicecy in the South, conquered Rājarāṣṭra and made Polonnaruva his headquarters; but he lost the South to his enemies. He, however, did not crown himself as king. Vikramabahu had also to fight with an invader called Viradeva, who is described as the lord of Āryadesa and the sovereign of Pañḍāvīpa and was apparently an Indian adventurer. Viradeva is stated to have occupied Rājarāṣṭra for a time, but to have been soon afterwards killed. There was also constant fight between the partisans of the North and the South.

On the death of Jayabahu, Mahādīpāda (Yuvarāja) Manabharaṇa, also styled Virabhā, considered himself his successor. He soon died, leaving his young son Parākramabahu. His brothers Kirtisrimeghe and Śrīvallabhā now led the partisans of the South. Vikramabahu II (c. A.D. 1116-37) died after a rule of 21 years (28 years according to some traditions) and was succeeded by his son Gajabahu (c. A.D. 1137-53) at Polonnaruva. In the South, Kirtisrimeghe died and Parākramabahu succeeded him in his dominions. Parākramabahu assumed the title Mahādīpāda with an eye to the succession to the throne of Polonnaruva after Gajabahu’s death. He organised a huge army and, as a first step, conquered the mountainous district called Malaya. A protracted war then ensued between Gajabahu and Parākramabahu, in which the former was ultimately captured along with the princes Chōdaśaṅka and Vikrāntabahu. About this time, prince Mānabharaṇa, the son of Parākramabahu’s uncle Śrīvallabhā from queen Sugala, rose against Parākramabahu, occupied Polonnaruva, and got Gajabahu in his
power. But his army was soon overpowered by Parākramabahu's forces that reconquered Polonnaruva. Gajabahu succeeded in taking shelter at Koshtasara (probably near Kantalai) and Manābharana repaired to Rohaṇa with the sacred relics of the Buddha. Gajabahu then made Gaṅgātājaka (Giritula, about 7 miles west-north-west of Polonnaruva) his residence. He died after having reigned in all for twenty-two years according to one tradition, although it is difficult to be definite on the point. Before Gajabahu's death there was a tripartite civil war disturbing the peace of the whole island. But essentially it was part of a long struggle between the North and the South. Parākramabahu was for a time compelled to take shelter at Vikramapura, not far from the city of Polonnaruva. But he succeeded ultimately in recovering the city and Manābharana fled to Rohaṇa where he died.

Parākramabahu I (c. A.D. 1153-86), surnamed Arirājaveśabhujanga, ruled for thirty-three years (thirty-two years according to one tradition). As we have seen, his grandmother Trilokasundari, queen of Vijayabahu I, was a princess of the Ganga dynasty of Kaliṅga. He married Rūpavati born in the family of king Kirtisrimegha. Parākramabahu was a powerful king and a great builder. He was learned in the science of medicine and founded many hospitals and other charitable institutions. The city of Pulatthinagara (Polonnaruva) and old Anurādhapura, destroyed by the Cholas, were rebuilt by him. He laid out many gardens and built numerous religious edifices. He reorganised civil and military administrations, and his irrigation works led to the prosperity of his dominions. He also reorganised the Buddhist Church. But he oppressed the subjects with heavy taxation.

Parākramabahu I suppressed a rebellion of the Sinhalese and Kerala (Malayali) mercenaries of Koshtasara (a military garrison not far to the east of Polonnaruva) who combined themselves with the Dravidian military corporation known in Sinhalese history as the Velakkāras.

Queen Sugala, wife of Śrīvallabha and mother of Manābharana, was ruling independently over the province of Rohaṇa from Uddhānāvāra (probably Galabada near Monaragala). She was in the possession of the sacred relics (Buddha's tooth and alms-bowl) which were a source of great income and prestige. An expedition was sent by Parākramabahu against Rohaṇa, which was conquered, and the sacred relics were secured for the king of Ceylon. But the king's authority could not be firmly established in Rohaṇa and another rebellion in the region had to be suppressed in his 8th regnal
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

year. Among the generals who conducted the expeditions in Rohana was a Damila (Tamil) named Raksha.

There were formerly friendly relations between Ceylon and Rama (Lower Burma). The Burmese contemporary of Parakramabahu I, however, ill-treated the Ceylonese envoys. He raised the prices of elephants and refused to sell them to Ceylon. He also did away with the old custom of presenting an elephant to the vessel carrying the Ceylonese king's presents to him, and on one occasion seized a princess sent by the Ceylonese king to the king of Kambuja (Cambodia). These incidents provoked Parakramabahu I to order a Damila (Tamil) general named Aditya to organise a naval expedition against Arimardanapura (Pagan, the Burmese capital). Ships were built for five months and were equipped with rice and other food-stuff, armours and many hundred thousands of sharp-pointed Gokaråka arrows of iron for defence against elephants, different kinds of medicines in cow-horns for wounds caused by poisoned arrows and for treating diseases caused by poisoned water, iron pincers for extracting arrow-heads, skilful physicians and nurses, etc. It is said that some of these ships succeeded in landing Ceylonese soldiers in Rama, and that they defeated the Rama, killed their king, and established Ceylonese supremacy in that country. The Rama are stated consequently to have agreed to pay tribute in elephants. Although the story greatly exaggerates the amount of Ceylonese success against the Burmese, an inscription of Parakramabahu I actually refers to the king's resolve to send an expedition against Bhuvanaditya, the king of Rama (Rama), in the twelfth year of his reign.

When Madura, capital of the Pandy (Pandy), was besieged by his rival Kula (Kula) backed by the Cholas, Parakrama Pandy appealed to the Ceylonese monarch for help. Parakramabahu I agreed to help the Pandy king who had, however, been defeated and killed before the Ceylonese army landed in the Ramesvara region under the generals Lanka and Jagadivaya (called Jagatraya in Chola records). The chronicles speak of successful engagements of the Ceylonese forces against the lieutenants of Kula, and of the installation of Vira Pandy, son of the deceased Parakrama Pandy, on the throne of Madura by the Ceylonese generals. But the story is abruptly closed and available evidence shows that it is not a faithful account of the whole campaign. The Chola records admit the initial success of the Ceylonese forces and refer to Lanka's return to the island some time before A.D. 1167-68, the date of the Arpakkam grant, as brought about by divine aid. This apparently points to the first phase of
the war. But the Pallavarayanpettai inscription of the eighth regnal year (A.D. 1170-71) of the Chola king Rājadhirāja II (A.D. 1163-79) says that Lānkapurā was defeated and killed, that his head was nailed to the gate of Madura, and that Kulaśekhara was reinstalled in the Pāṇḍya capital. This was the second phase of the struggle. The third phase of the war is referred to in the Tiruvāḻangādu inscription of the 12th regnal year (A.D. 1174-75) of the same king. This record tells us how Kulaśekhara later allied himself with the king of Ceylon and how the Chola king deposed him and replaced Vira Pāṇḍya on the Pāṇḍya throne. It also refers to the help the Chola king rendered to Śrīvallabha, nephew of the Ceylonese king, in his struggle against Parākramabāhu I. The next phase of the war is indicated by the records of the Chola king Kulotturiga III (A.D. 1178-1216), which refer to the expulsion of Vira Pāṇḍya and the Ceylonese soldiers being driven into the sea by the forces of the Chola king. Vira Pāṇḍya had been won over by the Ceylonese king and the Chola monarch was now supporting Vikrama Pāṇḍya, as stated above.

The next ruler was Vijayabahu II who ruled for one year about A.D. 1186-87. He was the son of a sister of the previous king who had been apparently married to a prince of the Gaṅga house of Kaliṅga. According to a Polonnaruva inscription, Vijayabahu II was staying at Siṁhapura, capital of Kaliṅga, when Parākramabāhu summoned him to Lārīka. Vijayabahu II, who was a great scholar, is stated to have contracted a friendly treaty with the king of Arimārdanapura (Pagan, Burma).

Mahendra VI of the Kaliṅga clan then killed the king. But Kirtinīhāṣāka or Niḥśāṅkamalla, who was born in Kaliṅga and was the Uparāja of Vijayabahu II, killed Mahendra VI after five days and became king. He ruled for nine years (c. A.D. 1187-96). The inscriptions of Niḥśāṅkamalla state that he was born at Siṁhapura in Kaliṅga as the son of king Jayagopa and queen Parvati, and that he was summoned by the king of Lāṅkā to take over the administration. This Jayagopa seems to have been a scion of the Gaṅga royal family and the ruler of a district under the contemporary Imperial Gaṅga monarch.

Niḥśāṅkamalla built many temples, excavated a number of tanks, and made numerous gardens. He set up mile-stones at every garyuti on the main roads. The king regularly visited the sacred places on the island. In his inscriptions he claims to have fought successfully with the Chōḷas, Pāṇḍyas and other peoples of South India, although the real nature of the claim cannot be determined. He also claims to have built the Niḥśāṅkēśvara temple at Rāmeśvara
on the Indian coast and to have had diplomatic relations with distant lands like Rājputāna and Cambodia. On Nālsankamalla’s death, his son Virabhiṣu II seems to have been murdered after a rule of one night. The next king was Nālsankamalla’s younger brother Vikramaśāhu III (or II) who ruled for three months. He was killed by Chodagraha (c. A.D. 1196-97) who was a sister’s son of Nālsankamalla. The name of the new ruler shows that he claimed relations with the Imperial Ganga monarch Anantaśvarman Chodagraha of Kalinganagara. After a rule of nine months Chodagraha was deposed by the general Kirti who raised Līlāvati (c. A.D. 1197-1200), the first Mahisha of king Parākramabāhu I, to the throne.

After a period of three years, Sāhasamalla of the Ikshvāku clan, who was really a step-brother of Nālsankamalla, ascended the throne on the 23rd August, A.D. 1200. He was deposed after a rule of two years (c. A.D. 1200-1202) by the general Ayushmat who raised Kalyāṇavati, the first Mahisha of Nālsankamalla, to the throne. Kalyāṇavati (c. A.D. 1202-08) ruled for six years (six months according to a tradition).

Thereafter general Ayushmat raised to the throne a boy of three months, named Dharmaśoka. After a rule of one year, the young king was killed together with his general by Mahādīpāda Anikaṅga (Aniyantha), who was the father of Dharmaśoka and came from the Chola kingdom with a great army. But Anikaṅga was himself killed after a rule of seventeen days by a general named Vikrāntacāmukara who reinstalled on the throne queen Līlāvati, the first Mahisha of Nālsankamalla, and conducted the administration for one year (c. A.D. 1209-1210). Then Lokeśvara (c. A.D. 1210-11) came from South India with a large Damila (Tamil) army, subdued the whole of Lanka and ruled for nine months (five months according to some traditions) at Polonnaruva. After this a general named Parākrama raised queen Līlāvati again to the throne. The queen ruled for seven months (four months according to one tradition) after which Parākrama Pāṇḍya came from the Pāṇḍya kingdom with a Pāṇḍya army, deposed the queen, and ruled for three years (c. A.D. 1211-14). It is difficult to determine whether he was a member of the Pāṇḍya branch of the Ceylonese royal family or a scion of the Pāṇḍya dynasty of Madura. Parākrama Pāṇḍya was deposed by Māgha (or Magha) who came from Kaliṅga with 24,000 soldiers including a large number of Kerala (Malayali) mercenaries. Māgha (c. A.D. 1214-35) then ascended the throne and ruled for twenty-one years (nineteen years according to one tradition). He
CEYLON

as stated to have oppressed the Buddhists of the island and destroyed many Buddhist monasteries.

The Polonnaruva period of Ceylonese history ends with Māgha. The later kings mostly ruled from places like Dambadeniya (Kurunegala District), Gampola, etc. But Polonnaruva did not completely lose its importance at once. Parākramabāhu II (c. A.D. 1236-71) temporarily occupied the city, and Vijayabāhu IV (c. A.D. 1271-73) and Parākramabāhu III (c. A.D. 1302-10) ruled from there. But none of the later rulers enjoyed supremacy over the whole island. The Tamils were in occupation of wide areas since the days of Māgha. The Pāṇḍya kings of Madurā invaded the island several times and, for nearly two decades about the close of the thirteenth and the beginning of the fourteenth century, the Pāṇḍyas were the dominant power in the island. Parākramabāhu III acknowledged the supremacy of the Pāṇḍya king Māravarman Kulaśekhara (A.D. 1268-1210). The Tamils founded the kingdom of Jaffna which for some time owed allegiance to the emperors of Vijayānagara. The Rājput mercenaries appear also to have exercised some influence, and Bhuvanaikābāhu I is stated to have succeeded in gaining the throne about A.D. 1273 with their help. About the middle of the thirteenth century the island was invaded by a Javanese of Tamraliliriga, named Chandrabhanu, with a mixed host of Pāṇḍyas, Cholas and Javanese. The Ceylonese king Viśa Alakāṣvara or Viśyabāhu VI is known to have been captured by the leader of a Chinese embassy and carried off to China in A.D. 1411. All this shows a period of gradual decline which ultimately led to the Portuguese occupation of the island.

GENERAL REFERENCES

2. Ch. 39 of the Chīlavaṁsā refers to Vijayābāhu’s marriage with the Kalīṅga princess Trilokasundari and the settlement of the three Kalīṅga princes of Sīhāpurā, capital of Kalīṅga, in his kingdom. In this connection Geiβer (Chīlavaṁsā, Eng. trans., Part I, p. 331, note 1) observes: “Sīhāpurā (Sīhāpurā) is the town which according to the legend (cf. Mhvs. 6.38) was founded in Laṅkā (Lākṣa) by Vijaya’s father Sīhabahu. Lākṣa borders in the north of the Kalīṅga kingdom, the home of Trikalauṇḍarī, as must be inferred from Mhvs. 6.1.5. The south-eastern district of Chūta Nagpur to the west of Benīlī is still called Singbhum.” It has, however, to be noticed that in the age of Vijayābāhu I (really from about the end of the sixth at least to the end of the twelfth century A.D.), the name Kalīṅga was exclusively applied to the kingdom of the Gangas of Kalinganagara (modern Mukhalingam near Srilaksumūra), who styled themselves as Kalīṅga-dhīrapati. Sīhāpurā (mod. Singahparam in the same neighbourhood) was, however, the capital of the Kalīṅa-khāṣṭrapati in the fourth and fifth centuries. It was no longer the capital of Kalīṅga, but may have been the residence of some scions of the Kalīṅga family. Lākṣa and
Kalinga do not appear to have had contiguous boundaries in any known period of Indian history. Simhapura in Rādhā (probably modern Singur in the Hooghly District) cannot be regarded as the same as the Kalinga capital of the same name, identified with modern Singapuram near Srikakulam. The representation of Simhapura as the capital of Kalinga in the Mahāranas tradition seems to be due to the fact that the chronicle was composed about the fifth century, while the Chhāḷāraṇias appears merely to have continued the same tradition, although the later capital of the country was at Kalinganagara.

5. El, XXI, 184.
6. Ibid., XXII. 86.
9. EZ, II, 179 ff.
CHAPTER XIII

POLITICAL THEORY AND ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANISATION

I. POLITICAL THEORY

During the period under review political speculation was continued in the Sārīṣṭī commentaries as well as in independent works on Nītiśāstra. Examples of the former are the justly famous commentaries of Vijñāneśvara and Aparārkā on Yājñavalkya and of Kullūka on Manu, while those of the latter are the Laghva-Arhanīti-śāstra of Hemachandra and the well-known Sukranitīśātra attributed to Sukrāchārya, the preceptor of the demons. A link between the two is presented by the Rāja-dharma sections of voluminous Śāra Digests like the Rājadharma-kāla of Lakṣmiśāstra’s Kṛitya-kulpatara.

Beginning with the Śāra commentaries, we have to observe that Vijñāneśvara agrees with the liberal view of Medhātithi on the vexed question of connotation of the term ‘king’. He writes:—

“Though this aggregate of kingly duties has been laid down with reference to the king, this duty should be understood to apply to one of another caste also who is engaged in the task of protecting the province, the district, and so forth’. Justifying this view by a textual argument the author first quotes the separate use of the generic term nripa (king) in Manu-smṛiti. The second and the more important argument is based upon the old Śāra conception of the relation of protection to taxation. Levying taxes, we are told, has protection for its object, and protection in its turn depends upon the infliction of punishment (daṇḍa). In other words the wide connotation of the term ‘king’ as to make it applicable irrespectively of caste or status is justified by the fact that taxation imposes upon the ruler the obligation of protection. Aparārkā in his commentary on the same verse of Yājñavalkya justifies a similar interpretation of the term rājena (king) by a general as well as a particular argument. All these duties (dharma), he says, have been prescribed for a Kṣatriya ruler of the kingdom. When, however, a non-Kṣatriya does this work, he should perform the whole set of these duties. This view is supported in general terms by the maxim (nīṣṭhā) that from the performance of a particular occupation follows the acquisition of its corresponding obligation.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

More particularly we are told that the protection of subjects is involved in the acceptance of taxes. Everyone who contributes wealth, it is explained, expects a benefit accruing to himself, while paying taxes has no other object than self-preservation and therefore one who takes the taxes is bound to protect the people. In other words taxation and protection are the two sides of a bargain between the ruler and his subjects. Thence follows the corollary that kingship is independent of Kshatriya-birth. 4

Of the other Smrti writers belonging to this period reference may be made to Gopala who wrote a Digest called the Kāmadhenu. According to Gopala the king is one who has been consecrated, since the protection of subjects depends upon performance of the king’s consecration, and knowledge of kingly duties cannot be acquired without it. In another passage, however, Gopala declares that the coronation rites mentioned in the works on rajāniti are merely illustrative, and that the king may be proclaimed simply by being seated on the throne according to the particular usages of countries and families. We may mention, finally, that Gopala repeats Srikara’s view about the claim of the indigent and other classes to the king’s wealth and about the evil of rule of the ‘Many’. 5

Lakshmīdhara’s ideas of the origin and nature of kingship as well as of the mutual relations between the ruler and his subjects are based on the old Smrti texts of Manu and Nārada. He believes in the dogma of the king’s divine origin as well as the principle of the people’s absolute obligation of honouring him and obeying his command. He also holds with Manu that the penal authority of the king (or the State) is the grand security of the social and the political order. The author also quotes 6 a number of Smrti passages inculcating, often by means of moral and spiritual sanctions, the king’s obligation of protecting his subjects. On the other hand it is significant that he is completely silent about the texts justifying the subjects in resisting their evil ruler. In Hemachandra’s Lagīv-Arhamnī we have an interesting theory of the origin of rajāniti, 7 which ascribes its creation to the mythical prophet-king Rishabha. This is evidently due to the Jain author’s attempt to mark the science as of Jain origin. 8

The Sukrantaśīra, 9 which announces itself as a summary of the archetypal nitiśātra work of the god Brahmā from the pen of the sage Bhārgava (Sukrachārya), is distinguished from early mediaeval compilations of a similar nature by the freshness and originality of its outlook upon some important political ideas. As regards the scope of the science, Sukra 10 introduces his work with the statement that it has been prepared for the benefit of kings and others. In accordance with this wider conception of the science, we find that
Śukra devotes a separate chapter11 of his work to the subject of general (śādhaśāra) nītiśāstra applicable to all and sundry. Thus Politics (or more properly the art of government) in Śukra's system is not (as in Kāmandaka) an independent branch of knowledge for instruction of kings in statecraft, but is merged in a science of general morals. As the interests of the rulers form the core of this science, nītiśāstra is primarily the science (or art) of good administration. But since it fulfills a more general purpose than the interest of the king, its use must extend over a wider field. This is explained by the author12 by means of an estimate of the relative values of nītiśāstra and the parallel sciences. Other sciences, we read, enlighten the people on only one aspect of their activities, but nītiśāstra is the source of subsistence of all classes and it maintains the established usages of men.

The ideas of kingship in the Śukranītiśāra are largely based upon the thought of the older writers, but they present some points of remarkable, if not original, interest. Śukra is a great believer in the doctrine of karma, for he says13 that karma alone is the cause of good and evil conditions on this earth. Elsewhere14 we are told that men are directed towards virtue and vice by means of desires assuming such forms as would help the fulfillment of deeds done in a previous birth, and that most certainly everything happens in accordance with such deeds. This doctrine is applied by Śukra to explain the basis of the king's authority over his subjects. The king, we are told,15 acquires his prowess and becomes a protector and director and the source of delight through his austerities, and he sustains the earth by his deeds done in a previous birth as well as his austerities. This repeats an idea of Nārada, namely, that the king's authority is derived from his own karma. The same doctrine is repeated in other passages. In 1.71-72 the author, while boldly altering (as it appears) a well-known text of Manu, observes that the king becomes a lord of the movable and immovable beings through his own austerities (tapas), taking (for that purpose) the eternal particles of Indra, of the Wind, of Yama, of the Sun, of Fire, of Varuṇa, of the Moon, and of the lord of Wealth (Kubera). Lordship, we are told in another place,16 is the reward of austerities, while servitude is the penalty for sin. Elsewhere17 we read that lordship which is superior in every way to the mastery of riches is the fruit of no little austerities. With the above idea of the basis of the king's authority in his own karma, Śukra combines the old conception of Manu and Bhishma in the Mahābhārata about parallelism of the king's functions with those of the Regents of the Quarters. In 1.73-76 he shows how the various administrative functions of the king correspond to the respective attributes of the gods Indra, Wind, the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Sun, Yama, Fire, Varuṇa, the Moon and Kubera. In another verse\(\text{18}\) he declares the king's attributes to comprise those of the father, the mother, the preceptor, the brother and the friend as well as the gods Kubera and Yama, in other words the best human and divine attributes. Sukra likewise supports by some fresh arguments\(\text{19}\) the notion of Manu-smṛti and the Mahābhārata about the influence of the king upon the time-spirit ("Zeitgeist"). According to him, the king stamps himself upon his Age through his enforcement of the customs and duties of the people by the arm of his political authority. With this conception may be compared the Mahābhārata idea\(\text{20}\) that the king is a maker of the Age-cycle through the degree of his performance as well as non-performance of dharma.

As regards the idea of mutual relations of the ruler and his subjects, Sukra in the first place repeats Kamandaka's verses relating to the fundamental importance of kingship under proper conditions for the fulfilment of the people's needs. In his view the security and prosperity of the people and in short their complete life depend upon the intellectual and moral quality of their ruler. This leads the author to discuss the question of mutual dependence of the ruler and his people. The people, he says,\(\text{21}\) do not observe their duties without protection by the king, but the king does not flourish without the people. Elsewhere the author employs a bold mythological simile to the effect that the people like the Queen of Indra must never be without a lord.\(\text{22}\) It is in the light of this conception that we have to understand the author's references to the obligations of subjects towards their ruler. Describing the behaviour of the people visiting the king the author says,\(\text{23}\) that they should salute the king as if he were an incarnation of Viṣṇu. More specifically he observes\(\text{24}\) that they should not divulge the king's secrets, nor even think of injuring or slaying him. In another place\(\text{25}\) in the course of his description of the people's obligations, he enjoins them to honour the king along with the gods, the ascetics, the preceptor, the fire and learned men.

Sukra asserts with equal emphasis the king's obligations which include protection of the people and chastisement of the wicked. The author supports the king's obligation with the usual moral and spiritual sanctions. Thus he includes\(\text{26}\) in a category of three persons whom the gods kill and cast down, the king who fails in his duty of protection. In an earlier passage\(\text{27}\) the author enjoins the king by the promise of rewards and the threat of penalties to enforce the observance of their specified duties by the subjects.

The climax of this principle of the king's obligation is reached in a striking passage\(\text{28}\) applying the dogma of the king's divine
creation to the old Smṛiti conception of the co-ordination between taxation and protection. The king, we read, having the aspect of a master was ordained by Brahmā for the service (dāsayotā) of the people with his own share of the produce as his fee (bhṛiti) for the purpose of their consistent protection.

Besides insisting with the older thinkers upon the king’s obligation of protection, Sukra follows them in making righteousness the rule of the king’s conduct. It is in this connection that Sukra draws, practically for the first time among our ancient thinkers, a sharp contrast between two contrary types of rulers, namely, the divine and the demoniac. The king who is righteous, we read, is a portion of the gods, while his reverse, who destroys righteousness and oppresses the people, is a portion of the demons. With this may be compared another passage where a king endowed with various good qualities is declared to be a portion of the gods, while his opposite is held to be a portion of the demons and destined for residence in hell. In another passage Sukra applies the philosophical doctrine of the three qualities of substances to kings. There are, he says, three types of austerities, namely, those marked by Goodness (śrītvika), Darkness (tāmasa) and Passion (rājasa), and the king assumes his distinctive character according as he practise very much one or other of them. In the following lines Sukra, after defining the three types of rulers, declares that the śrītvika king assimilates the particles of the gods, the tāmasa type those of the demons and the rājasa type those of men.

We may conclude this brief survey of Sukra’s political thought with some reference to his attitude towards the old Smṛiti idea of the rights of the subjects with reference to their rulers. Brāhmaṇas, he says in one place, incur no sin by destroying very wicked Kshatriyas even by fighting them with weapons: even so when Kshatriyas are oppressed by lowly folk, Brāhmaṇas should quickly destroy them in battle. This passage repeats an important principle inculcated by Bhishma in the Mahābhārata, namely that of the Brāhmaṇa’s right of armed resistance against very oppressive Kshatriyas and against lowly oppressors of Kshatriyas. As regards the rights of the people in general with respect to their ruler, Sukra in one place, it is true, counsels resignation to the will of a bad king as to the unnatural acts of parents and the inscrutable ways of Providence. A bolder line is taken up in other passages. The people are asked to leave the land ruled by an unrighteous king and constantly to frighten him by going over to his virtuous and very powerful enemy. In another passage the author concedes to the people’s representatives the right of deposing the bad ruler. “If
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

the king, although high born”, we read, “becomes averse to good qualities, policy and strength, and is unrighteous, he should be repudiated as the destroyer of the kingdom. In his place the Purohita should install a virtuous prince of his family for protection of the subjects after obtaining the approval of the latter.”

II. ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANISATION

NORTH INDIA

The decline and fall of the Imperial Pratihāras of Kanauj paved the way for the rise of new powers in different parts of North India. Such were the Kalachuris of Chedi, the Chandellas of Jejakabhukti, the Paramāras of Malvā, and the Chaulukyas of Gujarāt. The administrative organisation of these and other contemporary dynasties was, as might be expected, of the same general type, but there were some important differences.

1. The Kalachuris

The Kalachuris of Chedi assumed the usual imperial titles. The most famous kings of this dynasty, namely, Karṇa, Yaśāśkara, and Jayasindha of the Tripuri line added to these titles the epithets of āśvapati, gajapati, nārapati, and rājatrayadhipati (king of horses, king of elephants, king of men, lord of the three grades of kings). The Kalachuri records, both of the Tripuri and the Ratanpur lines, speak of officers bearing the titles of mantriprādhiinā (or prādhiinīmitya) or mantriprādhiinīmitya (chief minister) and also of a dharmakarmadhikārī (minister in charge of religious endowments). We can judge the high status of the āmityamukhyas from the fact that Kokalla II is said to have been raised to the throne by them. The list of dignitaries occurring in the formula of land-grants of these kings included the mahāmātya, the dharmaprādhanā, the daśamuliika, the sāndhiavigrahika, the prādhiinīmitya, the duṣṭasādhya, the akshaputrika, the prādhiinīmitya, and the duṣṭasādhya. In the above, mahāmātya and dharmaprādhanā correspond respectively to prādhiinīmitya and dharmakarmadhikārī mentioned above, while sāndhiavigrahika, akshaputrika and duṣṭasādhya are old familiar offices. The duṣṭasādhya may perhaps be equated with the dāñcādhāsādhanika of the Pāla records. The other titles are new and difficult to explain. The later records of the Kalachuris substitute (or add) high imperial titles of the type known to the Gupta period. Such are mahāśādhanīavigrahika, mahāpratihāra, mahākṣaputrika, mahāśādhanīavigrahika,
ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANISATION

mahābhēṇḍāgārīka, mahēṣṭhānī, and mahādhyaksha. As regards the branch of local administration we find that the donated village is located in one record in a group of 12. This reminds us of the system of chiefs' estates in the Rajput clan-monarchies, for 12 is an exact fraction of the standard size (84) of such estates. The reference to paṭṭakila (identified with the modern Patel) in another record points to the continuation of the traditional type of village administration under a headman.

2. The Chandellas

The Chandellas of Jejakabhukti used the conventional imperial titles. A record of the beginning of the thirteenth century mentions among their officers of State a mantri (minister) bearing the titles of mahāmahattaka and māṇḍalika, a sāndhitivigrāhika (minister of foreign affairs), a koṭṭapāla (city prefect) and a īrēśšīṭhi (banker) who was also the writer of deeds. The last three formed a Board of paṭṭakula as well as the dharmādhikaranya (court of justice) for adjudicating upon the disputes of merchants. The care of the administration for the families of deceased soldiers is illustrated by an unusually interesting inscription of A.D. 1205, which records the grant of two villages by way of maintenance for death on the battlefield. In the branch of local government, we find villages being grouped into vishayas or pathakas (districts), but we have no reference to the titles of officers placed in charge of them. Some light is thrown upon village administration by the fact that the adhikritamahattamas are sometimes mentioned in the list of persons to whom the king's grant of land is announced. These officers apparently correspond to the mahattarādhikārins (the executive Board of the assembly of mahattaras) who are met with elsewhere.

3. The Paramāras

The Paramāras adopted the usual imperial titles. Among their high officers of State are mentioned the mahaśāṃḍhitivigrāhika (minister of foreign affairs), the daṇḍādhīśa (commander-in-chief) and the like. In Merutuniga's account of king Muśji (Prabandha-chintāmaṇi) reference is made to a faithful mahāmādyā of the king, who committed suicide in sheer despair when he found his master embarking on an expedition against his advice. The villages in the Paramāra kingdom were grouped into larger units called in the ascending order, paṭṭiṇḍgaraṇaka, paṭhaka (or bhoṣa or vishyaga) and muṇḍula. They were also gathered into units bearing the name of the chief village with various numeral endings (12, 16, 17,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

36, 37, 48, and 84). The villages were in charge of the usual paṭṭakīla (headman).

4. The Gāhadavālas

The heirs of the Imperial Pratiharas in the sovereignty of the Middle Ganga valley were the kings of the Gāhadavāla dynasty who ruled for more than a century (c. A.D. 1090-1193). The Gāhadavāla kings adopted the usual imperial titles, to which king Govindachandra added the epithets of aśvapati, gajapati, narapati, and rājatrayādhipati mentioned above. The Queens assumed the corresponding dignified titles of pāṭigamaḥādevi and mahārājī, and they claimed to be invested with all royal prerogatives. The Crown Prince (mahārājaputra), who was similarly invested with all royal rights, is sometimes further said to be consecrated to yauvarājya. The Maharajaputra Yuvāraja Govindachandra made the largest number of his land-grants in his father’s life-time without even the formality of the king’s permission. Among the officials mentioned in the formula of the grants are included the mantri, the senāpati, the pratihāra, the bhāgārika, the akṣhapatalika, and the dāta. All these offices are known from earlier times. The same formula mentions adhikāripuruṣas in charge of districts (vishayas) and towns (pattanas). This suggests the usual type of local government with State officers placed in charge of districts and towns. The donated villages as a rule are located in patañas which may refer to fiscal rather than administrative divisions.

5. The Senas

The Senas of Bengal, on the whole, continued the administrative organisation of their Pāla predecessors, but there were some new developments. From the time of Vijayasena the kings assumed the usual imperial titles. The later kings used the additional titles of aśvapati, gajapati and narapati known to us from the records of the Kalachuri and Gāhadavāla kings. The list of persons mentioned in the formula of the Sena land-grants comprised a number of High Imperial Officers of the types known to the Gupta Empire. Such were the mahādharmsaṅga (chief justice), mahādandhinigrāhika (minister of foreign affairs), mahāsenapati (commander-in-chief), mahāmudrādikrīta (keeper of the Great Seal), mahākāshapatalika (chief accounts officer), mahāpratīdhara (chief of palace guards), mahāvyūhapati (mahābhogapati) (probably a military title), mahāpupapati (chief trainer of elephants), and mahāgāvastha (apparently a military title). Other officials mentioned in the same formula are the rājāmātya (senior order of
The administrative organisation of the Chāhāmanas, both of the main line of Sākambhari and Ajmer and of the branch lines of Mārwār, has some striking features. One of the oldest records of the main line bearing the date 1030 V.S. (A.D. 973) mentions various estates as being held by the king and junior princes of the clan. This description fits in with the type of Rājput clan-monarchies to which reference has been made above. In the same record the gift-villages are located in one case in a group of 12 comprised within a víshaya. This illustrates the super-imposition of the new system of clan-chief’s estates upon the older division into víshayas. We have a unique document dated 1198 V.S. (A.D. 1141) illustrating the municipal administration in vogue under the Chāhāmanas of Nādl. In this record the whole people of a town headed by sixteen Brahmās (two being selected from each ward) tender a document signed with their own hands. By it they solemnly promise to find out in accordance with the custom of the country whatever is lost by (or snatched away from) the bhatas, the bhāṭputras, dauvārikas, and others on their way. A large number of witnesses (including the whole class of bankers) bears witness to this document.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

III. ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANISATION
SOUTH INDIA

1. The Chālukyas

The Chālukyas of Kālīṣa, who succeeded the Rāṣṭrakūṭas in the sovereignty of the Deccan, adopted the usual imperial titles. To this they added such characteristic epithets as samastabhavanāṣraya (refuge of the whole world), ārijītihitavallabha (favourite of fortune and the earth), Satyārayakulatiśaka (forehead-ornament of the family of Satyāraya) and Chālukyaśābharaṇa (ornament of the Chālukyas). Among their high officers of State are mentioned the dāsanāyaka (general), the mahāprachandaśāṇāyaka (great august general), the dharmaśāhī (superintendent of religious affairs, according to Barnett, or better perhaps, chief justice), the mahāpradhāna (high minister) and the sāndhinigrāhika (minister of foreign affairs). A new tendency towards specialisation of officers is illustrated by such titles as tāṣāyadaśānanāyaka (general in charge of reserves), Liīlasāndhinigrāhika (minister of peace and war for the Līla country), Heriśāndhinigrāhika and Kannadśāsandhinigrāhika (minister of peace and war for the Kannada country).60 A record61 commemorates a Brahma family, whose ancestor was the king’s chief preceptor, and which furnished three generations of dāsanāyakas to the State service. Another Brahma, whose father held the post of treasurer, was successively appointed sāndhinigrāhika of two different varieties and was invested with all the insignia of royalty by the kings.62 Like other imperial dynasties the Chālukyas allowed the combination of different offices in the same hands. We have the example of a dharmaśāhī who was also a mahāpradhāna and a dāsanāyaka.63 Another dāsanāyaka held the offices of mahāpradhāna, Kannada-sāandhinigrāhika and māniveṛgga (master of the household) together with the title of mahāśāmmanṭādhīpati (great lord of feudatories).64

When we turn to the branch of local administration, we find that the towns and villages belonging to the South Mārāṭha country were grouped into Districts containing small numeral endings (30 etc.), which again were united into Divisions with higher numeral endings (1000 etc.). Reference is also made to units of 70 and 300 villages which were comprised within the larger groups of 500 and 2000 respectively.65 The districts were ruled by officers called mahāśāmmanṭādhīpati and the like, whose office was sometimes shared by their wives.66

In the Kannada tract under Chālukya rule, the local administration was somewhat more complex. We hear of administrative
administrative organisation

divisions with numeral endings varying from 32,000, 12,000, etc. through 3,000, 2,000, 1,000, etc. to 500, 300, etc. Reference is also made to kampanas (counties) of 20 and 30 comprised in a group of 500. In one instance five towns are said to be included in a group of 140. Elsewhere, in complete disregard of the system of numeral endings, we are introduced to a number of nādos included in two desas. The larger administrative divisions were governed by Princes, high officials (like dāganṭāyakas) and feudatories. Frequently the governors of the larger divisions also held charge of smaller divisions of 500, 300, etc. or of groups of towns, or even of special departments of taxation. Sometimes they held additional appointments like mahāpradhāna, ‘President of the Intendants’, ‘Steward of the Household,’ ‘Provincial Registrar,’ and ‘Minister of peace and war.’ The smaller divisions were often governed by officials such as prabhus, nāl-gāruḍas, and dāganṭāyakas, or else by feudatories. Sometimes they held charge of two groups of 300 and 70, of two desas and the like. In one remarkable instance a nādu is found to be governed jointly by a dāganṭātha and a mahāpradhāna. This would suggest a division of civil and military command in the district administration.

The administration of the provincial governors and district officers in the Kennyā area was modelled on that of the central government. The governors had under them officers called mahāprachandadāganṭāyaka (great august general), sandhivigrahadhikāra (minister of peace and war) and the like, who often had the additional offices of mahāpradhāna (chief minister), steward of the royal household and so forth. A Chāluqya Princess Akkadevi, while governing three groups of 60, 70, and 140, had under her a council of seven ministers comprising the niīga-pergagale (steward of the household), the two tantrapalas (councillors), a pradhāna (minister), an aśīya (meaning unknown), a steward of the betel-bag and a secretary to the council. Under the same administration we find ministers of State (pradhāna) along with the nāde-pergagale, the secretary, and the chief justice (dāhmādyakshas) joining together in granting statutory constitution to a temple. The constitution was renewed four years later by the administrative officials (karaṇas), headed by the steward (pergagale). There were, besides, separate officers charged with the administration of different branches of taxation. Not only the nāl-gāruḍas, but also the taxation officers, had the right of assigning portions of the revenue for pious objects. The officer in charge of groups of 500 and the like had the right of assigning towns for the same purpose.
A remarkable feature of local administration of the Chalukyas is the frequent appointment of ladies to the governorships of provinces and minor administrative divisions. We have an instance of a Chalukya Queen administering a group of 12,000. During the period from Saka 937 to 976 the Princess Akkadevi governed a group of 70 which were afterwards added groups of 60 and 140. What is more, she governed for some time a province of 12000 along with a mahāmaṇḍalāśeṇa. Another Chalukya Princess governed in company with her husband a province of 12000 along with smaller tracts in A.D. 1125, while in the next year she herself governed a division of 900 along with other groups. The high official status of the wives of governors also appears in some recorded examples. Thus we find a petition being addressed through a mahāmaṇḍalāśeṇa and his wife to the Emperor for grant of an estate. In another record the wife of a governor herself grants lands to a temple.

In the Kannada tract the towns and villages often enjoyed a corporate constitution. The Chalukya records repeatedly introduce us to assemblies of mahājana consisting of 1000, 200, 104, and the like. We have a peculiar instance of a town having a larger assembly of 1000 mahājana along with a smaller assembly of 100. Ordinarily the assemblies had at their head officers called ur-oc eya (mayor), gāruḍa (sheriff) or perrgade (steward). But there are instances of a single village having as many as three gāruḍas at its head, of towns being in charge of a committee of 30, and of six gāruḍas and eight sett his controlling the affairs of a town for no less than 74 years (Saka 932-1006). An interesting record shows how a town enjoyed a statutory constitution guaranteed by official charter. From this document we learn how 8 sett his and 90 households, representing a town, obtained from the local council of ministers and administrators, headed by the county-sheriff, a renewal of their corporate regulations, in so far as they had broken down owing to the calamities of the Chola invasion. These regulations were concerned with taxes and penalties for various offences that were payable by the townspeople. A comparison with the similar charter of A.D. 725 granted by Prince Vikramaditya of the earlier Chalukya dynasty, to which reference has been made above, perhaps may be taken to prove the greater extent of administrative decentralisation under the later dynasty.

The Chalukya records also give us glimpses into the functions of these local bodies. The queens, the high officials and private individuals, when making permanent endowments in favour of temples, frequently appointed the ur-oc eyas (or the gāruḍas), the committee in charge of the towns, or the assembly of mahājana, to be trustees.
for their charities. Again, the ur-dvajas (or the gana-gajas) and the assemblies sometimes sold or donated lands (evidently owned by themselves) to private individuals.

Like other imperial dynasties of ancient India, the Chalukyas of Kalyana wisely allowed a number of feudatories to enjoy a limited autonomy under the suzerainty of the paramount power. The great feudatory families like the Kadambas of Hangal, the Sindas of Sindavadi and the Silaharas of Northern Konkan bore the title of king or mahamandalesvara, or both. They had a staff of officials similar to that of the paramount power. Frequently they allowed the combination of different offices in the same hands. Thus a twelfth century record of a Sinda chief refers to an officer bearing the titles of saravdhikari (general officer, or perhaps chief minister), mantrichayamuni (crest-jewel of ministers), mahaprathama (high minister) and bearer of the betel-bag. Definite reference is made to a council of ministers in a record of a feudatory Chalukya chief belonging to A.D. 1079. In this council were included, among others, an amatyakesari (chief minister), a sanyastra, a parabala (military commander), an amatyag (minister) and the amatyag of two Queens.

In the record just mentioned the reference to the amatyag of queens suggests that the wives of feudatories held administrative posts under them. We have records of Kadamba chiefs who ruled jointly with their Queens. The feudatories often had sub-feudatories holding seignories (manneyas) under them, this last being sometimes in possession of the same family for several generations. The feudatories and even the holders of manneyas had sufficient freedom to freely assign lands on their own authority.

2. The Cholas

The administration of the Imperial Cholas from the time of RajaRaja I (A.D. 985-1014) onwards was a continuation of that of their predecessors with the added magnificence derived from their political greatness. It is a sign of their increased dignity that the Cholas assumed such high-sounding titles as ‘Chakravartigal’ and ‘Emperor of the three worlds.’ We even find temples being raised over the mortal remains of kings and princes, and images of kings and queens being set up in temples for worship. Though the Cholas do not seem to have possessed a regular council of ministers they had a body of executive officers (udan-kurta) in immediate attendance on their persons. These last may have served as liaison officers between the king and the bureaucracy. The Chola officials enjoyed distinctive titles which practically marked them off as a separate order of nobles. Even the higher and lower grades of the service were distinguished by similar titles. We have observed elsewhere
the composite administrative machinery and the complex official procedure involved in the royal grant of lands in the time of Raja-rāja I. A record of Virarājendra, ordering certain contributions paid by a village to be chargeable thenceforth on the public revenues, illustrates the same complex process. The king’s oral order was first committed to writing by a Secretary and then signed by three Chief Secretaries. It was then ordered to be entered in the Accounts by three authorising officers and was endorsed by 38 officers belonging to the department of royal attendants (udankaṭṭam) and the department of officers issuing permits and arbitrations. This was followed by a meeting of thirty-two officers of the Accounts department, when four authorised the entry, one read the order, one made the entry, and one issued the revised account.

We have a record of two great ministers of Rājadhirāja II. One of them first helped to secure the succession of the young king after the death of his predecessor. Then the minister distinguished himself in a campaign against the Sinhalese invaders allied with a claimant to the Pāṇḍya throne. Finally, applying himself to the task of administration he appointed persons (as we are told) capable of bearing the burden of government after his death. The other minister won a great victory over the Pāṇḍya king who had treacherously allied himself with the Sinhalese invaders against the Chola sovereign.

In the later Chola period the village assemblies continued to function on the whole as in the earlier period. Two inscriptions of A.D. 1185 and 1190 supply us with instances of Chola kings laying down, on the initiative of the State officials, rules for the election of the executive by the village assemblies. But other records belonging to A.D. 1232 and 1233 prove that the village assemblies could frame rules as before, regarding the meetings and qualifications of their executive. We have an unusually interesting record of A.D. 1225 which mentions a series of decisions by the mīlaparishat of a temple on the question of election of the executive body of an assembly and its management of the village revenues. This seems to suggest that the village-mahasabhā, failing to reach satisfactory decision on matters vitally affecting its activities, sought the assistance of another local authority.

3. The Yādavas

The administration of the Yādavas of Devagiri was substantially a continuation of that of their Chāluṅka predecessors in the sovereignty of the Deccan. From the time of Bhilamā (A.D. 1135-1193) the kings assumed the title of mahārājādhirāja, sometimes with
the addition of the other titles. Among their chief officers are 
mentioned the mahāpradhāṇa, the senāpati, the āṇḍānāyaka and so 
forth. The Yādavas seem to have introduced a new nomenclature 
(desas sub-divided into khampānakas) for their administrative divi­
sions in the Marāṭhā country. But the old numeral endings (12000, 
140, etc.) were continued in the Kannada area. Like their Chālukya 
predecessors, the Yādavas had feudatories and lords of manneja 
(Seignories) under them. We have an interesting record illustrating 
the attempt of the paramount power to bring the holder of a manneja under control. It tells us how, while the manneja was 
being held by a mahāmanejaśeśvara, a special commission was ap­
pointed by the central government for its administration.

4. The Hoysalas

We now turn to the administration of the Hoysalas of Dura-
samudra who became the leading power in the Mysore region after 
the downfall of the Chalukyas of Kalyāṇa. The Hoysalas at first 
were content with the feudatory title of mahāmanejaśeśvara, indicat­
ing submission to the Chalukya paramount power. But Vīra Balīśa II 
assumed the full imperial titles of his Chalukya predecessors, namely, 
samastabhuvaṇāśraya (refuge of the whole world), śīpitrītīvatallabhā (favourite of fortune and the earth), mahārājā-
dhīrāja, paramēsvara, and so forth. Among the high officers of State 
under the Hoysalas are mentioned the mahāpradhāṇa, the sarvādhi-
kāri, the senāpati, the āṇḍānāyaka, and the mahāprachānādaṇḍa-
āyaka. We have frequent instances of the combination of different 
offices under the same officer, e.g. of mahāpradhāṇa and āṇḍānāyaka, 
of mahāpradhāṇa and sarvādhi-kāri and so forth. We hear of two 
groups of 70 being governed by a mahāpradhāṇa senāpati āṇḍā-
āyaka and of a district (nāḍ) being ruled by the samastasenaśeśi-pati 
of a mahāpradhāṇa. The village assemblies under the Hoysalas 
retained their old functions. We have instances of a village mehā-
sabhā (assembly) receiving gifts of money for providing worship in 
a temple out of the resulting interest, and of village mahājaivas 
receiving another village tax-free. The village assembly enjoyed its 
own revenues and owned its own lands. We hear of the mahājaivas 
of a village granting certain customs duties for the benefit of a 
temple, and of these, along with certain gāremus and prabhikus, 
granting lands to a temple. We have an interesting reference to a 
judicial trial by a collective body of villages in a record which says 
that when a dispute arose about the boundary of a field, men of 
nine nāḍus assembled together and gave their decision after examina­
tion of the boundaries.
5. The Pāṇḍyas

The administration of the later Pāṇḍyas, who became the leading power in Southern India in the thirteenth century A.D., followed the same general lines as that of their Chola predecessors. The greatest Pāṇḍya king, Jatavarman Sundara Pāṇḍya (acc. A.D. 1251), assumed the titles of mahārājaḥātra, paramēśvara and so forth. A peculiarity of the later Pāṇḍya administration was the institution of joint rulers (or "co-regents"), which is specially noted by the contemporary foreign observers. Among the high officials of the Pāṇḍya State is mentioned the Prime Minister who received grants of land that were purely personal. We have good reason to believe that there existed under the later Pāṇḍyas an elaborate official procedure for the royal grant of revenue-free lands to Brāhmaṇas and temples. Justice in the Pāṇḍya kingdom was administered in the first instance by village assemblies and other local authorities. Only in case of their failure were the disputes carried to the king’s officers, or, in the extreme cases, to the king himself. The village assemblies continued to function as in the earlier times. Mention is made of a committee of justice in one village and of an executive committee in another. We have also a record of a village assembly buying a plot of land and letting it out on permanent lease at a fixed rental. There is a remarkable instance of collective action on the part of the people of eighteen provinces (rīṣhṣaṇgas) who assembled together and made an agreement to collect funds for the building of a temple.

1. Kānda XI. For the Śruti works in the above list we have followed the chronology of Kane. Hemachandra was a contemporary of Kumārśāpa of Gujarat (above, pp. 76-8).

2. On Yājñavalkya, I. 368.

3. VII. 1.

4. The keen interest displayed by the Śruti commentators of this period on the subject of incidence of kingly duties is perhaps to be explained by the then current political situation. It seems probable that the upheaval of the Muslim invasions of Northern India gave the opportunity to provincial and district officers, not always of the Kshatriya caste, to assert their authority in various parts of the country. The question of status of such persons could not but be a matter of practical interest to the Hindu jurists of the time. (The view put forward in the present place is somewhat different from that presented for the first time in the author’s work A History of Hindu Political Theories, p. 186).

5. For the passages of Gopala’s Kṣṇaprapāna mentioned above, see quotations in Chandesvarā’s Rājajitāntā, 3 and 85.


7. I. 8-17.


9. The standard Edition of Gustav Oppert has been followed. (The Śrutiṣṭiṣṭra was first edited by Gustav Oppert (Madras, 1882) and has been translated by B. K. Sarkar in S. B. H. series. Oppert regarded it as an early work, belonging to the period of the "Śruti and the early epic literature" (preface, p. viii).
ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANISATION

Others have referred it to Gupta period (Dr. Szymal Pandya—Andra ki Raje-wati (in Hindi), Lucknow, 2009 V. S. Ch. IX). On the other hand, modern scholars generally regard it as of a late date (KhDS, I. 116). According to Keith, it “is a work of quite late date which mentions the use of gunpowder and is of no value whatever as evidence for early Indian usage or philosophy” (HSL. 464). Dr. U. N. Ghoshal, the author of this chapter, regards it as a work of the early medieval period and has discussed this question in his forthcoming work, A History of Indian political Ideas—The Ancient period and the period of transition to the Middle Ages (Ch. XXVIII).

While it is obvious from the detailed reference to fire-arms that the Sukranitiyoga did not assume its present shape till after the sixteenth century A.D. it is difficult to believe that the whole work was conceived at such a late date. It may be regarded as almost certain that some portions of it were much older though it is difficult to distinguish them. It appears to be somewhat incongruous to ignore it altogether in the discussion of political theories during the Hindu period. Reference has, therefore, been made in this chapter only to the political theories which reflect the general spirit of the writers on polity of the Hindu period.—Editor.

11. Chapter III.
12. I. 1-12.
14. I. 45-47.
15. L. 29.
16. I. 122.
17. IV. 3-3.
18. I. 78.
19. I. 21-25. 60.
20. XII. 76. 6-25.
22. I. 96.
23. II. 212.
24. II. 231.
25. III. 50.
26. I. 121.
28. I. 188.
29. I. 170.
30. I. 8-47.
32. IV. 1. 103-33.
33. XII. 79. 15-20.
34. III. 48-49.
35. III. 45-46; IV. 1.1.3.
36. II. 274-75.
37. EI, XI. 142; XII. 210; XXI. 95. For the significance of the above titles see E. J. Rapson’s paper in Woolner Commemoration Volume. Less satisfactory is the explanation of R. S. Tripathi, History of Kanauj, 338, namely, that they signify various classes of feudatories, or else stand for lordship over three branches of the army.
38. EI, II. 175; XXI. 163.
40. EI, XXI. 95.
41. EI, XI. 142; XII. 20.
42. EI, II. 175.
43. EI, XXI. 95.
44. EI, XXV. 5.
45. EI, XVI. 271.
46. EI, XVI. 13. 274.
47. I. A. VI. 191; EI. X. 76.
49. EI. X. 5; XIX. 283.
50. EI. V. 117.
51. EI. IV. 138.
52. EI. XI. 22; XIV. 196. 197.
53. EI. XIV. 139; XV. 282.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

54. EI, XII. 6; XIV. 156, 161; XV. 282.
55. For the administrative system of the Senas, cf. B. C. Sen, Some Historical Aspects of the Inscriptions of Bengal (Part III), and HIR, 280-83 and 287-88.
56. See above, pp. 81-89.
57. IA, XLIII. 60.
58. EI, XI. 39.
59. EI, XII. 274, 334.
60. EI, XV. 27.
61. EI, XII. 274.
62. EI, XV. 350.
63. EI, XIII. 41.
64. EI, XII. 283, 313.
65. EI, XV. 27.
66. EI, XVI. 37, 70.
67. EI, XV. 355.
68. EI, XVI. 338.
69. EI, XV. 94, 331; XVI. 28, 32, 46.
70. EI, XVI. 74, 77.
71. EI, XV. 92; XVI. 37, 54, 77, 330.
72. EI, XVI. 37.
73. EI, XVI. 28, 32, 54, 79, 330.
74. EI, XV. 78.
75. EI, XV. 82.
76. EI, XVI. 22, 37, 77.
77. EI, XVI. 37.
78. EI, XVI. 338.
79. EI, XV. 70, 92; XVI. 77.
80. EI, XIII. 301, 320.
81. EI, XV. 27.
82. EI, XV. 351.
83. EI, XV. 336; XIX. 218f, 232.
84. EI, XVIII. 171.
85. EI, XV. 335.
86. EI, XVI. 3.
87. EI, XV. 76-100.
88. EI, XV. 78.
89. EI, XIII. 61; XV. 95, 100, 336; XVI. 3, 28, 67, 70; XVIII. 8; XIX. 218f, 232.
90. EI, XVI. 28; XVIII. 171.
91. EI, XIX. 210.
92. EI, XVIII. 185.
93. A. S. Altekar takes (EI, XVIII. 188f.) panchapatra as the above to mean 'a body of five ministers.' But see the remarks of the Editor, EI, loc. cit.
94. EI, XIII. 170; XVII. 18.
95. EI, XVI. 37; XIX. 180.
96. Ibid.
97. EI, XXI. 239.
98. EI, XXI. 188.
99. For a detailed account, cf. above, Ch. X, Section II.
100. For the full account see K. A. N. Sastri, The Celas, Chs. XVI, XVII.
101. EI, XXV. 733.
102. EI, XIX. 194.
103. M.A.R. 1932, No. 46; 1946, No. 9, 29, 33.
106. Cf. the observations of Marco Polo (Yule and Cordier, Travels of Marco Polo, 370-371), Wassaf (HIED, III. 32.) and the Sinhalese Mahāvīhaṇa (XC). See also Ch. XI.
107. EI, XII. 46.
108. The above is based upon the account in K. A. Nilakanta Sastri, The Pāñḍya Kingdom, 215f.
CHAPTER XIV

LA W AND LEGAL INSTITUTIONS

I. NORTH INDIA

The period under review was marked by a vigorous development of the juristic activity that had characterised the preceding epoch. Among the legal authorities to whom this development is traceable two stand out conspicuously from the rest. These are Jimūtvāhāna, the famous author of the Dayabhāga Digest, and Vijñāneśvara, the eminent commentator on Yājñavalkya-smriti, who became the foremost representatives of the two great schools of Hindu law still extant. With Jimūtvāhāna we may join together Kullūka and Govindarāja, well-known commentators on Manu-smriti, as well as the two authors of Digests, namely Dharesvara and Lakshmīdhara, as they all belonged to Northern India. We may similarly associate with Vijñāneśvara, as natives of South India, Aparārka, the commentator on Yājñavalkya-smriti, and Devaṇṇabhata, the author of a well-known Digest.¹

Before considering the works of Jimūtvāhāna we may pause to cast a glance at the views of his immediate predecessors. One of these, Jitendriya, declares that whatever is acquired by a person without the means or materials jointly owned by the members of his family is his exclusive property. On the law of inheritance he says that the widow shall succeed to the property of her deceased husband, whether he was separated or was a member of the joint family at the time of his death. He also lays down that the daughter's son shall succeed immediately after the daughter. We may next quote the views of two somewhat obscure authors, namely, Bālaka and Yogloka, on a vexed question of the law of prescription. They hold, along with Śrīkara, that adverse possession of immovables for twenty years and movables for ten years with the owner being present but taking no steps to assert his right, entailed loss of title.²

The Vyavahāramātrikā of Jimūtvāhāna covers within its purview a wide range of topics bearing on legal procedure and positive law. Such are the constitution of the court of justice, the grades of courts, the four stages of judicial proceedings, arrest before trial, the role of agents (or representatives), sureties for satisfaction of judgment, the order of hearing of suitors, the amendment of the
plaint, its defects, and the time allowed for filing the same, the four kinds of reply and the defects thereof, and above all, and in a special measure, the kinds of proof (namely, witnesses, documents and possession). Of the eighteen titles of law, says the author, fourteen are concerned with 'wealth,' and the remaining four have their roots in hiina (injury). This evidently corresponds to the division between civil and criminal law. Judicial proceeding, according to the author, shall be conducted without violation of dharmastra and arthastra; where these are at variance, the former is to be preferred to the latter: where the dharmastras themselves are at variance, popular usage (which is identified with reason) is to be observed. The sabhysa who are guilty of giving unjust decision, of taking bribes and so forth, are to be banished. Similarly a judge or a sabhya speaking secretly to a plaintiff or a defendant on a case under trial is to be punished. While disputes of son with father, of pupil with preceptor, of slave with master and the like, are not to be entertained, serious offences must be taken cognisance of by the king: such are the cases of the preceptor inflicting improper punishment upon the pupil, of a father intending to waste his property on women and the like, or to sell or give away his only son, of a husband intending to sell his virtuous wife, or a master desiring to sell his obedient slave. Among the kinds of proof, namely, possession, documents, witnesses, and inference from examination of the parties, each preceding one is more important than the one immediately following: where even inference is wanting, recourse should be had to ordeal. Possession for three generations must not be disturbed, provided it was not simultaneous but successive.

The Dvayabhaga of Jimutavahana deals authoritatively with many points of the law of ownership, partition and inheritance, that had long continued to agitate the minds of the Smriti writers. Dealing with the concept of ownership, Jimutavahana ranges himself on the side of the school that held svatva (ownership) to be exclusively indicated by the Siisttras, and not based upon popular recognition. This view represents the dogmatic standpoint that the Sastras do not merely summarise modes of acquiring ownership known to popular usage, but that popular usage on the contrary follows Sastric rules laying down conditions for the acquisition of ownership. In the second place, ownership, according to Jimutavahana, implies absolute competence of the owner to dispose of his property at his will. Illustrating this point Jimutavahana says that alienation of property by a father without the consent of his sons, though forbidden by some texts, is not invalid. For, as the author says, this alienation is operative by reason of ownership
which is inherent in the father to the exclusion of his sons, and “a fact cannot be altered by a hundred texts.”

Jimūtavāhana’s views on the law of transfer of ownership are equally important. Sōtre (ownership), he says, is created by mere gift on the part of the donor and it need not depend upon acceptance by the donee. But property becomes capable of enjoyment when it is accepted by the donee and not before. According to this view, therefore, though property is transferred to the donee by the mere act of the donor, it is liable to be defeated by a refusal of the donee to accept the gift or else to be perfected by his acceptance thereof.4

The central theme of Jimūtavāhana’s work is concerned with his law of partition and inheritance. He defines ḍāya as wealth in which ownership dependent upon relationship to the last owner arises on cessation of his ownership thereof. In other words, ownership even in the case of sons arises only after death of the father or on his becoming patita or samnyāsin.5 Connected with the above is Jimūtavāhana’s view of partition (vibhāga). According to him it “consists in manifesting or particularising by the casting of lots or otherwise a property which has arisen in lands or chattels, but which extended only to a portion of them and which was previously unascertained, being unfit for exclusive appropriation, because no evidence of any ground of discrimination existed.” In other words, before partition none of the parties can say that he is the owner of the whole, and there is nothing to show that a particular portion of a property is his. Partition makes this ownership definite by throwing an indicative sign on a certain portion of the property in question.6

A cardinal feature of the rule of succession in Jimūtavāhana is the principle of spiritual benefit conferred by the heir, which is based principally upon a famous text of Manu.7 This passage is thus translated by Bühler: “To three (ancestors) water must be offered, to three the funeral cake is given, the fourth (descendant is) the giver of these (oblations), the fifth has no connection (with them). Always to that (relative within three degrees) who is nearest to the (deceased) sapārpa the estate shall belong; afterwards a sakulya shall be (the heir, then) the spiritual teacher of the pupil.” Basing his order of succession on the high authority just quoted, Jimūtavāhana says that a kinsman belonging to the family of the deceased but of different male descent, like his own daughter’s son or his father’s daughter’s son, or belonging to a different family like his maternal uncle, is a sapārpa, as they are allied together by presenting offerings to the three ancestors in

S.E.—19
the paternal and the maternal line. In the result "the bandhus (daughter's son and other cognates) are sifted in and out among the agnates, heirs in the female line frequently taking before very near sapindas in the male line on the principle of superior religious efficacy".3

Unlike Vijnanesvara Jimutavahana defines stridhana in a strictly technical sense to mean that which a woman is entitled to give, sell or enjoy independently of her husband. Differing likewise from Vijnanesvara Jimutavahana fixes his rule of succession to a woman's stridhana, and declares that such property devolves equally upon the sons and the unmarried daughter.

We shall next consider the fragments of the Smriti work of Dharesvara which have been preserved in quotations by later writers. On the old question whether ownership was deducible from the Sistras alone, or else was a matter of worldly recognition, Dharesvara decides in favour of the former alternative. Connected with the above is his view that the sons have no ownership in the father's property while the father is alive, and that this ownership is acquired by them for the first time after partition. Dealing with the law of partition, Dharesvara says in agreement with Vijnanesvara that the father has no right to give unequal shares to his sons in ancestral property divided by him in his life-time. As regards the law of succession, Dharesvara gives only a grudging recognition to the rights of the widow. For he says that the widow is entitled to inherit her husband's property, provided he was separated at the time of his death and she herself is willing to raise up issue to him. Similarly he observes that the father's mother shall take the property in preference to the father, "because wealth taken up by the father may go even to sons dissimilar in class, but what is inherited by the paternal grandmother goes to such only as appertained to the same class." On both the points last quoted Vijnanesvara expresses his dissent from Dharesvara. On the other hand Dharesvara's view allowing the daughter's son to succeed immediately after the daughter agrees completely with that of Vijnanesvara.9

II. SOUTH INDIA

We may begin our survey of the great jurist Vijnanesvara with an analysis of his views on the constitution of the court of justice. Referring to the members of the king's court Vijnanesvara says 10 that the learned Brhmanas play only a subordinate role, so that in the event of default in the investigation or of false decision, the guilt lies not with them but with the king. Amplity-
ing this point, he observes\(^\text{11}\) that unlike sabhyas who are appointed by the king, the Brāhmaṇas are not so appointed, so that while the sabhyas incur blame if they fail to dissuade the king from acting unjustly, the Brāhmaṇas incur sin only if they speak a falsehood or do not speak at all. In the same context Vījñāneśvara quotes Kātyāyana’s authority for the association of a few merchants with the court, adding that this is necessary for the satisfaction of the people. Again, while he desires the sabhyas to be selected only from the Brāhmaṇa caste, he is equally clear\(^\text{12}\) that the sabhyas, by virtue of their Brāhmaṇa birth, are not exempted from the penalty of a double fine for a wilfully unjust decision. Lastly, while referring to the grades of courts, Vījñāneśvara\(^\text{13}\) observes that each of them (kula, śrēṣṭi, pūga, ‘an authorised person’, and the king) is entitled to hear appeals from the one immediately preceding, but not vice versa.

As regards the branch of judicial procedure Vījñāneśvara\(^\text{14}\) says that the plaint shall be written twice, one at the time of the first complaint when the cause of action alone is written, and again, in the presence of the defendant, when the year, the month and other particulars are to be recorded. This specification of the year and the month, we are further told, is essential in trials concerning deposits and pledges, gifts, and sales, while that of the country, place, etc., would apply only to transactions concerning immovables. Revision and correction of the plaint, Vījñāneśvara adds, may be made only while the defendant’s answer has not yet been filed, and not thereafter, for “otherwise there would be the risk of the proceeding never coming to an end.” As regards subsequent changes in the plaint Vījñāneśvara\(^\text{15}\) says that in suits relating to property or title the plaintiff becomes thereby liable to punishment but does not lose his suit, while in disputes arising out of acts of violence the plaintiff further loses his claim if he makes a false statement.

On the much discussed question of the origin of ownership Vījñāneśvara’s views are eminently sane and reasonable. To begin with, he contradicts with a great wealth of argument the statement that ownership is deducible from the Śāstras alone (śāstraikasamadhyamya). His own conclusion is that it is understood from worldly transactions (laukika). This view brings Vījñāneśvara into line not only with the famous authors of Digests like Mitramiśra, but also with the renowned authorities on Mimamsā like Prabhākara, Kumārila, and Pārthasārathi Miśra.\(^\text{16}\) Connected with the above is Vījñāneśvara’s view on the vexed question, whether ownership arises on partition, or partition takes place of that which already belonged to one’s own self. In deciding in favour
of the latter alternative, Vaiśānaka relies partly on the argument that the son's ownership by birth is well known to people.

On the subject of transfer of ownership Vaiśānaka makes some striking comments. Gift, he says, means transfer of ownership from one to another "if the other accepts it as his own and not otherwise." This view, differing completely from that of Jīmūtavāhana quoted above, evidently means that ownership is transferred to the donee only with acceptance. Now acceptance, according to Vaiśānaka, is of three kinds, namely, mental, verbal and physical. In the case of movable property all the three kinds of acceptance may take place at the same time. But where immovable property is concerned, complete physical acceptance, involving enjoyment of its profits, cannot take place all at once. Hence, says Vaiśānaka, acceptance of land, etc. shall be by possession for however short a time, otherwise a gift or a sale does not become complete. To put the above in technical language, "delivery of possession is not absolutely essential to constitute a valid gift, but a gift unaccompanied by possession is of a very risky kind, because in case of conflict between two apparent titles, in the absence of any evidence to the contrary, that which is accompanied by possession must prevail."18

The topic of possession as the basis of title forms in Vaiśānaka the basis of some important remarks. Explaining Yājñavalkya he observes:— "In case of possession within memory, it has evidentiary value only when it co-exists with the means of knowledge of title . . . In case of immemorial possession, however, long-continued possession is itself evidence of ownership, independently of the knowledge of title because in that case there is an absolute absence of the means by which want of knowledge of the origin or title is accounted for."19 In other words, "under ordinary circumstances mere possession does not exclude an enquiry into the title, for possession may be with one person and title with another . . . . It is only when the origin of possession is lost in obscurity by reason of its having commenced beyond living human recollection that enquiry into the question of title is superseded, and possession standing alone is justified, for in such a case the presumption is that possession as a matter of fact followed the title."20

We may consider in this connection Vaiśānaka's view on the effect of adverse possession upon the title. According to a famous text of Yājñavalkya, he who sees his land enjoyed by another for twenty years or his money for ten years without asserting his right, loses them. Explaining this verse Vaiśānaka-
 VARA SAYS THAT OMISSION TO ASSERT ONE'S TITLE DOES NOT LEAD TO LOSS OF OWNERSHIP, "NON-PROTEST NOT BEING KNOWN EITHER IN POPULAR USAGE OR IN THE SĀSTRA AS A CAUSE OF EXTINGUISHING OWNERSHIP." SIMILARLY, POSSESSION FOR TWENTY YEARS DOES NOT CONFER TITLE, "BECAUSE POSSESSION IS NOT THE MEANS OF PROOF OF OWNERSHIP." VĪJÑĀNEŚVARA'S OWN CONCLUSION IS THAT THE LOSS REFERRED TO IN THE TEXT MEANS THE LOSS OF PROFIT OF THE LAND AS WELL AS OF THE WEALTH, AND NOT THAT OF THE CORPUS ITSELF OR OF THE RIGHT OF A SUIT AT LAW. IT THEREFORE FOLLOWS THAT "THE OWNER SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED AFTER THE PRESCRIBED PERIOD TO RECOVER THE PROFITS ALREADY APPROPRIATED BY THE PERSON IN POSSESSION, BUT THE TITLE TO THE PROPERTY ITSELF AND THE RIGHT TO RECOVER THE SAME SHALL REMAIN INTEGRAL."23

VĪJÑĀNEŚVARA'S VIEW ON THE SUBJECT OF PARTITION AND INHERITANCE ENTITLES HIM TO BE REGARDED AS THE PRINCIPAL REPRESENTATIVE OF HIS SCHOOL ON THE SUBJECT. INTRODUCING YĀJÑAVALKYA,24 HE DEFINES DĀYA AS WEALTH WHICH BECOMES THE PROPERTY OF ANOTHER SOLELY BY REASON OF HIS RELATIONSHIP TO THE OWNER. COMPARISON WITH THE PARALLEL DEFINITION OF JIMUṬAVĀHANA INDICATES THE FUNDAMENTAL DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE TWO MASTERS. ACCORDING TO JIMUṬAVĀHANA, OWNERSHIP TO A PERSON'S PROPERTY BY VIRTUE OF RELATIONSHIP TO HIM ARISES ONLY WHEN HIS OWN OWNERSHIP COMES TO AN END. ON THE OTHER HAND VĪJÑĀNEŚVARA THINKS THAT CERTAIN RELATIONS ACQUIRE OWNERSHIP AT THE MOMENT OF THEIR BIRTH AND IN FACT BECOME, ALONG WITH THE PREVIOUS OWNERS, CO-OWNERS IN THE SAME PROPERTY. AS REGARDS THE EXTENT OF THE SON'S RIGHT IN THE FATHER'S PROPERTY VĪJÑĀNEŚVARA25 EXPLAINS THAT THIS RIGHT EXTENDS OVER THE WHOLE OF THE FATHER'S PROPERTY WHETHER ANCESTRAL OR SELF-AQUIRED, BUT THE SON CANNOT PREVENT ALIENATION BY THE FATHER EXCEPT IN THE CASE OF ANCESTRAL PROPERTY. WITH THIS MAY BE CONNECTED VĪJÑĀNEŚVARA'S VIEW GIVEN IN ANOTHER CONTEXT,26 THAT UNEQUAL DISTRIBUTION OF PROPERTY BY THE FATHER AMONG HIS SONS IS ALLOWABLE ONLY FOR SELF-AQUIRED, BUT NOT FOR ANCESTRAL PROPERTY. INTRODUCING A TEXT OF YĀJÑAVALKYA QUOTED ABOVE,27 VĪJÑĀNEŚVARA DEFINES PARTITION AS THE "ADJUSTMENT OF DIVERSE RIGHTS REGARDING PROPERTY HELD COLLECTIVELY BY ASSIGNING SEVERALLY (TO INDIVIDUALS) PARTICULAR PORTIONS OF THE AGGREGATE." COMPARISON WITH THE CORRESPONDING DEFINITION OF JIMUṬAVĀHANA GIVEN ABOVE REVEALS AN ESSENTIAL DIFFERENCE IN THE CONCEPTION OF CO-OWNERSHIP BETWEEN THE TWO SCHOOLS. THIS DIFFERENCE IS USUALLY INDICATED BY SAYING THAT "A DĀYABHĀGA CO-PARCENER HOLDS THE PROPERTY IN QUASI-SEVERALTY AS IF HE WERE A TENANT-IN-COMMON, WHEREAS A MITĀKSHARĀ CO-PARCENER HOLDS THE ENTIRE PROPERTY AND EVERY PART OF IT AS IF HE WERE A JOINT TENANT."

BY CONTRAST WITH JIMUṬAVĀHANA, VĪJÑĀNEŚVARA28 BASES HIS RULE OF SUCCESSION MAINLY, THOUGH NOT EXCLUSIVELY, UPON THE PRIN-
principle of propinquity. In the result all agnates (relations through males) are allowed by him to succeed in preference to all cognates (relations through females), the only exception being the daughter’s son who comes just after the daughter and before the parents. As between the claims of the daughters, Vijñāneśvara shows his good sense by preferring the unmarried to the married, and the unprovided to the endowed daughter. The striking originality of Vijñāneśvara’s thought is illustrated by his giving the sonless widow the right to succeed to the whole estate of her husband who had died separate, on the sole condition of her chastity. It is also shown by his allowing (as Vishnū alone among the Śmrītikārās does) the daughter’s son to succeed immediately after the daughter, and before the mother and the father. In the same spirit Vijñāneśvara allows the mother to succeed before the father, “for the father is a common parent to the other sons, but the mother is not so, and since her propinquity is the greatest, it is just that she should take the estate in the first instance.”

As regards strīdhana Vijñāneśvara29 takes it in its etymological non-technical sense to include property acquired by a woman “by inheritance, purchase, partition, seizure or finding.” Equally distinctive is Vijñāneśvara’s rule of succession to the strīdhana. In respect of two kinds of strīdhana called anvidheya and pritidatta (what was obtained by a woman after marriage from the family of her husband or of her parents, and what was given to a woman through affection), daughters are allowed to succeed equally, and on their failure sons are given the succession in the same manner. As regards other kinds of strīdhana such as what was given to a woman before the nuptial fire (adhyagni), the heirs are given in the following order—unmarried daughter, unendowed married daughter, endowed married daughter. In case of the bridal price (sulkā) the heirs are the uterine brethren alone. The strīdhana of a childless woman, married according to the four approved forms, goes to her husband, and that of one married after the four unapproved forms goes to her parents.

Aparārka’s views on various points of law cannot compare in depth or originality with those of Vijñāneśvara, and it will be enough to illustrate them by a few examples. Aparārka takes Yājñavalkya, II, 24, to mean that adverse possession of immovables for twenty years and movables for ten years, with the owner being present but taking no steps to assert his right, definitely extinguishes his title. As regards the law of succession Aparārka prefers the brother to the grandson and the great-grandson on the ground of superior spiritual benefit conferred by the former upon the deceased—a principle which brings him into line with Jimū-
tavâhana. As between the claims of the parents, Aparârka interprets the vague text of Yâjñavalkya\textsuperscript{20} to mean that the father succeeds before the mother—a view just the reverse of Vijnâneśvara's opinion quoted above.

We shall conclude this chapter with a few references to Devanâbhaṭṭa, whose Digest called the Śmṛti-chandrikā takes almost equal, but not the same, rank with Vijnâneśvara's commentary as the leading authority on Hindu Law in South India. Like Vijnâneśvara the author of the Śmṛti-chandrikā assails with numerous arguments the view that ownership is deducible from the Sūtras alone, and he concludes that it is based upon worldly transactions. The same agreement is found in the view of our author that sons acquire by very birth ownership in ancestral property. On the other hand, the Śmṛti-chandrikā expresses its dissent from Vijnâneśvara's view that unequal distribution of property by the father among his sons should not be resorted to as being repugnant to the people. The order of succession in the Śmṛti-chandrikā, again, is somewhat different from that of Vijnâneśvara. It prefers, as between the claims of the daughters, one having sons to one who is sonless, for the former unlike the latter is capable of conferring spiritual benefit upon the deceased. Again, instead of allowing with Vijnâneśvara the mother to succeed before the father, it declares that the father and the mother shall succeed together.\textsuperscript{31}

---

1. The works of Śmrīti authors of this period with their place of origin and approximate dates according to Kane (KHDS., I. 296; IV. x-xi) are given below—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of author</th>
<th>Name of work</th>
<th>Place of origin</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jimūtavāhana</td>
<td>1. Vyavahārasāstra</td>
<td>Bengal</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1100 and 1150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Dīgabhāga</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kullūka</td>
<td>Mārṣṭhānasukrītāvī</td>
<td>Bengal</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1150 and 1300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindarāja</td>
<td>Śmṛti-kā</td>
<td>North India</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1080 and 1130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhāresvara</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Malvā</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1000 and 1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bhoja I, king</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the Paramara</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dynasty of Malvā)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lakṣmīdhara</td>
<td>Kṛigakalpataru, XII</td>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1100 and 1150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Ritajñānakanda)</td>
<td>Ganges Valley</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vijnâneśvara</td>
<td>Mitākṣarā</td>
<td>Mahārāṣṭra</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1090 and 1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aparârka</td>
<td>Śmṛti-vyākhyāna-</td>
<td>Konkan</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1110 and 1130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śāstraḥbandha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devanâbhaṭṭa</td>
<td>Śmṛti-chandrikā</td>
<td>Konkan</td>
<td>Between A.D. 1200 and 1225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gopāla</td>
<td>Kāmaśīthaka</td>
<td></td>
<td>Between A.D. 1000 and 1100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For different views, particularly about the date of Mitākṣarā, cf. Ch. XV, 4 (II) [Ed.].
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

2. For the above passages in Jitendriya, Bāloka and Yoḍolka, see quotations in Dīpakalikā of Jīmūtavahana and Vyaṣṭiḥārāṣṭānī of Raṅguṇandana.


5. It is nevertheless remarkable that Jīmūtavahana does not allow the father, when dividing his property with his sons, to make unequal distribution of the ancestral immovable property, corvody and slaves.

6. The above is based upon the discussion in Kane, Vyaṣṭiḥārāṣṭānīhīkha of Bhāṣya Nilakantha, Notes, 134.

7. IX. 186-7.


9. For the above passages see quotations in Vīrimiṭṭaūgama, 528-536, Vyaṣṭiḥārāṣṭānīhīkha and Mitākṣhara on Yājñavalkya II. 135-136 (J. R. Gharpure's Tr.).


17. On Yājñavalkya II. 27.


20. In the present and following passages the translations from Vijnāneshvara are taken from the work Vijnāneshvara's smṛiti with the commentaries of Mitākṣhara, Vīrimiṭṭaūgama and Dīpakalikā, Vyaṣṭiḥārāṣṭānī, translated by J. R. Gharpure, Bombay, 1937-38.


22. II. 24.


24. II. 114.

25. On Yājñavalkya II. 121.


27. II. 114.


29. On Yājñavalkya II. 143.

30. II. 133-136.

31. For the above references, see Smṛiti-chandrikaḥ, Mysore ed., III, Part II. 601-602, 621, 686 693.
CHAPTER XV

LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

A. SANSKRIT

1. INTRODUCTION

The close of the last period, as we have already seen, witnessed the decline of Sanskrit literature in poetry, drama, and other branches. The literature lost touch with the common man, began to cater for the Pandit and the court, and gradually tended to become a copy-book pattern according to rules of poetics, dramaturgy, etc. There was an ever-widening breach between the languages of the drama and those in everyday life. The highly cultivated poetry meant for the cultured audience, indicating the general prevalence of scholastic learning, showed a wide gulf between literature and the common man. All these characteristics equally marked the period under review.

The break-up of the empires during the previous period saw the rise of small principalities whose rulers encouraged Sanskrit learning. But although the output was thus maintained, the literary productions are all stereotyped and laboured; they lack vigour, inspiration, and originality. They are merely mechanical reproductions of earlier models, without their vitality and living touch. It is an age of scholastic elaboration and systematic analysis, of technical skill and learning, of commentaries and sub-commentaries, and of manuals and sub-manuals. Practically all branches of literature are well represented during this period and their volume is also immense. But there is no life in the whole range of literature. It is imitative, insipid, artificial and labourned, not spontaneous and natural. The creative age was over by the tenth century, and the process of decadence had already set in. No genius or inspired poet or dramatist arose during the period, and there was no originality either in conception or execution.

Muslim incursions can hardly be regarded as responsible for the decadence in Sanskrit literature. For the decadence, as we have seen in the previous volume, had already set in, and the literature may well be said to have come to its natural end. Foreign rule and its attendant disturbances during this period are not known to have actively discouraged literary production, nor affected the 'atmosphere' surrounding the literary craftsmen. In fact, in the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

next period we find a number of Muslim rulers patronising Sanskrit learning. Special interest attaches to the Sandesa-śāsaka, a Sandeśa-kāvya in Apabhraṃśa, composed in the twelfth century by a Muslim, Abdala Rahamāna (Abdul Rahman).

The tightening up of the Śrauta rules and the insular tendency it created contributed not a little to stifle the free spirit. All this resulted in the growth of stereotyped literature. With the loss of contact with the outside world our literature became stagnant and lost freshness of outlook. The general surrounding was uncongenial to the rise of a genius or development of an imaginative spirit, and all writers of the period were mere intellectuals concerned with multiplying according to pattern.

Before making a survey of the different branches of literature, it would be interesting to note some prominent characteristics of this period. In the first place, the large number of royal authors and patrons of learning is striking. Bhoja, Yasāl;tpala, Somesvara, Kulaśekhara, Aparārka, Ravivarman, Prahlādanadeva, Vigrāharāja (Visaladeva), and Ballālasena figure among the crowned men-of-letters who composed poetry, drama, poetics, Dharmaśāstra, etc. Another important feature is the growing number of polymaths, such as Kshemendra, Bhoja, Hemachandra, and Ramachandra. There were also encyclopaedic works like Śrīgārāprakāśa, Mānasollāsa, Kṛtyakalpataru, Chaturvargachintamāni, etc. The contribution of Jain monks, especially to the Kāvya literature, is consider- able. The regional survey indicates that from Kāśmir and Gujarāt comes the bulk of literary contribution, with Bengal and the South coming next.

2. BELLES-LETTRES

I. Kāvya

In common with the other branches of literature, poetry of this period shows lack of originality and independence. It is artificial, unimaginative, and stereotyped, but lofty, cultivated and exclusive. It was apparently composed for an urban and sophisticated audience, and was out of touch with common life and common realities. Tendency to uniformity also rendered poetry of this period a monotonous reading.

(A) Mahākāvya

The only outstanding work of this period is the Naishadha-śārīrī of Śrīhara, son of Śrīhira and Māmalladevi, who probably flourished under Jayachandra and Vijayachandra of Kanauj in the latter half of the twelfth century. The poem, as it exists today,
comprises twenty-two cantos, though tradition makes it run into sixty or even a hundred and twenty cantos, and describes the life of Nala up to his marriage with Damayanti. Indian tradition has recognised the merit of this work by raising it to the status of a Mahākāvya and by placing Śrīharṣa by the side of Kālidāsa, Bhāravi and Māgha. An anecdote is, however, current which is a merciless criticism of this poem. According to it Māmata, the celebrated rhetorician, found Naishadha-charita full of poetic blemishes of all kinds. The poet no doubt shows undue fondness for double entendre and other sound plays, and for this there runs the proverbial expression ‘Naishadham videsadavishadham;’ but these defects should not overshadow the merits of the poem. It is a repository of traditional learning, and a storehouse of literary dexterity. The work “unquestionably has a definite interest in the history of Sanskrit literature, for it exhibits the application to the charming episode of the Mahābhārata, familiar to all students, of the full resources of a master of diction and metre, possessed of a high degree of skill in the difficult art of playing on words, and capable of both delicate observation of nature, and of effective expression of the impressions thence derived.” Twenty different metres are employed, and it is the last masterpiece exhibiting the industry and ingenuity that a Mahakavi is capable of. Śrīharṣa is also credited with the authorship of some other works, among which ranks the Khaṇḍāṇa-khaṇḍākāhyā, a philosophical treatise in support of the standpoint of Śaṅkara.

Kṣhemendra, the eleventh century polymath and court-poet of king Ananta of Kāśmir, gives us the epitomes of the two great epics in his Bhārata-maṇjarī and Rāmāyaṇa-maṇjarī; his Padya-Kādambarī is the metrical rendering of Bāṇa’s masterpiece; the Daśvatāra-charita, which is not strictly a Mahākāvya nor a religious poem, describes the ten incarnations of Viṣṇu. The life of Buddha is told in the ninth canto, in which the Buddha and Krīṣṇa legends have been intermingled. Kṣhemendra, surnamed Vyāsadasa, was the son of Prakāśendra and grandson of Sindhu, and his literary activity extended also to the period of Kālaśa, son and successor of Ananta.

Maṇikha or Maṇikhaka, son of Viśvāvarta, was another Kāśmirian poet of the twelfth century. His brothers, Śrīṅgāra, Bhāsa, and Alānkāra were, like himself, scholars and employed as state officials. His Śrīkaṇṭha-charita narrates, in twenty-five cantos, the destruction of Tripūra by Śiva in the usual epic style. The last canto, however, is of some historical and literary interest. It gives us a glimpse of the way in which compositions of learned scholars found
publicity in those days. The Haracharitachintâmani of Jayadra­tha, belonging to the same century, is not really a Mahâkâvyâ but a Mâhâtmya. It is important only in so far as it embodies some old and new Saïva practices and legends, some of which are direkt­ly connected with places of pilgrimage in Kâshmir. In the same century again Kavirâja wrote his Pârijâtaharaâça describing the removal by Krishna of the heavenly tree from Indra’s garden. Surathotsava of Somevarsa, son of Kumara and Lakshmi and court-poet of Viradhavala and Visaladeva, describes in fifteen cantos the mythi­cal story of Suratha, comprissing his penance in the Hûmâayas and slaying the demons. Because of its allusion to Vastupûla and the account of the poet and his patrons at the end, the Surathotsava has been regarded as a political allegory, but Dr. De demurs to this view. Lolimbâraja, who probably flourished in the eleventh century, but whom Prof. Gode places in the sixteenth century, against the views of Drs. Keith, Krishnamachariar, De and others, relates the early exploits of Krishna up to his slaying Kuñsa in the Harivîlîsa, in five cantos.

Although Slesha (paronomasia) was a favourite figure of speech with Sanskrit poets, regular practice of Slesha-kâvyâ does not seem to have been cultivated before the eleventh century. The device of the Slesha, by which an entire Kâvyâ is made to have a twofold or even threefold significance applicable to totally differ­ent themes, is possible only in Sanskrit on account of its special characteristics. Its pliability and adaptability, flexible and com­plex grammatical forms, multiple meanings of the same words with delicate subtleties, peculiar modes of compounding different words, and the various ways in which compound words or sentences can be split up, render Sanskrit an ideal language for the practice of Slesha-kâvyâ.

With the exception of a single canto in the Kichaka-vadha which is in Slesha, the first sustained instance of a Slesha-kâvyâ is the Râma-charita of Sandhyâkaranandin, which will be dealt with under the 'Historical Kâvyâ.' It describes both the story of Rama and the life of king Râmapûla of Bengal. Dhananâjaya and Kavi­râja, who come next, have each written a Râghava-Pândâvâya in which the stories of the two epics are simultaneously narrated. Dhananâjaya, known as Dhananâjaya Srutakirti, was the son of Vâsudeva and Srîdevi. His Râghava-Pândâvâya or Divanâdhâna, when read from left to right (in the usual way) describes the story of Râma; but while read from right to left it gives the story of the Pândavas. The Râghava-Pândâvâya of Kavirâja, whose personal name was probably Mâdhavabhâtta, and who flourished under
Kadamba Kâmadeva, is better known. It delineates in thirteen cantos the double story of Râghava and the Pârâdâvas. Vidyamâdhava, the court-poet of the Châlukya king Somadeva, evidently Somesvara III (A.D. 1126-1138), similarly describes in his Pârâdvâ-Rukminiya, in nine cantos, the marriages of Siva and Pârvati and of Krishnâ and Rukmini.

This device of handling different tales in the same poem has been very fruitful in later imitations, which develop it further to triple entendre, relating three stories at a time. Hemachandra is reputed to have composed a poem Sûptasandhâna (having seven applications) which is not extant. The highest degree of alternative interpretations is found in the Satârtha-kâvya of Somaprabhâbhâhârya, written about A.D. 1177, in which a single verse is interpreted in a hundred ways!

Some Jain writers have adopted the form and spirit of the Mahâkâvya for presenting the Jain legends in a poetic garb, as also for historical or biographical accounts. Among the Jain epics may be mentioned the Yasodhara-charita of Kanakasena Vâdîrajâ (tenth century) and of Mâoikya Sûrî (eleventh century), the former being the Digambara and the latter the Svetâmbara version of the same narrative. Superior in merit and extent is the Trisha-shtil-salâkapuruśa-charita of Hemachandra (twelfth century) describing in ten cantos the lives of the sixty-three best men according to the Jain belief. To Vâghîrâha of the same period is assigned the Neminirenâ dealing with the life of Neminâtha.

The Jains have made a considerable contribution to the Sanskrit Kâvya during this period, and reference can be made here only to some of the important works. The Kshatrachâhâma of Odeyadeva Vâdibhasînâ, pupil of Pushpasena, treats of the Uttarapûrââga of Jivandhara in eleven chapters, mostly in Śloka metre, and is said to be, in most places, a Sanskrit rendering of the Tamil work Jivakachintâmanâ. Abhayadeva, who received the title of Vâdîsînâ from the king of Kâsî, relates the birth and life of Jayonta in his Jayantavijaya (composed in V.S. 1278, i.e. A.D. 1221) in nineteen cantos. The Pâṇḍava-charita by Maladhârîn Devaprabhâsûri, pupil of Munichandra and tutor of Devânda, describes in eighteen cantos the story of the Mahâbhârata mainly with the object of glorifying virtue. It remodels many details, but hardly rises above the Puranic style. Another epitome of the Mahâbhârata is the Bâlabhârata in nineteen cantos by Amarchandra, a pupil of Jinadatta, who flourished under Vîsaladeva of Gujarât. Abhayachandra appears to have composed several works...
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

on poetics, metrics, and technical sciences. At the request of minister Padma, he wrote the Padmananda Mahākāvya which, though intended to give the lives of all the twenty-three Jinas, describes in nineteen cantos only the life of Rishabha, the first Jina, in an ornate style. Vastupala's Narurājayanandana, which is full of imagery, describes the friendship of Krīṣṇa and Arjuna in eighteen cantos, the abduction and marriage of Subhadra coming at the end. Vastupala was a patron of learning, who patronised Someśvara, Arsiśūla, Harihara and Nānaka. Vastupala's religious teacher Udayaprabha Śūri wrote, in collaboration with Narendraprabha, a Mahākāvya entitled Dharmābhuyudaya or Saṅghādhipati-charita which was composed on the occasion of Vastupala's pilgrimage to the Jain shrines in Western India. Dharmakumāra's Saṅghādhara-charita tells in seven cantos the legend of Saṅghādhara which was already dealt with briefly by Hemaśūri. Amasvāmi-charita by Muniṅratna, a pupil of Samudragupta, describes in melodious verses the life of Amasvāmi in thirty cantos. Munisuvrata-charita is another poem by Muniratna giving the lives of some Śūris of his clan.

These Jain productions possess practically all the regular features of the Kavyas. They deal with the usual Kavya topics and contain elaborate descriptions of nature, seasons, battles, and erotic sports, the last topic, curiously enough, being treated with equal zeal by the Jain monks, including even the pious Hemaśūri.

(B) Shorter Poems

(a) Lyrics

In the direct line of Bhartrihari and Amaru come during this period Bhīmaśūra and Jayadeva. The former has written the Chaurapacekāśika, a small but elegant poem of fifty stanzas describing in a simple style a variety of love scenes. The title of the poem has given rise to various interpretations, some of which involve the author himself in a love intrigue with a princess. The poem itself narrates how a robber, when making love to a princess, was discovered and condemned to death, and as he was being taken to the execution ground, gave expression in these stanzas to the love enjoyed by him with his beloved.

To Bengal goes the credit for having produced in Jayadeva a master of Sanskrit diction who in his Gīta-govinda has attained to very great heights of Sanskrit lyric poetry. He lived in the court of king Lakṣmaṇasena of Bengal (twelfth century) and was a devout worshipper of Krīṣṇa. The poem describes in a very
attractive style the love of Krishna and Radhā. The hero and the heroine are in separation and both long to meet each other; when Krishna presents himself, Radhā feigns anger and pretends reluctance to meet him; but in the end these minor difficulties are smoothed and reconciliation brought about by Radhā's friend. The form of the poem is extremely original and so it has been variously styled as a pastoral (Jones), a lyric drama (Lassen), a melodrama (Pischel), an opera (Levi), and a refined Yātra (von Schroeder). It soon became so popular that it inspired many other works of similar nature. The various stanzas are accompanied by indications as regards the tāla and rāga. Still the work is a blending of the stanzas that are to be recited and those to be sung. Jayadeva's style, despite the occasional use of long compounds, is very simple. His poetry is the best specimen in the whole of Sanskrit literature of complete harmony in sound and sense. "It has all the perfection of the miniature word-pictures which are so common in Sanskrit poetry, with the beauty which arises, as Aristotle asserts, from magnitude and arrangement. All the sides of love, save that of utter despair and final separation, are brilliantly described; all the emotions of longing, of awakened hope, of disappointment, of hot anger against the unfaithful one, of reconciliation, are portrayed by the actors themselves or Radhā's friend in songs which are perfect in material form and display at its highest point the sheer beauty of words of which Sanskrit is pre-eminently capable."

A contemporary of Jayadeva was Govardhana whose Āryāsaptasati is a collection of seven hundred erotic stanzas in the Āryā metre. Govardhana seems to have used Hāla's Sattasai, a Prakrit poem, for his model. The stanzas are arranged in an alphabetical order and the scenes depicted lack the variety of Hāla's poem. Bhikṣāhārana by Utpreshvāllabha (before fourteenth century) is more an erotic than a religious poem, while his Sundarisataka in Āryā metre, composed at the request of king Madanadeva, eulogises the beauty of the female form in a highly artistic style.

The Meghdāta of Kālidāsa was responsible for the production of numerous Dūta-Kāvyas in this epoch of imitations and counterfeits. These show innumerable variations in the form and motif which have been utilized in different ways and for different purposes. Notable among them is the Pavanādīta of Dhyoi, in which princess Kuvalayavatī, a Gandharva maiden of the Malaya hills, sends the wind as a messenger to king Lakṣmanaśeṇa of Bengal.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(b) Devotional Poems

Erotic poetry is closely associated with the devotional and didactic poetry of this period, as Śṛiṇāgāra (Love), Nīti (Wisdom), and Vairāgya (Renunciation), though differentiated in commonsense and poetics, are often found to intermingle. The trio goes hand in hand—the lover, the moralist, and the devotee each adding a zest and piquancy to the other. The devotional poetry of the period is found in two different strands, which occasionally blend, but do not stand in any constant relation. In contrast to the Stotra literature of a descriptive or philosophical character, there are highly impassioned devotional poems which pass through the whole gamut of erotic motif, imagery and expression.

The majority of the Vedantic stotras, Kāshmirian Śaivite poems, South-Indian Vaiṣṇava and Saiva panegyrics of deities, Bengal Tantrik and Vaiṣṇava glorifications, as well as the Jain and Buddhist Mahāyāna hymns owe their inspiration to the various religious tendencies of the period. The literary stotra-kāvyas either give a highly sensuous account of the amorous adventures of the deities, or describe elaborately their physical charms. The erotic element has been carried to an excess by Lakṣmīnāṭa Achārya who describes the breasts of Śrī Rāma in fifty verses in his Ādhisānti-kūcā-paṇčāsīkā. The Bhaktisatka of Rāmacandra Kavi Bāhmaṇḍa of Bengal, who went to Ceylon about A.D. 1245 during the reign of king Pārākrama Bahu II and became a Buddhist, is interesting as an example of the application of Hindu ideas of Bhakti (devotion) to an extravagant eulogy of Buddha in the regular kāvyā style and diction. The Jain poets, besides eulogising individual saints or Jains, extol all the twenty-four Jinas, in stotras known as Chaturvīṃśati Jinastūti or Chaturvīṃśikā.

(c) Didactic and Satiric Poems

The traditional form of śataka is generally used in the didactic poetry like the erotic and devotional. Sambhu wrote in the eleventh century his Anyokttimuktātātātātātātātakā, a collection of 108 stanzas. The Drishtiintiṣaṭātaka of Kusumadeva is more simple. It derives its title from the fact that every stanza illustrates a particular maxim. Kāshmirian Śilhaṇḍa, perhaps to be identified with the famous Śilhaṇḍa, wrote his Śaṁtiṣaṭātaka in the twelfth century. Still later is the Bhātasaṭātaka of king Nāgarāja of the Tāka family, or of his protégé Bhāva. The Upadeśaṣṭātaka of Gūmāṇi moralises on some myths and legends from the epics and Purāṇas.

304
The Kashmirian polymath Kshemendra has written on several subjects, and is a versatile, accomplished and methodical writer. In his *Samayamātrikā*, which deals with the snares and trickeries of harlots, he gives clever instructions to novices in the profession. Inspired by Dāmodaragupta, the author gives the story of a young courtesan Kalāvati in eight chapters composed mostly in Ślokā. His *Kalāvīlaśa* in Aryā metre speaks of numerous occupations and the tricks and follies of wandering singers, doctors, goldsmiths, and astrologers. The *Darpadalana*, in seven sections, seeks to establish the vainness of pride felt by a man endowed with wealth, knowledge, beauty, etc., which springs from seven sources. *Seryasaevakopadeśa* in sixty-one stanzas displays shrewd observations on the relation of master and servant. Chārucharyā is a century of Ślokas on virtuous conduct. *Deśopadeśa* and *Narmamalā* give pen pictures of the oppression, hypocrisy, and corruption prevalent in contemporary Kashmir.

The *Mugdhopadeśa* by Jalhaṇa contains reflections on the lures of the traditional, rather than real, courtesan in Sārdulavikriṣṭā metre. The style is erotically didactic rather than satiric. Amitagati's *Subhāṣhitaratnasandoha* contains reflections on the lures and tricks of the traditional, rather than real, courtesan in sixty-six stanzas in Sārdulavikriṣṭā metre. The style is erotically didactic rather than satiric. Amitagati's *Subhāṣhitaratnasandoha* is definitely prior to A.D. 1160 as it is quoted by Vandyagaṭiya Sarvananda.14 In its present form, however, the text is not earlier than the fifteenth century. The *Subhāṣhitāvālī* of Vallabhaḍeva, is definitely prior to A.D. 1160 as it is quoted by Vandyagaṭiya Sarvananda.14 In its present form, however, the text is not earlier than the fifteenth century. The *Subhāṣhitāvālī* is an extensive anthology, incorporating 3527 stanzas in 101 *Padhathis* or sections. The number of poets cited, according to Peterson, is about 360. The author, a Kashmirian, has mostly drawn on works from the North. Śrīdharaḍaśa, son of Vaṭudāśa, compiled his *Saduktikanāmrītā* in A.D. 1206 during the reign of Lakṣmanasena. The book is divided into five *Pravāhas* (streams) or parts, which have various *Vechis* (waves) i.e. sections, each containing five stanzas. The total

---

**Anthologies and Women Poets**

Of anthologies, a literary form which originated shortly before A.D. 1000, there are several valuable specimens during the period under review. The importance of anthologies for a historian of literature cannot be over-emphasised. They rescue from oblivion many an unknown author, bring forth unknown “beauties” of well-known authors not found in their extant works, and often form important landmarks for fixing dates. The earliest anthology during this period, the *Subhāṣhitāvālī* of Vallabhaḍeva, is definitely prior to A.D. 1160 as it is quoted by Vandyagaṭiya Sarvananda.14 In its present form, however, the text is not earlier than the fifteenth century. The *Subhāṣhitāvālī* is an extensive anthology, incorporating 3527 stanzas in 101 *Padhathis* or sections. The number of poets cited, according to Peterson, is about 360. The author, a Kashmirian, has mostly drawn on works from the North. Śrīdharaḍaśa, son of Vaṭudāśa, compiled his *Saduktikanāmrītā* in A.D. 1206 during the reign of Lakṣmanasena. The book is divided into five *Pravāhas* (streams) or parts, which have various *Vechis* (waves) i.e. sections, each containing five stanzas. The total

---

14
number of stanzas is 2370, that of the poets and works cited being 485. The Śūktimuktāvali was compiled on the model of Vallabhadra's Subhāshītiavali by Jalhana in A.D. 1257. Jalhana was the son of Lakshmidhara, and the minister of the Yadava king Kṛṣṇa. Though there appear to have been two recensions, short and long, the printed edition gives the eclectic text comprising 2790 stanzas divided in 133 sections, the number of poets and works referred to being over 240. At the outset there are traditional verses on Sanskrit poets and poetry, of great interest for literary history.

These anthologies bring to light several women authors of whom some have been dealt with in the previous volume. Their works, from which the stanzas were extracted, are unknown. It would certainly be unjust to judge these writers from the meagre specimens of stray stanzas; but if an opinion may be hazarded, the specimens show neither originality, nor imagination, nor variety. There is nothing specifically feminine about the stanzas, which could well have been written by men. The specimens do not illustrate the highly artistic or creative productions of women, if there were any.

(C) Historical Poems

"Real History finds no place in Sanskrit literature, nor is there any conscious historical element in any of the works comprising it"—thus observes Whitney in his introduction to A Sanskrit Grammar. The more recent pursuits of scholars in Sanskrit literature have not yet unearthed anything which would modify the learned savant's remark. Before Kalhana there does not seem to have been any author who took to historical writing with a degree of seriousness. The Purāṇa works apart, even the Harsha-charita of Bāṇa smacks more of romance than of history.

It is indeed curious that despite her achievements in other branches as also her abundance of intellect, India failed to produce any historical works in the modern sense. The so-called historical Kāvyas are more poetical works than historical documents. Though dealing ostensibly with historical themes they are mainly concerned with the poetic, dramatic or romantic possibilities, and consequently are indifferent to chronology, mix divine and human action, believe in magic and miracle, and have deep faith in the incalculable human destiny. Different scholars seek to explain the absence of any clear, consistent, and adequate historiography as due to various causes. It is said, for instance, that the idea of composing realistic history aiming at objective accuracy is entirely out of harmony with the spirit of Sanskrit literature and its
LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

conception of art with its emphasis on imaginative and impersonalized creation. Thus it is that in historical Kavyas authors cared more for poetic merit than for historical accuracy. It is also held that Indian mind was little interested in historical incident as such. Then, again, according to the Indian view, as presented in the *Mahabharata* and other works, truth is not mere verbal accuracy or objective agreement of words with facts, but that which is beneficial for humanity. Truth is therefore valid so far only as it leads to human good. The poet, further, was to concentrate on the creation of ideals and aesthetic emotion which he achieved by descriptions, portraying of sentiments, exaggeration of facts through imagery, etc. It is also likely that it was the firm belief of Indians in the doctrine of *Karman* that prevented them from making any realistic and historical survey of the events in the past.

We may now refer to the few historical works whose existence is so far known to us. According to Kalhana, Sañkuka wrote the *Bhuwanabhuyadaya* describing the battle of Mamma and Utpala (c. A.D. 850), but unfortunately nothing is known of this work. Padmagupta or Parimala, son of Mrigânakadatta, wrote early in the eleventh century his *Navasahasâka-charita* describing in eighteen cantos the life of king Sindhurâja Navasahasâka of Malwa. 16 That the author does not aim at history is obvious from the fact that the work primarily deals with the mythical event of the winning of the Nâga princess Sâliprabha by Sindhurâja.

Of a little more historical interest is the *Vikramâdityadeva-charita* of the Kashmirian Bilhana, son of Jyeshthakalasa and Nâgadevi. It glorifies the life of the author's patron king Vikramâditya VI, the Châlukya king of Kalyâna. 17 The work begins with the origin of the Châlukya dynasty and goes on to describe, in the usual style of a Mahâkâvya, the battles fought and the pleasures enjoyed by king Vikramâditya. The last canto, like the first *Uchchhvîsa* of the *Harsha-charita*, gives us an account of the author himself and his literary adventures, of his family, his country and its rulers. As a piece of history the work is full of blemishes. It seeks the intervention of Siva to explain away certain unhappy incidents in the life of the king. Accurate chronology is also lost in the medley of vague expressions. As a piece of poetry, on the other hand, Bilhana's work deserves much praise.

After Bilhana comes the celebrated Kashmirian Kalhana who flourished in the middle of the twelfth century. He gives us in the *Rajatarangini* the chronicles of the kings of Kashmir right from the beginning to his own days. A Brâhmaṇa by birth and devoted to
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Siva, he was free from the narrow sectarian outlook. From his work it appears that he had carefully studied the epics, the works of classical authors and earlier historians, and many other sciences. As a basis for his excellent Rājatarangī, Kalhana seems to have used the works of early chroniclers in the field, and also gathered first-hand information from inscriptions, copper-plates, various eulogies, and family records. Yet there is very little element of historicity in the first three chapters of the work which are devoted to earlier dynasties. With the dynasty of Karkota, however, we come across historical realities more and more. Even in this work, belief in the working of fate, magic and witchcraft is responsible for some blemishes. At the same time it must be noted that Kalhana does not spare even his patron from honest criticism. “All that we have points, therefore, to a mind very busily in contact with reality, observing intently the process of current events in lieu of becoming a mere book-worm, and endeavouring to find satisfaction for a keen intellect in recording the events around him and those of earlier days in lieu of the participation in affairs traditional in his family and congenial to his tastes.”

Reference has already been made to the Rāma-charita of Sandhyakaranandin, who calls himself Kalikala-Vālmiki. The work simultaneously tells in four cantos the story of Rama and the history of Ramapala. It deals mainly with the successful revolution in North Bengal, the murder of Mahipala II, and the restoration of the paternal kingdom by Ramapala. The story is continued even after Rama-pala’s death, and ends with Madanapala. The work possesses great historical value as a contemporary record, but fails as a poetical composition. It was soon forgotten on account of its limited and local interest.

Among the few other minor historical works of this period none is comparable, even distantly, with the work of Kalhana. Atula’s Mūshikavāṃśa (eleventh century) narrates in fifteen cantos the line of kings which ruled over the Mūshika kingdom, i.e. south Travancore. Sambhu (eleventh century) wrote the Rājendrakarṇāpāra in praise of his patron Harsha. Similarly Jalhāna wrote Somapālavilāsa in honour of the king of Rājapuri. Jain writers also proved their ability in this branch of Sanskrit literature, and among Jain writers of the period prominent place must be given to the polymath Hemachandra. He narrates the life of king Kumārapala of Anahilwād (Anahillapātaka) in the Kumārapala-charita. The poem is also entitled Devyāsya-kālya, either because it is written both in Sanskrit and Prakrit, or because the work, besides being a history, also serves the purpose of illustrating the rules of grammar. To the
end of the twelfth century belongs the unfinished Prithvīrāja-viśāya of unknown authorship (probably by Kāśmīrīan Jayānaka), which describes the victories of the Chāhamāna king Prithvirāja of Delhi over Sūltān Shihāb-ud-dīn Ghūrī. To the thirteenth century belong the two panegyrics, the Kirtikaumudi of Somesvaradatta, and the Sukṛitasanākīrtana of Arisimha, both in praise of Vastupāla, a minister of the Vāghela princes of Gujarāt. The former, which has some poetic value, deals with the history of the Vāghela dynasty of Gujarāt. The first two cantos of the latter give an account of the Chāmpotkaṭa and Chaṭālvya rulers. There is also a short eulogistic poem on Vastupāla, called Sukṛita-kirtikālīlinī, by Udayaprabha Sūrī. Another work on the rulers of Gujarāt, and dealing with the various episodes in Vastupāla’s career, is the Vasantaucīlāsā of Bīlachandra Sūrī, pupil of Haribhadra Sūrī. Jinaprabha, the prolific writer of numerous stotras, has also written a Dejārāya-kārī (A.D. 1300) on the life of Śreṣṭika.

II. Drama

The dramatist was not a poet of the people but of the court, and drama, like poetry, was isolated from real life. There was a wide separation of the language of the drama from the language of the people. Instead of becoming pictures or mirrors of life, dramas became rigid exercises in literary skill and ingenuity, and strict adherence to dramaturgic injunctions became a general feature of these works.

(A) Legendary Plays

The legendary plays derive their plots from the epics and the Purāṇas. The Kāśmīrīan polymath Kṣhemendrā speaks of a drama, Chitrabhirāta, by himself, which has not survived. The earliest extant drama during the present period is probably the Prasanna-rāghava of Jayadeva, who is to be distinguished from several namesakes by his statement that he was the son of Māhīdeva, of Kaṇḍīṇya gotra, and Sūmitrā. The Prasanna-rāghava is a Nāṭaka in seven acts describing the life of Rāma from his wedding to his return from Lankā. The author does not strictly follow the story in the epic and takes some liberty with the original. Umāpatidhāra, a contemporary of Jayadeva, author of Gita-govinda, wrote Pārijātahaṇa dealing with the fight between Indra and Kśiras for the celestial flower. Of the polymath Rāmachandra, pupil of Hema-chandra, two dramas are available, viz. Nelaucīlāsā, dealing with the story of Nala, in seven acts, and Nīrbheya-bhīma, a one-act Vyāyoga
on the slaying of Baka. The Kerala king Kulaśekhara, whom Dr. De places between the first half of the tenth and the first half of the twelfth century, treats of the Mahābhārata stories in his two plays: Tāpati-Sāṅkāyana treats of the legend of the Kuru king Sanśvaraṇa and Tapat, the daughter of the sun god, in six acts; and Subhadra-Dhanasūrya, in five acts, deals with the well-known story of the marriage of Arjuna and Subhadra. The marriage of Draupadi is dramatized in two acts by Vijayaśāla, son of Siddhapāla, in his Draupadīsvayamānara. The Pradyumnābhīvyuḍaya of another Kerala prince Rāvīvarman (thirteenth century) is also based on the Kṛṣṇa legend. The Harakelinaṇṭaka of the Chāhamāna king Visaladeva Vigrāharāja of Sākambhari (twelfth century) having the same theme as Bāravi's poem, is only partially known from a few fragments inscribed on a stone which has been built up in a mosque at Ajmer.

(B) Court Comedies

There are a few Nāṭkās which deal generally with stories of court life based on legendary, semi-historical or fictitious themes. The Kāraṇasundari of Biliṅga is a Nāṭkā in four acts celebrating the marriage of king Kāraṇadeva of Anahilwād under the guise of a romantic story. It is, however, a poor recast of the Ratnāvalī and Vindhasālebhaṅgikā. To the same dramatic category belongs the Vījayārī or Pārijātanājāri of Madana Bālasarasvati (thirteenth century), preceptor of the Paramāra king Arjunavarman. It depicts the marriage of king Arjunadeva with the Chaulukya princess who is introduced into the play as a garland of Parijata flowers which, on dropping on the breast of the king, is miraculously transformed into a beautiful maiden. In honour of the Chāhamāna king Visaladeva was written the Lalitavigrahaśanāṇṭaka by his protégé Somadeva describing the king's love for princess Desaladevi of Indrapura; the play is partly preserved in a stone inscription at Ajmer. In a similar vein Vidyānātha wrote his model play, the Pratiparudra-kalyāṇa, which serves the double purpose of eulogising the king of Warangal and illustrating the author's views on dramaturgy.

The extreme reaction of the dramatic conventions on the mind of the aspiring dramatist is reflected in a series of six dramas, of which four are mythological and two erotic and comic, deliberately written to illustrate six out of ten types of Sanskrit drama. They are the work of Vatsarāja, minister of king Paramardideva of Kālaśīvara. There is a Vyāyoga named Kīrtārjunīya, based on the well-known epic of Bāravi, in which the Sātradhāra recites the Nāṇḍi verses twice; an Īhāmpīga named Rukmiṣṭharāṇa; 33 a
Qima called Tripurādāha, and a Samavakara called Samudramanthyana. These deal with mythological subjects. There is a Bhūṣana, Karpūra-charita, on the love of a gambler with a courtesan, and a Prahasana, Hāṣychādāmanṣi, in which a preceptor of the Bhāgavata school is ridiculed. Attention may be drawn in this connection to another Vyāyoga named Pārthaparāśrama of Prahlādana-deva (twelfth century) describing how Arjuna won the cows of Viṣṇu. Two points in particular deserve notice here—the author claims to excite in the audience a new sentiment, diptarasa, and the final benediction is invoked not by the hero but by Vāsava.

(C) Erotic and Farcical Plays

Bhūṣaṇa and Prahasana, types of one-act plays, are farcical in character, the former being predominantly erotic and having merely a prolonged monologue sustained by suppositious dialogues. Though dramaturgic treatises mention several Prahasanas, only a few have survived. After the Chaturbhūṣaṇi, described in the last volume, the earliest instance is the Karpūra-charita of Vatsarāja, which has already been dealt with in the previous section along with his other works. The Laṭākamalaka of Saṅkhaṭhāra Kavirāja (twelfth century), written during the reign of Govindachandra of Kanauj, describes in two acts the conference of rogues at the house of a go-between Danturā, for winning the favour of her daughter Madanamājīrā.

(D) Prakaraṇas and Semi-historical Plays

Later writers of Prakaraṇas, which deal with middle-class life, follow the Mālatīmādhavā rather than the Mrīchchhakāltika as their general model. There is little of poetic realism but free use of fancy, sentiment, magic and marvel. Out of the four Prakaraṇas mentioned by Rāmacandra in the Nātyārāṣṭra, only the Kaumudi-Mitrāṇanda by the same Rāmacandra is published. It describes the adventures of a merchant’s son Mitrāṇanda and his wife Kaumudi. The story resembles those of the Daśakumāra-charita. The Prabuddharāhuḥiyega of Rāmagradhra, pupil of Jina-prabha Sūri (thirteenth century), narrates in six acts the circumstances which led the robber Rauhiṇey to change his profession. The Mudrātikumudachandra of Yaśaśchandra, son of Padaṇachandra, records in five acts the controversy between two Jain teachers, Śvetāmbara Devasūri and Digambara Kumudachandra, in which the latter was completely sealed up (mudrātī). Of the type of Mudrāśrākhasa, having a historical interest, is the Hammīraṇamādarmādana by a temple priest Jayasimha Sūri
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(thirteenth century) of Broach, written at the instance of Vastupula's son Jayantasinha. The drama is full of intrigues and incidents and, though purported to commemorate the victory of king Viradhavala over the Mlechchha ruler Hammira, in reality eulogises the two ministers Vastupula and Tejapala, describing Vastupula's skill in diplomacy and repulsion, by him, of the Muslim invasion of Gujarāt.

(E) Allegorical Dramas

Though one of Asvaghosa's fragments contains personification of abstract virtues as dramatis personae, there is yet no evidence that allegorical drama played any important part in the evolution of the dramatic literature in Sanskrit. The Prabodhachandrodaya of Krishnamitra (eleventh century) is the earliest known drama of this type. It is an allegory glorifying the Advaita form of Vishnuism. It derives its name from the prophecy that there will be the rise of Knowledge (prabodha) and Judgment (vidyā) from the union of Discrimination and Theology. The Moharajaparajaya of the Jain Yasalpala (thirteenth century) mixes allegory with reality as it introduces real human beings like king Kumaraṇa and the Vidūṣaka with different personifications of good and bad qualities. The play depicts the conversion of the king to Jainism and in consequence his promulgating the doctrine of ahimsā and prohibiting the practice of confiscating the property of those who died without heirs.

(F) Irregular Dramas

The question about the so-called shadow-plays, irregular types of dramas, has already been dealt with in connection with the Mahānāṭaka. The Dūṣāṅgada of Subhaṇa exhibits similar features. Outwardly dramatic in form, it is devoid of any dramatic action, being merely a collection of poetical stanzas. The work styles itself as a Chhāya-nāṭaka, and has been taken as a typical instance of the shadow-play. In four scenes, it describes the embassy of Anagada in connection with the recovery of Sītā from Rāvaṇa. There are longer and shorter recensions of the work. Some other plays also call themselves Chhāya-nāṭaka in their prologue or colophon; but they cannot be taken as instances of the shadow-play. Probably, these pieces were intended for popular entertainment, and it is not necessary to postulate the existence of the shadow-play to explain the peculiarities possessed by these plays.

III. Prose Romances and Champūs

There is not much prose outside scholastic and exegetical writings, and the small amount of literary prose is not of much conse-

312
quence. The prose romances and Champūs being usually heavily constructed and dexterously stylistic, one has to turn to story literature for simple and direct prose style.

(A) Later Romances

None of the later authors has composed anything comparable to the earlier works of Bāṇa, Daṇḍin, and Subandhu. Sañghala (eleventh century), who was patronised by Chitta, Nāgārjuna, and Mumunī Rāja of Koṅkaṇa, wrote the Udaśundarīkathā describing the marriage of a Nāga princess with the king of Pratishthāna. Oṣeyadeva or Vādībhāsinīha (twelfth century?), a Digambara Jain, closely imitates the Kādambarī of Bāṇa in his Gadyachintāmani. It describes the life of king Satyadhara and his son Jīvandhara. The Gadyakarṇāmyārita of Vidyāchakravartin describes the battle between the Hoysala Narasimha II and the combined forces of the Pāṇḍya, Magadha, and the Pallava kings.

(B) Champūs

A peculiar type of literary composition written in indifferent prose and verse, styled as Champū, became popular with authors from the tenth century onwards and was a special favourite of South India. A part of the Rāmāyaṇachampū leading the Rāma story up to the Kishkindhakīrtī is ascribed to Bhoja (eleventh century), and the remainder was finished later by one Lakṣmīnāraṇa Kavi who also wrote another work, the Bhāratachampūtilaka. Abhinavakalidāsa (eleventh century), which sounds more like a title than a personal name, wrote the Bhāgaratachampū and the Abhinavabhāratachampū.

IV. Story Literature

(A) The ‘Bṛhatkathā’ and its Later Versions

The Bṛhatkathā of Guṇḍāghya, which is supposed to have been written in the Paisāchi Prākṛti, is unfortunately lost to us almost beyond any hope of recovery. Still we can form some idea of the original from the three versions—two Kāshmirian and one Nepalese—that are available to-day. From these versions it appears that the form of the original was metrical, but Daṇḍin probably hints that it was prose. The main theme of the narrative was no doubt the marriage of Naravāhana-adatta with Madanamañchukā who, like Vasantasena, was a courtesan. It is also possible that the original work contained many other stories of the love adventures of the hero. As regards the date of the original it is very difficult to dogma-
One of the three versions of the Brihatkatha is the Brihatkatha-slokasamgraha of Budhasvamin, the manuscripts of which are from Nepal. It may be dated in the eighth century A.D. The work is available only in a fragment; still a comparison with the other versions shows that this one is more faithful to the original than the two Kashmirian versions. The stories here are told with a sense of moderation and the language betrays a few Sanskritizations of Prakrit.

The Brihatkatha-manjari of Kshemendra (eleventh century) is one of the two Kashmirian versions. Both Kshemendra and Somadeva, the author of the Kathasaritsagara, have added much matter, to wit the Panchatantra and the Vetalapanchavinsati, to the original narrative of Gunadhya, and from this fact it seems permissible to surmise that the two Kashmirian authors had before them not the original Brihatkatha but some later and enlarged version of it. When compared with Somadeva's work, Kshemendra's version looks like an abridged edition, so much so that his brevity has sometimes led to obscurity.

The Kathasaritsagara, the other and the more important Kashmirian version of the Brihatkatha, was undertaken by its author Somadeva (eleventh century) to divert the mind of Suryamati, the wife of king Ananta of Kashmir. While writing, it was the avowed aim of the author to narrate the substance of the work before him and at the same time to endeavour to produce a unified effect and maintain the flow of the narrative. As already remarked, Somadeva, in the course of his narration, tells much more than what Kshemendra and Budhasvamin do. Thus there are numerous stories of faithful and adulterous women, of fools and rogues, thieves and gamblers, false ascetics and forest tribes. Wonderful events and feats of adventure are found in abundance, and magic and witchcraft are a matter of everyday routine. In spite of the vast material contained in the book the author has certainly succeeded in narrating the stories in an easy, flowing style. From the point of view of sociology the work is a mine of information about ancient customs and manners.

(B) Romantic Tales

The Vetalapanchavinsati narrates how an ascetic tried to beguile king Trivikramasena, who was eventually saved by a vam-
pierce whose riddles were correctly answered by the king. It has come down to us in more than one version—the Kashmirian version, incorporated in the works of Kshemendra and Somadeva, the version of Sivadāsa in prose and verse, the one of Jambhala­dadatta, and still another of Vallabhadāsa. From these versions it is very difficult to decide whether the original work was in prose or poetry or even both. The date of the original is similarly un­certain, though the version of Sivadāsa may have belonged to the twelfth century A.D. As regards its language Hertel has tried to show that it was much influenced by old Gujarāti vocabulary and syntax. Later versions substitute Vikramāditya’s name for that of Trivikramasena.

The Sukasaptati has come down to us in two recensions of un­certain date—the simplicior and the ornatior of Schmidt. The former seems to have been written by a Śvetāmbara Jain and the latter by a Brāhmaṇa, Chintamani Bhāṭja. The framework of the book consists of the stories, mostly of faithless women and cunning hetæae, narrated by a clever parrot to the wife of a merchant in order to guard her chastity while her husband had gone abroad.

The Simhāsanadvatrisāṣikā is known by different names and is available today in at least three important versions. It is said that king Bhoja of Dhāra (eleventh century) discovered a throne that was once presented by Indra to Vikramāditya. When the king tried to ascend the throne, each of the thirty-two statuettes on it told him a story of king Vikramāditya and obtained release. The date of this work seems to have been somewhere between the eleventh and the thirteenth centuries A.D. Similar in sub­stance, but of less importance, is the anonymous Vikramolaga narrating tales of king Vikramāditya in verse. The Viracharita of Ananta, an epic in thirty-two cantos, describes the events of the life of king Sālivahana. A similar work, though partly in prose, is the Sālivahana-kathā of Sivadāsa.

(C) Didactic Tales

The Parisūṣṭaparvan of Hemachandra is an appendix to his Trishahṣītālakāpurusaha-charita and deals with the lives of the oldest of the Jain teachers. It also includes some strange legends about king Chandragupta Maurya and some other folk-tales. The Prabhāsaka-charita of Prabhāchandra and Pradyumna Sūri (thirteenth century) forms a continuation of Hemachandra’s work.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(D) Fables

The earliest glimpses of a fable are found in the Mahābhārata where at one place a particular policy recommended for adoption is illustrated by means of a beast fable. But this does not mean that the fables were collected and written down in a book form from the epic period itself. There are numerous similarities in Greek and Sanskrit fables, but the problem of their mutual relationship is rather difficult of solution. The earliest work on fables in Sanskrit is the Pañcatantra, its purpose being to give instructions to some princes in morals and rules of worldly life. It is written in mixed prose and poetry, the former being employed for the narration of the story, and the latter for summing up its moral and also for incorporating certain verses of didactic import.

As with the Brīhatkathā, the original work, usually entitled the Pañcatantra, on which are based numerous versions, is lost to us. Its author is said to have been Brāhmaṇa Vishnusarma who perhaps lived in the Deccan some time between A.D. 200 and 400. Book I of the work deals with the topic of separation of friends, Book II with winning of friends, Book III with war and peace, Book IV with loss of one’s earnings, and Book V with dangers of hasty action. Within the framework of the main narrative in each book are inserted numerous other fables illustrating general rules of life. The author employs a fairly simple style which in general is free from poetic elaborations.

Of all the derivative forms of the original Pañcatantra, the Tantrākhyāyika, of unknown date, is comparatively more akin to the original than the others. The textus simplicior is a Jain version prepared c. A.D. 1100, and differs considerably from the original. To the year A.D. 1199 belongs another Jain version, the Pañchakhyāyika, prepared by monk Pūrṇabhadra. The Brīhatkathā-maṇjarī and the Kathāsāristāgūra have each a version of the Pañcatantra representing the form which the original work assumed in the north-west of India. The southern Pañcatantra is available in five recensions and seems to be a shortened account of the original. The Bengal version is represented by the Hitopadesa ascribed to Nārāyaṇa (eleventh or twelfth century). The work includes many new tales not found in other versions, and incorporates even large sections from the Kāmāndakīya-Nitisāra. Not satisfied with this the author also rehandles the arrangement of the books. The provenance of the work in Bengal is made probable by a story which describes a ritual in honour of Gaurī, showing the influence of Śaktism. The style of the author is as simple and attractive as that of Vishnusarma.
LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

3. SCIENTIFIC LITERATURE

I. Lexicography

The earliest lexicographer in this period appears to be Yadavaprakāśa, the author of Vaijayanti, who has been identified with the preceptor of Rāmānuja. Yadavaprakāśa was born near Kāśi-puram. Originally a staunch follower of Saṅkara, he was later converted to Vaishnavism by his former pupil Rāmānuja. The Vaijayanti has two portions, synonymous and homonymous, which are fuller than the Amarakośa. The homonymous section arranges the words in the alphabetical order of their initial letters, and there are three Kandaśas containing homonyms of 2, 3, or more syllables.

The Naimāndikīśa of Bhoja is of the nature of a compilation (Saṃgīthā). Its author has been identified with king Bhoja of Dhāra who flourished in the eleventh century A.D. The work has been much influenced by the Vaijayanti of Yadavaprakāśa.

Purushottamadeva, a Buddhist, wrote three lexical works, Trikāṣhampāsa, Hiṁśavali, and Varṇadeśanā. The first, as indicated by its title, is a supplement, in three parts containing 1050 verses, to the Amarakośa. It adopts the Paribhāṣā (terminology) and division of the Amarakośa, and aims to give only the words left out by the Amarakośa. In the short extent of 278 verses, the Hiṁśavali deals, in two parts, with the synonymous and homonymous words not in common use. The Varṇadeśanā, which is in prose, deals with orthographical variations giving a collection of differently spelt words, and mentions such cases of confusion as between kṣ and kḥ which, according to the author, is due to the similarity of the characters employed, among others, by the Gaṅgas. An Ekākhaśarakeśa and Dvīrūpakāśa are also attributed to him, of which the latter is a brief work of 75 stanzas, dealing with words spelt in two different ways. In view of the quotations by Vandyaghaṭiya Sarvāṇanda (A.D. 1159), Purushottamadeva cannot be placed later than the first half of the twelfth century; but he is not much earlier, as one of his works is stated to have been composed at the request of Lakshmanasena, apparently before he became king.

Viśvaprakāśa and Anekārthakośa are homonymous lexicons with words arranged in the alphabetical order of final consonants. Viśvaprakāśa by Maheśvara, as stated in the last verse, was composed in A.D. 1111. Maheśvara was the son of Śrībrahma and grandson of Kṛṣṇa, and his work gained fame even during the century of its composition, as is seen from quotations by Sarvāṇanda and Hemachandra. Maṅkha, the author of the Anekārthakośa, is identified with his namesake, the author of the
The struggle for empire

Sriksapta-charita, who lived in the reign of Jayasinha of Kāśmīr (A.D. 1128-55). Anekārthasaabakosa by Medinikara, also known as Medini, appears to be a mere remodelling of the Viśvaprakāśa. Medini was the son of Prānākara. As he is quoted by Rāyamukuta (A.D. 1431), Medini must be placed in or before the fourteenth century, but he is probably much earlier, because the authorities cited by him are earlier than A. D. 1150, being all referred to by Sarvānanda. Nānārthasaanigraha of Ajayapāla, available only in MSS., contains about 1730 words mostly found in the Sāsvatakosa, arranged after initial letters. Ajayapāla was a Buddhist, and is quoted in Gujaratnamahodadhī (A.D. 1140), by Sarvānanda, Kesavavāmin and others. Kesavavāmin's Nānārthārāvasaanaḥshepa, the biggest homonymous lexicon known so far, contains about 5800 stanzas, which are divided into six Kāṇḍas according to the number of syllables. In each Kāṇḍa, words are arranged after the initial letters. Kesava's patron was Rājarāja Chōla, son of Kulotunga. Two or three such persons are known during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The printed text of Dhanainjaya's Nānāmaala (in Dvādaśakosaanigraha, Benares, 1865, 1873) has only a synonymous portion in 200 verses, which appears to be the original recension. There are, however, other recensions which contain, in addition, a homonymous section in 50 stanzas, while a Tanjore MS. has three chapters, viz. Sabdaśaṅkīrṣaṇa-puṇa, Sabdaśaṅkīrṣaṇa-loke, and Sabdavistμnāra-puṇa. Dhanainjaya was a Digambara Jain and native of Karnātak. He was also the author of Deviśandhānakāvyā, quoted in Gujarattamahodadhī (A.D. 1140).

The Gujarāt polymath Hemachandra wrote four lexical works, Abhidhiinachintamani, Anekarthasamgraha, Nīghaṇṭusesha, and Desānīnamalā. The first two deal respectively with synonyms and homonyms, the third is a botanical nīghaṇṭu, and the last is a Prakrit lexicon. The Abhidhiinachintamani, containing nearly 1542 stanzas, is divided into six Kāṇḍas; Deviśaṅkīrṣaṇa, dealing with Jain gods and religious terms; Deva, on Hindu and Buddhist gods and terms; Martya, human beings in their various relations; Naraka, nether world; and Śāmānya, abstract notions, adjectives, and indeclinables. The author has written his own commentary. Anekarthasaangraha, also in six Kāṇḍas, contains nearly 1829 stanzas. The Kāṇḍas are arranged after the number of syllables, and in a twofold alphabetical order after the final and initial letters—and a supplementary Kāṇḍa is added on the Avyayas (indeclinables). Later than Hemachandra is Mahipa who in his Anekārthaṭilaka gives a dictionary of homonyms.

This period also witnessed some important commentaries on the Amarakosa. The earliest extant commentary is the Amarakosodghā-
Kshirasvamin, who may be assigned to the latter half of the eleventh century. The commentary is lucid and simple, and elucidates and criticises the text with the help of over a hundred authorities. Next in time and importance is the *Amarakośaṭīkāśāraśāsttaka* written in A.D. 1159 by Sarvāntada Vandyaghaṭiya, son of Artihara, to whom frequent reference has been made in this chapter. This learned and valuable commentary, written with the help of ten previous commentaries, has been the basis of the works of all later Bengal commentators including Rāyamukuta. *Kāmadhenu* by the Buddhist Subhūti or Subhūtīchandra, which is often quoted by Bengal commentators, is available in a Tibetan version. The author is mentioned in the *Durghaṭavṛtti* of Saranadeva (A.D. 1173).

Kshirasvamin, Sarvāntada, and Medini refer to and quote from several lexicographers about whom nothing further is known.

II. Grammar

The period after A.D. 1000 marks the stage of progressive deterioration in the study of grammar. There is in the first place the rise of a number of new and popular schools of grammar intended to simplify the science for the enlightenment of the laity. There are also numerous recasts of the *Āṣṭādhyāyī*. Among the works of the Pāṇinian school may be mentioned the *Dhātuvṛtti* of Kshirasvamin, the famous commentator of the *Amarakośa*. Kaiyata, son of Jayyaṭa, probably a native of Kāshmir, wrote his *Pradīpa* on the Mahābhāṣya of Patañjali. The *Padmaśāra* by Haradatta is a valuable commentary on the *Kāṣīkā*. Haradatta was the son of Padmakumāra and a resident of the Telugu country. The only complete work on Pāṇiniana Gaṇapātha is Vardhamāna's *Gāvratnamahodadhī*, which is a metrical arrangement of the Gaṇas followed by a commentary by the author. *Durghaṭavṛtti*, written by a Buddhist writer, Saranadeva, under the supervision of Sarvarakshita, deals with the difficult passages of Pāṇini's text.

Among non-Pāṇinian systems, the Chāndrasa school disappeared from India during the period under review. But it is still extensively studied in Tibet and Ceylon, thanks to the *Bīḍārabodha*, a popular recast of the Chāndra grammar by Kāsyapa, a Ceylonese Buddhist monk. The Jainendra school is represented by a few works in this period. Only two commentaries have been preserved; one by Abhayānandā (c. A.D. 1250), and the other, *Śabdārṇavachandrāṅkā* by Somadeva composed in A.D. 1205. Somadeva, resident of Ajurikā (Ajje, in the old Kolhāpur State), was the contemporary of Śilāñāra king Bhojadewa (Bhoja II). The *Paśčaṭaśāca* is a recast of the Jainendra grammar to facilitate its study by beginners.
Arya Śrutakirti is mentioned as the author in the introductory portion. For the Sākaṭāyana school, there is the Rūpasiddhi of Daya-pala, pupil of Matisagara, and a fellow student of Vādirāja (or Jayasiṃha II, Chaulukya). It is an abridgment of Sākaṭāyana’s grammar, somewhat similar in scope to the Laghuśāramudī. Prabhāchandraghāṭṛa’s Nyāsa is another work of the school which is in the nature of a commentary on the Amogharatrī. From its non-mention by Bopadeva, the author of Mugḍhabodha, the origin of the Sarasvata school cannot be placed much earlier than A.D. 1250. The school arose in response to a demand, probably from the Muslim rulers, who deemed it necessary to promote the study of Sanskrit. Brevity of treatment and simplicity are the principal features of the Sarasvata school. As against 4000 Sūtras of Pāṇini (3000 of Jaimini, over 1400 in Kāśīnta, and 1200 of Bopadeva), the Sarasvata treats the entire subject in only 700 Sūtras. Anubhūtisvarupāchārya, the traditional founder, who wrote Sārasvataprakṛiti, possibly had one or two predecessors. Vardhamāna, a protegé of Kāpādeva, probably a ruler in Gujarat, wrote Kātantra-vistāre, a commentary on Durgasiṃha’s Vṛitti which belongs to the Kātantra school. Shortly after Vardhamāna, Trilochanadāsa, son of Megha and father of Gadādharā, of the Kāyastha class, composed Kātantra-vṛtti-tipājakā. Another work of the school is Śabdāsiddhi, a commentary written by Mahādeva, of which a MS. is dated Sāṅcīvat 1340. The Gujarāt polymath Hemachandra founded the Hemachandra school. His Śabdānusāsana has, like the Ashtādhyāyī, 8 Adhyayas of 4 Padas each, the total number of Sūtras being 4500. Nearly a fourth of these form the last Adhyāya dealing exclusively with the Prakrit languages. Mugḍhabodha by Bopadeva is the chief text of the Bopadeva school. Bopadeva, the son of Keśāva and a pupil of Dhanesa, was a native of Berār. He was a voluminous writer, his other works being Muktāphala, Harilīlīvivaraṇa, Sātalīkoli, etc. His object in writing a new treatise on grammar was to combine simplicity with brevity. Religious element pervades this work, illustrative examples referring to Hari, Hara or Rāma. To Bopadeva belongs also the Kaśikapādimāṇi which is a metrical Dhatupatha. It not only gives the roots and their meanings but also certain other information about the roots from the grammatical point of view and their usage. Kramadīvāra was the founder of a new system, which however came to be known as Jaumara school from the name of Jamuranaṇḍi, the most celebrated writer of the school. Kramadīvāra wrote Śāṅkshiptasāra, which was revised by Mahārājaḍhīrarā Jumuranaṇḍi. Rasavatī is the name of a Vṛitti by Jamuranaṇḍi, who also revised the Pāṇiniya Dhatupāṭha for this school.
III. Poetics and Dramaturgy

(1) Poetics

The interval between Anandavardhana and Mammata represents, according to Dr. De, the definitive period in the history of Sanskrit poetics, during which details of the new system were precisely set up. The writers of this period concerned themselves with summarising the results of earlier speculations and presenting them in the form of concise text books. The complete scheme of poetics with the Dhvani theory at its centre, harmonising the divergent theories of earlier writers, finds its expression in the Kāya-prakāśa of Mammata in the middle of the twelfth century. Some reactionary theorists like Mahimabhaṭṭa and Kuntala flourished during this time. The period following Mammata was, in tune with the general literary tendency, a scholarly one of critical elaboration, which unquestioningly accepted the Dhvani theory. Despite some writers who tried to expound the old surviving traditions like Bhoja or Vāgbhaṭa, no new theory was propounded, the creative days of the science being over long ago. Besides a number of commentaries there was also a large production of popular books for the general reader as also manuals and school books.

Rājānaka Mahimabhaṭṭa, the son of Śrīdhairya and pupil of Mahākavi Śyāmala, severely criticises the Dhvani theory in his Vyākta-viveka. He accepts only two senses of Śabda, viz. the vāchya (the actually expressed) and the anumeya (inferable), and includes under the latter both liṅguṭṭa and vyāngya whose independent existence he contests. Despite his logical acumen, deep insight and great scholarship, the work failed to evoke interest mainly because he adds nothing to the larger problems of poetics. The avowed object of the book is polemical. It was forgotten in later times and the author is cited only for refutation, probably on account of his pitting himself against the most formidable theory of Dhvanikāra and Anandavardhana which was destined to supersede his by attracting the best thinkers of later times. Later theorists never recognised the Anumāna theory. As his views are summarised in the Alāṅkāra-sārasvarṣa, Mahimabhaṭṭa is earlier than A.D. 1100, and as he criticises Vakroktijīvita and Lochana, and quotes the Bāla-rāmāyaṇa, he is later than A.D. 1000. He therefore probably flourished between A.D. 1020 and 1080. The Alāṅkāra portion of the Agni Purāṇa, which belongs to this period, apparently follows a tradition different in many respects from the orthodox systems. Bhoja further develops the definition of poetry given in the Agni Purāṇa by expressly adding Rasa among its essential characteristics.
Bhoja's *Sarasvatikeśhābharana* is a voluminous work, divided into five Parichchedas, but more or less a patient compilation. Apparently following *Agni Purāṇa*, Bhoja regards Upamā, Akṣeṣa, Samāsokti, and several others as figures both of Sabda and Artha. He enumerates six Ritis: Vaidarbhi, Pāṇchāli, Gauḍīya, Avantika, Lātiya, and Magadhi. He raises all six Pramāṇas of Jaimini to figures of speech, and looks upon even Guṇa and Rasas as Alārlikaras.

Though speaking of eight Rasas, his way of treatment shows that he looked upon Śrīgāra as the only Rasa, which he has expressly stated in his *Śrīgāraprakāśa*. The *Śrīgāraprakāśa* in 36 Prakāśas is the largest known work in Sanskrit Poetics, and has been drawn on by Hemachandra and Sāradātana. In the first eight chapters, the author deals with grammatical technicalities and the theory of Vṛtti; the next two deal with faults and merits of thought and expression; the eleventh with the Mahākavya, and the twelfth with drama; and the last twenty-four are devoted to Rasas. Bhoja was a prolific author who wrote on a variety of subjects. He was the king of Dhārā and known as Bhojadeva.

Another voluminous writer on a number of subjects, and about whom we have already said a great deal, is the Kashmirian Ksheṃendra. His contribution to poetics was, however, meagre, and did not exert any appreciable influence on the Alārlikāstrā. His *Aucityavicooracharacārt* contains Kārikas with his own Vṛtti, and illustrations taken from various works. He states that Aucitya (appropriateness or propriety) is the essence of Rasa. Propriety is the life of all poetical compositions because Guṇa, Alārlikā, and Rasa, used improperly, not only do not beautify the poem, but lose their own beauty also.

The *Kātyāyaprakāśa* of Mammaṭa occupies a unique position in the Alārlikā literature, analogous to the *Śākarakabhāṣya* in Vedānta or the *Pātañjalabhāṣya* in grammar. Summing up in itself all the activities that preceded it in the field of poetics, it becomes itself the fountain-head of fresh streams of doctrines. It combines fulness of treatment with conciseness, traversing the whole field in 142 Kārikās (or Śūtras). The work comprises the Kārikā, Vṛtti, and Udāhāras and is divided into ten Ullāsas, dealing with all topics of poetics except dramaturgy. A late tradition, mostly obtaining in Bengal, imputes the authorship of the Kārikās to Bharata and of the prose Vṛtti to Mammaṭa; but this is unauthentic and fanciful. The earliest known commentator of the *Kātyāyaprakāśa*, Māṇikyaśandha (A.D. 1159-60), and an early MS. of the work, dated A.D. 1158, refer to the joint authorship of the *Kātyāyaprakāśa* by Mammaṭa and Alaka, and later commentators follow them. It
appears, however, that the joint authorship related only to the seventh and tenth Ullāsas. According to Kāshmirian Pāṇḍits Mammaṭa was the maternal uncle of Śrīharsha, author of the Naśīdhīya. As Mammaṭa quotes Abhinavagupta and refers to Bhoja, he cannot be earlier than A.D. 1050; and as the earliest commentary on the Kāvyaprakāṣa is dated 1159-60, he is earlier than A.D. 1150. Thus A.D. 1100 appears to be the probable date of the Kāvyaprakāṣa, and, as shown by Dr. Gode, the latter part of Mammaṭa's life synchronised with the early literary activities of Hemaḥandra, whose senior contemporary Mammaṭa was. The value of Mammaṭa consists not in his originality but in the concise and orderly discussions of the main issues, the definitions, and the general treatment embracing the whole field covered by his predecessors.

Rājānaka Ruyyaka or Ruchaka, son of Rājānaka Tilaka, came immediately after Mammaṭa, and his Alamkārasarvasva shows a remarkable degree of insight and independence of judgment. He is a staunch advocate of the Dhvani school, and briefly summarises the views of Bhāmaha, Udhaṭa, Vāmana, Rudraṭa, Vākroktiśīva, Vyaktiviveka, and Dhvaniķāra on the essence of poetry. The work consists of the three usual parts, Sūtra, Vṛtti, and Udāharaṅga. The Alamkārasarvasva is important for its acute analysis of the scope and nature of the individual poetic figures. Ruyyaka quotes from Vīkramāṅkadeva-charita, and criticises Vyaktiviveka and Kāvyaprakāṣa, which show that he cannot be earlier than A.D. 1100; his lower limit is supplied by his pupil Manṣhaṭa, who wrote Śrīkaṭṭha-charita between 1135 and 1145; thus Alamkārasarvasva was composed about A.D. 1125.

Hemaḥandra's Kāvyānūśāsana, written in the form of Sūtra and Vṛtti, along with its commentary, called Viveka, composed by the author, indicates extensive learning, and constitutes a complete manual of poetics in eight chapters. The work, however, displays hardly any originality or independence of judgment. It is chiefly a compilation; the doctrines of Dhvani, Rasa, Guṇa, Dosha, and Alamkāra appear to have been closely, and somewhat uncritically, copied from Mammaṭa. The Sūtra, Vṛtti, and commentary are respectively called Kāvyānūśāsana, Alamkāraśāsana, and Viveka.

The Bhāṣaptaprakāṣa of Śāradātanaya is an extensive work dealing with Rasas, Bhāvas, and dramaturgy. The author is a staunch follower of the Rasa school, according to which Rasa is the soul of poetry, whereas the other principles, Guṇa, Riti, Alamkāra, etc., are mere subsidiaries. It may be noted that according to the Dhvani school, Rasas hold the predominant position over Alamkāra, Guṇa and Riti. Its followers advocate the method of Rasa-Dhvani,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

according to which, the Alamkāras, Gūnas and Ritis should beautify the soul, Rasa, and these should be so chosen as to develop the Rasas. The book is divided into four sections and ten chapters. The first two divisions deal respectively with Bhāva and Rasa; the third describes the relation between the words and meanings, and in the fourth we find the different types of dramas. The last section of the work will be dealt with later when we come to dramaturgy. Sāradātānaya quotes extensively from the Śrīgāprakāśa and the Kātyāprakāśa, and Śiṅgabhūpala, Kumāravāmin, and Kallinātha quote from him; Sāradātānaya, therefore, flourished between A.D. 1175 and 1250.

The Chandrāloka by Jayadeva or Pīyūshavarsha, son of Mahādeva and Sumitrā, is an elementary treatise on poetics in the Anushṭubh metre in a lucid and easy style. The language is flowing and sonorous, and the work is admirably suited for the beginners. The author, as already stated earlier, is identical with the author of the Prasanna-rāgaha, and flourished before A.D. 1300. Rasaratnapradipikā by Allarāja, son of Hammīra, the Chāhamāna king, is also a small treatise intended for beginners.

Sobhākara in his Alamkararatnakāra, which was considerably popular in Kashmir, deals with the whole field of poetics in 112 Śūtras. He has elaborated them in his commentary and illustrated them by examples drawn from varied sources; in what are known as Parikarālokas, he has summarised his views on particular topics. Yaśaskara, in his Devisataka, wrote verses in praise of Devi in illustration of the figures of speech defined in the Śūtras of this work. Sobhākara criticises Ruyyaka's work, and Jayaratha, author of the Vimarsini (first quarter of thirteenth century), defends Ruyyaka against our author's attacks. Sobhākara, therefore, must have written this work in the latter part of the twelfth or the early part of the thirteenth century.

Older and younger Vāgbhaṭas make considerable use of Mammāta, but do not admit Dvāni and owe allegiance to the pre-Dvāni schools. Daḍin is of considerable authority with them, and the younger Vāgbhaṭa admits some of Rudraṭa's poetic figures. However, they cannot be directly affiliated to the older Alamkāra and Riti schools on account of the influence of the new school on them. Both were Jainś, and the Vāgbhaṭaśāntaṅkāra, by the senior Vāgbhaṭa, is a small work of 260 Kārikās divided into five chapters. The object of both was to present a popular and easy epitome of the subject, without adhering to any particular school, but following the traditional notions in an eclectic spirit without critically systematising them with reference to a central theory.
The chief merit of the *Ekāvālī* of Vidyādharā lies in its systematic compilation and arrangement. Consisting of Kārīka, Vṛtti, and examples, the *Ekāvālī* is divided into eight unmeshas, the first following the *Dhvanīloka*. The work is modelled on the *Kāṇḍaprabhāsa*, while the treatment of poetic figures is mainly based on Ruyyaka. The examples are by the author and contain panegyrics of his patron, king Narasīhha I of Orissa. As the *Rādhravasudhikaraka* of Śingabhupāla (c. A.D. 1330) refers to the *Ekāvālī*, and as either the Gaṅga king Narasīhha I or Narasīhha II was the patron of Vidyādharā, it appears that the work was composed at the end of the thirteenth or the beginning of the fourteenth century.

(2) Dramaturgy

There are only two works dealing mainly with dramaturgy which appeared during this period. *Niityadarpaṇa* by Rāmachandra, a pupil of the Jain polymath Hemachandra, deals with the science of dramaturgy in four sections called Vivekas. The first, Nāṭaka-nirṇayaviveka, gives a complete description of the Nāṭaka; the next, Prakaraṇādyekādaśarūpanirṇayaviveka, deals with the remaining eleven forms of Sanskrit drama; Vṛtti (dramatic styles), Rasa (sentiment), Bhāva (emotion) and Abhinaya (gesture) are considered in the third Viveka; and the fourth deals with Laksāṇas (particulars) common to all Rūpakas (dramatic compositions). Rāmachandra divides dramatic compositions into twelve kinds, the eleventh being Nāṭikā (which other writers on dramaturgy take as an upa-rūpaka, a sub-variety) and the twelfth, Prakaran; but no illustration is given of the last type.

Sāradatanaya, in the last section of his *Bhāvaprakāśana*, describes ten types of drama and twenty types of Nṛtya. In regard to the nature and functions of a Nāṭaka, Sāradatanaya mainly follows Bharata and Dhananjaya and mentions the views of Kohala and Mātrigupta whenever these two differ.

IV. Metrics

Kṣemendra of Kashmir, who lived in the middle of the eleventh century, had also composed a work on Sanskrit metres, in addition to his works on various other subjects. This work of his is called *Suṣṭtatilaka* and contains three chapters. The first defines about twenty-six Sama-Varna Vṛittas of four lines each, which are common, easy, agreeable, and suitable to all sorts of poetry. The second and the third chapters are, however, more important, since in them Kṣemendra discusses and illustrates the defects and merits of some
metres as also their suitability for particular situations and events. Such a discussion is done by Kshemendra alone, and no other writer appears to have done this. In this connection, Kshemendra points out how some poets show a fondness for one particular metre even though they employ many different metres. This would indicate that he had tried to analyse the metrical practice of a few at least among the distinguished poets.

Vṛttaratnaśākara is a very important work on Sanskrit metres. An early manuscript of this work is dated Saṅvat 1190. It lies at Jaisalmer and forms part of the same palm-leaf manuscript which contains Jayakirti’s Chhandonuśāsana and Virahānka’s Vṛttajñāti-samuchchaya. The author, Kedara, could not have been much older than Hemachandra, who did not evidently know him because he does not allude to him in his otherwise exhaustive work on metres. Nevertheless, it is an old work and has suffered from many variant readings introduced by different scribes and commentators. This would show that the work was very widely used and was highly popular in different parts of India.

Hemachandra, the famous Jain monk and versatile writer of Gujarāt, composed his Chhandonuśāsana about A.D. 1150. This is a very exhaustive work on Sanskrit, Prakrit, and Apabhraṃśa metres. It is really Hemachandra who gave a final sanction and sanctity to the Apabhraṃśa language and literature by his two works, viz. the Chhandonuśāsana and the Sabdānuśāsana. The one exalted the Apabhraṃśa poetry while the other rendered a similar service to the Apabhraṃśa language. Before his time both the Apabhraṃśa language and literature were neglected and even despised by Jain monks and other learned men of ancient India. Sanskrit was indeed the cultural language of the nation as a whole; but even the Prakrits had assumed a sanctity for the Jain monks, since their religious literature, particularly their Āgamas, were composed in the Prakrit language. No such position was possible for the poor Apabhraṃśa, which was for several centuries a language of the ordinary masses, used for men’s daily transactions, but considered unfit for literary compositions, whether of a religious or of a philosophical nature. It was, however, the high poetical faculties of poets like Svayambhā and Pushpadanta, both of whom were Jain laymen, which compelled the attention and admiration of appreciative critics among the Jain monks and secured a place of honour for the Apabhraṃśa language and literature. Hemachandra’s Chhandonuśāsana is clear, methodical, and exhaustive like all other scientific treatises composed by him. It consists of three parts, viz. the Sutras, the Vṛttri, and the illustrations composed by Hemachandra himself. This last feature
LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

of the text has somewhat diminished the value of the otherwise
most valuable work for the study of the history of the \textit{Apabhra\'s\'a}
poetry. But we cannot blame Hemachandra, since he elected to
compose his illustrations, rather than select them from the existing
\textit{Apabhra\'s\'a} poems, because he wanted to introduce the names of
the metres in the illustrative stanzas themselves, as he had done in
the case of the Sanskrit metres as well as the \textit{Pra}krit ones.

Jayakirti's \textit{Chhandonu\'si\'ana} was composed just about this time,
though Jayakirti and Hemachandra do not seem to have known each
other. It is, however, more likely that Jayakirti was an older con-
temporary of, but was not known to, Hemachandra, when the latter
composed his \textit{Chhandonu\'si\'ana}. Jayakirti was a Digambara Jain
and probably hailed from the Kannada districts in the South. In
the seventh chapter of his work, Jayakirti defines several old
Kannada metres, of course in Sanskrit. He does not give any
illustrations, though he mentions a few Digambara poets by
name. He defines only Sanskrit metres in the remaining chapters
and does not show his knowledge of any \textit{Pra}krit poetry or metres.
As in the case of the other metricians of the Middle Ages, Jayakirti's
definitions serve as illustrations as well and contain the name of
the defined metre. From the names of some of the Sanskrit metres
used by Jayakirti, it would appear that he belonged to a different
tradition from that of Hemachandra. The only manuscript of
Jayakirti's \textit{Chhandonu\'si\'ana} is lying at Jaisalmer and is dated
Sanvat 1190.\textsuperscript{40a}

\textit{Kavidarpa\'La} by an unknown author is the last important work
of this period. This work closely follows Hemachandra and at times
quotes him. It is composed in the \textit{Pra}krit language, except the
fourth chapter which deals with the classical Sanskrit metres and
is written in Sanskrit. The mode of treatment in this work, however,
materially differs from that of Hemachandra. It sometimes quotes
from older poets. The only known manuscript of this work is accom-
panied by an exhaustive commentary, again of an unknown author
who vastly quotes from Hemachandra. The \textit{Kavidarpa\'La} is alluded
to by Jinaprabha Suri in Sanvat 1365, in his commentary on Nandi-
sena's \textit{Ajita\'si\'intistava}.

V. Politics and Practical Life

The \textit{Artha\'si\'stra} of Kautilya does not seem to have inspired
works of similar nature, so that the only work of some importance
during this period is the \textit{Laghv-Arhan\'iti} of Hemachandra which
again is only an abridged form of his big work in \textit{Pra}krit. Written
in a metrical form it deals with such topics as war, punishments,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

law, and penances. In his treatment of law he generally follows the Manu-smriti. Of still less importance are the Yuktikalpataru ascribed to Bhoja, the Nītiratnākara of Chaṇḍesvara, and a few others. Reference has already been made above to Sukra-nitītāra which, in its present form, belongs to a later period. Some scholars, however, believe that the original text was composed in this age.

VI. Medicine

Chakrapāṇidatta (eleventh century) from Bengal, son of Nārāyaṇa, and a Kūlina of the Lodhravali family, wrote commentaries called Ayurvedadīpikā and Bhāṣumati, respectively on Charaka and Suśruta. His Chikitsārāmanīgrahā, besides being an authoritative work on the subject, is important in the history of Indian medicine for marking an advance in the direction of metallic preparations which had been introduced since the time of Vāgbhaṭa and Vṛinda. He also wrote Sabdachandrikā, a vocabulary of vegetable as well as mineral substances, and Dravyagūnasāṅgraha, a work on dietetics. Suresvara or Sūrapāla, court-physician to king Bhimapāla, was another Bengali writer of this period. His father and grandfather were court-physicians to kings Rāmapāla and Govindachandra respectively. Suresvara wrote Sabdaprādīpa and Vṛikhāyurveda on medical botanical terms, and Lohapaddhati or Lohasārasva on the medical use and preparation of iron. Vāŋgasena (middle of eleventh century), very probably an inhabitant of Bengal, relied on the works of Suśruta and Madhava in the preparation of his Chikitsāsarasmāṅgraha. The Śālihotra of Bhoja (eleventh century?) is an interesting book giving information about the horses, their diseases and remedies. Miśra wrote his Chikitsāṃritā in A.D. 1224. Sāṅgadārā's Sanhitā mentions the use of opium and quicksilver, and stresses the importance of pulse in diagnosis. Among the works which deal with the metallic preparation calculated to give perpetual youth, invisibility, etc., are the Rasārvana (c. A.D. 1200), and the Rasaratnasamuchchaya, ascribed in some texts to Vāgbhaṭa and in others to Āsvinikumāra or Nityanātha, which has been assigned conjecturally to A.D. 1300.

VII. Mathematics and Astronomy

First in point of time comes the Trisāti of Śrīdhara (eleventh century), but the most important treatises on Mathematics are the two chapters entitled the Līlavatī and the Bijaganita in the Siddhānta-śīromāṇī of Bhāskarāchārya (twelfth century). The form of the Līlavatī is quite unique, since a beautiful maiden is addressed by the author. As regards contents, it is based on the earlier works of
Brahmagupta and Śridhara and deals with combinations. The Bija-
gaṇita forms the most complete and systematic work on Algebra.

On Astronomy we have the Rājaṃśīlākāra, ascribed to Bhōja, and the Bhādeva of Satānanda, both belonging to the eleventh century. Two chapters from the Siddhāntaśiromani, viz. the Grahaṅgaṇita and the Gola, are the most valuable writings on Astronomy. The Karanakutāhala was written by the same author a little later. As in Mathematics, so in Astronomy, no scholar contributed anything of importance after Bhāskaracārya.

VIII. Music

The Śaṅgītakaranda, attributed to Nārada, perhaps belongs to the eleventh century. It deals with music and dance in two separate parts. To the twelfth century belongs Jagadekamalla Pratāpachakravartin, whose Śaṅgītachāṇḍaṃsi deals with music and dancing in five chapters. The encyclopaedic Mānasollāsa (which will be dealt with in the concluding section) of Somesvara devotes 2500 verses to music and musical instruments, and touches on new phases of music, specially prabandhas. The most comprehensive treatise on the subject is the Śaṅgītaratnākara of Śrāvaṇadeva, son of Soḍāhala and Auditor-General of the Yādava king Śiṅghaṇa of Devagiri. The Śaṅgītaratnākara, in seven chapters, not only embraces the views of all ancient writers, but also contributes original definition and discussion. It deals with musical notes, melodies, technical terms, measures of time, musical instruments, dancing, acting, etc. Pārvadeva, son of Ādideva and Gaurī, a Jain writer of the same period, has also written a similar work, the Śaṅgītasamayasiira, dealing with all aspects of music in nine adhikaraṇas.

IX. Ancillary Sciences

Most of the works dealing with the ancillary sciences are of a late date, and in spite of the fact that some of them do not strictly belong to this period they are all brought here together for the sake of convenience.

Śilpaśāstra or Architecture is the subject of various anonymous works like the Mayamata, the Śanatkumāravāstuśāstra, the Mānasāra, and the Śilpatattva of Śrīkumāra (sixteenth century). The Hastīgūrvaśāstra, dealing with elephants, is in the form of a dialogue between king Romapīda and sage Pālakāpya. The Mītāṅgaliḥ of Nārāyaṇa pertains to the same subject. On horses and their diseases we have many works like the Aṅganāstra ascribed to Śālihotra, the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Asvāyuṃveda of Gaṇa, the Aśvavaidyaka of Jayadatta and Dīpankara, and the Aśvachikitsā of Nakula. On the subject of jewels may be mentioned the Agastimata, the Rāmnaparikṣhā of Buddha Bhaṭṭa, and the Nāvaratnaparikṣhā of Nārāyaṇa Paṇḍita.

On the science of love nothing has been written to dislodge the Kāmasūtra of Vāsyāyana from the status that it enjoys today. The Paṇchāṣṭāgāka of Jyotirāvāra and the Ratirahasya of Kokkoka belong to the twelfth century. Of the later glosses on the Kāmasūtra may be mentioned the Jañamaṅgalā of Yaṣodhara (thirteenth century) which explains some of the obscure words in the Kāmasūtra.

On the subject of omens we have the Samudratilaka, begun by Durlabhharāja in A.D. 1160, and finished by his son Jagadeva, who also wrote an independent work on dreams, the Śaṃkachintāmaṇi. Similarly the Adbhutasāgara was begun by Ballālāsena of Bengal and completed by Lakṣmīnāsana. The Narapatijayachārya Svarodaya of Narahari (twelfth century) describes how the results of war and other adventures can be prognosticated with the help of diagrams. A late work dealing with geomancy is the Ramalabhataya of Bhayabhaṇjanaśārman.

4. RELIGIOUS AND PHILOSOPHICAL LITERATURE

I. Purāṇas

The corpus of the Purāṇas was complete in the Gupta Age, and additional matter was incorporated during the subsequent period.31 There was not much activity in this direction in our period. Dr. Hazra’s researches on the chronology of the Śruti chapters in the Purāṇas reveal that the bulk of most of the major Purāṇas, as we have them at present, was finalised by the end of the ninth century A.D. Only a few chapters dealing with topics such as holy places, vṛṇāśramadharma, yugadharma, stri-dharma, glorification of the Brāhmaṇas, worship of Śālagrama, tulasi, planets, Devi, etc., merits of digging tanks, dedicating trees, gardens and reservoirs, etc., were interpolated during the period under review in the Vāyu, Mātṛya, Padma, Bhṛhma, Brāhmaṇavarta, and Gavāda Purāṇas. The Śruti chapters of the Skanda Purāṇa are generally late, not earlier than the tenth century A.D.32

II. Dharmasūtra: Commentaries, Nibandhas, and Ritual Literature

In the Dharmasūtra literature the present period represents the phase of commentators and writers of Nibandhas (digests). As
compared to commentaries on particular Smritis, the digests con­
tained a synthesis of all the dicta of the ancient Smritikāras on
various topics of Dharma. The general tendency from the twelfth
century onwards was to compose digests rather than commentaries.
The reputation of the Mitakshara, Vījñāneśvara's celebrated com­
mentary on the Yēṣaṃvaṣka-ṣmṛti, has thrown into shade all the
digests, anterior or contemporary, with the result that digests
have not hitherto received sufficient attention. The Gaekwad's
Oriental Series has recently made available some volumes of the
cyclopaedic Kṛtyakaḷpataru by Lakshmīdīra. In our survey of
the Dharmaśāstra literature we shall describe in brief, in a chrono­
logical order as far as possible, important writers and their
contributions.

Dhāreśvara, or Bhojadeva of Dhārā (A.D. 1000-1055), composed
several works on different branches of learning, such as poetics,
grammar, medicine, astrology, yoga, etc. Views of Dhāreśvara or
Bhojadeva have been cited in various works on Dharmaśāstra. It is
not known whether his work (or works) on Dharmaśāstra was a
commentary or an independent digest. Jitendriya and Bālaka are
two writers from Bengal on Dharmaśāstra who are known only
from frequent references in the works of Jimutavahana, Raghunandana,
and Sūlapāni. Jitendriya, who flourished about A.D. 1000-1050, wrote an extensive work on Dharmaśāstrā which
was completely eclipsed by the learned treatise of Jimutavahana.
Bālaka,44 from East Bengal, also before A.D. 1100, wrote on
several branches of Dharmaśāstra, such as Vyavahāra and
Prāyaścitā. Halāyudha, the jurist, who is frequently quoted by
Lakshmīdīra, Chandēśvara, Harinātha, Raghunandana, Mitramiśra,
and others was another Bengali writer of the same period. His work
on Dharma is now lost, and the author is to be distinguished from
several namesakes.45 Bhavadevabhāṭṭa of the Sāvanḍa gotra of the
Kauthumā school of Sānveda, born in Siddhālagramā in Rādhā
(W. Bengal), was the son of Govardhana and Saṅgokā, and flourished
about A.D. 1100. He was a versatile genius and composed several
valuable works on Dharmaśāstrā. Vyavahāratīlaka is his work on
judicial procedure, hitherto undiscovered; Karmāṇusūḥāṇapaddhati
(or Daśakarmapaddhati, or Daśakarmadiyikā) deals with the ten
principal rites and ceremonies to be performed by Sānveda Brāhma­
ṇas; Prāyaśchittanirūpaṇa describes various modes of expiatiations;
and Tautāṭīmatatīlaka is on the doctrines of Mīmāṁsā from the
standpoint of Kumārila. Govindarāja was the son of Mādhavabhaṭṭa
and lived on the banks of the Ganga. He wrote a commentary on the
Manu-ṣmṛti, and Smṛtiśamājārī dealing with all principal topics of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Dharmaśāstra. The Mitākhara, which mentions Medhātithi and Bhojaraja, is silent about Govindarāja, and the Hārālatā of Aniruddha (c. 1160) quotes Govindarāja, so that the time of Govindarāja was between A.D. 1080 and 1140.46

The Kṛityakalpataru of Bhaṭṭa Lakshmīdhara occupies a unique position among digests, and has exercised great influence on early writers of Mithilā, Bengal, and Northern and Western India. Bhaṭṭa Lakshmīdhara, son of Bhaṭṭa Hṛdayadhara, was the minister for peace and war of king Govindachandra of Kanauj.47 He was well read in Śruti, Purāṇas, Mīmāṃsā and all branches of Vedic learning, and was a critical and conscientious compiler who evaluated his sources and selected the correct text. The Kṛityakalpataru has been composed according to a well-conceived plan, and its different topics follow the sequence of the different stages and activities of life as laid down in the Śastras. No other digest attempts such a logical and comprehensive presentation of the Śruti material. The book is divided into fourteen Kāṇḍas, and helps one to discharge the Rishi Trayā (three debts, viz. that to seers, manes, and gods). The first Kāṇḍa (Brahmachari-kāṇḍa), which deals with the duties of a boy up to the end of his studentship, sets out the means for discharging the debt to seers (Ṛishiṅīṃa). The directions about discharging the debt to the ancestors (Pitrīṅīṃa) are found in the next three Kāṇḍas. The second, Grihaśthā-kāṇḍa, treats of the duties of the householder, the third, Āhnikā-kāṇḍa, deals with the daily ritual, and the fourth, Śrīdāhi-kāṇḍa, tells about the offerings to the manes. In the fifth, Dāna-kāṇḍa, we get an encyclopaedic treatment of gifts; consecration of images is dealt with in the next part, Pratishṭhā-kāṇḍa; worship forms the subject of the seventh, Pūjā-kāṇḍa; pilgrimage to holy places is treated in the Tirtha-kāṇḍa, the eighth; and various vows in the Vrata-kāṇḍa. These show the means of discharging the Devaṅīṃa. Purificatory rites are described in the Śuddhi-kāṇḍa, the tenth, and all kinds of propitiatory rites in the Śānti-kāṇḍa, the thirteenth. These two Kāṇḍas show how to attain peace of mind (Śanti) which is preliminary to final release (mokṣa). Viramitrodaya is the only other book that deals with mokṣa, which forms the last part of the Kṛityakalpataru. Duties of kings are dealt with in the Rajadharma-kāṇḍa, the eleventh, and civil law and procedure in the Vyavahāra-kāṇḍa, the twelfth. These two are concerned with man’s civil environment and its tuning to the progress towards ultimate beatitude.

In the Dharmāśāstra literature the position of Vījñāneśvara’s Mitākhara is analogous to that of Patañjali’s Mahābhāṣyā in Grammar, or Māmaṭa’s Kāvyaprakāśa in Poetics. It represents

332
the essence of Dharmaśāstra speculation that preceded it, and became the fountain-head from which flowed fresh streams of exegesis. In several matters of Hindu law Mitākṣharā is of paramount importance in modern law-courts in the whole of India, except Bengal (where Dīyabhāga prevails) and Mahārāṣṭra (where Maṇḍukkha prevails). The Mitākṣharā is not a mere commentary on the Yājñavalkya-smṛti, but is in the nature of a digest of Smṛiti materials. It brings together numerous Smṛiti passages, explains away contradictions among them on the basis of the Mīmāṃsā rules of interpretation, brings about order by assigning proper scope to various dicta, and effects a synthesis of apparently disconnected Smṛiti injunctions. Vījñāneśvara, of Bharadvāja gotra, was the son of Padmanābha-bhaṭṭa, and pupil of Uttama. He wrote the Mitākṣharā when king Vikramārka (Vikramāditya) was ruling in Kalyāṇa.46

Aparārka or Aparāditya, a Śilāhāra king (twelfth century A.D.), wrote a commentary on the Yājñavalkya-smṛti in the nature of a digest, far more voluminous and extensive than the Mitākṣharā. Bhaṭṭa Lākṣmiṇīvara, Vījñāneśvara, and Aparārka were contemporaries. Contrary to the view of MM. Kane who stated that Vījñāneśvara is named in the Kalpataru, Prof. Rangaswami Aiyangar shows that the references are spurious, and that the Mitākṣharā was composed between A.D. 1118 and 27 (c. A.D. 1120), i.e. 20 years later than the latest date assigned to it by MM. Kane.43 The known dates of Govindachandra, the Gahaḷavala ruler of Kanauj, who was the patron of Lākṣmiṇīvara, range between A.D. 1114 and 1154, and Kiṛitya-kalpataru was probably composed in the early part of his patron’s reign. Aparārka’s commentary was composed after A.D. 1126. Both Lākṣmiṇīvara and Vījñāneśvara were commissioned by their respective patrons, powerful rulers claiming Śāṃrāja, to compose a work on Dharmaśāstra which would be a fitting memorial to their regime. The Śilāhāra king also was fired by the same idea. The production of these three cardinal works in the same generation is a mark of the powerful wave of Hindu feeling stimulated by the Muslim incursions and the rise of new states.

To the same period probably belongs Jīmātavāhana, the first of the celebrated Bengali triumvirates. Only three of his works are known, viz. Kālaviveka, Vyavahiirāmāṇāṭrikā, and Dīyabhāga. Kālaviveka contains discussions as to appropriate times for the performance of religious rites and duties, etc. Vyavahiirāmāṇāṭrikā deals with the elements of judicial procedure and the eighteen titles of law, etc. Dīyabhāga is the principal authority in Bengal in modern law-courts in matters of inheritance, partition, strī-
dhana, re-union, etc. Some of its peculiar doctrines, which are sharply opposed to Mitakshara, have been discussed above.\textsuperscript{49} Jimutavahana has been variously placed, from the eleventh to the sixteenth century, but he most probably flourished in the first half of the twelfth century.\textsuperscript{50}

Sridhara's Smrityaarthasastra deals with the usual Dharmaśāstra topics. He was the son of Nāgabhārtri Vishuubhaṣṭa of Viśvāmitra gotra. As he quotes the Mitakṣara, Kalpataru, and Govindaśāja, and as he is quoted by Smṛiti-chandrikā and Hemādri, his period is between A.D. 1150 and 1200. Aniruddha was a resident of Vihaṇḍapuṇḍaka on the Gaṅgā, and was a Dharmādhyakṣa. He is one of the early and eminent Bengali writers on Dharmaśāstra. His Hṛdayalīlā, intended for the Sāmaṇerī, deals with the observance of impurity consequent on birth and death. In his Pitṛdayita (or Karmopadesinipaddhati) Aniruddha speaks of rites and observances connected with Śrāddha, and also includes a treatment of general duties. Aniruddha is probably identical with the guru of Ballālasena. Ballālasena composed at least five works of which two are known to exist. His Dānasāgara is an extensive digest in 70 sections on matters relating to gifts; Adbhutasāgara is a comprehensive work on omens and portents, their effects and means of averting them; Acharasāgara, Vratasāgara, and Pratishthāsāgara are yet to be unearthed.\textsuperscript{51} Halāyudha, son of Dhananjaya of Vatsa gotra, was the Dharmādhyakṣa of king Lakṣmanasena. His Brähmaṇasarvatva is a guide for the Kavya Śākhā Brāhmaṇas of the Śukla Yajurveda to the Vedic mantras employed in the daily rites and periodical ceremonies, and deals also with the various daily duties.

The Smṛiti-chandrikā of Devanābhaṭṭa is a well-known and extensive digest on Dharmaśāstra, the printed text dealing with the Śrūṇākṣa, Ahnikā, Vyavahāra, Śrāddha, and Āśvāca Kāṇḍas. There was probably a Kāṇḍa on Pṛayāśchītta also. Devaṇābhaṭṭa (or Devana, Devānanda, or Devaṇa) was the son of Keśavābhaṭṭa and a Somāyājī. He quotes most profusely from various Smṛitis, and thus affords valuable assistance for reconstructing and checking MSS. and text-editions. As Devaṇābhaṭṭa refers to Viśnunāśvara, Aparārka, and Smṛityarthasāra, he is later than A.D. 1150, and Hemādri's quotations from Smṛiti-chandrikā fix A.D. 1225 as the lower limit for Devaṇābhaṭṭa's date. Almost contemporaneous with Devaṇābhaṭṭa, or slightly earlier (as he does not refer to Aparārka), was Varadarāja according to K. V. Rangaswami Aiyangar; MM. Kane, however, places Varadarāja between A.D. 1200 and 1300.\textsuperscript{52} Varadarāja's Vyavahāraśīrṣa is the foremost digest, held in
high esteem in South India. It is a comprehensive work dealing with both procedure (Vyavahāra-mātrikā) and substantive law (Vyavahāra). Complete and self-contained, the work shows originality in interpretation, independence, and mastery of Mīmāṃsā and Nyāya. No writer or work later than the Mitākṣarā is quoted in the Vyavahiirinirvṛti (or Varuḍarjya). Another writer from the South, or at least very familiar with its usages, is Haradatta who has several commentaries to his credit, which may be regarded as models of ideal commentaries. He wrote Anākula on the Apastamba Gṛhya-sūtra, Anāvīlā on the Aśvalayana Gṛhya-sūtra, Mitākṣarā on the Gautama Dharma-sūtra and Ujjvalā on the Apastamba Dharma-sūtra. He also wrote Padamāṇījā, a commentary on the Kāśikā of Vāmana and Jayāditya. He lived between A.D. 1150 and 1300, very probably nearer the earlier limit.

Hemādri, son of Kāmādeva and grandson of Vāsudeva, of Vatsa gotra, was a very voluminous writer. His Chaturvarga-chintāmaṇi is an encyclopaedia of ancient religious rites and observations, quoting frequently from the Śmrītis and Purāṇas. Hemādri was a profound student of the Pūrva Mīmāṃsā. He was in charge of the imperial records of Mahādeva, the Yādava king of Devagiri (A.D. 1261-71). Hemādri is said to have written a commentary on Saunaka's Praṇavabala; Kāivalyadīpikā, a commentary on the Muktaṇḍala of Bopadeva, the famous author of Mugdhabodha grammar, who was a friend and protegé of Hemādri; Śrāddhakalpa (different from Śrāddhakīlā) according to the rules of Kātyāyana; and Ayurvedarasāyanā, a commentary on the Ashtāṅgahṛdaya of Vāgbhaṭa. Hemādri's name is associated with numerous temples built in a peculiar style of architecture (called Hemādropanti), and he is said to have invented the Moḍī script current in Mahārāṣṭra.

Kullukabhaṭṭa, author of Manvarthamuktāvalī, the most famous of the commentaries on the Manu-smṛti, came of a Varendra Brāhmaṇa family of Bengal residing in Nandana, and was the son of Bhāṭa Divākara. He wrote the commentary in Kāśi. The commentary is concise, lucid, and to the point, never prolix. It is not an original work, but is based on the commentaries of Medhatithi and Govindarāja. Kullukabhaṭṭa also composed a digest named Śmrītisāgara. As he mentions Bhoja, Govindarāja and Halāyudha, Kullukabhaṭṭa's date falls after A.D. 1150, but it is before A.D. 1300 since Chāṇḍēsvara's Rājanitiirattākara quotes his explanations. So his period is between A.D. 1150 and 1300, probably A.D. 1250. Śrīdatta Upādhyāya, one of the earliest of medieval Mithila Nibandhakāras, is the author of several works. His Achārādarśa is a manual
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

of religious duties of Śukla Yajurvedins, while the daily duties for Śāmaavedins are treated in the Čhandaśāhika. In the Śameya-
pradīpa he describes the proper time for various observances, while the Pitṛbhakti and Śrāddhakalpa are manuals on Śrāddha rites respec-
tively for the Yajurvedins and Śāmaavedins. As he names Hari-
hara and Hālāyudha, Śrīdatta flourished after A.D. 1200, but prior to
A.D. 1325, as his Śameya-pradīpa is mentioned by Chaṇḍēśvara.

III. Philosophy

Gaṅgāsa's Tattvachintāmaṇi (last quarter of twelfth century) is a standard text of the modern Nyāya school. The tradition was con-
tinued by his son Vardhamāna, whose Nyāgamandhaprakāśa (A.D. 1225) is a commentary on Udayana's Nyāyatārпряyparipāśuddhi. Ruchīdatta's Makaraṇḍa develops Vardhamāna's views. Among Jain logical works may be mentioned Devasūri's Pramāṇayatattvālokālaṅkāra and Prabhbākara's Prameyakalamalāntanā. The Buddhist and Jain thinkers stressed the purely logical aspects of
the Nyāya, rather than its metaphysical implications, and thus paved the way for modern Nyāya which is pure logic and dialectics. Later Nyāya works openly accepted the Vaiśeṣika categories, and Varadarāja's Tārketaraksā is an important treatise of the syn-
cretic school which brings the twelve objects of the Nyāya as well
as the six categories of the Vaiśeṣika under Prameya. Tarkasaṅg-
graha by Anānadaśāna (or Anānagirī) refutes the Vaiśeṣika theory of atomic creation, while Kesavamśāra's Tarkabhāṣā com-
bines the Nyāya and the Vaiśeṣika views.

Srivatsa's Lilāvatī (eleventh century) is a commentary on Prasastapāda's Padārthadharmanasāṅgara. Sivādevīya's Saptapādārthi presents Nyāya and Vaiśeṣika principles as parts of one whole. Bhōja's Rājamārtanda is a work of considerable value in the Yoga-
śāstra.

Sriharsha's Khaṇḍanakhandakābhyāya is the greatest work on Advaita dialectics. It points out the vanity of philosophy as the human mind is unable to compass those exalted objects which are suggested as worthy of pursuit by its speculative ingenuity. Ama-
lāṇanda's Kalpataru is a commentary on the Bhāmati, and Padma-
pāda's Pañchāpiḍikā is commented by Prakāśātmā in his Pañcha-
piḍikāvivaranā.

Yādavapraṅkapā, for some time teacher of Rāmānuja, lived at Kāśi in the eleventh century. In his independent commentary
with Advaitic leaning, he holds that Brahma is changed into chīt
(spirit), achīt (matter), and Īśvara (God), while according to Rāmā-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

nuja, the distinction between Brahman and Isvara is unauthorised. Born in Sriperumbudur about A.D. 1017, Ramanuja learnt Vedanta from Yadavaprakasa. Besides commenting on the Brahma-sutra and the Bhagavadgita, he wrote the Vedanta-sara, Vedanta-saṅgraha, and Vedāntadiipa. He preached the doctrine of salvation through bhakti, which he made out to be the central teaching of the Upanishads, the Bhagavadgītā, and the Brahma-sūtra. His commentary on the Brahma-sūtra was accepted as the commentary by the Vaishnavas. He restored many Vaishnava temples, and converted many people to Vaishnavism. His influence is seen throughout the later history of Hinduism.—Madhva, Vallabha, Chaitanya, Rāmānanda, Kabir, Nānak, and others being largely indebted to his theistic idealism.

Nimbārka, a Telugu Brāhmaṇa of Vaishnava faith, lived between the period of Rāmānuja and Madhva. His commentary on the Brahma-sūtra, called Pārijātasaṅgraha, is an exposition of his theory of Dvaitadvaita, or dualistic non-dualism, in which Jīva, Īsvara, and Jagat are considered distinct.

Madhva (or Pūrnaprajña, or Anandatīrtha), the promulgator of the dualistic philosophy, was born about A.D. 1198 near Udipi. He holds Viṣṇu to be the supreme godhead, and pleads for the prohibition of bloodshed in connection with sacrifice. He wrote commentaries on the Brahma-sūtra, the Bhagavadgītā, and the Upanishads, as also an epitome of the Mahābhārata, and a gloss on the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. These works, along with his Anuvyākhyāna, help to elucidate his philosophy.

5. GENERAL REVIEW

We may conclude this survey by noticing certain important contributions of this period to Sanskrit literature. In the domain of Kāvyā, this period witnessed Naishadhiya, the last of the Mahākāvyas, and the growth of anthologies, which had made a beginning in the previous epoch. The historical Kāvyas reached the high watermark in Kalhaṛta's Rājatarangini, a critical work of outstanding merit. In lyrics, special mention must be made of Jayadeva's Gita-govinda, which occupies a distinctive place in the history of Sanskrit poetry. In its novelty and completeness of effect, the Gita-govinda is unique and marks the beginning of a new literary genre.

Under technical and scientific literature, some valuable work is found in grammar, lexicography, poetics, and music. Three new grammatical systems were started during this period, and the tendency to write popular and scholastic texts is found in poetics.
and grammar. Among various lexical works Vaijayantī, Viśva-prakāśa, the voluminous Nāṇārthārṇava-saṃsārakahepa, and the works of the polymath Hemachandra merit special reference. Kāya-prakāśa, Mammatā’s standard work on poetics, is a valuable legacy of this period, and Bhoja’s Śrīgarāprakāśa also is an important contribution. Sārāgadeva composed the most comprehensive work on music, which received great impetus during this period.

The most valuable contribution, however, is to the Dharma-śāstra literature in the shape of both commentaries and digests (nibandhas) which reached a high watermark of perfection and comprehensiveness. Among commentators the period shows a galaxy of celebrities like Vijñāneśvara, Aparārka, Kūḷāka, and Govindaśā; the nibandhakāras include Lakṣmīdhara, author of the voluminous Kṛitya-kaḷapatara, Ballālasena of Achāraśāgara, Dānāśāgara, Adbhutasāgara, etc., Varadarāja of Vīvahāra-nirṛṣya, Devanābhaṭa of Śrītī-chaṅḍikā, Hemadri of Chaturvargācīrtī, and several others. Mention must also be made of Śimūtavāhana, the promulgator of the Dāyabhāga law.

Another valuable contribution is the encyclopaedic works, which made their first appearance during this period. Reference has already been made to the Śrīgarāprakāśa, Kṛitya-kaḷapatara, and Chaturvargācīrtī. We may also refer here to the Mānasollāsa or Abhilāshīrtha-cīrtī by king Someśvara.24 This encyclopaedia, in five Prakaraṇas of twenty chapters each, deals with one hundred different topics connected with the royal household and royal court. The first Prakaraṇa explains general and religious ethics, social service, manufacture of idols, and diseases and their remedies. Polity, under seven heads, and private and inter-state law are dealt with in the second Prakaraṇa, while the third concerns itself with architecture, picture-drawing, and painting in all details, iconography, and pleasures of domestic life. Various forms of amusements and recreations form the subject of the last two Prakaraṇas, which incidentally treat of arithmetic, preparation of calendars, astrology, augury, omens, palmistry, and training and medical treatment of horses and elephants. There are also particulars about such diverse topics as mining, alchemy, gems and precious stones, marriage and child-rearing, cookery, liquor, beverage, music (which has already been referred to earlier), conveyances, and scents. It is a veritable thesaurus.

Though the period is not rich in creative art and works of outstanding merit, the general output is prolific, and the performance is on the whole creditable, comparing favourably with the earlier
period, especially when the disturbed political conditions are taken into account.

B. SANSKRITIC

I. PALI

1. Language

Pali, the language of the sacred canon of the Buddhists of Ceylon, Burma, and Siam, has a long history since the third century B.C. The language in its early stage shows a composite nature, and some well-marked stages in its evolution can be discerned in the earliest literature. This evolution, however, stopped after some time and the language became completely stereotyped since the period of Pali commentaries (fifth century A.D.). It is in this stereotyped Pali that most of the non-canonical works of the Buddhists are written, with this difference that as time went on the language came to be more and more approximated to Sanskrit under the influence of later classical Sanskrit literature. There are very few archaic forms used in later non-canonical literature.

The Pali of non-canonical literature therefore shows in general the same linguistic features as are seen in the early prose of the canon. The consonant clusters of Sanskrit are generally simplified and there are noticed other changes also due to assimilation, etc. In Morphology the cumbrous Sanskrit grammar is much simplified, though some of the old forms are still preserved. In the process of simplification analogy plays a great role. The dual is completely lost both in declension and conjugation. Similarly the dative and ablative cases are lost except in masculine and neuter nouns in -a. In conjugation, the distinction between special and general tenses and moods is lost. Most of the roots of other classes are brought over to the first or the sixth class. Even the distinction between the two Padas and voices is obliterated in most cases.

This period of the Pali non-canonical literature is marked by later chronicles, literary pieces, manuals, commentaries and some scientific works on grammar, poetics and metre, and law. Even then it lacks works of secular interest such as those on astrology and astronomy, mathematics and logic. Though there are some works on the life of the Buddha, there are few works of the type of Kāvya or dramas.
2. Non-canonical Literature

(a) Chronicles

Some of the works of the semi-historical nature which we may notice during this period are the renderings into Pāli of old Sinhalese works.

1. The Bodhivamsa or the Mahābodhivamsa of Upatissa, which has been assigned by some to the first half of the eleventh century A.D., has already been referred to above.\(^2\)

2. The Dāṭhāvamsa or the Dantadhātuvaṇṇa is an epic in five cantos by the monk Dhammakitti, narrating the history of the tooth-relic of the Buddha. Originally the work was written in the Sinhalese in the first half of the fourth century A.D., but later on it was rendered into the Māgadhīpāsa by Dhammakitti at the request of Parakkamo, the commander-in-chief of Ceylon. This rendering took place in the beginning of the thirteenth century A.D. The work is important for the knowledge of the history of the tooth-relic, which, according to this work, was brought to Ceylon by prince Dantakumara of Ujjain from Dantapura, the capital of Kaliṅga. It also narrates the early life of the Buddha and his work in Ceylon, the distribution of Buddha’s relics, and the various miracles worked by the tooth-relic. The work is a specimen of fine poetry written in different metres. Its language is artificial Pāli having long compounds.

3. The Thiipavamsa of Vachissara also belongs to the thirteenth century. It gives in three chapters not only the account of the Topes erected over the relics of the Buddha, but also the previous births and the life of the Buddha, and the account of the missionary activities carried on in different countries by the Buddhist monks.

4. The Chūlavamsa is not an independent work but forms an appendix to the Mahāvamsa of Mahānāma (sixth century A.D.). It consists of various addenda written by different authors at different times. The first author to continue the chronicle of Mahānāma was monk Dhammakitti who lived in the thirteenth century A.D. Both the early chronicles, Dipavamsa and Mahāvamsa, end with the reign of king Mahāsena (fourth century A.D.). The Chūlavamsa begins with the reign of Mahāsena’s son, Sirimeghavaṇṇa, and ends with king Sirivikkamārajāsiha (A.D. 1798-1815), giving an account altogether of more than a hundred kings.

5. The Attanagaluvihiiravamsa gives in prose and verse the history of the temple of Attanagalla, giving an account of the life of king Sirī-Saṅghabodhi and his wife. The date of the work is the second half of the thirteenth century A.D.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(b) Literary Pieces

The tendency towards Sanskritisation of Pāḷi, noticed sometimes in the Pāḷi chronicles, is more markedly felt in the literary pieces.

1. The Anāgatavamsa of Kassapa, perhaps of the eleventh century A.D., is a continuation of the Buddhavamsa, inasmuch as it gives an account of the future Buddha. The manuscripts of this work do not agree with each other in form or content. One of the manuscripts is in prose and verse, and contains a dialogue between the Buddha and Sāriputta on the future decline of Buddhism. Another manuscript is in complete prose, and narrates the account of the ten future Buddhas including Maitreya. A third manuscript is in verse alone, giving an account of the future Buddha Maitreya and his contemporary Chakravartin Saṅkha. According to this account this future Buddha would be born in a rich Brāhmaṇa family and would later on renounce the world. Having obtained the highest knowledge he would then set in motion the wheel of law. As this account of the future Buddha is not given in the extant Buddhavamsa, Dr. Law considers the present Anāgatavamsa a later elaboration of an earlier account which formed the closing section of the original Buddhavamsa.

2. The Jinaśāṅkara of Buddharakkhaṇa, written in A.D. 1156, is a Kavya of the type of ornate poetry. It describes the life of Buddha till he attained the highest knowledge.

3. The Jinacharita of Vanaratana Medhaṅkara is another poem of a similar nature, describing the life of the Buddha according to the narrative in the Nidāna-kathā. The author lived in the reign of Bhuvaṇaikabhaṇu I (acc. c. A.D. 1273). The language of the work is simple and natural.

4. The Pajjamadhu of Buddhapiya is a Sataka type of poetry praising the Buddha in 104 stanzas. It describes the beauty and the wisdom of the Buddha in a language which is very Sanskritised. The date of the work is the thirteenth century A.D.

5. The Saddhammpāyana describes in 629 stanzas the various topics and the ethical doctrines of the Buddhist religion. Its date is probably the thirteenth or fourteenth century A.D. It resembles, in content, though not in form, the Telakaṇṭha-gāthā.

6. The Rasavāhini is a collection of 103 narratives having their settings in India and Ceylon. The work was originally written in Simhalese, but later on translated into Pāḷi by a monk Rajhapāla, and afterwards corrected by Vadehathera in the thirteenth century A.D. The work is written both in prose and verse giving edifying legends exhorting the people to follow the Dhamma.
The art of writing manuals in Pāli has its origin in early days but it was only in later centuries that they came to be written in large number, presenting their themes in concise forms. Three such works may be noted in this period.

Reference has already been made above to the Khuddakasikkha of Dhammasiri and the Mulasikkha of Mahāsāmi which are two short summaries of the Vinayapitaka. The works are very popular in Burma. The same popularity is also shared by the Abhidhamma manual, the Abhidhammattha-sangaha of Anuruddha. It has given rise to a large number of commentaries. The Ceylonese tradition refers the work to the first century B.C., but the work was probably written in the twelfth century A.D. The work deals with psychology and ethics from the Buddhist point of view. Paramatthavinichchaya and Nāmarūpaparichchhedā are two other philosophical works attributed to Anuruddha.

The activity for supplying commentaries to canonical works, though started very early, was given a great impetus by the Council which the Thera Mahākassapa is reported to have called during the reign of Pārākramabahu I (A.D. 1153-1186). The Tikās prepared by this Council include such works as the Sāratthadipani (on Samantapadi), Paṭhamasāratthamaṇjasā (on Sumanāgalasūlamā) and many others, but of these only the Sāratthadipani by Śāriputta is preserved. Śāriputta is also credited with another commentary Linatthapalaśānam on the Papaśīchasūdāni and an independent work Vinayasāṅgaha.

This exegetical activity was carried on further by Śāriputta’s pupils, and one of them, Chhapada, a native of Burma, is known to have written a large number of commentaries. It has been already mentioned above that many exegetical works gathered round the Abhidhammattha-sangaha of Anuruddha in the twelfth century A.D., and one of these was written by Chhapada. The Vamaśīthapokkhiṇi, a commentary of unknown authorship, on the Mahāvamsa, was also probably written in the twelfth century A.D.

The grammatical works of Pāli have been put into three categories: (i) works of the school of Kācchāyana; (ii) those of the school of Moggalāna; and (iii) the Saddanitī.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

To the school of Kachchayana in this period belong the Nyāsa of Vimalabuddhi and the Suttaniddeya of Chhapada (twelfth century). The Sambandhachintā of Sanigharakkhita, dealing with Pāli Syntax, also belongs to the twelfth century. To the following century belongs the Rūpasiddhi or Padarūpasiddhi of Buddhapiya (the author of the Pajjamadhu) which is only a reshuffling of Kachchayana's work.

Thera Moggallāna founded a new grammatical school with his Vyākaraṇa called the Saddalakkhaṇa and a commentary on it, the Moggalājanapāchikā. The author, who belongs to the twelfth century, has drawn upon old Pāli and also Sanskrit grammars. Piyadassin, one of the pupils of Moggallāna, prepared a summary of his teacher's work in his Padasadhana. Vanaratana Madhanikara (different from the author of the Jinacharita) wrote about A.D. 1300 the Payogasiddhi which is considered to be the best work in this school.

The Saddanīti of the Burmese scholar Aggavainsa (A.D. 1154) is based on the grammar of Kachchayana and some other Sanskrit grammatical works. The first eighteen chapters of the work are called the Mahāsaddanīti and the remaining nine are called the Chullasaddanīti.

(ii) Lexicography

The Abhidhānapādippikā of Moggalāna (different from the grammarian) belongs to the end of the twelfth century. It is worked out on the model of Amarakosha and is divided into three parts dealing with synonyms, homonyms, and indeclinables.

(iii) Poetics and Metre

There are very few works in Pāli on these subjects. The Subodhālakṣikā of Sanigharakkhita, belonging to the thirteenth century, deals with Pāli poetics. The Vuttodaya, by the same author, and the Kāmaṇḍakī and the Chhandaśīviti are Pāli works on metre.

(iv) Law

The oldest Burmese law-book is the Dhammavilāsa-Dhammasatthā written by monk Sāriputta or Dhammavilāsa (thirteenth century). It is a very important work for it forms the basis of the later legal literature of Burma.

343
II. THE JAIN MAHARASHTRI AND OTHER PRAKRITS

1. Narrative

The Prakrit literature of this period is mostly of the narrative type. It deals with the life of the Jain teachers and heroes and incidentally narrates other stories. The principal language used for the purpose is the Jain Maharashtri, which is primarily the language of the non-canonical works of the Jains and gives us a number of important narrative works. Its use is attested since the second or third century A.D., and is continued up to the fourteenth century. Besides the lives of Jain teachers it also gives us some beautiful romances. There are also some stotras and works of scholastic interest composed in Prakrit. It may be added that most of the works detailed below are in verse.

The Surasundari-chariya of Dhanesvara was written in A.D. 1038 in the town of Chandravati. It is a big romantic work containing 4000 gāthās which are divided into sixteen parichchhedas. The main story narrates in an easy style the love affair of a Vidyādhar chief, but many other stories are also included within this framework. To the second half of the eleventh century A.D. belongs the work of Chandraprabhamahattara which describes the life of Vijaya-Chandrekavain. It contains 1063 gāthās and gives eight stories describing the eight different ways of worshipping the Jinas.

The Mahāvīra-charita of Gūrachandra,5 who belonged to the Chandrakulina-gacchha, was composed in A.D. 1082. It describes the life of Mahāvīra on the basis of various legends up to his attaining the supreme knowledge. It also describes the former lives of Mahāvīra. The work is composed in prose and poetry, employing a variety of metres, and contains about 50 Apabhraṃśa verses. The language of the work is grammatically chaste. “This is mainly due to the influence of classical Sanskrit works, that always exercised their influence over Prakrit throughout its career and later became more and more dominant so as to render it servile and imitative. The style of Gūrachandra is obviously influenced by writers like Kālidāsa and Bāṇa, from whose classics he derives many of his ideas and expressions. The result of his Sanskrit studies is the use of long and intricate compounds, figures of words only based upon paranomasia, and rare poetic words only to be met with in Sanskrit. It also led to the decrease of purely Deśi words which were substituted by tatsama and tadbhava words”56

The life of Rishabha is described by Vardhamana in his Adinātha-charita composed in A.D. 1103. It has 11000 gāthās and
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

contains many Apabhraśa verses. Another work by the same author is the Manoramā-charita in 15000 gāthās and written in A.D. 1083. Another work describing the life of a Jina and containing many Apabhraśa verses is the Śāntinātha-charita of Devachandra, the teacher of the famous Hemachandra. The author belonged to the Purnatallagachchha and wrote his work in A.D. 1103. In A.D. 1104 Śānti Śāri wrote his Prithvīchandra-charita in 7500 verses and in A.D. 1108 Devabhadra wrote Pārvanātha-charita, describing the life of the 23rd Tirthakara, at Bhṛigukachchha. The Śomatinātha-charita by Somaprabha was composed in the second half of the twelfth century and describes the life of the 5th Tirthakara.

The greatest Jain writer of the twelfth century was the famous Hemachandra who bore the title Kalikāla-Sarvajña. He was born at Dhandhūkā in A.D. 1088 and died in A.D. 1172. He was patronised by Chaulukya king Jayasīrha Siddharāja and was responsible for the conversion to Jainism of his successor, king Kumārapāla. He is the author of various works—scientific and literary. The Kumārapāla-charita was written by him mainly to illustrate the rules of Prakrit Grammar. The last two cantos of the work are written in various Prakrit dialects like Sauraseni, Magadhi, Paisāchi and Apabhraśa.

Of the other biographies of the twelfth century mention may be made of the Neminātha-charita in 5000 gāthās composed by another Hemachandra, an elder contemporary of the above and belonging to the Maladhārigachchha. His pupil Śrīchandra wrote a big epic, the Muniśvatsavāmi-charita, in A.D. 1135. His co-student, Lakṣhmanaguni, wrote Supāsanā-ha-chariya in some 8000 gāthās in A.D. 1142. Besides narrating the life of the 7th Tirthakara, the author also gives various stories to illustrate the vows of Jainism. Another Śrīchandra of the Chandragachchha composed the Sanatkumāra-charita of 8127 verses in A.D. 1157. The story of Sanatkumāra, the Chakravartin, is full of all sorts of romantic and supernatural elements.

There are also some Prakrit works of the type of life stories. In the twelfth century Haribhadra wrote the Mallinātha-charita giving the life of the 19th Tirthakara. Another work by the same author is the Chandraprabha-charita in 8000 verses. Somaprabha, a younger contemporary of the famous Hemachandra, is the author of the Kumārapāla-pratibodha written both in prose and verse. In five prāstāyas it enumerates various kings of the Chaulukya dynasty and contains a dialogue between king Kumārapāla and his teacher Hemachandra on the precepts of Jainism. Some parts of the work are also written in Sanskrit and Apabhraśa. Another
work by the same author, the *Sumatinātha-charita*, as stated earlier, describes the life of the 5th Tirthakara and also narrates various stories illustrating the principles of Jainism. Towards the end of the thirteenth century comes the *Malayasundari-katha* of unknown authorship. It gives the love story of a prince Mahābala and princess Malayasundari and also many other popular tales based on miracles and magic feats. The prince and the princess are often separated, but are reunited every time. In the end the prince becomes a monk and the princess a nun.

2. Stotras and Didactic Works

The Jains have composed numerous stotras, many of them being in Sanskrit. Of the Prakrit stotras of this period mention may be made of the *Ullāsīkama-thaya* of Jinavallabha and the *Ajīgasanti-thaya* of Viragadvāsin. The former is in glorification of Ajita, the second Tirthakara, and the latter that of Sānti, the 16th Tirthakara. The *Mahāvīra-stava* is written in an elaborate style in which the same words are used in different meanings. Some of the stotras are composed in more than one language. Thus the *Śaṅbhāṣā-nirmita-Pārvavajnavastava* by Dharmanavardhana, written about A.D. 1200, is in six languages, viz. Sanskrit, Māhārāṣṭrī, Māgadhī, Sauraseni, Paścāti, and Apabhraṃśa.

The *Śīlovasamālā* by Jayakirtī is a didactic poem in 116 Prakrit gathās. Its date, however, is uncertain. The *Gāthākośa* by Munichandra (twelfth century A.D.) is a Prakrit anthology of moral sayings. Another work of a similar nature is the *Bhavavairīga-sataka* describing the vanity of existence and such other things.

Of scholastic interest is the *Narepeṣa* in Prakrit, with a Sanskrit commentary, by Jinachandra Gaṇin, written about A.D. 1015. He has also written *Vācuṭattra-Prakarana*, a treatise on the nine fundamental truths of Jainism, viz. jīva, ajīva, puruṣa, piśa, āśrama, samāvāra, bandha, nirjāra and moksha. Another important work of the eleventh century is the *Jivavīrīya* by Sānti Sūrī in 51 Āryā verses. It discusses the nature of beings after dividing them into various classes. In A.D. 1113 Maladhārī Hemachandra Sūrī wrote *Bhavabhāvanā* in 531 gathās. Devendra Sūrī wrote in the thirteenth century the first five *karmagranthas* which describe in great details the entire doctrine of karman.

3. Grammars

The most complete grammar of Prakrit languages was produced in this period by the famous Hemachandra. In the eighth chapter
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

of his Siddhahemachandra he deals with Mahārāṣṭrī, Śauraseni, Māgadhī, Paśčāchi, Chālukyapaśāchi and Apabhraṣṭā. He has also supplied us with his own commentary which has come down in two recensions, long and short. Hemachandra has also composed a Deśīnāmānalī which is a lexicon of Prakrit words.

After Hemachandra comes Kramadīśvara who flourished in the twelfth or thirteenth century A.D. The eighth chapter of his Saṅkṣiptatātaśāra is devoted to the treatment of Prakrits. In his discussion he generally follows Vararuci. But Trivikrama, who flourished in the thirteenth century, follows Hemachandra in his Prākṛita-labdānusāsana. He belonged to the Western school of grammarians which is based on the so-called Vālmikisūtras. From his teaching arose the grammars of Hemachandra and others belonging to this school. The other representatives of the school are Lakṣmi­dhara, who composed Śaṭbhāṣāhāchandrīkā, and Śrīnīharaja, the author of the Prākṛitarājatanā. The Eastern school of Prakrit grammarians which originated with Vararuci and descended through Śaṅkeśvara and Kramadīśvara is represented by Purushottama, Rāmaśarman and Mārkandaṇeya. Purushottama’s Prākṛita-agama was written in A.D. 1265 and has come down to us only in a single manuscript in Newārī characters. The other two authors are rather late, Rāmaśarman’s Prākṛita-kalpataru being assigned to the sixteenth century and Mārkandaṇeya’s Prākṛitasaṃśāra to the seventeenth century. They all divide Prakrits into four categories—Bhāṣā, Viśāṣā, Apabhraṣṭā and Paśčāchi—and discuss the principal Prakrits under Bhāṣā.

4. Language

The various processes of phonetic changes that are observed in Pāli are carried still further in the Prakrits. Thus the change of n > s occurs more in Prakrits than in Pāli. The vowels i and u are softened to ē and ŏ and y to i. Surds are often changed to sonants and the mute element of aspirates is dropped. There is also a tendency to drop uninitial consonants. In morphology, analogy has played a great role in the simplification of the inflexional system. The dual and dative are wanting in declension and some more terminations are added. The distinction between the masculine and feminine declension is, however, preserved. In conjugation, the roots are generally brought over to the a type. Of the various tenses and moods those that mostly prevail are the present, the future, and the imperative. The past is generally expressed by participial constructions.
III. APABHRAŚAŚA

1. Literature

The important works in Apabhraśa during the period A.D. 1000-1300 noted below show that they have originated among the Jains. Most of them narrate the lives of Jain teachers or heroes or are collections of tales preaching the practices of Jain religion.

1. The Pajjusa-kahā (Skt. Pradyumna-kathā) of Śūrśa narrates in fifteen cantos the life of Pradyumna Kumāra, son of Krishnā and the 21st Kāmadeva out of the twenty-four recognised in Jain hierarchy of remarkable persons. Śiddha, who died after writing the first eight cantos, belonged to Bambhāvāla in the domain of Ballāla. If this Ballāla was the Mālava king said to have been killed by Yaśodhāvāla, a feudatory of Kumārapāla, Śiddha may be placed in the early part of the tenth century. The work was completed by Śūrśa who added the last seven cantos.

2. The Kathākośa of Śrīchandra contains 53 tales intended for moral and religious instruction. It belongs to the tenth or the eleventh century A.D. The Sanskrit Prasasti tells us that the author was the pupil of Virachandra of the Kundakunda line of teachers.

3. The Pārśapūrāṇa of Padmakirti describes in eighteen sandhis the life of the 23rd Tirthakara. It also probably belongs to the tenth or eleventh century A.D.

4. Somaprabha in the twelfth century wrote a hymn in honour of Pārśva in an extremely artificial style.

5. The Sukumāla-charitra by Sirihara (Skt. Śrīdhara) describes the life of Sukumāra who later became a saint. Paumāva (Skt. Padmadeva) referred to the story of Sukumāla Svāmin in his sermon in a Jain temple at Valāda ruled over by king Govindachandra. The poem was composed by Śrīdhara at the instance of Kumāra, one of the listeners at the sermon who was directed to Śrīdhara by the saint, on his desire to know more about the story. The work records Monday, 3rd day of the dark fortnight of Agrahāṇa in 1208 (presumably V.S. = A.D. 1151) as the date of composition.

6. The Sudarśana-charitā of Nayanandi narrates in twelve sandhis the life of a Jain hero. The author, who composed his work in A.D. 1043, was the pupil of Maḍikyanandi of the Kundakunda line of teachers.

7. The Kālaśeśarūpakulakāma is a didactic poem in 32 rhymed verses. It was written by Jinaḍatta Śūri (A.D. 1075-1154), a contemporary of Hemachandra.
8. The Nemināha-charita⁶ was written by Haribhadra, the pupil of Śrīchandra. He was a contemporary of Hemachandra, and completed his work in A.D. 1159 on the day of the conversion of king Kumārapāla. He was also the author of the Prakrit work Mallinātha-charita. The work is written in a poetic style describing many scenes from nature.

9. There is yet another Nemināha-charita (Skt. Neminatha-charita) by Lakhamadeva (Skt. Lakshmaladeva) in four cantos. The poet was the son of Rayaṇa (Skt. Ratuadeva) and was born at Gōṇḍa in Mālava. The work does not mention the year of its composition though the days of commencement and completion are given. The MS. records that it was a gift made in VŚ. 1510 (=A.D. 1453), so that it was composed earlier.

10. The Yogasūra or Dobāśāra of Yogichandra Muni belongs to the twelfth century. It contains 108 stanzas on spiritual didacticism. The Vairāgīyasūra by Suprabhācharya is a similar poem in 77 dohā verses teaching general moral principles of Jainism. The author was a Digambara Jain. His Apabhraṃśa belongs to the Eastern school represented by Rāmaśarman Tarkavāgīśa.

11. Amarakīrti's Chakkāmmovāṣa (Skt. Shatkarmopadesa) in fourteen cantos deals with the sixfold duties of house-holders (viz. worship of god, attendance on the teacher, study of sacred texts, self-restraint, austerity, and charity) with illustrative stories. Fifth in succession from Amīyagai (Skt. Amitagati), probably the famous author of the Dharmaparikṣā, Subhāṣītataratnasandoha, etc. who flourished at the end of the tenth century, our poet belonged to the Māthurasaṅgha. The poem was composed on Thursday, the 14th day in the second fortnight of Bhāḍrapada, VŚ. 1247 (=A.D. 1190), at Godāhaya in Māhayādesa of Gujaravīśa, probably identical with Godhra in Mahikantha Agency in Gujarat.⁶² Amarakīrti records seven other works composed by him, viz. Nemināha-charita, Mahāśīra-charita, Jagšāra-charita, Dhammacharīya-tippaṇa, Subhāsiyaraṇaṇiḥi, Dhammavesachāḍāmaṇi, and Jhāṇapāṇa.

12. Another work dealing with the religious vows of Jain house-holders is the Anuvrata-ratnapraviṣṭapā (Skt. Anuvrata-ratnapraviṣṭapā) by Lakṣhamana (Skt. Lakshmana) in eight cantos. Lakṣhamana was the son of Śāhula and Jaitā of the Jāyasa (Jayaswal) family. He dwelt at Rāyavaḍīya on the Yamuna, which was also the residence of his patron Kaṇha, the great minister of Aḥavamalla of the Chauhān family. Chhandavāda on the Yamunā was the capital of Bharatapāla, Aḥavamalla's fourth ancestor. Rāyavaḍīya and
Chhandavāda have been respectively identified with modern Raibhā and Chandwār near Firozābād in Agra District.63

Besides its language and subject matter the work is important for shedding light on a whole line of rulers of Chauhān family ruling near Agra in the thirteenth century. The work was completed on Thursday, the 7th day of the dark fortnight of Kārtīka, V.S. 1313 (=A.D. 1256).

13. The Sañjanaṁaśjīṛi is a work on ethics in 35 dohā verses with an exhaustive commentary. It was composed in the thirteenth century by Mahesara Śūri. It teaches the practice of self-control as the sure way to obtain release.

14. Peculiar interest attaches to the Sanddarṣisaka, probably the only non-religious Apabhraṃśa work of the Rāsa type, by Abdul Rahamān, son of Mirasena, a weaver of the Muslim community, residing in the western part of India. The author was well versed in Sanskrit, Prakrit and Apabhraṃśa. The work consists of 223 stanzas divided into three sections called Prakramas. The first is introductory, while in the second section, we have an interesting account of the message sent by a love-lorn lady from Vijayanagara or Vikramāpura (in old Jaisalmer State) to her husband who had gone to Khambhāṭṭa (Skt. Stambhatūrtha) or Kambhāṭṭa (Cambay) to earn riches and had not cared to return for years. The messenger is a traveller going to Cambay from Mūlaṣṭāna (Multān). The last section gives a description of the six seasons in the context of Virahini (lady in separation). The portrayal of sentiments is vivid and natural, and common experience is found reflected in the picture of the various seasons. The work has been assigned to the twelfth century A.D.64

2. Language

The origin and nature of Apabhraṃśa have been discussed above.64 Vararuchi, the oldest Prakrit grammarian, does not mention Apabhraṃśa. Hemachandra is the first grammarian to treat this language with other Prakrits in his Haimavīṭhakaracā, and later grammarians like Trivikrama, Lokahārā and Sinharāja have merely followed him.

Linguistically Apabhraṃśa occupies a position midway between the Prakrits of the dramas and the modern Indian languages. The tendencies of assimilation of consonant clusters, elision of intervocal consonants, and such others observed in the Prakrits are carried still further in the Apabhraṃśa. Some of the other distinguishing features are the weakening of the final vowels (e.g.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

\( a > -a \), -s and -ss > -n-, -m- > nasalised -n-, and nasalisation of vowels.

In declension as well as conjugation many of the suffixes disappear. Thus the distinction between the nom. and acc. sg. is completely lost. As in other Prakrits the general tendency in the Apabhraṃśa is to reduce the inflexional system to a particular norm. The most distinguishing features of the language are the nom. sg. ending in -u, nom. pl. -a, inst. -eḥ and -hiṃ, gen. sg. -aḥa, asa and the preponderence of ḥ in terminations of nouns and verbs. There is also to be noticed the use of half words -kara, -karaḥ, etc. to emphasise case relations. In pronouns the large variety of Prakrit forms is much reduced. In conjugation the present and future are of course used; to denote past tense past participles are used; though the imperative is employed, optative becomes less frequent; the use of fortifying pleonastic affixes like -illa, -alla, -cilla is also witnessed. To form absolutives we get a number of suffixes like -i, -iu, -avi, -evi, -evirju, -eppiju, etc. The vocabulary of the language is further enriched by the addition of many desi words.

The Apabhraṃśa represents an important stage in the development of Indo-Aryan languages—a stage “in which the Prakrits die and out of which the Bhāṣās or vernaculars are born.” Already during the preceding period (A.D. 750-1000) Western or Sauraseni Apabhraṃśa came into use as a pan-Indo-Aryan literary speech binding together the spoken provincial dialects. It continued right down to the end of the period under review and established itself as a literary language, nearest to the vernaculars, from Bengal to Western Punjab and Sind, and from Kashmir and Nepāl to Mahārāṣṭra. The birth of these vernaculars or the New Indo-Aryan speeches which gradually came to their own in their respective areas was the most important cultural event of this period (A.D. 1000-1300).

IV. MARĀṬHĪ

Marāṭhī is one of the most important modern Indian languages having a very vast literature extending over a period of 700 years, and so far as the literature of the pre-British period is concerned, almost half of it still lies unpublished. It contains a very valuable and unique record of the spiritual experiences of the mystic saints from almost every class of society in Mahārāṣṭra. The classical Marāṭhī poetry bears witness to all the poetical excellences set forth by the Sanskrit rhetoricians. It is extremely rich in ballad-poetry and folk-songs of a superior type, and after the re-
naissance in the nineteenth century, it has produced masterpieces which are the pride of any land.

Marathi, with its different dialects, reigns supreme in the region which extends from the river Tapi, in the north, to the Tungabhadra in the south. Bounded on the west by the Arabian Sea, it includes four districts of the Madhya Pradesh, four districts of the Hyderabad State, the whole of Berar and ten districts of Mahārāṣṭra proper, as well as the old Marāṭha States on the border,—not to speak of the remnants of the Marāṭha conquests in the north, in Central India, in the south, and the eastern parts of India. Marathi is claimed as the mother-tongue by over 21,800,000 souls, and covers an area of about 149,120 square miles.67

The origin of the Marathi language is shrouded in mystery. According to some, it goes back to the early Vedic settlements of Agastya in Janasthāna, when the first Vedic Apabhraṃsā must have been formed as the earliest nucleus, which grew in the course of centuries, owing to several kinds of culture-contacts and vicissitudes of fortune, and came to be recognized as Marathi in the early centuries of the Christian Era. The earliest epigraphical record is that of the Śrīvaṇa Belgola Inscription of Chāmuṇḍarāja, the Prime-Minister of Rachamalla Ganga, dated A.D. 983, which contains a regular Marathi sentence: “Śrī Chāmuṇḍarājaṇe karavigaleṇ.”

Similarly, the earliest reference to Marathi literature is the quotation of a Marathi song in the well-known work Mānasollāsa or Abhīlasādhārtha-chintāmaṇi of the Chalukya king Somesvara III written about A.D. 1130, wherein it is also mentioned that Mahārāṣṭra women were in the habit of singing orī-songs while cleansing the rice of its husk.69

The first great author of note in Marathi is Mukundarāja (latter half of the twelfth century), who wrote, among others, his well-known philosophical work Vivekasindhu, in A.D. 1190. He was a great Sanskrit scholar, a veritable sage, endowed with miraculous powers, a follower of Śrī Śaṅkarāchāryya in his Advaitism, and a spiritual preceptor of Jaitrapāla or Jayatpāla who probably was a petty chief in Berar. Other works ascribed to him are Paramāṁrita, Pavanavijaya, Mālastambha, Paśchikarāya, etc. They are all philosophical treatises.70

Three great religious sects dominated Mahārāṣṭra at this time. The Nātha-saṃpradāya, which is said to have originated with Ādi-nātha Śaṅkara, was renovated by Mātsyendranātha, at the beginning of the tenth century A.D.71 Gorakh-nāth, his chief disciple, was a great propagator of this School, throughout the
length and breadth of India, preaching the doctrine of Yoga and salvation through meditation. There are a few Marathi songs attributed to Gorakh-nath, and the remnant of the Gorakhsha-Amaranātha-Sainvādā preserves one of the oldest specimens of Marāṭhī prose.72 His disciple Gahinātha was the chief exponent of Nāthism in Mahārāṣṭrā.73 It was he who initiated Nivṛttinātha, the elder brother of Jīnādeva, the celebrated author of Jīnānevari, which is the crowning achievement of this sect in Marāṭhī. It is undoubtedly one of the great masterpieces of the world. Though a mere commentary on the Bhagavadgītā,74 one finds in it philosophy and poetry of the highest kind flowing in complete unison, sending its readers into veritable raptures on account of its sweet melody, homely style, wealth of illustrations, depth of feeling, flights of fancy and the most lucid exposition of the philosophy of the Bhagavadgītā. Jīnādeva was a precocious saint and a very great genius. He wrote this immortal work at the early age of 19 only. Amṛṭānubhava is another great work of his, dealing with the Upanishadic philosophy, and more than 25 smaller works have been ascribed to him, besides a collection of over a thousand poems in the Abhanga metre.75 This Gāthā or collection of the Abhanga poems and Jīnānevari are among the chief works of the Vārakarī-sampradāya which believed in Bhakti or devotion as the means of salvation. After receiving his initiation from Nivṛttinātha, Jīnādeva initiated his younger brother Sopānadeva and his youngest sister Muktāmbī, all of whom were great Vedāntins and known for their saintliness. All of them wrote in Marāṭhī, but only a few works of Nivṛttinātha, Sopānadeva and Muktāmbī have come down to us. They voluntarily put an end to their own life as soon as they thought that the mission of their life was over, and when they were just in their twenties.76

The Mahānubhāva is a reformist sect of the Hindus with a philosophy77 and a code of manners78 of their own, and was founded by Chakradhara in A.D. 1263.79 Chakradhara hailed from Gujarāt, but adopted Mahārāṣṭrā as his field of action and Marāṭhī as the language of his new faith which he preached in the latter part of his life. Like Gautama Buddha he did not leave behind him any particular book of his own which could be regarded as the Book of Faith. His teachings have been collected from the memoirs of his immediate disciples who were learned Pandits and who wrote their works in the first half of the fourteenth century. Nāgadevāchāryā,80 the chief disciple of Chakradhara, was the organising genius of the sect to which he gave a definitive form and a book of tenets. The self-exclusive rigour of the Varāṇāsrama
dharma of the caste-Hindus was not observed by this sect which threw open the path of self-renunciation (Sannyāsa) to all. They did not believe in the image-worship, but at the same time regarded Śrīkṛṣṇa of Dvārāvati and Śrī-Dattātreya of Māhūr (Hyderabad State) as the most perfect forms of the God-head which are believed in by the Hindus in general. A peculiar sanctity is attached to the spots and places visited by the Founder, which are enshrined and worshipped. After the death of Nāgadevāchārya the sect was split up into thirteen different branches (śāmānīyas), and they are called after the names of the principal disciples of Nāgadevāchārya. They had originally thirteen code-scripts which were later on increased to about twenty-five. The Mahānubhāva sect can reasonably boast of having contributed richly to the formal side of Marāṭhi literature, and, after the manner of Sanskrit, the Mahānubhāva writers have introduced such types of literature as the sūtras, the commentaries, the expositions, the lexicons, works on rhetorics, prosody, and grammar, etc. Like the Buddhists and the Jains they had their legendary biographies and memoirs. They even prepared descriptive indices of the place-names and of the legends associated with the life of their Founder. Their monumental works were written within the first three centuries, but owing to the secretive character of the followers of this sect, most of this literature still remains in the dark.81

Of the published works, Chakradhara-Siddhānta-Sātrī of Kesobāsa (written about A.D. 1290) deal with the doctrine of the sect, Līlācharitra (A.D. 1288) of Māhāmbhaṭa84 is the legendary biography of the founder, Vaiṣṇavacarana (about A.D. 1278) of Dāmodara,85 Rukmiṇīsvaśānta (A.D. 1292) of Narendra86 and Śīrāvadha (A.D. 1200) of Bhāskarābhāṣṭa87 are some of the longer narrative poems of great poetical value. Uddhavagītī (A.D. 1300) of Bhāskarābhāṣṭa is a Marāṭhi commentary on the 11th Canto of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. Mahādīśā was their earliest poetess89 who composed nuptial songs, called ṣaṅgāvī, some time before A.D. 1287 so far as the first part is concerned; the second is said to have been written within the next 16 years.90

After Nānadeva, the literary Mahārāṣṭra was dominated by the poet-saints of the Bhāgavata School who worshipped the God Viṭṭhala of Paudhabārūp. Nāmadeva91 was the greatest exponent and propagator of this School. They believed in the ultimate merging of the Individual Soul into the Supreme Soul, through the path of Devotion (Bhakti), which consisted of nine varieties, whose common features were the perpetual repetition of the
name ‘Rāma-Krishna-Hari’, or ‘Vīthala’, periodic peregrinations to Paṇḍharpur and also to Ālandi where Jānadeva and his living burial, fasting on the 11th day of each fortnight of the Hindu calendar month and on Mondays, feeding the Brāhmaṇas and chance-guests (atithis), service to saintly persons, abstinence from meat and wine, listening to Harikirtanas and reading of religious books. This sect, on account of its periodic peregrinations to Paṇḍharpur, was known as the Vārakari-sampradāya, and it is alleged that it existed in Mahrārāṣṭhra since the ninth century A.D., or even earlier. This sect regarded all castes alike and did not observe any restrictions of untouchability, etc., in their religious association.

Nāmadeva is said to be a contemporary of Jānadeva and is supposed to have been the youngest of the galaxy of poet-saints who belonged to different castes and whose lyrical outbursts are very popular throughout the length and breadth of Mahrārāṣṭhra. Gōrā, the potter, headed the list which comprised Senā, the barber, Sāmvatā, the gardener, Chokhā, the pariah, Narahari, the goldsmith, Jōga, the oilman, etc. Their close association has contributed very largely to bridge the gulf between the higher and the lower castes in Mahrārāṣṭhra, and by their poetry and saintliness they have popularised the teachings of the philosophy of Vedānta in all the strata of society.

Nāmadeva was a tailor by caste, but was as great a saint as he was a gifted poet. He had a very large family consisting of more than a dozen members, including his personal attendant Janābāi, all of whom had turned poets and had, it is alleged, contributed their mite in fulfilling the vow of Nāmadeva to compose a hundred crore Abhaṅgas. A small remnant of a few thousand Abhaṅgas is all that we have got today, but they show genuine marks of rare beauty, possessing sweet melody, naïve simplicity, and a direct appeal which are generally the distinguishing characteristics of spontaneous lyrics. Nāmadeva’s vigorous and extensive propagandistic tours in the cause of the Bhāgavata Dharma and enchanting Kirtana led to the creation of a definite school of poetry in Mahrārāṣṭhra which held sway for more than four centuries, and of which the celebrated poet-saint Tukārāma was the direct product. Nāmadeva’s fame had spread far and wide in his own days and he had the privilege of being quoted in the Granth-ṛāheb of Guru Nānak, the founder of the Sikh religion. He had a long life of 80 years and died at Paṇḍharpur in A.D. 1350.

Janābāi, the female attendant of Nāmadeva, was a poetess, whose devotional songs form a class by itself in the Abhaṅga
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

literature. They are known for their simplicity, depth of feeling, and all-absorbing devotion. Her life was a life of dedication and she had the same unbounded love for Nāmadeva as she had for Viṭṭhala. Though she claimed constant companionship of God, she was essentially a woman, and the charm of her poetry is heightened on account of this.

The spread of the Bhāgavata Dharma in Mahārāṣṭra had resulted not only in the fusion of the warring sects of the Vaishnavites and the Saivites in this part of the country, but also affected the followers of other religions as well, especially the Muslims, who had come under the influence of Kabīr. They also wrote devotional songs and spread the gospel of toleration in religious outlook, recognizing and respecting different manifestations of the Supreme Spirit. In literature this new cult laid great emphasis on singing the glories of the early youth of the Lord Kṛṣṇa, on the teachings of the Bhagavadgītā and the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in general and on the stories from the epics like the Rāmāyaṇa and the Mahābhārata. The celebrated commentary on the Bhagavadgītā by Jānadeva inspired generations of scholars to vie with him in writing commentaries on the Lord's Song, and we have more than a score of them, but none attains the great poetical and intellectual height set by the model. The Kirtana-sampradāya, which is peculiarly Mahārāṣṭrian, gave a great impetus to a colourful variety in poetry and music, and the special technique that was evolved was strictly adhered to throughout the centuries that followed. The first part consists of a spiritual sermon on a suitable text, and the second part contains an entertaining story illustrating the truth of the philosophical discussion or the moral teaching of the first part, interspersed with music composed by the Kirtanakara himself or called to memory from the compositions of other poets. It is thus an admixture of prose and poetry of a highly eloquent nature accompanied by excellent music. It was a very great and effective weapon in the hands of these religious preachers and almost the only recreation of an intellectual type for all the classes and the masses. The moral teachings and the philosophical truths were supplied by our Epics and the Purāṇas which have dominated the literature of Mahārāṣṭra ever since. Many a poet, young or old, has chosen to sing of the Rāmāyaṇa and Mahābhārata, and more especially of the life of Śrīkṛṣṇa, in general, so that the major part of Marathi poetry, from this period onwards, deals with topics concerning these only. There are more than twenty epitomes of the Mahābhārata and not less than a hundred and twenty versions, great or small, of the Rāmāyaṇa—not to speak of the individual legends and episodes! These great monuments of Aryan

356
In addition to the utterances of the devotional prayers to Vishnu or Viṣṇu or Viṣṭhala by the poet-saints of the Bhagavata School and the Akhyānas (legendary episodes) composed by them for the Kirtanas, we also find the traces of the Avadhūta cult, of the Jāngamas and the Lāṅgāyats, the Gāṇapatiyas and a number of other religious sects in the poetical remains that belong to the thirteenth and the fourteenth centuries of the Christian Era. In this classical period, poetry meant essentially a religious poetry.99

V. BENGALI

1. Language

The Aryan languages of Eastern India, viz. the three Bihārī speeches of Bhojpuri, Maithili and Magahi (the latter two are very close to each other, and some regard them as dialects of the same language), and Oriyā and Bengali-Assamese, all originated from the Māgadhī Prakrit, the evolution of which has been described above.100

The people of Eastern India, as in the Gangetic plains generally, represented a mixture of different races before the Aryan-speakers came—Mongoloids (speaking various dialects of the Sino-Tibetan languages like Bodo and Kuki), Austro-Asiatics (speaking various Kol or Mūṅḍā dialects, which latterly developed into Santali and its allied speeches, and also Mon-Khmer dialects, one of which is Khasi of Assam at the present day), and the speakers of the various Dravidian dialects as in Gangetic India and elsewhere. All these three language, culture or racial groups were welded together into one Aryan-speaking people after the advent of the Aryan language in Eastern India. This Aryan language had attained its easternmost frontier up to the southern bend of the Ganga river in Eastern Bihar before the time of Buddha. At that time Bengal appears not to have received the Aryan speech. It would seem that from the Maurya period onwards there was a powerful movement of Aryan-speakers from Bihar passing on into North and West Bengal, and from thence spreading to Assam in the East and to Orissa in the South. These Aryan-speakers, themselves of mixed origin, as much as the people of Bengal, took with them the speech of Magadha; and it was known as Māgadhī-Prakrit and later as Māgadhī-Apabhraṃśa101 when the Aryan speech was established in Bengal, Assam and Orissa. Definite eastern or Magadhian characteristics appear to have developed in the entire Aryanised area of
Assam, Bengal and Bihar during the closing centuries of the first millennium A.D. Bengali, Assamese and Oriya formed a very closely connected group, and these languages showed the greatest amount of agreement among themselves. On the other hand, Maithili and Magahi, as representing a sort of Central Magadhan speech, and Bhojpuri, as representing Western Magadhan (as distinct from the Ardha-Maghadi still further to the west), also similarly developed in the Central and Western Magadhan tract. By A.D. 1000, judging from the specimens of Bengali, Assamese and Oriya that we have at about this date and a little later, these languages had become fully established, although the relationship between Bengali and Assamese was a little closer than between these two and Oriya. Thus A.D. 1000 may roughly be taken as a convenient date for the development of the New Indo-Aryan stage in the history of the Aryan speech. About this time, the Bengali language was fully characterised, and Oriya was also characterised with a few special peculiarities, while Assamese remained still much closer to Old Bengali.

2. Literature

The oldest specimens of Bengali are to be found in place-names and personal names in early inscriptions of Bengal, from the fifth century A.D. down to A.D. 1000 and later. This epigraphical material has been studied by S. K. Chatterji in his *Origin and Development of Bengali Language and Literature*. The place-names as well as the personal names are both indicative of the advance made in the language. Connected specimens of Bengali in literature are to be found in the fifty *Charyāpadas* which were discovered in Nepal by MM. Hariprasad Sastri, and subsequently by one or two other scholars, many years ago. Sastri published these *Charyāpadas* in Old Bengali along with specimens of Apabhraṃśa (Sauraseni or Western Apabhraṃśa) literature, similarly obtained from Nepal, in a volume entitled “*Hijjir Bachharer Puriir Bvingiilii Bhiishiiy Bauddha Giin Dohii*” which was published in the Bengali year 1323 (A.D. 1916) by the Bangiya Sahitya Parishad of Calcutta. The forty-seven *Charyāpada* songs found in this work alone have a claim to be regarded as Old Bengali, and the other portions or the work are not in Old Bengali, but in a Western Apabhraṃśa. These forty-seven poems were really parts of a collection of fifty, but owing to some pages in the manuscript being missing, three poems have not been found; but subsequently their Tibetan translations have been discovered and this has enabled us to reconstruct them and complete the fifty. These poems relate to the esoteric ideas and practices of the Vajrayāna School of late Mahāyāna Buddhism of Eastern India.
They are in Old Bengali, and it is easy to get their outward sense, but for the inner meaning a commentary is necessary. This commentary (by a later writer) has been furnished in the manuscript in the Sanskrit language, and it is very helpful in understanding the philosophical and other notions behind the poems. The poems were composed by a class of religious teachers known as the Siddhas. Traditionally they were eighty-four in number, and they were claimed by both the later Mahāyāna Buddhists of India and Tibet as well as by the followers of Saiva Sect of Goraksha-nātha (Gorakh-nāth). Some twenty-four poets are represented in the Chāryāpādas. They composed short lyrics of generally five couplets, in a metre which is commonly the Pādākula metre from which the modern Hindi Chaupā on the one hand and the Bengali Payār on the other have both evolved. There are a few slightly longer poems with other metres. The style and the technique of these poems were continued in later early Bhojpuri, Bengali and Western Hindi poetry, and this school, which is represented in the Chāryāpāda songs, also had something to do with the mediaeval North Indian Sant poets and reformers. The Chāryāpāda poems have been claimed in their language as belonging to both Assamese and Oriyā, and even to Maithili. All these demonstrate how a thousand years ago from now these eastern speeches converged into a common basic type of speech—a kind of Māgadhī Apābhrānsa with local variations.

The Chāryāpādas have been edited and commented upon by various scholars after the first edition by MM. Haraprasad Sastri came out—S. K. Chatterji, Muhammad Shahidullah, Prabodh Chandra Bagchi, Manindra Basu, and Sukumar Sen. The Chāryāpādas cannot be accorded a very high place from literary point of view, though occasionally they breathe a true poetic spirit and are marked by beauty of expression, fine conception and imagery, and a deep sensibility and emotion. Their main value and importance are linguistic and doctrinal. They are however good lyrics written in a variety of metres. These lyrics were evidently meant to be sung, for the manuscript gives the names of the rāgas against each. But the main characteristic of these verses is their religious and emotional appeal which found a fuller development in later Bengali literature in the Sahajiyā songs, Vaishnava padas, Śākta hymns, Baul songs, etc. The Buddhist Chāryāpādas may therefore be regarded as the prototypes or precursors of these later forms of literary development in Bengal.

It is not easy to determine the date of these Chāryāpādas. The only positive clue is furnished by the names of the Siddhas who composed them. There are traditions about the succession of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

gurus among these Siddhas, and on the basis of a Nepalese tradition about one such line of succession, Dr. M. Shahidullah referred these compositions to the seventh century A.D. But Dr. P. C. Bagchi has shown the unreliable character of the Nepalese tradition. The general view is that these Charyapadas were composed between A.D. 950 and 1200, and most probably during the earlier part of this period. This is about the time when most of the New or Modern Indo-Aryan languages were taking shape.

Apart from the Charyapadas and the names found in the inscriptions mentioned above, other specimens of Bengali literature prior to A.D. 1300 are to be found in a few verses in the Prakritapaingala (c. A.D. 1400), which is a treatise on Prakrit and Apabhraṃśa versification with examples of all the various forms of verse-type described. Some verses in this work, which in all likelihood are modified from Old Bengali, have been discussed by S. K. Chatterji in his Origin and Development of the Bengali Language and Literature. Similarly in the Sanskrit Encyclopaedia, the Mānasollasa, which was compiled in Western India about A.D. 1130, Chatterji has found a few Old Bengali verses and lines in the section relating to music and songs. Similarly Sukumar Sen, in the first volume of his big book on the history of Bengali Literature, notes a few lines in Old Bengali in some early texts in Sanskrit. The Charyapada tradition was carried down to late mediaeval times in Bengal and, in spite of the Turkish conquest, there was no break in it, either in subject matter or in form. The poems in the Prakritapaingala give us specimen of literature in the Brahmanical tradition, as the Charyapadas give us the Buddhist Vajrayana tradition. Right up to A.D. 1300 these are the only specimens we have of Bengali literature. But this is quite enough to give us some of the actual vernacular literary forms which were current in Bengal.

It has been also suggested, although the point has been disputed, that in the twenty-four songs of the Gītā-govinda of Jayadeva, which give us a different type of prosody or verse-form from that of classical Sanskrit, we have the reflex in Sanskrit of the vernacular or Apabhraṃśa tradition in literature. Lassen suggested long ago that these twenty-four songs were originally not in Sanskrit but in Apabhraṃśa (or some speech like Old Bengali), and then they were rendered into Sanskrit and incorporated in the Gītā-govinda. Considering that Apabhraṃśa song and Old Bengali verses echoing these songs of the Gītā-govinda have been found in the Prakritapaingala and other works, this would be quite a justifiable theory.

Poets in Bengal before A.D. 1300 used not only Bengali, but also Western Apabhraṃśa, in addition to Sanskrit, which was the
LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

language of the educated classes. As in the Buddhist Dohā-Kośhas by Saraha and Kanha which have been edited by MM. Haraprasad Sastri along with the Charyāpadas, and further commented upon and translated into French in comparison with the Old Tibetan translations by Dr. Muhammad Shahidullah, other verses in Apabhraṃśa composed by writers of Bengal have also been found. The Western Apabhraṃśa was like a kind of Khāyūl Histi of a thousand years ago, and was current all over India, people in the various tracts using both this Apabhraṃśa and their local speeches.

The Old Bengali Literature, in the compositions of the Siddhas, has exerted some influence in North India also. Gorakh-nāth, the great Sant of Northern India and founder of the sect of the Kān-phāṭa Yogs of the Punjāb and North India, is intimately connected with the legends of the Siddhas in Bengal. In certain works attributed to Gorakh-nāth and his disciples, like the Gorakṣ-Bodh, the manuscripts of which have been found in Bikaner and elsewhere, we have specimens of poems in a language which is undoubtedly Old Bengali but masquerading as a form of “Old Hindi”. Any one knowing Old Bengali will find such verses plentifully in the works of early mediaeval times, ascribed to Gorakh-nāth, which have been published by late Prof. Barthwal, and the tradition has continued right down to our days. Wandering Saints (Sants and Śādhus), and latterly Fakirs and Darveshes, carried the same religious ideologies, and the Sant philosophy, from one part of the North Indian Plains to the other, whether from West to East or from East to West. Through them linguistic influences easily passed from one part to other parts of North India. Ancient Bengal in this way can be said to have influenced the rest of North India through her Charyāpada literature.

C. DRAVIDIAN
I. TAMIL
1. Poetry

By the end of the first millennium after the birth of Christ, Buddhist and Jain influence in the Tamil country was nearly eliminated and the Brahmanic religion, in its twin forms of Śaivism and Vaishnavism, was securely in the saddle. The Tevāram and the Tiruvāchakam hymns and the Vaishnava hymns in the Nālāyī-tra Prabandham had now a wide currency, and the Nāyānārs and the Āḻvārs were deemed to be at least semi-divine, truly the apostles of God. Tamil ruling chiefs supported the Brahmanic reli-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

gion with fervour—and occasionally even with fanaticism—and gave considerable encouragement to Tamil men of letters. Men’s minds were slowly turned to the treasures of Sanskrit literature, and poets came forward to give Tamil versions or adaptations of standard Sanskrit works. Epics, Puranas, philosophical treatises, alankāraśastras, grammars, all appeared in Tamil, inspired to a greater or lesser extent by Sanskrit models. Already, in the Śaiva Age, Perundevanar had rendered the Mahābhārata into Tamil, but that work is now lost. The poets of the Brahmanic period turned their attention to the Rāmāyana and the Mahābhārata or other Puranic stories and produced Tamil adaptations, some of which at least acquired the dignity and excellence of creative literature. During this period, three names stand prominent in poetry. Like the three “gems” of Kannaḷa poetry, the three Tamil “gems”—Kamban, Otṭakkūttan and Pugalendi—were also contemporaries, and they too are usually named together. Making all allowance for the accretions that the traditional accounts of their history have gathered, it seems none the less clear that it was during the period between A.D. 1118 and 1178 that not only Kamban, Otṭakkūttan and Pugalendi, but perhaps also Sekkiliṟ, Avvai II and the commentator Adiyārkanālḷūr flourished and made it a great age in the history of Tamil literature.

(i) Kamban

Kamban is undoubtedly one of the greatest figures in Tamil poetry. His father died when he was quite young, and hence he early came under the protection of a generous landlord by name Śadayappa. By and by, Kamban’s unusual talents caught the attention of Kulottuṅga Chola, and the poet went to the king’s court. Rivalry between Kamban and Otṭakkūttan, the court poet, seems to have given rise to many piquant, if not worse, situations. The king apparently decided to capitalize the rivalry, and set them both to write the Rāmāyana in Tamil verse. Otṭakkūttan fared rather badly in the contest, and in a fit of depression decided to destroy his poem. Kamban interrupted his great rival’s act of vandalism in time to save the Uttara-Kāḍa, and, along with Kamban’s own earlier Kaḷaḷa, it now constitutes the Tamil Rāmāyana, popularly known as Kamba Rāmāyana. Comparisons are invidious, and there are not wanting partisans who cry up Kamban at the expense of Valmiki, a thing that Kamban himself might have deemed sacrilegious. Kamban’s poem is a great Tamil classic; and even though it is an adaptation from the Sanskrit original it is none the less a masterpiece. Well versed in classical Tamil and Sanskrit literatures, Kamban cast his poem on a heroic mould and
LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

gave it the flavour and finish of a typical literary epic. It has been remarked that while “Vālmiki is diffuse and simple, Kamban abridges and elaborates;” it is, perhaps, nearer the truth to say that Vālmiki’s poem is akin to a vast elemental forest, while Kam­ban’s is more akin to a limited but luxuriant garden. Here is a well-known verse from the Sundara-Kāṇḍa, where Sītā gives utter­ance to her joy after listening to Hanūmān:

Be it the demon himself, or another god; or else
The lord of the monkey host; be it cruelty
Or pity; here he came, and named my lord,
Revived my heart, and gave me life; peerless the service!

In recent years, Kamba Rāmāyaṇa has been widely popularized in Tamil Nāḍ by two enthusiastic ‘tasters’ and critics, P. Sri and T. K. Chidambaranatha Mudallar. Although Kamban wrote other poems also, he is to the multitude only the semi-divine author of the Tamil Rāmāyaṇa; and yet Sadakopar-antāthiti and Eretupathu deserve to be more widely read than they are at present.

(ii) Oṭṭakkūṭtan and Pugalendi

Oṭṭakkūṭtan often came into conflict with Pugalendi also. According to tradition, Pugalendi was the Pūṇyyan king’s court poet. When the Pūṇyyan princess married the Chola king, Kulo­tunga, Varaguṇa Pūṇyys sent Pugalendi as a part of his daughter's dowry to the Chola court. Innumerable incidents are narrated about the rivalry of the two court poets, and Oṭṭakkūṭtan is invariably the loser in every trial of wits! At this distance of time it is difficult to sift the truth from the fanciful fabrication of later partisans. Probably, all the three poets, Kamban, Oṭṭakkūṭtan and Pugalendi were contemporaries and had frequent opportuni­ties of coming together. Kamban by his towering genius and Pugalendi by his audacious and nimble wit, seem to have as a rule got the better of the heavy and proud but meritorious Oṭṭakkūṭtan. On this basis tradition has reared many a fanciful structure and the stories are repeated in every life-history of these poets.

Pugalendi’s most important work is Nala Venbā, a Tamil ver­sion of the story of Nala and Damayanti. Written in the flowing Venbā metre, the poem is one of the most melodious in Tamil poetry. Echoes from Sanskrit and the Kural and other ancient classics give a peculiar charm to the poem. But the central inspiration is Pugalendi’s, and the metrical and verbal felicity is all his own; and truly the vivacity and exuberance of his poetic art are seen in every stanza of this poem. Pugalendi also compos-
ed a number of narrative poems in a flowing metre—somewhat in the ballad style—dealing with various Mahabharata episodes and also popular stories of tradition and history. Some of these poems, Alil Arasini, Pavalakkodi, etc., are on the lips of the common people to this day. The verses have a gay and easy swing, the language is simple and chaste, and poetry is here seen to come to the market-place without vulgarizing itself in the least. Another of Pugalendi's poems, Kalamkam, is a commemoration poem in honour of the king of Chenji.

Ottakkuttan's Uttara-Kanda, though a little inferior to the rest of the Tamil Ramayana, is still a meritorious work. One verse may be rendered as follows:

The relations desire a bridegroom of noble birth;
The fathers would rather have
The undiminishing power of knowledge;
Wide-ranging riches and the strength they give
Are chiefly sought by the mothers;
But the beautiful girls themselves desire only these,
Youth and grace of form.

Ottakkuttan seems to have specialized besides in war-chants called parapais and ulas, describing respectively war campaigns and triumphant processions. Ottakkuttan's Takka-Yagapparasi and Maan-Ula are among the finest specimens in these two classes of poems. Maan-Ula is a group of Ulas dedicated to three Chola kings. All things considered, Ottakkuttan seems to have been a great master of literature rather than a supreme creative writer; and no wonder posterity has come to think of him as a personality rather than as a poet.

(iii) Avvai

Various poetical works and innumerable impromptu verses are attributed to a woman poet by name “Avvai.” She figures in the Saigam Age as also in the Age of Kamban, and hence it is now presumed that there were two Avvais, gifted poets both of them. Avvai I, supposed to be a sister of the great Tiruvaluvar, wrote Attisoodi, Kondraiavandan, Mathurai and Nalvali, works which like Hamlet have gone into general currency in Tamil speech. The second Avvai composed Namurkkovai, Kalvoolukkam, Ananthanulmalai, and some other works. Several interesting stories are current regarding the way in which Avvai's mother-wit turned the tables against her contemporaries, notably Kulottunga Chola, Kam-
ban and Otjakkuttan. Her repartees are classical in their aptness and memorability, her humanity is deep and abiding, her sense of humour is radiant and unfailing. The composite “Avvai” is certainly the most popular of Tamil poets, verily the beloved matriarch of Tamil poetry. One verse from the second Avvai is here rendered freely:

Rare, O rare is human birth;
Rare, among humans, to be born
With no impediment in eye, ear or leg;
Rare, with an unblemished body
To unite a mind accomplished and wise;
Rare, for wise and learned minds,
To engage in acts of piety and pity;
But these rarest of the rare
Merit Elysium indeed.

2. Saiva Siddhānta Literature

This literature, which is very considerable in quantity and is of a very high quality as well, is partly in Sanskrit and partly in Tamil. The latter is conveniently studied under two heads: pre-Meykañjeyan and post-Meykañjeyan. The principal figures in pre-Meykañjeyan literature are Tirumular, the Tevīram and Tiruvēchakam hymnists, and the other contributors to the Tirumurai like Nambi-Andār-Nambi and Śekkāḷa. Nambi-Andār-Nambi, who belongs to the eleventh century, is sometimes referred to as the Tamil Vyasa, because it is due to him that we have the extraordinary collection of Śaivite hymns, the eleven Tirumurai. The twelfth Tirumurai, the Periapurāṇam, was the work of Šekkāḷa who is usually assigned to the middle of the twelfth century. The Periapurāṇam is a work of hagiology—half history, half myth—containing the lives of the sixty-three canonized Śaiva saints, and the work is held in much reverence and is very popular to this day.

Although the Sanskrit works of Aghoraśiva, Sadyojyotis and Bhojarāja had already settled the general outlines of the Śaiva Siddhānta-śāstra, it became a real power and reached the masses only when teachers like Meykañḍa, Arūṇandi and Umāpati used Tamil as the vehicle for the exposition of the śāstras. These Tamil Siddhānta-śāstras are fourteen in number, of which the three most famous are Śiva-jñāna-bōdham by Meykañḍa Deva, Śiva-jñāna-siddhiyar by Arūṇandi-śivāchārya and Śivaprakāśam by Umāpati-śivāchārya. Meykañḍa was, according
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

to tradition, Sadayappa's daughter's son. Since Sadayappa was Kamban’s contemporary and patron, MeykaJ;l<;la must have flourished in the first half of the thirteenth century. Although a Vellāla, MeykaJ;l<;la was acknowledged as a great teacher. One of his many disciples was Arulnandi, a Brāhmaṇa, whose voluminous Śiva-jānā-siddhīyar is less a commentary on MeykaJ;l<;la's work and more an independent work, although generally inspired by Śiva-jānā-bōdham. Umāpati was a disciple of Mārai-jānā-sambandhar, himself a disciple of Arulnandi. Again, Mārai was a Vellāla while Umāpati was a Brāhmaṇa. Umāpati brings us to the close of the thirteenth century. Corresponding to the four great bhaktas—Appar, Sundarar, MāṣikkaVāchakar and Sambandhar—the Tamil Śaivas have also these four Śrutiśāchāryas,—MeykaJ;l<;la, Arulnandi, Mārai-jānā-sambandhar, and Umāpati.

Śaiva Siddhānta admits three entities, viz. the Lord (pati), the individual soul (pāśu), and matter (pāsa). The terms, pati, pāśu and pāsa, really mean, respectively, master of the herd, the herd, and the bond between the two or the entanglement. These are the three Paḍārthas or central categories of Śaiva Siddhānta philosophy. Wedged between pati and pāśam, the soul now inclines this way, lured by His glory, anon staggers that way attracted by the earth-crust. Although by asserting the existence of three such eternal entities Śaiva Siddhānta turns its back on pure Advaita, the Siddhantins none the less call their philosophy restricted Advaita since the relationship between pati-pāśu-pāśam is of the nature of an inseparable union or is a unity in diversity. The Lord is the subject, and the soul and matter are objects; it is the Lord who gives illumination to the soul and support to matter, but is Himself uninfluenced by either.102b

MeykaJ;l<;la’s Śiva-jānā-bōdham, the corner-stone of the Tamil Śaiva Siddhānta, is cast in the form of a commentary on twelve verses of the Rauravāgama. Arulnandi’s Śiva-jānā-siddhīyar is a more voluminous work, consisting of about 550 verses. The first part is devoted to a criticism of various schools of philosophy like the Buddhist, the Jain, the Lokāyata, the Prabhākara, the Paṇḍarāṭra, etc. Arulnandi attempts to show that these philosophies are inadequate to meet the clamorous needs of humanity. The second part of Śiva-jānā-siddhīyar is an elaborate exposition of the main tenets of the Śaiva Siddhānta. Śivaprakāśam by Umāpati is based on the classical treatises of MeykaJ;l<;la and Arulnandi but is neither as cryptic as the former nor as elaborate as the latter, and is accordingly the best guide to the Śaiva Siddhānta. Umāpati wrote many other works as well, one of which—the controversial

366
Sankalpa Nirākaraṇam—being composed as late as A.D. 1313. Mr. Nallaswami Pillai has published English versions of Śiva-jiśāna-bōdham and Śiva-jiśāna-siddhiyar, while Mr. H. R. Hoisington of the American Mission has published an English version of Śiva-prakājām.

II. KANNADA

The leanness of Kannada literature during the eleventh century offers a striking contrast to the splendid achievements of the tenth and the varied achievements of the twelfth century. However, there were two Brāhmaṇa authors during this century, Nāgavarmā-čhārya and Chandrarāja, who wrote respectively Chandrachudamani-Satāka, a poetic eulogy of vairāgya, and Madana-Tilaka, a sheer tour de force in technique. During the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, there was a succession of eminent Jain writers, who nobly carried on the tradition of Pampa, Ponna and Ranna. But a new force was also discernible, and presently it made its mark in religion, social life, and literature. This was the rise of the Vīraśaiva or the Lingayat movement, inspired and organized by the great Basava.

I. Vīraśaiva Literature

Scholars like Dr. S. C. Nandimath hold that Basava was not the actual founder of the Vīraśaiva or Lingayat religion, but that he reorganised it and put it on firm foundations. The Vīraśaivas look upon the Tamil Śaiva Samayāchāryas as their own spiritual guides. Besides, the Vīraśaivas trace their gotra from hoary semi-divine āchāryas, like Revaṇa, Maruṇa, Ekorāma, Paṇḍita and Viśvevara. Originator or but reorganiser, Basava is certainly the dominating figure in the history of Vīraśaiva religion and literature.

Basava was born in a Brāhmaṇa family in a place called Ingaleshwar-Bagevac in the Bijapur District about A.D. 1125. He refused to undergo the upanayanam ceremony and embraced the Vīraśaiva faith. He succeeded his uncle as Chief Minister to king Bijjala of Kalyāṇa. He set up the Anubhava Maṇḍapa, something analogous to an academy of religious experience, to serve as the focal point of the Vīraśaiva religion. Its president was the venerable Allama Prabhu, spiritually the most austere among the Vīraśaiva teachers. Chief among Basava’s contemporaries were Channabasava, Siddharāma, Harihara, Rāghavānka, Padmarasa
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

and the woman mystic and poet, Mahādevī Akka. Channabasava was the subtle metaphysician of the faith, while Mahādevi Akka was its piercingly radiant melodist. Some of the Vīraśaiva writers wrote poetry of the traditional patterns, to which we shall refer presently. But the vāchana was the unique mode in which Vīraśaiva writers and poets chose to express themselves. Thus arose a very considerable body of “vāchana śāstra,” the work of as many as 213 distinct writers, consisting of “twice eighty crores” of vāchanas. But only a fraction of this colossal output has survived. Even so, enough remains to give us an idea of the weight, the amplitude and the spiritual depth of this unique literature.

The vāchana śāstra no doubt embodied a new philosophy of life and religion, not indeed with the rigour and detail of a system, but rather through suggestions, exhortations, lyrical heart-searchings, and ecstatic asseverations. The influence of Tamil devotional poetry like the Tevīrām and Tiruvēchakam hymns is apparent in the vāchanas sustained by bhakti. On the other hand, it is not unlikely that the philosophy of Viśiṣṭadvaita, as taught by Rāmānuṭāchārya, gave a suggestive turn to the Vīraśaiva philosophy of the shatsthala. The shatsthala or the “six stages” are steps that the individual soul treads on its spiritual journey before it reaches and becomes one with God. The eager aspiring soul progresses from a feeling of isolation and wretchedness, through the intermediate stages of increasing awareness of and proximity to God, to the ineffable reality of God-realization and mukti. On the way, the devotee exploits the ashtavara—a—the eight beneficial associates, e.g. the guru, the rudrāksha, the vibhuti, etc.—till at last he achieves bayalu nirbayalu or the peaceful void that defies and transcends mere understanding. In the social plane, Basava advocated the abolition of castes, extolled the dignity of labour, and gave women an equal status with men.

Basava’s vāchanas are about seven hundred in number. The term “vāchana” means literally “sentence;” although a “vāchana,” taken by itself, is a pointed or casual observation, the vāchana sequences appear to have a certain continuity and underlying intensity of purpose. Basava and his contemporaries, eager to reach the masses, used the expressive conversational idiom of their time, shorn of all Sanskrit profundity and pedantry. Giving up the regularity of traditional verse patterns, they nevertheless gave music and memorability to the vāchanas by having recourse to alliteration, balance and antithesis. Like the Japanese haiku, the vāchana is a unique literary form: like the verses in Tīruvalļu—
var's Kural, the best vachanas, too, have gone into general currency. A few vachanas are here given in a free English rendering:—

The fire enkindled in the hearth
may be extinguished with the earth;
Should the earth itself be ablaze,
what charm can quench its rage away?
Should the very embankment drain off
the water in its confines,
Should even the fence nibble away
the corn stalks within,
Should the mother's own milk envenom
her suckling child—
Should thus the Preserver himself
Destroyer turn,
Where lies the anchor of my hope,
O Lord, Kūḍala Saṅgama!

Your grace can stir dry roots
with the freshness of spring;
From your grace can the sterile cow derive
abundant milk;
Poison itself can your grace transform
into holy nectar.
Your grace is the source of all good,
O Lord, Kūḍala Saṅgama!104

Kūḍala Saṅgama was Basava's tutelary deity, to whom he addressed all his vachanas. Mahādevī Akka likewise addressed her vachanas to Mallikārjuna Deva. Here is a rendering of one of Mahādevī's best-known vachanas:

Ye parrots singing
in mirthful ease;
And oh ye swans
frolicking near the lake;
And ye joyous cuckoos
piping full-throated;
And ye proud peacocks
strutting up and down in glee,
over hill and dale—
tell me, O tell me,
ye one and all,
did you ever chance to see,
my lover,
my own Chennamallikārjuna!105

369
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

One other example may be given—from Allama Prabhu or Prabhudeva. The Viraśaiva teachers did not attach importance to fasting, dietary self-limitations, and other forms of penance. This is seen in the following vachana by Prabhudeva:

"Those who take a vow of living on milk will be born as cats; those living on grams, will be reborn as horses; those living on flowers, will become bees; those living on water, will reappear as frogs. These shall never have knowledge of shatsthala. Guhēvara does not like those wanting in firm devotion."

Elsewhere Prabhudeva gives fervent expression to the idea of the omnipresence of God:

"Deva! You are in fields, in valleys, in caves and in mountains; wherever we cast our eyes, there You are. Impossible to conceive; impossible to see. Here, there, everywhere You are, Oh Guhēvara!"106

Among other Virasaiva writers may be named Harihara, who probably belongs to the latter half of the twelfth century, and was the author of Girijii-Kaliyča and Śivaśara RagaIegaIu. The former is woven round the popular theme of the marriage of Śiva and Pārvati, while the latter is a series of biographies in verse, commemorating the lives of great Śaiva and Viraśaiva devotees. Harihara’s nephew, Rāghavānaka, is another great figure in Kannāḍa poetry. His Hariśchandra-Kāvyya has been described as “the most fascinating and artistic presentation of that theme in the whole field of Indian literature.”107 His other works include Somanātha Charite and Harihara-mahatva. It was Rāghavānaka who first used and popularized the shatpadi—the six-lined stanza—as a vehicle of Kannāḍa verse.

We have space now barely to mention Kereya Padmarasa, known also as Tarkika Chakravarti and Sarana Kavi, whose principal work is Dikshī-bodhe in ragaI form; Someśvara or Palkurike Soma, whose works include Basavannana Paścha Gadya, Sadguru RagaI, Sīla Sampīdāne and perhaps Someśvara Śataka as well; and Deva Kavi and Somarājā, both of whom wrote romances.

2. Jain Writers

During the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, alongside of the Viraśaiva vachanakāras, many Jain writers also flourished, some of them being among the greatest in Kannāḍa literature. Nāga-chandra or Pampa II (“Abhinava Pampa”) wrote Mallinātha Purāṇa, the life-story of the nineteenth Tirthaṅkara,107a and a Jain version of the Rāmāyaṇa with the title Rāmachandra-charita-purāṇa.
LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

(popularly known as the Pampa Rāmāyaṇa). Nāgachandra makes many departures from Vālmīki’s Rāmāyaṇa, partly with a view to emphasizing the Jain atmosphere of the poem and partly with a view to minimizing the supernatural elements in the original Sanskrit version. The Jain foot-rule with which every episode and every character is sought to be measured is apt to be irritating to readers familiar with Vālmīki’s great national epic. However, Nāgachandra’s ethical tone is unassailable and its dignified style and chāmpū form make it a popular literary treasure. Here is an extract from the work in Mr. Rice’s effective English rendering:

“Then Aṅgada, heir to Kishkindha’s wide soil,
Determines himself Rāvaṇa’s penance to spoil.
He mounts on Kishkindha, his elephant proud;
And round him his ape-banneered followers crowd.
He rides through the suburbs of Laṅka’s fair town,
Admiring its beauty, its groves of renown.
He enters the palace, goes alone to the fane;
With reverence he walks round Sāntīvara’s shrine,
And in lowliness worships the image divine.
When—sudden—he sees giant Rāvaṇa there,
Seated, still as some mountain, absorbed in his prayer!”

Although there have been subsequent attempts to render the Rāmāyaṇa into Kannāda, Nāgachandra’s version still retains its position of pre-eminence.

Prominent among other writers were Nemichandra, author of a romance called Līlāvatī; Janna, author of a Purūṣa-charitre; Kanti, a woman poet, who was Nāgachandra’s contemporary; Nayasena, author of the ethical work Dharmanāṃśa; and Nāgavarma II and Keśirāja, authors respectively of the standard grammatical works Karuṇākara Bhaṭṭa Bhaṭṭaṇa and Sabdamanīdarpāṇa. Nāgavarma II wrote also a treatise on poetics entitled Kavyādakāraka, which remains the standard work on the subject.

“Nothing is more striking”, says Mr. Lewis Rice, “than the wealth of quotation and illustration from previous authors which these grammatical writings contain, and this gives them a high scientific as well as historical value.”

Throughout this period, Jain writers engaged themselves in the devout task of composing Purāṇas on the lives of the various Tīrthaṅkaras. Three Purāṇas were thus composed on the life of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Neminātha, the twenty-second Tīrthaṅkara; Guṇavarman II wrote the Pushpadanta Purāṇa on the life of the ninth Tīrthaṅkara; and Achanna and Kamalabhava wrote on the twenty-fourth and sixteenth Tīrthaṅkaras respectively. Kanḍapārya's Neminātha Purāṇa incidentally tells the Mahābhārata story.

Mallikārjuna, who lived about the middle of the thirteenth century, is known to fame as an anthologist. His Sūkti-Sudhārṇava is the Kannada equivalent of a Golden Treasury from the Best Kannada Poets.

III. TELUGU

1. The Origin

Telugu, the third of the Dravidian languages to attain a separate individuality and forge its own unique history, is today spoken by a little under thirty millions, the great majority of whom are contained within "a semi-circle drawn with the line joining Rajahmundry and Madras as diameter." Adjoining areas like Hyderabad, Mysore, and Orissa account for a considerable number, while there are also Telugu-speaking people in small scattered groups all over Tamil Nadu, just as there are the Podur Dravīdas, speaking Tamil, in the Telugu country.

While the Telugu country is called Andhra Deśa, its language is referred to as Telugu. Much ink has split in the attempt to determine whether or not the Andhras and the Telugu-speaking people are one and the same. Three hypotheses have been advanced, in this connection, on the origin of the Andhras, and these have been summarized as follows by the late Dr. C. R. Reddy:

"(1) A North-Indian Aryan tribe with an Aryan language but which adopted non-Aryan culture and thus incurred the contempt of the Aryans; (2) A North-Indian non-Aryan tribe which adopted the culture and the language of the Aryans; and (3) A South-Indian tribe which assimilated Aryan culture and some elements of Prakrit, but retained both racially and linguistically its essential Dravidian character."

The third of the above hypotheses seems to be closest to truth. Aryan and Dravidian have acted and reacted upon one another in the crucible of South India so long, and often with so much fury, that it is an idle enterprise today—and this is especially so in the Telugu country—to seek to dissociate one constituent from the other. On the other hand, it seems no less idle to deny the Dravidian ancestry—near or remote—of the people as well as of the spoken language of Andhra Deśa.
Telugu, the language of the Andhras, is construed in different ways. Tene in Telugu (like Ten in Tamil) means honey; hence Telugu is explained as the language that is as sweet as honey. Telugu is also derived from ‘Trilīṅga’, the country which contains the three liṅgas, at Śrīśaila, Kāleśvara, and Drākṣhārāma respectively. The Telugu script is phonetic, after the manner of Sanskrit, and bears a close resemblance to the Kannaḷa script.

We referred in an earlier chapter to the Agastya myth relating to the origin of Tamil. There is a similar myth relating to the origin of Telugu, with even less plausibility. Agnimitra of the Kṛita Yuga, having become blind, prayed to Śūrya, the Sun-God. The latter taught Agnimitra a new language that had efficacy enough to restore his eyesight. This new language, Āndhra Bhāṣā, assumes a new manifestation in every Yuga and the language of the Kali Yuga is supposed to be the handiwork of Nandivardhana and his pupil, Devala Rāya.

2. Deśī and Mārgī

In their excellent handbook on Telugu Literature in the Heritage of India Series, Mr. P. Chenchiah and Raja Bhujanga Rao posit “the existence in Telugu literature of two streams; an earlier one called Deśī, and a later one called Mārgī”. Deśī literature was rural, popular and independent of Sanskrit. Here we feel the very heart-beats of the unsophisticated Telugu children of the soil. Folk-songs the world over have a certain unmistakable family resemblance, since all alike derive their inspiration from what is elemental and permanent in human nature. The worker over the plough is busy in the countryside, the housewife in her humble cottage cooks a modest meal or lulls her child to sleep, and the maid and her man talk in terms of love even as they reap and bind the corn. Ageless and changeless, these basic realities remain. In Hardy’s words,

Yet this will go onward the same
Though Dynasties pass...

War’s annals will fade into night
Ere their story die.

Likewise, the various strains of Deśī poetry in Telugu—the Lālī Pāṭalu (Songs of the Cradle), Jāvalīlu (Love songs), Udupu Pāṭalu (Harvest songs), etc.—are as life-giving and perennial as the air itself. This Deśī or indigenous Telugu literature had “affinity with the Dravidian rather than Aryan literature,” since as a rule foreign influences do not easily reach the rural population, and this
luxurious description, less depth but more humanity. Just as there are partisans of Kamban who say that his Tamil Rāmāyana is superior to Vālmiki's, there are not wanting Telugu scholars who claim for the Telugu Mahābhārata superiority over Vyāsa's original. Kamban, Nanniah, Tikkanna and Errana would themselves be shocked by such partisanship, and indeed such judgments defeat their purpose. Outstanding as all of them are, Nanniah is the first of the Telugu poets and Tikkanna the greatest,—holding positions analogous as it were to those held respectively by Chaucer and Shakespeare in English literature. And, in fact, Nanniah has been described as being more of a poet and Tikkanna as being more of a dramatist.116

4. The Eleventh and Twelfth Centuries

Apart from the great work of Nanniah, these two centuries saw little original literary activity in the Telugu country. At any rate, they are "terra incognita in Telugu literary history."117 However, mention must be made of Pāvulūru Mallanna and Eluganti Peddanna, both of whom wrote Mathematical treatises in Telugu, based on or translated from Sanskrit originals. The twelfth century saw the rise of Vīraśāivism in the Kamaṇḍa country, and this faith, along with the earlier Vaiṣṇava movement initiated by Rāmānuja, exerted no little influence on Telugu life and letters. Pratāparudra, the Kiikatiya prince, and Somaṇātha were both Vīraśaiva writers, the latter of whom wrote Bāsava Purāṇa and Anubhāva Śāra in Telugu. Another twelfth century poet was Nannechoda, whose chief work is Kumārasambhavam. This work was only recently discovered by Ramakrishna Kavi in the library of Rājā Sarbhoji at Tanjore.118 At one time it was believed to be a pre-Nanniah work, but authoritative opinion now gives it a much later date, between Nanniah and Tikkanna. Although obviously inspired by Kālidāsa's poem, Nannechoda's Kumārasambhavam is by no means a mere copy or slavish imitation of the older and greater poet. The following translation of the passage describing the flight of the discomfited gods from Daksha's sacrifice may be quoted in illustration of Nannechoda's graphic art:

Brahmā ran to mount his swan and fell
In fear trembling . . .
Vishnu escaped creeping . . .
To his white elephant Indra ran
And with his thousand eyes like a peacock appeared
By hunters chased to the White Mount escaping.
Yama like a coward fell across
His buffalo, while the Gaṇas hooted.
He forgot the saddle and the stirrup
In a hurry of fear.
Like a weaver Varuṇa fled ...
To mount his man Kubera forgot;
He placed him on his own shoulders instead
And fled in consternation.\(^1\)

5. The Thirteenth Century

During the thirteenth century two meritorious versions of the Rāmāyana appeared, and both have maintained their popularity till the present time. Of these, the version in couplets attributed to Raṅganātha is the earlier, and is said to be particularly popular in the Ceded Districts. Raṅganātha was apparently the court-poet of a chieftain by name Budhharāju, and perhaps his guru as well. Budhharāju's sons later added the Uttarā Kāvyā; and from this fact it is sometimes argued that Budhharāju himself wrote the earlier Kāṇḍas and dedicated the work to Raṅganātha out of respect. The other version of the Rāmāyana, although a composite work which claimed the labours of Hulakki Bhāskara, his son Mallikārjuna-bhaṭṭa, his friend and his friend's disciple, Ayyalārya and Rudra-deva respectively, is nevertheless known as Bhāskara-Rāmāyaṇam. This work is in champā form. Although widely read, the two versions of the Rāmāyana do not, either of them, reach up to the beauty or grandeur of the Telugu Mahābhārata.

Of other thirteenth century writers we may make a passing reference to Atharvana, who wrote a grammatical treatise; Ketana, who rendered Daṇḍin's Daśakumāra-charita into Telugu; Beddana, who wrote a book of political aphorisms; Marana, who wrote the Mārkandeya Purāṇa; and Manchanna who wrote the Keyārabhū-charita.

D. NISHADA AND KIRATA

The cultivated languages of India, Aryan and Dravidian, are alone capable of being historically treated in their origins and in their early literatures. But for the uncultivated speeches, Dravidian on the one hand and Nishāda or Austric (Kol or Munḍa, and Khasi) and Kirāṭa or Indo-Mongoloid (Sino-Tibetan—Tibeto-Burman and Thai) on the other, there is no history. We have no indication whatever about the lesser known and backward Dravidian tongues—
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Tulu, Kodagu, Kota, Toda, Kolami, Gondi, Kuvi or Kandh, Oraon, Malto and Brahui. It is not unlikely that Kodagu, Toda and Kota formed one speech, which approached much more Chen-tamizh and Pachaganna, and Gondi, Kuvi, Oraon and Malto were equally a single speech or close dialects of one common North-East Dravidian speech. Tulu was nearer Kannada than now, Kolami was merged in early Telugu, and Brahui was maintaining a separate and vigorous existence over a wider area in Baluchistān and Sindh. As there are no specimens of these dialects or speeches available for any period prior to the middle of the last century when European writers and missionaries took note of them, it is impossible to find out in what condition they were nearly a thousand years ago. Toponomy of the areas where they live and of the surrounding tracts might only furnish meagre but nevertheless some very precious material for their study.

The situation is analogous, though even worse, for the Nishāda and Kirāṭa speeches. As short and convenient native Indian terms, indicating the 'linguistico-ethnico-cultural' groups of the Indian Austro-Asiatics and the Indo-Mongoloids respectively in their separate ensembles, we shall be using these ancient Sanskrit words, which have on the whole quite a precise employ from very early times. The Nishāda speeches were probably in three groups; a Kherwari group including Santali, Mundari, Ho, Bhumij, etc., the ‘Kol’ speeches of the present day; a Korku group, including Korku of the present day and possibly the lost Bhil speeches of Mālwa and Rājasthān; and the Gādaba-Savara group of Orissa. The difference between these groups was very slight a thousand or eight hundred years ago. The Nishāda people appear to have been spread over the whole of India from the Punjāb and Kashmir in the North-West through the Gaṅgā valley right up to Assam and Burma, with ramifications in Central India, the Deccan and South India, and large masses of them, more or less mixed with the Dravidians who came later and settled among them also in North India (although South India we find to be the place where large masses of Dravidian speakers were established), became ultimately Aryanised in speech and were transformed into the present-day Hindu and other Indian people of North India. This was happening ever since the Aryans came into India and started expanding along the valley of the Gaṅgā. While the transformation was steadily going on, with substitution of the Nishāda (and in the sub-Himalayan slopes and in Eastern India of the Kirāṭa, who in those days were divisible into a smaller number of groups than at present when speech-differentiation has brought in a large number of dialects) speeches by dialects of Middle Indo-Aryan and then New Indo-Aryan, there was
no attempt to preserve specimens of these decaying or moribund non-Aryan speeches for which no one, not even its speakers, felt any sympathy or interest or curiosity. In this way pockets of non-Aryan speech in a more or less Aryanised North India were being liquidated, and those non-Aryan speeches, Nishāda and Kirāta, as such, were not preserved even as specimens, being the despised vulgar speeches of backward or aboriginal castes or tribes; and any oral or written literature which may have existed in them was not taken note of. But judging from what we see in later times, it is easy and perfectly allowable to assume that the Nishāda and Kirāta peoples, where they were not absorbed in an Aryan-speaking Hindu people, did possess a mass of oral literature, as an expression of their cultural and socio-religious life—their communal existence. Songs, religious and secular (the latter relating to love, hunt, war and other matters of fundamental importance to a primitive community), were doubtless there, but these have not survived when the language passed out of existence, though some of the cachets, the situations and figures, and perhaps, metres, may have survived in the folk literature in the Aryan vernaculars replacing the non-Aryan ones. And the more serious religious literature, including narration (in prose or verse, or in both) of legends relating to the creation and beginning of things, to the Gods and Goddesses and to Heroes and Heroines, possessing a "story stuff" which cannot be lost even in translation, would appear to have been adopted in the Aryan speeches and to have formed the basis of those popular legends and stories relating to divine or semi-divine beings and heroes which still live on in the mouths of the people as something essentially connected with their village cults—the legends of the grāma-devatās and of the persons who obtained their favour. These village cults have all been loosely linked up with Puranic Hinduism. In an earlier epoch, prior to A.D. 1000, pre-Aryan legends were rendered from current Prakrit versions into Sanskrit and found a place in one or the other of the numerous Purāṇas, Upapurāṇas, Sthala-purāṇas and Māhātmyas, and Tantras or even in the Mahābhārata, and so were raised up to a level of pan-Indian acceptance. The old method of adapting popular legends into a common Indian heritage of the Sanskrit Purāṇas continued during the period under review, and even beyond that! Witness works like the Yogini-tantra and the Kālikā Purāṇa, and the later Brahmaviharī Purāṇa which all probably belong to this side of the tenth century. When these legends and tales could not be exalted to a place in the Sanskrit Purāṇas they were taken over in books in the New Indo-Aryan languages which started extending their literary career from this period—books of a supplementary Puranic character like
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Sānyā Purāṇa of Bengal—in which some legends and cults of pre-Aryan Bengal have found a place. A conscious and compact literary life of the Nishādas and Kirātas as they were becoming Aryanised cannot reasonably be expected, and there has been quite a large inroad of Aryan or Hindu stories and ideas into the original mythology and ideology of even those Nishāda and Kirāta tribes or groups which have not formally declared themselves to be Hindu or have not been affiliated to Hindudom formally or loosely. Such legends are now being collected by Christian Missionaries and others, and by scientific ethnologists and anthropologists, from the third quarter of the last century onwards. L. O. Skrefsrud and P. O. Bodding, J. Hoffmann and A. Nottrott, and Sarat Chandra Roy worked among the Kol tribes; Hutton and Mills, Playfair and Endle, Stack and Lyall, Gurdon and Shakespeare and Smith among the Assam tribes; and recently Verrier Elwin, Shamrao Hivale and W. W. Archer have been collecting the folk-tales and songs of the Nishāda and Kirāta peoples of the present day—folk-tales and songs which may go back (at least in the case of the tribal legends) to the period A.D. 1000-1300, and even earlier. The true implication of these legends and tales has been grasped by Verrier Elwin who, on the basis of these as culled from among the Gondi and other non-Aryan speaking as well as Aryan-speaking tribes and castes of the Madhya Pradesh, Orissa and Bihār, is compiling what he has quite properly and felicitously called 'an Aboriginal Purāṇa.'

Thus in the non-cultivated pre-Aryan Nishāda speeches like 'Old Kol' (or Old Kherwari) in which were merged the Santali, Mundari, Ho, Kharia and other speeches of the future, 'Old Bhil' which survives in Korku, and 'Old Savara' from which are descended Gadaba and Sora, there was in all probability an oral literature of legends and tales and songs and poems, the prototype of similar literature at the present day. Unfortunately none of these Nishāda languages were ever written down prior to the middle of the last century. So nothing more can be said about them.

With regard to the Kirāta speeches in India, the situation appears more promising. The earlier the age, the smaller is the number of dialects and languages in a speech family or in one of its branches. Eight hundred years from now, probably there was a single Naga speech and not the large number of distinct Naga speeches or dialects that we see now. So the Boḍo speeches of today, the various dialects known as Boḍo, Rabha, Mech, Koch, Garo, Kachari or Dimasa and Tipra or Mrung, were not yet developed—there was a single Boḍo speech, eight hundred years ago, and this will be quite reasonable to accept. And this single Boḍo, a sort of
Proto-Bo or Old Bo, and Old Naga as one and undivided speech, were closer to each other than now. The various Kuki or Chin dialects of which Meithei or Manipuri is the most advanced speech now, formed likewise a single speech, a sort of ‘Old Kiyan’. The position of the other members of the Kirata family is not known—e.g. Mikir and the North Assam Speeches, as well as the various groups of the Nepāl and Sikkim dialects. The language the Ahoms brought was Shan, and Old Shan of those days was the same as Old Thai or Old Siamese. The Austric (Mon-Khmer) Khasi and Syn-
teng were also one language which we may call ‘Zainteng’ or ‘Old Jaintia’—an Austro-Asiatic speech spoken by a Kirata people.

Of all these speeches, three only have written characters—the Newāri of Nepāl, Lepcha of Sikkim and Darjeeling, and Meithei or Manipuri of Manipur. The Newārs were the original people of Central and East Nepāl. In the centuries round about Christ and during the early Christian centuries, their tribal name Nepāla, whatever its origin, gave the name to the country. Later, probably after A.D. 1000, Nepāla, or Nepāl changed to Newār, and now it has been further altered in Newāri mouths to Newār. The earlier kings of Nepāl were either pure Kiratas or mixed Hindu and Kirata. Retaining their Kirāta (Tibeto-Burman) speech, they came in line with the people of Hindu civilization probably 2000 years ago, and gradually adopted the Indian script and borrowed words from the Aryan language (Sanskrit, the Prakrits and the Bhāshās or Modern Indo-Aryan speeches like Maithili, Bengali, Kosali, and Gorkhali). Sanskrit and other Aryan words now form near about half of its vocabulary, if not more, and all its culture-words came from Sanskrit. The Nepāl or Newāri scholars, prior to the establishment of Gorkha rule in A.D. 1767, not only preserved for posterity the Sanskrit literature of Mahāyāna Buddhism, but also increased its extent by composing original works and commentaries; and they also cultivated their own Kirāta language, Newāri, and the New Indo-Aryan speeches, viz. Bengali, Maithili and Eastern Hindi, and recently Gorkhali. We may be allowed to assume the existence of a Newāri literature during A.D. 1000-1300, considering the earlier cultural history of Nepāl and the later vigorous literary cultivation of Newāri in the seventeenth-eighteenth centuries. The oldest Newāri book that has come to us is a chronicle going back to the eights of the fourteenth century. There is still a rich mass of unexplored Newāri literature in Nepāl and elsewhere, and it is quite conceiv-
able that Newāri works going back to the period under review will be available. During the early centuries of Turki conquest, Nepāl was outside the pale of operations of the Turks, but early in the fourteenth century, we have repercussions of events in India affect-
ing Nepal also, as Hari Singh, king of Mithilā, retired into Nepal and carved out a kingdom there for himself when his own realm was conquered by the Turks (A.D. 1324).

The Turks came in touch with Assam early in the thirteenth century when Ikhtiyār-ud-dīn ʾibn Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī, the conqueror of West Bengal, made a most ill-conceived expedition into Assam, and met with disaster from the Boḍo people and their rulers. The Ahoms, a Shan people speaking a form of Siamese, were not yet in West Assam, having established themselves in East Assam in A.D. 1228. The Boḍo people, who formed by far the largest and most compact Kirāṭa element in North Bengal and Assam (Brahmaputra Valley), had already been largely Hinduised, but they were rapidly adopting the Aryan language in the form of Old Bengali and Old Assamese, and no record of their oral literature has been preserved; probably their language was never written down, so that it is not possible to say anything about the earlier literature in a Boḍo speech. In later times, Ahom, the language of the new conqueror of the Brahmaputra valley from the east, predominated over other Kirāṭa languages, and the Boḍo-speaking people and their rulers everywhere became supporters of the Aryan speech—the Koches, Ṭipras and Kacharis adopting Bengali, and the Rabhas, Meches and others adopting Assamese. The Tripura ruling house formally accepted Bengali as their cultural and court language from the fifteenth century.

The Ahom power was established in Assam in the thirteenth century. The Ahoms brought their own script (a form of the Indian alphabet as adopted by the Thai people from the Khmers of the South), and their priests had the living tradition of handing down the tribal or national chronicles, called in Ahom Boranjī. A number of these Boranjī in Ahom are extant; only one, a late one, has been edited and published with an English translation. The Boranjī literature of Ahom may go back to the thirteenth century, but not a single one as old as that is preserved. The Ahoms gradually took up the Aryan Assamese and became completely Hinduised; and their language, preserved till recently only by the families of Old Ahom deodhais who ministered to the old tribal religion (more and more brought in line with official Brahmanism), is now obsolete. But the tradition of writing histories together with the word Boranjī meaning “history, or history-book,” was passed on to the Aryan Assamese language from the sixteenth century onwards. We have no record of any other kind of literature in Ahom.
The Meitheis, the ruling people of Manipur, claim to have been in possession of the country from the beginning, and the present ruling house traces its origin to Arjuna, the hero of the *Mahābhārata*. Definite dates are assigned to the rulers of this line from the second century A.D., and these become plausible only from the tenth century, previous to which kings are made to rule for long periods of 99 or 118 or more years which are not humanly possible. A fairly early affiliation of the Kuki people of Manipur and the Indo-Burman borderland, east of the Bojos, to Gangetic Hindudom is quite likely, considering that Hindu (Brahmanical and Buddhist) religion and culture passed on through overland routes along the Patikera kingdom (Comilla and Sylhet Districts) through Manipur hills at least in the early centuries of the Christian era. Meithei legends, of proper Kirata origin, were synthesised with Hindu Purana and *Mahābhārata* legends to give what may be called a *Manipura Purana*, such as we find in a floating oral form among Manipur people (who are now staunch Vaishnavas of the Gaudiya or Bengal School, followers of Chaitanya) and in a written form in a Manipur chronicle like the late *Vijaya-pañchāla*. In this, the Meithei gods have been identified with Puranic deities, and old legends not known outside Manipur have been retained. From the days of a legendary king who reigned for 120 years in the second century A.D., viz. Pakhangba, known also by his Sanskrit name of Yavishṭa, a kind of register of records, called the Cheitharol Kumpaba, was first started. The early history of Hinduism among the Kuki-Chin Meitheis is not known. It is certain that during the reign of Kiyamba (fifteenth century—he is credited with an incredibly long reign) Vaishnavism was already established in the Manipur royal house. Manipuri is now written in the Bengali script, which replaced an earlier script, in which the language is said to have been written down to about A.D. 1700, during the reign of king Charairongba or Pitāmbara Sinha in the second half of the eighteenth century. This old and now obsolete alphabet of Manipur is based on the Indian system, but the letters have peculiar shapes, and its exact affinities are not known. *Takhelgnamba* and *Samsokgnamba* are two chronicles, among the oldest MSS. in Manipuri in this old script, but their exact time is not known. Manipuri has a rich ballad literature, and the popular ballads dealing with the romantic loves and adventures of the hero Khamba and the Princess Thoibi may in their original forms go back to the second half of the twelfth century. Khamba and Thoibi lived during the reign of king Lo-yambah who ruled from A.D. 1127 to 1154, so that centering round the story of Khamba and Thoibi a popular literature may have commenced in Manipuri during the twelfth century.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Siamese, Burmese and Tibetan are three great Sino-Tibetan languages outside India which use forms of the Indian alphabet. Among Indian Sino-Tibetan or Kirata speeches, Newari, Manipuri and Lepcha of Sikkim became written languages through indigenous enterprise. The Lepcha script was devised early in the eighteenth century by a king of Sikkim, and its history falls outside the scope of the present chapter. Only for Newari and Manipuri we can assume some literary life at least during the period under review.

The Khasi people (as Jaintias) came under Hindu influence from the fifteenth century; prior to that there is no evidence of any literature in the Khasi speech. In the eighteenth century the Bengali script was used in writing Khasi, but from the second half of the nineteenth, Christian missionaries have given it a literature and stabilised the language by writing and printing it in the Roman alphabet.
24. The *Krishnajaya* of Venkatavarada and the *Manmathonmathana* of Rima are the late varieties of *Rima*.


28. For an attempt to reconstruct the original *Pañchatantra*, see Edgerton, *The Pañchatantra Reconstructed*, 1924.

29. One of these was translated into Pahlavi as early as the sixth century A.D. and this Pahlavi translation formed the basis for all other foreign versions (cf. Vol. III, p. 529).


33. For an attempt to reconstruct the original *Pañchatantra*, see Edgerton, *The Pañchatantra Reconstructed*, 1924.

34. See pp. 66-7.

35. For the works of Bhoja, see Kane, *HAL*, III 1 f.; *HSP*, 257-60; De, *SP*, I. 164-7.

36. Cf. Kane (HAL, CV, *HSP*, 261) who, on the evidence of ancient MSS, considers Alaka to be as good a Kâshmirian name as Alata. De, however, prefers the form Alata to Alaka and Alata, as it is given in Stein's Jammu MS (SP, I. 162).

37. For the date of Mammatu, see De, *SP*, I. 157-60; Kane, *HAL*, CVI, *HSP*, 363; Keith, *HSL*, 394.


41. For the works of Bhoja, see Kane, *HAL*, III. xviii.

42. See pp. 52-3.

43. For the works of Bhoja, see Kane, *HAL*, III. xix; *Gode*, *KHDS*, I. 325-7; III. 28-30.


45. See above, pp. 174-7.

46. For the date of Mammatu, see De, *SP*, I. 157-60; Kane, *HAL*, CVI, *HSP*, 363; Keith, *HSL*, 394.

47. See above, pp. 52-3.

48. See pp. 270 ff, 284 n 9.

49. See above, pp. 174-7.

50. For the works of Bhoja, see Kane, *HAL*, III. xix; *Gode*, *KHDS*, I. 325-7; III. xii.

51. For the works of Bhoja, see Kane, *HAL*, III. xix; *Gode*, *KHDS*, I. 325-7; III. xii.

52. For the works of Bhoja, see Kane, *HAL*, III. xix; *Gode*, *KHDS*, I. 325-7; III. xii.

53. For the works of Bhoja, see Kane, *HAL*, III. xix; *Gode*, *KHDS*, I. 325-7; III. xii.

54. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

55. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 490.

56. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 490.

57. For other views, cf. *HCSL*, 365, fn. 7.

58. See above, p. 178.

59. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

60. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

61. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.


63. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

64. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

65. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

66. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

67. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

68. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

69. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

70. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

71. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

72. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

73. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

74. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

75. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.

76. For a discussion of the date of this work, cf. Vol. III. 400.
54. Winternitz, HIL, II, 222.
55. Another Mahāvīra-charita was written by Devendra Ganin in A.D. 1085.
56. Another Mahāvīra-charita was written by Devendra Ganin in A.D. 1085.
57. Nos. 1, 5, 9, 11, 12 and 14 in Apabhraṃśa works listed here have been added by A. D. Pusalker.
58. Identified with Banoanwad in Sirohi State of Jodhpur (NUJ, VIII, 81 ff.).
59. There is another Kētakarana of unknown authorship. It is written in bad Sanskrit with Prakrit verses.
60. Identified with Wal in Ahmedabad District. NUJ, VIII, 81 ff.
61. A. M. Ghatage, Narrative literature in Jaina Maharashtri, ABORI, XVI. 38.
62. Identified with Makun in Ahmedabad District. NUJ, VIII, 81 ff.
63. Cf. NUJ, VIII, 81 ff.
68. For printed works, see "Marāḫī-Graṅtha-sūchī" by Shankar Ganesh Date, Poona, 1943.
69. For unpublished works, see:
   (i) "Mahārāṣṭrīya Santa-kaṇvī-kaṅva-sūchī"—By G. K. Chandorkar. It deals with authors and their works ranging from Śaka 1200 to Śaka 1500.
   (ii) Śrī Bāmadāḷ Satyadāna, Vols. I-III, Dhulia.
   (iii) M. S. Sarvarat-Mahāl Listyary, Tanjore, Marāḫī Catologue, Vols. I-II.
   (iv) "Mahārāṣṭrīya-śvāi-kaṅva-sūchī," By V. L. Bhave, 1954.
   (v) MSS. Catalogues of the Bhārat Itihāsa Samiti Māndal, Poona, Rajviḍe Satyadāna Mandal, Dhulia, Deccan College Postgraduate and Research Institute, Poona, etc.
   (vi) There are also small collections of MSS. at the Universities of Bombay, Nagpur, and Poona, as well as in some public and institutional libraries in India and outside. Individual collections are to be found in almost every important village, and are still untouched, and their value unassessed by any scholar.
69. For further information consult:
   (i) Introduction to Jñanesvari by V. K. Rajwade.
   (iii) "Ancient Civilization and Geography of Mahārāṣṭra," by P. V. Kane, JBRAAS, No. 21.
   (iv) Prabhāsa, Mahārāṣṭra, by S. V. Ketkar.
   (vi) Marāḫī bhāṣeṛcā, udgama na vilāsai,—by K. P. Kulkarni.
   (vii) "Formation de la langue marathie—by Jules Bloch.
   For the summary of different views see:
   Supplement to the Mahārāṣṭrīya-Sārṣaṇa of V. L. Bhave by S. G. Tulpule and Introduction to Vol. III and IV of the Mahārāṣṭrīya Sābdekośa, by Y. R. Date, and others.
71. P. C. Bagchi, Kaulajiṇa-maṭaṇaya, Introduction, p. 28. The problem is extremely complicated on account of the conflicting theories of many scholars.
72. B.I.S.M. Quarterly, XI. 32.
   There are also such works as Datta-Goraksha-Samviṣṭa, Goraksha-Kāthakaviḥ, Goraksha-Jñānādī Goraksha-viśaya, etc. in Marāḫī, which are ascribed to Gorakh-nāth (Śrī Rāmdāṇī Satyadāna, Vols. I-II).
73. Goraksha-gānd and a few Abhauṅgas exist in the name of Gahūnāth in Marāḫī.
74. For a more complete list of Marāḫī works, see the works of Mukundarāja and others.
75. It is alleged that there were two Jñanadevas and that the author of Jñānesvara was different from the author of Jñānadeva—see Jñānadeva vs Jñānadeva by Bhāratavijaya.

76. The life of Jñanadeva or Jñānesvara needs careful investigation. The only authentic document, supposed to have been contemporary, is "Jñānadeva sahi," by Nāmadeva, in which it is said that Nṛvītihāthā, Jñānadeva, Śoḍānadeva, and Mukṭāhālī were the excommunicated progeny of a sannyāsī, turned a householder. If this is the work of Vishnudāsa Nāma who was a Mahānubhāva, it is easy to imagine how this story must have been concocted. In the first place, there is no reference to any caste disability in the works of Jñānesvara. Secondly, the punishment meted out to their parents, Vitthalapant and Rukmiṇībāi, does not find support in Dharmasastra. (MM. Sridharasāstri Patāk. Jñānadeva-vārtha, I, 20–29). The Mahānubhāva writers are in the habit of running down the Brahmanical works by inventing stories (The story of the Kuruvatīra for instance, in the Padma-purāṇa of Dīnmodara: verses 1581–1603. See also Viṣṇulavān atkana saha referred to by G. K. Chaddarkar in Mākhāni kīt Bāuddha, pp. 275–74). In every important detail the life of Jñānesvara and others is full of conflicting evidence and further researches are therefore needed in the matter.

77. See Mahānabhāvamātā tattvajñāna—by V. B. Kolte, Nagpur.

78. Mahānubhavāchārika ñātrodharma—by V. B. Kolte; Mahānubhāva-Pantha—by Bālakrishnasāstri, Nagpur.

79. According to G. K. Chaddarkar this sect must have its origin towards the middle of the fourteenth century A.D. Vide, Mākhāni kīt Bāuddha, Aithiḥṣika Vivēka Vaisaṣa, pp. 273–304.

80. His life is given in a contemporary work called Svarita-sthala, composed chiefly by his disciples Naretēra and Parāśāṁbā (A.D. 1308) and edited by V. N. Deshpande.


82. Edited by N. B. Bhavalkar and H. N. Nene, Nagpur.

83. Ed. by H. N. Nene.

84. In three parts, edited by H. N. Nene.

85. Editions of V. L. Bhāve and D. S. Pānug.

86. Ed. by V. B. Kolte.

87. Ed. by V. L. Bhāve.

88. Ed. by V. B. Kolte.

89. Adya Mārūthi Rāṣṭigīri, Ed. by V. N. Deshpande.

90. The dates quoted here are mostly taken from the Supplement to the Mahānubhāva Sāstra by V. L. Bhāve by S. G. Tuljāne, Poona, 1931.

91. There is a great controversy regarding the date of Nāmadeva. If he is a contemporary of Jñānadeva, as is usually believed, he could not have written the biographies of later saints which are ascribed to him. We have, therefore, to believe in the existence of two Nāmadevas, the earli er and the later. Scholars are inclined to regard Nāmadeva and Vishnudāsa Nāmā as two different personalities whose Abhāṅgas are mixed up in the published Gāthas. Again this Vishnudāsa Nāmā is believed to have turned Mahānubhāva at the end of his career. Bhāve mentions a Nāmadeva who was the disciple of Chakrāhāra (M.S., p. 98). There is also a Nāmā Paṭṭhāk who was the grandson of Kānho Paṭṭhāk, the youngest contemporary of Jñānadeva. He was a voluminous writer and it is likely that during the dark ages that followed the Muslim conquest, the works of the different Nāmadevas got mixed up. A thorough research and an analytical study of their works will throw some light on the most intricate problems of authorship and chronology.

92. For further details, see Vārāṅi karī sampradāyābhyaśa itiḥāsa by S. V. Dandekar, 1937.

93. For the collected works of all these saints, see Śaśa-ṣastra-gītiḍ, edited by T. H. Awdar.

94. For the Life of Nāmadeva consult:
(i) Bhāratavājī by Mahātī.
(iv) Śrī-Nāmadeva Charitra—by M. A. Mulay.

95. It is alleged that Nāmadeva had undertaken a pilgrimage tour of the north in the company of Jñānadeva, in his early life. His popularity and personal contacts in this trip are perhaps responsible for his being called lākṣaṭāna in the north, especially in the Paṭṭhāk, where he seems to have stayed for many years.

337
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

He had a number of followers in that region which still possesses many temples dedicated to him.


97. We have a number of Muslim poets in Marathi, who in imitation of the poets of the Bhagavata School, wrote devotional songs to Vitthala. Cf. Shaikh Mohammad and others. Hussain Ambar wrote a commentary on the Bhagavadgītā and Shāhānuni a philosophical treatise called Siddhāntabodha. Shaikh Mohammad has also written several works of this type.

98. Moropant alone has composed 108 Rāmāyana of different kinds and in different metres!

99. Cf. Siihityadarpana, I. 2, which mentions the four highest human objectives, namely, religion (dharma), wealth (artha), ambition or desire (kāma) and the final liberation from the Cycle of Birth and Death (moksha).


102. The following English translation of a Charyapada would convey some idea of the nature of these poems.

'The Ocean of Being is deep, and it flows with mighty force:
On two sides, mire,—in the middle, no bottom.
For the sake of dharma, Chāṭṭilā builds a bridge;
People who go across pass on in full reliance.
Splitting the tree of ignorance, he joins the planks:
With the strong axe of Advaya (Monism) he strikes at Nirvāṇa.
Do not turn right or left on mounting the bridge:
Bodhi (Supreme Wisdom) is near—do not go far.
O ye men, if ye will be goers-across,
Ask of Chāṭṭilā, the master without a peer.'

102a. There is in Bengali, as in other languages, a little spruche literature of proverbs and proverbial distichs relating to agriculture, divination, astrology, morals and good form for the guidance of men and women in their social relations. These are known as the Sayings (bachans) of Dāk and Kuṇā and Varāha-mihira. Dāk is a sage or seer of unknown antecedents, while Varāha-mihira is the well-known astronomer of ancient India, and Kuṇā, his daughter-in-law. The late Dr. Dines Chandra Sen referred these distichs and verses to pre-Muslim times in Bengal. Similar verses and distichs have been found in Assam. While a fairly high antiquity is quite likely for this literature, in the form in which they occur they are very late, and generally in late Middle or early Modern Bengali. We cannot refer them to the period, A.D. 1000 to 1300, in their present form although their contents may be as old as that, or even older.

102b. This will be discussed in detail in Ch. XVI, E.

105. Ibid., p. 124.
107a. Also written as Tirukkural.
109. Quoted in Rice, Kanarese Literature, p. 112.
111. Vol. I, Ch. XVI, B.
112. A History of Telugu Literature, p. 38.
113. Ibid., p. 39.
117. Chenchiah and Bhujanga Rao, Telugu Literature, p. 50.
118. A critical study of this work has been published by the University of Madras.
119. P. T. Raju, Telugu Literature, pp. 94-5.

388
Although several of the Middle Indo-Aryan (popularly called 'Prakrit') dialects attained literary status at diverse points of their history and became eventually standardized, highly stylized, and thus quite resistant to revivifying development, the numerous spoken idioms concurrent with them naturally remained subject to the continuous process of change.

Udyotana in his Kuvalayamālā (A.D. 779) refers to the distinct dialects of merchants hailing from Madhyādēsa, Ṭakkha, Sindhu, Maru, Mālava, Gurjara and Lāṭa.¹ But it was not till the end of the first millennium after Christ, that the numerous spoken idioms all over North India were transformed to such an extent, as to justify recognition of a distinctly new stage in the evolution of Indo-Aryan, that marks it off from the preceding stage through certain well-defined characteristics. Reference has been already made above² to this third and the last stage of Indo-Aryan, called the New Indo-Aryan.

It is from about this period that the predecessors of the modern languages of Rajasthan and Gujarāt are found to have followed a line of development different from the rest of the Sauraseni group which eventually developed into Hindi.

This Rājasthāni-Gujarāti group later on, that is, after the period here dealt with, further bifurcates into the Jaipuri and Gujarāti–Mārwāri-Mālwi groups and the latter of these ultimately divides into Gujarāti, Mārwāri and Mālwi. As preservation of neuter gender and some other traits in Modern Gujarāti suggest an unbroken linguistic tradition, and as parts of West Rājasthān and North Gujarāt were known between the eighth and the eleventh century as “Gujjarattā” or “Gurjaratā”,³ it would be more appropriate to call the language of that area by the name “Old Gujarāti” instead of “Old Western Rājasthānī” as coined by the late L. F. Tessitori.⁴

The name “Gujarāti” is based on the regional name “Gujarāta”, earlier, “Gujjarattā” (Sanskritized 'Gurjaratrā'), which, on linguistic grounds,⁵ can be shown to have the meaning ‘the Gurjaras en masse’ and later ‘Gurjaradom,’ ‘the domain of the Gurjaras’.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Though the Gurjaras are found by the seventh century A.D. to be completely naturalized and absorbed into the Aryan fold, even to the extent of never once referring to their origin (they were foreigners, according to the more probable view), it is well-nigh impossible to believe that their original native speech yielded to the idiom of their adopted land without leaving behind any traces whatsoever. It is quite likely that a good portion of the underviable 'desiya' element in the exclusively Gujarati word-stock was inherited from the native idioms of the foreign settlers—chiefly the Gurjaras.

We may briefly recount here the most salient features of Old Gujarati that for practical purposes can be considered to distinguish it from the previous stage.

In phonology: (1) Simplification of the consonant cluster along with lengthening of the preceding short vowel (which was also nasalized if the cluster began with a nasal) under favorable conditions. This was the most outstanding feature and Gujarati shared it with most of the New Indo-Aryan languages. This development is indicative of a basic shift in the earlier accent system and, by re-establishing the Old Indo-Aryan state of intervocalic stops, it makes it possible to borrow Sanskrit words entirely unchanged, in contrast with the Middle Indo-Aryan stage, which, in general, modified most of the Sanskrit loans. (2) Loss of an intervocalic $h$ in the terminational elements and of $-v-$ in certain positions. (3) Development of an intervocalic $l$ into the retroflex $l$. (4) Unrounding of the final $-u-$ to $-a-$. (5) Contraction of the contiguous vowels.

In morphology: (1) Greatly accelerated practice of using post-positions in place of case-terminations. (2) Constitution of the forms of the pleonastically extended stems into a separate declension. (3) Emergent tendency to employ auxiliary and participial tense forms. (4) Use of $-tau-$ instead of the earlier $-rtau-$ as the present participle formative—strictly speaking a phonological development. (5) Creation of a new passive present participle in $-tau-$.

In syntax: Old Gujarati developed various new constructions, terms of expressions and usages, several of which (along with some of the characteristically Apabhramśa stuff that was conserved in Old Gujarati) continue in living use even to this day.6

In vocabulary: Words of 'desiya' (i.e. foreign, obscure or unknown) origin and onomatopoetic, reduplicative and jingle elements were now playing a role far superior to what was found in the previous stage. Words of Perso-Arabic origin, which later on came to be absorbed in hundreds, were as yet the rarest exceptions.7
The variety of Apabhramśa, which is found in some of the illustrative stanzas in the Apabhramśa portion of the Siddhahemā (c. A.D. 1143) of Hemachandra, reveals several modern traits as compared with the Classical Apabhramśa of Svayambhū (not later than the ninth century) and Pushpadanta (mid-tenth century). It has to a certain extent a transitional character that further develops into Old Gujarāti and Old Hindi. This is clearly seen from the use, side by side, of nominative singulars in -au- as well as -ā- of the dative postpositions -āne- as well as -kehi; and of words retaining an intervocalic -m- as well as those changing it to -mv-. These traits later become specialized respectively to Old Gujarāti and Old Hindi. On the other hand, “even when the Modern Indo-Aryan languages had fully come to their own and had essayed their beginnings in literature, the Apabhramśa tradition continued either in the form of pure Apabhramśa, or in the form of a strong colouring of the vernacular with Apabhramśa orthography and Apabhramśa vocabulary and idiom, Apabhramśa cachets and atmosphere, to give a sort of semi-Apabhramśa semi-NIA literary speech.”

2. Literature

The Old Gujarāti literature of this period appears to manifest but very few basic departures from the just preceding Apabhramśa literature in point of literary trends, types, and forms of expression. It directly inherited and continued a good part of the Apabhramśa literary traditions. Hence, more in case of the literature than in case of the language, it is not possible to say exactly when Apabhramśa ended and Old Gujarāti began. One cannot be quite specific on this point, only because much of the Apabhramśa and early Old Gujarāti literature of the centuries immediately preceding and succeeding A.D. 1100 is either lost for good or remains unearthed so far.

Apabhramśa had developed its own literary forms. Its Sandhi-bandha or the epic narrative of the Puranic or the chaṭṭita type which, in its ornateness and elaboration, was a successor of the ornate Mahākāvyā of Classical Sanskrit and Prakrit, is unre- presented in the earlier period of Old Gujarāti literature. But its Rāsā-bandha, a semi-lyrical, semi-narrative form of modest compass (somewhat reminding us of the Khāṇḍa-kāṇya of Classical Sanskrit), continued in Old Gujarāti and became more and more prolific and altered in its original character with the course of time right down to the nineteenth century.

Besides the Rāsā form, Old Gujarāti prosody and poetic phraseo-
logy, too, supply us with sure indications of unbroken Apabhraṁsa literary traditions. This is further confirmed by the fact that early Old Gujarāṭī literature, like Apabhraṁsa literature, has almost exclusively a poetic form. Verse in both cases is the only medium of literary expression. Another such trait commonly shared by these two literatures is that all the available compositions are religious-didactic, and, with rare exceptions, Jainistic. Most probably, however, this is due to historical conditions, and not an indication of a total absence of Brahmanical activity in these fields. The Jains evidently took far greater and better care for the preservation of the manuscripts of their works than was done by the non-Jains. But works of pure literature in Apabhraṁsa and Old Gujarāṭī, being of a non-religious nature, could not be expected to have had the same favorable chances of preservation. Jain compositions themselves, however, can be looked upon as indirect evidence for the existence of such purely literary works, because, the Jains had always a derivative character. They valued literature as the most effective vehicle for propagating their teachings and ideals, and hence they were ever ready to adopt, imitate, and press into service whatever literary languages, types, subjects, styles and fashions from time to time became popular.

Some direct evidence for the existence of non-Jain and purely literary works is provided by the contents of a few of the illustrative stanzas (e.g. 8.4.339, 442 etc.) cited by Hemachandra in the Apabhraṁsa portion of his grammar Siddhaṁsena. These citations are important from another point of view, too. Not only that their language, as stated already, forms in certain points a link between Classical Apabhraṁsa and Old Gujarāṭī, but not a few of them, with slight changes in spelling or wording, also continue to appear in Old Gujarāṭī literature of several succeeding centuries. Hemachandra's Apabhraṁsa illustrations breathe directness, ease, poignancy and freshness that are characteristic of a genuinely popular literature. Their themes pertain to love, valour, general morality and wisdom. As remnants of a lost poetry that throbbed with full and intense life, they are highly precious.

It should be remembered that for centuries after the employment of New Indo-Aryan languages for literary purposes, Sanskrit, Prakrit and Apabhraṁsa, too, continued in use side by side with them as parallel literary mediums. Most of the early Old Gujarāṭī writers were Jain monks, who had as a rule some works in one or more of the three classical languages also to their credit. It is clear that their compositions in the Desa Bhāṣā were undertaken with
the specific purpose of administering instruction with entertainment to the general lay followers mostly having very modest educational or spiritual equipment. This fact obviously imposed an inherent limitation on the general character and scope of such works.

Most of the twenty and odd Old Gujarati poems that are available to us onwards from about the third quarter of the twelfth century A.D. are in the Rāsa form, though in view of some literary devices and specialised character of the subject-matter they have different styles like Rāsa, Bērhamāsī, Māṭrīkā and Vivāhāla.

As indicated above, our specimens are, in all probability, Jain imitations of the then most popular literary types that have continued to be productive down to the end of the eighteenth century.

The Rāsa had a long and varied past. It was known to several Purāṇas and Saunakrit rhetorical works as a type of group dance specially associated with the divine cowherd Krishṇa and the Gopīs and hence, by implication, also with the cowherd community of the Abhiras. In rhetoric tradition, Rāsaka is treated also as a variety of minor Rūpakas, essentially operatic and involving a big troupe of dancing pairs. Obviously some poetic compositions, too, employed as texts for these Rūpakas that were performed on festive occasions, came to be called “Rāsakas”. The general form of these compositions was called Rāsā-bandhā, and as a characteristic and widely popular Apabhraṃśa literary genre it has been described, though very briefly, by two eminent Prakrit prosodists, Virahānka (before the ninth century) and Svayambhu.

From their obscure and inadequate account, this much at least can be gathered that the Rāsā-bandhā was a poem having either a specific rhythm-controlled organic structure or a sustained form that used one specific metre for the general frame, and other choice metres, if necessary, for variation. Unfortunately, however, not a single Rāsaka poem of the classical Apabhraṃśa period has been preserved to us, and hence earlier stages of the development which culminated in the Old Gujarāti Rāsa remain mostly in the dark.

The Old Gujarāti Rāsas, falling within the period under our survey, were mostly composed to be sung in accompaniment with the Rāsa dance that was performed usually in Jain temples, especially to celebrate religious festivals. They turned around some narrative, biographical, purely doctrinal, or didactic subject, always with a religious moulding.

The earliest available specimens, viz., the Bharatēśvara-Bāhubali-ghora (c. A.D. 1170) of Vajrasena and its expanded version, the Bharatēśvara-Bāhubali-rāsa (A.D. 1185) of Śalībhadra, narrate the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

mythological incident of war between the kings Bharata and Bahubali, sons of the first Jain Tirthankara Bishabhā. In the latter, consisting of fifteen sections (each composed after a specific metrical pattern), descriptions of warlike preparations, Bharata's march and a few battle scenes have been done with some power. The diction does not lack picturesqueness, nor is the style without vigour. In Vajrasena's poem (which has five sections), on the other hand, the sequel is characteristically Jainistic. Bahubali, in the very moment of his victory, is shown becoming at once disgusted with the worldly life, taking to asceticism, and eventually, as he cures himself of pride, attaining omniscience; the account of the previous life of the principal characters is briefly touched to illustrate the working of the law of karman; and finally, the moral is spotlighted: he who gives up pride and deceitfulness and practises contemplation gets very rich rewards.

The Chandanabālī-rāsa (A.D. 1201) of Asiga, the Jambuśevāmi-charitīya (A.D. 1210) of Dharma, and the Gajasukumāla-rāsa (possibly c. A.D. 1250) of Delhaṇa sketch the instructive life-stories of some saints of Jain mythology and legendary history. Chandanabālī is known to the Jain tradition as the first pravartirī (head-nun) in the first monastic order founded by the Tirthankara Mahāvīra. Jambuśevāmin was the fourth pontiff in the pontificate that started with Mahāvīra. Gajasukumāla (Sk. Gajasukumāra) was, according to the Jains, a younger brother of Krishṇa Vasudeva. As an ascetic, he remained unswerved in his meditation in the face of extreme physical torture, and consequently attained omniscience. Poetically these compositions hardly contain anything saving them from banality.

Of the remaining Rāsas, the Revantagiri-rāsa16 (c. A.D. 1232) of Vijayasena eulogizes in four Kadāras (sections) the greatness of mount Girnār in Saurāśṭra (and especially, of the temple of Nemi, the twenty-second Tirthankara, newly constructed thereon) as a place of pilgrimage. The second Kadāra weaves in the swinging rhythm of the Madanavatara metre a picturesque description of the mount. The Abu-rāsa (A.D. 1233) of Paḷhaṇa too commemorates the erection of a temple of Nemi on mount Abu by Tejāpāla, the famous minister of king Viradhavala (first half of the thirteenth century). Similarly the Pethaṇa-rāsa (c. A.D. 1300), about the merchant Pethaṇa, who took out a mass pilgrimage from Pātaṇa in Gujārāt to mount Śatruṇḍayā in Saurāśṭra, has a commemorative purpose.

Among the three Rāsas of a purely religious-didactic character, the Buddhi-rāsa (c. A.D. 1200) of Śālībhadrā is a collection, in four sections, of moral sayings, proverbs, pithy maxims and reli-

884
gious instructions given as a summary list of "do's" and "don'ts". The Jivadaya-rasa (A.D. 1201) of Asiga, consisting of fifty-three stanzas, has a similar though more restricted purpose in that it concentrates on religious instructions. The Saptakshetri-rasa16 (A.D. 1271) gives in 119 stanzas a detailed description of the seven prescribed channels of religious charity.

The compositions generally labelled as Bārahamaśa, Mātrikā and Viśihāla can be aptly described as Rāsas that are characterized by some special literary device or subject-matter. In the Bārahamaśa, the theme, preferably of love, is interlaced with the month-to-month description of varying seasonal characteristics and of the corresponding changes in the life-routine of the people at large. It introduces a new variant in the long tradition of seasonal poems initiated with the Ritusamhāra. Out of the two specimens of this type the Nemi-Rājula-bārahamaśa of Pālhaṇa (c. A.D. 1233) possibly served as a model for the later and more poetic Nemārātha-Chatuspadikā19 of Vinayachandra (end of the thirteenth century). The poems describe nature, in the order of the months, from the angle of love-lorn and expectant Rājimati, whose wedding with prince Nemi failed to come off because the latter decided at the eleventh hour to renounce the world and become a monk. Pālhaṇa’s poem has fuller descriptions, but it is Vinayachandra who has succeeded in giving us, we can say for the first time, a genuine artistic piece.

The central mood in the Nemārātha-Chatuspadikā is effectively highlighted by delineating the situation in the form of small bits of tête-à-têtes between Rājimati and her confidante. That Vinayachandra had an artistic sense of form, rather exceptional in that period, cannot be denied. Its forty chatuspadikās (chaśpās) are organized in thirteen uniformly patterned units. Each unit begins with a nature cameo, is followed by the confidante’s loving, comforting, and practical advice, and is rounded off with Rājimati’s words that reveal a heart at once noble, loving, all-dedicating and bleeding.

Another Bārahamaśa of the thirteenth century, viz. Jinadharma-sūri-bārahamaśa is still in the manuscript form.

The Mātrikās give moral and religious instructions in verses, each of which begins with a letter of the Sanskrit syllabary in its serial order. This device is as old as the Buddhist sacred text Lalitavistara. We have got no less than three such specimens for our period: the Mātrikā-chaśpā,20 the Śavreva-mātrikā21 and the Sampaktavamālī-chaśpā of Jagaṇḍu,—all the three to be dated before the end of the thirteenth century.
Lastly, the Vivahala type is illustrated by the Jinesvara-sūri-
samayamāsūri-vivāhā-taṇḍuṇa-rāsa23 (A.D. 1275) of Somamūrti. As is
clear even from the title, in such compositions the occasion of ordi-
nation of some well-known person was metaphorically described as
his wedding with the lady Self-control. Somamūrti's poem relates
to the ordination of one Āmbūda (A.D. 1189-1275), who, as Āchārya
Jinesvara Sūri, became well known in the Kharatara Gachchha.

There are indications that a few other types, too, e.g. Kulaka,
Phāga, Charchari, Dhavałal, etc. were current in the thirteenth cen-
tury. But the materials being still unpublished, it is very difficult
to gather positive information about them.

All these types of compositions remain very popular for cen-
turies to follow. Monk after monk goes on mechanically turning
out Rāsas, Phāgas, Māṭīkās, Vivahalas and Charcharis with the ad-
mitted purposes of instructing, earning merit and religious drilling.
Very few of them succeed in reaching the literary level.

Structurally Old Gujarāti Rāsas reveal two distinct types: that
which is made up of a number of sections, each constructed after a
specific pattern; and that which is constructed throughout in one
particular measure which is occasionally provided with a refrain
repeated after every stanza. In the first type the main topic of the
section runs in rhymed verses (distichs or three-lined) and frequent-
ly it is rounded off with a stanza in a different measure. Of course
this general pattern permitted some minor variations. The Bhrat-
tevāra-Bāhubali-rāsa, Revanta-giri-rāsa, and Pethālā-rāsa, among
others, have this pattern. The other pattern is illustrated by the
Nemi-nātha-chatuspadikā, Nemi-Rājula-bhramāsā, Chandanabālā-
rāsa, Gayasukumālā-rāsa, and others.

3. Ghatiyālā Inscription No. 2, v. 60, JRAS, 1885, p. 513; Ghatiyālā Inscription
   No. 1, El. IX, 279. For fuller references, see K. M. Mursali, The Glory That was
4. L. P. Tessitori, "Notes on the Grammar of the Old Western Rajasthani" etc.
   IA, XLIII, 1914 pp. 21-22.
5. The nominal derivative suffix -ita (feminine) 'aggregate, status, office' is attested
   in Modern Gujarāti words, jivita, 'germs and small insects collective'; Bhili, 'the
   Bhil community' (from Bhil), thakrita, 'fief' (from thakar, 'a feudal chief').
6. The usage mai jina 'I thought' recurs in one of the Apabhraṃsa stanzas of
   disputed authorship found in the fourth act of Kalidasa's Vikramorvaśīya
   (S. P. Parātī's edition, Appendix I, st. 7), in a stanza cited by Hemachandra in
   the Apabhraṃsa portion of his Siddhāhema (8.4.377) and in Modern Gujarāti
   in the form mem jina.
7. Sāhita, 'small tent' (per. sāhiba) is used in the Bhratereśvara-Bāhubali-rāsa
8. Uska and sīl in the Siddhāhema, 8.4.425 (1).
10. Ibid, 8.4.397.
12. Vide Bhāgavata, 10.33.2; Brahma, 188, 21, 31; Nātyadeipaṇa of Rāmaḥandra and Gomacchandra, p. 218; Bhūmaprakāśa of Śrāvakaśaṅkya, p. 266. Cf. also the definitions of Rāmaḥaṇa given in Dhanapala’s Pāṇiṭṭhāchāḍhisaṃśaṇa (word No. 872) and in Hemacandra’s Abhidhānaśāstra (8.62).
13. Bhūmaprakāśa pp. 263-265; Kāryakāṇḍa of Vaiṭhaka, NirMadāga, p. 218; Bhīvaprakāśa of Saradatana, p. 266. Cf. also the definitions of Rāmaḥaṇa given in Dhanapala’s Pāṇiṭṭhāchāḍhisaṃśaṇa (word No. 872) and in Hemacandra’s Abhidhānaśāstra (8.62).
19. Ibid, pp. 8-10.
20. Ibid, pp. 74-78.
22. Ibid, pp. 76-82.
CHAPTER XVI

RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

A. GENERAL REVIEW

The outstanding fact in the religious history of the period under review is the triumphant revival of Brahmanical religion. Buddhism disappeared from the land of its birth and Jainism maintained its stronghold only in one corner of India, viz. Gujarat. But Brahmanical religion had scarcely recovered its dominant position, practically over the whole of India, when it had to face the disastrous effects of the destructive inroads of Islam. The full effect of this was not apparent till a later age, but before the close of the thirteenth century A.D. Islam had effected permanent, though scattered, settlements all over Northern India, which were big with future consequences. For the first time in the history of India, the country was permanently divided, from a religious and social point of view, into two distinct entities, the gulf between which even seven centuries of peaceful existence side by side has not been able to bridge. This religious and social aloofness places the Muslim invasion of India on an entirely different footing from similar invasions elsewhere. Analogy has been drawn, for example, between Saxon and Norman invasions of England and the Turkish invasion of India in order to prove that since the invaders became the children of the soil, they can hardly be regarded as foreigners, and the ‘foreign conquest’ of India is a misnomer so far as the pre-British period is concerned. This analogy is however fallacious. For while within a century or two of the conquest of England by William, the Duke of Normandy, nobody could possibly distinguish the Saxon, Norman or other elements of which the English people were composed, it does not require a moment’s thought today to draw a clear line between the Hindu and Muslim population, even though more than seven hundred years (in the case of Sindh, twelve hundred years) have elapsed since the Muslims first settled in the country. Nor can we reasonably visualise a period when this difference will cease to exist.

It is by way of distinction from the Muslims that the term Hindu came into use. It is probable that the name was chosen by the Muslims in order to give a common designation to the people whom they found in India. This indirectly proves the essential unity of the creeds, beliefs and religious practices of the latter,
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

in the eyes of the former. In any case the term Hindu comes into general use during this period and it would be convenient to refer henceforth to the Indians, other than Muslims, and their religion as Hindu. As is well known, Hindu, a modified form of Sindhu, was originally a geographical term used by the western foreigners to denote, first the region round the Sindhu river, and then the whole of India. The Indians, however, never called themselves by this name before the Muslim conquest. It was re-introduced after that event, with the added significance of a particular form of religious persuasion. Historically, therefore, 'Hindu' really signifies the aggregate of peoples in India and their culture and religion, as distinguished from Muslims. The common use of the term Hindu, as opposed to Buddhist, Jain or follower of any other religious sect in pre-Muslim India, is therefore quite erroneous.

The period under review thus brings into relief the emergence of Hinduism as the dominant faith with the menace of Islam as a disturbing element. The cloud was not as yet bigger than a man's hand, but ere long it grew in dimensions and cast its doleful shadow over the whole land. For the time being, however, this remote possibility was not visualised by the Hindus.

This leads us to one important question, viz. the result of the impact of Islam on Hindu religion during the period under review. So far as doctrinal changes are concerned, we could hardly expect any during the period under review when the Muslims were still a merely militant force and had hardly come into close or peaceful contact with the Hindus. To the latter, the Muslims were not only foreign and mlechchha (unclean and boorish) conquerors, but they had deeply wounded their religious susceptibilities by indiscriminate demolition of temples and destruction of images of gods on a large scale. The Hindus would therefore be hardly in a mood to take any lesson from the teachings of Islam, and the time was too short to produce even any indirect and unconscious effect.

But the Hindus kept themselves severely aloof in order to save their purity against the unclean aliens. This led to a change in their religious and social outlook and induced them to adopt stringent rules in regard to both which vitally affected their progress and future development. This would form the subject of discussion in the next volume.

While our main attention is naturally drawn to the intrusion of Islam as an effective factor in the religious history of India, it is necessary to refer to some other features in the evolution of Indian religion which characterised the period under review. The
most important among these was the growing influence of Tantrik ideas over both Buddhism and Brahmanical religion. The high ideals of Mahāyāna, which aimed at the salvation of all and were actuated by the noble spirit of universal love for all mankind, soon yielded to gross superstitions and immoral practices so far at least as the general masses were concerned. Belief in the efficacy of mantra, maṇḍala and other elements of esoteric practices as the easiest means for attaining salvation retarded the growth of spiritual ideas, while the conception of ultimate reality as a duality of male and female energy—Upāya and Prajñā in Buddhism, and Śiva and Śakti in Brahmanical religion—, paved the way for the dominance of erotic and sensual practices which undermined the sense of moral values. Whatever views may be entertained regarding the ideals and practices of Tantra in their essence and origin, there can be no denying the fact that they led, in not a few cases, to gross debauchery and perversion of morals and ethics. It may be conceded that the fundamental principles of Tantra were conceived by great minds with the best of intentions, but the way devised for salvation was very risky and dangerous to the ordinary and unwary devotee and, as could be easily foreseen, most of the pilgrims fell victims to temptation and perished on the way before they could reach the promised land of bliss.

There has been much speculation regarding the causes of this general degradation of religious life in India. It is a significant fact that the same period also witnessed a great decline in the general intellectual and cultural level of the people in India. But whether the first is the cause or the effect of the second, or whether, and if so, how far, they reacted on each other, it is not easy to determine. It has been suggested that the universal appeal of Buddhism which brought within its fold peoples of diverse views and beliefs, in all stages of cultural development, wrought its own ruin. For, in order to satisfy the masses Buddhism had to come down from its high pedestal to their level and present itself in a popular garb which they could understand and appreciate and for which they felt an emotional urge in their own hearts. But by an inevitable process it also incorporated to a large extent the crude ideas, beliefs and religious practices held by them. A popular religion has little scope for an appeal to the intellect, and it has to strive its utmost to win the hearts of the people. This process, with its inevitable result, was in full swing during the period under review.

But whatever may be the cause, the most regrettable feature was the degradation in ideas of decency and sexual morality brought about by the religious practices. How far this evil corrodi
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

The whole society would be plain from a study of contemporary literature. A great Sanskrit poet of the period gave a vivid description of the deva-dāsīs in a temple of Kṛiṣṇa and added that they made one feel as if the goddess Lākṣmi had come down on earth to attend her lord the god Mūrāri. Contemporary epigraphic records also refer in rapturous terms to the personal charm and beauty of the hundreds of deva-dāsīs assigned to a single temple. It is impossible to describe, in a modern book some of the worst features of Tāntrik theories and practices which have been described by an eminent Indian scholar to be "at once the most revolting and horrible that human depravity could think of." Fortunately the esoteric character of Tāntrik religion limited its field of operation, and it may be conceded that such debased forms of religious practices were exceptional and not normal. Even then we have to admit that the general effect of such religion was calculated to degrade rather than elevate the morals and general character of the people at large.

If we remember that religion in all ages has had a profound effect on Indian minds, the state of religion during the period under review cannot be regarded as an isolated topic, but has to be reviewed in the context of the general history of India, in particular its political history, social and economic condition, development of art, etc. The overall picture is one of decadence in every respect as compared to the high standard of older times. It may therefore be urged, with some degree of plausibility, that the overthrow of Hindu rule was as much due to internal as to external causes. The wealth and luxury with its enervating effect upon character on the one hand, and the degraded religious and social life on the other, sapped the vitality of the people and destroyed its manhood. The great fabric of culture and civilisation, reared up in course of centuries, was tottering, and it was no longer a question of whether but when it would fall. Foreign invasions merely accelerated the process of decay and hastened the downfall which was inevitable in any case.

Next to the growing evil of Tāntrik practices, and not altogether unconnected with it, is the almost complete disappearance of Buddhism from the land of its birth. This question has been discussed at some length in the section on Buddhism. It will suffice to state here that the principal reason seems to be the destruction by foreign invaders of the numerous monasteries in Bihār and Bengal which formed the stronghold of that religion. For the rest, it was partly assimilated to Brahmanical religion and partly survived in disguise or in a modified form in various medieval religious cults, specially in Bengal. M. M. Haraprasad Sastri even regarded the very little
known cult of Dharma-Thākur as a living relic of Buddhism in Bengal.

The Brahmical religion has always showed its catholicity by absorbing powerful rival religious sects. At a much earlier period it brought the cults of both Krishṇa-Vāsudeva and Rudra-Siva within its fold. Now it repeated the same process in regard to Buddhism by declaring the Buddha to be an incarnation of Viṣṇu. The developed doctrines and rituals of Mahāyāna and Brahmical religion made such a near approach to each other, specially through the stress upon faith and devotion, worship of images of numerous gods and goddesses, and the use of Sanskrit in liturgical texts, on the part of the Buddhists, and the acceptance of the principle of abhinīśa, specially in regard to diet, on the part of the Brāhmaṇas, that a merger of the two was not only rendered quite easy but became almost inevitable. The identification of the Buddha with Viṣṇu by means of the theory of incarnation completed the process, and Buddhism silently merged itself into Brahmical religion. Even today images of Buddha are worshipped as Śiva or Viṣṇu in many places in Bengal. It is also interesting to note that Śiva and Buddha were identified in Java, and in modern Balinese theology Buddha is regarded as a younger brother of Śiva. Further, Śiva, Viṣṇu and Buddha were all regarded as identical and so were their Saktis. These no doubt truly reflected the religious conception of the motherland.

The Jains were more fortunate than the Buddhists. Under the patronage of the Later Chālukyas and the Hoysalas Jainism maintained for long a position in the Deccan and South India, but with the growing influence of Vaishnavism and Śaivism it gradually lost its importance in both these regions. The Hoysala rulers, though converted to Vaishnavism, supported the Jain religion, but the Cholas and the Pāṇḍya were bigoted Saivas, and are said to have persecuted the Jains. The successful revolution of the Saiva Liṅgāyat sect against the Kalachuri ruler Vijyala, who was a Jain, was also an important factor in the decline of Jainism, specially in the Deccan. Due to all these causes, Jainism gradually lost its hold in the Deccan and South India before the close of the period under review.

Jainism was also affected by the assimilating power of Brahmical religion, but to a much less extent than Buddhism. This is due to the innate rigidity and conservative character of Jainism which enabled it to maintain to a certain extent its special characteristics vis-à-vis Brahmical religion. The result is that while Buddhism disappeared from India, Jainism is still a powerful force in Gujarāt and Rājputāna. This is also partly due to the fact
that these two strongholds suffered less from the iconoclastic fury of the early Muslim invaders than Bihār and Bengal where Buddhism found its last refuge.

One great thing to be noted about Jainism is that it was never subjected to the contaminating influence of Tāntrik ideas, which proved ruinous to Buddhism and Brahmanical religion in North India. The Vaishālīva sects of Southern India were also largely free from the degrading Tāntrik ideas of the North. This was mainly due to the rise of the great Ṭhārāyas like Rāmānuja and Madhva who shed lustre on this age. The great Advaita doctrine of Śankara, which had a triumphant career in the preceding period, cut at the very root of bhakti-vāda, i.e. the doctrine of love and faith, for if there is only one universal spirit, there was no scope for love or devotion, which necessarily postulates two separate entities, the lover and the beloved, the devotee and the object of devotion. Rāmānuja solved this problem and placed the bhakti-cult on a firm philosophical basis by expounding the famous doctrine of Viśiṣṭadīvaita-vāda, which was a qualified form of Śankara’s Monism and a reply to his challenge. In the system of Vaishānavism preached by these Ṭhārāyas there was no place for the cowherd girls (gopīs), an element which so profoundly affected the Vaishānavism of the North and ultimately degraded it to the level of the gross form of Tāntrik religion referred to above.

But the South did not altogether escape the contamination of the North. If the Bhāgavata Purāṇa were really composed in South India, as many believe, we have an indisputable evidence of the dominance of the gopī element. Still later, Nimbārka, a Tailanga Brāhmaṇa, also stressed the gopī element. Krishna, surrounded by thousands of gopīs, with Rādhā as his principal beloved, forms an essential element of his doctrine. It is, however, not without significance that Nimbārka, though hailing from the South, lived and preached in North India with his centre at Vṛndāvana (near Mathurā), the reputed centre of Krishna’s dalliance with the gopīs. The followers of Nimbārka are also mostly to be found in North India. The Rādhā cult preached by him was further stressed by Chaitanya in the sixteenth century and it is still the most popular aspect of North Indian Vaishānavism.

The Saivas and Sāktas were more affected by Tāntrik ideas than the Vaishānavas. The Sākta cult almost became a synonym for Tāntrik rites, often of a degrading character. Among the Saivas also, both in the North and the South, sects like Kapālikas and Kālämukhas followed most repulsive and obnoxious practices associated with wine and women.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

The growing menace of Tantrik ideas and practices should not, however, blind us to the fact that purer and higher forms of religious ideas and practices continued to flourish, at least among the higher classes, even in those regions in North India which were most contaminated by the debased ideas. Further, as noted above, there were also large areas, particularly in Deccan and South India, where Tantrik influence was hardly perceptible.

The growth of big temples, both Saiva and Vaishnava, constitutes an important feature in the religious development, particularly in South India. Rich endowments made to them by kings, merchants, and other men of wealth made them not only important centres of higher education, but also centres of missionary activity and spiritual inspiration like the Buddhist monasteries of old. The mathas, which grew up in large numbers, not only supplemented these activities, but also took up humanitarian work like feeding the poor and tending the sick. It is interesting to note that many Buddhist monasteries were actually converted to such mathas.

Reference has been made above to the persecution of Jains by the Saiva rulers of the South. According to Tamil Puranas, the Saiva religion was firmly established by the cruel torture inflicted on the Jains. Specific reference is made to a case of an earlier period when 8000 Jains were impaled on stakes. But according to some scholars the story is apocryphal. There are also stories that Ramanuja and his followers were subjected to persecution by the Cholas who were ardent Saivas. It is difficult to say how far these stories can be relied upon as true, though some support is given to them by the fact that Ramanuja had to withdraw to Mysore and live there for more than twenty years, before he could return to Srirangam. But these cases, even if partially true, form an exception to the general rule, and on the whole the Hindus, even during this period, did not show any lack of the spirit of toleration which marked the religious evolution in India throughout the ages. This spirit was displayed even towards the Muslims in the face of the greatest provocation caused by their iconoclastic fury.

B. BUDDHISM

I. DOCTRINAL CHANGES

1. Tantrik Buddhism

The development of Tantrism, during the period under review, effected a radical change in the outlook and character of Buddhism. The Tantras, whether of the Saiva or Saktta schools or of the Buddhists, primarily pertain to the sadhana, i.e. religious exercises or
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

practices, as contrasted with any abstract philosophy. They have little to do with metaphysical speculations, since their leading object is to expound practical methods for the realisation of the ultimate truth. These methods and practices, sometimes of highly erotic nature, comprise, besides esoteric Yoga, a medley of hymns, rites, rituals, etc. So far as theological speculations and philosophical doctrines are concerned, the Saiva and Sākta Tantras accept the Brahmanical philosophical systems as authority, and utilise their fundamental tenets, while the Buddhist Tantras likewise adopt and put to use the Buddhist, or more precisely, Mahāyāna, principles. It should not be supposed that Buddhism, in the process of development, had evolved Tantra at a certain stage of its growth, within its own spheres, or out of its own materials. For there is absolutely no inherent relation between Tantra and Buddhism proper. In point of fact, Buddhism in the later phases of Mahāyāna had adopted, or had been grafted into, these esoteric principles and practices which had an entirely independent growth and an independent history of their own. But, as pointed out above, Tantra ideas may be traced in Buddhism from a very early period.

Mahāyāna Buddhism does not recognise Śāntatā or perfect knowledge to be the highest truth, which, according to its postulation, is a state where Śāntatā and Karuṇā are united together. Thus the emphasis of Mahāyāna is divided; as a system of religion it is characterised by its stress, no less if not more, on Karuṇā or universal compassion, a feature that is conspicuous by its absence in Hinayāna. The final goal of Hinayāna being the attainment of Arhathood, its followers are supposed to dedicate themselves to the selfish hankering for personal liberation and to be thus busy with themselves only. On the contrary, the avowed object of Karuṇā is to stimulate one to make use of one's perfect knowledge in missionary activities for the welfare of the suffering world and the salvation of all beings. These missionary activities mainly consist of preaching the gospel to all the laity in order to banish their shroud of ignorance and make them realise the truth.

Śāntatā, or perfect wisdom, and Karuṇā, or universal compassion, being associated together, generate in one’s mind, according to the Mahāyāna conception, the Bodhi-chitta, which is that mental state in which nothing else remains but a firm determination to attain bodhi or perfect knowledge, mixed up with a strong emotion of compassion for the redemption of all suffering beings of the world. The Bodhi-chitta next proceeds on an upward march through ten different stages (bhūmis), and when the last stage, known as Dharma-megha, is reached, one becomes a perfect Bodhi-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

sattva. To the Mahāyānists, the ultimate goal is not final extinction through Nirvāṇa,11 but to transcend the states of both bhava (existence in the world of birth and death) and Nirvāṇa (in the sense of extinction), and to attain Buddhahood through different stages of Bodhisattvahood. Every human being, nay, any creature of the world, is, according to Mahāyāna, a potential Buddha, and has within him all the possibilities of becoming a Samyak-sambuddha, i.e. the Perfectly Enlightened One; but this hidden possibility can find tangible expression only by the attainment of the Bodhi-chitta, which is a unified state of Śāntatā and Karuṇā.

This broad outlook of Mahāyāna, coupled with the spirit of benevolence and humanity, elevated it to the sublimity of a religion of love and tender sympathy for all sentient beings, and formed an important factor in popularising Buddhism far and wide. For the liberation of all people being the sacred pledge of Mahāyāna, it stood out prominently as a religion for all. From this standpoint, it had to concern itself with, and accommodate within its fold, folks of all grades, shades, and tastes. But this zeal of popularisation did overstep its limits, and ultimately brought about degeneration in Mahāyāna, inasmuch as an influx of heterogeneous elements of faith and religious practices into the enclosure of Buddhism was rendered inevitable. What is, to the ordinary or plebian section of people, a religion, if it be not something that consists of belief in a pantheon of gods and goddesses and of the performance of rites and ceremonies and some esoteric practices along with the muttering of mystic formulas, etc. with which they had been hitherto only too familiar? So, in order to satisfy the ideas and sentiments of what is called the mass mind, manifold ceremonies and rites and rituals of very popular and homely nature had to be incorporated, and at the same time elements of mantras, dhāraṇīs, mudrās, mandala-les, etc. introduced into the religion of the Buddha. Gradually, however, a section of people of higher intellectual level, too, became convinced of the efficacy of the mantra-charms as the simplest and most suitable means for the realisation of the ultimate truth. Just at this stage of development Mahāyāna was subdivided into two distinct schools, Mantra-yāna or Mantra-naya and Pāramitā-yāna or Pāramitā-naya, and the former may justly be regarded as the initial stage of Tāntrik Buddhism. In this stage the emphasis was laid mainly on the elements of mantra, dhāraṇī, mudrā, mandala, abhiśeka, etc. But these elements of esoterism have by nature a propensity to generate beliefs in magic, sorcery, charms, etc., having their application to gods, demigods, ghosts, goblins, demons, fiends and the like. And when to these were added the elements of yoga or sexo-yogic practices, it was full-fledged Tāntrism. It may
thus be said that the Mahāyāna doctrine of Karuṇā was, directly or indirectly, responsible for introducing Tāntrism in Buddhism. This doctrine of universal compassion, as such, was also adopted and utilised to the full by the Tāntrik Buddhists themselves. All their teachings, all their mystic rites and ceremonies and practices, bear the impress of Karuṇā on them, and every thing they do is professed to be undertaken with the set purpose of saving the world from all miseries.

It should, however, be borne in mind that there is no fundamental difference between the esoteric sādhanā (religious endeavours) of the Brahmanical and Buddhist Tāntrism. Both the schools lay equal stress upon the theological principles of duality in non-duality, and hold that the ultimate non-dual reality possesses in its nature the potency of two aspects or attributes, viz. the negative and the positive, the static and the dynamic, the principle of pure consciousness and the principle of activity. In the Absolute Being these two aspects and attributes lie merged together in a state of absolute non-duality. In the process of phenomenalisation, however, come separation and duality, which mean bondage and suffering, the ultimate escape from which is liberation. The final goal of both the schools is to destroy all principles of dualism and to attain the final state of non-duality.

These two aspects of the absolute reality are conceived as Śiva and Saktī in Brahmanical Tāntrism and as Prajñā and Upāya in Buddhist Tāntrism. The terms Prajñā and Upāya are not of its coinage but are copiously used also in Mahāyāna literature, and are practically synonymous with Śāntatā and Karuṇā respectively. Śāntatā is Prajñā because it represents perfect wisdom, i.e. knowledge of the void-nature of the self and the dharmas. Karuṇā or universal compassion is called Upāya because it is the means or medium for the attainment of the Bodhi-chitta for the realisation of the highest goal. Prajñā or Śāntatā (perfect knowledge) represents a static or negative state of mind which separates the individual from the world of suffering beings; it makes one observe the world of existence from a point of view where there is neither suffering nor happiness and, therefore, no opportunity left for displaying the spirit of benevolence; it makes a man altogether static. Upāya or Karuṇā, on the other hand, operates in one’s mind like a dynamic force, draws one’s attention to the world of suffering, and as the symbol of universal compassion removes the miseries of the suffering world. Through Prajñā, which is the one universal principle underlying the diversity of the phenomenal world, one’s mind is purified, while Upāya is that principle which brings down
one's perfectly purified mind to this phenomenal world, the world around us, where the helpless beings are suffering the miseries of life. If Upâya impels one to benevolent activities for the removal of sorrow, those moral activities are to be yoked with and conducted by Prajñâ. Prajñâ or Śûnyatâ, standing for perfect wisdom, is regarded as absolutely passive and negative aspect of the reality, while Upâya or Karūṣa, with its active inspiration and because of its dynamic nature, is conceived as the active and positive aspect of the same. The nature of Prajñâ is non-existence, and that of Upâya existence; Prajñâ is essencelessness, while Upâya is of positive nature; so the whole truth is the unity of both these positive and negative aspects.

The first, as also the foremost, innovation that the Tāntrik Buddhism effected was the conception of these two cardinal principles of Śûnyatâ and Karūṣa or Prajñâ and Upâya of Mahâyâna as the female and the male. Accordingly, Prajñâ or Śûnyatâ is the female, and Upâya or Karūṣa, male. The Tāntrik Buddhism differs from the Saiva and Sâkta Tantras as well as some other Indian systems of philosophy in regarding the negative, static or unqualified aspect of the reality as the female, and the positive or active counterpart as the male. Nevertheless, the most important thing in the Buddhist Tantras is the stress on the union of Prajñâ and Upâya both in the philosophical and in the esoteric Yogic senses. Prajñâ is declared to be bondage, if unassociated with Upâya, and so is also Upâya bereft of Prajñâ; when the one is conjoined with the other, the two, being one, become liberation. In other words, the truth is both Prajñâ and Upâya united together. The commingling of Prajñâ and Upâya, like that of water and milk, in a state of non-duality, constitutes a state perfectly pure from the defilement of reality and unreality and subjectivity and objectivity, and it has only to be realised by intuition.

This ultimate state of non-duality, on the destruction of all principles of dualism, is called by the Tāntrik Buddhists the state of Yugasaddha, which is variously called in other esoteric systems as Advâya, Mathâna, Samarsa, etc. One reaching the stage of Yugasaddha has attained perfect enlightenment and eternal tranquillity and has crossed the sea of birth and death. This is in fact perfect enlightenment of Buddhatva, and this is the way in which, according to the Tāntrik Buddhists, innumerable Buddhas have attained perfection.

The Tāntrik Buddhists share in common with other esoteric schools the notion that practices of austere penances, difficult vows, fasting, going on pilgrimage, etc., only inflict torture upon the body
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

and mind of a man, make him morbid, disfigure his face, and so on, but can never bring forth perfection. To them this very approach appears to be unnatural, and perfect enlightenment is attainable only through an easy process, viz. through enjoyment. This either supplements or is supplemented by another conception of momentous consequences, viz. that the male and female represent in this world the division that exists in the nature of the Absolute as Upāya and Prajñā (cf. Siva and Sakti), the union of which is the highest reality. As such, to obtain the highest spiritual experience, men and women must first of all realise themselves as manifestations of Upāya and Prajñā and be united together in body, mind, and spirit; the supreme bliss that emerges from that union is the highest religious gain. All esoteric sādhanā must, therefore, be performed by the male and female together, and this is precisely the easy process of realising the highest truth. The son of Māyādevī, Lord Buddha, was the incarnation of Upāya, and his wife Gopa that of Prajñā, and the Buddha attained, we are told, supreme bliss (Mahāsukha) of the nature of Nirvāṇa in union with the Prajñā Gopa.12

If in the Buddhist Tantras, therefore, Prajñā, the female aspect of the absolute, is viewed as the goddess (Bhagavati), it is also a term often used to imply the Mudrā, which technically denotes the woman to be adopted in the Yogic practice. She is also called Vajra-kuñja, Yuvañī (young woman) and so on. In some Tantras, a beautiful girl of sixteen to be adopted for the sādhanā is styled as Prajñā, while, again in some places Prajñā is the word for the female organ, because it is the seat of all pleasure, which is great bliss (Mahāsukha). Prajñā and Upāya, as the symbol of the female and male, are also called, respectively, the lotus (padma) and the thunder (vajra), the former symbolising the female, and the latter, the male organ.

The Yogic practices involving the physical and physiological union of the Prajñā and the Upāya lead to the inner union of the two, and through this Yogic union is produced supreme bliss (Mahāsukha) which, according to the Buddhist and all other schools of Tantra, is the very nature of the Absolute. One realises the Absolute only when one realises one’s own self as perfect bliss. The ultimate end is, therefore, to attain this state of perfect bliss. In our ordinary life we do feel like experiencing intense pleasure in our sex-experiences, but between the sex-pleasure and perfect bliss, which constitutes the ultimate nature of our self, there is an abyss of difference. The experiences of sex-pleasure, extremely transitory and of defiled character as they are, only fasten us to a lower plane of life, as against ministering to our progress towards self-
realisation. But the sexo-yogic sadhana of the Tantriks is a sadhana which is calculated to be capable of transmuting "even gross sex-pleasure into the realisation of infinite bliss in which all the activities of the mind are absolutely lost and in which the self and the world around are lost in an all-pervading oneness". This is what is reckoned as Nirvāṇa by the Tantrik Buddhists.

With the identification of Mahāsukha with Nirvāṇa and that of the principles of Prajñā and Upāya with the female and male organs, the Mahāyāna conception of the Bodhi-chitta was destined to undergo a thorough change in Tantrik Buddhism. The Bodhi-chitta is no more the state of the mind in which reigns only a strong determination to attain perfect wisdom (bodhi), but signifies the production of an extremely blissful state of mind through the Yogic union of the male and the female. This is further elaborated by the identification of the different philosophical concepts with the various parts of the nervous system of the human body and the conception of the attainment of the final bliss as a physical process, which is too technical and intricate to be explained here.

2. Vajra-yāṇa

This system of Ţantrism, compounded with the principle of sexo-yogic practice, is conventionally known by the general name of Vajra-yāṇa, or the Adamantine path. But perhaps we should rather take Vajra-yāṇa merely as the name of a school of Tantrik Buddhism, though undoubtedly the largest school. The justification of the name of the school is to be sought in its preference of the use of the term Vajra in place of Sunyata. In this system Vajra connotes the unchangeable adamantine void-nature of the self and of the dharmas. Thus Vajra-yāṇa is the way for the realisation of the vajra-nature or the changeless and impenetrable void-nature of the self and all entities. It has been rightly suggested that Vajra-yāṇa may also be designated as Sunyatā-yāṇa.

Notwithstanding the considerable emphasis laid by Vajra-yāṇa upon the secret Yogic practices, absolute confidence was not reposed upon them as the only method of realising the truth. This is evinced by the high degree of importance attached at the same time to the worship of various gods and goddesses of an extensive pantheon that it evolved, to the numerous rites and practices that it developed, to the efficacies of mantra-charms, madrās, maṇḍalas, and so on. A singular peculiarity that marks out Vajra-yāṇa is that it considers everything as vajra. For instance, in worshipping a god, it is not only that the god adored is mediated on as of vajra (void) nature, but also the image of the god, the mantras, the pro-
cesses of worship, the worshipper himself, etc., are all supposed to be vajra. This vajra bias is so acute in the minds of the followers of the system that even the articles of worship including the image, flowers, lamp, conchshell, bell, jar, incense, sesameum, fried paddy, etc., all bear the mark of vajra on them. The idea underlying this apparently queer pursuit is, however, simple; anything stamped with vajra before one’s eyes conduces to the realisation of the void-nature of the self and the dhammas.

The most outstanding feature of Vajra-yana is the identification of the ultimate reality with the conception of a Lord Supreme (Bhagavan) as Vajrasattva, sometimes also called Vajradhara. This monotheistic conception is the most significant departure of Vajra-yana from earlier Buddhism. This Vajrasattva is not merely of the nature of Sānyatā, but is as well the non-dual state of Sānyatā and Karunya. He is thus the Being of infinite wisdom and universal compassion. Hence it is that Vajrasattva is often identified with the Bodhi-chitta. He who realises Vajrasattva becomes himself Vajrasattva. To realise Vajrasattva is to bring home to one’s mind that all existence is nothing but Sānyatā in its pure nature, and as soon as one attains to this knowledge, one becomes Vajrasattva. 15

The evolution of the idea of Vajrasattva as the Lord Supreme ushered into being a new and expanded pantheon of gods and goddesses in Vajra-yana. Vajrasattva as the Primal Enlightened One is Adi-Buddha. The Primal Lord is possessed of five kinds of knowledge conceived as his five attributes, from which proceed five kinds of meditation (dhyānas); from these, again, emanate five deities known as the five Dhyāni-Buddhas or Tathāgatas, viz. Vairochana, Ratnasambhava, Amitābha, Amoghasiddhi and Akshobhya. These Dhyāni-Buddhas, who are the presiding deities over the five skandhas or elements whose aggregate constitutes the body, have each got a divine consort or Sakti of his own, viz. Vajradhatu, Lochana, Māmakā, Pāṇḍarā and Ārya-Tārā respectively. Each Dhyāni-Buddha has again a particular Bodhisattva as a son as it were, and also a particular human Buddha (Mānushi Buddha). The consort of Vajrasattva himself is variously called as Vajra-sattvāmitā, Vajra-Varahi, Prajñā, Prajñā-pāramitā, etc. We have the injunction of many a sthāvanā that the god to be worshipped is to be meditated on as in union with or deeply embraced by his Sakti or Prajñā, filled with erotic emotion and as enjoying great bliss (Mahāsukha). This illustrates the principle of Yuvarajadhana or Advaj. Thus we find that Vajrasattva and some other gods are
depicted in sculpture as “in sexual union touching at all points of contact”, representing the knowledge of non-dual union.

Some idea of the actual process of worship and nature of meditation in Vajra-yana may be had from the description of a particular sadhana of a deity. First, the Lord Supreme should be meditated on with the five Dhyani-Buddhas, and then flowers are to be offered. Then these five with their five respective saktis are to be adored with offerings of flowers, incense, lamp, etc. Then follow some other details including the devotee’s confession of his sins before the Lord and taking refuge in the three jewels, Buddha, Dharma and Saṅgha. “Then he takes the resolution of producing the Bodhi-chitta for the well-being and deliverance of all, and adopts the path followed by the Sugatas and their followers. Then he should think of the world, both static and dynamic, as all void, and place himself in the void with the mantra, ‘Oh, I am of the nature of the immutable knowledge, of the void’. Then he should realise that all the dharmas are pure by nature and he, too, is pure by nature, and then he should read, ‘Naturally pure are all the dharmas, pure am I by nature—amen’. Then after some details follows the meditation of the self as the Lord himself, and that of various gods and goddesses on either side of the Lord with mantras, etc.16

3. Kālachakra-yāna

Within the fold of Vajra-yāna there arose, in or about the tenth century A.D., a school known as Kālachakra-yāna, which should not be regarded as a separate school of Tāntrik Buddhism distinct from Vajra-yāna. The supreme deity in this school is called the Lord Śrī-Kālachakra. Kāla means the ultimate immutable knowledge (Prajñā) or the state of Śāntity, while Chakra means the cycle of the world process, or the body of the Lord containing the potency of the existence of the universe, which is just the principle of Upāya. Kālachakra, therefore, implies the absolutely unified principle of Prajñā and Upāya, and he is thus the Bodhi-chitta. In some Tantras he is characterised as Śūnyatā and Karṇā unified, as the non-dual Lord, and as embracing Prajñā. There is, therefore, no essential difference between the two conceptions of Kālachakra and Vajrasattva. As to other matters also, viz. worship, mantras, practices, rites, etc., the principle and method are the same both in Kālachakra-yāna and Vajra-yāna. The difference between the two lies in a few distinctive features of Kālachakra-yāna, of which one, though not the main, is the introduction and predominance in the system of a number of gods and their female energies, having awful and terrible aspects, though as powerful as the celestial Buddhas
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

themselves, and of other dreadful fiendesses known as Dākinīs, all of whom have to be appeased with mantra-charms, magic circles, offerings and sacrifices. One other distinctive feature is the stress on time which is the common meaning of the term Kāla. Time, with all its divisions and subdivisions, viz. moment, hour, day, night, week, fortnight, month, year, etc., dwells within one’s body, in which lies the whole universe with all its animate beings and inanimate objects. And Time with its divisions is caused by, or is the production of, the vital winds (vāyus) that remain diffused throughout the entire nervous system of one’s body. One who can control the vital winds in the nerves by Yogic practices, thereby keeps oneself above all influence of the whirl of Time, which is the root cause of all miseries including decay and destruction.17

The Vajra-yāna and Kālachakra-yāna completed the evolution of Buddhism in India. As we have seen above, some time after the seventh century A.D. Hinayāna was practically dislodged by Mahāyāna from the mainland of India. After the tenth century, Mahāyāna, too, in its turn, was to a considerable extent eclipsed by Vajra-yāna, which “reverted against both the monasticism and scholasticism of Hinayāna Buddhism and the intellectual pedantry of the Mahāyānists”,18 and now began to make its triumphant headway. It exerted its influence most in the eleventh and twelfth centuries A.D., wherever in India Buddhism prevailed at that time. The influence of Kālachakra-yāna was felt more from the latter half of the eleventh century, and speaking generally, its sphere of influence was limited to Bengal, Magadha (South Bihar) and Kāshmir, though subsequently it spread to Nepal. Round these two schools a vast body of literature grew up in different Buddhist monasteries, while the artists carved out a large number of images of deities of the Vajra-yāna and Kālachakra-yāna pantheons for worship in numerous temples that were built up.

4. Sahaj-yāna

In Bengal, during the Pāla period, a section of the Tāntrik Buddhists rose in revolt against all conventionalism, ceremonialism, muttering of mantras, etc. of Vajra-yāna. These rebels, known as Sahajiyā Buddhists, also made their position distinct by their scrupulous abhorrence of high thinking and deep learning, even of constructing images and worshipping gods, etc.; for truth, they affirmed, was a matter of intuition and could never be attained by these artificial and unnatural means. To that end one must proceed through the natural way, which lies not in discarding the in-born propensities of human beings and the total annihilation of the sex passions, but in sublimating the same. Sahajiyā Buddhists, to

413
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

whom deliberate infliction of any sort of strain on human nature was an idea as shocking as it was sickening, would adopt human nature itself as the best appliance for realising the truth, and consequently they called their path the easiest, the most straight and the most natural (sahaja). The path was one of Yoga practices, for the process of Yoga, according to their way of thinking, takes its rise from one's sex impulses.

The fundamental tenets of these Sahajiyas are known exclusively from a number of Charyāpadas or devotional songs and Dohās composed by them. As for the Yogic practices, the Sahaja-yāna accepts the general Tantrik Buddhist texts as its authority, though it invented some new terminologies to suit its standpoint. In the matter of sexo-yogic practices, the Sahajiyā Buddhists, however, went ahead of the Vajra-yānists by laying more emphasis on two points, viz. (i) the imperative necessity of making the body sufficiently strong and fit before starting with Yogic processes; and (ii) conception of an internal female force in the Nirmāna-chakra (navel region), corresponding to that of the Kula-kuṇḍalini sakti of the Brahmanical Tantras.

The sphere of influence of the Sahajiya Buddhist cult was for the most part Bengal and probably, to some extent, its western and south-western environs. When exactly this offshoot of Tantrik Buddhism rose as a distinct school is difficult to determine, but many of the poets of the Charyās and Dohās are known to have flourished in the eleventh and twelfth centuries during the Pala period. In popular mind the term Sahajiya or Sahaja-yāna is another name for excesses and debauchery, but the authors of the Charyās and Dohās do not seem to have prized morality any less than other religious systems do.19

II. SPHERE OF INFLUENCE

There is a general belief that Bengal and Bihār remained the only resorts of Buddhism in India after the age of Harsha-vardhana, till it was finally extinguished in the twelfth century. But both epigraphic and literary records testify to the fact that it had quite a large number of followers in other parts of India also, even between A.D. 1000 and 1200. It is true that Buddhism had ceased to be a creative force in religion, literature or aesthetics, and was merely a legacy of the past in less capable hands. But it is equally true that Buddhism, in a new form, was still a living religion in India during this period. This will be evident from the following account of Buddhism, arranged on a regional basis.
1. Pāla kingdoms (Bengal and Bihār)

In A.D. 1000 the king of Bengal (Gauḍa) was Mahīpāla I,²⁰ doubtless the most energetic ruler of the line after the great Dharmapāla and his son Devapāla, both from political and religious points of view. Under him the Pāla monarchy once again outstripped the limits of Magadha to the west, while a galaxy of Buddhist scholars and other celebrities joined hands with him to revive Buddhism in Eastern India from the stupor into which it had fallen in the tenth century A.D. After him his son Nayapāla strove, not without success, to maintain the progress of Buddhism. It suffered decline during the political troubles that followed,²¹ but in the reign of Rāmapāla (c. A.D. 1077-1120) the religion was again active and stirring, and a number of scholars, teachers and artists shed lustre on the age of the last great Pāla king. But this was the last flickering of the lamp and Buddhism steadily declined till it was finally ousted from the land of its birth by the Muslim raids towards the close of the twelfth century A.D.

The possession of Magadha gave the Buddhist Pāla rulers the mastery over the greatest vihāras or saṁghārāmas of India, viz. Nālandā, Odantapurī (Uḍḍānapurā, probably near the town of Bihār), and Vikramasīla (near Bhāgalpur),²² the last two being the creation of the Pālas themselves towards the commencement of their rule. The vihāras, as is well known, served as Buddhist seats of learning, as also citadels of strength of the Saṁgha, and the centres wherefrom radiated the influence of their doctrine and culture. As such, they played a very important part in the propagation of Buddhism and maintaining its influence.

Nālandā, the origin and glorious history of which have been referred to above,²³ was damaged by fire some time before the eleventh regnal year of Mahīpāla I, but was repaired in that year. Far more damaging to it was, however, the rise of Vikramasīla, which, we are told, had about this time surpassed Nālandā in fame and renown. Tāranātha even hints that the professorial board of Vikramasīla kept watch over the affairs of Nālandā, which amounts to a sort of control by the former over the latter.²⁴ Like Vikramasīla in Magadhā, the university of Somapurā occupied a position of preeminence in Bengal ever since the days of Dharmapāla.²⁵ The monastery of Somāvūrī, the site of which is represented by Pāhārpur in North Bengal, was in a flourishing condition till the eleventh century. The great Atiśa or Atiśa Dipamkara resided here when he translated into Tibetan, in collaboration with some others, the Madhyamaka-ratna-pradīpa of Bhāvanīvēka.²⁶ We have also a stone inscription on a pillar, in characters of the eleventh century,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

found in the ruins of Pāhārpur, recording that the pillar was caused to be made by Śri-Dāsavāla-garbha for the good of the animate beings. 27

About the middle of the eleventh century, the Somapuri-mahā-
vihāra was set on fire by the armies of Vangala or South-east Beng-
gal. Even though, some time after, a monk, Vipulaśrīmitra, under-
took a wholesale renovation of the monastery, 28 it could not be re-
stored to its former glory. About this time Rāmapāla established a 
new mahā-vihāra, in North Bengal, called Jagaddala, which also came to occupy an important position in Bengal. Besides Vibhūti-
chandra and Dānasāla, the two most renowned celebrities of Jagad-
dala, the names of some other scholars, e.g. Mokshākara-gupta, the 
logician, Subhākaragupta, Dharmākara, etc. are intimately associat-
ed with Jagaddala, where the great Śīkyasāribhadra is also said to have dwelt for some time. 29

To all these mahā-vihāras or universities, richly endowed with royal grants, flocked learners from all quarters of India to receive instructions at the feet of the most profound savants of the day. Another feature that marked them, and which is historically very important, is that they were largely frequented by monks from Tibet, specially from the time of Mahipāla I. This resulted in bringing Tibet closer to India than ever. While, usually on invita-
tion from the Tibetan kings, the vihāras used to send forth from 
time to time pre-eminent scholars to the Land of Snow with the mission of preaching the gospel of the Buddha or reforming the religion there, they also frequently supplied competent monks to that country for translating Buddhist works from Sanskrit into Tibetan. Thus the nucleus of a Tibetan Buddhist literature began to take shape in Tibet. Gradually, the Tibetans, too, began to study Sanskrit under Indian monks both in Tibet and in India and took up the task which had hitherto been done by the Indian monks only. The influx of the Tibetan monks began to swell more and more as time went on, and the universities had, as a matter of course, to make commodious provisions for them to learn Sanskrit and be

Ločāves. The Buddhist Panditas of India, in their turn, found it alluring to master Tibetan, in order to permeate Tibet all the more with the doctrines of Buddhism by means of Tibetan translations of Sanskrit books, and the Indian universities, particularly those of Eastern India and Kāshmir, became genial centres of the cultivation of Tibetan. The growth of the vast Tibetan Buddhist literature was thus due as much to the contributions of Indian scholars, as to those of the Tibetans themselves. That literature forms now, for the most part, the only extant source of our information regarding
the Indian Buddhist scholars and their works during the period under review.

Besides Somapuri and Jagaddala, there were many other less known vihāras in Bengal in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. Among these Devikoṭa in North Bengal and Paṇḍita-vihāra in the Chittagong District of East Bengal deserve particular mention and were noted as seats of Buddhist learning and culture.30

Amongst the host of Buddhist scholars who kept the light burning in Bengal and Bihār in the eleventh and twelfth centuries by their writings and other exertions, and at the same time propagated and popularised the faith, through the medium of translation, in Tibet, it is possible to name only a few. Tilopāda or Tilopā, alias Prajñābhadra, was a celebrity of the Paṇḍita-vihāra. Nādapāda, alias Yaśobhadra, a Kashmirian by birth, was his disciple, who worked for some time, along with Vinayasrimitra and some others of Kashmir, in the grand vihāra of Kanakastūpa, which is located by some in Kashmir, but was really in the district of Tipperah of East Bengal.31 According to the Tibetan tradition he succeeded Jetāri in the Chair of the North-door Paṇḍita of Vikramaśīla, and subsequently became the High-priest of Vajrāsana.32 Jetāri, alias Jetakarṇa, was the son of one Gaganaghosha, a Brāhmaṇa,33 and not of Garbhapāda34 nor of king Sanātana of Varendra,35 as tradition would have it. Tradition also makes Naśapāda a preceptor, and Jetāri a teacher, of the great Atīśa Dipaṅkara, but there is no positive evidence to substantiate it. The distinction of being a preceptor of Atīśa, however, rightly belongs to Ratiṅkara Sānti,36 better known to the Tibetans as Śānti-pāda, a voluminous writer, an eminent logician, and occupant of the Chair of Paṇḍita, a prize post at that time, at the East gate of Vikramaśīla37 in the first half of the eleventh century. His title Rājāchāryya,38 if it has any genuine significance at all, shows that he was the spiritual guide of Mahāpāla I. Contemporary with him was Jñānaśrimitra of Gauḍā, also associated with Vikramaśīla. Advayavajra, who belonged to the same age and was known variously as Advayagupta, Atulyavajra, Avadhūtapāda, Maitripāda, etc., testifying to his eminence, lived in the Devikoṭa-vihāra of North Bengal. The next exalted figure is Atīśa Dipaṅkara,39 otherwise called Dipaṅkara Srijñāna, undoubtedly the greatest of all Buddhist Paṇḍitas of Bengal, and possibly the most outstanding personality in the entire Buddhist world after Nāgārjuna. He was appointed the High-priest of Vikramaśīla by Nayaṇāra about A.D. 1040–42, but resigned owing to the repeated importunities of the Tibetan king Ye-ses-hod and his successor Chaṅ Chūb, in order to go over to Tibet to reform the
religion thereof. On his way he resided for a year in Nepal. He was received with royal honours in Tibet and worked almost miracles there during the thirteen years of his great mission, till his death in A.D. 1053 at the age of seventy-three. The Tibetans still bestow divine honours upon him and he richly deserves them on account of his literary and missionary activity in that far-off land. Another illustrious monk, later by half a century, was Abhayakaragupta, a contemporary of Rāmapāla, and a glory of Vikramasila in its last days. To him also is attributed the authorship of a good many works, mostly on Vajra-yāna and Kālacakravyāna, and he exerted immense influence on Tibetan thought through his numerous translations. He is said in different anecdotes to have been born in Gaucūa or in Jharikha of Orissa, but in the colophons of at least two works of his own he figures as one of Magadha. He is still worshipped as a great saint by the Northern Buddhists and many stories are current about his various supernatural powers.

Another monk of great repute was Mahāpaṇḍita Vibhūti-chandra, son of a king (ṛṣṭha-putra) and a celebrity of Jagaddala. He was a contemporary of, or just posterior to, Abhayakaragupta, and a pretty large number of Vajra-yāna and Kālacakravyāna works are associated with his name either as an author or as a translator or redactor. He also went to Tibet, and on his return journey made a halt in Nepal for some time. Another famed writer on Tāntrik Buddhism of about this period was Dānāśila of Jagaddala, who must not be confounded with an earlier namesake of his of the time of Dharmapāla. He made his mark chiefly as a translator, and translated without aid more than fifty works into Tibetan.

Although all these scholar-monks and others of this period concerned themselves primarily with Vajra-yāna and Kālacakravyāna in their literary activities, some of them, including Jetāri, Ratnakara-sānti, Atśa Dipākara and Abhayakaragupta, made contributions to Mahāyāna literature (Sūtra, Mdo-Hgrel) by their commentaries and sub-commentaries. A gloss on the Ashūskha-hastikā Prajñāprāmitā, entitled Amnjugūttarāhāhū, is ascribed to king Rāmapāla himself. The study of Buddhist logic was also not neglected in Bengal in this period and we have logical treatises in Tibetan translation of Jetāri, Ratnakara Sānti, Mokshākara, etc.

As literature is a fair index of the ideas of people of the upper stratum, art normally reflects the popular mind. In matters religious, art expresses itself through divine images and the temples built for them. A large number of Buddhist images belonging to
this period 15 presuppose a large number of votaries of that religion among the ordinary people.

2. Kashmir

Another vigorous centre of Buddhism was Kashmir. The exodus of numerous missionaries from this region in order to spread the doctrine in Tibet and Central Asia had made the valley a sort of holy land to the Northern Buddhists. When, after the notorious persecution of the Faith in Tibet by Glan-dar-ma 16, the decaying religion was revived a century later, it was mostly the Kashmirian śramaṇas whose services were requisitioned to reinstruct the people of Tibet in the forgotten Law. 17

Again, of the number of śramaṇas who went over to China in the tenth and eleventh centuries, some belonged to Kashmir. For instance, a Kashmirian śramaṇa went, along with another, probably named Dānapāla, of Udyāna, in A.D. 980 to China, where the emperor commissioned them, both well-versed in the Tripitaka, to translate the scriptures from Sanskrit into Chinese. In A.D. 1005 another śramaṇa from Kashmir repaired to China with some manuscripts and a twig of the sacred Bodhi-tree of Bodh-Gaya, which he presented to the Chinese emperor. 18

Within the valley itself Buddhism had in the past found in Lalitāditya Muktāpiḍa and his grandson, Jayāpiḍa, of the eighth century, two powerful Brahmanical kings very tolerant towards Buddhism. 19 To the Buddhists of Kashmir, the great Buddha image installed by Lalitāditya at his new capital, Parihasapura, and the statue of the Great Buddha (Bṛhad-Buddha) set up much earlier by Jayendra, the maternal uncle of king Pravarasena II, in the Jayendra-vihāra of Srinagarā, 20 were objects of great adoration even in the eleventh century. When king Harsha (A.D. 1089-1101) of the Lohara dynasty, in a fit of rage, gave himself up to the destruction of the divine images of Kashmir, these two colossal statues of the Buddha were saved, it is said, at the intercession of two Buddhists. 21 But this might also have been due to Harsha’s own pro-Buddhist leanings, clearly reflected in the hymn entitled Ashta-mahāsthāna-chaitya-vandana-stotra which, along with another hymn, Suprabhāta-prabhāta-stotra, is attributed to his authorship in the Tangyur. 22 And it derives further corroboration from the fact that it was in his presence, or under his auspices, that the translation of the Paralokasiddhi of Dharmottara was executed by Bhavyarāja of Kashmir in the Ratnaraśmi-vihāra at Anupamapura. 23 But king Jayasimha (A.D. 1128-1155), the contemporary of Kalhana, lacked this catholicity of heart, and broke up images and burnt down a vihāra at Arigon near Srinagarā, though it was afterwards
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

rebuilt. Fortunately only few bigots of the type of Jayasimha sat on the throne of Kashmir.

The famous Jayendra-vihāra of Śrīnagarā and the Rāja-vihāra founded by Lalitāditya at Parihāṣapura, which long inspired the Buddhists of Kashmir, had played out their part in history by the eleventh century A.D. But the two celebrated vihāras, viz. Ratna-gupta- and Ratnaraśmi-vihāra, in the centre of Anupamapura, figure as the greatest centres of Buddhist learning and culture in Kashmir in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. There a vast body of literature grew up in Tibetan translation during this period, and a considerable part of this corpus of translation seems to relate to Mahāyāna works.

But in Kashmir, as in Bengal, Vajra-yāna and Kālachakra-yāna found a fertile soil and the Tangyur furnishes us with the names of a fairly large number of Vajrāchāryas and Kālachakrāchāryas of Kashmir of this period, who made mark as authors, commentators and translators. Pre-eminent amongst these are Jñānādīrāmitra (A.D. 1074) of Anupama-vihāra, and Buddhārjīśāna, Sarvajñāsārākṣita and Sākyārābhahadra, called ‘the Grand Pandita of Kāśmira’. Among less known scholars may be mentioned Jayānanda, Suryagupta, Sumanārājī, Jīnavikramā, Tilaka-kalasa, Prajñāsāragupta, Valāśrībhadra, Mahāśīja and Manoratha, whose dates cannot be fixed within precise limits, except that of the first, Jayānanda, who flourished about A.D. 1050.

History of Kashmir Buddhism during this period is characterised by a lively study of Buddhist logic, and Bhavyarāja and Saṅkarānānda are two of the best known products of the valley in this domain. Of the former, who was a contemporary of king Harsha (A.D. 1069-1101), only translations of three works of Dhammottara have found place in the Tangyur, but his grandiloquent title Kāśmira-nyāya-chānḍānaṁ indicates real contributions to Buddhist logic in some original treatise or treatises written by him. Of other logicians of Kashmir, mention may be made of Mahāsūmati, bearing the title of Mahātārākīka, Parahitavrata, who translated the Pramāṇa-vinīścaya of Dharmakirti, and Jñānasīra, the author, amongst others, of the Tarka-bhāṣā.

Apart from sacerdotal, theological and logical works, Kāshmir produced in the first half of the eleventh century, in Kārīya style, the far-famed Bodhisattva-svādānakalpalatā, which is a collection of legendary stories about the deeds of the Bodhisattvas. The author of this book, the renowned Kāshmir polymath Kshemen- dra, died after having composed 107 pālīs of the book. His son, Somendra, not only added an introduction and the concluding
chapter, but also wrote the Jñātavāhanā Avadāna. Kshemendra, who strikingly illustrates in this poem the six transcendental perfections of a Bodhisattva, was after all a layman, and celebrated the Buddha as an Avatāra of Viṣṇu. This is why some of the great Lamas of Tibet have discarded the book as profane.55

Buddhism produced such a salutary effect on the minds of the people of the valley that even some kings had insisted upon the practice of ahimsā in their daily lives.56 And it also seems that both the Kashmir schools of Saivism, viz. Spanda and Pratyabhijñā, that came into being in the ninth and tenth centuries A.D., had been more or less influenced by Buddhism, and this accounts for their being more rational and humane in outlook than all other schools of Saivism in India.

3. Madhyadeśa

When, in the first half of the seventh century, Hiuen Tsang visited India, most of the Buddhist sacred places were desolate and in ruins.57 With the establishment of the Pāla empire the Magadhan sites again became popular, and in the eleventh, as also the twelfth century an effort seems to have been made to reclaim and renovate most of the holy places. An inscription of the reign of Mahipāla I, at Sārṇath, dated in Śaṅkhyat 1083 or A.D. 1026, records the restoration of many monuments as noted above.58 At Bodh-Gayā, too, between A.D. 1000 and 1033 there was an influx of a good many Chinese pilgrims who built stūpas, etc.59 And this is exactly the period covered by the reign of Mahipāla I, who himself is glorified in a votive inscription on an image of the Buddha installed there in the eleventh year of his reign.70

Even the long-forgotten name of Kauśāmbi (modern Kosam) reappears in the reign of Mahipāla I. We know from a record of the eleventh year of his reign that the Nalanda-mahāvihāra, badly damaged by fire, was repaired by a follower of Mahāyāna, Bāladeva by name, hailing from Kauśāmbi (Kauśāmbi-vimūrṣa).71 We have yet another inscription, over the gateway of the fort of Karra, referring to Kośāmba-mahādala or the district of Kauśāmbi, in A.D. 1033,72 which also falls within the regnal period of Mahipāla I.

Likewise, the name Kapilavastu is heard of in a tradition as the birth-place of Dāmodara, alias Advayavajra,73 one of the illustrious Buddhist contemporaries of Mahipāla I. Whether the tradition is genuine or not, it shows that Kapilavastu was about this time not a depopulated site. At Kuśināra, where the Master obtained Parinirvāṇa, a stone inscription of the eleventh-twelfth century refers to a king of a branch of the Kalachuri family, who, a Bud-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

dhist, is said to have revered, not unusually, the Brahmanical god, Śiva, along with the Buddha and Tārā.\textsuperscript{74} The evidence of an illustrated twelfth century MS. of the \textit{Ashtasahasrika-Prajñāpāramitā} shows that Vaiśālī had again been famous in the Buddhist world, for a temple of Tārā was established there (\textit{Tirabhuktau Vaiśāli-Tārā}). Similarly in the Jetavana mound at Sahet-Mahet, the ancient Śrāvasti, has been found a stone inscription, dated A.D. 1118, which records that one Vidyādha, a counsellor of Madana of a line of Rāṣṭrakūṭa kings in U. P., had established a convent for the Buddhist ascetics.\textsuperscript{75} It offers a striking contrast to the day of Huien Tsang when ‘all was in ruins’ in this region.\textsuperscript{76}

After the reign of Mahipala I Sārnāth had passed under the domination of the Kalachuris of Tripuri, and a fragmentary inscription found in a monastery there says that in A.D. 1038 in the reign of Karnadeva, Māmaka, a devout worshipper and follower of Mahāyāna, caused a copy of the \textit{Ashtasahasrika-Prajñāpāramitā} to be written, which was presented, along with other things, to the order of monks residing there.\textsuperscript{77}

Eventually the Sārnāth region was incorporated within the kingdom of the Gāhḍavālas of Kanauj. The third king of this dynasty, Govindaścandra, was not himself a declared Buddhist, but his reign is marked by two memorable events in the history of later Buddhism. The first is the construction of the stupendous Dharmachakra-Jinavihāra (Monastery I) at Sārnāth by his Buddhist wife Kumārādevi, who installed therein an image of the goddess Vasudhāra.\textsuperscript{78} The ruins of this monastery, so far exposed, cover a stretch of ground more than 700' from east to west. About the same time was added the last encasing of the Dharmarājikā stūpa, which was earlier repaired in A.D. 1026 by Sthirapala and his brother.\textsuperscript{79} Sārnāth thus again became a lively centre of Buddhism, which is proved not only by the inscriptions but also by the discovery of a variety of Buddhist images of this period.

The other notable incident of Govindaścandra’s reign is recorded in an inscription at Sahet-Mahet, viz. that he, having been gratified by the \textit{Saugata-Parivrajaka}, the Mahāpandita Śākyarakṣita, a resident of the Utkala country, and his disciple, the \textit{Saugata-Parivrajaka}, the Mahāpandita Vāgīśvararakṣita, a resident of the Choḍa country, bestowed as many as six villages upon the community of Buddhist friars (Śākyabhikṣu), of which Buddharakṣita was the chief, residing in the holy convent of Jetavana.\textsuperscript{80} Whether this convent at Jetavana was the one established by Madana’s counsellor in A.D. 1118 cannot be determined, but Jetavana, where the
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

Master resided for so many years of his life, was not a desolate place in the twelfth century.

In the matter of religion Govindachandra presents a striking resemblance to Harsha-varman: both are styled Parama-Mahesvara in their official records, but both had imbibed a strong inclination in favour of Buddhism in some period of their lives. In case of Govindachandra, the feeling seems to have been considerably fostered by the influence of his two Buddhist queens Kumārādevī and Vaśantadevi. Buddhism thus gained so strong a hold over the family that Govindachandra's grandson, Jayachandra, who was originally initiated as a devotee of Kṛṣṇa, had subsequently become, out of reverence (sraddhyā) for a Buddhist monk, Śrīmitra of Bodh-Gayā, his disciple “with a pleasing heart and an indescribable hankering”. This further shows that Gayā continued to be a centre of Buddhism.

There are other evidences also, vouching for the prevalence of Buddhism in Madhyadeśa where it is generally believed to have been almost in a moribund condition in the eleventh-twelfth century. We know, for instance, of a Vajrāchārya of Kosala, Vairochana-vajra, who flourished not earlier than the eleventh century, and was the author of a few works.

In Mālava, too, Buddhism had in about the first half of the twelfth century an enterprising adherent in Dīna-srijñāna, styled differently as Bodhisattva, Āchārya Bodhisattva and Mahāchārya Bodhisattva in his different books. Sometimes represented as Malavahī Partīparī, he was more popularly known as Dhrī-srijñāna, implying his residence at Dhrār, the capital of Mālava under the Paramāras, and it may be that he enjoyed the patronage of his contemporary Paramāra king.

No Chandella king of Kālaṇjarā (Bundelkhand) is known to have directly furthered the cause of Buddhism. Yet Paramarddeva of this dynasty, while registering a grant of land in A.D. 1179 to several Brāhmaṇas, made the benign provision of excluding from it a piece of land lying therein, as that had previously been granted to a temple of the Buddha. An inscription of Mālayasinha, the Buddhist feudatory of the Chedi king Vijayasinha of Tripuri, dated A.D. 1183, records the excavation of a big tank, obviously on a Buddhist site in Rewa (C. L.), the cost of which was met by 1,500 tankakas specially designed for the occasion, stamped with the effigy of the Buddha. The prevalence of Buddhism in this region in the eleventh-twelfth century is further attested to not only by some other epigraphical and literary evidences but also
by several images of Avalokitesvara and Tara, discovered at Gopalpur in the Jabalpur District.

In other parts of North India, however, Buddhism presented a sad contrast. From Sindh, where Hiuen Tsang found many monasteries and 10,000 followers, an exodus of the monks followed on a large scale after its occupation by Muhammad-ibn-Qasim; many came to the Kâmpilya-Mahâvihâra on the outskirts of Surat, while some went over to other safe quarters, including Bodh-Gayâ, a work, in Tibetan translation, by a Vajra-chârya of Gujarât, the Mahâprajñâ Pûrânavajra, but his date is not known.

4. South India

Buddhism suffered a steady decline in South India, partly by the growing importance of Jainism, but mainly due to the rise of Saivism and Vaishnavism, as noted above. But that the religion lingered in some form even after A.D. 1000, is proved by literary evidences as well as by no fewer than fifteen epigraphs. Of these the Larger and Smaller Leiden plates of the Cholas have been referred to above. Of the rest, five belong to Andhra, and six to Karnâtaka.

The records of Andhra, dating from A.D. 1137 to 1234, show that the famous Amarâvâti stûpa was still in good preservation; provisions were made for burning perpetual lamps at this stûpa as also in the temple of the Buddha at Dipâladin, near Amarâvâti, by some individuals of the Brahmanical creed, including some merchants, ladies, and a chief of the Kota family, Kota II, and his relations.

Two inscriptions, one at Belgâmi in the Shimoga, and the other at Lâkkunûthi in the Dâhrâvar, District, refer to the worship of the Buddha and Târâ along with some deities of the Brahmanical, and sometimes even of Jain, pantheons, in the self-same temples by some followers of Brahmanical religion, mostly merchants, and by princess Akkâdevî, the elder sister of the Western Châlukya king, Jagadekamalla Jayasimha III. An analogous instance of syncretism or universality in religion is to be found about this time in case of one Gâganaśâiva, a Saivite teacher of Orissa, where, again, we know of a tenth century ruler, Devânanda, alias Dhruvânanda, who is styled a devout Saiva in one of his records and a devout Buddhist in another.

But these illustrations do not really signify the existence of genuine or bona fide Buddhism. The donors and patrons were not Buddhists and did not even claim to be such. To some of them,
the worship of the Buddha was that of an avatāra of Viṣṇu, and in other cases the worship of the Buddha and Tārā was merely due to the fear of incurring the displeasure, unless propitiated, of the two supreme deities of a living pantheon. It is interesting to note that some of the real or orthodox Buddhists of South India of this time preferred to leave their home and migrate to North India. The Tanjur furnishes us with the names of some Vajrācāryas who belonged to South India and the Deccan. A large number of images of both Mahāyāna and Vajra-yāna pantheons, datable in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and lying in the Mayurbhājā region and the Nilgiri States of Orissa indicate the prevalence of both the doctrines in this part of the country during the period under review.

III. THE LAST PHASE

The brief sketch given above leaves no doubt that Buddhism was a living force in many parts of Northern India down to the end of the twelfth century. It was, of course, visibly on the decline and had long ceased to be a rival of Brahmanical religion, even in Bengal and Bihār. The process of assimilation between the two was also steadily gaining force, as is evidenced by the recognition of Buddha as an avatāra (incarnation) of Viṣṇu, and the close affinity between Brahmanical Tāntrism and the later phases of Buddhism such as Vajra-yāna and Kālacakravyāna described above. It is not unlikely that Buddhism would have been considerably absorbed by Brahmanical religion in course of time. But the invasion of the Muslims and the ruthless destruction of Buddhist monasteries by them finally extinguished the lamp of Buddhism that was still flickering in the plains of North India. The vivid description, by an almost contemporary Muslim writer, of the wanton destruction of the great monastery at Udaṇḍapura (Bihār) and the wholesale massacre of its shaven-headed monks gives us an idea of how the great monasteries of Nālandā, Vikramāśīla and others of less re-nown met with a sudden and tragic end. These monasteries served as the citadels of Buddhism, and with their fall Buddhism lost its foothold in India. It found a last refuge in the fastnesses of Nepal, where it is flourishing even now, though in a modified form. But for all practical purposes it vanished from the rest of India.

It is, however, hardly possible that Buddhism, which was once such a great religion, could altogether disappear without leaving some traces behind. It has been plausibly suggested that it was not only fused with Śāktism and other Brahmanical Tāntrik cults, but
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

also survived in the guise of such medieval religious cults of Beng-
al as Nathism, Sahajiyā, Avadhūta, Baul, etc. Some have even
found in the cult of Dharma a living relic of Buddhism in
Bengal and Orissa, but this is doubtful. 106

But howsoever that may be, we get very few traces of Buddhism
as a distinct religious cult in India after the thirteenth century.
Buddhism still flourished in the kingdom of Paṭīṭera (Comilla) 106
early in the thirteenth century A.D. when Muslims had not yet
penetrated into that region, and a Buddhist king Madhusena was
reigning as late as A.D. 1289 in some parts of Bengal. 107 About
the same time we find two other Buddhist rulers Asokavalla (or Aśoka-
challa), king of Sapādakāsha (Siwalik hills in U.P.), and his
feudatory, Purushottamasinīha of Kāṇā (Kumayun), building some
new structures in Bodh-Gaya. 108 They mention in their records
that Buddhism had decayed, but nevertheless votive records at
Bodh-Gayā prove that Buddhist pilgrims visited the holy place
down to the fifteenth century A.D. and even later. 109 Stray references
to Buddhism occur in a few other records of the thirteenth century
and even later, and Buddhist manuscripts were copied here and
there. 110

We possess contradictory general statements about Buddhism in
later period. Abul Fazl states that “for a long time past scarce
any trace of them (the Buddhists) has existed in Hindustan.” 111
Although when he visited Kāśmir in A.D. 1597 he met with a few
old men professing Buddhism, he ‘saw none among the learned’.
This is borne out by the fact that Buddhist priests were conspicuous
by their absence from the motley crowd of learned divines that
thronged the Ibadatkhāna of Akbar at Fatehpur Sikrī.

On the other hand the Vaishnava literature of Bengal refers to
a Buddhist community in Bengal as also in South India in the six-
teenth century A.D. 112 and the Tibetan pilgrim Buddhagupta Tathā-
ganātha, who visited India in the seventeenth century, saw traces
of Buddhism not only in Bengal and Orissa, but also in Trilinga
(Trikalūṅga), Vidyānagara (Vijayanagara), Karnāṭaka, and some
other tracts of South India. He also mentions by name a few Bud-
dhists who possessed great supernatural powers. 113

As noted above, Buddhism found a last refuge in Nepal. The
popularity and vitality of Buddhism in this region are proved by
the large number of vihāras, Buddhist manuscripts, many of which
are dated, copied there, numerous images in stone and metal, and
pictures of Buddhist gods and goddesses. 114 One of the principal
vihāras of Nepal during the first three centuries following A.D.
1200, was the Pāṇḍuṭhāmi-vihāra, where many of the Indian
Pandititas and Tibetan Lochivas translated many important sacred books into Tibetan. Paṇḍubhumi seems to have been one of the resorts in Nepal of the Kashmirian monks like Vimalasārībhadrā, Somanātha, etc., while the three leading figures associated with the history of this vihāra were Parama-Guru-Dharmājaya-Matidhvaja Śrībhadrā, Mahānāyaka Śākyabhadrā and Anandadhvaja Śrībhadrā, known as the Grand Paṇḍita of Paṇḍubhumi-vihāra. At Svayambhū, the capital of Nepal, was the great Nirabhoga-vihāra, which must be distinguished from the Tibetan vihāra of the same name. Another vihāra of Svayambhū that attained celebrity was the Puṇya-dhārodaya-vihāra. Of the vihāras of Lalitapattana, the greatest was the Govindachandra-vihāra, associated with two illustrious scholars, the Mahāpanḍita Siddhesvara Vanaratna, for whom we have the date A.D. 1384-1468, and his contemporary, Saṃvadīgīrīṣa Matimati Puṇya-Sāgarasena, who was a follower of Yogāchāra school and a native of Nepal. Vanaratna is, however, said to have hailed from Sannagara in Eastern India, and this affords a clue to the explanation of the expression Sannagariya bhikṣus which has for long been a puzzle to scholars. Vanaratna was a voluminous writer and an assiduous translator, too, while Sāgarasena made his mark as a translator only. They found a brilliant collaborator in Kumarasri (A.D. 1392-1481), a learned Lochava working in the same vihāra. Another monk of Eastern India, Sūrya of Magadha, followed Vanaratna in Nepal, became his disciple and composed a hymn in praise of his preceptor. In later times there grew up at Lalitapattana many other vihāras, great and small. After the sixteenth century, Nepalese Buddhism became more and more stereotyped and unproductive of anything really great. There are at present four different sects among the Buddhist community of Nepal, which belong to the Vajra-yāna system. These are the Svābhāvikas, the oldest of the four, the Aśāvārikas, and the two later developments of these, viz. the Kāśmirikas and the Yānikas. Many of the Nepalese Buddhists are votaries of Paśupatinātha (Siva) as well.

C. JAINISM

I. JAINISM IN GUJARĀT

Gujarat was a flourishing centre of Jainism throughout the period under review. The Jain influence at the court of the Chau-lukya kings of Gujarāt may be traced from the time of the very founder of the dynasty. A Jain temple, known as Mālabastikā, is said to have been constructed by Mālarāja himself at his capital Āṇahilapājaka or Āṇahilavājā. According to the Kathākosa of
Srīchandra, Mūlarāja had for his legal adviser (dharma-sthānasya Gōshṭikā) one Sajjana of the Prāgvāta family of Anāhilavāda, and Srīchandra, the disciple of Sahasrakirti, whose spiritual predecessors were Srutakirti and Śrīkirti in the line of Kundakunda, composed the work for the instruction of the family of Sajjana’s son Kṛishṇa. The prestige that this line of spiritual teachers enjoyed in the political world of the period is indicated incidentally in the prasasti, where Sahasrakirti is described as “the sinless teacher whose supreme lotus feet were worshipped by eminent kings like Gāggeya, Bhojadeva and others.” The reference is presumably to the Kalachuri king of Chedi and the Paramāra king of Mālāvā.

During the reign of Bhīma I, his minister Vimala of the Prāgvāta family built, at Ābu or Abū, the most magnificent Jain temple—that of Ādinātha. Indian craftsmanship of the age has found its best expression here, and the temple, for its rich delicate carving, grace, and beauty, is considered to be unique in the world. The temple was completed in A.D. 1031, i.e. within seven years of the demolition of Somanātha by Māhmūd of Ghaznī. The Kharatara-gachchha-pattavali records that minister Vimala of the Porwā caste captured the parasols of thirteen Sultāns, founded the town of Chandrāvati, and built the temple of Rīshabhadeva on the Arbudachala. These activities of Vimala which, of course, had the approval of his royal master, Bhīma, were probably a reaction to the Muslim vandalism exhibited at Somanātha and other places.

Jainism became more dominant at the Chauḷukya court during the reigns of Siddharāja and his successor Kumārapāla. The latter actually became a convert to Jainism under the influence of “the most learned man of his time,” the celebrated Hemachandra (A.D. 1088-1172), and under his inspiration and guidance enriched Gujarāt with Jain shrines to an enormous extent. During his reign Gujarāt became a stronghold of Jainism, in respect of followers as well as institutions, for all time to come. The secret of this success was not any fanatic zeal, but the promotion of understanding between different faiths, which is the corner-stone of Jainism and was particularly emphasized by Hemachandra in word as well as in deed. The continuity of the faith and the prosperity of the followers are attested by the temple of Neminātha built in the vicinity of Ādinātha temple at Abū, mentioned above, by Tejāhpāla of the Porwā family, who was a minister of the Chauḷukya king Somasimhadeva. It was completed in A.D. 1230. In its beauty of sculptural decoration it is only comparable to the Ādinātha temple. To these were added numerous Jain shrines and other structures during the twelfth and the thirteenth century, the fame of which gave
the place its new name Devala-Vāda or Delwāḍā. Besides Ābu, Satrūjāyaj and Girnār in Kāthiāwād received particular attention of the rulers and merchants, whose bounty is reflected in the huge and beautiful temples which have since been adorning their peaks. The Chintāmāṇi Pārśvanātha temple at Khambhāta (Cambay) was built about A.D. 1108 and repaired in A.D. 1295. It records names of several devotees from Mālwa, Sapādalakṣaṇa, and Chitrakūṭa, who endowed the temple from time to time.

II. JAINISM IN THE DECCAN AND SOUTH INDIA

At the beginning of the eleventh century, the Western Chāḷukyas and the Hoysalas gained political ascendancy in the South. Both these royal dynasties were great patrons of Jainism, and their emergence into power proved a great boon for the propagation and glorification of the faith.

Tailapa, the founder of the Western Chāḷukya dynasty, was the patron of the great Kannāḍa poet Rāma. The next king Satyārāya received spiritual guidance from a Jain teacher named Vimala Chandra Pāṇḍitadeva of the Drāviḍa Saṅgha. Many other kings of this dynasty such as Jayasimha II, Someśvara I and II, and Vikramādiyā Vi, showed favour to the Jain faith by patronising Jain writers, and giving lands to Jain teachers and Jain temples or settlements (basti or vssadi).

As regards the Hoysalas, reference has been made above to the legend about the founder of the dynasty who owed his greatness to the benedictions of a Jain saint. A Jain saint, Vardhamāṇadeva, is said to have been “foremost in the management of the affairs of the Hoysalas,” probably during the reign of Vinayāditya. The next two kings had Jain saints as their spiritual teachers. All these kings made grants to Jain temples and settlements. Vīśṇupārṇḍhana, the most celebrated and glorious of the Hoysalas, is said to have changed his faith under the influence of the Vaiṣṇava teacher Rāmānuja, but there is ample evidence to prove that he continued to be benevolent and generous towards Jainism all through his regime. Even as late as A.D. 1125 he paid his devotions to the Jain saint Śrīpāla Traividyadeva, built the Jain abode at Chālya, and made suitable grants for repairs of the Jain temples as well as for the maintenance of Jain saints. According to another stone inscription at Belur (A.D. 1129), he made a gift to the Malli Jinālaya. In A.D. 1133, he granted a village to the Pārśvanātha temple in the capital itself, Dvārasamudra, and to commemorate his recent victories, he named the God as Viṣṇu Pārśvanātha and his own son as Viṣṇu Narasimha. Here we have a clear indication how
Vishnuvardhana tried to hold the balance even between his loyalties to his ancestral faith and to the faith of his choice. His queen Sántaladevi continued to be a staunch devotee of Jainism all through her life, and made several donations to the Jain temples. Her spiritual guide was Prabhachandra Siddhántadeva, the disciple of Meghachandra Traividyaadeva. She died by the Jain form of renunciation called Sallekhana in A.D. 1131. Some of the most outstanding ministers and commanders, to whom Vishnuvardhana owed his great victories and conquests, were also staunch devotees of the Jain faith. Amongst them was Gailgaraja, who built several Jain temples, repaired many more and generously endowed numerous Jain institutions. His wife Lakshmimati died in accordance with the rules of Jain Sallekhanâ, and her noble husband commemorated her by an epitaph at Sravana Belgola. Other commanders of Vishnuvardhana, who subscribed to the Jain faith and served it properly, were Boppa, Punisa, Maniyane and Bharateśvara whose devotion to Jain teachers and acts of piety are recorded in several inscriptions at Sravana Belgola and other places. Vishnuvardhana's successor Narasimha I paid a visit to Sravana Belgola and endowed the Chaturvimsati basadi built by his illustrious general Hulla, by the grant of a village. The later Hoysala kings were also patrons of Jainism. Two of them, Vira Ballala II and Narasimha III, had Jain saints as their spiritual ancestors, and these and others erected Jain temples and made rich endowments to them. It will thus be seen that the Hoysala kings personally professed Jainism and by their active support and patronage Jain temples and other institutions grew and benefited immensely in the South.

It was not only these predominant royal houses that patronised Jainism, but the faith was adopted by several feudatory chiefs and small rulers in the land as well. For example, the Sántaras, who ruled over that part of Kàlalkaka which roughly corresponds with the modern Tirthahalli Tâluk and its surrounding country, were the followers of Jainism from the very beginning. Bhujabala Sántara erected a Jain temple in his capital Pomburcha and granted to his guru, Kanakanandideva, a village for its maintenance. In A.D. 1081 Nagularasa, the minister of Vira Sántara, is described as 'a fortress to the Jain Dharma'. The later chiefs also built numerous Jain temples and shrines and endowed them suitably with lands and tolls. In A.D. 1173, Vira Sántara is described as 'a bee at the lotus feet of Jina'. Later on, however, the Sántaras adopted the creed of Viraśaivism, and this affected the progress of Jainism in that region to some extent. During the thirteenth century the capital of the Sántaras was shifted to Kalasa, and later to Karkala in Tuluva.
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

where they, in spite of their new faith, continued to be benevolent towards Jainism.

The Kāṅgalvas, who ruled over north Coorg and the Arkalgud Tēluṅ in the south of the Hassan District of Mysore, and emerged into prominence during the eleventh century, were great patrons of Jainism. The Kāṅgalva rulers constructed Jain temples and made grants for their maintenance till the beginning of the twelfth century, when their fortunes declined consequent upon the expulsion of the Cholas by the Hoysalas from the land.

Similarly, the Changalvas of the Changāṅāḷ (roughly corresponding with the Hansur Tēluṅ in Mysore State), although Saivite by profession, were benevolent towards Jainism, as is clearly proved by epigraphic records of A.D. 1091 and 1100 which make mention of their construction of Jain temples and donations for the same, particularly to some of the “sixty-four basadis in the city of Hansoge or Panasoge (in the Yedatore Tēluṅ of Mysore), reputed to have been built by Rāma the son of Daśāratha.” We possess numerous records, both dated and undated, and ranging between A.D. 1000 and 1300, of solitary rulers and noblemen, in addition to those of persons of the merchant class and others, who built temples, installed images, performed worship and made endowments for perpetual service of divinity and piety, and who even ended their lives by the renunciation of all worldly attachments and by observing fasts in strict accordance with the Jain faith. Jain temples, shrines, images, tombs and epitaphs, found strewn all over the South, amply testify to the fact that during this period the Jain religion was extremely popular and constituted a living faith of all classes of people from royalty to peasantry, inspiring them to deeds of piety and philanthropy during life, and affording them solace and hope in death.

III. ASCETIC ORGANISATIONS AND SUCCESSION LISTS

A large number of inscriptions, found at Śrāvāṇa Belgola, record genealogical lists of pontifical succession for several centuries, and afford us an insight into the organisation of monks and their activities. The Siddharābāsti pillar inscription of Saka 1320 (A.D. 1398) records the tradition that Arahadbali acquired brilliance by his two pupils Pushpadanta and Bhūtavali, and that he split the Mūla-saṅgha Kundakundānāvaya into four branches, namely Sēṇa, Nandi, Deva and Sinha, in order to assuage the jealousies arising out of the nature of the Age. The earliest mention of the Mūla-saṅgha and Kundakundānāvaya is met with in the copper-plate grants of the fifth century. Records of the subsequent period show that Saṅghas, Gaṇas, Gachchhas, Balis, and Sākhās of monks had grown
into a very large number by A.D. 1000. During the period of the next three centuries we meet with references, in the epigraphical records, to the following orders: Mula-sangha, Nandi-sangha, Namulura-sangha or Mayura-sangha, Kutjara-sangha, Kollatur-sangha, Nandi-gaça, Desi-gaça, Dramila-gaça, Kaju-gaça, Pustaka-gaça or Sarasvati-gaçchha, Vakra-gaçchha, Tagarila-gaçchha, Manjula-gaçchha, Ingulesvara-bali, Panasoge-bali, etc. Epigraphic evidence shows that some of the pontiffs of these branches of the Digambara Jain community distinguished themselves in the South during this period.

The pontifical succession, as recorded in the North during the same period, is somewhat different. According to the Svetâmbara Paṭṭâvalis, Sarvadeva Sûri, the thirty-sixth pontiff (Achârya) in the line of succession after Mahâvîra, wielded the leadership at the beginning of the eleventh century. A few events of his time are recorded in the Paṭṭâvalis with dates. Dharmaghosha Sûri converted the chief minister Vimala in A.D. 1011, and Sânti Sûri Vâdi-Vetâlî of the Thirapadra-gaçchha, who composed a commentary on the Utteradhyayana, attained heaven in A.D. 1039. Sarvadeva Sûri was followed by Deva Sûri, Sarvajayadeva Sûri, and Yasobhadra Sûri successively. Of the last it has been recorded that in his time Sîri Abhayadeva Sûri, the author of commentaries on the nine Angas, went to heaven in A.D. 1078, or, according to another account, in 1082. Yasobhadra’s successor Munichandra, who lived on sour gruel (sauûrîra) only, was the foremost logician and was the author of Anekkânta-Jaya-Putkâ-Pañjîkî, Upadesipada-Vîrti and other works. He attained heaven in A.D. 1121. During his leadership the Punamiya-gaçchha was founded by his colleague Chandraprabha Sûri in A.D. 1102, and for its guidance Munichandra wrote the Pîleshika-Saptati. The next in succession was Ajitadeva Sûri. His co-disciple Vâdideva Sûri is said to have held a disputation with the Digambara teacher Kumudachanda at the court of Jayasimhadeva in Anahilapattana, and vanquished him; as a result of this the Digambaras were prevented from entering the capital any more. This claim is denied by the Digambara sect. Whatever may be the truth, the record is an evidence of the jealousy which had unfortunately developed between the two sister communities. The spirit of the times is also reflected in the record of a series of splits within the Svetâmbara sect itself. The foundation of the Kharatra-gaçchha by Jina Vallabha, the pupil of Jinesvara Sûri of the Kurchapura Chaityavasî, took place at Chitrakûta in A.D. 1147. Nine years later the Aîchala-mata was founded. The year A.D. 1169 saw the emergence of Sârdha-Paurâamiyaka-mata, a branch of the Punamiya sect mentioned above, and in A.D. 1193 Âgamiyaka-mata
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

came into existence. In A.D. 1165 minister Baha
dadeva is said to have carried out some reconstruction work to the Pārśvanātha tem­
ple at Satru
jaya.

The pontifical period of Ajitadeva is also remarkable for the activities of Hemachandra Sūri, the pupil of Deva Sūri. It has been recorded about Hemachandra that he was born on the 15th of Kārttika in V.S. 1145 (A.D. 1088), received initiation at the age of five, became a Sūri at twenty-one, and attained heaven in V.S. 1299 (A.D. 1172). In A.D. 1157 he converted king Kumārapāla and found­
ed the Pūrṇatāla-gachchha. The claim that he was the author of three crores of books (Trikoṭi-grantha-kartī) is, of course, absurd. There is, however, no doubt, that no other author has enriched litera­
ture, both in volume and variety, to the extent that Hemachandra has done. An account of his literary works has been given above.136

Ajitadeva Sūri was succeeded by Vijaya Sināha Sūri who, in his turn, was succeeded by Somaprabha Sūri and Maśjiratna Sūri jointly. This period was marked by the birth of Vastupāla and Tejāgāpāla (A.D. 1205), their pilgrimage to Siddhāchala, and erection by the latter of the temple on Mount Abu at an expense of eighteen crores of silver. The next pontiff in succession was Jagadachandra Sūri. He was devoted to austere penances, in recognition of which the Nāhada Rāgās conferred on him the title of ‘Tāpā’. It was thus that the sixth schism ‘Tāpa-gachchha’ was founded in A.D. 1228. The next in succession was Devendra Sūri, who was much honoured by minister Vastupāla. During his preaching tours Devendra Sūri visited Prahlādapura where he nominated Vidyānanda Sūri as his successor in A.D. 1266. At Śrīstambha Tīrtha (Khambhāta-Cambay) he found that Śrī Vijayachandra Sūri had been following his own ascetic practices for the last twelve years without any reference to the pontifical head, whom he did not even now care to welcome. Devendra Sūri, therefore, stayed separately from him, and hence his party came to be designated as ‘Laghu-Sālikā’ as distinguished from the party of Vijayachandra Sūri which had been settled in the place much earlier and was therefore called ‘Vṛddha-Sālikā’. Deven­
dra is said to have toured for a long time in Mālāwa and died in A.D. 1270. He was the author of Karma-grantha, Śrīddhadīna-krītya-
vṛtti and other works.

Devendra Sūri’s nominee Vidyānanda Sūri also died just thirteen days after his predecessor, and so Dharmaghosha Sūri suc­ceeded to the pontifical seat. He blessed the merchant Pethadadeva, who became the chief minister of the ruler of Māṇḍapa and proved his loyalty to the faith by building eighty-four Jain temples and causing ‘seven compendiums of knowledge’ (Septa-Jñānakośa) to be

438
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

produced. He also installed the Indramālā at Śatruṅjaya and took the vow of celibacy at the age of thirty-two. His only son Jhānījhaladeva installed gold and silver flagstaff at Śatruṅjaya and Urjayanta, and celebrated the event of his spiritual teacher’s arrival at Maṇḍapāchala at an enormous cost. Dharmaghoṣha Śūrī is credited with great magical powers and some of his magical deeds are recorded. He died in V.S. 1357, i.e. A.D. 1300.

IV. LITERATURE

The literary activity of the Jains during this period was very intense, and reference has been made above, in Chapter XV, to the Sanskrit, Prakrit, and Apabhraṃśa works of a large number of Jain writers. The study of the Jain Ardhamāgadhī canon was carried a step further by Abhayadeva (A.D. 1064), who wrote commentaries on the nine Angas, and by Sānti Śūrī and Devendragaṇī (eleventh century), both of whom wrote exhaustive commentaries on the important and popular canonical work, the Uttarādhyāyana. The literary productions of Hemachandra constitute a library by themselves, and have been referred to above. Narrative poetry was mainly directed towards the lives of the Tīrthaṅkaras. Santinātha-charita was written both by Deva Śūrī and Maṇḍikyaḥchandra, Nemīnātha-charita by Sūrachārya as well as Maladāhī Hemachandra, and Pārśvanātha-charita by Vādirāja, Bhavadeva and Maṇḍikyaḥchandra. The Nemīdātīa by Vikrama, son of Sāṅgaṇa, though probably of a much later date, is interesting, as the last line of each verse is here taken from Kālīdāsa’s Meghaṭātā, and is, thus, a good example of Śaṃasyapūrṇī Kāvya. Vāgbhaṭa wrote his Nemīnīrṇāṇa-kāvya, mentioned above, under Jayasimhadeva Chaulukya, to whom he pays a tribute in his ‘Alankāra’ where, in one of the verses illustrating the figure of speech called Saṃkara, he says that there are only three gems in the world, namely, Apahālapura city, king Jayasimhadeva, and his Śrīkālaśa elephant. The Mṛgāṇaṭi-charitra of Maladāhī Devaprabha (thirteenth century) contains interesting legends about Udāyana, Vāsavadattā and Padmāvati, reminiscent of Bhāsa’s dramas. For short religious stories mention may be made of the Kāthākosā of Jineśvara, pupil of Vardhamāna (A.D. 1092). As examples of literary activity in Mālwa we might mention Śrīchandra, pupil of Śrīnāṇḍi, who, under Bhōjadeva of Bhārā, wrote Purāṇāśāstra and commentaries on Padma-charita of Ravishaṇa and Mahāpuruṣa (Apabhraṃśa) of Pushpadanta. Another poet of Mālwa, namely Aśūdharā, deserves a special mention. He is the author of more than twenty works, the Sāgāra-Dharmāmya and Anāgāra-Dharmāmya being the most famous and popular. He wandered from place
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

to place due to fear of harassment by the Muslim raiders, and makes mention of five kings of his time, Vindhyā-varmā, Subhata-varmā, Arjuna-varmā, Devapāla and Jaitugīdeva. He was reputed as ‘Kali-Kālidāsa’ on account of his poetic attainments, even as Hemachandra became famous as ‘Kalīkāla-Sarvajña’. Mahāśena wrote his Pradyumna-charita under Sindhurāja who died about A.D. 1000. Mention is made of his being honoured by Muśja. Amītagati, mentioned above, claims to have been honoured by Bhōja, Muśja and Sindhula, and composed a compendium of Jain philosophy called Pariśchatasangraha.

At the court of the Western Chālukya king Jayasiniha flourished the great logician poet Vādirāja, of whom, besides the works mentioned already, we have two works on logic, Pramāṇa-Nirṇaya and Nyāyaviniṣṭhayavivarana, a work on duties of householders, Upāṣakāchāra, a lyrical poem Ektāhāvasotra and three other works, Arādhana, Śāmayikapāṭha, and Adhyātmaśataka, on meditation and spiritual practices.

Of a very special importance are the contributions of two writers of dramas, one of whom flourished in the north and the other in the south. Rāmachandra (A.D. 1110-1173), a pupil of Hemachandra in Gūjarāt, has given us no less than eleven dramas, namely Rāghurilāsa, Nāṭakilāsa, Yadurilāsa, Sātya-Harīcandra, Nīrbhaya-Bhima-vyayoga, Mallikāmakaranda, Rāgharābhvyudaya, Rohiṃya-mrigaśāka, Yānavānūṭāśāka, Keumudimitṛṇānda, and Yādvābhvyudaya. He is also the author of a collection of verses called Sūdākālasa. He, in collaboration with Gūjachandra, also wrote Nātādarpaṇa, as noted above, and Dravyālakāra, a work on Jain logic. The other dramatic genius of the age was Hastimalla who, according to the Prasasti attached to one of his plays, Vikranta-Kaurava, was a southerner (Dakshinātya). He is the author of four plays of considerable value from the poetic as well as technical points of view. These are Vikranta-Kaurava, Maithilī-kalyāṇa, Aśya-pavanaśayana, and Subhadra. The Rāmāyaṇa and the Mahābhārata have been here, as everywhere else, the chief sources of themes with an original colouring suitable to the faith and the genius of the writer. Hastimalla’s date is not precisely known, and all that may be said with certainty is that he wrote between A.D. 900 and 1300.

D. VAISHNAVISM

I. NORTH INDIA

The doctrine of Vaishnavism underwent profound changes during the period under review. The most important of these was the gradual dominance of the pastoral life of Kṛṣṇa and his dalliance with the gopīs or cowherd girls. The beginnings or germs of
all this may be traced in early literature. But the story in its fully
developed form—the birth of Krishna in the prison of Kaśiṣa, his
secret removal to the house of Nanda, bringing up by Yaśoda, early
life among cowherds, miraculous acts like holding up of Govardhana
hill, killing of Pūtanā and Kaliya-nāga, etc., amorous dalliance with
gopīs or cowherd girls, particularly with Rādhā, wife of a near rela-
tion—all these are found in detail in the literature of this period.
The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which is almost a complete store-house of
these legends, is generally believed to have been composed in the
ninth or tenth century A.D., somewhere in South India. Although
even this late work does not mention Rādhā, she certainly came into
great prominence during the period under review. The most
poetic, and at the same time very realistic, description of the amorous
relations between Krishna and Rādhā is given in the Gītā-govinda by
Jayadeva, a court-poet of Lakṣmanaśena (twelfth century A.D.). It
is a famous lyric poem highly venerated by the Vaiśnavas all over
Northern India, who explain away the erotic elements as allegorical
or symbolical representation of the highest spiritual ideals. The
representation of amorous scenes, however, takes a more grossly
sensual form, bereft of Jayadeva’s poetic charms, in texts like
Brahma-Vaivarta Purāṇa, which is a later work but probably be-
longs to this period. Whatever may be the value of the explanation
offered by the Vaiśnavas, it is impossible to ignore the vulgar ele-
ments in these erotic pictures and their influence upon the morals
of the common people. This is sufficiently indicated by the fate
which overtook Vaiśnavism at no distant date in future, when a
class of this sect came to be a byword for sexual immorality. There
can be hardly any doubt that this was largely due to the prevalent
Tāntrik ideas and practices to which reference has been made
above.

II. ŚRIVAISHṆAVAS

A refreshing contrast is offered by the development of Vaiśnava-
ivism in South India. Thanks to the Śrivaishṇava sect founded by
Nathamuni, a more elevated form of Vaiśnavism prevailed in
this region. His worthy successors not only maintained the purity
of the doctrine but placed it on a firm philosophic basis.

Achārya Nathamuni was succeeded on the apostolic seat by his
disciple Puṇḍarikākṣa, also called Uyyakondar or “Saviour of the
New Dispensation”, a title which he received from his preceptor.
He was a native of Tiruvallar near Srīraṅgam. The third Achārya
was Rāmāmīśra, who was the guru of the next Achārya, the celebrat-
ed Yāmūnāchārya, grandson of Nathamuni. Yāmūnāchārya or
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

Yamunamuni was born at Viranārāyaṇāpura or Mannargudi. He was the son of Nathamuni's son Śāvarabheṣṭa.

1. Yamunāchārya

It is said that Yamunāchārya received the title Alavandar or "the victor" from the Chola queen by vanquishing in a disputation the Pāṇḍit at the court of the reigning Chola king. The king granted him some lands with which he began to live a life of luxury. Later, at the instigation of his preceptor Rāmamīśra, he took his residence at Śrīraṅgam and spent his life in expounding the doctrines of the Viśiṣṭādvaita school.

Yamunāchārya is stated to have been the real founder of the Viśiṣṭādvaita or Śrīvaishnava school and to have "laid the foundation of all the doctrines that go under Rāmānuja's name". It has been said that had there been no Yāmuna there would have been no Rāmānuja. Yamunāchārya is the author of a number of works such as the Śiddhitraya, Agamapramiṣṭya, Gītārthasaṅgraha, Mahā-purushanirūṇaya and Stotraratna. The Śiddhitraya, which contains three sections, viz. Atmasiddhi, Iśvarasiddhi and Saivāt-siddhi, demonstrates the real existence of the Individual and Supreme Souls and refutes the doctrine of Avidyā. The Agamapramiṣṭya defends the grounds of the orthodox Bhāgavata or Pāṇḍitīrtha school against Sāṅkara's criticism. The Gītārthasaṅgraha analyses the text of the Gītā as an exposition of the Bhakti doctrine giving only a subordinate position to the Karma-yoga and Jñāna-yoga.

2. Rāmānuja

Yamunāchārya was succeeded by Rāmānuja said to have been born in Śaṅka 938 corresponding to A.D. 1016-17. At first Rāmānuja lived at Kāṇchipuram and was a pupil of the Advaita philosopher Yādava-prakāśa. Having been dissatisfied with the teaching of spiritual monism, Rāmānuja began to study the works of the Āvāsī and found solace in them. After becoming the successor of Yamunāchārya, he settled at Śrīraṅgam. In his later years he is said to have been persecuted by the Chola prince who was a follower of the Saiva faith. As a result Rāmānuja is said to have taken refuge in A.D. 1096 at the court of the Hoysala prince Viṣṇuvardhana whom he converted to Vaiṣṇavism. Rāmānuja was the author of a number of works including the Vedāntasūtra, Vedārtha-saṅgraha, Vedāntadīpa and the commentaries on the Brahma-sūtras and the Bhagavad-gītā.

It is said that one of the last directions of Yamunāchārya to Rāmānuja was to compose a commentary on Bādarāyaṇa's Brahman.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

This was absolutely necessary to maintain the doctrine of love and grace, the fundamental tenet of Vaishnavism, in the face of the theory of spiritual monism which Saṅkara based upon the Brahma-sūtra and the Upanishads. According to Saṅkara’s theory there exists only one spirit, and the attributes of the animal spirit, such as the feelings of individuality as well as the variety of the inanimate world, are due to illusion (māya) and are unreal. Thus according to this view love and piety favoured by the Vaishnavas have room only in the illusive state of the human soul and have no place in the world of reality. The Vaishnavas had therefore to defend their doctrine by reconciling it with the same Brahma-sūtras and the Upanishads and to overthrow the doctrine of māya on the authority of the same works.

According to Rāmānuja’s doctrine, which is called Viśiṣṭ-ādvaita or qualified monism, there are three eternal principles, viz. chit (the individual soul), achit (the insensate world) and Īśvara (the Supreme Soul). The individual soul and the insensate world are the attributes of the Supreme Soul and form his body. The Supreme Soul, which exists in a subtle form before creation, develops itself in the form of the universe (which in its subtle form before creation is called Prakṛti) at the time of creation. The Supreme Soul or God is the creator, preserver and destroyer of the world. He is thus the material and efficient cause of the world and is a composite personality having the individual souls and the inanimate world as his body. He has no defects and is the grantor of boons to his devotees. He has five different aspects, viz. Para or the highest, Vyāha in which he appears in the four forms of Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa, Pradyumna and Aniruddha for creation and other purposes, Viṁśata in which he appears as the ten incarnations, Antaryāmin in which he lives in the hearts of all, and Pratimā or idol. The conception of the cowherd Kṛṣṇa and of the relation between Kṛṣṇa and the cowherdesses, including Rādhā, is absent from Rāmānuja’s Vaishnavism. Rāmānuja regarded Bhakti to be the same as the Upanishadic upāsanā or meditation.

3. Rāmānuja’s Followers

After the death of Rāmānuja about A.D. 1137, the Śrī-Vaishnavas were gradually divided into two sects called Vadakalai (i.e. the school of northern learning) and Teṅkai (i.e. the school of southern learning). One class believed that salvation was more easily obtainable through the Sanskrit scriptures like the Vedas, Upanishads and the Gītā than through the Prabandhas, called the Tamil Veda, while the other class held the diametrically opposite view. Rāmā-
nuja himself gave equal importance to both the classes of scriptures. But the difference of attitude on this point led to the growth of certain doctrinal differences, and ultimately to the division of his followers into two distinct sects, about the close of the fourteenth century.

Both the Vaqakalai and the Tenkalai agreed as to the necessity of *saran-agati* or *prapatti*, i.e. self-surrender unto God; but while the former laid emphasis on the performance of *karma*, the latter believed that self-effort is unnecessary, as God's love is spontaneous and brings salvation to mankind by itself. The Vaqakalai's belief that Lakshmi is also capable, like her consort, of bestowing final emancipation, is not shared by the Tenkalai. Generally the Tenkalai sect is more liberal than the Vaqakalai. It provides for the teaching of the eight-syllabled formula *Oṁ namo Nārāyaṇaya* to all classes of peoples, while the Vaqakalai sect omits the syllable *Oṁ* from the mantra when taught to non-Brahmaṇas. The Tenkalai sect favours equal treatment for all castes.

The two sects trace two different *guru-paramparās* from Rāmānuja. According to the Vaqakalai, Rāmānuja was succeeded by Kurukṛṣṇa, the celebrated author of the *Sīkṣa Thouṃḍaṇa*. His successor Vishnuchitta or Enkal Alvar, who flourished during the second half of the twelfth century, immortalised himself by his *Śārāṇa-catuṣṭāpya* and *Vishnu-chītyaṅga* (a commentary on the *Vīṣṇu Purāṇa*). Vishnuchitta's successor was his disciple Varadacārya or Naṭadūr Aṁmāḷ who was the leader of the Śrī-Vaishnavaśas for the first three quarters of the thirteenth century. He preferred Kāḷiṣṭhānānḍa for his residence and activities. This resulted in the development of Śrīraṅgān for a prominent centre of the Teṅkalai. Varadacārya was the author of the *Tattva-sāra*, while his interpretation of Rāmānuja's *Śrī-Bhāṣya* was committed to writing by his disciple Sudarśana in his *Ṣrutapraṇāḥkākā*. Varadacārya's successor was Atrey Rāmānuja or Appillār, who was succeeded by his nephew Vedantadesika or Veṅkaṭajñātha in A.D. 1290. In the history of the medieval Vaishnavism the name of Vedantadesika, who was born in A.D. 1269 and died in 1370, is second only to that of Rāmānuja. His works number more than a hundred. He was equally great as a poet, philosopher and controversialist, and wrote both in Sanskrit and Tamil. His Tamil works include original compositions like those of the Alvaras as well as a large number of commentaries. He became famous as *Kavīṭārīkāsaṅkha* (the lion among poets and philosophers), *Ṣrutiṣṭaraṅgrāpaṭaṇḍra* (the master of all the branches of learning) and *Vedantāchārya*. By this third name he is invoked by all sects and subsects of the Śrī-Vaishnavas while beginning the study
of the Śrī-Bhāṣṭya. Vedāntadesāka acted as an arbiter in a dispute between Vidyārasaṇya and Akṣobhyātīrtha, a disciple of Madhvācārya, and gave a decision in favour of the latter.

The Tenkalai sect regards Embīr, a cousin of Rāmānuja, as the latter’s apostolic successor, although he died earlier. Embīr’s successor was his disciple Parāśarabhūṭa, author of the Sahasra-nāma-bhāṣṭya. Parāśarabhūṭa’s successor Naṇēṇiyar composed a commentary on the Prabandhas, called the Nine Thousand, while the views of Naṇēṇiyar’s disciple Nampīḷḷai on the Tamil Veda were incorporated in Periya Aĉcān Pīḷḷai’s commentary entitled the Twenty-four Thousand. Pīḻaĉaligrīya Pēṟumāḻiyar, another disciple of Nampīḷḷai, composed the Twelve Thousand, which is a commentary on the Tiruvimōţi, and the Guruparamparā, which is a biographical work on the succession of the Tenkalai Āchāryas. The successor of Nampīḷḷai was Kṛṣṇāpāda or Vedāntadesāka, who composed another commentary on the Prabandhas, called the Thirty-six Thousand. This work is generally known as the Iḻu (i.e. ‘the equal’), probably because it was considered equal to the commentary on the Śrī-Bhāṣṭya composed by his contemporary Sudarśana, disciple of Varadācārya. The Iḻu was afterwards made the subject of compulsory study by the followers of the Tenkalai. Kṛṣṇāpāda’s son and successor was Pīḷḷai Lokācārya who was an elder contemporary of Vedāntadesāka. He is regarded as the real founder of the Tenkalai sect. His works are believed to contain the only correct interpretation of the views of Rāmānuja and the Ālvārs. He died some time after the capture and sack of Śrīraṅgam in A.D. 1327.

4. Nimbārka

The founder of another school of Vaiśṇavism supporting the cult of Bhakti against the doctrine of Māyā was Nimbārka who is said to have been a Telugu Brāhmaṇa residing at the village of Nība. This village has been identified with Nimbapura in the Bellary District. His father was a Bhāgaṇa named Jagannātha. Nothing is definitely known about the time when Nimbārka flourished; but Bhandarkar suggests that he lived some time after Rāmānuja. His death has been tentatively assigned to a date in the second half of the twelfth century. Nimbārka lived at Vṛindāvan near Mathura and the followers of his school are usually found in North India. The Vaiśṇavas of the Nimbārka school, called the Sanaka-sampradāya (i.e. the school founded by Sanaka), wear on the forehead two perpendicular lines of Gopīchandana with a black mark in the middle. They also use a necklace and a rosary made
of the wood of the Tulasi plant. They are divided into two classes, viz. ascetics and householders.

Nimbārka composed the Vedāntapārijātasaaurabhā, a commentary on the Brahma-sūtra, as well as the Siddhāntaratāna usually called the Daisālokī. Nimbārka was succeeded by his disciple Śrīnivaśa who commented on his preceptor's Vedāntapārijātasaaurabhā. Devachārya, the thirteenth successor on the pontifical seat after Nimbārka, was the author of the Siddhāntajñānaśāstra on which a commentary called the Setu was composed by the next pontiff Sundara-bhaṭṭa. The thirtieth pontiff Keśava Kāśmirin wrote a commentary on the Brahma-sūtra. Harivyāsaṅdeva, who was the thirty-second in the list of succession, commented on Nimbārka’s Siddhāntaratāna or Daisālokī.

The doctrines of the Nimbārka school of Vaisnavism resemble in some respects those of Rāmānuja’s school. But Nimbārka preached Bhakti in its original sense of love and gave exclusive prominence to the conception of Krishṇa attended by the cowherdesses headed by Rādā. Rāmānuja’s theory about the Supreme Soul being a composite personality and developing into the animate and inanimate world is not accepted by the Nimbārka school, according to which the Supreme Soul (God), the individual soul, and the inanimate world are both identical and at the same time distinct from one another. They are identical in the sense that the individual soul and the inanimate world are entirely dependent on God and have no independent existence. Nimbārka’s theory is thus both monistic and pluralistic.

5. Madhva or Anandatirtha

Madhva or Anandatirtha, whose original name was Vasudeva, was born at Bejā in the South Kanara District. In the Madhvāvijayā by Nārāyaṇa, Madhva is said to have been born in the Madhyageha family of Rajatapitha. Madhva or Anandatirtha was also known as Pūrṇaprajñā and Madhyamandāra. He received his initiation from Aciḥyutaprekaśāchārya, otherwise called Purushottamatārtha, and went on pilgrimage to Badarikāśrama from where he brought the images of Digvijaya-Rāma and Vedavyāsa. Later he travelled in different parts of the country to establish his own doctrine against other schools including the followers of Śaṅkara. His pupils were Padmanābhatārtha, Naraharatīrtha, Madhavatīrtha and Aciḥkshobhyaṅgatārtha. Of these Naraharitīrtha was sent to Jaganāthā-kṣetra (Puri) in Orissa to bring the idols of Rāma and Sītā. Naraharitīrtha became the preceptor of the Gaṅga king Narasilīhī II (A.D. 1279-1306) and is known from several inscriptions with dates 441
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

ranging between Śaka 1186 (A.D. 1264) and 1212 (A.D. 1290). There is little doubt, therefore, that his guru Madhva flourished in the thirteenth century. Bhandarkar suggested that Madhva was born in Śaka 1119 (A.D. 1197) and died in Śaka 1198 (A.D. 1276).

The followers of Madhva wear on the forehead the mark of two white perpendicular lines of Gopichandana joined by a cross line on the bridge of the nose, together with a dark line in the middle with a reddish spot in the centre. They also wear, on various parts of the body, especially the shoulders, Gopichandana prints of the various weapons of Viṣṇu. Sometimes permanent prints are made on the skin with the help of heated metallic stamps. The Kannadā country is the stronghold of the Madhvas, i.e. the followers of Madhva-Anandatīrtha. There are eight Mathas of this sect, some of which were founded by Madhva himself.

Madhva did not favour the conception of Gopāla-Krishna attended by Radhā and the cowherdesses. The Vyuḥa doctrine also has no place in his system. Madhva denies that God is the material cause of the world. According to him, God is a substance entirely different from the individual souls and the inanimate world. The innumerable individual souls, which are distinct from one another and are characterised by defects like ignorance, go through a succession of existences. The relation between God and the individual souls is like that between the master and his servant. By serving and worshipping God, the individual souls become like God in most respects. Madhva enjoins worship of Viṣṇu as God. He was bitterly against Śaṅkara's theory of Māyā. Madhva's theory of creation is based on the doctrine of the Śāṅkhya.

Thirty-seven treatises are ascribed to Madhva. The most important among those are his commentaries on the Brahma-sūtra and the Upanishads. One of his works, based on the epics and the Purāṇas, is the Bhāratatīrtparyānatāya. Large commentaries on his works were composed by his followers, one of them being Jayatīrtha, sixth successor of Madhva on the pontifical seat. Jayatīrtha, whose original name was Dhanḍo Raghunātha, was a native of Maṅgalavēḍhā near Paṇḍharpur.

E. SĀIVISM

I. ROYAL PATRONS OF SĀIVISM

In the previous volume we gave an account of Kashmir Saivism and showed how both kings and scholars helped to spread and consolidate the doctrine. In the centuries which are covered by the present volume Saivism continued to flourish in Kashmir. Of the
successors of Abhinavagupta who wrote on the Pratyabhijñā system, mention may be made of Kshemaraja, the author of the Pratyabhijñā-kādyā, which is an important manual of the doctrine. The tutelary deity of the Royal House of Nepal is Pasupatinatha. In Nepal, as elsewhere, Mahāyāna Buddhism mingled with Saivism, and there were mutual borrowings in doctrine and in practice.

In Assam, the cults of Śiva and Viṣṇu were prevalent. Ratnapāla, the most important king in the eleventh century, professed faith in both Śiva and Viṣṇu.

The founder of the Sena kingdom of Bengal, Vijayasena, was a devotee of Śiva. He assumed the titles of Parama-Māheśvara and Aśvīnīshabha-Sāṅkara, and built a Śiva temple. His son and successor, Ballalasena, was also an ardent follower of Śaivism. But Lakshmanaspasena, who succeeded his father Bhallāla, became a convert to Viṣṇuvaisnavism.

Govindachandra, the Gahadavāla king of Banaras and Kanauj, was a Parama-Māheśvara. But he practised religious tolerance and patronised the Baudhāyas. On the obverse of his gold and copper coins are found the figures of a trisūla (trident).

The founder of the Chaulukya dynasty, Mūlaraja I, was a worshipper of Śiva. Among his successors, we find Jayasimha Siddharāja, who was a staunch Śaiva, though he patronised Jains like Hemachandra, and Kumārapāla who visited Somapāla frequently, and included in his inscriptions invocations to Śiva, even after he became a convert to Jainism.

Bhoja I of the Paramāra dynasty of Ujjain and Dhāra was not only a follower, but also an exponent, of Śaivism. One of his works, the Tattvopakāśa, deals with Śaivism. His brother or cousin Udayaditya built the Nilakanṭhēśvara temple at Udayapur. The later Paramāras were also adherents of Śaivism. Ujjain was in those days a stronghold of the Śaivas, in spite of the fact that Jainism was then in a flourishing condition in Western India.

The Kalachuris of Tripūrī, with a few exceptions, were Śaivas. So also were the Chandellas of Bundelkhand. Kiritvarma of the Chandella dynasty patronised Kṛishṇa-miśra, who wrote the Prabhodha-chandrodaya, and probably also built a Śiva temple at Mahēbā.

The Western Chālukyas, whose capital was Kalyāṇa, were of Śaiva persuasion. Someśvara I (A.D. 1043-1068) was an ardent Śaiva. During the reign of his son Someśvara II (A.D. 1068-1076), Śaivism made rapid progress. Vikramādiṭya VI (A.D. 1076-1126), who succeeded his brother after deposing him, was probably a Jain.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

at first; but he became a staunch Śaiva in later life. About A.D. 1156 Bijjala, claiming kinship with the Kalachuris, usurped the throne. It was during his reign that there was a revival of Vīraśaivism under the great leadership of Basava. We shall give an account of this system of Śaivism in the next section.

The Eastern Chālukyas, the Eastern Gaṅgas, and the Kākatiyas were Śaivas. They were profoundly influenced by the Vīraśaiva revival. Prataparudra I (A.D. 1162-1185), who founded Warangal, was the patron of Somānatha, a well-known Vīraśaiva writer, who was proficient in Sanskrit, Telugu and Kanna. Under the aegis of the Hoysalas of Dvārasamudra flourished several Vīraśaiva scholars. Harāvara and Rāghavānka, Devakavi and Somarāja were among the men of letters of first rank who popularised Vīraśaivism.

From many inscriptions of Mysore we learn that Śaivism became in that part of India a very popular faith from the twelfth century onwards. Even earlier, the Lakulīśa and Kālāmukha forms of Śaivism seem to have been in vogue. In an inscription, dated A.D. 1078, one ascetic is described as an ornament to the Lakula school, and another is referred to as ‘a hand of Lakula’. Another inscription, dated A.D. 1103, speaks of Someśvara Sūri’s contribution to the Lakula doctrine. A third inscription, dated A.D. 1177, calls certain ascetics upholders of the Lakulāgama-samaya. There are also other epigraphic records of grants made to scholars of the Śaiva schools. In some of them are to be found the names of great Śivāchāryas.

The Chola kings were great patrons of Śaivism. Virarājaendra I (A.D. 1063-1070) made an offering of a ruby to Śri Nāṭarāja of Chidāmbaram. In A.D. 1128 Vikrama Chola gave large donations to the Chidambaram temple. Similar benefactions were made by his successor Kulottunga II (A.D. 1133-1150). Kop-Perujeja (A.D. 1229-78), who started his career as a loyal feudatory of Rājarāja III and later declared his independence, was also an ardent devotee of god Nāṭarāja. The eastern gopura of the Chidambaram temple was built by him. The Pāṇḍya kings, like the Cholas, continued to follow Śaivism. Jatāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I (A.D. 1251-c. 1268) gave expression to his devotion to Śri Nāṭarāja by covering with gold the roof of the temple at Chidambaram.

One of the important features of this age in South India was the rising rivalry between Śaivism and Vaishnavism. An inscription of the Tanjore District, dated A.D. 1160, makes mention of a Mahāsabha’s resolution prohibiting the association of Saivas with Vaishnavas. But generally the kings adopted an attitude of tolera-
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

tion. Rājarāja I, for instance, was well disposed towards the Vaishnavas, though he was himself a Śaiva; and his sister Kun-
dāva built temples for Śiva and Vishnu at Dadapuram in South Arcot District.

The principal faiths of the day, Śaivism, Vaishnavism and Jainism, flourished at Kāñchi. The Kālāmukhas had great influ­
ence in the capital city. There were, besides, the Kāpālikas and the Pāśupatas also. Temples and mathas became important all
over the country. The ruling princes made rich endowments to them and saw to it that their influence with the people grew.

II. VIRAŚAIVISM

Viraśaivism or Liṅgāyatism traces its origin to the five great religious teachers, Reṇuка, Dāruka, Ghaṇṭākāraṇa, Dhenukāraṇa, and Viśvakāraṇa who, according to tradition, were the earthly manifesta­
tions of the five aspects of Para-Śiva, viz. Sadyojāta, Viṣṇudeva, Aghora, Tatpurusha and Isāna. These five teachers are said to have
incarnated in the Kali-yuga as Revaṇaśiiddha, Marulāsīddha, Ekorāma, Paṇḍitārdhyā and Viśvārdhyā, and expounded anew the ancient
system of Liṅga-yat. They are referred to as the Paścāchāhāryas, and
an account of their incarnation is given in the Śrūyambhūva Agama. They are said to have established five mathas in the different parts
of India—Kedāra in the Himalayas, Ujjayini in the South, Śrīśai­lam in the East, Rambhāpurī in the West, and Banaras in the North. These institutions were charged by them with the mission of spread­
ing the Liṅga-yat faith and of safeguarding the interests of, and giving a lead to, the Liṅga-yats.

The names of three of the five Āchāryas, viz. Viśvārdhyā, Paṇḍitārdhyā and Ekorāma, are mentioned in the beginning of the Basava Purāṇa; and they are spoken of as old teachers of Viraśaiv­
ism. We learn from an inscription at Ablur that one Ekānta Rāmayya, an ardent worshipper of Śiva, defeated the Jains by per­
forming a miracle. He is said to have laid a wager that he would cut off his own head, and that it would be restored seven days later
by the grace of Śiva. King Bijjala, to whom we have already
referred, seems to have received news of this miracle; and he summoned the Śivāchāhārya to his court where the miracle was
repeated. According to the Basava Purāṇa, Basava himself was present at the court when the miracle was repeated. But beyond Rāmayya’s yogic powers, of which there is a record both in the in­
scription and the Purāṇa, nothing is known either of the teacher or
of his teachings.

445
The greatest name, however, in the history of Virasaivism is that of Basava, who, though not the founder of the faith, was mainly responsible for making it popular in the Kannada country. According to the traditional account, Basava was born at Bagévádi in the Bijápur District as the son of Mādirāja and Mādalāmbike. He spent his early days at Kappadi, at the junction of the Malaprabhā and Kṛishṇā, where a shrine stands, dedicated to Saṅga-meśvara, “Lord of the Confluence.” Here Basava is said to have received a divine call to work for the revival of Virasaivism. He found a great opportunity to fulfil his mission when he was appointed prime minister of Bījāla (A.D. 1156-1168) in succession to his own maternal uncle who had filled that post till his death. Basava’s influence in the realm increased when the king married his sister, Pādmāvati. In concert with Channabasava, the son of another sister of his, he pursued a vigorous policy of spreading the Viraśaiva doctrine through the priests of the faith called Jāngamas. The other officers at the court carried tales about Basava to the king, and accused him of embezzlement. Basava fled and, with the help of his numerous followers who accompanied him, defeated the king, who was compelled to reinstate him in his former high office. True reconciliation, however, there could not be, and we possess different accounts of what followed.

The Lingāyat account is that Basava directed one of his disciples to slay the king when he came to know of the latter’s design to put out the eyes of two Lingāyat devotees, and fled to Saṅga-meśvara where he was “absorbed into the Liṅga”. The Jain version is that when the king was camping on the bank of the Bhīmā river after a military expedition, Basava sent him a poisoned fruit, and then fled to Ulavi, at the foot of the Western Ghats, where he threw himself into a well to escape capture by the king’s son.

After Basava, his nephew Channabasava, became the leader; and he was helped in his mission by a band of able apostles. The Viraśaiva movement gradually gained strength, and spread to the Andhra country and also further south. A number of mystic bards arose, who expounded the doctrine in a popular and catching manner. Their writings are known by the collective name Vachana-sāstra, to which a detailed reference has been made above. Even in the humblest of homes in the Kannada country the Vachanas are current coin. The pithy epigrams of the Vachana-writers have become proverbial in the popular language. The one burden of these writings is to call men back from their career of sin and make them turn to Śiva for refuge.
Virashaivism means the Saivism of the stalwarts or heroic Saivism. The name serves to distinguish the Virashaivas from the three other classes of Saivas, viz. the Samanya-, Misra-, and the Suddha-Saivas. The first two of these classes worship Siva and also Vishnu, while the Suddha- and Vira-Saivas worship Siva alone. The Linga they wear on their person distinguishes the Virashaivas from the SuddhaSaivas. Hence the name ‘Lingayats’ is also applied to them, and the cult itself is called Lingayata.

Virashaivism is generally described as a phase of the Agamanta, from the fact that Saiva Agamas constitute the basic authority of this, as of other forms of Saivism. But the Agamas themselves are regarded as texts expounding the Vedic religion. Reverence is paid by the Virashaivas to the sixty-three Tamil saints also, and their writings are accepted as divinely inspired. These saints are referred to as paratmanas in contrast to the later mediaeval saints who are called nataana-paratmanas. Seven hundred and seventy of these later mystics are enumerated, and Basava and his principal disciples are included among these. The sayings of the saints, besides the Vedas, Agamas and Puranas, are accepted by the Virashaivas as their authorities in religion and philosophy. The other pramahas admitted by them are perception (pratyaksha) and inference (anumana).

The Virashaiva philosophy is called Shaktiviishthadvaita—a term which means the non-duality of God (viz. Para-Siva) as qualified by Power (or Sakti). When expanded, the meaning of the expression would be: “There is no duality between the soul and the Lord, each qualified by Sakti.” According to this system, therefore, God and soul are in an inseparable union through the inalienable power called Sakti. The individual soul is neither absolutely identical with, nor entirely different from, God. It is a part of which God is the whole; it is the body of which God is the Soul.

As in the other systems of Saivism, so in Virashaivism, Para-Siva is the supreme reality, the one Absolute without a second. He is of the nature of existence (sat), intelligence (chit) and bliss (ananda). He is all-powerful, omniscient, most glorious, and endowed with all auspicious qualities. The universe of souls and matter is but a part of him, a projection of His will. The manifestation of the universe, however, does not affect Him in any way. He himself does not undergo any change or mutilation. His greatness is such that in spite of being the ultimate cause (parama karya) of the world, He does not suffer any change or diminution. As in Kashmir Saivism, so in Virashaivism, Para-Siva is held to be both the material and the instrumental cause of the universe. He is immanent as well as transcendent. From Him all beings spring
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

into existence; in Him they live; and unto Him they return at the
end. The Kaivalya Śrutī says: “Without beginning, middle or end,
He is the one all-pervading reality, of the nature of intelligence and
bliss, without form and wonderful. United with Umā (His consort),
the Paramēśvara is the lord with three eyes and a blue-throat, and
is quiescent”.

Śakti is the Power which eternally resides in Parama-Siva as
His inseparable attribute. It is the ultimate creative principle,
mālā-prakṛti or māyā, which evolves itself into the phenomenal
universe. The term māyā in Vīraśaivism is not to be understood in
the sense of the principle of illusion in Advaita-Vedanta. The
Siddhāntāgama interprets the word to mean “that which naturally
attains to and eternally resides in the supreme Brahman.” As heat
is to fire and light to sun, Śakti is to Śiva, inseparably united with
Him as His attribute. It is through His Śakti that Śiva becomes the
cause of the universe. Śiva lends His own nature to Śakti; and in
its discriminative or differentiating aspect (vimārṣikhyā), it becomes
the agent of world-manifestation. Out of Śakti come all beings that
constitute the universe. This is called creation or srishti. And in
pralaya, all return to Śakti and remain therein in a seedal form.

The individual soul or jīva is a part (aṅga) of Śiva; and it
imagines itself to be different from Him on account of ignorance
(avidyā). The soul is identical with Śiva in the sense that it pro-
ceeds from Śiva, partakes of His essence, and finds ultimate rest
in Him. Having no independent existence, it finally becomes one
with Him, on the removal of avidyā. It is also distinct from Śiva
in the sense that, though sharing in His essence, it does not possess
the attributes of omniscience, omnipotence, etc. Its powers of know-
ledge and action are limited and imperfect. It is a victim of impu-
rities such as karma and māyā, and is consequently a creature of
samsāra. The Upanishadic simile of sparks and fire is employed by
the Vīraśaiva philosophers to explain the relation of the soul to
God. And since both difference and identity are said to govern the
relation, the Vīraśaiva philosophy is a doctrine of bhedabheda (dif-
ference cum non-difference).

The final goal of the soul is conceived in the Vīraśaiva system
as aikya or unity with Para-Śiva, the supreme reality. The soul in
union with Śiva enjoys unexcellable bliss. This final state of experi-
ence is technically called liṅgāṇa-sāmarasya, i.e. identity in essence
between Liṅga (Śiva) and aṅga (soul).

Para-Śiva Brahman, which is the supreme reality, is known as
sthala in Vīraśaivism. The word sthala means place, position or
abode. Para-Śiva is the home or abode of all beings. He is the-
support of all things. In Him the universe exists (stha signifying sthāna or residence); and to Him it returns at the end (la signifying laya or dissolution). Out of His own will and by the agitation of His innate power (sakti), Para-Siva, the supreme Śthala, becomes divided into Linga and āgā. Liṅga is Śiva or Rudra, and is the object of worship or adoration. Āgā, which means part, is the individual soul, and is the worshipper or adorer. Sakti also gets divided into two parts—kalā and bhakti, the former resorting to Śiva and the latter to the individual soul. Kalā is responsible for the projection of the world from Śiva. Bhakti leads the soul from bondage to final release.

The three terms most often used in Vīraśaiva writings are Guru, Jangama and Liṅga. The Guru is the preceptor who imparts to the aspirant spiritual knowledge; the Jaṅgama is the realised soul; and the Liṅga is the Deity, Śiva.

As aids to progress in faith, Vīraśaivism teaches eight rules to be observed, which are called āshtīvāraṇā: (1) obedience to a guru; (2) worship of a liṅga; (3) reverence for the jaṅgama as for an incarnation of Śiva; (4) smearing of ashes (tribhūti) made of cow-dung; (5) wearing of a rosary of rudrāksha beads; (6) pādodaka, sipping the water in which the feet of a guru or jaṅgama have been bathed; (7) prasāda, offering food to a guru, liṅga, or jaṅgama, and partaking sacramentally of what is left; and (8) paśčātkārana, uttering the five syllabled formula namaḥ śivāya. At the dīkṣā ceremony these eight modes of piety are taught to every Liṅgāyat child.

We have already mentioned that the distinguishing mark of a Liṅgāyat is the wearing of a Liṅga on his body. This is called the Ishta-liṅga and is the object of Liṅgāyat worship. The Liṅgāyats do not concern themselves with the worship of Śiva in public temples. Some of the other peculiarities of the sect, which are in the nature of reforms, are the following: the dīkṣā ceremony which takes the place of upanayana is performed in the case of girls also, and the women, too, have to wear the Liṅga, like men. The widows are allowed to marry, and women are not considered to be polluted during their monthly periods. The Liṅgāyats dispense with the rite of offering oblations in fire; and instead of the Brahma-gīyātri they make use of the Śiva-gīyātri. The reformist zeal of the Liṅgāyat teachers and the spiritual fervour of the Vachana-writers have combined in making Vīraśaivism the most popular faith in the Kannāḍa country.

III. ŚAIVA-SIDDHANTA

Another school of Saivism which flourished in South India during the period under review, and which still claims as its followers a
large number of Tamils, is Saiva-siddhānta. An account of the lives and teachings of Tamil saints has been given above. The chief of these, Mānikkavāchākār, Appar, Sambandhar and Sundarar, are regarded as the four great teachers of the Saiva faith (saṃayāchāryas). They did not expound the Saiva philosophy in any systematic way. Their sole aim was to create a fervour in the hearts of the people and make them turn towards Śiva, relinquishing what they, the Siva-bhaktas, considered to be unsuitable forms of faith, viz. Jainism and Buddhism. The task of formulating the metaphysics of Saivism was left to the later teachers, called the Santānāchāryas, preceptors of the Saiva metaphysical doctrines. Reference has already been made above 138 to four of them who are reckoned as the most important. They are: Meykanna-deva, Arulnandi-śivachārya, Maṟai-jāna-sambandhar and Umāpati-śivachārya. For a knowledge of the Saiva-siddhānta metaphysics we must turn to the writings of these teachers.

Meykanna’s Siva-jñāna-bōdham, written in the first half of the thirteenth century A.D., is the basic text of the Saiva-siddhānta philosophy. Two of the works listed among the Siddhānta-śastras, viz. Tiruvundiyūr and Tirukkaḻippaciṇṭai, were composed by two authors, teacher and disciple according to tradition, bearing the same name ‘Uyyavanda-deva,’ who came before Meykanna. But these two works should be regarded as making the transition from the stotras of the Samayāchāryas to the śstras of the Santānāchāryas. It is the Siva-jñāna-bōdham that provides the Śtras of Saiva-siddhānta, stating in a nutshell, as it were, the leading doctrines of the system. There is a verse which says: “The Veda is the cow; its milk is the true Agama; the Tamil sung by the Four is the ghee extracted from it; and the virtue of the Tamil work, full of wisdom (bōdham) of Meykanna of the celebrated city of Vennai, is the fine taste of the ghee.”

The chief of Meykanna’s disciples was Arulnandi-śivachārya. The Siva-jñāna-śiddhiyar which he wrote is next in importance only to the Siva-jñāna-bōdham. As it gives an authoritative explanation of the bōdham, it is held in high esteem by the students of Saiva-siddhānta. Arulnandi wrote also another work called Irupāṉirupadu.

The other two Santānāchāryas, Maṟai-jāna-sambandhar and Umāpati-śivachārya, were related as master and disciple. The master is not known to have written any work. But the disciple amply compensated for this by contributing as many as eight treatises to the Siddhānta-śstras. His works are: Tiruvavarpayam, Pōṟṟippahroḷai, Vinā-veṅbā, Kodikkavi, Umai-nerivilakkan, Sāṅkalpa-nirākaraṇam, Neḻjuṟṉiṟṟuṉu, and Sivapraṇāṇam. Of these
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

the most important work is the last. In the Saṅkalpa-nirākaraṇam, Umāpati gives the date of its composition which works out to be A.D. 1313.

One other author, whose work Usnāsī-riṣākkam is included among the fourteen Siddhānta-sūtras, is Manavāchakam-kaṇḍandār. He was one of the disciples of Meykaṇḍa. His name signifies “one who has gone beyond thought and speech.”

We now proceed to give a short account of the Saiva-siddhānta system. The Saiva-siddhānta is a system of pluralistic realism, as it recognises the reality of the world and the ultimate plurality of the souls. From the fact that the siddhānta writers employ the analogies of body and soul, and of consonant and vowel, it may be shown that there is some identity of views on an important topic as between the Siddhānta and Viśiṣṭādvaita. But the Siddhāntin himself does not favour the characterisation of his system as Viśiṣṭādvaita. He claims that his view is the true Advaita. Meykaṇḍa uses the term ‘Advaita’ to refer to his own system. Tāyumānāvar describes Meykaṇḍa as one who saw the truth of pure Advaita. But in the interpretation of the term ‘Advaita’ the Siddhāntin differs from the Śaṅkara-Advaitin. What is denied by him by the negative expression ‘Advaita’ is not the existence of two, but the duality of two. He says: “They are not two”, and not “There are not two”. Advaita does not mean absence of difference (bheda-abhāva) but similarity (saṃbhāva). Introducing the metaphysics of the Siddhānta, Umāpati says in his Śiva-prakāśam: “We expound here the beauty of Saiva-siddhānta, the cream of the Vedānta, whose excellent merit consists in its exposition of the Advaita, postulating an inseparable relation like body and soul, eye and the sun, the soul and the eye, supported as it is by the Dharma of the highest authoritative books, and unlike the bheda and bhedabheda and abheda relations illustrated, respectively, by light and darkness, word and meaning, gold and ornament, set forth by other schools, and which is further supported by perfectly logical methods, and is light to the truth-seekers and darkness to others.”

The supreme Reality is Śiva, the Lord (pāti) of all beings. Though the human intellect cannot comprehend Śiva’s nature, an attempt is made to understand His greatness. Śiva is superior to the Trimūrtis, Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra. Even when He is identified with the Destroyer, His superiority to the other two may be easily seen. Brahmā and Viṣṇu are also affected in a way by pralaya. Only Śiva stands unaffected and exists eternally as the supreme Being. Eight qualities are attributed to Śiva: independence, purity, self-knowledge, omniscience, freedom from mala,
boundless benevolence, omnipotence, and bliss. The author of the Kural describes God as en-guattan (endowed with eight qualities). But there is no limit to the Lord's greatness. The most comprehensive terms that we can apply to Siva are Sat and Chit. As Sat, God is the plenitude of being and is incomprehensible. As Chit or intelligence, we can know Him. Sat and Chit are like the sun and its light. From these characteristics, all the other attributes of God may be derived. It is wrong to think of God as attributeless. What is void of qualities would be a mere blank, a night of nothingness. When scriptures speak of Brahman as nirguna, what they mean is that God is above the gunas of Prakriti, sativa, rajas and tamas.

Siva is immanent in the universe and transcendent as well. The conception of Ashta-mārti brings out the aspect of immanence. Māṇikkaṉa轫
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

is satya-saṅkalpa and ēpta-kāma; His resolves are all true, and desires eternally accomplished. He causes the world to evolve, in order that the souls may be given opportunities for the riddance of their impurities. Of the five functions of Śiva, tirodāna, srīśṭi, sthiti, saṅhāra, and anugraha, the first four have the last as the goal. And even when evolution takes place Śiva remains unaffected. Just as the wind causes disturbances only to a part of the sea, evolution relates to a part of God's parigraha-tākti. The sun is impartial and the same to all things; but because of it, diverse phenomena occur; the lotus blooms, the burning glass emits heat, and water evaporates. We should understand the nature of Śiva in relation to the world in a similar way.

One of the distinctive features of the Siddhānta is that it does not countenance the doctrine of Avatāra. The author of the Śiva-jāāna-siddhiyar says that while the other gods are subject to birth and death, suffering and enjoyment, Śiva, the consort of Umā, is free from these. There is no incarnation for Śiva; for incarnation, with birth, death, and other changes which are incidental to it, is the result of karma and constitutes saṃsāra. This, however, does not mean that Śiva does not appear in bodily forms. He appears in the form in which He is worshipped by the devotee. Out of His great love for the souls, He comes as the guru to save them from saṃsāra. One of the favourite themes with the Śaiva saints and hymnalisists is the conception of God as Love and Grace. There is a well-known verse of Tirumūlar’s which says that only the ignorant distinguish between God (Śiva) and Love (anbu), and that wisdom lies in identifying the two.

Besides Śiva, the Siddhāntin accepts two other ontologically distinct and eternal entities, viz. māyā and āiva. Believing in the theory of sat-kārya as he does, the Siddhāntin argues that as the material cause of the non-intelligent world there must be admitted the non-intelligent māyā. Māyā is so called because the world is resolved (ma) into it, and is evolved (ya) from it. It is the primordial stuff of which the universe is made. It provides the souls with bodies (tānu), organs (karaṇa), worlds (bhuvana), and objects of enjoyment (bhogyā). Being non-intelligent, māyā cannot evolve of itself. It requires guidance from an intelligent being; and that being is Śiva. Śiva, however, acts on māyā, not directly, but through His Chit-tākti. Thus guided, māyā projects from itself the tattvas which constitute the universe.

Āiva or soul is by nature infinite, pervasive, omniscient, etc. But on account of its association with malas or bonds, it experiences itself as limited, finite and parviscient. The three malas that bind
the soul are āṇava, kārma and māya. (1) Āṇava is a connate impu-
rity, and occupies in the Saiva-siddhānta a position similar to that of avidyā in Advaita-Vedānta. Being connate to the soul, it is
beginningless. It is the cause of the soul's delusion and the conse-
quent transmigration. (2) The lot of the soul in any particular life
is the result of its past kārma. And in working out its past kārma
it acquires fresh kārma. This vicious circle could be broken only
through the grace of Siva. Even for adjusting deserts to deeds the
guidance of God is necessary, since kārma is a blind force, being
non-intelligent by nature. (3) The third mala which is māya we have
already taken note of.

The jīva is related to Śiva as body to soul. God pervades the
soul as the letter A pervades all the other letters. The relation
between Śiva and jīva is described by the Siddhāntin as advaita.
But ‘advaita’ to him means, not abheda or non-difference, but an-
nyatā, non-separateness. As a substance, the soul is different from
God; in nature it is similar to God. Even in moksha it does not lose
its personality; as an entity it is unique even then.

Souls are many, since each has a distinct body, mind, etc.
When one is born, all are not born; when one dies, all do not die;
and when one is released, all are not released. The scriptural
statement that the ‘self is one’ does not refer to the souls; it is a
declaration made about God who is one. Innumerable are the souls,
and they belong to various types ranging from the egg-born to the
placenta-born. The kind of birth that a soul takes is determined
by its previous kārma. The birth of a soul as a human being is
superior to birth in the other species of existence. But the birth
as a Saiva-siddhāntin is said to be the best, as one so born has the
best chance of release.

Charyā, kriyā, yoga and jñāna are the means the soul has to
adopt for gaining its freedom from mala. Following the path of
charyā, the soul thinks itself to be the servant of God, and engages
itself in such acts as cleansing God's temples, adorning the images
of God with garlands, praising God, serving God's devotees, etc.
When the soul reaches the stage of kriyā, it becomes more intimate
to God and considers itself to be His son. Its service to God becomes
closer. It invokes God's presence, and offers Him its love and
praise. The acts of service are still of an external type. But there
is a change in the inner attitude which enables the soul to march
nearer to God. The next stage which is yoga makes the soul regard
itself as a friend of God. Here the soul withdraws its senses from
their respective objects, and concentrates its mind on God. The
three paths we have now considered, charyā, kriyā and yoga, are
but preparatory stages which the soul has to go through before it is made fit to meet its Lord. The reward of charyā is sālokya, i.e. residence in the region of God; the fruit of kriyā is sāmīrya, i.e. attaining the nearness of God; and the result of yoga is sārūpya, i.e. gaining the form of God. None of these three acquisitions is to be regarded as the final goal. The supreme end is sāyujya or union with Śiva. This is to be attained only by jñāna or wisdom; for what binds the soul is ignorance, and the antidote for ignorance is wisdom. Jñāne-mārga, or san-mārga, as it is otherwise called, is the last stage in the journey to God. All that goes before it is of the nature of preparation for this final step.

The attainment of Śivatva, which is release, is not complete merger of the soul’s being in Śiva; for as an existent the soul is ever different from Śiva. Even after the release the soul continues to be a soul and does not become God. It can claim God’s nature as its own too; but it cannot claim that it is itself God. What happens in moksha is this: ceasing to experience through pāśa which it did in bondage, the soul now experiences through pāti (the Lord). It has shed its pāśa-jñāna and pāśu-jñāna; its knowledge now is pāti-jñāna. The expression pāti-jñāna does not mean the Lord’s knowledge but the soul’s knowledge through the Lord.

Moksha is a state of freedom from mala. There is no longer any need for the soul to return to empirical life. In moksha the soul finds rest, peace and bliss. It enjoys the bliss of Śiva, but not His five-fold function of creation, sustentation, destruction, concealment, and bestowal of grace. Thus the entitative difference between God and soul still continues and will never go. Like the combination of the two words ‘tiṣṭ’ and ‘talaś’ in the compound word ‘tagalś’ in moksha, there is a mystic union of soul with God. Moksha is not a state of bare identity; it is the experience of unity-in-duality. God is the giver of eternal bliss; and the soul is the recipient thereof. They are not two, but two-in-one. This is the Advaita of Śaiva-Siddhānta.

IV. ŚIVĀDVAITA

Śrīkaṇṭha, who was probably a contemporary of Rāmānuja, expounded a system of Śaivism which is called Śivādvaita. While resembling Kashmir Śaivism in certain respects and Śaiva-Siddhānta in certain others, Śrīkaṇṭha’s Śaivism has unique features of its own. Śrīkaṇṭha bases his exposition on the Vedānta-sūtra, and identifies Brahma with Para-Śiva who is superior to the trimūrtis, viz. Brahma, Viṣṇu and Rudra. Because Śrīkaṇṭha explains the relation between the world of souls and matter on the one hand, and God on the other,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

on the analogy of the relation between body and soul, his system has been described as Siva-viśista-dvaita. Śrikaṇṭha himself calls his system so. But unlike Rāmānuja Śrikaṇṭha does not criticise Śaṅkara's Advaita. On the contrary, there are indications in his writings of his leaning towards non-dualism. A careful reading of Śrikaṇṭha's bhaṣya will convince one that this philosopher occupies a position midway between Śaṅkara and Rāmānuja. While theism is the pronounced doctrine he teaches, he leaves the door open for passing beyond to the higher truth, viz. Absolutism.

God, according to Śrikaṇṭha, is the supreme Lord who exercises the five-fold function of the creation, preservation and destruction of the world, and of concealment and grace in respect of the soul (sṛṣṭi, sthiti, saṁbhāra, tirobhāra and anugraha). The purpose of creation is to redeem the soul. Since impurity is innate in the soul, and it could be got rid of only through action, the soul has to pass through cycles of births and deaths. For this purpose the Lord conceals the soul's eternal perfection. And when by successive performance of action the soul has become pure and is fit for release, the Lord bestows grace on it in consequence whereof it realises its own eternal nature, which is in essence the nature of God. Thus tirobhāra and anugraha are the two ends in the process of perfecting the soul, and the creation, preservation and destruction of the world are the intervening links in this chain.

Brahman is the material as well as the operative cause of the world. As the material cause, He is the soul of the universe. As the operative cause, He is higher than the universe. He is both viśvākīra and viśvadhika (immanent and transcendent).

Brahman effects the manifestation of the world through His Śakti or Power. It is by virtue of His Śakti that Brahman is immanent in His creation and yet transcendent. The ultimate Reality is not a bare identity; it is a unity-in-duality, an identity-in-difference. Parā-Śakti is the form of the Lord. She figures as His wisdom, strength, and activity. The Lord's will, knowledge, and action are but modes of His Śakti. Through his Ichchhā-Śakti, the Lord desired "May I become many"; by Jñāna-Śakti He considered the means and instruments necessary; with Kriyā-Śakti He created the universe which is like a picture painted on the wall of Ichchhā-Śakti.

Śrikaṇṭha believes in sat-kārṇya-vāda and maintains that the universe is non-different from Brahman just as the pot is non-different from the clay of which it is made. And yet Brahman is not completely one with the universe, for He is intelligent, while the universe is for the most part non-intelligent. The relation between
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

Brahman and the world is to be explained on the analogy of the soul-body relation. The whole world, consisting of intelligent beings and non-intelligent things, is the body of Isvara. Ignorance, change, etc., affect this body, while qualities like permanence, omniscience, etc., belong to the Self.

Srikantha identifies Brahman with Siva. He sees in the Vedanta-sutra "a doctrine of the Supreme Being as Siva, the auspicious one, the Being whose throat shows for all time the mark of His grace to His creatures, the consort of Umā who is the Supreme Light of Intelligence and Bliss, the three-eyed cause of the destruction and subsequent re-creation of the Universe." Srikantha shows how the eight names of Siva, viz. Bhava, Sarva, Rudra, Isāna, Paśupati, Ugra, Bhima and Mahādeva, are applicable to Brahma as defined by the janma-diś-sūtra. Among the several Upanishadic texts that the teacher quotes is the one from the Śvetāsvatara which declares that men can indeed attain release without knowing Siva, when they can roll up the skies like a piece of hide.

Release is attained through realisation of one's own essential nature. But this has to wait till karma fructifies and is fully experienced through enjoyment or suffering. The Lord is impartial and wills the release of all. But only those whose karma is ripened are released, even as on the rising of the sun only those lotus buds that are ready bloom.

Contemplation of the Lord is the means to release. The soul's saṃsāra is due to its beginningless finitude and dependence. But this miserable state can be terminated, for it is not of the essence of the jīva. The jīva should rise above its limitations by meditating on the glory of Siva. According to the tattvātmiya one becomes what one meditates on. By meditating constantly on Brahman, the devotee acquires his distinctive characteristics (asaṃbhāra-guṇa-guṇa). Occasional acts of meditation will not do. Only when practised uninterruptedly and with concentration, meditation will lead to Brahma-sūkshmiśūkṣa. Meditation should not be given up at any time; it must continue every day until death. The Lord should be contemplated as identical with the self, not as different therefrom. Otherwise, the soul will not be released from its bondage (paśubhāda). To go beyond the limitations one must identify oneself with the unlimited.

The enlightened one attains final release from good and evil deeds, "not at death, but only on crossing the Virajā, the river that constitutes the boundary of Vishnu-loka, beyond which lies the abode of Siva, the region of final liberation and the full attainment of self-hood." Till that stage is reached there is saṃsāra. The en-
lightened soul departs at death on the path of the gods, sheds all
the residue of its impurities at the Virājā, crosses the river, and
attains final release. Speaking of the devotees of the Non-related
(sīravāya-upāsakas), Śrīkanṭha says that there is no passing for
them along the path.

The soul which has attained release through the intuition of
Brahman and has become equal to Brahman, enjoys supreme bliss
before which the joys of the world pale into insignificance. The
world is seen now, in its proper context, as a part of the Lord.
Negatively, release is freedom from paśutea (bondage); positively,
it is the attainment of bliss (sīrātva). The self's real nature is
made manifest in release. It regains self-luminosity and acquires
the auspicious qualities characteristic of Śiva. The five-fold func-
tions of creation, etc., however, continue to be exercised by the
Lord alone. The similarity of the released soul to Brahman is only
in respect of wisdom and enjoyment. Is it not enough that the
soul has been redeemed from samsara, and that it no longer returns
to the world of tears and sorrow?

V. KĀPĀLA AND KĀLĀMUKHA SECTS

Passing reference has been made above to the great influence
of the Kāpālikas. These, along with the Kālāmukhas, represent
two extremely horrid and repulsive forms of Saivism.

The Kāpālas and Kālāmukhas are two distinct sects, though they
were often confused with one another. According to Rāmānuja, the
Kāpālikas (members of Kāpāla sect) maintained that a man, who was
advanced in their doctrine, could attain the highest bliss by concen-
trating his mind on the soul seated on the female organ. They wor-
shed Bhairava as the great God and attributed great virtues and
occult powers to drinking wine and eating disgusting substances as
food. They performed human sacrifices, and believed that by the
practice of Yoga they could achieve miraculous powers of speedy
movement. The Kālāmukhas held that happiness in this world and
salvation in the next could be attained by such practices as (1) eating
food in a human skull; (2) besmearing the body with the ashes of the
dead and also eating those ashes; (3) worshipping the God as seat-
ed in a pot of wine; and (4) holding a club. Men of other castes
could become Brāhmaṇas by performance of certain rites, and one
who undertook the vow of a Kāpāla became a holy saint.

The religious devotion of these outlandish sects was reserved for
the horrid God Bhairava with his wife Chaṇḍikā, wearing a garland
of human skulls, and requiring human sacrifices and offering of wine
for his propitiation. It is unnecessary to give any further details about
the horrible, almost demoniacal, practices of these sects, which form a "ghastly picture of the wild aberrations of the human intellect and spirit."141 They must have been in vogue from fairly early times and their origin may be traced to the terrible form and conception of Rudra. What is, however, significant is their popularity, side by side with the highly devotional and philosophical aspects of Saivism.

It would be wrong to think that these sects were quite insignificant. According to tradition even the great Śaṅkaraśāhraya had to enter into a keen contest with them. Centuries later, Rāmānuja, Anandagiri and others took note of them, and their beliefs and practices find a place in the Śiva Purāṇa and other sacred books of the Śaivas. They also figure in literature of fiction and we get a picture of them in the Mālatimādhava of Bhavabhūti. Śrīśāla is referred to as the chief seat of the Kāpālikas in this drama. A female member of this sect, Kāpālakunḍalā by name and wearing a garland of human skulls, carries away, at dead of night, the heroine Mālatī to the cemetery where her preceptor Aghorahanta was to sacrifice her before the image of Kālā-Chāmūṇḍā.

There can be hardly any doubt that such extreme sects of Saivism reflect the same human tendency and mentality as we find in some revolting Tāṇtrik rites mentioned above, and that in some form or other they have continued to exercise bewitching influence over certain sections of the people.

F. GENERAL DEVELOPMENT OF PHILOSOPHY

I. IMPACT OF OTHER CIVILIZATIONS—THE THEISTIC URGE

Reference has been made above142 to the early Christian and Muslim settlements in India. To what extent and in what way, if at all, these extremely monotheistic civilizations affected the thought of the country, we have not materials enough to judge.143 But we find that during the period under review there was a theistic urge in the philosophy of the land. This finds powerful expression in many Vedāntic writers who came after Śaṅkara.

Śaṅkara's efforts had earned a prestige for the Vedānta which no other philosophy enjoyed at the time, and re-introduced in the minds of men a reverence for the Vedas from which the Vedānta professed to spring. Śaṅkara's Brahma was, however, an impersonal being, who could not evoke any devotional emotion, and prayers to whom were meaningless. But man in sorrow and suffering required a solace. He looked for a god who could show mercy to a sinner and secure safety for him in times of need. Jainism and Buddhism
had killed such a god while Jaimini’s Mīmāṃsā and Kapila’s Sāṅkhyā did no better. Nīyāya-Vaiśeṣika’s god was more a creator than anything else. A better god was yet to come. Man’s yearning spirit, therefore, turned to the Vedas and the higher philosophy that sprang from their womb. We thus find thinkers and writers with a theistic bent of mind attempting to re-interpret the Vedaṇṭa.

II. RAMĀNUJA (eleventh-twelfth century A.D.)

One such great writer was Rāmānuja, to whom reference has been made above. The line of thought that he followed did not appear in him for the first time. He was preceded by others in this way of thinking. But he surpassed them in clarity and vigour of thought and urgency of appeal. So he eclipsed his predecessors and gave a lead to many others who followed him.

The first point of his attack was Śaṅkara’s theory of knowledge and his theory of Brahma as a substance without attribute. Commonsense says that when there is knowledge, there must be a knower who knows and an object that is known, and knowledge is the relation between the two. Śaṅkara demurred to this. Brahma was consciousness; but as there was no second to him, he could not be a knower in the ordinary sense with an object to be known. The world of things and finite selves was unreal, and so Brahma was without relation, and without any attribute. There was nothing else from which he could be differentiated, and no quality either by which he could be differentiated.

Rāmānuja challenged this entire position. Knowledge always implied a relation. The world of things and selves was real. It was not different from Brahma in essence, but differentiated from him by their individuality. Brahma was not a mere ‘is’ without any quality. The world is in him like a quality in a thing, like heat in fire or weight in a stone. The world is his expression, his body, so to say. Brahma is a personal being, having infinite qualities of goodness and purity. He is in fact the same as Viṣṇu of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa and the Vaishṇavas. Rāmānuja’s commentary on the Vedaṇṭa-sūtras is interspersed with profuse quotations from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa and other Vaishṇava writings. His conclusions are based on these quite as much as on the sūtras of Vedaṇṭa as interpreted by him.

There was another important point on which Rāmānuja differed from Śaṅkara. According to Rāmānuja, religious performances (karma), as explained and advocated by the Fūrva Mīmāṃsā, were a necessary preliminary to and a preparation for the study and
practice of the Vedānta. Further, knowledge alone was not enough to save a soul. It was to be followed by devotion to God (bhakti) which could lead man to his destination.

III. OTHER VAISHNAVA COMMENTATORS OF VEDANTA

(i) Nimbārka (twelfth century A.D.)

Rāmānuja's philosophy has been called 'qualified monism'. It was so called because, according to it, though the ultimate reality was one, it possessed qualities and was thus qualified. The world and finite souls were in Brahma like qualities inhering in a thing, like light in the sun. Rāmānuja was followed in the theistic line of thinking by several powerful Vaishnavas. Next in time and rank to him was Nimbārka, a Telugu Brāhmaṇa, whose philosophy has been given the name of ‘dualism-monism’. Like Sankara and Rāmānuja, he, too, believed that the ultimate reality was one and it was Brahma. But unlike them, he thought that the world and finite selves were real, too; and they were distinct from Brahma. There were thus two realities—Brahma and the other than Brahma. So far he was a dualist. But these two reals were at bottom and in essence one; for Brahma was the essence of all. So far he was a monist. And the relation between Brahma and the other than Brahma was that of a whole with its parts. A part has no reality apart from the whole of which it is a part, but it is not identical with the whole. Again, the whole is not real, away from the parts. They have a common existence, a common essence, and are yet distinguishable from each other. Between Brahma and the world of things and selves, the relation is the same. It is a case of identity in difference. But what is important in the argumentation is that this Brahma was identical with Viṣṇu; he was a god and a person, who could be an object of devotion and love, to whom prayers could be addressed and who could show mercy and compassion when these were needed.

(ii) Madhva (thirteenth century A.D.)

Another Vaishnava theist who wrote on the Vedānta was Madhva. His philosophy was pure dualism. There were two categories of reality, according to him; Brahma and that which was other than Brahma. This second category included the world of plurality of things and the plurality of finite individual souls. The two categories were totally different from each other, have been so from eternity, and will continue to be so. Things are different from one another; so are the finite souls from one another and from things and Brahma. The knowledge of these differences is the
way to escape from the bondage of life. The talk of one reality, therefore, is meaningless according to Madhva. But the most important of his conclusions is that, as in other Vaishnava writers, the Brahma of Vedanta is not an impersonal being but is only another name for Hari or Vishnu. He is the one object of worship and devotion.

(iii) Vallabha

With Madhva and his school, the reaction against Saṅkara’s monism seems to be complete. Monism led to qualified monism; this was followed by a theory of monism in dualism; then came pure dualism. But a reaction to this reaction set in, and the wheel went full circle in Vallabha. Vallabha’s philosophy was Saṅkara’s monism minus the doctrine of illusion (or māyā). The world and the finite souls were all real. They were not an illusion. But they were not different from Brahma either. All things are Brahma. There is absolute identity among them. In Vallabha we have an identification of Brahma, not with Vishnu as such, but with his incarnation, Kyṛṣṇa of Gokula. This is an advance towards later Vaishnavism. Vallabha is thus Saṅkara revived with a little popular crudeness and without Saṅkara’s argumentative subtlety.

But Vallabha is usually assigned to the end of the fourteenth or beginning of the fifteenth century A.D. In speaking of him here, before A.D. 1300, we are thus guilty of a slight anachronism. We mention him just to show how the movement of thesis, anti-thesis and synthesis was in full swing in Vedanta circles; how one proposition powerfully advocated led to a counter-proposition, and the conflict of these two to a third.

We may add that this movement of theism was not confined to the centuries in which the above writers appeared, nor to the provinces to which they belonged. The influence of Nimbārka and Madhva, specially of Madhva, for instance, travelled beyond their time and place, and in the sixteenth century A.D. started the famous Chaitanya movement in Bengal. Under Chaitanya’s influence, a new philosophical school arose headed by Jīva Gauvāmī, and another elaborate exposition of Vedānta was attempted by Baladeva, just to adapt it to the requirements of the new religious cult.

IV. NON-VAISHNAVAVA VEDANTISTS

It was not the worshippers of Vishnu alone who fell back upon the Vedānta for a philosophical sanction of their religious cult. Followers of other religions also did the same. So far as pure philosophy is concerned, the contributions of these writers were
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

not of very great importance. Their chief concern was to suggest an identification of Brahma of Vedanta with the god of their worship. This is not done by any irrefutable logic, but only by citing the various names of the deity along with that of Brahma and treating them as a string of synonyms. Thus Śrīkanṭha, a Śaiva commentator of the Vedānta-sūtras, under the very first sūtra, uses several names of Śiva as implying the same thing as the word ‘Brahma’ used in the sūtra. All this only shows the great prestige which the Vedas and the Vedānta, the professed philosophy of the Vedas, had earned under the powerful advocacy of Śaṅkara.

One peculiarity of all these theistic interpreters of Vedānta is that they emphasise devotion to God (bhakti) as more important and as the true means of man’s salvation. Knowledge is, after all, an aid to the production of this spirit of devotion and self-surrender to God.

V. THE OTHER SYSTEMS

Among the orthodox systems, the Yoga treated man as a physico-physical composite, and by prescribing a series of physico-mental exercises, it sought to make man’s body and mind suitable for liberation; and on its way to that goal, man might acquire many extraordinary and supra-human powers. Instead of being a means to an end, these powers may become ends in themselves, and so the Yoga captivates the fancy of many men even now. Besides, the psychology of the Yoga, though not cast in a modern mould, has still a profundity of its own. But, in spite of all this, the Yoga soon degenerated into a study of postures and the dispositions of the limbs in these postures by which the body could be made hardy and disciplined; and also the practice of certain intellectual exercises by which occult powers were believed to be attainable. Whatever the value of these things may be—and admitting that they have great value—they were not philosophy. This form of Yoga is usually given the name of Haṭha-yoga to distinguish it from the higher and philosophical Yoga.

Śaṅkhyā, on the whole, produced very little literature as compared with the other systems. It continues to be studied even today. But it has not diversificated itself into schools like the Vedānta, and cannot claim even half the number of commentators as the Vedānta. During the period we are reviewing, no writer on Śaṅkhyā appears to have risen to fame. Except Viśiṣṭabhikṣhu who, in the sixteenth century A.D. or thereabout, attempted to give it a new orientation, it has had more or less an even tenor of life. Its conception of the eternal feminine (prakṛti) and eternal masculine (puruṣa) may have suggested metaphors to poets; and it might
The struggle for empire

also have been at the root of certain conceptions of the Tantras and other forms of religious rites or worship. Besides, its theory of guṇas (qualities) might have affected subsequent thought in general and medical science in particular. Charaka, one of the founders of medical science in India, appears to have used some of the concepts of Sāṅkhya; and others have also followed him. But it is difficult to say whether Charaka, who probably flourished in the first century A.D., borrowed from Sāṅkhya, or from a common fund of ideas on which Sāṅkhya also drew. The theory of guṇa, for instance, though elaborated and emphasised by the Sāṅkhya, is found in other spheres of thought also, philosophical as well as non-philosophical.

The Sāṅkhya conception of male and female principles may have influenced dualistic Vaishnavism, specially the cult of Krisna and Radha. We hear of such influence from some of the writers of the Bengal School of Vaishnavism. And the cult of Hara and Gauri—the concept of God as half masculine and half feminine, each half holding the other in eternal embrace—may also have received an impetus from Sāṅkhya. But this influence is rather vague, and no historical account of it is possible; one can only point out parallels. These, however, may also point to the existence of an earlier common stock of ideas, from which all borrowed.

Except in its theory of particularity or individuality (viśeṣha), the Vaiśeṣika did not differ much from the Nyāya. But it continued to maintain its separate, though rather subordinate, existence, right up to the seventeenth century A.D., when joint treatises on the two systems were written by scholars like Viśvanātha, Annambhaṭṭa and others. From that time onward the Vaiśeṣhika has been practically merged in the Nyāya system; and the two systems move like twin stars across the sky of Indian thought. Śivāditya is perhaps the only important writer on Vaiśeṣhika during the period under review.

We have, however, a different story to tell about the Nyāya. As an organ of debate it created a position for itself from which even the Vedānta could not dislodge it. In wrestling with Jain and Buddhist logic, it had gained strength. While its metaphysics or its theory of the world had been disposed of in the Vedānta-sūtras, its usefulness as a weapon of argument remained. And under the leadership of Gāṅgēśa in Mithilā, about the middle of the thirteenth century A.D., it started a new career as a ‘novum organum’—as a new logic (nāyika nyāya), which continued to flourish right up to the days of Chaitanya, about which time its centre of activity was shifted to Navadvīpa in Bengal. This new logic which was concerned more with the sources of knowledge (pramāṇas) than with metaphysics, has produced an extensive literature expressed in an unusually stiff
language. The weakest link in this chain of literature is that it argues and argues about many questions of epistemology, but gives us no stable metaphysical conclusions. For this reason, it has often been derided as a waste of man's brain-power, and discussing nothing better than whether the pot contains the oil or the oil the pot.

The Pūrva Mīmāṃsā also continued to hold a position of influence. This was due to the fact that it was more directly and more intimately connected with the Vedas than any other system. Its philosophical importance was not very great, except for a few conceptions, such as karma, which were common to other philosophies. With the gradual disappearance of Vedic sacrifices, the influence of Mīmāṃsā also began to decline. Its chief importance in subsequent times lay in the fact that it supplied the basic principles and rules of interpretation which were equally applicable to canonical as well as legal writings such as the Smṛitis. These rules have been utilised in expounding Hindu law even in British Courts of justice.

This system, like the Sāṇkhya and the Vaiśeṣika, continued to be studied through the centuries we are reviewing; but there was little progressive development in them to call for a historical narration.  

VI. LATER SYNCRETISM

Even those who quarrel among themselves unite in presence of a common enemy. Towards the end of the period we have traversed, we find a spirit of syncretism prevailing among the philosophies of the land. About and after A.D. 1000, India was receiving hard blows from the north-west. Islam came as an invader but remained to rule. Hinduism felt the difference and tried to close up its ranks as a measure of self-preservation. In philosophy this tendency is reflected in the attempt to syncretise all the warring systems of thought. If all roads in the Roman Empire led to Rome, did not all the orthodox philosophies have but one goal to achieve? They constituted a graded hierarchy and not battling enemies. Each of them was suited to man at a particular stage of spiritual and intellectual growth, and all together, step by step, led him to his final destination, viz. moksha or liberation. This view gradually asserted itself in the writings of Madhusūdana Sarasvati (in his Prasthāna-bheda) and others. Only the orthodox philosophies—those, that is to say, which owed allegiance to the Vedas—were thus regarded as parts of a larger whole. The heterodox philosophies had no place in this scheme. They only lead men astray and must, therefore, be eschewed.
Vijñānabhikshu, another famous author, possibly belonging to the sixteenth or seventeenth century A.D., made a similar attempt at syncretism. He wrote both on the Śāṅkhya as well as on the Vedānta, and tried to show that the two systems differed more in terminology than in essence. His contention was that the prakṛti of Śāṅkhya was the creative power of Brahma—an attribute of Brahma, and that the theory that Śāṅkhya denied god or a creative personal being, was a misunderstanding. When we remember the persistent attack that the Vedānta-sūtras make on the Sāṅkhya conception of unconscious prakṛti, Vijñānabhikshu’s attempt at reconciliation between the two systems must be regarded as an attempt to bring the poles together. Yet the attempt was made. The development of this spirit of reconciliation and syncretism, however, belongs to a later period.

The tone of pessimism that pervades the entire range of Indian philosophy has often been adversely commented upon by western critics. It cannot be denied that there is pessimism everywhere,—more in some, less in other systems. It was perhaps most acute in Buddhism, and may have spread from there to infect the other systems. But the Indian mind was not always pessimistic. In the Vedas, the gods appear in nature with humane feelings, and joy is not always absent. The early Greek mind looked upon the world as full of joy and laughter. The world was a poem and life was a joyful drama. To the Vedic mind also, a similar attitude is not unknown. But when we come to the period of philosophy, life has become as dull as a twice-told tale, and the world is anything but a glowing poem. It may be due to the political vicissitudes through which the country had passed or to other causes. Whatever the causes may have been, the fact was that life was considered a bondage, and philosophy, the means of escape.

Thus the keynote of Indian philosophy is a dominant desire of the individual to save his soul and to escape from the evils of life in this world. What is markedly absent is the desire ‘to take arms against a sea of troubles and by opposing end them,’ to make a better world here, to establish an ideal state and an ideal society, to banish disease and poverty from society, and to bring the amenities of life to every door,—in one word, to make this life livable and this world habitable. It is a limitation of Indian thought that it never paid equal attention to social and political problems, and had no social and political philosophy of a high order. This is accounted for by its presupposition that life is not worth living.
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

G. ISLAM

The Arab conquest of Sindh did not materially affect the religious outlook of either the Arabs themselves or the people with whom they came into contact, except, of course, those who were converted to the new faith. There was very little religious activity among the Muslims in India, as distinct and apart from that in the main Islamic centres in Arabia and other Muslim countries.

It was not till three centuries later, after the Ghaznavid conquest of the Punjab, that we find an important development among the Muslim community in India. This was the appearance of Sufi saints, the first of whom was Shaikh Ismail of Lahore. He was followed by Shaikh Ali bin Usman al-Hujwari, better known under his sobriquet of Data Ganj Bakhsh, who died in A.D. 1072 and whose tomb at Lahore is one of the most popular Muslim shrines in the Punjab. He was the author of several works, the best known of which is the Kashf al-Mahjub, and might be described as the founder of the Sufi cult in India which gained much popularity among the Muslim masses and has profoundly influenced their entire moral and religious outlook. His greatness was recognised by Khvaja Mu'in-ud-din of Ajmer, the greatest Sufi saint of India, who underwent a course of spiritual purification (chilla) at his tomb soon after his arrival in India. Another saint of the Ghaznavid period who enjoys great fame even today, and still has a large number of followers, known as Sultans, both among the Hindus and the Muslims, was Sayyid Ahmad Sultan Sakhi Sarwar, popularly known at Lakhi Data. He died at Shakhot, a place near Multan, in 577 A.H. (=A.D. 1181). His followers are scattered all over the Punjab and are specially numerous in the Jalandhar District. One can easily form a good idea of the firm hold which these two saints have retained through the long centuries over the popular mind, from the large number of devotional songs, extolling their spiritual merits, which the beggars and the wandering minstrels of the Punjab go about singing to the accompaniment of their crude stringed instruments.

As has just been mentioned above, the greatest of the Sufi saints, who founded a long line of spiritual descendants that has endured even up to the present time, was Khvaja Mu'in-ud-din, a disciple of the Persian saint Khvaja 'Usman Harwani of Chisht. He came to Lahore from Ghazni in 556 A.H. (=A.D. 1161), and having visited Multan and Delhi, finally settled down at Ajmer where he lies buried now, while his disciple Qutb-ud-din Bakhtyar Kaki, a native of Ush, took up his residence at Delhi. About the same time
another saint, Bahá-ú-dín Zakariyá, who was born in Multán and had met the famous mystic Shiháb-ú-dín Suhráwárdí during the course of his journeys to Bukhárá, Baghdád and Jerusalem, founded another branch of Súfí saints in his native town. The renowned Persian poet, Tájí, visited him at Multán and became his disciple, while his descendants, Shaikh Sadrá-ú-dín and Abu'l Fath Rúkhn-ú-dín, carried on the work of spiritual salvation after his demise in 661 A.H. (=A.D. 1263). His disciples became known by the surname of Suhráwárdí, as distinct from the Chishtís who were devoted to Khvélá Mu'in-ú-dín and his successors. It was one of his disciples, Makhdúm Láí Sháhbaž Qalandár, who carried his teachings to Síndh, and who, like another saint of that province, Maggar Pir, is revered even today by numerous Hindus who know him by the name of Rájá Bharátrí. Their tombs have become popular places of pilgrimage for both the communities. Another saint of this period in Síndh was Sayyid Jalál Bukhári who came to Uchch in 642 A.H. (=A.D. 1244), and one of whose grandsons acquired great celebrity under the sobriquet of Makhdúm-i-Jahaníyáhn Jahan Gashí.

Gujarat was another important centre of activity for the mystic saints,—Patan, Broach, Rander, Khambáyat, etc. each having some local saint or another, the best known of whom was Sayyid Muhammad Barahman of Patan. It was also noted for the missionaries of some schismatic sects, notably the Ismá'íliya. The Carmathians (Qaramítá), a particular branch of this sect, were, as a matter of fact, very active about this time, and remained so till a much later period. so that 'Álá-ú-dín Khaljí had to take stern measures to suppress them. Once during the reign of Sultáná Razíyyá they actually threatened Delhi itself, and were driven back with great difficulty. But, whereas the Carmathians, true to their old traditions, indulged in excesses of all kinds and often adopted a bellicose attitude towards the authorities, the Fátimid branch, with its centre in Yemen, was busy carrying on its propaganda silently and peacefully, and was successful in converting numerous local inhabitants to its own creed. When a split occurred in its ranks on the question of succession to the headship of the community, the followers of one of the two rival claimants moved their headquarters to India. Yet another branch, the Assassins, also ensconced themselves on the west coast of India and the north-west provinces. One of their agents, Shaikh Sadr-ú-dín, evolved a syncretic creed whereby Hindu gods of the triúmvirate,—Brahmá, Vishnu and Síva,—were not only recognised as prophets, but also identified with the Prophet of Islam, 'Ali, and Adam respectively—a clever device by which he could win over a large number of adherents among the Hindus. The Aghá Khán is the present head of the larger and more influential of the
two groups into which the followers of this creed became divided in later times\(^1\), and of which the adherents are now found, not only in India, but in some parts of Africa also, where the Indians have migrated in recent times.

Nor were the activities of the Muslim mystics and agents of the Bāṭinīya sects confined to the north. The Deccan and the southern provinces also provided a fruitful and favourable field. Among the well-known southern saints we may mention the names of Sayyid Mazhar Wali of Trichinopoly,\(^2\) Sayyid Ibrahim Shāhid, Bābā Fakhr-ud-din, Shaikh Muntakhab-ud-din,\(^3\) Zari-Zarbakhs, and Muhammad al-Husaini, known as Banda Nawāz Ghān Darāz of Gubarga, perhaps the greatest of them. In Bengal a pupil of Shaikh Qutb-ud-din Baktīyār Kākī, Shaikh Jalāl-ud-din Tabrīzī, acquired considerable celebrity. Thus by the time the Mamlūk Dynasty came to an end, Sufi monasteries were already scattered far and wide throughout the country, and there was a definite spiritual liaison between them, although there is no evidence to show that they worked on any co-ordinated basis. The Chishtiyya school, with its liberal and tolerant outlook, and its recognition of music as a lawful means for the attainment of spiritual ecstasy, was now supreme and counted the largest number of the common people among its adherents.

1. This point has been further elaborated in Chapter XVII. in the section 'Hindu-Muslim Relations'.
2. The Iranians substituted ‘h’ for ‘s’ (cf. Hapta-Hindu for Sapta-Sindhu) and used the form Hindu. The Greeks and Romans dropped the initial ‘h’ and obtained various forms, like India, from which is derived the modern European form ‘India’.
4. N. G. Majumdar, Inscriptions of Bengal, p. 35 (v. 30).
5. R. L. Mirra, Nepalese Buddhist Literature, p. 261.
10. Su. Vol. IV, p. 239.
11. It consists in the knowledge of the essencelessness of the world or of all that appear—the knowledge of the nature of things as pure void, or of the void-nature of the self or individual (pudgal) and the dharma, i.e., entities, or objects, or the elements that constitute the universe. Cf. Mahāvīra, July-August, 1942, p. 234.
13. For an elaborate discussion on Nirvāṇa, see B. C. Law, Concepts of Buddhism, pp. 76 ff.
15. Ibid., pp. 91-93.
17. This account of Tantrik Buddhism including Vajra-yāna and Kālacakra-yāna is mainly based on Dr. S. B. Dasgupta’s two valuable books, viz., Introduction to Tantric Buddhism and Obscure Religious Cults as Background of Bengali Literature, and also my History of Buddhism in Bengal (in Bengali).
The struggle for empire


21. See above, p. 28.

22. For the site of Vikramaśīhāra, see S. C. Vidyabhuṣaṇa, History of the Medieval School of Indian Logic, p. 151 and fn. 5; JBRS, XXXIV, 1948, pp. 83-86.


25. For Abhayakaragupta, see IC, III, pp. 86-89.


28. IC, XXI, pp. 97 ff.


30. Ibid., p. 231.

31. Ibid.


34. Vidyabhūṣaṇa, op. cit., p. 136.


40. For Abhayakaragupta, see IC, III, pp. 86-89.

41. For Vihāraṭhendra, see Vīchitrā (Bengali Journal) 1345 B.S., pp. 293-96; Bhāgavatī Brahmāhatha, pp. 180-86; IC, V, pp. 215-17; Phanindra Nath Bose, op. cit., pp. 145-150.


45. Cf. Ch. XX.


53. Ibid., III, p. 432.

54. Ibid., IV, pp. 390-92.


56. Ibid., II, p. 220; III, pp. 391, 394, 297, 302, 303, 304, 374, 413, 437, 447, 452, 453, 456, etc.

57. Ibid., III, p. 175.

58. Ibid., pp. 443, 452.


60. Ibid., p. 443.

61. Ibid., p. 301.

62. Ibid., p. 437.


65. Ibid., Preface, p. v.


67. HTB, Vol. II, pp. 1, 2, 4, 13, 14, 31, 45; etc.

479
RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

68. See p. 25.
70. JASB, N.S., IV, pp. 166-67.
71. JRAS, 1927, p. 694.
72. JASS, 1929, p. 139.
73. El., XVIII, pp. 129 ff.
74. JASB, 1929, p. 176; also cf. JPAS, XXI, pp. 193 ff. and THK, p. 399.
75. El., XI, p. 4.
77. Guide to Sarnath, pp. 28 and 36.
80. Ibid., III, p. 120; for his works see II, pp. 196, 217; also cf. AR, p. 309.
81. JASB, 1930, p. 139.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE


112. JASSI, 1895, p. 57.

113. e.g. Siddha Santagupta, Jogin Dinakara, Guru Gambhrijnmati, etc.

114. H. P. Sastri, Cat. of Palm-leaf and Selected Paper MSS. belonging to the Durbar Library, Nepal, II, pp. 51, 59, 78, etc.; also Cecil Bendall. Cat. of Sanskrit-Buddhist MSS. in the Cambridge University Library.


116. Ibid., II, p. 31; III, p. 287.

117. Ibid., III, p. 276.

118. Ibid., III, p. 95.


120. Ibid., II, pp. 121, 127; III, pp. 99, 116, 125, 249, 250, etc.

121. For Vanacarita’s works, see Ibid., II, pp. 13, 45, 77, 98, 121, 127; III. pp. 99, 112, 116, 121, 125, 163, 177, 238-239, 248-49, 250.

122. Ibid., III, p. 99; also see II, p. 45; III, p. 112.

123. Ibid., III, pp. 230-33.


125. See above, pp. 64, 66.

126. For a description of the temple, cf. Ch. XX.

127. IA, XI. 248.


129. MAR, 1911, p. 43.

130. Parreninaio Basti Ins. EC. V. 124, p. 83.


132. MAR, 1901, p. 198.

133. EC, VII, 116, p. 38.

134. MAR, 1935, p. 95; EC, IV, 26, p. 56.


136. For Hemachandra and his works, see above, pp. 361, 398, 318, 323, 326, 345.

137. Winternitz places him in the first half of the seventeenth century A.D., but others refer him to the twelfth century.

138. For the antiquity of Radha cult, cf. ABORI, XXXVI. 231-257.


140. The traditional date of Rámánuja’s birth is Saka 938 corresponding to A.D. 1016 or 1017 and that of his death, 120 years later, in A.D. 1137. R. G. Bhandarkar accepts the traditional date of his birth, but says nothing of the date of his death (V3 VII). K. A. N. Sastri accepts both the dates (History of South India, pp. 343-2). A life of 120 years is not, of course, impossible, but appears to be doubtful. As epigraphic evidence supports the traditional date of Rámánuja’s death, it has been suggested by some “that he must have been born some time about 1037 and died about 1137” (The Cultural Heritage of India, 1st Edition, Vol. II, p. 86).

141. See above, pp. 229, 242, 492, 504.

142. PP. 369 ff.

143. P. 305.

144. II, 25.

145. The account of these two sects is based on Bhandarkar, R. G.—Vaishnavism, Saivism and Minor Religious Sects, 196.

146. Ibid., 197.


148. Some scholars hold the view that the theism of South India, and even monism of Sankara, were due to a large extent to the teachings of Islam (Tara Chand, Indrease of Islam in Indian Culture). This extreme view is hardly support-
ed by the known facts of Muslim settlement in India, noted above (Vol. III. pp. 458-57).
144. Radhakrishnan, Indian Philosophy. Bhandarkar places the date of his birth at A.D. 1479.

145. Buddhism did not produce any noteworthy writer during this period. Jain philosophy has been discussed in connection with that religion.

146. Indian Philosophical Quarterly, October, 1929, and January, 1931.


148. Ibid., pp. 81 ff.

149. The Maghar Pir is known by the Hindu name of Lala Jas Raj. Another saint, Khoja Khizr is called Zinda Pir by the Hindus.

150. He was a contemporary of Sayyid Jalal-ud-din Surkhposh who died in 698 A.H. (= A.D. 1299).

151. This is clearly stated in one of the sacred books of the Khojas named Das Avatar.

152. The minor group still lingers in North Punjab and Chitral.


154. He died about 700 A.H. (= A.D. 1301).
CHAPTER XVII

SOCIAL CONDITION

1. SOCIAL DIVISIONS

The essential features of the Indian social system, as preserved in the Smṛiti tradition of the preceding centuries, are faithfully reflected in the commentaries and digests of this period, which deal with the rights and duties as well as the status of the four varṇas on the lines laid down in the Smṛitis.

We find, however, some novel views regarding the immunity of the Brāhmaṇa's person. Explaining the general law on this point Vijñāneśvara says that the Brāhmaṇa is not exempt from punishment, and dismisses the sweeping statement of Gantarna-Dharmaśāstra (namely, that the king is master of all with the exception of the Brāhmaṇas) as a mere eulogy. Quoting another text of Gautama (which requires the king to grant a sixfold immunity to the Brāhmaṇas), Vijñāneśvara observes that this is not applicable to any and every Brāhmaṇa, but only to a very learned Brāhmaṇa, as defined by the author immediately before. Further qualifying the above explanation, Haradatta explains that the sixfold immunity is to be granted by the king when the very learned Brāhmaṇa (as defined by the author) has committed an offence without premeditation. The above texts clearly enunciate the principle, so very honourable to our authors, that the Brāhmaṇa enjoys no complete immunity from punishment. In other passages our authors specifically define the limits within which corporal punishment is permissible for Brāhmaṇas. On the vexed question of immunity of a Brāhmaṇa desperado (ātāṭīy) our authors seek to reconcile two fundamental Smṛiti principles, namely, those of the Brāhmaṇa's complete exemption from the death penalty and the individual's right of self-defence. The general view is that one incurs no blame by killing a Brāhmaṇa who becomes an ātāṭīya, but this holds good only when it is impossible to save one's self by flight, by striking him with a stick or with weapons, and so forth, and not otherwise. Less consistent is the attitude of Smṛiti-chandrika, for while the author in one place includes killing Brāhmaṇas in righteous fight in the list of practices forbidden in the Kali Age, he elsewhere permits an ātāṭīya Brāhmaṇa to be killed with impunity in self-defence.

The high standard of life and conduct prescribed by the Smṛiti
law was not always followed in actual practice. The commentaries and digests contain references to unworthy Brāhmaṇas who not only failed to reach this standard, but were of low morals or neglected their ordinary duties and obligations. References to degraded Brāhmaṇas are also found in the contemporary lexicons. The commentaries and digests, following the authority of the Smritis, repeatedly place the degraded Brāhmaṇas under a social ban.

The description of Śūdra’s occupation and status in the commentaries and digests of this period follows the old Smriti lines. The views of our authors about the Śūdra’s religious, legal and social disabilities in general do not indicate any fresh development. It is, however, an index of the increased rigidity of caste differences that the saving clause allowing a Brāhmaṇa householder to take food from four types of Śūdras (namely, his slave, his cowherd, his family-friend, and his tenant-cultivator) is applied by our authors to times of distress or to times of great distress, or lastly is altogether disallowed as one of the forbidden practices in the Kali Age.

In the same list of forbidden practices is included the act of employing Śūdras for cooking food and so forth in the households of the Brāhmaṇas and the like. This increasingly narrow attitude towards Śūdras is seen at its worst in a few texts quoted or paraphrased by our authors, which brand them with the stigma of untouchability. One should, we read, purify himself by bathing with clothes on after touching a Śūdra, or a Śūdra of the inferior type. Again we are told that one should fast as a penance after touching a Śūdra.

As regards the group of mixed castes Yājñavalkya’s enumeration of those formed in the proper order (anuloma) by hypergamous unions of upper caste males with lower caste females, and those formed in the inverse order (pratiloma) as well as those of a miscellaneous character is paraphrased by the commentators. It is reproduced almost verbatim with slight additions in Śrīvyārthaśāstra, 13. We are, however, warned by Vījñāneśvara that the list is merely illustrative as the number of miscellaneous mixed castes is endless and incapable of enumeration. The longest list is given in Vaijñāyana which makes out a total of 64 jātis consisting of sons born to the four varṇas, the 12 anuloma and pratiloma sons and their 48 offshoots. There is complete unanimity about the relative status of these groups. The anuloma castes, we read, are twice-born and hence entitled to sacraments like investiture with the sacred thread, but the pratiloma castes are impure and as such ineligible for the duties of the twice-born castes.

A different enumeration of the mixed castes and statement of
their status occur in Brihadharma Purata. The list is said to comprise 36 jatis, but actually it comes up to 41. It consists of three grades distinguished as high (20 jatis), intermediate (12 jatis), and low (9 jatis). In contrast with the status assigned to the anuloma castes in the commentaries and digests, the Brihadharma Purata declares all the 36 castes to have the status of Sudras. The only difference is that while the first group is entitled to the services of Srotriya Brahmans as priests, the priests of the two other groups are degraded Brahmans and sink to the level of their ministrants.

It remains to consider the views of the commentaries and digests about the lowest castes (antyajas or antyayajatis) of whom the Chaungalas are the most important representatives. The antyayajatis, according to the enumeration of Vaijayanti, are seven in number, namely, washermen, leather-workers, Vaesas, Burulas, fishermen (Kaivarttas), Medas, and Bhillas. In this list the third, fourth, sixth and seventh names are evidently those of aboriginal tribes, while the rest are occupational groups of the lowest order. The distinctive feature of the status of the Chaungalas, according to the Smiti law of this as of the earlier period, was that they were placed under a rigorous ban of untouchability. Not only is their touch included in a list of acts requiring purification of the body, but according to the extreme views quoted or followed by these authors such penances are prescribed for their approach within a certain distance, for the sight of or conversing with them, for witnessing their shows, for crossing their shadows, and for touching them in the second, third or fourth degrees. It is to be noted that our authors in the same context quote or follow the extreme texts extending the ban of untouchability to a number of heretical sects. The list consists of Buddhists, Jains, materialists (lokayatikas), atheists (nastikas), followers of Kapila, Saivas and Saktas outside the Vedic pale (according to Smritiartarasastra), or Saktas of the left-hand sect (according to Apararika).

The historical records of this period, imperfect and fragmentary as they are, occasionally throw interesting light upon the ways of life of the Indian castes. Learned Brhamanas, who adhered for the most part to the strict discipline enjoined upon them by their scriptures, are referred to in the royal and other land-grants, as well as in the general literature. We have, however, a number of historical instances of individual Brhamanas and Brhamana families normally following the occupations of Kshatriyas. In so far as the Sudras are concerned there is no reason to doubt that they for the most part conformed to the rules and regulations laid down for them by the Brhamana canonists. On the other hand there are a
few instances, where Sudras, in the teeth of the canonical rule for­
bidding the lower var{}øgas to take up the functions of the higher ones, assumed the Kshatriya's occupations of ruling and fighting.23

The ruling families (afterwards called Räjputs) of Northern India, such as the Guhilaputras (Guhilots), Pratihäras (Gurjaras), Çhäpas and Çhähamänas, and those of the Deccan such as the Chälukyas, had entered the stage of history from the sixth and seventh centuries onwards.24 Other families like the Räshtraküjas, the Chandelläs, the Paramäras, the Kachchhapaghatäs and the Gähaäjaväläs appeared on the scene in later times. It has been held25 that four of the principal Räjput clans, namely, the Paramäras, the Chaulukyas, the Çhähamänas and the Pratihäras were des­
cended from Hinduised foreigners (Hänas and Gurjaras), while others like the Chandelläs and the Gähaäjaväläs were Hinduised aborigines (Gonds and Bhars). This theory, however, is not support­
ed by the data of physical anthropology.26 Support for the above theory has been sought to be found in the legend of origin of the four clans above mentioned from the sacrificial fire kindled on Mt. Abu by the sage Vasishtha for replenishing the Kshatriya-stock after its extermination by the sage Parasuräma. But the legend has been shown to be a very late one.27 The truth is that the Räjputs were of different and sometimes of indeterminate origins. In this and the immediately preceding periods legends of origin of the Räjput clans were invented with a view to their affiliation to the two great Kshatriya stocks of Epic and Puranic tradition, namely, the Solar and the Lunar races.28

We have seen elsewhere29 that the Käyasthas as a caste (as
distinguished from the profession called by that name) can be traced
back with the help of literary and epigraphic records to the latter half of the ninth century A.D. In the eleventh and the following centuries individuals of this caste rose to the highest public offices in different tracts. Simultaneously with the rise of the Käyasthas to power there arose different legends to account for their origin. In the inscriptions of this period we have three different versions tracing the descent of the Käyasthas from as many var{}øgas. In the first version30 the Käyastha family in question derived its descent from the sage Kaśyapa through his son Kuśa. In the second version31 we are told that after the creation of the Kshatra-vañcha by Brahmä, the Kshatriyas were heart-broken by the destructive act of Para­
suräma, and that those who were not so discouraged were called Käyasthas. With this agrees the fact that the Käyastha-family in a record above quoted32 styles itself as Kshatriya. The third version33 tells us that the great sage Kächara, deriving his origin
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

from God Brahma and having his residence in the town of Kulāñcha, was gratified with the services of a Śūdra and granted him the boon of having a son who became the ancestor of the caste of Kayasthas.

The origin of the division of the Dravidian-speaking peoples of South India other than the Malayalam into the right hand (Valaṅgai) and the left hand (Iḻaṅgai) classes is lost in obscurity. We have, however, a few inscriptions of the eleventh century showing how this division had fixed itself in the civil and military life of our people by that time.

The ancient institution of slavery was a well-known feature of Indian social life during this period. The law of slavery in the commentaries and digests, however, indicates little or no development in comparison with that of the later Smritis.

The Kathāsaritsāgara gives us frequent sketches of the aboriginal tribes indifferently called Bhillas, Pulindas and Savaras who lived in the Vindhya hills and forests. These tribes, we learn, lived by hunting and they used likewise to plunder caravans passing through their forests. The men were dressed in tiger-skins and adorned their bodies with peacocks' feathers and elephants' teeth, while the women were dressed in peacocks' feathers and wore necklaces of strings of the guñjī fruit. They lived on the flesh of deer and drank spirits distilled from wine. Their chieftains lived in residences covered with elephants' tusks and adorned with tiger-skins and they possessed stores of camels, musk, and "pearls" (obtained from the brains of slain elephants). They observed their old custom of offering human victims before their goddess. But at the same time they were capable of the most loyal service to their benefactors and suzerains from the civilised tracts.

2. MARRIAGE

The Smrīti law relating to inter-caste marriage was generally in vogue. But we find that Smrīti-chandrika and Smrītivarttikā include marriages of males of twice-born classes with females of other castes (aśavaraṇa) in the list of practices forbidden in the Kali Age. In the body of rules relating to marriage, however, Smrīti-chandrika expounds the law on this point in the following way. Firstly, marriages with girls of different castes are permissible among the twice-born classes after their marriages with girls of the same caste (aśavaraṇa). Secondly, aśavaraṇa marriages are necessary for the performance of religious rites, while aśavaraṇa marriages are of an inferior type as being dictated by desire. Thirdly, what is meant by the Smrīti texts condemning marriages of Brāhmaṇas with Śūdra women is not the prohibition of such marriages, but their
prior performance before marriages in superior castes. The same qualified support of aśavāna marriages (including marriages with Śudrās) among the three upper classes is given by Vijñānesvāra and Aparārka.37

The old Śṛngiti rules relating to prohibited degrees of marriage are repeated and amplified in the commentaries and digests. The late Śṛngiti view relating to the compulsory marriage of girls at an early age is followed by our authors without question.

While giving a qualified support to the revocation of marriage before all the religious ceremonies were completed, our authors develop the old Śṛngiti law so as expressly to forbid the re-marriage of widows.41

As regards royal marriages Vaijayantī41 gives a two-fold classification of the king’s wives and concubines. The king’s married wives comprise, firstly, the chief queen (mahā-rākṣi or mahā-devī) who has been consecrated; secondly, the queen (devī) born of a royal family; thirdly, the honoured lady (parivaricēṭi); fourthly, the dearly beloved lady (vārāṭā); fifthly, the lady who is not the daughter of a king (śrīmini); and sixthly, a lady who has been won in war (phalākkā). The king’s female favourites who, though not married to him, are versed in different fine arts (kalā) are called gajīkā and are divided into different classes. According to Mānasollāsa42 the king should select as his queen a girl of Kṣattriya lineage, young and beautiful, having good manners, bearing auspicious marks on her person and belonging to one or other of the best groups after the classification of the Kāmaśāstra. To the above the author adds43 that the king should select as his secondary wives (avaradha-vadhi) “for purpose of enjoyment”, young and beautiful women of Vaiśya and Śudra castes, and he should further engage wanton women (villāśī) having the same physical charms and gratify them with various gifts and personal attentions.

The Kathāsaritsāgara repeatedly refers to the current ideas and practices of marriage. The traditional Śṛngiti standpoint regarding the guardians’ obligation of suitably disposing of their girls in marriage at the proper time is repeated in such passages as XXIV.23f. The further Śṛngiti doctrine that the guardianship of the girl belongs to the father and not to the mother is mentioned in another place.44 Very often, however, the marriages in the stories, to judge by the Śṛngiti standards, are irregular, if not unlawful. We find Brāhmaṇas marrying Kśatriya maidens, sometimes by gift of the parents, but more often by mutual choice followed by elopements of the girls with their lovers, such acts finding favour with kings and princes and winning the praise of the narrator. More unorthodox is the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

of slight adultery, she must be maintained, though deprived of conjugal rights, till her performance of a penance. Even when she commits grave adultery, she must be maintained till her performance of the prescribed penance, but with bad food and so forth. When she is guilty of the grossest adultery she should have her hair shaved and made to lie on a low bed and do dirty work, but still she should be maintained with bad food and clothes and made to live under restraint in a portion of the husband's house. The wanton wife, concludes the author, may be abandoned, but not so the wife guilty of gross adultery, because it is possible to fit her for conjugal relations by means of penances.

Reverting to the topic of the wicked and unchaste wife, the author says in a later context, that when the wife is a wanton she may be abandoned, but she must not suffer mutilation or death. The wife may likewise be abandoned when she is guilty of acts, not expiable by penance, such as conception by a Sūdra male and drinking. In this case the wife should be deprived of conjugal relations, conversation, personal contact, and sharing in the performance of religious rites, but still she must be maintained with bad food and so forth, and made to live in a room near the house. Only in extreme cases, as when the wife is guilty of causing abortion and attempting to kill her husband, she may be driven out of the house.

Finally the author repeats with the older canonists the penalties of a husband for wrongfully deserting his good wife. When the husband, we read, abandons his wife on grounds other than those laid down by the canon, he places himself beyond expiation and should be punished by the king like a thief. When he abandons his virtuous wife, he should be made by the king, under (threat of) heavy punishment, to restore her to her old position. In default, he should be compelled by the king to give her one-third of his property, and if he is poor, to give her a sufficient sum for her maintenance.

The commentaries and the digests repeat the old rules relating to the religious and social inferiority of women. As regards Hīra's classification of women into two classes, namely, those who are students of the sacred lore (brahmavādini) and those who marry straight away (sadyovādhi) of whom the former are entitled to the investiture of the sacred thread, offering sticks to the sacred fire, Vedic study and begging within the household, it belongs, says the Smṛiti-Chandrikā to a different time-cycle (kalpa). After this it would appear that the reference to female teachers (Upādhyāyā, upādhyāyi and ēchāryā) found in the contemporary lexi-
The historical references to the position of women, though meagre, help us to correct at some points the views of the Brāhmaṇa canonists above mentioned. Thus we have a number of instances showing how queens and princesses, in the face of the Śruti doctrine of the perpetual dependence of women, sometimes exercised a commanding influence upon the administration of state. In Kāshmir, Sūrya-mati, queen of Ananta, rose to be the de facto ruler of the
kingdom and ended by persuading the king against the judgment of his wisest counsellors to abdicate in favour of their unworthy son. The political influence of royal ladies can be traced during this period especially in the records of the Deccan and South India. We have seen elsewhere how princesses became governors of provinces and held minor administrative charges under the Western Chalukya dynasty of Kalyana. To the instances there given we may add a few more, namely, those of queens of Seneśvara I and Vikramaditya VI and of two queens of a Chalukya feudatory. In the latter half of the thirteenth century A.D. queen Ballamahadevi of the Alupa dynasty (in South Canara District) ruled for at least fourteen years (Saka 1201-14) with the masculine titles of Mahārājādhirāja, Parabalaśādha, and so forth. As noted above, queen Rudrāmba, bearing the male name of Rudradevamahārāja, ruled the Kākatiya kingdom for nearly forty years, and her conspicuous success won the admiration of the contemporary Venetian traveller Marco Polo. In the light of such evidence of the political influence of women in the Deccan and South India, it is interesting to observe that the advent of the Sena dynasty of Kannada origin into Bengal brought with it a significant change in the formula of the royal land grants so as to include the queen in the list of the king’s informants.

4. FOOD AND DRINK

The commentaries and digests develop with almost pedantic thoroughness the old Smriti rules relating to prohibited food. In this connexion Vijnānaśvara and Aparaṅka repeat Medhatithi’s list of occasions on which meat is lawful food. On the other hand Bhavadeva of Bengal, reflecting no doubt the regional sentiment on this point, adopts a very liberal attitude towards eating meat and fish. “When lawful meat and fish are eaten,” says he, no penance is necessary. The penances prescribed by the texts for eating meat contrary to the injunctions, and for intentionally eating fish, is explained, have reference only to the prohibited days: and the prohibition of Brāhmaṇas to take meat has reference to uncooked meat. From the above the author draws the remarkable conclusion that one incurs no blame by partaking of fish and meat. The commentaries and digests of the period faithfully follow the views of Medhatithi and Viśvarūpa on the admissibility of drinking wine according to caste divisions. Drinking is forbidden to women of all the three upper classes. But the Sudras are exempt from all the rules relating to forbidden drinks.

The references in the general literature partly confirm and partly correct or supplement the data of the Brāhmaṇical canons re-
SOCIAL CONDITION

lating to food and drink. The synonym "food of barbarians" (mlechchhabhojya) given to wheat in Vaijayanti\(^6\) shows that it was not as yet an article of dietary among the Indians. On the other hand Vaijayanti\(^7\) gives us synonyms for various milk-preparations which were no doubt in use among the people. From a story in the Kathāsaritsāgara\(^8\) we learn that rice (or powdered barley), ghee, meat-curry, and milk (or wine) constituted the normal dietary of affluent merchants. From other stories it appears that on festive occasions like marriages the attendants drank themselves to intoxication. How the women in a king's train, notwithstanding the Smṛti injunction to the contrary, freely indulged in drinks, is illustrated by an incident in the career of king Vikramadītya VI.\(^{5,2}\) We also read in the Mānasollāsa\(^{5,1}\) that the king should entertain his wives with wines and spirits on the happy occasions of marriages. From the stories in Kathāsaritsāgara it appears that the kings freely indulged in drinking wine in the company of their ministers or even of the ladies of the seraglio. Drinking parties were held on festive occasions such as family reunions and marriages.\(^{5,2}\) The Mānasollāsa describes the king's dietary in two separate sections called "the enjoyment of food"\(^{5,2}\) and "the enjoyment of drink."\(^{5,2}\) The king's dietary comprises\(^{5,2}\) both vegetarian and non-vegetarian dishes. The former consists of preparations of rice, pulse and so forth, and the latter of those of the meat of the boar, the spotted and other deer, the hare, the sheep and the goat, fish, birds, and various other good meat. The author describes in this connexion the method of removing the pig's hair preparatory to cooking the meat as well as the process of cooking the meat of deer, sheep, birds, fish, tortoises, crabs even the rats living in the fields near the banks of rivers.

The observations of foreign writers about the food and drink of the people, while agreeing with the canonical rules in some respects, differ from them on other points. Al-Biruni\(^5,5\) gives us a list of lawful and forbidden meat of the Indians which is evidently derived from the Smṛitis. The king of the Chola dominion, according to Chau Ju-Kua,\(^5,7\) did not drink wine but took meat and flour-cakes. The people of the Pāṇḍya ("Ma'bar") kingdom, according to Marco Polo,\(^6,6\) would not eat beef on any account, though they took the meat of other animals that were killed for them by Arab and other butchers. In the Kākatiya kingdom ("Mutfili"), according to the same author,\(^6,5\) the people lived on meat, rice and milk. Turning to the Malabar coast, we are told,\(^6,5\) that the people of Quilon lived on rice and drank wine from palm-sugar (wine from molasses in the Smṛiti list?). By contrast we read\(^7\) that the very abstemious merchants from Gujarāt (?) living in the Kannaḍa tract ate no flesh and drank no wine.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

5. DRESS AND TOILETTE

The minute Śrauti regulations relating to the daily observance of the rules of personal hygiene by the Vedic students and the householders are repeated and paraphrased by the commentators,92 and they are arranged under convenient headings in the course of a separate section of the digests called āhnikā (daily rites and observances).93 Among these rules those relating to bathing take an important place.94 Bathing is compulsory for all castes at least once a day; the Vedic student being required to bathe once, the householder twice, and the ascetic thrice a day. Vaijāyantī95 gives us synonyms for embellishment of the body as well as those for bathing of different kinds (with fragrant āmalaka, with the juice of all medicinal plants, with muddy water, and so forth). The lexicons96 again give us synonyms for different types of coiffure such as curled hair on the forehead in bee-shape, thin hair, bound and unbound hair, braided hair, clean and unentangled hair and so forth.

To Kalhana97 we owe the interesting information that the people of Kāshmir before Harsha's time, with the single exception of the king, wore their hair loose and had no head-dress or earrings, that a former commander-in-chief having braided his hair and a former chief minister having worn a short coat incurred the king's displeasure, and that Harsha introduced into the kingdom a general dress befitting a king. In the sculptures of Bhuvarṇēśvara temples the male figures are usually clad in the typical dhoti and the female figures in sūdis without any other clothing, while they are adorned with ear-ornaments of different kinds, bracelets, armlets, and ornaments for the legs and the feet.98 The variety of fashions in wearing apparel is indicated in the sculptures of the Vaital deul temple, such as stripes set off with zigzag lines, with triple lines, with oblique as well as horizontal double wavy lines with flowers and a scroll border.99 Still more varied are the types of coiffure of the human figures.100 Reference to the distinctive toilette of the court-ladies of Kuntala, Dravīḍa, Māhārāṣṭra, Andhra and Gurjara is found in the description of the king's court-scenes in Mānasollasa.101 Among the foreign writers Chau Ju-Kua102 observes that the people of Nan-p'i and Ku-lin (Malabar) wrap their hair in silken turbans at the time of battle. Of the people of Hu-ch'ā-la (Gujarat) the same writer says103 that both men and women have double ear-rings and wear close-fitting clothes, with hoods on their heads, as well as red leather shoes on their feet. Equally valuable is the testimony of Marco Polo. In Malabar, we are told,104 men and women, rich and poor, wear only a loin-cloth, the king being no exception, and the profession of the
tailor was completely unknown. Loin-cloth was also the dress of men and women in Quilon. 156 Similarly, according to Friar John of Monte Corvino (A.D. 1292-93), men in Malabar went bare-footed and naked with only a loin-cloth on, while boys and girls up to their eighth year wore no clothes at all.

But though their clothes were scanty these kings of Southern India were fond of jewellery. According to Chau Ju-Kua 106 the king of Nan-p'i (Malabar) was dressed in cotton loin-cloth and was bare-footed like his subjects, but when going out on an elephant in procession he wore a golden hat ornamented with pearls and gems as well as golden armlets and anklets. The pomp of the Malabar kings was outdone by the rulers of the Pāṇḍya kingdom. From Marco Polo 107 we learn that the king of Malabar was dressed only in a loin-cloth like his subjects. But he wore a necklace entirely of precious stones (rubies, sapphires and emeralds and the like), a neck-string of 104 (108?) great pearls and rubies, three golden bracelets thickly set with valuable pearls, pearl-anklets and rings on his toes. "What this king wears between gold and gems and pearls", we are told, "is worth more than a city's ransom". Of the king of Kayal, we are told 108 more briefly that he had upon his person a great store of rich jewels.

6. STANDARD OF LIVING

The high standard of living, which appears to have prevailed at least among the upper classes in the preceding period, was well maintained during these centuries. The extraordinary affluence of the rich merchants of Gujarāt in the first part of the thirteenth century is illustrated by an incident in Act III of the drama Mēharāje-pārśaya of the poet Yaśāpāla (twelfth century A.D.), describing the visit of king Kumārapāla to the mansion of a millionaire (koṭisvara) merchant of his capital-city. The main building was approached by a flight of steps of crystal. Ascending these steps the visitor reached the temple with crystal-floor and with walls painted with sacred pictures, which enshrined an image of the deity in emerald. The mansion contained such huge stores of gold, silver, and jewels as to rouse the wonder even of the royal visitor. Of the immense riches of courtesans during the eleventh century we have an illustration in the description matching that of Vasantaśena in Mṛchchhakaṭṭika Act IV) of the palatial mansion of Madanamāla at Pratishṭhāna in Kethāśarītaśāyana. 109 The mansion, we read, contained seven enclosures with a train of horses and elephants, with stores of weapons and jewels, with numbers of
attendants and bards, and with players of vocal and instrumental music.

While it appears from the above that the standard of living prevailing among the upper classes was fairly high, it reached a level of exceptional magnificence among kings. The Mānasollāsa gives us a wonderfully vivid account of the luxurious dress and toilette of the king. Describing the king’s banquets the author says¹⁰ that he should cause the governors of provinces and so forth to be served from gold and silver vessels, while he himself should be served from a large golden vessel. When the king takes his seat on the lion-throne in the hall of audience with its white paved floor, with its pillars of gold, with jewels displayed in their proper places, with its coloured walls and its canopy of different colours, he is fanned by beautiful women. The king then issues through his door-keeper a general summons for attending the assembly. Then come in palanquins the royal ladies adorned with various ornaments (head-ornaments, ear-rings, necklaces, bracelets, finger-rings, waist-ornaments and leg-ornaments) and dressed in gorgeous robes, and they take their seats in front to the king’s right and left. Other ladies variously adorned with ornaments and wearing garlands follow on the back of horses and mares or on foot and take their proper seats. Also seated in their proper places are the princes adorned with ornaments, the parohita wearing a white dress and jewelled ear-rings, the ministers, the provincial governors, the feudatory princes and the various departmental officers, wearing jackets (aṅgikë) with long sleeves, turbans and gold ornaments. Then comes a miscellaneous group consisting of poets, astrologers, plaintiffs and so forth. At the king’s command the door-keeper next allows entrance to the subordinate kings desiring his protection. The king dismisses the assembled subordinate kings, princes, ministers and others by bestowing upon them various favours.¹¹¹

Many different types of royal palaces with their distinctive characters are described in Samantabhadra-sūtra and Mānasollāsa.¹¹² Describing the plan and construction of the king’s residence the author of Mānasollāsa¹¹³ observes that it should be from one to nine stories high, it should be whitewashed, it should have latticed passages in some parts and dark passages illuminated by jewelled lamps in other parts, it should have an ivory fencing and pillars of gold or of sandal-wood as well as floor of glass or crystal and walls of crystal mirror-like slabs. In the same context we are told that the king should change his residence according to the seasons.

488
SOCIAL CONDITION

The royal processions, as described by the contemporary foreign writers, were marked by equal gorgeousness. When the king of Malabar went out riding on elephant in state, says Chau Ju-Kua, he was preceded by his officers, carried in litters with gold-and silver-plated poles, and a section of his large bodyguard of foreign women, while another section followed him on horseback. These last had their hair done up while their bodies were adorned with pearl-necklaces and gold anklets and perfumed with camphor, musk and other drugs, and they were protected from the sun by umbrellas of peacock-feathers.

We are in a position to verify the above literary accounts of the king’s high standard of living to some extent from the extant archaeological evidence. The panels of sculptures of the Lángara Jája and the Konárák temples in Orissa, the Kandaryá Maha déo temple at Khajuráho in Bundelkhand and the Kesáva temple at Belur in Mysore, as well as the paintings of the Bhra désvará temple at Tanjore, to mention a few instances, contain vivid representations of royal court-scenes and scenes of royal processions of the time.

7. POPULAR AND ROYAL AMUSEMENTS

The popular amusements of this period were more or less similar to those described in the preceding volume. The lexicons give us synonyms for dolls made of wood or cloth or ivory as well as for those made of clay. Playing with balls was a favourite pastime for children and for girls, and the “swing” was enjoyed by young married women both at home and in the highways and so forth.

Dancing, music and dramatic performances were also very popular. Mention is made of musical instruments of different kinds such as wind instruments, stringed instruments, the lute, drums and musical horns with the accompaniment of technical terms. In the sculptures of the Bhuvaneśvara temples of this period we have representations of the vińa, the drum, the flute and the trumpet. The old Indian game of gambling was evidently well known. From the allegorical drama called Moharája-pára jña of the poet Yaśáhpála we learn that gambling was very popular among all classes and sections of the people in Gujárát in his time. The author mentions five varieties of this game with appropriate titles including one which was constantly played by kings dressed only in a loin-cloth in courtyards, another by merchants’ sons who were millionaires, and a third which was played with cowries by small boys. Even those belonging to royal families, we
VII. Hunting, hawking and angling. The author describes in detail the methods of hunting a boar or a hare with the help of trained dogs. Hawks, carefully trained, are taken to a place bounding in grass and sheltering many birds. When the grass is beaten up and the birds are in flight, the hawk seizes birds on the wing at a height invisible to the naked eye. The king amuses himself by catching carefully fed fish with a rod and line prepared according to specification.

We have similar but much shorter accounts of royal amusements in other geographical regions of our land during the same period. Nayachandra Sūri, author of the Hammira-mahākātya, in the course of his description of the Chāhamāna kings of Rāgasambapura, tells us how one of them (Prahlādana) was engaged in a hunting expedition with a company of footmen dressed in blue clothes hanging down to their knees and of fleet hunting dogs with golden necklaces, how another king (Jaitrasirīha) indulged in water sports, and how the last king (Hammira), during the siege of his capital by 'Alā-ud-dīn Khaljī, sought recreation with his courtiers for a while in an entertainment attended with vocal and instrumental music as well as dancing by a reputed female artiste of the town. Of the Chola kings we are told by a foreign writer that at their State banquets the whole company broke out into song, music and dancing.

8. POPULAR BELIEFS AND SUPERSTITIONS

The old beliefs in omens and portents, in astrology, in the significance of dreams and so forth continued to have its firm hold on the people. The stories in the Kathāsārītāgāra show how widespread was the popular belief in omens and portents, in auspicious and inauspicious times, as well as in charms and spells for witchcraft. The references in Mānasollāsa show how such beliefs were held even in royal and aristocratic circles. Speaking of the king’s marching against his enemy, the author gives elaborate descriptions of the auspicious and inauspicious times for its start as well as favourable and unfavourable omens (indicated by the behaviour of dogs, jackals, lizards and crows).

Testimony to the superstitious beliefs of the Indian people is borne by contemporary foreign observers. Among the people of Ma’bar, according to Marco Polo, there were experts who discerned a man’s character and qualities by his look, and who knew the meaning of a man’s meeting with a particular bird or beast. The people recorded the date and hour of a child’s birth immediately after that event, and they did all their acts with reference to astrology and with the advice of diviners skilled in sorcery and magic.
Illustrating the extraordinary beliefs of "the Abraiman" of "the Lar province" (the merchants of Gujarat), Marco Polo observes\textsuperscript{123} that they made their purchases when their shadow was of the required length, and undertook their journeys when the direction of the swallows' flight was favourable.

The strong hold which the veneration for cows had acquired over the minds of the people in the preceding period was maintained during these centuries. The commentaries and digests\textsuperscript{144} paraphrase the penances prescribed by the Smritis for killing and maiming cows. Killing of cows even at the honey-mixture (madhuparka) ceremony in honour of guests and the sacrifice called gosava is included in the list of forbidden practices in the Kali Age. The popular belief in the sanctity of domestic cattle is corroborated by the evidence of foreign writers. Idrisi\textsuperscript{143} refers to the great veneration of oxen among the Indians. Speaking particularly of the people of Ma'bar, Marco Polo says\textsuperscript{144} that they on no account kill oxen or partake of beef and that many of them worship the ox.

The complete ban against sea-voyage imposed by some of the canonical authorities of the earlier centuries was repeated during this period. Social intercourse with a man of the three upper classes undertaking a sea-voyage, even though he has performed the necessary penance, is included in the list of forbidden practices of the Kali Age in Smriti-chandrika\textsuperscript{147} while Smritiyartha\textsuperscript{143} includes sea-voyage as such in this list. And yet we have the historical fact that the great Chola Emperor Rajendra Chola I sent a naval expedition (c. A.D. 1025) for the successful conquest of the Sailendra empire of Sumatra and the Malay Peninsula, and that his successors succeeded in retaining this possession for nearly half a century afterwards.\textsuperscript{149} Equally authenticated is the fact, mentioned in another chapter, that Indian merchants, as late as the thirteenth century, extended their maritime enterprises as far as the Persian Gulf and Madagascar on one side and South China on the other. Indirect testimony to the overseas enterprises of the Indians is also furnished by the stories of the Kathasaritsagara.

9. MANNERS AND CUSTOMS

We learn from the testimony of Megasthenes that the custom of employment of large numbers of female attendants in the king's service is as old as the time of Chandragupta Maurya. In the literature of the present period we have repeated references to this custom. The observations of foreign writers corroborate the prevalence of the above custom. According to Chou Ku-Fei\textsuperscript{150} the Chola king employed fully "a myriad dancing girls for his table and escort".
The king of Malabar, according to Chau Ju-Kua, was attended by a body-guard of 500 picked foreign women in his processions.

A custom prevailing in South India for some time before this period was that of self-immolation of selected nobles on the funeral pyres of their kings. Abu Zaid, writing a little before our time, describes a particular rite observed by some of the Indian kings after their accession to the throne. The rite (which according to Nainar’s suggestion was identical with the Māmakhaṁ or Mahāmakhaṁ, the great sacrifice of the kings of Malabar) consisted in three hundred or four hundred “king’s companions” volunteering to partake of a portion of the cooked rice eaten by himself. It is incumbent upon all those who partake of this to burn themselves to the last man when the king dies or is slain. Coming to the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, we find references to this custom in inscriptions of the later Chola kings belonging to the Tamil and Kannāḍa areas. These inscriptions record the vows taken by a class of persons called Velaikkāris (personal body-guards of a king or chieftain) to die with their master. Referring to a similar custom in the Pāṇḍya kingdom, Marco Polo says that the king has a number of Barons called “the king’s Trusty Lieges” who are in constant attendance upon him and that they burn themselves with their master’s body after his death.

We have observed in the preceding volumes how the Śṛṇti law of later times recommended for widows the alternatives of living a celibate life (brahmacharya) and burning themselves on the funeral pyres of their husbands, with a decided preference in favour of the latter. The commentators and the digests of this period have a twofold attitude on this point. On the one hand Viśānēśvara and Aparārka, as well as the author of the Śṛṇtiyarthasiṣṭha, express themselves more or less strongly in favour of the widows’ self-immolation. On the other hand Śṛṇti-chandrika is equally emphatic in its condemnation of this cruel and horrible rite. The historical records frequently refer to widowed queens, princesses and others performing acts of charity and piety. We, however, come across instances of ladies of royal and official families burning themselves after the deaths of their husbands, and several such instances are recorded in the Rijatarāṣṭra. According to Al-Birūnī, the widow had to choose between one of two alternatives, namely, remaining a widow for the rest of her life, and burning herself; and she preferred the latter alternative as she was likely to be ill-treated as long as she lived. To this the author adds that the wives of kings were burnt whether they wished it or not. It would appear from the above that the sati-rite was more widely prevalent at this time than was warranted by the Śṛṇti authorities of this period. Evid-
ence to the same effect is borne by the epigraphical and other records. The numbers of the sati memorial stones (mastikal and satikal) in the Kannada tract testify to the wide prevalence of this rite in mediaeval as well as modern times. Marco Polo in his description of the kingdom of Ma'bar tells us that many women burnt themselves with the bodies of their husbands and that they were highly praised by all.

A custom which seems to be peculiar to the Deccan and South India at this period, but was destined to be continued down at least to the time of the Vijayanagara kings, was that of duel fights. In a story of the Kathāsaritsāgara, we are told how when a door-keeper of a king of Kāñchi falsely charged a foreign merchant before the king with the abduction of his wife, the merchant proposed a duel deciding the issue, how after obtaining the king's approval they both entered the list on horseback and fought in the king's presence, and how when the door-keeper was felled down from his horse five times in succession, the king honoured the victor as he deserved, and deprived the door-keeper of his office and his wealth. Marco Polo observes about the people of 'Cail' (Kayal in the Pāṇḍya kingdom), that when a man wishing to offer gross insult to another spits out a mouthful of betel-leaf upon his face, the latter seeks and obtains the king's permission to fight the offender. They fight in public with sword and target until one of them is killed.

A custom mentioned by foreign writers as an illustration of the high moral character of the Indians is concerned with the process of a creditor's recovery of his debt. Illustrating the Indians' love of truth and horror of vice, Idrisi says that a creditor meeting his debtor has only to draw a circle upon the ground and make him enter it which he never fails to do. The debtor then cannot leave the circle without satisfying his creditor, or obtaining remission of the debt. The same custom is mentioned by Marco Polo in his description of the kingdom of Ma'bar. Reference is also made to the above custom in a story of the Kathāsaritsāgara.

The custom of dedicating women (Skt. Devadāsī, Tamil devārdaiyār) to the service of temples, which has been traced by us elsewhere to the preceding centuries, was generally prevalent during this period. Indeed literary records and inscriptions give us the impression that they were regarded as a part of the normal establishment of temples. The number of these girls in the temples often reached high proportions. The temple of Somanātha at the time of its destruction by Sultān Mahmūd is stated to have been served by three hundred and fifty dancing girls. According to Chau Ju-Kua Gujārāt contained 4000 temples in which lived over 20,000
dancing girls whose function was to sing twice daily while offering food to the deities and while presenting flowers. We have the valuable testimony of Al-Biruni to the effect that the kings maintained this institution for the benefit of their revenues in the teeth of the opposition of the Brāhmaṇa priests. But for the kings, he says, no Brāhmaṇa or priest would allow in their temples women who sing, dance and play. The kings, however, make them a source of attraction to their subjects so that they may meet the expenditure of their armies out of the revenues derived therefrom.

10. GENERAL ESTIMATE OF CHARACTER

Some light has been thrown upon the general characteristics of the Indian people by our descriptions of their social institutions as well as their beliefs and practices given above. As regards the institution of caste, it has been shown that the immunities and privileges of the Brāhmaṇas are held by the exponents of the Sacred Law to rest still more than before upon a moral basis, in other words upon the principle noblesse oblige. On the other hand it is impossible to ignore the studied degradation to which important sections of the population (the so-called antyajātis and even in extreme cases the Sūdras) were condemned by them after the older authorities. As regards the status of women it was not made worse in this period as compared with the preceding one except in the matter of stricter insistence upon the practice of self-immolation of widows on the funeral pyres of their husbands. On the other hand a distinct improvement of their status is observable in respect of their rights of property.

Of the large-hearted tolerance of the Indians towards foreign faiths evidence is furnished by the generous treatment accorded by the Chaulukya and Vaghela kings of Gujarāt and the Pañḍya kings of Southern India towards the Muslim settlers in their lands. The same attitude is indicated by the complete freedom enjoyed by the communities of Syrian Christians, Jews and Zoroastrians, settled in Southern and Western India, in the exercise of their religion.

The contemporary foreign observers on the whole agree in giving a favourable estimate of the general character of the Indians. We may quote in the first place the sober judgment of the great Muslim scholar Al-Birūnī who has made a striking reference to the deep-rooted tendency of the Indian mind towards self-conceit and depreciation of everything foreign. “The Hindus”, he says, “believe that there is no country but theirs, no nation like theirs, no kings like theirs, no religion like theirs, no science like theirs. They are haughty, foolish, vain, self-conceited and stolid.”
SOCIAL CONDITION

They are by nature niggardly in communicating that which they know, and they take the greatest possible care to withhold it from men of another caste among their own people, still much more, of course, from any foreigner. According to their belief, there is no other country on earth but theirs, no other race of man but theirs, and no created beings besides them have any knowledge of science whatsoever." The author concludes by tracing the root of this evil to its source in the changed habits of the Indians about foreign travel. "If they travelled and mixed with other nations", he says, "they would soon change their mind, for their ancestors were not as narrow-minded as is the present generation." In another place the author, while introducing his account of the Indian law of punishments and expiations, pays handsome tribute to the gentle manners of the people. "The manners and customs of the Hindus", he says, "like those of the Christians, are based on the principles of virtue and abstinence from wickedness, such as never to kill under any circumstance whatever, to bless your enemy, and pray for him. Nevertheless in the case of Hinduism, as of Christianity, punishments became inevitable, since most people are ignorant and erring and cannot be kept on to the straight path except by the sword and the whip". In contrast with the above a wholly favourable estimate of the Indian character, recalling the similar views of Megasthenes and Huen-tsang centuries before, is given by the learned Muslim author Idrisi in the latter part of the twelfth century. The Indians, he says, are naturally inclined to justice, and never depart from it in their actions. Their good faith, honesty and fidelity to their engagements are well known, and they are so renowned for these qualities that people flock to their country from every side.

Lastly we may quote the views of Marco Polo. The people of Ma'bar, he says, are very strict in executing justice upon criminals and in abstaining from wine, but they do not look upon lechery as a sin. Of the "Abraiman of Lar" (Brâhmaṇas of Gujarāt?) living in the Kannaḍa tract, he observes that they are the best and the most truthful merchants in the world and live a life of great chastity and temperance, but at the same time they are more prone to superstitious beliefs in omens and portents than any other people. He illustrates these statements by concrete descriptions of the beliefs and practices of this class.

11. HINDU-MUSLIM RELATIONS

It will appear from the political history sketched above that towards the close of the period under review the Muslim Turks had permanently settled in large parts of Northern India and formed an important community. Their number was as yet very small, as
compared with the Hindus, but this was compensated to a large extent by the power and prestige they enjoyed as conquerors of the land.

The advent of Islam constituted the first great rift in the solidarity of Indian community since the incorporation of the aboriginal peoples into the Aryan society. Henceforth there were two communities in India—Hindu and Muslim—who formed two entirely separate entities, so far at least as religious and social ideas and political and civil rights were concerned. There was, however, one significant difference between the two. The Muslim community kept its doors wide open, and not only freely admitted everybody, but even pushed people inside it. The result was that the Hindus entered into the fold of Muslims in gradually increasing numbers. But the case was different with the Hindu society. Though at the beginning we hear of reconversion of Hindus who had embraced Islamic faith, gradually it adopted a more restrictive attitude and practically closed its doors against admission from outside, even for those who once strayed out of it, by force, choice, or accident. The inevitable consequence followed. The Muslims grew in number by the conversion of the Hindus, while the Hindu rank was gradually thinned. The immigration of fresh bands of Muslims from beyond the frontiers of India also swelled their number; but as years rolled by, they numerically formed a very insignificant element in the growing population of the Muslims, a great majority of whom were converted Hindus.

We do not possess sufficient data to form an accurate idea of the means or methods of conversion on such a large scale. The ultra-democratic principles of Islam, restricted to its own community, served as a great inducement to conversion in two ways. In the first place, as the rigours of the caste system weighed heavily upon the lower classes among the Hindus, they would naturally be attracted by the position of absolute religious and social equality which Islam offered to every Hindu, irrespective of class or caste, who embraced the new faith. Secondly, even though for a long time political equality was not conceded by the conquering Turks to Indian Muslims, the latter were undoubtedly in a far better position in this respect than the unconverted Hindus. Offers were openly made to ruling chiefs and high officials that they could continue in their present position only if they adopted the Muslim faith. The lower officers in civil government, and the majority of military ranks, to start with, were naturally recruited, as far as possible, from the Muslims. Such temptations must have been too great for ordinary men.
SOCIAL CONDITION

The denial of civil rights to the Hindus also operated as a great factor in their conversion. As mentioned above, the Muslim rulers, from the very beginning, imposed civil disabilities upon the Hindus, and Muhammad ibn Qasim is said to have enunciated the following principle:—

"He who received the honour of Islam and became a convert was exempt from slavery as well as tribute and was not injured. Those, however, who did not accept the true faith were compelled to pay the fixed tribute (jizya)."

Galling as these distinctions were to any sensitive mind and noble spirit, the situation was often rendered much worse by the denial of the right of public worship to the Hindus and deliberate indignities and humilities inflicted upon them as a general policy adopted by some Muslim rulers. All this will be dealt with in detail elsewhere. It will suffice here to state that the position of the Hindus under the Muslim rule, at least during the first two or three centuries, was most unenviable, and the temptation to secure liberty, privilege and higher status by a change of creed proved irresistible to many.

Peaceful missionary propaganda by the Muslim divines must have also played a large part in the conversion. Their religious doctrines, enforced by the considerations mentioned above, of which they must have taken full advantage, could not fail to produce the desired 'effect' upon a section of the Hindus. The saintly character of some of the Muslim preachers must also have appealed to the religious minded Hindus. But while these normal means of conversion played their part, we cannot ignore the fact that force or violence was one of the most fruitful sources of conversion of the Hindus en masse, at least in the earlier period.

We possess a brief account of the Indian expeditions of Sultan Mahmud by Al-'Utbi, his Secretary, who "enjoyed excellent opportunities of becoming fully acquainted with the operations of that conqueror." He very frankly says that "Islam or death was the alternative that Mahmud placed before the people," and his detailed account gives many practical illustrations of it. The usual consequence of Mahmud's victory is thus described by 'Utbi: "The victors slew the vanquished wherever they were found, in jungles, passes, plains and hills." Elsewhere he says: "The blood of the infidels flowed so copiously, that the stream was discoloured, notwithstanding its purity, and people were unable to drink it."

The word 'infidel' in the above extract is significant.—for the only way to escape this cruel massacre was to embrace Islam. It was thus that Hardat, the ruler of Baran, and his ten thousand followers,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

as well as the Shah of Qirat and its people saved their lives. There must have been many other mass conversions of this type.175

'Utbi's account is full of stories of indiscriminate massacre of all those Hindus who fell into the hands of Mahmūd after the capture of a town or fort and disdained to save their lives by change of religion. We also hear of a large number of such unfortunate Hindus being carried away as slaves. Referring to Mahmūd's victory over Nidar Bhim, 'Utbi remarks that "slaves were so plentiful that they became very cheap."176 His detailed account clearly shows that these slaves were converted to Muslim faith.

The policy of Mahmūd was followed by some later Muslim conquerors also. Referring to the Muslim victory in Gujarat in A.D. 1197, a contemporary Muslim writer says:

"Most of their leaders were taken prisoners, and nearly fifty thousand infidels were despatched to hell by the sword...... More than twenty thousand slaves fell into the hands of the victors."177 After the capture of the fort of Kālinjar, according to the same authority, "fifty thousand men came under the collar of slavery."178

It was a common practice of the Turkish rulers of India to take as prisoners the wives, sons and dependants of the vanquished Hindu rulers.179

The method of temptation was also not wanting. Even the Chandella king and Prithviraj were offered immunity from invasion on condition of embracing Islam. The deliberate policy of demolishing Hindu temples and raising mosques in their places, initiated by Muhammad ibn Qāsim, was followed with zeal and alacrity by the Turkish invaders, and the stamping out of idolatry from the places conquered by Muslim arms is frequently referred to in glowing terms by Muslim chroniclers.

It can hardly be doubted that all these acts of terrorism and violence facilitated the conversion of the hapless Hindus to Islam in large numbers. It had the added effect of completely alienating the Hindus from the Muslims. Apart from religious ideas and social usages which operated in the same direction, the deliberate demolition of temples, the destruction of images, and the wholesale massacre and enslavement of Hindus by the Muslim conquerors must have completely estranged the Hindus from the Muslims. The inevitable result was that the Hindus and Muslims formed two distinct and hostile communities throughout the period under review.

The shrewd observer Al-Birūnī180 clearly perceived the great gulf that normally separated the Hindus from the Muslims. "The Hindus," he observes, "entirely differ from us in every respect."
After mentioning the difference in language, he continues: “Secondly, they totally differ from us in religion, as we believe in nothing in which they believe, and vice versa. In the third place, in all manners and usages, they differ from us to such a degree as to frighten their children with us, with our dress, and our ways and customs, and as to declare us to be devil’s breed, and our doings as the very opposite of all that is good and proper”. Summing up the general attitude of the Hindus towards the Muslims AI-Biruni remarks: “All their fanaticism is directed against those who do not belong to them—against all foreigners. They call them mlechchha i.e. impure, and forbid having any connection with them, be it by intermarriage or any other kind of relationship, or by sitting, eating and drinking with them, because thereby, they think, they would be polluted. They consider as impure anything which touches the fire and the water of a foreigner. They are not allowed to receive anybody who does not belong to them, even if he wished it, or was inclined to their religion. This, too, renders any connection with them quite impossible, and constitutes the widest gulf between us and them.”

Al-Biruni was one of the few Mussalmans of that period who had a genuine sympathy for the Hindus, and we must admit the fairness and truth of his denunciation of the Hindu attitude. It is also difficult to deny that this attitude, in all its essential aspects, persisted throughout the ages, though somewhat modified, in minor details, as a result of greater familiarity in course of time.

AI-Biruni had the candour to admit that “the repugnance of the Hindus against foreigners increased more and more when the Muslims began to make their inroads into their country”. “Mahmūd”, he says, “utterly ruined the prosperity of the country, and the Hindus became like atoms of dust scattered in all directions. Their scattered remains cherish, of course, the most inveterate aversion towards all Muslims”.

While the Hindus bore the ‘most inveterate aversion’ towards the Muslims, the latter also reciprocated the feeling. Their implacable hatred towards idolatry made the Hindus an object of utter contempt to them. This feeling animated all the Muslim conquerors and is echoed in all the Muslim chronicles. It was as strong in the days of Muhammad ibn Qāsim as in those of Sultān Mahmūd and the later Turkish conquerors. Amir Khusraw was not a bigoted Muslim divine, nor a holy crusader for that faith. He is regarded as a poet of liberal and enlightened views, and the seven hundredth anniversary of his birth was recently celebrated all over India by Hindus.
The Struggle for Empire

and Muslims alike. Here is a passage from his description of Hindusthān:

"The whole country, by means of the sword of our holy warriors, has become like a forest denuded of its thorns by fire. The land has been saturated with the water of the sword, and the vapours of infidelity (i.e. Hinduism) have been dispersed. The strong men of Hind have been trodden under foot, and all are ready to pay tribute. Islam is triumphant, idolatry is subdued. Had not the law granted exemption from death by the payment of poll-tax, the very name of Hind, root and branch, would have been extinguished."181

If this was the view of a liberal Muslim who lived towards the close of the thirteenth and the beginning of the fourteenth century A.D., we may easily conjecture what must have been the general attitude of the Muslims towards their Hindu subjects during the period under review. If, along with it, we bear in mind Al-Birūnī's view of the Hindus, mentioned above, we need not cherish any illusion as to the relation between Hindus and Muslims throughout this period, nor feel surprised that the Hindus should strive by all means to keep aloof from the Muslims as far as possible. A spirit of uncompromising animosity prevailed between the two great sections of the Indian community, embittered by arrogant contempt on the part of the victors, and proud disdain and deep, though vain, resentment on the part of the vanquished.

The Hindus have left no account describing the state of their feelings at this supreme crisis in their life. But one or two casual references in contemporary epigraphic records give us an insight into their attitude towards the Muslims. Thus in describing the successful military campaign of the Hindu king Vijayachandra of the Gahāda dynasty against the Muslims, the poet suggests that "the flow of tears from the eyes of the widows of Muslim heroes (killed in battle) quenched the heat (of torment or oppression) of the world (caused by the Muslims)."182 Visaladeva, the Chāhāmāna king, proudly declares that "he once more made Aryavarta (Northern India) what its name signifies (abode of the Aryan i.e. Hindus) by repeatedly exterminating the Mlechchhas (Muslims, who had rendered the name meaningless by their occupation of the country)."183 These expressions reflect the injured pride of the Hindus and their deep resentment against the alien conquerors who had trodden under feet their religion and culture.

502
The Arab conquest of Sindh did not effectively alter the social condition of either the Arabs themselves or the Indians with whom they came into contact, except, of course, in so far as a large number of the latter, converted to the new faith, gradually adopted the manners and customs of the former to a considerable extent.

Things, however, became very different after the annexation of the Punjab by Sultan Mahmud. It has been related above how the Ghaznavids established a more or less stable political hegemony in the Punjab, which became a regular province of their far-flung empire. A free and uninterrupted intercourse was thus established between India and the Muslim countries in the north and north-west. Religious divines, scholars, and poets moved to and fro across the Hindu Kush mountains, and many Muslim families from Khurasan, Transoxiana, Afghanistan and Persia came and settled down in various parts of the Punjab, bringing with them the rich cultural traditions of these lands. The capital of the new province, Lahore, which, after the fall of Ghazni, actually became the capital of the kingdom, soon turned into an important seat of learning and culture, rivaling Ghazni itself; and the large number of poets and scholars, who flocked to this city, found in it a ready and brisk market for their literary products. Among them the most outstanding personalities were Mas'ud bin Sa'd bin Salman, born at Lahore, who is said to have left behind a diwan of Hindi poetry, besides two others in Arabic and Persian, and Abu'l Faraj Ruyani, his friend and rival, who was a native of Ruyan, a village near Lahore. A famous scholar Shaikh Hasan Saghani of Lahore, is also mentioned in several historical and biographical works.

After the final extinction of the Ghaznavid rule in India, and the establishment of the Sultanate at Delhi, the new capital soon became a rendezvous of numerous poets, scholars and divines. Their immigration from the north and north-west swelled to gigantic proportions, on account of the rise of the Mongols under Chingiz Khan and the havoc caused by them in the Muslim countries, during the reign of Sultan Iltutmish of the Mamluk Dynasty. The new arrivals were eagerly and generously welcomed by that monarch, conscious of the great addition to the splendour of his court by the presence of such a galaxy of literary luminaries. We have a long list of the poets and scholars who adorned the court of Iltutmish and that of his rival, Nasir-ud-din Qabacha, ruler of Sindh. Among these we may mention Minhaj-ud-din, the author of the Tabaqat-i-Nasiri, Nizam-ud-din Hasan Nizami Nishapuri, who wrote the history of the reign of Aibak and Iltutmish, entitled the Taj-ul-
Ma‘āsir, Fakhr-ud-din Mubarak Shah, called Fakhr-i-Mudabbir, the writer of *Sīlṣālat-ūd-Ansāb* and a work on military tactics entitled *Adāb al-Harb*; the poets Bāhā-ud-din Ībi, Tāj-ud-din, Rīza, Shihāb-ī-Muhmira, and Amir Rūhānī, all attached to the Delhi court. Qabacha’s court could also boast of a famous scholar al-‘Aufī, the author of a well-known work of biography, *Lubāb al-Albāb*. At a later period there lived the great scholar and statesman, Shams-ud-dīn Dabīr, and the Amir Fakhr-ud-din ‘Amīd Sunnānī, both of whom were also great patrons of poets and savants. Shāh Ṣultān, foster-sister to princess Maḥ Malik, the daughter of Muhammad Ghūrī, also distinguished herself by her poetic talents during this period.

Another notable development under the Mamlūk kings was the foundation, for the first time, of several madrassas run under state supervision. Following the general practice in Muslim countries, the Muslims in India did not at first have any regular schools or colleges. The mosque was the most popular centre of early education where the ‘pish-imam,’ usually a learned man, presided over the elementary studies of the children belonging to the locality in which the mosque happened to be situated. The usual curriculum consisted of the reading of the Qurān, practice in calligraphy, and the rudiments of the Arabic and Persian languages. For higher studies, comprising traditions (hadith), jurisprudence (fiqh), logic and philosophy, literature (adab), epistology (ṣiḥḥ), prosody, etc., the students used to attend the lectures of distinguished scholars at different centres. No examinations were held and no diplomas (sanads) given, but a student could often get a certificate (ṣahāda) from the teacher whose lectures he had attended. Iltutmish built two state-sponsored colleges at Delhi known as the Mu‘izzīya and the Nasīrīya. Following his example, the provincial ruler Bakhtyār Khaljī built a similar college at Rangpura in Bihār, and there is good reason to believe that several other similar institutions arose in other parts of the country. These colleges, in course of time, helped in establishing a firm tradition of Islamic learning in India, and produced a number of scholars who could hold their own against the foreign scholars coming from Arabia, Persia, and Khurāsān. These scholars now formed a distinct group of the Muslim aristocratic society, as many of them were given high state offices and were generally well looked after by their royal patrons. Their cooperation with the rulers was of invaluable help to the latter for maintaining discipline and gaining the allegiance of the masses.
SOCIAL CONDITION

2. XI. 1.
5. I. 30.
6. III. 26-22.
7. Aparākha on Yaj, I. 168.
10. SC, loc. cit.
11. Quotations in Vīj and Apar. on Yaj, III. 30; Apar. on Yaj, III. 292; SC, II. 311.
12. Śrīmṛtyarthasāra, 78.
13. Śrīmṛtyarthasāra, 141.
14. I. 91-95.
15. I. 95.
17. Vīj. and Apar. on Yaj. I. 92, 95; Śrīmṛtyarthasāra, 13.
18. II. 13-14.
19. 52, 121.
20. Apar on Yaj. III. 292; SC, II. 304-08; Śrīmṛtyarthasāra, 76-78; Prāyaśchittapra-karas, 111-114.
21. Apar on Yaj. II. 39; SC, II. 310-11; Śrīmṛtyarthasāra, 77; Prāyaśchittapra-karas, 110.
23. EI, VI. 39; XXII. 143 f.; III. 61 f.; XI. 319 f.; etc.
27. Cf. Ojha, Rājputānēku Itihāsa, 2nd Ed. 72-75; Ray, DHNI, II. s.v.
28. Cf. the accounts of the different dynasties given above.
30. Et, XXVIII. 100 f.
31. Et, XXV. 276 f.
32. ARSIE, 229 of 1935-36.
33. Et, XXIV. 119 f.
34. Vīj. and Apar. on Yaj. II. 182-83; SC, III. 460-68.
35. XIII. 39 f.; XX. 62 f.; XXXII. 55 f.; LV. 219 f.; LVI. 22 f.; LXI. 142 f.; LXXVII. 4 f.; LXXII. 3 f.; Cl. 293 f.; Cl. 37 f.
36. Identified in KSS, X. 141 and 190, XX. 62, etc. with Chandīkā or Durgā.
37. I. 39 (after Ardipūrāṇa).
38. I. 283-89.
40. Vīj. and Apar. on Yaj. I. 66; SC, I. 30, 202-03, 220-21; Vīj. on Yaj. II. 5; Śrīmṛtyarthasāra, 2.
41. 106. 31-34.
42. III. 1808-10.
43. III. 1810-16.
44. CXII. 211.
45. Ibid., XXVII. 163 f.
46. Ibid., X. 144 f.
47. Ibid., XII. 73 f.
48. Ibid., XXVI. 150 f.
49. Ibid., CXII. 62 f.
50. Ibid., CXII. 88 f.
51. CXII. 62 f.
52. II. 162.
53. II. 339, 371.
54. Vīrāmākhaṭāudānaśarita, IX.
55. SC, III. 572-75.
56. Ibid., 568-70.
57. Ibid., 576-80.
58. Ibid., 573-76.
59. SC, I. 60-63.
61. II. 3.21; IV. 1.39.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

62. Vij. and Apar. on Yāj., II. 25.
63. III. 681.
64. Tattvārthā Sanskritā, VI. 3.82.
65. Vij. and Apar. on Yāj., II. 135-36; SC, III. 672-75; Vṛṣahārakaḥṣa, 748-49.
66. Vij. and Apar. loc. cit.
67. Vij. and Apar. loc. cit; SC, III. 682-85; Vṛṣahārakaḥṣa, 750.
68. VI. 143-49; Vṛṣahārakaḥṣa, 683-95.
69. See above, pp. 280 f.
70. XXII. 169 f.
71. ARSIE 577-95, 683-95.
72. SC, III. 651-57; Vij. and Apar. on Yāj., II. 143-49; Vṛṣahārakaḥṣa, 683-95.
75. Prāyaśchītāpanakārāṇa, 65-68.
77. I. 37.
78. I. 134.139 f.
79. IV. 170 f.
80. Vṛṣahārakaḥṣa, XI. 44-68.
81. III. 1229.
82. XXXVI. 67; XXXIX. 207; XL. 2; XLII. 64; XXXIV. 93; CIII. 206; CX. 124-30; CXI. 18.
83. III. 1342-1601.
84. Ibid. 1901-29.
85. Ibid., 1345 f.
86. II. 131.
87. Chū-fun-chü (Ed. Hirth and Rockhill), 95.
88. II. 341-42.
89. Ibid. 340.
90. Ibid., 376.
91. Ibid., 369.
92. Vij. and Apar. on Yāj., I. 16-17, 98, 100, etc.
93. SC, II, Sāmīryaḥṭāṣṭā, 18 f.
96. Vaij., III. 19, 100 f.; Abb. 231. 231 f.
97. KRT, VII. 922-24.
98. Mitra, Antiquities of Orissa, Pl. XXII, Nos. 76a-78; XXVII-XXVIII, Nos. 118-30.
100. Ibid., Pl. XXX-XXVI, Nos. 95-117.
101. III. 1185-87.
103. Ibid. 92.
104. II. 338.
105. II. 376.
107. II. 338.
108. II. 370.
109. XXXVIII. 10 f.
110. III. 1345-89.
111. Ibid. 1161-1244.
112. XXX.
113. III. 28-66.
114. Ibid. 125-29.
119. SC, III. 593.
120. Vaij., 114-47; Abb. 117. 6 f.
122. Moharājaḥṛṣyaṇa, Act IV, p. 86.
123. Ibid., p. 87.
124. KSS, XXV. 119 f.
125. XV. 18 f.
126. Vṛṣahārakākṣeṣaṇa, XII. 59-78.
SOCIAL CONDITION

127. III-IV.
128. IV. 2-196.
130. Ibid, 829-78.
131. Ibid, 879-96.
132. Ibid, 661-827.
133. Ibid, 2277-996.
134. Ibid, 1277-97.
135. Ibid, 1298-1328.
137. Ibid, 1381-1432.
138. IV. 48 f.
139. IX. 1-26.
140. Chau Ju-Kua, op. cit. 95.
141. II. 34 f.
142. II. 343-44.
143. II. 364-65.
145. Nair, Arab Geographers' Knowledge of Southern India, 106.
146. II. 341.
147. I. 39 (after quotation from an unnamed authority).
148. p. 2.
149. Majumdar, R. C., Savarnadeipa, I. 170-89.
150. Quoted by Chau Ju-Kua, op. cit. 95.
152. Nair, op. cit, 106-07.
154. II. 359.
155. III. 594-97.
156. VII. 163, 478-90; VIII. 367-69, 445, 1440-44.
157. II. 341.
158. XLIII. 160 f.
159. See above p. 491; also Memento, IV. 829-78.
160. II. 371.
161. Nair, op. cit. 97.
162. LV. 2 f.
165. II. 127.
166. I. 19-23.
167. II. 161.
168. Nair, op. cit. 97.
169. II. 342-43.
170. Ibid, 267-64.
172. HIED, II. 14.
173. S. E. Sharma, Studies in Medieval Indian History, pp. 37, 61, 29.
174. HIED, II. 34, 40.
175. Ibid, 43, 222. Also see above, p. 13, and Sharma, op. cit. 29.
176. Ibid, 39.
177. Ibid, 229.
178. Ibid, 231.
179. Ibid, 349.
180. For the quotations that follow, Cf. Sachau, Alberuni's India, I. 17-22.
181. HIED, III. 546.
182. EJ. IV. 119.
183. IA. XIX. 219.
184. He says: "My birth-place is Lahore and I am far from Lahore. Alas, Oh Lahore! what joy can there be without you."
185. Great later masters like Anwari and 'Urfi have acknowledged his excellence as a qasida writer.
186. For him and other scholars, see Zubaid Ahmad, India's Contribution to Arabic Literature.
187. He was the son of the famous scholar Nizam al-'Arudi of Samarqand, the author of Chaqar Maqlin.
188. Of Sunnam, an old fortified town in the Patiala State (PEPSU).
189. Cf. M. Ikram, Chashma-i-Kauther, p. 120.

507
CHAPTER XVIII

EDUCATION

In the present chapter we propose to describe in general outline the methods and principles of education that prevailed before the Muslim conquest.

I. PRIMARY AND HIGHER EDUCATION

The records of our period are almost completely silent about the methods of primary education. It seems likely that the familiar institution of the village school-master, plying his occupation amid humble surroundings and receiving his modest pay from the contributions of the villagers, was at work during these centuries.

As regards mass education in the broader sense of the term it was provided by the agency of one of our traditional institutions, namely the public recitation of the Epics, the Purâñas and other religious works which, according to the Smriti law, are accessible even to the lowest caste. The inscriptions of this period refer from time to time to endowments made by pious donors with this object. Among the works forming the subject of popular expositions the records of South India mention sectarian scriptures as well as devotional hymns in the vernacular.

The elaborate scheme of higher education prescribed in the Smritis for the students of the three upper classes after their investiture with the sacred thread is repeated in the commentaries and digests with some supplementary explanations. As regards periods of study, studentship for long terms is included in the list of practices forbidden in the Kali Age in Smriti-chandrikā after a quotation from the Adi Purāṇa and in Smriti-yatrasāra. And yet the Smriti-chandrikā elsewhere quotes from the older texts the directions about the duties of the life-long student (naishṭhika-brahmacya), who is distinguished from the student who passes on to the state of householder after expiration of the period of his training.

Among the duties of the student daily begging for food occupies an important place. The student must beg every morning and evening except when he is in 'distress'. Begging is not an permanent injunction since its non-performance entails a penance. The alms sought for should be sufficient for one's meals and no more. According to the strict interpretation of the Smriti-yatrasāra
a student should beg from the household of a blameless Brāhmaṇa.
In the opinion of the Śrītī-chandrīkā he should beg first from his
caste-fellows and, in default, from the Kshatriyas and the Vaiśyas,
but not from the Śūdras. According to Vijñāneśvara the student
may beg from the three upper classes and, in times of distress, from
all the four classes. Among other duties of the Vedic student, we
are told that he shall avoid honey, meat, unguents for the body
and collyrium for the eyes except, as the Śrītī-chandrīkā says,
when he is required to use them during his illness by the physician.
The student shall refrain from reviling his teacher or even men­
tioning him by name. He shall also avoid conveyances, shoes and
umbrellas, singing and dancing, harsh and coarse speech, and so
forth. He shall not touch or look at women where there is the risk
of his falling into sin.

As regards relations between the teacher and the student the
commentaries and digests explain the circumstances permitting the
teacher’s receipt of money from his pupils. Learning from a paid
teacher and teaching for a fee are both admitted to be lesser sins
(ūpāpatīkas). This ban, however, as Vijñāneśvara4 says, does not
apply to a student who pays the fees without a prior agreement.
As Aparārka5 and the author of the Śrītī-chandrīkā6 explain, what
is forbidden is teaching by stipulation for payment of a fee, while
teaching is itself prescribed in the Śrīritis as a means of livelihood.
The teacher failing to correct an inattentive pupil by reprimand
may, according to Śrītī-chandrīkā,7 beat him. Similarly, accord­
ing to Vijñāneśvara and Aparārka,8 beating a pupil should be re­
sorted to only for correction. The beating should be done with rope
or a split bamboo, and not with the hand, and it should be applied
not to the head but to the lower part of the body. The violation
of this restriction by the teacher amounts to an offence punishable
by the king. The teacher, according to Śrītī-chandrīkā,9 failing
to instruct his pupil (other than a Śūdra) incurs blame. But the
student must always study under a Brāhmaṇa, learning from a
Kshatriya or a Vaiśya being permitted only in times of distress.

The commentaries and digests, like the Śrīritis, are silent about
a scheme of technical education of apprentices in trades and crafts.
We have, however, some valuable hints on the system of apprentice­
ship in the Śrītī section on Law entitled non-rendition of ser­
vice,10 which proves the continuance of the old system in its
essential aspects.11

Reference may be made in this connection to Marco Polo’s vivid
description12 of the very practical method of training tradesmen’s
apprentices in the Pāṇḍya region in his time. When the boys reach
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

the age of thirteen, we are told, the parents dismiss them from their homes with a small pocket allowance for earning their living by trade. "These urchins are running about all day from pillar to post, buying and selling." During the season for pearl-fishing they run to the beach and purchase five or six pearls according to their ability and sell them to the merchants in their homes. In the same way they deal with many other articles. Thus they are trained to be very dexterous and keen traders. Testimony to the excellence of the craftsman's training at its highest levels is borne by the superb specimens of art and industry attested to by the literary records as well as the archaeological remains of this period.

We have an interesting glimpse into the methods and principles of princely education in vogue at this period in Manasollasa. The author says that the princes should be instructed in the Vedas as well as military science. When the princes have completed their training and have become skilled in mounting horses and elephants and in managing chariots, the king shall test them one after another. The test applies to their skill in various branches of literature (the Vedas, logic, the Dharma-sastras, belles-lettres and grammar), in the fine arts, in wielding the bow and other weapons, and in exhibiting their strength as well as steadiness of body and mind. The high standards of princes' training are illustrated at their best by the instances of the scholar-kings of this period. Such are the mysterious Aparārka (otherwise called Aparāditya), Someivara III of the Western Chalukya dynasty of Kalyāṇa, Ballālasena of the Sena dynasty of Bengal, and above all the illustrious Bhoja of the Paramāra dynasty of Mālwā.

II. PRIVATE AND PUBLIC ENDOWMENTS FOR PROMOTION OF LEARNING

We have seen how the Smṛiti law contemplates the students of the upper classes as receiving their higher education at the residences of Brāhmaṇa teachers. The settlements of the Brāhmaṇas in villages and specially on lands (agrahāra) granted to them by royal and other donors, which are frequently referred to in the inscriptions of this period, evidently provided ample opportunity for such teaching. Side by side with this ancient and venerated institution of the Brāhmaṇa guru teaching his pupils at his residence, there grew up in India from early times larger or smaller establishments specifically endowed by kings and other donors for the promotion of education. The historical records of this period contain numerous instances of such educational establishments. In Eastern India the great Buddhist monastic University of Nālandā continued to flourish,
EDUCATION

though probably with less splendour than before, while new monas-
teries like Vikramāśila, Somapura, Jagaddala and Uddanāṇapura rose
into importance as centres of learning.14 In the eleventh century
A.D. the mathās of Kāśmir became so famous for their learning
that they drew students, according to the testimony of Kahemendra,
even from distant Gauḍā. In the regions of Madhyapraśāda a Saiva
temple with a matha and a hall of study was founded by the Queen-
mother Alhaḍadevī, according to an inscription of A.D. 1155.15 In
the Deccan and the Kannada country references are made to endow-
ments of land by individual donors for the promotion of learning.
A Brāhmaṇa in the time of Vikramāditya VI16 appointed a body of
104 village-mahājanas as trustees for his gift of certain lands. Under
the terms of the trust a certain portion of land with a house-site was
assigned as maintenance (bhātṛarājī) to a teacher for teaching the
grammatical work called Nyāsa and the Mimāṃsā work of Prabhā-
kara, while another portion with a house-site was made over to a
teacher in Mathematics, Astronomy, Prosody and Grammar for his
personal requirements as well as for teaching his pupils, feeding
them once a day, and supplying them with cloth once a year. The
inscriptions likewise refer to endowments of money for the same
purpose. The chief Queen of Vikramāditya VI gave money in trust
to the mahājanas of a village for maintenance of a commentator of
the śāstras, a reader of the Purāṇas, and teachers of the Rigveda and
Yajurveda.17 In the same reign a general gave money in trust to
a body of mahājanas for teaching different branches of learning. We
also hear of the foundation of educational institutions by individual
donors, as of a lecture-hall built by king Vikramāditya VI’s Super-
intendent of religious affairs for teaching Prabhākara’s doctrine of
Pūrva-mimāṃsā,18 of a matha of the Saiva sect which was at once a
temple, a college, and an alms-house,19 and of a matha founded by
an astronomer for the study of Bhāskarāchārya in the time of the
Yadava king Sīnhaṇa in A.D. 1207.

In the Kākatiya kingdom a famous Saiva teacher20 allotted out
of two villages assigned to him by Queen Rūḍrāmbādevī certain
lands for maintenance of a Saiva temple along with a college,
a feeding house for Saiva mendicants, and so forth. The col-
lege maintained a staff of three teachers of Rīgveda, Yajurveda, and
Śānkalika respectively, and five teachers of logic, literature, and the
āgamas. Allotment of land was made likewise to a physician for
attending upon the resident-teachers, students, and attendants.
The largest number of records of endowments for learning that have come down to us for this period are those of the Imperial
Cholas. In the reign of Rājaśā I a certain individual21 endowed
gold coins for payment out of their interest to one who recited the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Sāmaṇera on a fixed day in the year. In the reign of Rājendra Chōla I a village assembly created an endowment\(^{22}\) for maintenance, at fixed rates of paddy per day, of 270 junior pupils studying the four Vedas, the Kalpaśūtras, and Grammar (according to the work called Ṛṣīpiivatiīra), of 70 senior students studying Grammar and Mīmāṃsā according to the Prabhakara school, and of the teachers in these subjects. Reference is made\(^{23}\) to a college near the temple at Kāṇchipuram in an inscription of the reign of Rājendra Chōla I. A village assembly in the reign of Rājādhīrāja I purchased lands\(^{24}\) for maintenance on similar terms of 12 teachers of different branches of Vedic literature, 7 other teachers of Vedānta, Vyākaraṇa, Ṛṣīpiivatiīra, Mahābhārata, Rāmāyaṇa, Mānavaśāstra and Vaiṅgśa-sāstra, of 190 students of these branches of learning, and of 70 other students of Vedānta, Vyākaraṇa and the Ṛṣīpiivatiīra. According to another and more important record\(^{25}\) king Vīra Rājendra created an endowment in land and money in favour of a temple of Vīṣṇu as well as the college, the hostel, and the hospital attached to it. The college provided for 60 students of whom 10 each studied the Ṛigveda and the Yajurveda, 20 studied Vyākaraṇa with the Ṛṣīpiivatiīra, and the rest comprised Mahāpaścharātras, the Śaiva-Brāhmaṇas, and the Vaiṅgśas studying their respective scriptures. The teaching staff included one teacher of the Ṛigveda, one teacher of the Yajurveda, and a Bhaṭṭa for expounding Vyākaraṇa. The students were to receive daily food according to a fixed schedule, sleeping mats, and oil for bathing on 51 Saturdays of the year. The teachers were to be paid in kind and in cash at fixed rates. The cooks and maidservants of the establishment were to receive wages at fixed rates. The hospital was provided with 15 beds. The physician-in-charge was paid at a fixed rate for prescribing medicines to the teachers, the students and their attendants. Provision was also made for one surgeon, two persons for fetching medicinal herbs, two nurses and one barber who were likewise to be paid at fixed rates. In the reign of king Vīkrama Chōla, one of the king’s officers\(^{26}\) endowed lands for maintenance of a feeding house for those studying medicine, Grammar, and the Ṛṣīpiivatiīra, as well as for Brāhmaṇas, ascetics, and so forth. A donor in the reign of Rājārāja II assigned\(^{27}\) certain lands for maintenance of Brāhmaṇa students of the Vedānta coming from the Malayalam country in the matha established by himself.

A curious sidelight is thrown on the sins and follies of student life by Kṣhemendra’s satiric picture\(^{28}\) on the life of foreign (specially Gauḍiya) students in contemporary Kāśmir. Characteristically enough the student figures in a typical list of cheats and rogues satirized by the poet in this work. The poet first refers to the
student’s exceptional physical weakness at his arrival (he is shunned by the people from a distance for fear of touching a skeleton) and his quick gain of strength (he changes at it were into a new body by partaking of food and using unguents at sacrifices for which he procures his invitation by ostentatious display of his piety and his ceremonial purity). Reference is next made to his ignorance and self-conceit (though knowing with difficulty the syllable ‘Om’, he engages in learned contests with a view to defeating veteran Kashmirian scholars and though ignorant of the alphabet he pretends to study the Mahâbhashya of Patañjali, Logic, and the Mimânsâ work of Prabhâkara). He is foppish in dress and toilette (he has his nails painted with lac-juice, he wears variegated dress and fashionable shoes, he decorates his waist with a red sash, and he makes graceful gestures with his eyebrows). He is a man of loose morals (he frequents houses of prostitutes and carries on intrigues with other men’s wives, he looks like Kubera in the morning with the dangling golden ear-rings and his large finger-rings, but he has the look of a demon in the evening after his defeat at dice-play). The five spoilers of the Gauḍa libertine are the gambler, the bawd, the prostitute, the leather-worker, and the barber. The student is a man of violent habits (he drives out workmen with blows of sticks, demolishes students’ residence with stick in hand and with his clothes stuck to his body and his matted hair tied up for the strife). He plays the bully at sacrifices, at bathing places, at students’ hostels and in his dealings with merchants and physicians. He blazes forth with anger without any provocation on the occasion of bathing, making gifts, performing vows and giving offerings to the manes.

In all ages and countries the satirist draws upon the rare and unusual traits and embellishes them from his own imagination in order to provide for cheap merriment. The account of Kshemendra, therefore, need not be taken as typical of student life, even in Gauḍa. But it should serve as a corrective to those who fondly believe that everything in ancient India was good and glorious.

In conclusion, reference should be made to the effect of Muslim invasion on education. The destructive fury of the early Muslim conquerors gave an irreparable blow to indigenous learning in the territories brought within their sway. This is indicated by the statement of the great Muslim scholar Al-Birûnî about the disastrous consequences of the invasions of Sultan Mahmûd of Ghaznî. “Hindu sciences”, he says,29 “have retired far away from those parts of the country that have been conquered by us, and have fled to places which our hand cannot yet reach, to Kashmir, Banaras and other places”.

S. E.—28
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

2. I. 29.
3. I. 107-72.
5. Loc. cit.
6. I. 146.
7. I. 142.
9. I. 143.
12. II. 344.
13. Ill. 1263-1304.
14. HBR, 1. s.v.
15. EI, II. 7 f.
16. EI, XX. 67 f.
17. ARSIE, 518 of 1915.
18. EI, XV. 336 f.
19. EI, V. 221-22.
20. ARSIE, 94 of 1917.
21. ARSIE, 16 of 1914.
22. ARSIE, 333 of 1917.
23. ARSIE, 249 of 1920-31.
24. ARSIE, 176 of 1917.
25. EI, XXI. 230 f.
26. ARSIE, 159 of 1925.
27. ARSIE, 276 of 1925.
28. Desarpuleia, VI.

514
CHAPTER XIX

ECONOMIC CONDITION

I. THE VILLAGE AND THE CITY

The rural economy of the Indian people has for centuries been centered on what may be called in general terms communities of peasant-proprietors, who paid revenues to government under various specified heads, but were otherwise, as a rule, left free in the possession of their holdings. It is true that this system was overlaid from an early period by the royal grants and assignments of lands for various purposes. Such grants and assignments must have led to the creation of larger or smaller estates comprising numbers of villages. Nevertheless the royal grants and assignments involved as a rule no more than transfer of the king's dues and rights in favour of the donees. In the South, especially, the village communities maintained their corporate organisation at this period with full vigour. For the contemporary inscriptions frequently record the gift or sale of lands by these bodies and their appointment as trustees by pious and charitable donors. While the village thus remained, as before, the backbone of the Indian economy, there was, as in the earlier period, a vigorous growth of city-life. We have, to begin with, an impressive list of cities (including great internal marts and sea-ports) furnished by the contemporary Indian and foreign evidence. The descriptions of these cities are as a rule given in such general terms as to preclude a reconstruction of their economic life. The records of the South Indian dynasties, however, give us occasional glimpses of the extensive commercial activities of the cities, the value of this evidence being enhanced by its incidental character. In a twelfth century inscription of the reign of the Western Chalukya Taila II belonging to the Telugu area we read how the desi merchants of a city, speaking four different dialects, joined with others in making a pious endowment. This consisted of tolls imposed upon their articles of trade, namely pack-horses, musk, saffron, yak-tail, cotton and cotton-thread, beads, tiger-skins, women's clothes, lead, and tin. An inscription of A.D. 1204 relating to the city of Belgaum (in Dharwār District) mentions a pious endowment by “an assembly of itinerant traders and all the traders of Lāṭa (Gujarat) and the Malayalam country and all the other traders of the locality headed by the gold-workers and others and the oil-merchants". An inscription of king Gaṇapati of the Kāka-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

tiya dynasty of Warangal,³ belonging to the first half of the thirteenth century A.D., states that the king, renouncing the earlier practice of confiscating all cargoes of vessels driven to the port of Moqupalle by bad weather, granted a charter for levying customs duties upon a few selected articles only (evidently because of their high level). The articles consisted of sandal-wood, camphor, pearls, rose-water, copper, zinc, lead, silk-thread, corals, perfumes, pepper, and areca-nuts. We have a remarkable instance of the inhabitants of a city and a territorial sub-division regulating the economic life of the community in a record⁴ belonging to the time of Kuloṭtunaga III. Here we are told that a certain vāḍa and nāgara assembled together in a temple and made an agreement for converting a village granted by them into a mercantile town.

II. AGRICULTURE, INDUSTRY AND TRADE

Agriculture, which has been through the centuries the principal occupation of the Indian people, was well cared for during our period. A large variety of cereals as well as edible vegetables and plants, with their sub-divisions, is mentioned in the lexicons.⁶ In the description of the king's dietary in Mānasollāsa⁶ reference is made to eight varieties of the rice distinguished by their colour, odour, size, and period of growth, and seven different kinds of beans. It further appears from the records that scientific agriculture was practised as before in the present period. The cereals were classified⁷ under three heads, namely those grown in pods (śamidhānya), the awned grains (śukadhānya), and rice of different varieties. The fields were classified⁸ according to their qualities, namely, those which were fertile, those unfit for cultivation, those under cultivation, those lying fallow, and those with a saline soil. They were also classified⁹ according to the crops grown on them, the quality of seeds sown on them, and the number of times they were ploughed.¹⁰

Traditions attribute to the Chola kings of this period the construction of the famous anicuts across the Kāveri river in Tanjore District, which were renovated in much later times by the British Government. The most famous of these public works is the Great Anicut below the island of Śrīraṅgam which consists of a massive dam of unhewn stone, 1080 ft. long and from 40 to 60 ft. broad.¹¹

The descriptions of our authors, both indigenous and foreign, help us to identify some of the principal agricultural regions of these times. As for cereals Magadh is mentioned for its richness in rice,¹⁵ while the rice of the Kālīgā country is included in the list of its varieties suitable for the king's dietary.¹³ As regards fruits and fruit-trees, grapes are mentioned by Kalhaya¹⁴ with patriotic pride as
one of the ordinary products of Kashmir. From the Muslim writer Idrisi we learn that date-trees and coconut-trees grow at Sandian (Sindhudurga in Ratnagiri District) and that coconut-trees grow in abundance at Saymir (Sirur in South Canara). As for other edible economic products, ginger and cinnamon were produced in large quantities in the Pandyam kingdom according to Marco Polo, while camphor grew on the mountain-slopes between Quilon and Madura according to Yaqut. Marco Polo, writing evidently on second-hand information, observes that "Bengala" (Bengal) produced spikenard and other spices, ginger, sugar, and other articles. According to Idrisi, cardamum grew on the hill-slopes at Fandarina (Pandalayani in Malabar for which see below) in such abundance as to be exported to different lands. Malabar, according to Ibn Sa'id, was the country of pepper. In particular it is stated to have been grown at Sandian, as well as at Fandarina, Jurbatan and Quilon (all in Malabar), according to Idrisi, Yaqut and Qazwiní. Similarly, according to Marco Polo, Malabar produced large quantities of pepper. As for non-edible economic products bamboo and its varieties grew at Kuli (in the Gulf of Cambay), Taná (Thana in Salsete island), Sandian and Saymir according to Idrisi, and at Quilon according to Yaqut and Qazwiní. Sandal-wood was a product of the Malaya hill (the southern part of the Western Ghats) while Kashmir produced yellow sandal which was used as an unguent by kings in the rainy season. Saffron is mentioned by Kalpak as one of the two ordinary products of Kashmir. Cotton trees of a very great height and of a longevity of twenty years grew in Gujerat. Less authenticated is Marco Polo's statement that cotton grew in Bengal and formed the subject of a great trade. Indigo was produced in great quantities in Gujerat (including Cambay), and that of a very fine quality as well as in great abundance at Quilon. Incense of the inferior brown variety was found at Taná. "Brazil wood" (sappan) of very fine quality as well as teak grew at Kulam (Quilon).

As regards animal products the preparation of silk from the cocoons of the silkworm and of wool from the hair of the hilly ram was of course widely known. Equally familiar was the use of the bushy tail of the Himalayan chamar-deer for preparing flywhisks and of musk from the Himalayan musk-deer. Elephant's tusks (or ivory) are mentioned by Chau Ju-Kua among the products of the Chola kingdom. The manufacture of leather, which is a very old Indian industry going back to Vedic times, was greatly developed in some regions during this period. From Marco Polo we learn that Taná had a great export trade in leather of various excellent kinds. Likewise Cambay had a great trade in very well-dressed hides.
Gujarat, above all, produced large numbers of dressed skins of different kinds (those of goats, of domestic and wild oxen, of buffaloes and so forth) as well as "beautiful mats in red and blue leather, exquisitely inlaid with figures of birds and beasts and skilfully embroidered with gold and silver wire". It also produced other cushions (apparently of leather) embroidered with gold. These articles were in high demand in Western lands; the "sleeping mats", which were "marvellously beautiful things", and the cushions being sold for ten and six silver marks apiece respectively. A more valuable industry dating from ancient times was that of the pearl-fisheries and the preparation of pearls for ornaments. The pearl-fisheries at Sūhāra (Suparem or Supara in the north of Bombay) and Fāsal (Bekal, thirty-four miles south-south-east from Mangalore), which are referred to by Yaqūt, were evidently of slight or no importance. Chau Ju-Kua includes pearls among the native products in the Chōla kingdom, but he gives no other information on this point. The great seat of the pearl-fisheries in this as in other periods was the Pāṇḍya kingdom. Marco Polo, writing at the close of the thirteenth century, observes that pearls were fished in great quantities in the kingdom of Malabar which in fact was the place from which they were spread all over the world. The pearl-shells, he says, were found in the gulf between India and Ceylon during the season from the beginning of April to the middle of May every year and, at an undefined place "some three hundred miles distant", during September and the first half of October. The author gives in this connection a vivid description of the fishing operations conducted by the pearl-fishers. They engaged the services of fish-charmers as well as a large number of divers for the whole season, and had to pay the high royalty of 10% of their finds to the king.

The manufacture of textiles, which is a very old Indian industry, appears to have been carried on with conspicuous success during this period. We can locate some of the advanced centres of textile manufacture from the contemporary evidence. The Mānasollāsa gives us a long list of fabrics for the king's use after their places of origin. The definitely Indian names in this list are Nāgapaṭāna (Negapatam), the Chōla country, Anilavāda (Anahillapāṭaka in Gujārāt), Mūlasthāna (Mullān), Kālaṅga and Vaṅga. According to Chau Ju-Kua Gujārāt produced for export to Arabian lands large quantities of "foreign cotton stuffs of every colour" (chintzes). Marco Polo similarly observes that much fine "buckram" (cotton stuffs) was produced in the kingdom of Cambay. In Mūḷāṅga, according to Chau Ju-Kua, cotton cloths were such a very common product as to form the subject of a considerable export trade. The native products of Malabar, according to the same author, included
ECONOMIC CONDITION

“foreign cotton stuffs of all colours” (chintzes) and (white) cotton cloth. This is corroborated by Marco Polo who speaks of the manufacture of “very beautiful and delicate buckrams” in Malabar. Coming to the Coromandel Coast we find Ibn Sa'id testifying that Ma'bar was proverbial for its arts of washing and dyeing, and that it exported “lainas” (coloured silk or cotton cloth). Again Chau Ju-Kua includes “cotton stuffs with coloured silk threads” and other such stuffs among the products of the Chola dominion. Finally, as regards the Telugu country, the finest cotton fabrics were produced, according to Marco Polo, in the kingdom of “Muttil” (Warangal). From the enthusiastic account of the traveller we learn that this kingdom produced the most delicate and costly ‘buckrams’ which looked like tissues of the spiders’ web and which were fit for any king or queen in the world.

Stone-cutting, including stone-polishing, is an Indian industry going back to the prehistoric culture of the Sindhu valley. The vast scale and superb quality of the stone sculpture and architecture of this period are illustrated by the numerous examples of stone-images and temples scattered all over the country. Reference should also be made to the superb stone-terraces around the sacred tanks which drew the enthusiastic admiration of so gifted a critic as Al-Biruni. The art of working metals which, like the manufacture of textiles, goes back to Vedic times, was pursued with great success during this period. The most fascinating remains of the skill of the iron-smiths of this period are the iron-beams, all of unwrought iron, in the temples of Bhuvaneśvara, Puri and Konāрак, and, above all, the celebrated iron-pillar at Dhar, the capital of the Paramāra kings of Malwā. The number of the beams in one of the Puri temples (‘the Garden Temple’) alone has been counted as 239, while they reach the size of 17’ in length and 6” x 4” or 5” x 6” in section. In the Konāрак temple the beams, though smaller in number, reach even a larger size, namely 33’ in length and 7’’ or 7½” square in section. The iron-pillar at Dhar, now unfortunately broken into three pieces, has been estimated to have originally reached a height of 50’, being the highest pillar of its kind in the world.

As regards gold and silver work the Mānasollāsa, in the course of its enumeration of the king’s seats, mentions the golden lion-throne. Again, while enumerating the king’s bedsteads, it mentions those inlaid with gold. The inscriptions frequently record the acts of pious donors in decorating temples with gold and in presenting vessels and ornaments of gold and silver to the deities, whose images were also sometimes made of gold and silver. Reference has
been made above to these and other articles of gold and silver in connection with the plunder of Sultan Mahmūd. The art of the jeweller was maintained at its old level of excellence during this period. The list of jewels in the lexicons includes crystal, sun-stone, moon-stone, emerald, ruby, coral, diamond, sapphire, beryl (or lapis lazuli), and pearls. We have a full description (evidently derived from the old works on ratnaparikṣā) of the sources and characteristics of various gems in the Mānasollāsa. The list comprises diamond, pearl, ruby, sapphire, emerald, crystal, topaz, lapis lazuli, the *gomeda* gem, and coral. From the testimony of Marco Polo also we learn that diamonds were found abundantly and in large size in the kingdom of “Mutflī” (Warangal), although his story of the method of their collection is purely legendary.

The overland routes connecting India with Western Asia go back to the centuries before the Christian era, while those linking her with Central Asia and China came into use some time later. With the gradual advance of the arms of Islam from India's border lands to her heart in the Ganga valley, the control of these routes must have passed entirely into the hands of the Muslim rulers.

The extent and direction of India's maritime trade are known principally from the detailed accounts of the foreign writers. It appears from these accounts that Ma'bar was a sort of clearing-house for the goods of the East and West. As Wassaf says, the products of China, India (sic) and Sindh laden on huge ships constantly arrive at Ma'bar. To this he adds that the wealth of the isles of the Persian Gulf and the beauty and adornment of other countries from Iraq and Khurāsān as far as Rum and Europe are derived from Ma'bar which is so situated as to be the key of Hind. Wassaf's testimony is borne out in part by Marco Polo. Speaking of “Cail” (Kayal on the Tāmrāparṣī river) he describes it as a great and noble city which was visited by ships from the Persian Gulf and the Arabian coast with goods laden for sale. The ports of Malabar likewise ranked as international centres of trade. Thus Idrisi mentions Fandarīna as a port of call for ships from India and Sindh. According to Abu Dulaf (quoted by Yaqūt), Kawlam (Quilon) was a port of embarkation for ‘Umnān (in Arabia). From Chou K'u-fei we learn that Quilon was a port of transhipment of traders from the smaller boats of the Arabian sea to the larger vessels of the Chinese seas. Chau Ju-Kua observes that Quilon was a port of call for ships coming from San-fo-ts'i and its dependencies. Of the land of “Nan-p’i” (Malabar) he similarly says that its products were carried to Ki-lo Ta-nung (Perak) and San-fo-ts'ai.
ECONOMIC CONDITION

Polo also observes that ships with their goods came to Malabar both from South China and the West, the former preponderating over the latter in the proportion of 10 to 1. In particular we are told that merchants from South China and from Arabia and the Levant came to Quilon with their ships and their merchandise and derived great profit from the import as well as the export trade. We further learn that Ela, in spite of its want of harbours, was visited by ships from South China and other lands in summer, the Chinese ships braving the visit the most because of their huge wooden all-weather anchors.

Important also for international trade was the Gujarāt coast. Idrīsī tells us that Barūs (Broach) was a port of call for vessels coming from China and from Sindh. Cambay, according to Marco Polo, was visited by merchants with many ships and cargoes. The same author observes that the products of Gujarāt were loaded in ships every year for trade with Arabia and other lands. There are references to other ports which were evidently of lesser importance, viz. Bullin (probably an island near Sāymūr, Shirur in the South Canara District), Subara (= Supara on the Konkan coast), Tāna (=Thānā) Jurbatān (=Srikandapūram), Sandān (=Sindudurg in the Ratnagiri District), and Sindubūr (=Sādāśivagad near Kārwār, which was a commercial town with fine buildings and rich bazaars), where ships cast anchor.

Inscriptions in Upper Burma and Sumatra still commemorate the operations of the great Indian trading corporation of this period, known as the Nānādesis, in those lands. To the foreign observers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries we are indebted for fuller and more direct evidence of Indian maritime and commercial enterprises in the lands of South-Eastern as well as Western Asia during this period. From Benjamin of Tudela, a Spanish Jew, who started on his travels to the greater part of the then known world in A.D. 1159, we learn that Indian merchants brought their commodities for sale to the island of Kīh in the Persian Gulf, one of the great international marts of Western Asia at that time. At the close of the thirteenth century A.D., Marco Polo similarly noticed that the merchants of India visited Hormoe (Hormuz in the Persian Gulf) in ships loaded with products of their land for sale to the merchants of Western Asia. We are further told that the great city of Calatu on the Persian Gulf was visited by numerous ships with goods from India. It was not, however, to the Persian Gulf alone that the maritime activities of the Indian merchants in the West were confined at this period. We learn from Marco Polo that the ships of Ma'bar visited the islands of Madagascar.
and Zanzibar, arriving there in twenty days, while taking more than three months for the return voyage because of the strong southern current. In the East, according to the same authority, Zayton (Chwan-Chau or Chinchew in Fu-Kien), the great sea-port of mediaeval China, was visited by all the ships of India with spices and other kinds of costly wares.

We possess a fair idea of the articles of India’s maritime trade with the West and the East. As regards imports, we may first refer to the synonym, turushka, given in Vaijayanti, for incense. This evidently refers to the frankincense of the coast of Hadharmaut in South Arabia which has been famous from classical times and is particularly noticed by Marco Polo. Among other agricultural products cloves, spikenard, and other fine spices were brought into Malabar by ships from the East. As these articles are specifically mentioned among the native products of Java and Sumatra, they must have come to India from these islands. Metals formed another important article of India’s import across the seas. We learn that merchants in their ships brought gold, silver and copper to Java and Cambay. More definitely we are told that ships coming from the East to Malabar brought copper in ballast as well as gold and silver. As Sumatra has long been famous for its production of gold and since it is credited by Marco Polo himself with a great abundance of treasure, the gold brought to Malabar from the East most probably came from that island. This inference is supported by the epithet “the product of Suvoradvipa” applied to gold in Vaijayanti. We may recall in this connection the foreign synonyms given in Vaijayanti for various other metals, such as Mlechchha for copper, Yavaneshta for lead, Chinapatta and Simhala for tin, and China for iron. As for textiles we have the valuable testimony of Marco Polo to the effect that ships from the East brought clothes of silk and gold as well as “sendals” (a silk texture). As some of the great cities of China like Si-ngan fu, Ho-kien fu, Pao-ying-Hien, Chin-kiang fu, and Su-chau (to give them their modern names) are specifically stated by Marco Polo, to be famous for these products, they must have reached India from these cities. These stuffs no doubt are to be identified with the fabrics of Great China (mahâchinabhâna) mentioned in the Mānasollâsa among the varieties of the king’s wardrobe. The reference to the textiles of Ceylonese origin (Sinhhaladvipa) in the same context indicates that other fine stuffs were imported from the neighbouring island.

It remains to mention the most costly and wasteful of India’s imports at this period. In the preceding volume we have seen how
Arab and Persian merchants drove a profitable trade in horses with the ports of western and southern India. This trade appears to have attained phenomenal proportions in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries A.D. The Indian authorities of this period, like their predecessors, agree in assigning the first rank in their classified list of horses to the foreign breeds (specially those of "Vanāyu" or Arabia and Persia) and the lowest rank to the indigenous breeds, such as those of Trigartta, Gurjara, Avanti, Saurāśṭra and Pāriyātra. The great volume of India's import trade in Arab and Persian horses is indicated, beyond doubt, by the contemporary foreign writers. The figures for the imported horses and their prices indicate the extensive drain suffered by the Indian revenues from this trade. Wassaf refers to an agreement made by a Pāṇḍya king with an Arab merchant to the effect that he would embark as many horses as he could procure from the islands of the Persian Gulf and land them in Ma'bar. According to the same author the price of each horse was fixed at 220 dināras of "red gold," while the number of horses exported from the Arabian and Persian ports to the Pāṇḍya kingdom, Cambay and so forth, reached the huge figure of 14,000 valued at 2,200,000 dināras. Writing about the Pāṇḍya kingdom Marco Polo similarly observes that each horse was sold at 500 saggī (=500 x 1/6 oz.) of gold, while 2000 horses were sought for purchase every year by each of the Pāṇḍya kings. In another place Marco Polo, while describing the import of horses from the Persian Gulf into India, tells us that each horse was sold at 200 "livres" of Persian money. The necessity for this extravagant demand of the Indians for the horses from the West is traced by the foreign observers chiefly to the Indians' ignorance of the art of managing the animals. According to Wassaf the Indians were so ignorant of training horses that even the best animals under their management were soon disabled for active work. Marco Polo while lamenting the waste of a great part of the wealth of the country in the purchase of horses, gives three reasons for the same. Firstly, no horses were bred in the country. Secondly, the Indians had no farriers, and the foreign merchants prevented any farrier from going to that country for fear of losing their highly profitable trade. Thirdly, and lastly, the Indians, in their ignorance of the treatment of horses, fed them with boiled rice and boiled meat and various other cooked food.

As regards India's exports to the neighbouring lands beyond the seas, we learn from Benjamin of Tudela that Indian merchants carried great quantities of spices to the island of Kish in the Persian Gulf for exchange with the goods brought thereto by the merchants of Mesopotamia, Yemen and Persia. Marco Polo similarly men-
tions that Indian merchants visited Hormuz in ships loaded with spices, precious stones, pearls, clothes of silk and gold, elephants' tusks, and so forth which they sold to the local merchants. The further statements of the foreign writers enable us to specify the articles exported from different geographical areas. We learn from Chau Ju-Kua\(^{98}\) that Gujarāt produced indigo, myrobolans, and coloured cotton stuffs in such abundance that they were exported to the lands of the Arabs. Again we learn from Marco Polo that most of the manufactures in Gujarāt, mentioned above\(^{99}\), filled a number of ships every year for export to Arabia and other lands.

### III. THE ORGANISATION OF INDUSTRY AND TRADE

We have seen in the preceding volume what a large part was played by the industrial and commercial guilds in the economic life of our country during the previous centuries. The same important role was played by these groups during the period under review.

The law relating to guilds and associated groups is treated in the commentaries and digests\(^{100}\) as in the Śmritis, under a distinctive title called violation of compact (samāyikāya) otherwise called non-transgression of compact (samayasyānapākārya). We learn from the Śṛiṅga-chandrika that the samāhas (groups) had the authority of making compacts (samaya) for overcoming misfortunes like droughts and oppression of thieves and kings, and these compacts were binding not only upon themselves but also upon the king. Illustrating this statement the author says that the naigamas have many such rules as that those disregarding messengers in (the uniform of) a jacket are to be fined and that the śreṣṭhīs have such rules as that a certain commodity is to be sold by a particular śreṣṭha and no other. These illustrations show how the craft-guilds and the merchant-guilds devised their own rules for maintaining their authority and for controlling the market. Explaining the constitution of samāhas after the Śṛiṅga pattern, the author observes that because of the differences of minds among their members and their unlimited numbers the samāhas are incapable of deciding unanimously on the merits and demerits of their business, and that, therefore, they should appoint boards of two, three or five "overseers of public business" (kārvachintaka). Not only the overseers of the samāhas, but also those advisers for their good (hitavādina) who do not belong to this body, shall be obeyed by all the members. The samāhas themselves, in the first instance, have the authority to punish offenders against their regulations. This comprises fining one who is hostile to the advisers or denies a speaker his opportunity or makes an unreasonable speech, and banishing
ECONOMIC CONDITION

from the place of the assembly one who betrays their secrets, or creates dissensions among themselves, or is guilty of such other offences. When the samāhas are incapable of dealing with their members in such matters as stopping the insolence of their chiefs (mukhya), the king shall interfere for the purpose of setting the offender on his proper path. When the mukhya cannot be made to do so even by the king, he shall be deprived of all his property and banished from the kingdom, for the king alone is competent to inflict such punishments. But the samāha alone shall exercise this disciplinary authority if it is but slightly competent to do so. Reverting to the penalties against offending members of the samāha, the author says that the mukhya, who cannot be set by the king on his proper path, shall be fined on a graduated scale according to the extent of his solvency, and he shall be banished in case of extreme urgency. When those guilty of violating the compacts are not mukhyas, they shall be fined according to the degree of their guilt, and when they are very near the level of the mukhyas, they shall be deprived of all their property and banished from the capital.

We find in epigraphic records frequent references to the activities of the mercantile and other guilds, which founded pious endowments by voluntarily imposing tolls upon various articles of their trade, trusting no doubt to the Smriti clause of law which made their agreements binding upon themselves. A famous guild of horse-dealers (kudiraichiṭṭis), having their headquarters probably in Malai-maḷālam (modern Travancore), is commemorated in a large number of inscriptions of the Chola and Pāṇḍya kings of this period. The great trading corporations mentioned in the preceding volume and their compeers, the Aṇivuṇaṇam and Vira-Vanaṇjus, flourished in South India during these centuries. The desa-salāṭu-gaṇḍar of the 18 districts are mentioned in a Mysore inscription of about A.D. 1200.

The great trading corporation of Nāṇadeśa-Tiśṭayāgiṇivattu Aṭṭāṭṭvar mentioned above flourished considerably during this period. An inscription of c. A.D. 1050 from the Mysore tract, while recording an endowment by this body (here called the Five hundred śrāmis of Ayyavole), proudly recalls their high mythical ancestry, their long history, the vast scale of their commercial transactions, and their daring and enterprising spirit. They were born, we read, in the race of Vasudeva, Khandali and Mūlabhadra; they obtained boon from the goddess Bhagavati; they had 32 velomāis, 18 cities, 64 Yoga-pithas, and ārānas at the four points of the compass; they were born to wander over many countries since the beginning of the Kṛta Yuga; they visited Chera, Chola, Pāṇḍya,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Maleya, Magadha, Kausala, Saurashtra, Dhānushtra, Kurumbha, Kāmbhoja, Gaulla, Lāla, Barvvara, Pārasa, Nepāla and other lands; they penetrated by land- and sea-routes into the regions of the six continents; they traded in elephants and horses, sapphires, moon-stones, pearls, rubies and other gems, cardamoms, cloves, bdellium, sandal, camphor and other perfumes and drugs; they sold their goods wholesale or hawked them about on their shoulders; they carried their merchandise on asses and buffaloes adorned with red trappings. The above claim of the corporation’s mythical ancestry is repeated in another record of eleventh century A.D.107 which gives us additional information of its organisation. It consisted, we are told, of various sub-divisions coming from the 1,000 (districts) of the four quarters, the 18 towns, the 32 veḷaṟṟum and the 64 ghāṭikā-sthānas. Another inscription of A.D. 1050108 describes them as a samaya (meaning unexplained) and states that they were served by regiments of foot-soldiers and swordsmen.109 That the claim of nāṇādesis to have wandered over different lands is based upon fact is proved by two striking references. They are mentioned in a fragmentary Tamil inscription of 1010 Saka (A.D. 1088) from Lōbu Tuwa in Sumatra. Again we learn from a thirteenth century inscription at Pagan110 that a native of Cranganore made a donation in favour of a Viṣṇu temple which had been founded by the nāṇādesis in that distant city of Upper Burma. An important aspect of the activities of the nāṇādesis is concerned with 500 charters (viṟaṟṟasanas) which they are repeatedly said111 to have acquired for themselves.

Next to the organisation of guilds described above, we may mention that of capitalists’ and labourers’ partnerships. The partnership, according to the Smṛti-chandrikā, is of six classes, concerned with trade, agriculture, crafts, sacrifices, singing and “theft” (“at the king’s instigation in the enemy’s country”). As for the rights and duties of the partners inter se, we are told that the profit and loss as well as the expenditure and the work are to be borne by the partners according to the special agreement there-mentioned. A partner is to make good to all the other partners what has been lost through his negligence, when he has acted without their authority or against their instructions. On the other hand, if a partner saves partnership-property by his own exertions from thieves, fire, and flood, he shall get one-tenth of the property thus saved as his special share. Similar, but not identical, rules are applicable to partnership among cultivators and artisans.

The Smṛti-chandrikā deals with the relation between capital and labour most systematically and thoroughly, and lays down in
ECONOMIC CONDITION

great detail rules about wages, compensation and liabilities—"the labour laws" as they may be called,—which are marked by equity and justice.

IV. GENERAL ECONOMIC CONDITION OF THE PEOPLE

In the above pages we have furnished sufficient evidence of the developed condition of agriculture, industry and trade in India during this period. From this it is not unreasonable to infer that a high level of economic prosperity prevailed generally among the people concerned with those vocations. It is indeed quite natural to think that this level varied not only in different parts of the country but also among the different strata of the population. But in any event, the indications of the people’s prosperity which have been preserved for us are sufficiently impressive. The opulence of the North-Indian cities and the exceptional magnificence of their temples in the first half of the eleventh century are proved by the accounts of the contemporary Muslim chroniclers, referred to above.112

If these accounts help us, though indirectly, to realise the wealth of certain geographical regions of northern India in the first half of the eleventh century A.D., other foreign notices113 give us glimpses into the economic prosperity, by means of trade and commerce, of the coastal regions of Western and Southern India in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Marco Polo114 describes the land of Ma’bar as “the best of all the Indies” and “the finest and noblest province of the world”. The immense gifts of gold and silver as well as jewellery made by kings, queens, princesses and others to the temples, such as are recorded repeatedly in the inscriptions of South India during this period, testify as much to the affluence as to the piety of the donors.

The above account refers to the economic condition of the people before the Muslim invasions began on a serious scale. The accounts of the Muslim chroniclers give vivid descriptions of the wholesale plunder and devastation of the country, as well as massacre and enslavement of its inhabitants that attended its conquest by the arms of Islam. These events could not but disrupt completely the economic life of the people who thus came under the foreign yoke.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

1. ARSE, 16 of 1917.
2. EI, XIII, 18 f.
3. ARSE, 48 of 1918.
4. ARSE, 321 of 1912.
5. Vaij, 123-28. 31-61; Abb, 471-81; 233 f.
8. Vaij, 124. 17-18; Abb, 373.4 f.
11. On the above, see Imperial Gazetteer of India, IX, s.v. Cauvery, p. 396.
14. KRT, I, 42.
15. Cf. Nainar, Arab Geographers' Knowledge of Southern India, Ch. I, s.v. Sandaa and Saymur. For the identification of the above geographical names, see Ibid.
16. II, 386.
18. II, 115.
19. Nainar, op. cit.; Ch. I, s.v.
20. Ferrand, Relations de voyages et textes géographiques, 340.
21. Nainar, op. cit.; Ch. I.
22. II, 389.
23. Nainar, op. cit.; Ch. I, s.v. For the identification of the geographical names, see Ibid.
24. Vaij, 122.112.
26. I, 42.
27. Marco Polo, II, 393.
29. Chau Ju-Kua, op. cit. 92; Marco Polo, II, 375, 393, 398.
30. Marco Polo, II, 396.
31. Yaqut and Qazwini in Nainar, op. cit, Ch. IV, s.v.
33. II, 395.
34. Ibid, 301.
35. Ibid, 309, 94.
36. Nainar, op. cit, Ch. L, s.v.
38. II, 301-32.
41. II, 308.
44. II, 389.
45. Quoted by Abul Fida in Nainar, op. cit., 55-56.
47. II, 361.
48. II, 144-45.
49. On the above, see Panchanan Niyogi, Iron in Ancient India, 21-39.
50. III, 1146-47.
51. III, 1685-86. 1691.
52. See above, pp. 14, 19 f.; HIED, II, 35.
54. II, 403 f.
55. II, 369.
56. HIED, III, 32.
57. II, 370.
58. On the above, see Nainar, op. cit., s.v.
59. Quoted in Chau Ju-Kua, op. cit., intr. 24 and 91 n.
61. Palambah in Sumatra.
63. II, 390.

528
ECONOMIC CONDITION

64. II. 375.
65. II. 386.
66. Eli, the Mt. d'Eli of the Portuguese writers, modern Elimalai, lay in the territory of the kings of the Southern Muhaka dynasty, whose capital was Kollam or Pandalayani-Kollam (ARSIE, 1929-30, p. 86, summarising the data of the recently published Sanskrit work, the Mushikarotside).
67. II. 388.
68. II. 387.
69. On Ediri's geographical notices with their identifications, see Nainar, op. cit. ch. I, p.v.
70. Ediri VII. 197-8.
71. R. H. Major, India in the Fifteenth Century, intr. xlv-l.
72. I. 107.
73. Ibid. II. 450.
74. II. 412.
75. II. 234.
76. 132.111.
77. II. 442. 445.
78. Ibid. 390.
79. Ibid. 272, 284.
80. Ibid. 365, 368.
81. Ibid. 390.
82. Ibid. 284.
83. 42.21.
84. 43.25-33.
85. II. 396.
86. Ibid. 24, 132, 152, 157, 176, 181.
87. III. 1919.
88. III. 1918.
89. Vaij, 111-12. 94-96; Ahs. 499. 300; Minagollana, IV. 689-75.
90. HIED, II. 33.34.
91. Estimated by Yule at 250 “Western dhāras” or seggi of Marco Polo, II. 349 n.
92. II. 346.
93. I. 83.
94. Estimated by Yule to be £ 190.
95. II. 346, 345, 450.
96. R. H. Major, loc. cit.
97. 1. 107.
99. See pp. 327 ff.
100. V. i. and Aver. on Yei, II. 185-192: SC. III. 320-33.
101. Cf. Ediri XVIII. 199 f, XIX. 21 f. for the reigns of the Western Chāluksya of Vaišali and the Yadavas of Devagiri respectively.
103. Vol. IV. c. 405.
104. MAH, 1930, No. 33.
106. EC, VII, SK. 118.
107. ARSIE, 256 of 1912.
108. ARSIE, 342 of 1912.
110. FT VII. 197-98.
111. EC, IV, Eg. No. 17; VII, SK. No. 118; ARSIE, 256 of 1912.
112. See text 18 f.
113. See above, pp. 316 ff.
114. II. 331.

S.E.—34

529
CHAPTER XX

ARCHITECTURE

1. ARCHITECTURE

1. Formation of the Traditional Temple Styles

The Indian Silpaśāstras recognize three main styles of temples, known as the ṇāgara, the Drāviḍa and the Vesara. The descriptions given of them are, however, vague and inadequate, and it is not possible at the present stage of our knowledge to equate the descriptions of the texts with any of the extant examples of Indian temple architecture. The term Drāviḍa indicates that the names were primarily geographical. Various texts also contain passages mentioning the respective regions in which the different styles were current, though some of the texts maintain that all the styles may be found in all the regions. All the available texts are agreed on the point that the ṇāgara style was prevalent in the region between the Himalayas and the Vindhyas. The Drāviḍa country is well known, and the texts rightly confine the Drāviḍa style to that part of the country lying between the river Krishnā and cape Kanyākumārī. As will be shown later, the temples erected in these two regions in the mediaeval period are sharply distinguished from each other, both as regards ground plan and elevation. The ṇāgara and Drāviḍa styles can thus be explained with reference to Northern India and the Drāviḍa country respectively, and the characteristic form and features of each easily determined. The term Vesara, however, is not free from vagueness. Some of the texts ascribe the Vesara style to the country between the Vindhyas and the river Krishnā. In this region, or more properly in the region for some time under the royal dynasty of the Chālukyas, a separate style of temple architecture may be recognised—a style known to the archaeologists as the ‘Chālukyan’. This style, however, is a hybrid one, borrowing elements and features both from the ṇāgara and the Drāviḍa styles, and does not become clearly distinguished before the eleventh century A.D. Thus, having regard to the evidence of monuments, the three styles of the Silpa texts can be resolved ultimately into two, viz. the ṇāgara and the Drāviḍa.

The Silpa texts, as observed above, are of very little help to us in forming an idea of the characteristic form and features of these three styles. They are always distinguished in the texts by

* The words “Text Figure” in this chapter indicate diagrams appearing at the end of the chapter.
their shapes. As for example, all the texts lay down that a Nāgara temple is quadrangular all over, i.e. from the base to the stūpa. But this feature of the plan is so very general and common that it is difficult to consider it as a sure and distinctive cognisance of a particular style of temple. The octagonal and circular shapes, respectively, of the Drāviḍa and the Vesara styles are also too inadequate to be regarded as sure and distinguishing marks for the styles concerned. Under the circumstances, one has to depend on the evidence of extant monuments for a knowledge of the particular form and features of any one of the styles mentioned in the Śilpaśāstras.

A study of the temples of Northern India reveals two distinct features—one in planning and the other in elevation. In plan the temple is always a square with a number of graduated projections in the middle of each side. These projections give it a cruciform shape with a number of re-entrant angles on each side. In elevation it exhibits a tower (śikhara), gradually inclining inwards in a convex curve. The projections in the plan are also carried upwards to the top of the śikhara, and thus there is a strong emphasis on vertical lines in elevation. On account of this and the prominence of the vigorous and unbroken outline of the tower, it is also known as the rekha śikhara. Widely distributed over a greater part of India, the Nāgara style, as could be expected, exhibits distinct varieties and ramifications in different localities, conditioned by the different lines of evolution and elaboration that each locality chose for itself. The cruciform plan and the curvilinear tower arc, however, common to every mediaeval temple of Northern India, wherever it is situated and whatever its local stamp might be. In spite of elaborations and modifications in different localities, these two fundamental features are always present in a North Indian temple, and may be considered as distinctive characteristics of the Nāgara style of temple architecture. Each of the projections on each face of the square plan leaves out a small portion at either corner, and thus are formed a number of projecting angles (āras) and facets (known as rathakās in Sanskrit and rathas in the canonical texts of Orissa). In this connection it should be observed that some of the texts describe a Nāgara temple both as chaturasra (quadrangular) and as āyatāsra. The latter term has been interpreted as rectangular. It appears, however, that chaturasra-āyatāsra of the texts should better be taken to mean “square with angles projected” (āyatāsra, i.e. āras or angles made āyata or projected). This sense finds confirmation in the plan of the Nāgara temples which, on account of the projections on each face, may appropriately be described as a square with projecting angles (chaturasra-āyatāsra).
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

The fundamental characteristics of a Nāgara temple are, as noted above, the cruciform plan and the curvilinear sikhara; and the simplest archetype of this style may be found in a group of shrines that were in existence in the sixth century A.D. The most representative examples of the group are the Daśāvatāra temple at Deogarh (Uttar Pradesh) and the brick temple at Bhātargāon (Uttar Pradesh). Though belonging to the later phase of the Gupta period, they present a distinct deviation from the archaic Gupta type of flat-roofed shrines in having each a low and stunted sikhara, gradually diminishing towards the top, over the square sanctum. They may thus be classed with the later Northern Indian sikhara temples, of which they are surely the precursors. The Daśāvatāra temple presents again a novel feature, apart from the sikhara, in the arrangement of three sculptured niches on the three walls, each as a panel framed by two pilasters on either side. These niches, along with the projection of the door-frame in the front wall, appear to set off the wall in the middle of each face. Such an arrangement may be regarded as the beginning of a device that subsequently developed into the practice of setting forward the middle of each side of the square, characteristic of the ground plan of the Nāgara temple of later days. One such projection may already be recognised in the brick temple at Bhātargāon and also in the Mahādeva temple at Nāchnā Kuṭhārā, the latter being slightly later in date (c. seventh century A.D.) than the Deogarh and the Bhātargāon temples. The sikhara of the two early monuments are badly damaged. The Deogarh tower probably shows the use of corner śāmalakas, which further indicate a fairly big-sized śāmalaka as the crowning member of the sikhara—also an inseparable component of the Nāgara temple. The projections on the body of the sanctum, whether by sculptured niches or by regular buttresses, have been carried up the body of the tower in each of the above two examples. These features constitute two other essential elements of a Nāgara temple, and the recessed frieze separating the walls of the sanctum cella from those of the tower may also be found in the early temples of the Nāgara style. The graceful and well-preserved Mahādeva temple at Nāchnā Kuṭhārā exhibits a slight convex curvature of the sikhara as it goes up, and offers the nearest approach to a temple of the Nāgara style in all its characteristic elements. The brick temple of Lakṣmīnāga at Sirpur (Madhya Pradesh), contemporary to, or only slightly later than, the Nāchnā Kuṭhārā monument, also exhibits a form of the tower which is not far removed from that of a Nāgara temple. With its origins and antecedents in the Gupta period the Nāgara style emerges in its typical form and characteristics by the eighth century A.D.
The Dravīḍa style was current in the south,¹⁰ evidently in the Dravīḍa country,¹¹ roughly the country between the river Krishṇa and Kanyakumārī¹² (Cape Comorin). The texts merely lay down that a Dravīḍa prāśāda should be octagonal (some say hexagonal) from the neck to the top,¹³ or, as one or two texts would enjoin, from the base to the top.¹⁴ But such descriptions are too vague and hardly fit the facts.¹⁵

The outstanding and common characteristic of the temples of the Dravīḍa country is the pyramidal elevation of the tower (vimāna), which consists of a multiplication of storey after storey, each a replica of the sanctum cella and slightly reduced in extent than the one below, ending in a domical member, technically known as the stūpī or stūpipāka, as the crowning element. This storied arrangement of the tower in gradually receding stages may, therefore, be regarded as a distinct individuality of the Dravīḍa style of temple, though in later phases of its history the stages become more and more compressed, so much so that they are almost hidden under a profusion of details which become characteristic of the subsequent evolution of the style. In plan the Dravīḍa temple presents an inner square chamber as the sanctum cella within a bigger square enclosure, covered and roofed over, serving as the pradakṣiṇā (circumambulatory passage). The division of the external walls into niches by pilasters is also a characteristic element of South Indian temples. The convex roll cornice, with chaitya-window motifs, demarcating each of the stages, and the little pavilions around the upper storeys may also be regarded as peculiar features of the style. The pillar-ed halls and corridors and the immense gopura (gateways) are invariably associated with temples that are considerably late, and may be left out of the present discussion.

Many of the distinctive elements of what came to be known as the Dravīḍa temple style may be found in the second group of Gupta temples, mentioned above,¹⁵ which exhibits a building consisting of an inner sanctum with a covered pradakṣiṇā forming a bigger square around. The roof is flat, and in several examples (the Parvati temple at Nachna Kūṭhāra, the Lad Khan, the Kont Gudī and the Meguti temples at Aihole, etc.) we find an upper storey, which being placed above the inner sanctum cella is necessarily set back. These storied structures are in some respects analogous to the storied pavilions, shown in relief, on the Audumbara coins from the Kāṅγrā valley of about the first century A.D.¹⁶ Structurally, however, such temples cannot be dated earlier than the fourth century A.D., and in the early structural buildings we find just the rudiments of accumulating storey after storey, in gradually reduced stages, that form the nucleus of the Dravīḍa style of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

vīmāṇa. The plan of the inner sanctum with a cloistered gallery around is a special characteristic common to this type of Gupta temples and a temple of the Drāviḍa style. Again, the scheme of the division of the walls of the Drāviḍa temple by pilasters and niches may have its origin in the peculiar device of enclosing the pradakṣiṇa square with thin slabs of stone socketted to pilasters placed at intervals, as we have in the Lad Khan at Aihole. In the Jain temple of Meguti such a decorative scheme of the exterior walls becomes clearly established. The Lad Khan as well as the Meguti further show the use of the roll cornice carved with well-shaped chaitya arches—an essential motif that came to be regarded as a distinguishing mark of the Drāviḍa style of temples. Already, then, in the Gupta period the distinctive characteristics of what came to be subsequently known as the Drāviḍa temple style may be recognised in a well-defined group or type of temples. All the early examples of the type, however, are found outside the limits of the Dravīḍa country, and the association of the type with that country is an event that is still to come. But there can be no doubt that the Drāviḍa temple is an adaptation of the earlier storeyed form of the Gupta temple, enriched further by the addition of new elements in the matter of details, which may be said to be of local origin.

It should be remembered, however, that the regional definition of the two styles comes later, and is not clear as yet. The archetypes of what came to be known as the Drāviḍa style had originally nothing to do with the Dravīḍa country, and appear first in the Deccan and Central India, occasionally also in Northern India. Even in the seventh century A.D. the śikhara, archetype of the Nāgara style, and the storeyed forms occur side by side at Aihole, Paṭṭadakal, and Bādami. The geographical delimitation of the two styles is thus yet to come.

2. Nāgara Style

The Nāgara style of temple architecture had a long and varied history. Temples, with distinctive characteristics of the style as mentioned above, are found to be widely distributed over the greater part of India. According to the Śilpaśāstras the geographical extent of the Nāgara style coincided with Northern India, i.e. the region between the Himalayas and the Vindhyas, and Ferguson’s nomenclature, the Āryāvarta style, is nearly approximate in this connection. Actually, however, the style transcends the canonical limit far to the south, and temples belonging to the style may be seen from the Himalayas in the north to the Bijāpur District
in the south, from the Punjab in the west to Bengal in the east. With such a vast geographical extent it is natural that there are local variations and ramifications in the formal development of the style in the different regions, although such local developments do not alter materially its basic characteristics. Such variations are caused by local conditions, by different directions in development, as well as by assimilation of extraneous trends wherever these made themselves felt. On account of such wide distribution and varied developments, a consecutive historical treatment of the style is not possible, except on a regional basis. The different phases of the Nāgara style will, therefore, be dealt with geographically.

A. Orissa

Of all the regional developments of the Nāgara style that of Orissa is one of the most remarkable. From the seventh to the thirteenth century A.D. innumerable temples were erected in Orissa, and it has been truly observed that "there are perhaps more temples now in Orissa than in all the rest of Hindustan put together". The activity centred round the sacred city of Bhuvaneśvara (Bhuvaneswar), a temple town which alone contains hundreds of temples, large and small, in various stages of preservation. Along the coast the movement extends in the north-east and south-west, roughly covering the area of the modern State of Orissa. Circumscribed within this area, these temples form, to quote Ferguson, "one of the most compact and homogeneous architectural groups in India". This prolific and sustained architectural activity was due in a large measure to the patronage of the different dynasties of kings, and the preservation of so many fine examples, to the comparative immunity of the country from Muslim inroads till a late period. The result is that there is more or less a continuous series of monuments which enables us to trace the history of this local development of the Nāgara style with a certain amount of exactness and precision. One other singular fact is that the Orissan temples, in spite of an unbroken history of several centuries, remain nearest to the original archetype, while other regional manifestations of the Nāgara style indicate great modifications and transformations in course of evolution. As such, the Orissan group may be said to represent, to some extent, a pure form of the original Nāgara style. Its graceful proportions, solemn and unbroken outline, and elegant design and decorative scheme enhance the beauty of the original archetype, but without any loss of balance, strength, or stability. Not only historically, but architectonically too, it is the most interesting and instructive series of all the temple
forms of the Nāgara style, and it is only natural and logical that a study of the development of the style should begin with Orissa.

The earliest temple in Orissa, like the older type of the Gupta period, is a single building consisting of a square sanctum, topped by a curvilinear tower, with one buttress-like projection in the middle of each face. The typical Orissan temple, however, has, in addition, the porch hall in front distinguished by a pyramidal roof (known locally as mukha-mandapa or jagamohana). In the early temples the porch hall appears to have been absent. In the Paraśurāmeśvara temple at Bhubanesvara (Fig. 3) there is a rectangular porch hall roofed over by two sloping tiers forming a clerestory; but this porch, too, appears to have been a later addition. In subsequent examples, however, the porch hall became a necessary concomitant of the Orissan temples. The sanctum with the curvilinear tower is known as the rekha deul, whereas the jagamohana with the pyramidal roof is called the bhadra or pīṭha deul. Each of these two components offers a counterplay in the design of the other.

Orissa had its own canons of architecture,—a set of literature which has been edited by a competent scholar who made a thorough study of it with the help of local craftsmen, supplementing it by personal field observations. As a result of the study of the canons the building art in Orissa is found to have a separate and distinct nomenclature of its own. Each part and each section of the building had its particular name, and those describing the essential members may, with a certain amount of appropriateness, be used with reference to the other temple groups of the Nāgara style.

The sanctum and the jagamohana in Orissa may each be divided along the vertical axis into four distinct sections, namely the pīṭha (pedestal or the platform on which the temple stands), the bāḍa (the cube of the sanctum cella or of the porch hall), the gaṇḍi (or the sikhara, the tower), and the mastaṇa (or the crowning elements). The pīṭha does not appear to have been an essential element, as there are important examples where it has been found to be absent. The bāḍa rises perpendicularly straight up to a certain height and, in case of the rekha deul, merges into the gaṇḍi or the sikhara, which gradually inclines inwards in a convex curve. Usually there is a section, known as the baraṇḍa, demarcating the bāḍa from the gaṇḍi. The gaṇḍi of the rekha is further subdivided into a number of sections, literally known as the bhūmīs or planes, by ribbed elements at the corners. This ribbed element no doubt represents a sectional amlā, known as bhūmi-amlā for demarcating the bhūmīs, and a substitute, in the body of the gaṇḍi,
of the enormous spheroid stone, āmalaka-śilā, that caps the tower. In the bhādra deul the gaṅgī is composed of a number of pīṭha or horizontal platforms, compressed in height and piled up in the form of a pyramid, so that they decrease in size from the bottom upwards. The pīṭhās may be arranged in two or more sections (potaia). From the top of the gaṅgī in either case (rekha and bhādra), rise the different crowning elements, which may be collectively termed as themastakā. First, there is a recessed portion known as the beki or the neck (Sanskrit-kanṣha); above this is the amālaka (Sanskrit āmalaka-śilā or amalasaraka), which is a flattened spheroid ribbed at the edges. In the full-fledged bhādra deul an enormous member, shaped like a bell and sometimes ribbed at the edges, intervenes between the beki and the amālaka. Next to the amālaka there is the khapāri (literally the skull of the head), which is a flat domical member resembling an unfolded umbrella. Above it is placed the kalasa or water jar, an important auspicious object in Indian religion and ritual. The bāḍa as well as the gaṅgī is square in cross section all through, but the crowning elements are circular, and above them all appears the dhvaja or ayudha, i.e. the emblem of the particular deity to whom the temple is consecrated.

In plan the sanctum as well as the jagamohana is plainly square inside, but on the exterior the walls exhibit several buttress-like projections in the middle of each face, on account of which the ground plan assumes what may be called a cruciform shape. Each such projection leaves out a portion at both the ends, and hence the plan is also one of projecting and re-entrant angles. Where there is only one such projection in the middle of each face, the wall is divided into three vertical sections (literally known as rathas or rathakas), and such a plan is hence known as triṇākha or composed of three rathas, the two on either side being on the same plane and the other being set forward a little. In a similar way there are paṭantartha, saṃantartha and naṃantartha plans, according as there are two, three, or four such projections on each face of the cube of the bāḍa. The projections on the bāḍa run along the entire height of the gaṅgī, and the corresponding sections on the body of the latter are known as the pagas. Usually there runs a narrow depression between the vertical sections, thus demarcating and accentuating the projections still more.

The description given above is more or less true of every temple of Orissa, early or late. The tendency in evolution is towards a greater elaboration, minuter details, and a pronounced accentuation of height. The oldest specimens of the extant temples in Orissa exhibit each a triṇākha plan, and the bāḍa is subdivided into three
segments, placed one above the other along the vertical axis, namely, the pābbhāga (from pāda-bhāga, the portion of the foot, i.e. the plinth), the jāṅgha (shin, i.e. the perpendicular wall portion) and the baraṅḍa, i.e. the section that intervenes between the bāda and the gāndī. Several temples of this shape and form may still be found in Orissa.

The Parasurāmeśvara temple at Bhuvanēśvara is usually regarded as the oldest among the temples of Orissa. Mr. Manomohan Ganguli observes that it is probably “dated in the 5th or 6th century A.D. at the latest”. This date is palpably wrong, and on the basis of a palaeographical analysis of the inscriptions on the Navagraha lintel over the doorway of the sanctum the late Mr. R. D. Banerji placed the temple in the eighth century A.D., a date that seems very probable from the stylistic considerations of the temple and its sculptures. Recently another scholar has tried to place the temple about the seventh century A.D. on the same palaeographical grounds. The story of Orissan temples, however, goes further back and examples of a still earlier date may be found at Bhuvaneśvara in the Satrughnesvara group of temples (Fig. 1), just in front of the Rāmeśvara. Though extremely damaged, a straight-edged contour of the sikhara may be recognised in each case, and this, together with a general appearance of bareness and simplicity, indicates an earlier date for these temples, perhaps not far removed from that of the Daśavatāra temple at Deogarh. Stylistically, again, the tiny shrine, once standing by the side of the Vindusarova tank (Fig. 2), appears to have been slightly older than the Parasurāmeśvara, though the two temples are so very alike that it is very difficult to come to any definite conclusion on this point. The style of the carvings of this little temple, now lost, belongs very probably to an earlier date, and on this account an earlier date for the temple may very plausibly be postulated.

The small but exquisitely decorated Parasurāmeśvara temple (Fig. 3) may, however, be regarded as a representative specimen among the early Orissan temples, and from it should properly begin the story of the development of Orissan temple architecture. The sanctum is triratha in plan, but on each face there are two subsidiary niches on either side of the central niche accommodated in the buttress projection in the middle. This mode may just be an anticipation of the subsequent paścharatha plan. The pābbhāga or the plinth consists of three simple mouldings. The jāṅgha is occupied by three niches on each face, each capped by a tiered superstructure. The baraṅḍa or the section demarcating the bāda from the gāndī, consists of a narrow recessed frieze of couples of
human figures alternating with chess-board patterned panels. The gārba is low and stunted, and begins to curve inward from the very bottom, thus resulting in a gradual curvilinear outline. The projection of the central niche is carried up and forms the rāhā-paga (i.e. the central paga), while two intermediate pagas (anurāhā-pagas) are formed on either side as a result of the continuation, though not in the same alignment, of the projections of the subsidiary niches on the two sides. At the outermost or the corner pagas (konaka-pagas) the gavādi is divided into five planes or stages, literally bhūmis, by bhūmi-amlās. Above the fifth bhūmi there is a flat tier, known as the bisama, also called the vedi or altar. The gavādi is throughout square in cross section, and the sharp edges at the corners as well as those of the ratha-paga projections are rigidly maintained. On account of the gradual inward inclination, the gavādi or the tower ends with the vedi in a much smaller square, and next begins the circular section of the crowning elements, the enormous śāmalaka-śālā having an appearance of being supported at each of the four corners on the figure of a seated lion with two hinder parts, technically known in Orissa as the dopichhā sināha. Nothing now remains above the śāmalaka, but it is possible that it was topped by a prism-shaped object, which is the usual finial in the early examples of the Orissan group. The height of the temple is approximately three times the inside length of the garbhagriha or the sanctum, and in form and appearance, in plan and elevation, it has but very little difference with the earlier examples of the śikha type noticed elsewhere. Another significant fact is that the bisama, i.e. the tier at which the gavādi ends at the top, in conformity with the early śikha temples, is square without the indentations of the paga projections on the body of the gavādi.

The long and rectangular jagamohana, preceding the sanctum, was very probably a subsequent addition, and the joining between the two is a rather haphazard piece of work. The rectangular hall is topped by a sloping roof formed by flat stone slabs having in the centre a sort of clerestory supported on two rows of three pillars each in the interior. The Orissan temple is essentially astylar and the pillars have seldom a place in the composition of the Orissan temples. The pillars in the jagamohana accordingly disappear along with the evolution of the usual type of pyramidal jagamohana characteristic of Orissa. The porch hall is approached by three doorways, one each on the larger sides and the third in front, the last being subsequently closed up by a sculptured slab forming a grilled window. Besides, light is admitted into the interior of the hall by means of a latticed window of a chess-board pattern in one of the longer walls. The sculptured decorations of both the
The temple is not large, the garbha-griha being only 20 feet at its base, the entire length with the jagamohana, 48 feet, and the height of the sikhara from the base to the top, only 44 feet. The method of construction is extremely simple, with stone masonry of large size set without mortar and kept in position by their weight and balance, strengthened further by a system of interlocking flanges. Simple though its construction is, the methods employed in this small shrine remained in vogue in Orissa, and were followed in the subsequent period even in raising up such enormous piles of structures, as the great Lingaraja at Bhubanesvara and the far-famed Sun temple at Konarak (Kovārka).

The twin temples at Gandharadi in the old Baudh State may be mentioned as the next in point of date to the Parasuramesvara, to which they are exactly similar in plan as well as in elevation. Though there is no clerestory, the roof of the jagamohana rises in two receding stages of sloping tiers. A πiṭhā with three sloping tiers may be seen at Baramba (Cuttack District). In this arrangement may be recognised the beginning of the stupendous pyramidal form of the typical Orissan jagamohanas. Though the scheme of ornamentation is not more detailed and advanced than that of the Para-sūrāmeśvara, the rounded corners and the bevelled edges of the πagas indicate that the tendency to refinement from harsh to softer contours is well under way.

The next temple that should be mentioned is the little shrine of Muktesvara (Fig. 4), lying very close to the Para-sūrāmeśvara at Bhubanesvara, at a place called Siddhāranya or the “forest of the Perfect”. It is situated within a quadrangular court enclosed by a low wall with panelled sides and battlemented coping. The approach is through an elegant torāṇa (Fig. 5) or archway supported on two richly carved columns rising from a paved court. The columns are built in sections and consist each of a square base, a sixteen-sided shaft, and a capital consisting of an amalaka with a spread out cruciform vedikā as a support for the arch. The last is semi-circular in shape, but built in transverse section with oversailing courses. The ends of the arch are shaped as makara heads and both the faces are elegantly carved with floral patterns, miniature niches with human heads peeping out, and a pair of female figures in recumbent attitude occupying the entire segment of the arch. This ornamental appendage to the Muktesvara is unlike anything in Orissa, and the tradition that it was intended for purposes
of swinging the god on festive occasions may have some basis of truth. The temple of Muktesvara is closely similar in design to that of the Parasuramesvara, and, like it, stands on a low plinth. The plan of the sanctum is, however, a regular paścharatha and the jagamohana partakes more of the typical Orissan form of the piṭhā deul. The latter is surmounted by a pyramidal roof, consisting of gradually receding tiers, piled up one above the other, and ultimately crowned by the auspicious jar (kalasa) with the majestic figures of lions over the pediments of the projections on the three sides.

The corners of the sanctum tower are carefully rounded off, and the edges of the ratha-paga projections are bevelled to a certain extent, with the result that the harsh contours of the earlier examples give place to a really graceful and softened outline of the śākhara. In keeping with this, the exterior surface of the temple is very richly carved with a luxuriance of ornamental detail sculptured and finished with the greatest care and taste. Every scrap of carving is clean-cut and distinctive. Particularly interesting are the fine interlacings of a minute design, resembling the chaitya-window, which appear on the intermediate ratha-paga projections as well as on the upper section of the rāhā-paga on each face. Executed with the greatest skill the design takes the form of a very rich fretwork, singular in its appearance in Orissa but a rather common mode of ornamentation in the temples of Osia in Rajputana. The bold design, consisting of a couple of rounded dwarfish figures on either side of a highly ornate chaitya-window device topped by a kirttimukha (Fig. 6), that appears on each of the rāhā-pagas, is also superb and masterful in treatment and animation. Moreover, the floral bands, the scroll works, etc. lavishly display a remarkable excellence in design and a perfect delicacy of execution. The reliefs are bold and impressive; the statuettes jutting out, as it were, of the surface are vigorous and full of action, and exhibit charming forms.

The temple of Muktesvara is one of the smallest of the Bhuvanesvara group, being barely 35 feet high, and the sanctum only 7 feet 6 inches square on the inside. But the parts are so beautifully adjusted to one another that the disposition of the whole is elegant as well as effective. Further, the artist has adapted his ornaments to the scale of his monument in so clever a way that the eye fails to detect the smallness of the structure. Hence, in spite of its modest size the Muktesvara may be regarded as the most brilliant of its class, and it is not without reason that it has been so enthusiastically praised by different critics. Fergusson, than whom there can be no better judge, describes it as the "gem of Orissan archi-
The Muktesvara marks an advance on the form presented by the Parasuramesvara and represents the early phase of architectural activity in Orissa at its maturity. This advance, however, does not signify as yet any definite break with, or departure from, the traditions and form of the early prototype, and hence the interval between the dates of the two temples could not have been very long. Scholars are usually inclined to place the Muktesvara temple about A.D. 950, i.e. nearly two centuries after the date of the Parasuramesvara. This date, however, appears to be much too late, architectonically. The exquisite carvings of this pretty little shrine also tell the same tale. On these considerations the longest interval that separated the two temples does not seem to have been more than a century.

Temples almost similar in shape and design may be found at Bhuvanesvara and at other places in Orissa. They range in date between the eighth and ninth centuries A.D., and casually this early form persists even up to the tenth. It has to be borne in mind that temples of this class, no doubt an early manifestation of the Nagara style in Orissa, are found to be widely distributed over a greater part of India. This is not at all surprising, as each locality derived it from a common archetype, current and in vogue in the Gupta and post-Gupta periods, and none of them can be said to have developed as yet any local and regional characteristic.

But this plain and early form of the Nagara temple in Orissa undergoes a distinct transformation, as a result of evolution, into a novel and elaborate type, which may be termed as peculiarly Orissan. The tendency in evolution is towards an elaboration and refinement of the simpler design of the earlier temple and also towards an accentuation of height. The elaboration is noticed not only in the greater variegation of the ground plan, obtained by adding to the number of projections, but also in that of elevation where the exterior facade is divided into a larger number of sections along the vertical axis. Beginning from the tri-ratha, the plan is gradually elaborated into the pañcharatha, the septaratha and even to the navaratha. Each of these rathas again is further subdivided into a number of smaller facets. From the standpoint of elevation the earlier
ART

Orissan temple, in conformity with its archetype, always shows a threefold division of the bāda—the pābhāga, the jāṅgha and the baraṅga. The later Orissan temple, however, invariably exhibits a five-fold division of the bāda, the jāṅgha itself being divided into two sections, the lower (tala-jāṅgha) and the upper (upa-ra-jāṅgha), by a course of mouldings, known as the bāndhanā or the bond, about its middle height. Correspondingly, the mouldings of the pābhāga and those of the baraṅga increase in number, the former consisting of five and the latter of seven in almost every important Orissan temple of the later period. In the guyḍi the bhūmis also increase in number and in contour it takes a more perpendicular rise with an abrupt inward bend towards the top. The greater variegation in the elevation of the temple is no doubt necessitated by an urge for increased height.

Along with such minute demarcation of the different elements and sections, as mentioned above, there was correspondingly a greater variety of decorative detail, and the whole exterior of the bāda all around is not only covered with rich and elegant mouldings, but also with pilasters, niches and figures—human, animal and composite—each having its proper and appropriate place in the design. The accentuation of height is recognised in the multiplication of mouldings as well as in the general form and appearance of the guyḍi or the sikhara. In the early temples the ratio between the length of the sanctum and the total height of the temple is approximately 1:3, as we have in the Parasurāmeśvara. But in the temples which, in plan (multiplication of rathas) as well as in elevation (five sections of the bāda, multiplication of the mouldings, greater details in decoration, etc.), exhibit late features in evolution, the ratio increases from 1:4 to 1:5, and in the magnificent Sun temple at Konarak the estimated ratio is approximately 1:7. A regular correspondence between elaboration and heightening may be observed all through the history of Orissan architecture.

Again, a refinement and delicacy of the outline may be noticed in the gradual rounding off of the edges at the corners as well as in the ratha-paga projections. But in such attempts at softening off, the architects took especial care not to break up the outline, and the unbroken contour of the tall tower, together with the accentuated verticalism of the ratha-paga projections, give an impression of aspiring height and grandeur. In this rounding off of the corners and of the edges of the projections may be logically traced the origin of the practice of decorating the exterior with miniature replicas of sikhara (aṅga-sikhara) round the main one. The corner pagas, rounded off and with bhūmi-antās at the different
stages, naturally take the shape of miniature rekhas, and soon these begin to appear on the surface of the gopūli all around. Thus do the different stages of the spire simulate the main one by repeating themselves round the body of the gopūli and quite in a logical course too. The temple of Rājārāja at Bhubanesvara exhibits a cluster of smaller towers round the body of the main gopūli (Fig. 10). This may appear to be an exotic growth in Orissa, being rather very rare in that area. This novel arrangement may be explained as the natural outcome of a logical evolution following a process of elaboration, refinement and decoration as outlined above. The effect, however, did not prove to be happy, as the different miniatures round the body of the main tower broke up and dissolved the forceful outline of the temple, an outline that was more pleasing and architecturally more sound. It might be, that for this reason the process was not followed up in Orissa; but it had its full play in Central India, where the aspiring outline of the rekha tower was almost effaced by an exuberance of turrets clinging to the body of the main sikhara, and thus breaking up its contour. The Orissan architects knew where to stop, and as soon as it became apparent that the process of evolution, when carried to a logical culmination, would lead to a loss of architectural effect, they gave up the attempt and confined the miniature rekhas to the anurāhā-pagās only, and casually to the rāha-paga of the front façade. They, however, took care that these miniature replicas were not obtrusive enough to break up the linear ascent of the main tower.

Thus the sikhara temple evolved a particular and individual form in Orissa of which the main features were the five-fold division of the bāṣa and the miniature replicas of the rekha-sikhara (origa-sikhara) on the anurāhā-pagās of the main gopūli. The rampant figure of a lion on an elephant (gaja-sīṁha), projecting from each face of the gopūli, and caryatids, known usually as deul-chātraṇis, above the bīṣama, supporting or appearing to support the heavy āmala-āśā, also occur as invariable accompaniments of this characteristic Orissan type of temple, and may be recognised to have been among its distinctive features. The characteristic type of Orissan temple also exhibits an almost perpendicular ascent of the rekha up to a great height, taking a pronounced curve only quite near the top. The increase in the number of sections along the vertical axis is, no doubt, a necessary corollary to the increased height of the temple, and an aspiration for height is particularly felt all through the course of evolution. The above features, being peculiar only to Orissa, may be said to be typically Orissan. They begin to appear from the tenth century A.D. The five-fold division of the bāṣa is characteristic not
only of the body of the garbha-grīha but also of that of the 

gajamohana.

The emergence of the typical Orissan form of the temple may be studied with reference to several instructive examples at Bhubanesvara, namely the Siddhesvara (Fig. 7), the Kedaresvara and the Brahmesvara. The Siddhesvara and the Kedaresvara are two decayed temples of medium height situated, like the Muktesvara, within the precincts of the Siddharalaya, and look almost alike in appearance. Like the Muktesvara each of the temples is paścharatha in plan. A five-fold division of the bāda has, however, been obtained by dividing the jāṅgha into two sections by three courses of horizontal mouldings (bāndhanā) about the middle height, though the central ratha forms one unit consisting of the usual niche with a tiered superstructure reaching the lowermost course of the barāṅga. The number of mouldings in the pābbhāgā has increased to conventional five, and the barāṅga, instead of being a recessed frieze as in the earlier temple, has taken the form of a number of mouldings projected and recessed alternately. At the bottom the gaṇḍi is surrounded by miniature rekhas, one on each paga, and the figure of a rampant lion (jampa-sīṁha) may be seen projecting from the rāhā-paga on each face. This is a motif that is new in appearance, but a variation of which, the lion rampant on an elephant (gaja-sīṁha), became a distinctive characteristic of later Orissan temples. This particular feature is absent in the temples of the earlier group, e.g. the Paraśurāmeśvara, the Muktesvara, etc., where one usually finds instead an inset sculpture depicting a particular legend associated with the divinity to whom the temple was consecrated. In the Muktesvara, on the front face, a sedent lion is placed above the prominent design consisting of the figure of a kirttimukha between two dwarfish gana figures. This may indicate the beginnings of such a practice, and in the Siddhesvara-Kedaresvara group four rampant lions on the four sides of the gaṇḍi may be recognised to be an advancement on the former design. Above the bisama on each rāhā-paga is placed a grinning figure seated on haunches, which appears to carry the śāmalaka-śilā as caryatids do. It is these figures which later on came to be known as deul-chareṇi. Next to the śāmalaka-śilā there is the flattened dome-shaped section, known as the khapūri, surmounted by the kalasa and the distinctive emblem (āyudha) of the god as the crowning finial. It has to be borne in mind, however, that the kalasa and the finial are absent in the earlier group. The small temple by the side of the Vindusavarāra (now collapsed) had a prism-shaped object, not unlike the phallic emblem, surmounting the śāmalaka. The Paraśurāmeśvara also possibly had a similar object as the crowning member of the tower. The Muktesvara is now found to be crowned by a kalasa, but it is not

S. E.—35

545
known definitely whether it was there originally. The kalasa, an auspicious object in Hindu ritual, is a sacred element and there can be little doubt that its appearance in conjunction with the distinctive emblem of the divinity has been dictated by a sacerdotal necessity. Leaving aside the rather doubtful case of the Muktesvara, these two important features of the typical Orissan temple are for the first time met with in the Siddheshvara-Kedaresvara group. Compared to the Muktesvara, with its finished appearance, the Siddheshvara and the Kedaresvara, with their thick-set and heavy-shouldered sikharas and a general coarseness of ornament, may appear to be rather archaic. But the features mentioned above clearly mark them, along with the Brahmesvara, as a stage in transition from the early Nagara form to the typically Orissan one. They present us, in many respects, with the beginnings of those individual features that finally became established as the distinctive characteristics of the typical Orissan temple. Chronologically they may roughly be placed in the tenth century A.D.

The Brahmesvara temple (Fig. 8) with its more finished appearance belongs also to the phase of transition like the Siddheshvara and the Kedaresvara. According to an inscription, now lost, it was built by Kolavati, mother of king Uddyotakesari, in the eighteenth year of the latter’s reign, which may be placed about the middle of the eleventh century A.D. Situated within an enclosure and with four subsidiary shrines (chaturamarakul’in) at the four corners it makes a regular panchayatana group. Although belonging to the same phase as the Siddheshvara and Kedaresvara the main temple marks an advance on both. Apart from its more refined appearance due to the rounding off of the sharp edges, the rekha garbha in the Brahmesvara, instead of showing a gradual inward curve as in the earlier group, rises almost perpendicularly up to a greater portion of its height and takes a pronounced bend only towards the top, a contour that is not far off from that of the celebrated Lingaraja at Bhubanesvara. The graded heights of the anga-sikharas on the pagas at the bottom of the garbha introduce pleasing variations to the rather monotonous effect of such a feature in the Siddheshvara-Kedaresvara group where they are found to have made their first appearance. The kirttimukha as the pedestal of the projecting figure of the rampant lion also appears to mark an advance on the design, just a step prior to the evolution of the usual conventional motif of the gaja-simha. The jagamohana, too, though approximating in shape to those of the Muktesvara, the Siddheshvara and the Kedaresvara, has a more refined appearance. Further, it introduces new and significant features supplying a definite connection with the future development of the typical piṭhā deul. The top is surmounted by a domical member and crowned by
the āmalaka-sīlā and the auspicious jar, exactly as in the jagamohana
nas of the typical Orissan temples. But the different elements of
the superstructure still show rather an assortment of individual
members without any conscious attempt at co-ordination and inte­
gration that are to come later. Thus, in its characteristic features
and appearance, the Brahmeśvara offers us the nearest approach to
the great Lāṅgāra which is the best and the most representative
of the Orissan type of the Nāgara temple.

The temple of Rājārañī (Fig. 9) at Bhuvanesvara, though appar­
tently an exceptional type in Orissa, requires a more detailed treat­
ment in this connection. Standing isolated nearly a furlong to the
east of the Siddhiiralaya, it looks picturesque by reason of the·broad
expanse of green fields on all its sides. The rather unusual name
might have been derived from the fine-grained yellow sandstone,
known as the rājāniš, of which the temple has been built. Time has
mellowed its surface to delightful soft shades, varying from pale am­
ber to deep jacinth, which further add a colourful effect to the build­
ing among its natural surroundings.

The Rājārañī certainly marks an advance in the art of composi­
tion over that of the group just mentioned. In general configuration
the plan of the sanctum (Text Fig. 1) is no doubt in the shape of a
square, but because of the multiple offsets and projections on each
face, introduced evidently to give greater variety and play of light
and shade, it becomes almost circular in appearance. Moreover, the
sanctum, instead of being aligned on the same plans as the rest of
the building, is placed diagonally to it.

In elevational aspect too the Rājārañī temple is a departure from
all the others of the Orissan group. Along with the extreme variega­
tion of the ground plan the main body of the tower is surrounded
by a number of smaller replicas, clinging to and clustering around
it (Fig. 10). Although this kind of elaboration was already anticipat­
ed in the previous group, here, in the Rājārañī, the tendency gets an
added emphasis not only in the two nāga-sīkharas, one above the
other, on each of the rāha-pagās, but also in the separate volume and
mass that have been given to each. The walls of the sanctum are
richly and magnificently carved and the individual decorations are of
rare and singular beauty. But the jagamohana is apparently left
unfinished.

Though exotic in Orissa, the Rājārañī is really the result of a
logical evolution, following a distinct course, from the early Nāgara
form in Orissa represented by the Paraśurāmeśvara-Mukteśvara
group at Bhuvanesvara. Though there is a more fluent volume and
mass in the body of the tower displaying a refinement in curves and
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

contours that denote a more subtle feeling for form, the design did not find favour in Orissa and was ultimately discarded, as mentioned above. No one who has seen the Rājāraji temple at Bhubanesvara and those of the Khajurāho group can fail to notice the similarity in the shape of this particular deul with the śikharas of the Central Indian type, a type that strikes a new note in this aspect of the temple design. Another link with Central India may be recognised in the double āmalaka which characterise the aṣaga-śikhara of the Rājāraji. The course of evolution, as outlined above, had no doubt its fullest and freest play in Central India where the exuberance of miniature replicas clinging to the body of the main śikharas adds a rich and variegated, though somewhat disturbed and restless, effect.

The majestic temple of the Līṅgārāja (Fig. 11) at Bhubanesvara represents the Orissan type of temple in its full maturity. The god enshrined in it is Śiva (Tribhuvanesvara or Bhubanesvara) from which the city takes its name. The sanctuary is situated in the middle of a large quadrangular court enclosed by massive walls and with a monumental entrance portal in the middle of the east side. Many other subsidiary structures are clustered round the main sanctuary pīlā. Each of these accessory buildings is a work of art, but the mind and eye of the spectator always turn towards the enormous Līṅgārāja with its majestic proportions, its extraordinary means of construction and its elegant carvings.

Like every other temple of magnitude and importance the Līṅgārāja, as it now stands, is made up of four great conjuncts, all disposed on the same axis extending from east to west, viz. the bhoga-maṇḍapa (refectory hall), the nāṭa-maṇḍapa (dancing hall), the jagamohana (hall of audience) and the deul or the sanctuary proper (Text Fig 2). They do not all date from the same period; the original temple scheme consisted of two elements, the deul and the jagamohana, the two ancillary halls of the nāṭa-maṇḍapa and the bhoga-maṇḍapa being added, in all probability, about a century later. The sanctum proper is characterised by the tall curvilinear tower, remarkable for its height and volume, and the halls by pyramidal roofs. The deul and the jagamohana, both belonging to the original temple scheme, are pañcaratha in plan, and in each there is the corresponding five-fold division of the bāḍa in vertical segments. The mouldings of the pābhāga, the bāṇḍhanā and the baraṇḍa and the sculptural decoration of the two jāṅghas are richer and more elegant in design, but do not produce any idea of monotony or of being overdone. The niches in the central projection of the bāḍa of the deul, except on the east, have each developed into a miniature shrine on
a roofed platform approached by elaborate flights of steps. They accommodate the subsidiary divinities, Pārvatī, Kārttikeya and Ganesa, associated with the mythology of Śiva to whom the temple is consecrated. The black chlorite figures of these deities are specimens of exquisite carving representing the high watermark of the plastic skill of Orissan artists in days gone by.

Undoubtedly the most impressive feature of the Lāṅgarāja is the great tower of the deul (Fig. 12) which dominates not only the entire composition but also the surrounding landscape for many miles. Nearly 160 feet in height, its stupendous mass is effectively broken up by the vertical pagas which add to the fluency of its outline. The tower, slightly inclining inwards from the top of the bareśa, speeds up into a parabolic curve near the top. This pronounced taper takes off the harshness of the almost perpendicular ascent of the tower and introduces pleasingly the recessed beki over which rises the ponderous āmalaka-sīlā supported at each corner on a lion with two hinder parts (dopichhā-sīnha). Above is the umbrella-shaped khapūri surmounted by the kalasa and the trident, the emblem of the god installed within. The corners of the tower and the edges of the pagas have been rounded off a good deal, but the square cross-section is maintained all through the height of the gaṇḍī. Not only has the deul grown in elevation, but the height is further accentuated by the vertical lines of the pagas, of which the angles of the anūraṭhas on each face bear miniature representations of the rekha tower (aṅga-sīkha). Rising in graded sizes up the entire height of the gaṇḍī, they help the upward ascent of the tower, rather than break it. A harmonious counterplay in the design is afforded by the horizontal mouldings which, carried in lines across the chases of the pagas, richly texture the entire surface of the tower. On the rāhā-paga on each face projects the figure of a lion, rampant on an elephant (gaja-sīnha), that looks as if leaping in space. With its aspiring height and plastically modelled mass the sīkha of the great Lāṅgarāja is the crowning achievement of this far-famed temple.

The jagamohana, also co-eval with the deul, is no less magnificent. Like the deul it is paśčharettha in plan and shows the similar division of the bāḍa into five-fold vertical segments. The superstructure consists of a pyramidal roof rising in two sections (potalas) of superposed horizontal tiers in gradually receding stages. Above this square roof rise the circular crowning elements, the beki, the bell-shaped fluted member supporting the āmalaka-sīlā, and the kalasa finial. The entire height is a little over 100 feet from the ground, and with its massive dimensions and decorative scheme the jagamohana is a fitting prelude to the deul which soars high up be-
hind, each affording a counterplay in the design of the other. The ancillary halls of the nāja-ṁaṇḍapa and the bhağa-ṁaṇḍapa, though of later date, are very much of the same design as the jagamohana, and harmoniously fit into the architectural scheme of the whole; but they prolong the line of the structures rather inordinately.

Of the secondary structures within the courtyard of the Liṅgaraṅga, mention should at least be made of the temple of Bhagavati: which is a structural entity of high architectural merit and sculptural excellence. Were it not situated beneath the shadow of the mighty tower of the Liṅgarāja, it would have ranked as a production of supreme grandeur and magnificence.

There are a number of votive inscriptions on the temple and its adjuncts. But none is earlier than the middle of the twelfth century A.D., which must be taken as the farthest limit of the date of the temple. Scholars have usually placed the Liṅgarāja at about A.D. 1000. But in view of the direction of architectural development, as outlined above, along with the fixed chronological point supplied by the Brahmeśvara temple, the Liṅgarāja has to be dated about A.D. 1100, certainly not earlier than the last quarter of the eleventh century.

A number of temples of the typical Orissan class may be found at Bhuvanesvara and other parts of Orissa. Few of them aspire to the massive grandeur and dignity of the Liṅgarāja, but all are remarkable for their rich and finished appearance. Though in no way reaching the latter's standard of excellence, they abundantly testify to the prolific prevalence of the type through centuries. Of those at Bhuvanesvara mention should specially be made of the temple of Ananta Vasudeva (Fig. 13) which, though smaller in size and lesser in sanctity, is no less imposing. The only temple dedicated to the worship of Vishnu in this sacred fane of the god Śiva, it approximates the Liṅgarāja in its general arrangement and in having the four necessary adjuncts, all in the same axis and raised over a substantial terrace. The ascending heights of the pyramidal roofs of the two ancillary halls and the jagamohana provide an effect of which there is a parallel only in the celebrated temples of Khajurāho in Central India.

The famous temple of Jagannātha at Puri, still a very sacred place of pilgrimage, is, like the Liṅgarāja, large and massive and consists also of the four usual elements within a quadrangular court, surrounded by two lines of enclosure walls and approached through the outer walls by means of four monumental portals, one on each side. The main entrance was on the east where stands a monolithic column, the Aruṇa stambha, transported from its original
site in the precincts of the Sun temple at Konārak. Almost contemporaneous with the Lingarāja at Bhuvanesvara the temple was built practically on the same principles and likewise consists of four component parts, the two frontal ones being added later, probably about the fourteenth century A.D. The architectural effect of the temple, as it stands, is however not up to the mark. In spite of its immense sanctity and its impressive size and massiveness the Jagannātha at Puri cannot claim to possess such sublime dignity as that of the Lingarāja, probably on account of the fact that successive renovations, carried out at different periods, along with its annual coat of lime-wash, have resulted in a loss of its original grandeur.

The celebrated Sun temple at Konārak (Fig. 14), known as the black pagoda from its darkish colour seen from a distance, was built during the reign of Narasīhha I (A.D. 1238-64). A noble conception initiated by a master mind and executed and finished by a master architect, it represents the crystallized and accumulated experience of several hundreds of years, and ably illustrates the fulfilment and finality of Orissan architectural movement. The tide of humanity has long drifted away from Konārak, leaving to posterity a supreme artistic creation, grand and impressive even in its ruin.

The temple, now a deserted fragment, is situated in the centre of a quadrangular court and is designed in the shape of a huge chariot drawn on exquisitely carved wheels by a team of seven spirited horses. The approach was from the east where a roofless structure confronts the visitor. This structure, the nāga-maṇḍapa, rests on an elaborately carved podium reached by long flights of steps, one on each side. On the east the stairway is flanked by two superb lions, each rampant on an elephant (Fig. 16). The motif is fairly prolific in Orissan art, but here in these two sculptures we have masterful portraits in which the nobility and vigour of the animals have been depicted in all truthfulness and vehemence. Unfortunately, the roof of this pretty little building has tumbled down. But to judge from the ruins around and on the analogy of structures of similar kind, the building must have been surmounted by a pyramidal roof resembling the massive pile that raises up its head behind. In its elegant proportions and elaborate carvings, inside and out, this battered structure is a suitable prelude to what awaits the visitor further on.

The position of the nāga-maṇḍapa as an isolated structure in front of the temple proper may be regarded as an improvement on the design which joins the four essential components in an axial line with the sanctum. The latter prolongs the length of the plan inordinately in comparison with its breadth and thus upsets the
balance. At Konarak, not only is the nāga-mandapa planned as a
detached building in front of the main temple group, but the bhoga-
mandapa also appears as a separate building on one side. Their
character and location not only proclaim a correct sense of grouping
and architectural application, but also a reasoned co-ordination of
all into a pleasing unified scheme with all the necessary components
without in any way disturbing the balance and harmony of the
composition.

Crossing the nāga-mandapa one descends to the courtyard below
where once stood the Aruḍa pillar, now shifted to Puri and placed
in front of the Jagannātha temple there. From this position there
spreads out before the spectator the enormous temple—the lofty
towered sanctuary and the pyramidal pile of the jagamohana, i.e.
the audience chamber, both united to represent the Sun chariot (Fig.
15). Soaring high up with its enormous mass borne on wheels, the
temple symbolises, as it were, the majestic stride of the Sun god
across the horizon of the sky, and no conception could have been
more grand and expressive of the cosmic phenomenon which the Sun
god stands for.

Apart from its spiritual significance the architectural character
of the monument may also be described as superb. Both the sanctum
and the jagamohana stand on a lofty basement the exuberance of
which is itself a marvel. The frieze of elephants at the bottom all
around represents this creature in every mood and action, playful
and violent, and offers a substantial stylobate on which the ponder­
ous burden rested. The skill with which the artists have portrayed
every curve and lineament of the animal is proof positive that
they must have had ample scope for studying the anatomy
and appearance of this lordly beast. Above this frieze of elephants
rise the bold mouldings of the basement which with their deep con­
trasts of light and shade accentuate the richness of the walls. The
latter present a vast panorama of graceful sculptures, separated by
richly adorned pilasters and broken by exquisitely patterned wheels
of gigantic shape. Each of the wheels (Fig. 17) is 9 feet 8 inches in
diameter, with rims 8 inches deep, axles protruding 11 inches, and
16 spokes alternatively thick and thin. Some of these are now mere
things of shreds and patches. Those that have weathered the storm
and stress of centuries are marvels of elaborate and intricate designs,
the maximum of decoration being squeezed into the minimum of
space.

Over this richly sculptured basement rises the temple pile, the
sanctum and the jagamohana, each paścaratha in plan and consist­
ning of five vertical sections as is typical in Orissa. Every ratha is
further diversified into smaller facets. These divisions and subdivi-
sions, richly embellished with elaborate carvings, are carried up
along the height of the tower. Not only do they lighten the enorm-
ous mass by introducing pleasing varieties of lights and shades, but
they also accentuate the soaring verticalism of the monument and
impart to it a fluency and movement seldom paralleled in any other
kind of building.

Around the walls of the sanctum, on the north, south and west,
the visitor sees the Sun god in all his glory in elaborate recessed
niches on the projection of the central ratha. The lofty curvilinear
tower of the sanctum has, however, fallen down, and we miss the
soaring grandeur of the sikhara. But the massive pile of the jagamohana in front, complete with its ponderous superstructure, partly
compensates for the loss, and we are in a position to visualise the
stupendous height of the fabric, when entire. The jagamohana is
covered by the usual pyramidal roof in three stages (Fig. 15), sur-
mounted by a fluted dome-shaped member and crowned by the gigan-
tic śmelaka-sūlit. This kind of roof, usually associated with the jag-
amohanā in Orissa, is itself highly expressive of the needs and func-
tions which it serves. There is no roof in India where the same
play of light and shade is obtained with an equal amount of richness
and constructive propriety as in this instance, nor one that sits so
gracefully on the base that supports it. Here at Konarak the design
is perfectly harmonious on account of the added elevation of the
different stages and the greater volume and plasticity which are im-
parted to this solid pile by the life-size sculptures of lively execu-
tion and alluring beauty that adorn each stage of the roof all around.
These sculptures, with their superb modelling, the fulness of their
forms, and their easy and graceful attitude and poses, add a new
and striking note in the form of the Orissan jagamohanās.

Within the courtyard other stately buildings adorned the site,
but only a heap of ruins now remains to indicate their former splend-
our. On the north and south there are imposing portals, the former
flanked by two majestic elephants, and the latter by two prancing
steeds. Architectonically treated, their massive strength and vigour,
their passion and vehemence, are masterfully portrayed. In the
whole range of world's art it would be difficult to find more success-
ful delineation of animal figures.

At Konārak the extraordinary genius of the architect and the
sculptor combined to raise a sanctuary in honour of Sun god, the illu-
minator of the universe. Even in its ruin it illuminates India and
her art, and shines forth throughout the world as a momentous crea-
tion of human endeavour. When entire, the temple must have been
one of the most exquisitely proportioned monuments ever known. Each part and each section harmoniously blended and mingled with one another and built up a perfect composition, so diversified and yet so marvellously unified. The intricate treatment of the walls with figures and decorative motifs of varied forms and manifestations has created, so to say, an inspired orgy of sculptural magnificence. Yet, everything is ordered and balanced and the entire monument vibrates with a rhythm and grandeur, unique in the world.

Though not coming within the general course of evolution of the Orissan type of temple, the Vaital deul (Fig. 18), situated by the side of the main road to the west of the Vindusarivarana tank at Bhuvanesvara, is notable as belonging to a conception that is apparently alien to Orissa. It stands on a raised platform within a low enclosure wall and consists of a shrine chamber preceded by a porch hall in front. Unlike the usual type of the Orissan temple the sanctum is rectangular in plan (18 feet by 25 feet) and is surmounted by a tower which is also of an unusual shape. The jagamohana in front, also of rectangular form and roofed as the jagamohana of the Parasuramesvara, presents a radical divergence in having a small replica of the triratha rekha temple embedded at each of its four corners. A similar arrangement of four replicas of the rekha at the four corners of the porch hall may be found in a temple at Baijnath (Kangra District), though the hall there is surmounted by a pyramidal roof. Apart from its rectangular shape, the shrine proper of the Vaital deul exhibits many novel features. A significant deviation from the usual type may be recognised in the form of the garbha which, rising like that of the usual type up to a certain height, is surmounted by an elongated vaulted roof of two stages with a recess in between, further crowned by three añalakas, each with the usual finials, placed along the ridge of the upper semi-circular vault. Moreover, the ground plan does not show any ratha projection on any face of the badha and the exterior surfaces of the walls are treated and diversified in a manner that is entirely new, not only in Orissa, but also in the Nāgara style of temple. All around the badha each wall is divided into richly patterned pilasters and recesses containing sculptures—an arrangement that is exactly similar to the treatment of the walls of the South Indian style of temple. The beginnings of such a treatment have already been traced to the storeyed temples of the Gupta and post-Gupta periods. As a distinctive decorative pattern it becomes clearly established in the seventh century A.D., as we see in the Jain temple of Meguti (A.D. 634) at Aihole and the rock-cut rathas of Mahāballipuram of about the same period. A further link with South India is indicated by the semi-cylindrical vaulted roof, clear analogies of which are furnished by the Bhima
and Ganeśa rathas at Mahabalipuram. Still earlier parallels of the shape of the roof, though not extant in structural form, are recognised in relief representations at Bhārhat, Sāñchi, etc. It should be stressed, however, that analogies with the south end with the shape of the roof and the manner of treatment of the exterior walls of the bāla. In their origins both these features were not particularly South Indian. Moreover, we miss here the storeyed arrangement of the tower which is distinctive of South Indian temples. Apart from these, the other essential arrangements of the Vaital deul, including the rise of its gārī up to a certain height, exhibit a more general conformity with the early Nāgara form as presented in Orissa. Hence, though the tower presents a closer alliance with South India and the plan is rectangular, the distinctive quality of the architectural treatment of the temple may be regarded as derived from the Nāgara style.

All over the building there is a profusion of carved work, elegant and graceful in an extreme measure. The pleasing proportions of the sanctum, the skilful disposition of its surfaces and decorative elements denote an aesthetic sense of a very high order. Many of its decorative elements closely approximate to those of the Paraśurāmaśvara, with which it is clearly allied in general form and disposition of its jagamāhāna, as well as in stylistic considerations of its sculptures. The date of the Vaital deul cannot, therefore, be far removed from that of the Paraśurāmaśvara.

Among the hundreds of temples at Bhuvaneshvara the rather exotic shape of the Vaital deul marks it as having been derived from alien inspiration and assimilating extraneous influences. The shape of the temple, however, is recognised in the canonical texts of Orissa as forming a distinct class, known as the Kākāchārī. Miniature replicas of the Kākāchārī often appear in relief in the surface decoration of the Orissan temples of orthodox shape and form, and a likely parallel, though much transformed on account of subsequent renovations, may be noticed in the Gauri temple at Bhuvaneshvara. Another temple of the Vaital deul type may be seen in the little shrine of Durgā at Bājēśvara (Cuttack). It is a very near imitation of the prototype at Bhuvaneshvara and like it also seems to have been a structure of remarkable beauty and excellence. A ruined temple at Rānpur Jhariāl (Patna State) also appears, from its plan and arrangements of the bāla, to have been a building of the Vaital deul type. Outside Orissa the type appears in the Teli-kāmmandir at Gwalior (Fig. 20), the Navadurgā temple (Fig. 19) at Yāgeśvara (Almora District), and also possibly in the rectangular temple, now ruined, at Osia, Rājputāna. The Orissan texts of the
Silpaśtras refer to three varieties of the Khaṭkharī temple, namely the Drēṇī, the Varāji, and the Kosali. The first no doubt brings out the South Indian association of the type which is too apparent in the extant monuments to be missed.

Another interesting type of temple in Orissa may be found in the three ancient temples within the compound of the modern shrine of Ramesvara at Baudh. Each of these temples stands on a raised platform and consists of a sanctum cella with its attached portico in front. Each is planned on the principle of two squares, placed diagonally and intersecting each other at angles of 45 degrees. The angular faces thus formed in the exterior walls of the temple give the shape of an eight-pointed star. Each angular face is further subdivided into three facets and the entire design presents a charming arrangement of light and shade, accentuated still more by the intricate tracery work, with deep shadows in the interstices, characteristic of the ornamentation of the gaṇḍī. The angularities of the plan ascend in bold lines along the height of the gaṇḍī and convey an appearance of greater height than any of the temples really possesses. Barring the star-shaped plan the other arrangements of the baḍa and the gaṇḍī have striking affinities with those of the Bhuvanesvara temples of the early phase. Elaborate carvings literally cover each one of the temples from the base to the top and the ornamentation is not inconsistent with the early phase of temples at Bhuvanesvara. In view of the general shape and form and plastic considerations of their sculptures, these temples may be referred to a date not far removed from that of the Muktesvara at Bhuvanesvara. Another temple of a similar plan may be recognised in a ruined brick monument at Kausuli near Rājpur Jhariāl, old Patna State. Only one wall of this building now remains. But the exterior face leaves no doubt about its plan being obtained on the principle of two intersecting squares, as in the above-mentioned temples of Baudh, to which, as the carvings indicate, it was probably co-eval in date.

This plan of intersecting squares is a rare occurrence in the early phase of the history of Indian temple architecture. But, along with the addition of graduated projections on each face of a square, this principle is also latent, as a parallel measure of elaboration, in the variegation of the ground plan and diversification of the walls of a Nāgara temple. The former was no doubt the almost universal practice, but the latter, not entirely outside the scope of possible development of a Nāgara temple, is also known to have been in use. A further advance on this simple plan may be recognised in a temple within the Nurpur fort the ground plan (Text Fig. 3) of which, made of two intersecting squares, has the
ART

angles of intersection filled up. Thus the temple assumes an octagonal shape with small projecting angles between the sides. This is one particular direction in the development of this plan. Another direction is supplied by the addition to the number of intersecting squares, developed particularly in the Chalukyan monuments of the eleventh-twelfth century A.D., a direction that clearly explains the full-fledged stellate plan of these monuments.

B. Central India

Central India had been the home of early sikhara temples, and a number of shrines in this part of the country provide a moving picture of the march of the sikhara style from its archaic beginnings in the fifth-sixth century A.D. to the emergence of the Nagarā form in the eighth. Moreover, temples in this region exhibit different expressions and manifestations which, though belonging to the Nagarā style in general, present significant varieties in contrast to the practically unilateral architectural movement in Orissa. The geographical position of Central India, accessible to impacts and influences from the west as well as from the east, might have been responsible for such varieties. In spite of different expressions we may recognise in the temples of this region certain distinctive features peculiar to this part of the country.

In an earlier section, in connection with the emergence of the Nagarā form, mention has been made of the early sikhara temples of Central India. The temple of Lakṣmāmaṭa at Sīrpur may be recognised as a lineal descendant of the early sikhara style, as represented by the temples at Pathāri (Gwalior) and the Mahādeva temple at Nāchāṇa Kuṭārā. Built of large-sized red bricks over a raised terrace of cell foundations, the temple consisted of the sanctum proper and a maṇḍapa in front, with an ante-chamber connecting the two. The maṇḍapa, of which only the pillars remain, was, in all probability, a later addition, as this adjunct is usually found to be absent in other early temples of this kind. The sanctum is paṇḍharatha in plan, the rathas being carried upwards along the height of the sikhara. Here a greater variegation over the plan of the earlier examples is apparent from the addition to the number of projections on the outer wall, the gradually receding planes on each face thus leading to more attractive effects of light and shade. The projections, continued vertically, also emphasise the height of the tower. The bāda is divided into three sections—the pābhabha, the jāṅgha, and the baranđa, the last consisting of two recessed friezes that separate the cube of the bāda from the gajā of the tower. The brick temple at Bhītargāon, belonging to a date
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

several centuries earlier, has also two lines of recessed friezes demarcating the śikhara from the cube of the sanctum. Another peculiarity of the Sirpur temple is the triangular dormer opening over the doorway in front, a characteristic that is prominent in the early brick temples. The mouldings of the pābhāga and of the baranḍa, as also the ratha projections, are boldly designed. Equally boldly designed false windows on the central projections on the three sides provide a singular harmony with the doorway in front. The principal decorative scheme consists of well-shaped chaitya-window motifs, finely cut and pleasingly disposed all over the exterior surface. The śikhara, tapering inwards, shows a vertical sequence of attached āmalakas at the corners, and though the top is damaged, it is easy to imagine, on the analogy of similar temples, that a flattened āmalaka-silā, supported on a recessed beki, crowned the śikhara. The brick-work is particularly good, the surface and joints being rubbed down to a beautifully smooth texture with bold, well-defined and sharp-cut ornaments. In the perfect disposition of its parts and in the richness and refinement of its surface, this battered structure at Sirpur is perhaps unsurpassed among the early Nāgara temples of this region. The date of this interesting monument is not definitely known, and while some scholars place it in the seventh century A.D., others bring it down to the ninth. The treatment of the temple indicates a long experience in the art of building, particularly building in brick, and in the light of the stylistic development of the Nāgara temple in the different regions its date appears to be midway between the above two dates proposed by previous scholars. In Central India there had been a prolific activity in brick building about this period and fragmentary examples may still be seen in the two battered buildings at Kharod (Bilaspur District) and one at Pujāripali (Sambalpur District).

A rather archaic form of the Nāgara temple in Central India may be seen in the temple of Vaidyanātha Mahādeva at Baijñāth, a small village, nine miles from Rewa. Unfortunately, a greater part of the śikhara has fallen down, but enough remains to provide an idea of its plan and elevation. The sanctum is triratha in plan and the bāda consists of the usual three sections, the baranḍa consisting simply of a recessed frieze. The śikhara inclines inwards and appears, from its preserved portion, to have a stunted elevation. The ornament, consisting chiefly of chaitya-window motifs, is simpler in execution. The late Mr. R. D. Banerji was inclined to identify the Baijñāth temple with the one given by king Lakshmanarāja to the Saiva ascetic Hridayādīva, as mentioned in the Bilhari inscription. There is, however, no definite evidence to sup-
port this tentative suggestion. In plan, in elevation, and in general appearance the Baijnath has a close parallel in the Parasuramesvara temple at Bhituvanesvara and is nearer to the early sikha
temple. Hence, stylistically the Baijnath temple appears to be anterior to the brick temple of Lakshmana at Sirpur. A ruined temple of the Baijnath type and appearance may be found at Bargaon. The above temples represent an early phase of the Nāgara style in Central India and are identical in form and appearance to analogous monuments distributed over different parts of Northern India and a substantial portion of the Deccan.

An interesting temple with characteristics of the early form affords an instructive example in the development of the distinctive Central Indian type. This is the well-preserved temple at Baroli (Fig. 21), situated in a wild and romantic spot near the Chambal falls. In plan it is pancharatha, but the bāda is divided into the usual three sections. The corners have sharp edges with the usual vertical sequence of angle-āmalaka. What is interesting is that the recessed beki in this temple is surmounted by a large-sized flattened āmalaka over which is placed again what looks like a second āmalaka supporting the kalasa finial. The pagas, again, do not terminate at the end of the gādī but are continued beyond, each in the shape of a triangular finial that almost touches the āmalaka-silī. The double āmalaka and the continuation of the pagas beyond the top of the gādī are characteristics that belong to Central India, being unknown, except as aberrations, outside this area. Barring these two interesting features which are peculiar to Central India the temple closely agrees to the other examples of the early Nāgara form. From its shape and appearance the sanctuary appears to date from about the ninth century A.D.

In Central India the direction of development of the early Nāgara form is practically identical with that as outlined in case of Orissa. But the pillared halls, though apparently absent in the early phase of the development, come to play a prominent part in the composition of a Central Indian temple and become a necessary concomitant of the full-fledged local type. In this respect the type had had its associations with other parts of India, west as well as south.

A number of temples in Central India indicate a development that is essentially identical to that in Orissa. There is the same process of variegation by dividing the body both vertically and horizontally and by subdividing each such section. In Central India the process is carried a little further. For example, a Central

559
Indian temple is usually saptaratha in plan and the cube of the bada is divided into seven sections by two bandhanas, while we do not meet with more than five such divisions in Orissa. The jangha, thus diversified, horizontally as well as vertically, offers a background for a moving pageant of elegant sculptures in various attitudes and poses, all conforming to the varied composition of the walls. The gauri of the sikha is also correspondingly diversified by the continuation of the rathas as pagas, and soon, as already indicated in Orissa, by the appearance of anga-sikharas on the body of the main tower all around. In Central India the latter process was carried to its logical conclusion and clusters of anga-sikharas, clinging to the body of the main tower, impart to it a plasticity and volume that are unknown in Orissa. Boldly projected and rising up one above the other they signify an impatient and restless upward urge which, not infrequently, interferes with disciplined movement.

In the Baroli temple we have already noticed two interesting features—one in the projection of the pagas beyond the top of the gauri and the other in two amalakas crowning the sikha. In the later examples such projection, confined to the rahat-paga only, became a singular characteristic of the Central Indian temple. The second, the double amalaka, also proved to be distinctive of Central India, two amalakas being invariably not only as surmounting the top of the main sikha but also those of the anga-sikharas.

The place of the vestibule (antarala) and the pillared audience hall (mahapala) in Central Indian temples has already been indicated. The former has been an inseparable element even from the earliest times, and the latter, though probably absent in the earlier examples, comes, later on, to occupy an important position in the regular temple scheme. Preceding it again there is placed another smaller hall (ardho-mahapala), serving as a portico with its entrance projected and leading to the tall flight of steps that forms an impressive approach. All these, one after the other, represent a continuous scheme resulting in a plan elongated along the axial line, the entire complex of structures being raised over a substantial and solid terrace. Some of the important Orissan temples also exhibit four component elements in axial length, but there the disposition and details of the adjuncts are different. Again, the halls in Orissa are usually astylar, but in Central India columns and pillars form important elements of the scheme. The roof in each hall is placed over a dome supported on pillars. These pillars and architraves over which the ceilings are placed offer suitable backgrounds for lavish carvings, and hence the interiors of these halls are also richly ornamented in strong contrast to the bare and dull appearance of the interiors of the Orissan halls. The halls in
Orissa are closed, but here they are open on the three sides, the openings between the pillars forming balconied windows shaded by projecting eaves. Along the sides there are seats (kakshiisanas) with sloping balustrades. The sides of the mandapa hall form transepts in the more developed examples, and they go round the sanctum cella and are provided with balconied windows on three of its sides. These openings not only provided well-lighted halls, in contrast to the gloomy interiors of similar Orissan adjuncts, but also throw intense shadows athwart the intermediate portion of the building complex providing a significant contrast to the solids in the lower and upper sections of the temple scheme. This contrast of solids and voids lends an effect which is seldom paralleled in any other region of India.

In the superstructures of these adjuncts and their elevation a general likeness may be recognised in the arrangement of the pāṭhā deuls in Orissa. In Central India, as in Orissa, each of these halls is distinguished by a separate roof. Ascending in graduated heights they sweep up to the lofty sikhara of the sanctum, suggestive of the rising peaks of a mountain range converging on to the highest point. This effect of the elevation may be recognised, to a certain extent, in the temple of Ananta Vasudeva at Bhubanesvara (Fig. 13). The roofs are composed of horizontal strata of tiers upon tiers in receding stages. The surface texture of these roofs is thus essentially the same as in Orissa, with the only difference that the bell-shaped member, which we find in the full-fledged Orissan pāṭhā deul intervening between the last stage of the pāṭhā and the āmalaka, is absent in Central India. The contour also, instead of being that of an Orissan straight-edged pyramid, conforms more to that of a domical shape. The last is no doubt dictated by the method of interior construction of such roofs in Central India.

The above characteristics, gradually evolved, together with the singular features of the double āmalaka and the rāhā-paga projecting beyond the gālā, constitute the distinctive traits of the Central Indian type of the Nāgara style. The Kandarya Mahadeo temple at Khajuraho (old Chhatarpur State) represents the most notable creation of the Central Indian movement. It has to be stressed, however, that the type was the result of a gradual evolution, the course of which is indicated by several interesting temples in different parts of Central India.

An early phase in the transition is represented by the Viṣvānātha temple at Maribagh (old Rewa State). The Pañcharatha in plan and with a fivefold division of the bāḍa, the temple shows an advancement on the earlier design. Temple type of this kind had
Amarkantak, reputed to be the source of the rivers, the Narmanda, the Son and the Mahanadi, was a very sacred place in ancient times and a number of beautiful temples\(^1\) adorned the site in days gone by. Many of them are now in ruins, but among the remains that still stand there are a few which, on analysis, may be found to represent important developments. The temples of Kesava-narâyana and Machchhendranâtha, situated contiguous to each other, are practically identical in design with only slight variations in minor details. Each of the temples consists of a sanctum, an antarâla and a maḍâpa joined in axial length. The sanctum cube in each case is pañcharatha in plan and has a fivefold division along the vertical axis. The pagas in each project beyond the top of the gaṇḍî which is surmounted by two āmalakas. The surface of the tower is ornamented by shallow-cut chaitya-window motifs of tracery-like execution. The body of the cube is sparse of sculptural decoration, except in the central ratha divided into two tiers by the bândhanâ moulding. The antarâla is covered by a straight-edged gable superstructure of sharp outline. The maḍâpa is square in plan, with kakshānasas, sloping balustrades, overhanging eaves around, and is open on all sides except for the pillars that support the roof. The latter consists of a pyramidal superstructure (now broken away in case of the Machchhendranâtha) rising in horizontal tiers, receding gradually, and crowned at the apex by āmalakas and the usual finials. In the Kesavanâraṇya the roof rests on the pillars that go round the hall, but in the Machchhendranâtha a group of four columns in the centre has been provided for to support the roof, in addition to the pillars around the hall. In the Pâtalâśvara temple (Fig. 22), also at Amarkantak, we have an identical composition, its plan, elevation and appearance representing a very close approximation to the Machchhendranâtha.

In these temples the sanctum, the antarâla and the maḍâpa form parts of a unified scheme and thus they represent an advancement from the early Nâgara form towards the typical Central Indian design. The sikhara over the sanctum with its emphasis on pleasing contour and unbroken mass is still of the early Nâgara form, but with its shape and appearance, in its projecting pagas and double āmalaka, there is perhaps a faint approach towards the shape and appearance of the typical Central Indian temple.

The triple-shrined temple, traditionally ascribed to Râjâ Karân Dâhariyâ (Râjâ Karâna of Dâhala), at Amarkantak belongs also to
this phase, though we have a novel design here in the arrangement of three sanctuaries on three sides of a central mandapa hall.

Each of the shrines is saptaratha in plan and consists of seven segments along the vertical axis. The seven-fold division of the bāḍa is an advancement over the five-fold one, and though inherent in the logic of development of the Nāgarā temple, it is a feature, particularly characteristic of the typical Central Indian temple and not met with elsewhere. The sikhara in each case sweeps up with unbroken contour, the rāhā-paga on each face projecting beyond the top of the gaḍī which is crowned by two āmalakas.

This triple-shrined temple with the superb magnificence of its three tall towers of chaste and graceful outline soaring above the pyramidal pile of the mandapa in the centre represents a novel design of temple complex in Central India. Though rare in Central India, it was widely prevalent in Western India, including Khāndesh, and also in the Chālukyan regions in later times. In Central India other temples of this design may be found at Deoguna (Jaso State) and at Kukdeswar (Indore).

Closely allied to the Amarkantak group is the great temple of Virāṭeśvara Śiva at Sohāgpur (old Rewa State),⁴² which represents a further stage in the evolution of the Central Indian type. The temple consists of the sanctum, an antarāla, a mandapa hall and an ardha-mandapa or portico, all on the same axis, one after the other, on a common low platform. By the addition of the ardha-mandapa in front of the mandapa hall the Central Indian temple complex reaches its typical form. In plan the sanctum is saptaratha and is correspondingly divided into seven segments along the vertical axis. The jāṅgha, divided into three sections by two bāndhanās of two bands each, serves as a background for three tiers of sculptures of elegant shapes and forms that add a richness and variety to the sanctum walls, in contrast to the rather tame treatment of these wall sections in the earlier examples. The bārāṇḍa, separating the cube of the sanctum from the body of the sikhara, again consists of a number of banded mouldings, projected and recessed alternately. The sikhara rises in seven pagas with the rāhās projecting beyond the top of the gaḍī and is crowned by three āmalakas.

At the base of the sikhara there appears a new feature of ornamentation, hitherto unknown in Central India. A line of miniature sikhara replicas (aṅga-sikhāras) of varying and progressively increasing heights surround the body along the pagas, the rāhās on each face repeating the pattern on a bigger scale. This kind of ornamentation, as already indicated, was latent in the evolutionary process of the Nāgarā temple. In the full-fledged Central Indian
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

temple we have perhaps the most emphatic expression of this mode, as we see in the celebrated Kandarya Mahadeo temple at Khajuraho. In the Viratēśvara at Sohāgpur we recognise an early stage of this process in which the anga-sikharas cover only the lower portion of the main tower. The major portion of the sikhara, left uncovered, shows the traceried pattern of chaitya-windows in shallow relief, as we have in the early temples.

The antarāśā in front of the sanctum is covered, as usual, by a gable roof attached to the front face of the sikhara. An advance on the harsh outline of this feature in the earlier monuments may be recognised in the Viratēśvara in the attempt to break up the outline into a number of sections. In front of the antarāśā stands the maṇḍapa hall with kakēhāsanās. In the Amarkantak group this component was of square shape. But in the Viratēśvara at Sohāgpur the maṇḍapa assumes a cruciform shape on account of the balconied windows at the sides and the ardha-maṇḍapa projected in front.

The interior of the maṇḍapa hall also offers some instructive features. Like the Keśavanārāyaṇa and the Machchhendranātha at Amarkantak the maṇḍapa roof is supported on the pillars going around the hall, there being no additional central group as in the Pūtaleśvara. The square is converted into an octagon by massive architraves placed diagonally on the supporting pillars and thus cutting off the corners. Over this octagonal frame of architraves is another octagonal course and on this are supported the overlapping concentric rings of a great trabeate dome, fretted and coved all over. In plan, in elevation, in structural means and in decorative scheme the Viratēśvara temple at Sohāgpur offers the nearest approach to the distinctive Central Indian type as represented by the magnificent temples at Khajurāho.

Stylistically and constructionally the temples at Amarkantak and Sohāgpur represent a distinct phase in the evolution of the Central Indian type of temple and have to be placed midway between the Viśvanātha temple at Marībāgh, an example of the general Nāgara class of the ninth-tenth century A.D., and the typical Central Indian temples at Khajurāho, the chronology of which remains still to be settled. The Khajurāho temples have generally been placed within a century between A.D. 930 and 1030, but in the period in which the Chandellas of Jejakabhukti were predominant in this region. The stylistic and structural considerations, however, tell a different tale. The Khajurāho temples, at least the more important ones, represent an accumulated and crystallised experience and indicate, in every sense, the fulfilment and finality of a long anterior develop-
ment. Our knowledge of architectural movement in Central India and in other localities does not quite fit in with the above chronology of the Khajuraho temples, though it is usually accepted. It is true that there have been found inscriptions at the place ranging in date from A.D. 953 to 1001, but it is not always clear to which particular temples they apply. The usual chronology of these temples, settled with reference to such inscriptions, may therefore be regarded as rather tentative. No local art movement, much less the Central Indian one due to its geographical position, can be regarded as an isolated episode. It is generally related to other developments that are taking place elsewhere. The direction of architectural movements in different parts of India, coupled with the chronological data supplied by the temples of known date, would indicate that none of the temples at Khajuraho, even those which on account of style may be regarded as the earliest, can be dated prior to the second half of the eleventh century A.D. The Visvanâtha temple at Maribagh belongs to the general class of the Nâgara style, and with reference to the temples of this class in different localities cannot be placed earlier than the ninth century A.D. The gradual advancement of this design towards the typical Central Indian one, along the lines described above, denotes a transitional process covering a rather long period, particularly in those days of slow movement. The temples at Amar-kantak and Sohâgpur, together with temples of identical design and form at Khajuraho and other places, belong to this transitional phase which may roughly be placed between the ninth and the eleventh centuries A.D. In Orissa, as already indicated, the distinctive local type comes into view not before the close of the eleventh century A.D., and in Central India, too, the typical Central Indian temple takes its shape at about the same period.

But the fact remains that there was a prolific architectural activity at Khajuraho in the second half of the tenth century A.D., as the inscriptions found at the place abundantly testify. It is significant again that this activity, so far as epigraphic data are concerned, ceased abruptly about the beginning of the eleventh century A.D. The first half of the eleventh century A.D. was a critical period for the Chandella dynasty, partly owing to the rise of the Kalachuris, and mainly on account of the invasions of Sultan Mahmud who advanced as far as Kalañjara, not far from Khajuraho. A cruel invader, intent on sack, pillage, plunder and iconoclasm, Mahmud had left signs of wanton destruction wherever he went, and it is not unlikely that the monuments of an earlier building activity at Khajuraho, to which the inscriptions amply testify, suffered irreparable damage. As noted above, the Chandellas again rose to power in the second half of the eleventh century A.D., and the temples that now
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

stand in all their glory at Khajurāho very probably belonged to this period.

The straggling village of Khajurāho contains at present over thirty temples, large and small, in various stages of preservation. The monuments are distributed among the three great religious systems—Saivism, Vaishnavism and Jainism—and in each group there is one, or more, greater than the rest. In the Saiva group we have the Kandarya Mahādeo and the Viśvanātha, in the Vaishnava the Ramachandra or Chaturbhuja, and in the Jain the Pārvanātha. It is these temples, more than any other, which represent the Central Indian temple in its best and most complete manifestation. In plan and elevation, in form and appearance they are all alike, and are to be distinguished only by certain details as regards their expression. The temple complex consists of the sanctum (garbhagriha), the antarāla, the maṇḍapa and the ardha-maṇḍapa, with the projected portico in front, all on the same axis one after the other, and raised on a substantial masonry terrace, the adhishṭhāna or the socle. Each temple, so constituted, appears to represent a unified design, and sometimes the main temple is flanked at each corner of the adhishṭhāna by a supplementary shrine, thus forming a complete panchayatana group. But the accommodation of a temple within a quadrangular enclosure, though customary in other parts of India, is unknown to Khajurāho.

In spite of this general agreement in plan and composition, which is evidently due to one and the same stylistic movement, the Khajurāho temples can nevertheless be distinguished in the details of their expression. The distinctions represent the successive manifestations of one single movement, indicating a steady onward march, culminating in its most complete expression in the grand and magnificent pile of the Kandarya Mahādeo. From the elevational aspect the temples may be divided into two broad groups—those with repetitions of miniature tower replicas (āṅga-śikhara) attached to the main śikhara all around, and those without. From the standpoint of plan and composition again, two distinct groups may be recognised according as there are transepts, forming an inner passage of ambulation around the main cella of the sanctum, or not. As a general rule, the temples without the transepts around the sanctum cella and without the āṅga-śikhara, precede those that possess these significant characteristics with which the typical Central Indian temple reaches its complete form. Stylistically, however, the two groups are very close to each other, the one representing just a stage prior to the evolution of the other, and, to a certain extent, chronological overlappings, usual in such circumstances, are not unlikely.
ART

Following the sequence of evolutionary process, outlined above, the account of the Khajuraho temples should begin with the Vamana (Fig. 23) and the Adinatha (Fig. 24) temples which are practically of an identical design. The sanctum of the former is saptaratha in plan, but the cube is divided into five vertical segments only. The contour of the tower is not broken up by any superposed miniature replica (angasikharas) and its surface is ornamented by minute and interlacing patterns of chaitya-windows, looking almost like fretwork. The sanctum walls below are, however, decorated by elegant mouldings and graceful sculptures whose modelling and execution are in the best traditions of mediaeval art. To some extent, the sikharas has a stunted appearance as in the earlier temples of the general Nagara class, and the rahas also end at the top of the garbha. But such features as the double amalaka and the treatment of the walls of the sanctum cube indicate a developed phase of the Central Indian architectural movement to which its other elements, like the antarala, the mahadapa and the ardhamaudapa together with their disposition, are closely related.

The Adinatha (Fig. 24) represents a small but exquisite structure by the side of the great Parsvanatha temple. Its mahadapa and other usual adjuncts either did not exist originally or were removed and replaced in modern times by a brick construction, abominable in its glaring incongruity. Rising on a high adishthana the sanctum is saptaratha in plan and correspondingly has a seven-fold division of the badi. The sanctum walls are decorated by three tiers of sculptures, each of alluring beauty and in every way comparable to the best temple sculpture of the age. The sikharas rises in seven pagas with the rahas projecting beyond the top of the garbha and almost touching the lower of the two amalakas which surmount the recessed beki. What is interesting is that the konakas also continue beyond the height of the garbha, a feature that gets an added emphasis in the great Parsvanatha temple. The shape of the sikhara is more elongated than that of the Vamana, and the surface, unburdened by any duplicated miniature, is richly fretted with delicate interlacements of chaitya-opening patterns. It is perhaps the most finished creation of the Central Indian architectural movement just prior to the emergence of its complete and full-fledged form.

The majority of the Khajuraho temples, however, belong to the second group i.e. with the angasikharas clustered around the body of the main tower. Interesting examples may be seen in the Bharatji or Chitraragupta, the Devi Jagadamba (Fig. 27), the Kunwar Math (Fig. 25), the Ramachandra or Chaturbhuja (Fig. 26), the Parsvanatha (Fig. 29), the Visvanatha (Fig. 28), and last, the most impres-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

sive of all, the Kandarya Mahâdeo (Fig. 30). They are fundamentally of the same design and composition and consist of the characteristic component elements with practically identical arrangements and dispositions. But even within this group there is a divergence in an important respect. None of the temples surveyed up till now have an ambulatory contained within the mass of the structure. But each of the last four temples of this group, representing the most complete expression of the Central Indian type, has an enclosed inner ambulatory, formed by the extension of the transepts of the mandapa hall around the sanctum cella. This ambulatory again has the usual projected window openings on three of its sides just as in the frontal parts of the temple complex. The temple with the inner ambulatory is known as the sândhâra prâsâda, while the one without as the nirandhâra prâsâda. The earliest example of the sândhâra prâsâda, so far as extant monuments are concerned, may be recognised in the second group of Gupta temples.44 In those days this plan was more or less widespread, being found over a large area in the north as well as in the south. But gradually the plan became localised in the south. The mediaeval temples of this plan in certain regions of Northern India like those of Khajurâho, probably indicate the influence of the building traditions of the south.

In these two well-marked divisions of the temples at Khajurâho, with repetitions of aigap-sûkharas on the tower, it is likely that the one without the inner ambulatory (nirandhâra) is stylistically anterior to that which is furnished with it (sândhâra), though the two are very close to each other, but for this significant distinction. A minute comparison of the forms and appearances of these two divisions of temples and their decorative scheme may also lend some support to the hypothesis of a posterior date to the sândhâra temples. As a rule, the sândhâra prâsâdas are more elaborate and exuberant than the nirandhâra ones, their bewildering wealth of ornament and variegation indicating the finality of the movement just prior to dessication and decadence.

Among the nirandhâra temples of this division the Devi Jagadamba (TextFig. 4; Fig. 27) and the Kunwar Math (Fig. 23) were impressive productions, though the latter is much damaged. Both have the same exuberance of sculptures and rich ornamentation, pleasingly balanced by the variegated treatment of the sikhara by smaller replicas reduplicated all around. In the Kunwar Math, however, the sikhara is surrounded by regular and successive rows of smaller replicas, practically of identical heights, along the receding planes of the pagâs. In this respect the Kunwar Math strikes a new
note in the sikhara design which has parallels further towards the west.

Of the sändhāra temples the sanctum in the Ramachandra or Chaturbhuba (Fig. 26) is paścharatha and paścāṭa, the other temples showing the seven-fold division horizontally as well as vertically. The extension of the transepts of the mandapa around the sanctum forms an inner ambulatory around the garbha-grīha, provided on three sides by projecting windows with sloping balustrades and overhanging eaves as in those of the mandapa and the ardha-mandapa. Along the entire central zone of the temple complex there runs thus a line of voids (cf. Figs. 26 and 28) that gracefully relieves the solids in the lower and upper sections. Hitherto such voids have been confined to the mandapa and the ardha-mandapa only. Their provision on the sanctum walls perfects the design and adds to the impressive character of the monument as a whole. The roof of the mandapa is nearer to the typical Orissan pithās, on account of its having a pyramidal outline and the bell-shaped member, usual in Orissa but unknown in Central India, intervening between the last stage of the pyramid and the āmalaka.

The Pārśvanātha temple (Fig. 29), the holiest of the Jain group at Khajurāho, is one of the most elaborate productions, though much reduced in size. It comprises an oblong structural scheme with a projected portion at each end of the sanctum—the one in front forming the mandapa hall and the other at the back an attached outside shrine. Though there is an enclosed passage around the sanctum cela, in continuation of the transepts of the mandapa hall, the projected balcony windows on the sides are singularly absent, thus resulting in an almost complete elimination of any voids in the temple walls. There is only a small latticed window on the central ratha on each face for admission of light and air into the enclosed inner ambulatory, but they are so disposed as not to interfere with the predominantly sculptural scheme of the whole. The lack of contrast between the solids and the voids, that constitutes a striking and pleasing characteristic of the Khajurāho temples, gives the Pārśvanātha a monotonous and overburdened appearance which its exuberant wealth of sculptural elegance could hardly compensate for.

Of the Saiva group of temples the most important are the Viśvanātha and the Kandarya Mahādeo, which illustrate the Central Indian architectural movement in its richest and most finished expressions. In these two magnificent monuments, representing the final results of a long anterior development, the experience of successive ages is found in a mature and crystallised state. The Viśva-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

nātha (Fig. 28) is the smaller of the two and stylistically makes the nearest approach to the imposing and impressive pile of the Kandarya Mahādeo. In plan and composition, in shape and appearance, the two are identical, but in the Kandarya Mahādeo the effect is much richer and grander, expressive of an abler and more skilful disposition of its various parts and their decorative elements.

The Kandarya Mahādeo temple (Text Fig. 5; Fig. 30) stands on a high terrace and comprises the usual component elements. In vertical section the temple is seen to be a mountain of masonry with its volumes and masses moving in an upward direction until they reach the peak. According to the sacred literature, Siva, the god enshrined in the temple, has his abode in the Kailāsa mountain, and this temple, which has the appearance of a mountain in exterior elevation, may be described as a fitting sanctuary for the lord of the mountains created by human endeavour.

The sanctum is saptaratha in plan and consists of the seven segments along the vertical axis. This arrangement is typical of the Central Indian temple of full-fledged design. On the lofty basement terrace rises the emphatically high plinth or pabhāga sloping upwards in a succession of bold mouldings with prominent passages of light and shade. Over this rises the central zone of the wall section, the jāṅgha, divided into five segments, the two bandhanās separating the three elaborate tiers of sculptures. Following the alternate projections and recesses of the plan these life-like forms, "shapely in appearance, exquisite in workmanship and of inexhaustible interest", present a moving pageant of sculptured grace. This decorative arrangement constitutes a remarkable characteristic of the Khajurāho temples, each building accommodating such friezes in proportion to its size. In the Kandarya Mahādeo we have nearly 900 such sculptures, each slightly less than life-size, and it is no wonder that with such animated throng of plastic forms ever present on the walls, the structure pulsates with a vitality not ordinarily met with in building art.

Several courses of barāṇḍa mouldings, admirable again in the disposition of light and shade, separate the wall section from that of the towered superstructures. Here the analogy with a mountain range is complete, not only on account of the graded heights of the superstructures of the different components rising and falling alternately and ultimately converging on the main tower, but also in the multitudinous peaks, in the shape of āṅga-ṭikharas, arrayed round the main ṭikhara, that lead the eye towards the topmost pinnacle (Fig. 31). The entire mass of the tower is thus broken up by deep indentations and appears to be weightless. The upward urge, thus
emphasised, though restless in movement, seems to lend to the entire monument a striking quality of aspiring verticalism. The ascent, though broken up and dissolved in separate volumes and masses, is not without a rhythm of its own, as every lineament is principally governed by the fundamental scheme laid down in the plan and elevational aspect of the entire monument.

The different adjuncts of the sanctum have their separate superstructures, graded in height towards the main tower (Text Fig. 6). The antarāla has the usual gable roof, exquisitely rich in treatment. The maṇḍapa and the ardha-maṇḍapa are each roofed by a trabected dome with similar supplementary superstructures clustering around and subordinated to it in the same way as are the aṣaṅga-śikhara to the main śikhara. The main superstructure in each is crowned by the āmalaka and the kalasa. The progressive and repeated ascent and descent of the different superstructures converging on the pinnacle of the śikhara, as seen in the lateral view, produce a remarkable ensemble which is not visible, however, in the front where the several roofs seem “to coincide in one comprehensive outline.” Thus every lineament, however varied in treatment and articulation, is summed up in a final unity.

The interior of this temple complex, because of the variety and multiplicity of its details, is no less impressive. The entrance, which is on the east, is approached by a steep flight of steps, imposing in its dignity. The exquisitely carved doorway shows a foliated form of strut attached to the bottom of the lintel, a pleasing motif repeated also in the ornamental doorway to the sanctum cella. The frontal doorway leads to a passage expanding into the rectangular ardha-maṇḍapa and next to the square maṇḍapa hall, each a hypostyle with open sides. The transepts on either side of the maṇḍapa extend around the sanctum and connect with the boldly projecting balcony windows. The disposition of the interior complex is replete with notable features, functional and at the same time highly decorative. The ceilings of the different superstructures are no doubt made up of oversailing courses of masonry. The limitations of this elementary structural procedure necessitated the reduction of spans by underpinning, and it is this necessary function which the pillars effectively serve. We may take, for instance, the roof of the maṇḍapa hall. The four central pillars support a frame of architraves. The square, thus formed, is transformed into an octagon and next the ceiling goes up in overlapping concentric courses until at the top it is closed by a single disc. A pendant projects downwards from this apex which is just below the pinnacle on the summit. Smaller trabected domes cluster around the central dome, just a reflex in the interior of the arrangement of the supplementary superstruc-
tures around the main one. This simple arrangement has been given a magnificently ornamental treatment and the almost bewildering wealth of decoration defies description. The floors of the different components of the structure are not on one level and in their disposition one may also recognise the same ideas of vertical ascent of the monument as seen in the exterior. The ardha-mandapa leads up to a raised dais in the centre of the mandapa from which the antarāla is, again, on a higher level, and finally another series of steps leads up to the garbha-grīha. Not only in the solid masses of the superstructure, but also in the disposition of the hollow parts, the same aspiration for verticalism is equally apparent, the former leading up to the pinnacle of the sikhara, the latter to the holiest of the holies, the garbha-grīha.

The Kandarya Mahādeo at Khajurāho represents the finality of the Central Indian architectural movement—a consummation of a fruitful evolutionary process—and is at once brilliant in its conception and the most imposing in its perfect finish and grace. Central India affords many other temples of this type, but none can equal it in its flawless proportions, the orderly and harmonious disposition of its various parts, its sculptured grace pulsating with vibrant, yet restrained, energy, or in the pleasing ensemble of the various lineaments of the superstructure with the aspiring spire of the vimāna dominating and controlling the entire scheme. Exuberant in details, architectural as well as sculptural, that may appear to be seemingly restless, there is no sign of disorderliness in the entire monument, and all have been drawn up in the bold sweep of the rhythmically compact sikhara. It fully deserves the high encomium lavished upon it by critics of art in modern times.46

The Ghaṭāū temple (Fig. 33) at Khajurāho, as it now stands, appears to be of an entirely different character. It is now in an extremely fragmentary state and a few pillars that remain represent but a mere shell of what was apparently a great conception. The pillars are arranged on a moulded plinth in two squares set apart from each other, the frontal one evidently constituting the portico, and the rear, the mandapa. The antarāla and the garbha-grīha, which apparently stood behind, have now disappeared, and it is the absence of these two elements and of the enclosing walls and superstructures that lends a singular appearance to the monument. The pillars now stand alone, and in the beauty of their form and proportions and the chasteness of their ornamentation they evince almost a classic dignity.

A few of the temples representing exceptional types in Central India should also be discussed in this connection for completing the
account of the architectural movement in this region during the medieval period. The two four-faced square temples at Khajuraho present unusual appearance when compared to the temples at the site already described. They are the temples of Brahmā and of Mrītaṅga Mahādevo (Mrityunjaya Mahādeva), the former on the east bank of Khajur Sāgar and the other situated close to the Rāmachandra or Chaturbhuj temple. Each of them (Text Figs. 7 and 8) represents a shrine, square on the inside and cruciform outside, the projection in the centre of each of the four walls being provided with an opening. The opening on the east forms the main entrance with a flight of stairs in front. In the temple of Brahmā the other three openings are closed by stone lattices of simple but different patterns, but in the Mrītaṅga Mahādevo all the four openings are left clear, the eastern one serving as a vestibule leading to the interior of the sanctum from the open portico hall, provided in front, and the other three as open balconies. The roof is pyramidal, formed of overlapping courses in gradually receding tiers, almost similar in form and construction as the superstructures of the mandapa halls. The type is nothing new as it represents the regular form of a mandapa hall in different parts of India. The idea of a sanctum with the four sides open is, however, novel during this period, and not a little interest attaches to these temples because the sanctum in each case is roofed over by a pyramidal superstructure, and not by a curvilinear sikhara which is the usual rule. In the Bhūskarāsvāra temple at Bhuvanēsvara we have an Orissan parallel of this kind of shrine.

In Central India, apart from the square temples and different manifestations of them, we are also familiar with temples of circular shape and plan. Two representative examples of this group may be mentioned here, one at Gurgi Masaun (twelve miles east of Rewa town), and the other at Chandrehe, also in the old Rewa State (Text Fig. 9). The former is in a dilapidated condition, most of the sikhara having gone, but the latter (Fig. 32) is found to be in an excellent state of preservation. Both belong to the same conception and were approximately of the same period. There is a possibility, again, that the two were erected by one and the same person, the abbot Praśāntaśiva of the Mattaśaya sect of the Saivas, about the middle of the tenth century A.D. Each of the temples has a sanctum, circular both inside and out, with an antarāla and an open mandapa projecting from the front.

Apart from the circular plan of the sanctum, which is certainly a novel feature, these two temples are closely related to the Central Indian architectural movement in the compositional arrangement of the different components as well as in the essential features of their elevation and scheme of decoration.
The struggle for empire

Reference may be made in this connection to a few brick temples in Uttar Pradesh which offer certain interesting analogies to the circular temples at Chandrehe and Gurgi Masaun. Mention should first be made of a temple at Parauli in the Kanpur District which presents us with a circular plan of the garbha-griha internally, though externally it is a polygon of sixteen sides with three of the sides cut off possibly to form the entrance facade. Other temples of such external shape and appearance are also found at Kurari in the Fatehpur District, where, however, the interior of the garbha-griha is of a square plan. As usual in brick architecture, each of the temples is covered by a double dome constructed on the corbel principle. Because of the clear definition of the different faces and deep-cut traceries covering the entire surface from the base to the summit, the effect and appearance of each of the temples are decidedly good, and it is a pity that none of them is sufficiently preserved to enable us to form a complete idea of this type of monuments which indicate, no doubt, a new direction in the development of the North Indian temple style. Another temple of an external circular shape, though square internally, is found at Tinduli in the Fatehpur District. The temple has also an appearance and effect not unlike those of the group mentioned above. In this predilection for a circular plan, whether in the exterior or in the interior, or in both as in the case of the temples at Chandrehe and Gurgi Masaun, Central India and the Gangetic region may be found to have interesting links with each other.

Mention should also be made here of a few other temples in Central India built on the principle of circles so far as the exteriors are concerned. At Arang in the Raipur District there is a dilapidated temple of the name of Bhand Dewal which, except for its plan, offers a general resemblance to the temples of the Central Indian type. What is interesting is that though the sanctum is square internally, externally the plan is based on that of a circle, and not on that of a square which is the usual rule. The circumference of the circle has, however, straight faces on the principal directions, that to the front having been occupied by the usual frontal components of the temple complex. The arcs intermediate between the straight faces are each cut up into three right-angled indentations, the spaces between these indentations being again straight-faced on the periphery of an inner circle running along the recessed points of the right-angled indentations. The plan is, no doubt, a novel one and has almost the shape of a star if the principal straight faces are ignored. Another modification of this principle may, again, be recognised in the brick temple of Savari-Narayana (Seori- narayana) near Kharod in the Bilaspur District. In this temple
the intermediate arcs of the circle between the straight faces are each cut up into five regular right-angled indentations at the back and into two in front, the remaining portion of the circle in front having been occupied by the frontal adjuncts of the maṇḍapa and the portico, now entirely gone. But for the straight faces the plan is obtained on the principle of a rotating square round a central axis. In principle both the temples belong to the same conception and may be said to be of rare occurrence in Central India, but characteristic of the temples of the Dakhan. A temple at Rahlíya, near Māhākā, and the Nilkanṭaśvara temple at Udayapura, in the old Gwalior State, each exhibits a plan like that of the Savari-Nārāyaṇa and indicates a wider distribution for such a type of temples. Indeed, such a conception appears to be an extension in Central India from regions lying further in the south-west.

To complete the account of unusual types of Central Indian temples reference should be made to the peripteral shrines dedicated to the worship of the Chaunīśaṭ Yoginis associated with the cult of Śakti. Such temples are usually characteristic of Central Indian territories, though one or two examples may be found far beyond the geographical limits of Central India. Generally, such a temple takes the shape of an open circular court enclosed by a peripheral colonnade with chapels enshrining the images of the sixty-four Yoginis and occasionally of some accessory divinities as well, and a principal shrine,—sometimes accommodated in the centre of the peripheral chapels, sometimes in the centre of the open court,—being occupied by the image of an aspect of Śakti. The Chaunīśaṭ Yogini temple at Bherāghāṭ,54 near Jabalpur, is 116 feet in internal diameter with eighty-one peripheral chapels together with a central shrine containing an image of Umā-Maheśvara. This temple might have belonged to the ninth or tenth century A.D., though the possibility of a much earlier date for the shrine cannot be entirely ruled out. The Chaunīśaṭ Yogini temple at Mitauli, near Padauli,55 may be ascribed to the eleventh century A.D. It is 120 feet in diameter, has sixty-five peripheral chapels and a circular central shrine with a maṇḍapa in front. Circular Yogini temples are also found at Rāṇīpur Jharīl (Text Fig. 10) in the old Patna State,56 at Duddahi in the Lalitpur District,57 and in the old Kāliāndi State.58 All of them seem to belong to the early mediaeval period. The type seems to have extended as far south as Coimbatore where it is represented by a solitary example reproducing its essential elements. The Chaunīśaṭ Yogini temple at Khajurāho59 is rectangular in plan—an exceptional design in this kind of temples (Text Fig. 11). The central quadrangle measures 102 feet by 59½ feet, and is surrounded by sixty-four peripheral chapels, all around, and one larger in the back

575
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

wall, no doubt representing the main shrine. Each of these is surmounted by a small sikhara, essentially of Nāgara design, though crowned by more than one amalaka in the characteristic Central Indian fashion. The Khajurāho temple seems to have belonged to a date slightly later than that of the Bheraghat one. Coomaraswamy has made the following interesting observation regarding the association of temples of this design. “It may be remarked that early examples of similar plans, based no doubt on still earlier Indian prototypes, can be recognized in the case of more than one Gandhāran monastery shrine, e.g. Jamālgari and Takht-i-Bahi, and so far as the rectangular type is concerned, can be paralleled in the cloistered court of the Kashmiri shrines, and those of some Jain temples at Girnār and Sravana Belgola (bēṭa type) and of the Chālukya Kesava temple in Māisur”.

C. Rajputāna

It is in Rajputāna that we have the earliest remains of a structural shrine, the circular temple at Bairat, in Jaipur, that goes back to the third century B.C. Fragments of an amalaka, the crowning member of a sikhara temple, unearthed at Nāgari, near Chītor, and datable in the fifth century A.D., testify to the existence of the sikhara temple in Rajputāna as early as the Gupta period. This part of the country thus seems to have been familiar with the early evolution of the Nāgara temple style from its genesis in the archaic sikhara temples of the Gupta and the post-Gupta phases. But older temples of this evolutionary phase have all disappeared, and the earliest extant temple of this order in Rajputāna may be dated in the eighth century A.D. when the Nāgara temple had already emerged in its distinctive shape and characteristics.

The straggling village of Osia, 32 miles to the north-west of Jodhpur, seems once to have been a flourishing settlement, and contains about a dozen and a half old temples of both Brahmanical and Jain affiliations. These temples, now in a sadly neglected state, represent two phases of building activity, one early and the other later. The former, datable in the eighth-ninth centuries A.D., is represented by about a dozen temples revealing a stage in the evolution of the Nāgara style in which the regional characteristics are not yet to appear. The later phase is illustrated by nearly half a dozen examples in which the regional characteristics are manifest; such regional characteristics, however, hardly represent any new trend, but illustrate an almost parallel application of the tendencies with which we are already familiar in Central India.

In form and appearance the temples of the early series are alike to one another. Temple No. 1 (Fig. 34), dedicated to god Hari-Hara,
Art

is a characteristic example of the group. It is of the pañchāyatana class, each of the shrines, including the main one, being pañchāratha in plan and provided with a shallow projecting portico in front. The bāja is divided into three vertical segments, and the śikhara, gradually inclining inwards with an unbroken contour, is topped by an amalaka.

Temples essentially of the same style may also be found at Jhalrapatian, Ambam and Buchkalá, all in Rājputāna. One of the temples at the last place bears an inscription, dated in Vikrama Saṅvat 872 (A.D. 815), which refers itself to the reign of the Gurjara Pratihāra king, Nāgabhāṭa II. An inscription in the Jain Mahāvīra temple at Osia speaks of the shrine as existing in the time of Vatsarāja, father of Nāgabhāṭa II, though the temple itself, as it now stands, must have been of a considerably later date. Vatsarāja flourished in the last quarter of the eighth century A.D., and these two inscriptions may furnish an idea regarding the approximate age of the temples of the early series in Rājputāna. In plan, in shape and in appearance these early Rājputāna temples resemble the temples of the Nāgara order in other parts of India of approximately the same period.

In spite of the smallness of size, each of the temples at Osia, Dr. Kramrisch rightly observes, “is a model of clarity in the disposition and proportion of its architectural theme.” The elegant proportions of the different sections and their chaste ornamentations, together with the graceful and unbroken contour of the tower, contribute to make the group one of the most attractive among the early Nāgara temples. Further, the pañchāyatana temples at Osia, because of their exquisite setting and orderly disposition of the central and the accessory shrines, form impressive compositions. Thus the early series of temples at Osia, in spite of their damaged state, remains as one of the most significant among the entire class of Nāgara temples.

Two temples of the early series at Osia (Nos. 2 and 7) show a distinct advance in the composition in the addition of a maṇḍapa which precedes the principal shrine. The maṇḍapa consists of an open pillared hall provided with sloping kakābhāṣanas at the two sides and a projecting portico in front. Unfortunately, temple No. 2 is much damaged, but in the skilful disposition of its different parts and adjuncts and in its profuse, yet refined, embellishment it ranks as one of the most pleasing creations of the builders’ art in Rājputāna. Temple No. 7 at Osia (Fig. 33), dedicated to Sūrya, is also an equally elegant production and is perhaps the finest monument in the entire series. Like temples Nos. 1 and 2 it is also of the pañchāya-
tana class, and what is interesting is that the attendant shrines seem to have been connected by a cloister, parts of which still remain. In this arrangement we have possibly the nucleus of the subsequent cloistered composition that is particularly characteristic of the Jain temples of this region.

Among the early series of temples at Osia there may also be recognised examples which belong to conceptions different from the Nagara. The bhadra or the piṅha temple, so intimately associated as the manḍapa of the rekha sanctum in the temples of the Nagara design, appears at Osia as an individual conception in this early phase. In the much damaged temple No. 3 at Osia we have apparently a conception of the rectangular temple with a wagon-vaulted superstructure, as we have in the Vaiaal deva at Bhuvanesvara, the Navadurgā temple at Yāgesvara (Almora District) and the Telikhā mandir at Gwalior.

This early series of the temples at Osia, though fundamentally resembling the contemporary Nagara temples in other parts of India, possesses greater affinities with those of Central India. The mahāpīṣṭha supporting the temple is characteristic of such monuments both in Rājputāna and Central India; but it is usually absent in Orissa which was another important centre of the early Nagara temples. The shallow pillared porticos of the Osia temples have their parallels in the antarāśulas of the Central Indian temples of early date. With the introduction of the manḍapa, inclined kakshāsanas seem to have been characteristic of such a hall both in Rājputāna and in Central India. The development of the early design of the Nagara temple respectively in Rājputāna and Central India is also, to a certain extent, parallel. The distinctive type of a mediaeval Rājputāna temple, therefore, differs very little from a typical Central Indian one. A clustered arrangement of anga-sikharas round the body of the main sikhara is a characteristic of the typical Rājputāna temple as well as of the Central Indian.

But a Rājputāna temple, in spite of its close affinity to a Central Indian, lacks many of the distinctive features of the Central Indian temple type, such as extension of the pāgas beyond the top of the gaṇaḍa, a number of śivalakas as the crowning element of the sikhara, and division of the bāda into more than three segments (aṅgas)—piṅha, jāṅha and bāraṅa. A typical Orissan temple is characterised by a five-fold division of the bāda, while a full-fledged Central Indian temple has as many as seven such segments in the same section. A three-fold division of the bāda is characteristic of the early Nagara temple and Rājputāna retains it to the last. In this
In the later series of the temples at Osia one may recognise significant stages in the development of the characteristic type of the Rājput temple. Three temples of this group deserve special mention, namely the Jain temple of Mahāvīra, and the two Brahmanical temples dedicated respectively to Sachiyā Mātā and Piplā Devī. The āṅga-sīkharas in these temples, though on a lesser scale than those of the Central Indian temples, are as emphatic in expression, and become characteristic of the developed type of the Rājputāna temple. Though not far removed from the typical Central Indian temple, at least in respect of its fundamental design and composition, the form and disposition of the pillars and of the toraṇa in front add distinctive notes that are found only in Rājputāna and Gujarāt. In the form of the plinth and of its decorative scheme the movements respectively in Rājputāna and Gujarāt also appear to be related to each other. The projecting eaves shading the bāda and its niches are also characteristic of the temples of these two regions. Another feature found in the temple of Sachiyā Mātā is the octagonal disposition of the pillars in the centre of the maṇḍapa hall supporting the shallow dome. This is first met with in structures dating from the eleventh century, and in a developed form in the maṇḍapa of the temple of Piplā Devī with its orderly arrangement of more than 30 richly carved pillars supporting the superstructure. This arrangement of the maṇḍapa became characteristic of the Rājput temples of the developed type and may be seen in its most bewildering variety in the Jain temples of Mount Abu.

The Nilakanṭhesvara temple at Kekind and the Somesvara at Kirāṇa, both in Jodhpur, seem to represent fundamentally the same design and form as those of the later series of the Osia temples. Kirāṇa has a number of temples, all severely damaged. Among these the Somesvara is perhaps the most exuberant in design and decorative scheme. Unfortunately, only the sanctum with a part of its tower remains along with the shell of what had once been a magnificent pillared maṇḍapa.

Kumbharia in southern Rājputāna has, again, a number of Jain temples which are noteworthy as anticipating further development that became characteristic of the Jain temple complexes of this region. The temple of Nemāṇīthā (Fig. 36), for example, is not fundamentally different from the characteristic type of the Rājput temples, described above, except that it is situated within a quadrangular court. But the double-śmālakas crowning the āṅga-sīkharas as well
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

as the main šikhara are rare in their appearance in a temple of this region. Such a feature is distinctively Central Indian in character, but is also met with, perhaps as aberrations, outside the limits of that territory. The Pārśvanātha temple at Kumbharia is also identical in form and design, and both the structures probably belong to about the eleventh century A.D.

The maṇḍapa of the Neminātha temple and that of the Pārśva­nātha (Fig. 37) introduce certain interesting features. The super­structure in each case with its tiers of rooflets and śāmalaka is closely analogous to that of the Nilaṅgaṭha Mahādeva temple at Sunak in Gujarāt. The disposition of the interior is, again, highly instruc­tive. The arrangement in either case seems to be identical. The maṇḍapa of the Pārśvanātha temple is, however, more masterfully disposed with its central complement of elegant pillars with capitals, all worked in good taste, supporting the shallow central dome, the richly carved pillars with ornamental arches on the flanks, and the surrounding cloister with cells of images approached by smaller doorways which effectively repeat the pattern of the larger entrance leading to the sanctum. As Kramrisch rightly observes: “The Maṇḍapa of the Pārśvanātha temple in Kumbharia puts to unique use the white Makrana marble of Rājāsthān. The gleaming spaciousness of the hall, within the internal cloister of cells—evolved particularly in Jain temples—is without equal”.

An advancement of the above design may be recognised in the celebrated group of Jain temple-complexes at Dilwārā, Mount Abu. The group consists of four principal temples, and their accessory structures, each enclosed within a quadrangular court. Among these, two, built respectively by Vimala and Tejaṅgala and known as Vimala Vasahi and Luna Vasahi (though sometimes called after their builders), are conspicuously noteworthy for the exuberance of ornamental detail minutely wrought in a manner that remains unsurpassed even in India which was justly famous for such kind of work.

The first temple is dedicated to Adinātha or Rishabhanātha, the first Tirthaṅkara. It stands within a quadrangular court, approached on the east through halls, axially placed, one rectangular and the other square (Text Fig. 12). As it now stands, the complex consists of the sanctum, placed near the western end of the court and preceded in front by maṇḍapa and a portico, the three surrounded by a colon­naded cloister (Fig. 39) of image-cells aligned round the enclosing wall. In Jain terminology these components are known respectively as mulagabhūro, gāthā-maṇḍapa, sabhā-maṇḍapa and devakulikā. All these adjuncts, however, do not seem to have been of the same period.

880
The sanctuary itself, built in black stone, appears to be earlier than the halls and colonnaded cloister which are in white marble. The sanctuary is surmounted by a tower which, however, is too low to have any architectural effect. The halls in front were erected in Vikrama Samvat 1088 (A.D. 1031) by Vimala, an officer of the Chaulukya king Bhima I. The colonnaded cloister, again, seems to have been later than the halls by about a century.

The second temple, the Luna Vasahi, is dedicated to Neminatha, the twenty-second Tirthankara, and stands to the north-east of the Adinatha temple. Generally it follows the plan of the latter. Like the latter, again, the sanctuary in black stone appears to have been earlier than other members of the complex which are in white marble. The front halls (Fig. 38) were put up in Vikrama Samvat 1287 (A.D. 1230) by the banker Tejapala, brother of Vastupala, who built the triple-shrined Jain temple at Girnar in Kathiawar.

The setting of these temples on the rugged scarp of the hill at a height of more than 4000 feet is, no doubt, the most picturesque. Externally, the temples are perfectly plain and without any architectural effect, the insignificant spires peeping, as it were, over the enclosure walls, and having nothing to commend them to the attention of the visitor. A totally different effect, however, awaits him in the interior (cf. Figs. 39-41) which, in each case, resolves itself into an orderly grouping of richly carved pillars of the portico and the mandapa in front of the shrine and of the colonnaded cloister around. A splendid display of sculptors' skill is spread over the interior in the minutely carved, almost fretted and traceried, decoration of the pillars, ceilings, doorways and cloistered cells. To quote Cousens, "the crisp, thin, translucent, shell-like treatment of the marble surpasses anything seen elsewhere, and some of the designs are veritable dreams of beauty". Ordinary chiselling would hardly achieve such a delicacy of carving, and there is a tradition that much of it was produced by scraping the marble away, the payment to the sculptors being made by the weight of marble dust so removed.

Amongst this exquisite array of delicate carving the domed halls in both the temples arrest the admiration of the visitors with an almost bewildering awe. In each of the halls the central feature is the octagonal nave supporting the shallow trabeate dome over a ring of the eight pillars with light cusped ornamental arches in between. On the octagonal frame of architraves over the arcade of pillars a small bracket at each angle introduces the circle of the dome which rises in concentric rings till the apex is reached. The carving of the pillars is delicate as well as the most intricate. In
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

the Vimala Vasahi they are all of a uniform pattern resembling those of the Surya temple at Moçhera in Gujarât and fundamentally differ very little from those in the Kumbharia temples. In the Luna Vasahi, however, the pillars exhibit varieties, particularly in the introduction of fanciful motifs. In this later hall much of the vigour of earlier work has been lost and the bewildering maze of carvings, faultless though in execution, fails to evoke the same aesthetic reaction that one experiences in that of Vimala Vasahi.

The exuberance of all this sculptural magnificence reaches its climax in the treatment of the vaulted ceilings of the halls. No description is adequate to convey a correct impression of the carefully wrought infinite detail that meets the eye, layer upon layer, till the superbly designed apex is reached. Each of the ceilings is built of concentric rings, every one of which carries a beautiful motif, delicately carved, while athwart the lower rings is placed a series of sixteen brackets with representations of Vidyadevis, or goddesses of learning of the Jain pantheon, each contained within its own aureole. At the apex the dome culminates in a pendant of exquisite beauty hanging like a stalactite from the centre. In Tejāhpāla's hall the pendant hangs down in a series of gradually diminishing rings and is carved in a fashion rivalling the fineness and delicacy of filigree work in metal (Fig. 41).

In spite, however, of the splendid wealth of intricate ornamentation, executed with a perfection seldom achieved by human endeavour, architecturally none of the halls can be declared to be free from flaw. The multiplicity of infinite plastic detail, repeated innumerable times, obscures, to a large extent, the structural properties in respect of which, again, the fundamental rules of architectural composition seem to have been ignored. Even an admiring visitor cannot fail to perceive a certain disregard of the laws of proportions in the disposition of the different components of the interior. This is particularly noticeable in the rather stunted heights of the domes which are set too squat to fit in with their diameters. The ceilings of the bays of the transepts, particularly in Tejāhpāla's temple, are too low and the unnecessarily heavy architraves, the "antithesis of the fairy lightness of the sculpture and gossamer tracery", obstruct the view of more than one of them at a time, thereby preventing a general vision of the whole. There is, no doubt, a certain beauty in the delicately carved exuberant ornamentation of the halls; but even this beauty, endless as it seems, leaves the visitor with a sense of tiresome surfeit, and there are very few structural merits to compensate for this defect.

582
The history of Gujarāt and Kathiāwār is intimately linked up from rather early times, and it is not surprising, therefore, that the development of the Nāgara temple in these regions is, to a very great extent, identical, and, as already indicated, closely allied to that in Rajputāna. A geographical proximity of all these regions and, to a certain extent, political circumstances might have been responsible for such striking affinities. Moreover, the construction of these monuments may be traced to a hereditary class of temple-builders, known in Western India as the Sālāḷas, and the common characteristics that are noted in the temple-building activity in these regions, bear an impress of their traditional knowledge and skill.

Before describing the development of the Nāgara temple in these regions it is necessary to describe a few temples in Kathiāwār which represent conceptions that are apparently different from that of the Nāgara temple style.

At Gop in the Barda hills in Kathiāwār there is a temple (Fig. 43) of a rather unusual shape that has been described by Cousens\(^7\) as a "stranger" in this region. It is considered to be the oldest structural temple in Kathiāwār. The monument seems to have been supported on a basement of two terraces, the upper, slightly reduced in dimensions than the lower, possibly serving as a pradakṣhina-patha or ambulatory round the sanctum. The terraces, each relieved horizontally at the bottom, and also perhaps at the top, by courses of mouldings and vertically along the sides by ornamental niches originally containing sculptures, are, however, heavily damaged. The perpendicular walls of the sanctum are severely plain except for a line of grooves on each side near the top. A few of the grooves still contain fragments of wood,\(^7\) perhaps remains of wooden beams supporting a roof around the sanctum and covering the upper terrace. In that case the roof as well as the walls enclosing the second terrace seem originally to have been of wooden construction and have naturally disappeared in course of time.\(^7\)

The walls of the sanctum end at the top in two shallow cornices over which rises the roof in two stepped courses, ultimately crowned by a graceful domical finial. The lower of the two stepped courses is relieved on each side by two chaitya arches and the upper by one. The chaitya arches are bold in design and elegant in execution, and project each in the form of a dormer. Originally they contained sculptures, a few of which still remain in situ.

As it now stands, the temple at Gop presents a rather unusual design and it is difficult to make any definite statement regarding its
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

antecedents and affiliations. Cousens finds certain striking resemblances between this temple and the early Kashmirian monuments, particularly the Martand, in two important respects, namely the stepped-out pyramidal roof with chaitya arches in the courses, and in the trefoil arches seen around the lower terraced basement. According to him the type was introduced in this region from Kashmir by the Sun-worshipping ancestors of the Mers. This view of Cousens, since accepted by archaeologists including Coomaraswamy and Percy Brown, suffers, however, from two important flaws. The history of the ancestors of the Mers is not yet fully clear and it is not definitely known that they originally hailed from Kasmir. Secondly none of the Kashmir temples of the type with similarities are suggested can be dated earlier than the eighth century A.D., whereas the Gop temple is admittedly two centuries older. The absence in Kashmir of any example of the type of a date earlier to that of Gop stands at present in the way of the acceptance of the hypothesis of Kasmirian origin of the Gop temple. Moreover, when closely examined, the Kashmirian analogy seems also to rest on a weak foundation. The roof is, no doubt, stepped as in the Kashmirian temples, but the graceful domical finial above, instead of the harsh angular point at the top like that in the Kashmirian temple, indicates for the monument at Gop a conception other than that of the Kashmirian. The boldly projecting chaitya arches are unlike the angular pedimental arches seen on the roof of the Kashmirian temple, while it is difficult to class the arches around the basement terrace of the Gop temple with the distinct trefoils of Kashmir. All these would suggest that the conception of the Gop temple was distinct from that of the Kashmirian.

On the evidence of the shape of the basement arches in the Gop temples Sankalia hesitatingly suggests a Gandharan influence through Sindh. But this view also cannot be pressed strongly as the fundamental elements of the design and composition of the Gop temple have hardly any parallels in the Gandharan monuments. In our opinion the two major features in the composition of the Gop temple, followed also in several other monuments of the region evidently of this class, are the situation of the sanctum within a covered ambulatory and the stepped arrangement of the roof. Of the first a parallel may be recognised in the plan of what has been designated as the storeyed type of Gupta temples. On this analogy the stepped arrangement of the roof in the Gop temple may, perhaps, be considered as but a slightly different expression of the storeyed conception of the superstructure in the Gupta temple. The bold and emphatic steps in the roof of the temple at Gop resemble, though in a less pronounced manner, the storeys in receding stages, charac-
teristic of the composition of the roof in the Gupta temple and lend
a plausibility to the suggestion made above. The appearance of
chaitya arches as gables on the roof is very old and may be traced
back to the days of Bhārhat. There is no necessity, hence, to draw
upon the doubtful Kashmirian analogy on this score. Cousens79 has
further noticed certain analogous features in the temple at Gop and
in what he describes as "early Dravidian temples" at Aihoj and
Paṭṭadakal; but he regards them as "purely accidental". To our
mind, however, such analogies are of greater import with regard to
the affiliations of the Gop temple, particularly in view of the fact
that an almost identical plan also characterises the early temples of
Deccan. Here also among the different shapes of the superstructures
we have both the storeyed as well as the stepped arrangement. Such
temples are approximately contemporary to the temple at Gop, and
both may be considered to be but slightly different expressions of
the same conception.

In Kāthiawār other temples of the same class as that of Gop are
found at Than (old Jain temple),60 Visvavādā,81 Harshadmatā
(Fig. 45), Pindara (Fig. 42), Villeśvāra,82 and a few other places.
In these temples the plan is usually that of a sanctum within a
covered ambulatory, and the stepped arrangement of the super­
structure is also recognised to be one of their distinctive character­
istics. In these respects, though chronologically later, they may be
regarded as clear analogues of the temple at Gop.

The above temples of the Gop class, when closely examined,
may enable us to determine the progress of the style. The develop­
ment is noticed in the progressive increase of the number of stages,
in the gradual reduction of the heights of the steps, in more harmo­
nicous proportions between the lower and upper elements of the
structure and in a general refinement of the contours. The temple
of Śiva at Villeśvāra83 represents, perhaps, the latest development
of the type (Text Figs. 13 and 14). It is also the most perfectly pre­
served temple of the group and hence enables us to under­
stand the composition and design of the type in a more convinc­ing manner.
The sanctum is situated within a covered ambulatory and is sur­
mounted by a pyramidal tower of stepped stages in receding tiers,
each stage on each face being relieved by ornamental chaitya arches,
gradually diminishing in number from six in the lowermost course
to one in the uppermost. Each corner at each stage is further
ornamented with decorative finials. The ambulatory is enclosed by
walls of stone relieved on the exterior by shallow pilasters that end
in cornices. A flat roof of stone covers this ambulatory. From the
increased number of stepped stages—the largest among the temples
of the group—the refined pyramidal contour, and the shape and design of the ornamental arches and finials, the temple may be considered to be the latest, at least in point of style, among the temples of the Gop type. The pilasters on the exterior walls of the ambulatory resemble in a general way the pillars in the Elephanta cave, and it would not be unreasonable, perhaps, to refer it to the same period as that of Elephanta.

Among the temples of the Gop type in Kathiāwār a rectangular design of the sanctum may be recognised in the so-called Varāha temple at Kadvar. Another such rectangular temple with a distinctively stepped arrangement of the superstructure is found at Kalsar. Here the rectangular sanctum is preceded by a portico, also of rectangular design (Fig. 44). The superstructure in each consists of a few stepped courses, relieved by chaitya arches.

Scholars are inclined to class the Sun temple at Sutrapada as a temple of the Gop type. Of course, the plan of the sanctum with a covered ambulatory has a general resemblance with that characteristic of the temples of the Gop group. But the stepped-out pyramidal arrangement of the superstructure, with an emphasis on the horizontal lines, as we see in the monuments of the Gop class, is entirely lacking here. Rather, the tower with the vertical facets on each face, āmalaka quoins at regular intervals and the heavy āmalaka-silā, topped by a smaller one, as the crowning member reproduces the prominent characteristics of a Nāgara sikhara (Text Fig. 15), and there can be no doubt that here we have an early sikhara temple denoting a stage in the evolution of the Nāgara style in the region. The plan of an inner sanctum within a covered ambulatory and the succession of chaitya ornaments on each face of the sikhara might have been responsible for such an erroneous classification. The latter ornament is a distinctive characteristic of the early Nāgara temples while such a plan is also noticed in a few temples of the Deccan, each having a prominent Nāgara sikhara over the sanctum. From these considerations the Sutrapada temple should properly be classed with temples of the Nāgara style, rather than with those of the type at Gop. Similar is the case with the temple at Pasthar, classed by Sankalia with the monuments of the Gop type. Here also an archaic sikhara of a low height surmounts the sanctum. In this connection it may be noted that adjacent to the Śiva temple at Villeśvara, described above, there is an example of a sikhara temple, described by Cousens as representing "a very early and rudimentary stage of the Northern style". This indicates the possibility of the co-existence, at a very early stage of architectural activity in this area, of the temples of the
Nēgara style with those of the Gop type. The plan of an enclosed sanctum within a covered ambulatory, seen in several early temples of the Nēgara form in this area, might have been inspired by this fact of simultaneous co-existence.

The characteristic regional expression of the Nēgara temple style in Gujarāt and Kāthiāwār is usually designated as the Solāṅkī after the Chalukya or Solāṅkī rulers of Anhalapātaka. Many of the Chaulukya kings were great patrons of the building art, and the prolific and magnificent architectural activity during their regime was, in a large measure, due to their active and enlightened patronage. Their ministers and governors were also zealous patrons of arts and culture. By its geographical position Gujarāt was the hub of international commerce of those days, and merchant princes, like the brothers Vastupāla and Tejavālīps, vied with one another in encouraging the arts in the most exuberant manner possible. The common people also shared in such activities by raising up substantial funds by a system of recognised imposts for the gods. It appears that the entire community was identified with the artistic movements of the day, and the result was a brilliant upheaval of every form of art, particularly of architecture in which the religious zeal and devotion of the people found the most emphatic expression. The whole area was studded over with monuments, distinctive in design and the most luxuriant in execution. The majority of the temples of this brilliant phase is, however, in ruins, while many have been almost completely obliterated. Time and man have wrought havoc turning the once smiling and gleaming monuments to a skeleton of their former glory, or into totally shapeless ruins.

Monuments of the early Nēgara form, prior to the emergence of the characteristic Solāṅkī type, are very few in Gujarāt and Kāthiāwār. Among the few that remain, some had been classed otherwise, while with regard to the others their true imports had not been always recognised. It is because of this that the characteristic type of the Solāṅkī temple has sometimes been regarded as an individual growth in this region, a few scholars even suggesting an evolution of the Solāṅkī temple from those of the Gop type. Architectonically however, though not geographically, the two groups stand far apart and represent two distinctly different conceptions. In the fundamentals of design and form there is hardly a common link between the two. The prominent features of the Solāṅkī temple belong to the Nēgara conception, and in it we have a regional expression of the Nēgara temple style. The Solāṅkī temple type is related, at least in some measure, as a parallel movement to the other regional manifestations of the Nēgara style, so widely distributed over different parts of India.
A few stray and isolated examples of the early Nāgara temple still remain in Gujarāt and Kathiāwār. In respect of form and design the oldest Nāgara temple in this area may be recognised in a dilapidated shrine at Rhoda (Gujarāt). From its simple design and chaste ornamentation (Fig. 46) it seems to be nearer to the Gupta śikhara temple and apparently belongs to a date not later than the seventh century A.D. The small shrine by the side of the Śiva temple at Villesvara (Kathiāwār) and the Sūrya temple at Sutrapada (Kathiāwār) belong architectonically to an identical conception.

A few other temples in Gujarāt and Kathiāwār help us to trace the progress of the Nāgara temple from the simple design of the temples of the Rhoda group. A small shrine (Fig. 47) at Pashthar (Kathiāwār), evidently of the early Nāgara form of ṛīṭratha shape, presents two curious features, viz., the division of the rāhā-paga into two vertical halves by a deep depression in the middle along its height and the appearance of sectional āmalakas on the central paga at regular intervals corresponding to those of the āmalaka quoins. In contrast to the rich scheme of the śikhara above, the cube of the sanctum below, unrelieved by any horizontal moulding or by any vertical ratha projection, has a bald and severe appearance. This may indicate that originally it was not meant to be seen from outside, the sanctum being enclosed within a covered ambulatory, perhaps of wood, that has been swept away. The above-mentioned shrine beside the Villesvara temple and the small temple (Fig. 49) adjacent to the Navalakha at Ghumli (Kathiāwār), slightly advanced in design because of its paścharatha conception, also appear from their bare walls to have been provided each with an ambulatory of wood. The Sūrya temple at Sutrapada, already discussed, has the sanctum enclosed within a covered ambulatory of stone, and it appears that like the temples of the Gop class the plan of a sanctum within an enclosed ambulatory was also followed in the early Nāgara monuments of Kathiāwār. It is from this composition that one may trace the evolution of the Śānḍhāra prāsaḍa in several of the subsequent regional manifestations of the Nāgara style.

A paścharatha plan of the sanctum is a natural development from the ṛīṭratha, and several temples of this plan, architectonically posterior to the ṛīṭratha group, may also be found in Gujarāt as well as in Kathiāwār. An elegant example of the paścharatha group may be seen in a small shrine at Sandera (Gujarāt). Exquisite in proportions and with a graceful array of fretted ornamentation of chaitya arches the temple may be regarded as one of the most notable monuments of the early Nāgara form in this region, as effec-
Art

tive in design and sensitive in treatment as the celebrated Muktesvara at Bhubanesvara (Orissa). Two small temples (Text Fig. 18) at Miani (Kathiawar),

dedicated respectively to Ganapati and Mahadeva, each of the paicharatha plan and preceded by a pillared portico in front, are as elegant in design and decorative conception as the one at Sandera. The small shrine at Ghumli (Kathiawar) might have been as effective, except for the bare appearance of the walls. The temple of Ranik Devi (Fig. 48) at Wadhwan (Kathiawar)

is also essentially of the same conception as above. It seems to be slightly later in date in view of the high plinth consisting of more than three courses of mouldings, the division of the bada into five segments by a simple shallow band—an apology for the bandhanii—around its middle and a rather attenuated form of the sikara.

In Orissa and Central India the increase in the number of rathas in the plan is, in a certain measure, related to the division of the bada along the vertical axis. With the paicharatha plan Orissa develops a paichinga bada, and to this the Orissan builders adhere to in spite of the development occasionally of the saptaratha and navaratha plans. The characteristic type of a Central Indian temple is saptaratha in plan, and correspondingly the Central Indian architects develop a saptachinga bada. But in other regions of the Nagara style the bada of three segments, distinctive of the early Nagara form, is rigidly maintained. Rajputana, Gujarat, Kathiawar, Khandes, etc., in spite of the manifestations of regional characteristics, all adhere to the three-fold division of the bada, and the stray and not too emphatic occurrence of a fivefold division, as seen in the Ranik Devi temple and in one or two others as well, may be regarded as an aberration in this area.

A battered shrine, known as Muni Bhava’s temple, near Than (Kathiawar),

shows definite characteristics of the early Nagara temple; but already a development of the design may be recognised in the provision of a pillared mandapa in front to which a distinctly local character is given by the arrangement of kakshasanas. An interesting feature of this temple is again seen in the full-length figures of griffins or rampant lions, repeated in the vertical facets of the walls, a motif that is perhaps unique in this area.

Cousens is of opinion that the old ruined shrine of the god Trinetreshvara which once stood at Tarnetar, about six miles north-west of Than (Kathiawar), was older than Muni Bhava’s temple. The Tarnetar shrine consisted of a sanctum with a mandapa in front. As is apparent from the photograph that alone survives, the sikara exhibits an arrangement of anga-sikheras in clusters around
its body, a motif that is evidently late in appearance. This feature is a distinctive characteristic of the Solanki temple, as of several other regional expressions of the Nāgara style. The awkward manner in which the roof of the *mandapa* is sought to be joined to the *sikhara* indicates a certain lack of experience on the part of the builders with the elaborate design of the Solanki temple, then just in process of formation. The now vanished temple at Tarnetar, therefore, probably represented an important stage in the transition from the early Nāgara form of temple to that of Solanki. It is a pity that no monument now survives to enable us to understand this transition better.

Like other regional expressions of the Nāgara style, the typical Solanki temple of Gujarat and Kathiawar appears to have received its complete form by the close of the tenth or the beginning of the eleventh century A.D. The type, so formed, is in a large measure, analogous to the fully developed Rājput temple, and the architectural development in these regions seems to have been parallel and simultaneous, at least in the later stages of the development of the Nāgara temple. The affinities, which are not few, have already been indicated and need not be repeated here.

The general scheme of a Solanki temple differs very little from that of any other regional expression of the Nāgara temple. Fundamentally the composition consists of the sanctum and the pillared hall or *mandapa* (gūḍha-māṇḍapa as it is known in this area), combined usually in axial length. The exterior walls are broken up by vertical chases, projected and recessed alternately, which are carried up into the elevation producing effective contrasts of light and shade. The chases are obtained usually by a system of *ratha* projections, as in the temples of the Nāgara conception, or occasionally in the more developed group by the intricate process of rotating a square round a central axis—a process that may be recognised to be a different application of the same idea that was responsible for the introduction of the system of addition of *ratha* projections on the exterior walls of the temples of early Nāgara form. Occasionally, again, in the larger conceptions a detached hall, sabhā-māṇḍapa, and a *kirti-torana* are added in front of each. Sometimes a sacred reservoir with flagged steps forms an important element of the temple complex, but this is seen only in the more important groups. A few of the larger temples seem to have the *mandapa* halls disposed in more than one storey, but the examples themselves are too damaged to allow any clear understanding of the arrangements.

In elevation the scheme of the Solanki temple reproduces the same fundamental divisions along the vertical axis as in other re-
ART

gional types of the Nāgara temple. The temple rises from a high socle (piṭha or mahāpiṭha as it is variously termed), above which is the wall surface up to the entablature (called mandorara in Gujarāt and bāda in Orissa). The entablature serves as a transition to the next division, the superstructure along with its crowning elements. The socle consists of a series of mouldings, sometimes plain, usually ornamented with repetitive motifs in an order specifically fixed by tradition. The wall surface has a threefold division, corresponding to those of the early Nāgara temples and termed respectively in Orissa as the pābhāga (plinth), the jāṅgha (wall face) and the baraīlāda (transition). No further subdivision of this section, as seen in Orissa and Central India, is to be found in the Solānkī temple, a feature shared also by the Rājput temple. The first of these, the pābhāga, not always emphatic in expression, consists of a series of mouldings, and the second, the jāṅgha, shows a grouping of sculptures in the vertical chases. The last, the baraīlāda, in the Solānkī temple, as in the characteristic Rājput type, usually consists of a cornice or double cornice, extending in the form of a sloping eave (chājāja) in the frontal parts. Above this rises the superstructure, the tall curvilinear sikhara surmounting the sanctum cela and a low pyramidal roof, composed of diminishing horizontal courses, covering the maṇḍapa hall. In the characteristic type of the Solānkī temple the sikhara over the sanctum has clusters of aṅga-sikharas round its body, each a replica of the main tower. As already noted, these aṅga-sikharas in the Rājput and Solānkī types of structures, though less exuberant than the Central Indian, are equally, if not more, emphatic in expression, each having its own volume and retaining the four-square shape of the main structure. The roof of the maṇḍapa also reproduces a similar motif in the repetitions of rooflets in tiers all around.

In the arrangement of the interior the Solānkī temple displays notable features. The maṇḍapa hall is definitely peristylar in character, and richly carved pillars constitute an essential element in its composition. As in the elevation of the temple outside, the pillars are also divided into three principal sections, a moulded base, an elegantly carved shaft further subdivided into decorative horizontal zones, and the top, referred to by some scholars as “an attic portion”, consisting of the capital with its entablature and other elements. In the earlier of the temples the pillars are arranged along the sides of the maṇḍapa hall, while in the later ones they are grouped octagonally in the centre of the hall thus dividing it into a central nave and lateral aisles, the latter sometimes having additional complements of pillars. In the more ornate examples light foliated struts, simulating flying ornamental arches, are thrown across the nave pillars and
they form a very elegant motif rich in treatment. The square hall pro­jects on the outside, the projections being left open; that to the front is meant for entrance; while those on the two sides usually accommodate windows and alongside kakhashanas with leaning parapets. Sometimes, though rarely, the latter form additional porticoes. The dome is supported on an octagonal frame of architraves over the pillars and rises in oversailing concentric courses, each course richly carved, terminating at the apex in a pendant of exquisite beauty. Every element of the composition has been masterfully conceived and beautifully treated, so that the interior is as rich and effective as the external design of the temple. In external design the Solanki temple has its compeers in other zones of the Nāga style; but in interior arrangement the Solanki temple, or its parallel, the Rājput, is without any equal.

The above preliminary discussion of the distinctive characteristics of the Solanki temple renders it unnecessary to describe in detail the individual monuments. The temple of Nilakanṭha Mahadeva (Fig. 50) at Sunak (Gujarat), happily a complete specimen so rare in this area, is regarded as one of the most notable monuments of this class. It consists of the sanctum and its mandapa, axially joined, and preceded by an open portico in front. Externally the roof of the mandapa is surrounded by tiers of rooflets, each with āmalaka and kalasa finial, the top of the dome, raising up its head over the design. Likewise the sikhara over the sanctum, one of the most graceful in outline, is surrounded by tiers of aṅga-sikhara, one interesting feature in each case being the occurrence of double āmalaka, a feature that is also seen prominently on the top of the main sikhara. At the sides of the mandapa there are inclined kakhashanas, most effective in their spacing and disposition, while every surface, whether on the walls or on the pillars, is richly carved in the most elegant manner (Text Fig. 17). In respect of design and plastic adornment it has been aptly described as a "gem of its kind" by a competent authority.97 A copper-plate inscription of Karuṣa of Vikrama Sañvat 1148 (A.D. 1091) found at Sunak, as interpreted by Sankalia,98 records a grant of land for the maintenance of a tank (vīpi), made at Sūnaka (Sunak) for the god Mahādeva. This presupposes the existence at Sunak of a temple of Mahādeva, which can be no other than the present temple, in the closing years of the eleventh century A.D. Stylistically, however, the construction of the temple has to be referred to a date approximately a century earlier. Clear parallels of the Mahādeva temple at Sunak may be found in the Jain temples at Kumbharīa (South Rājputāna), usually referred to the eleventh century A.D. In the latter an advancement of the interior design is recognised in the
octagonal grouping of the pillars supporting the dome, an arrangement that is yet to come in the Gujarat temple. The Sun temple at Moḍhera (Gujarat), more elaborate in design and enrichment, also displays a grouping of the pillars supporting the dome in an octagon. This temple cannot be later than A.D. 1026, and the Sunak temple, in which this characteristic design is yet to be reached, may belong to a date slightly earlier, perhaps to the close of the tenth century A.D.

Several other temples of approximately the same date and essentially identical in conception are found in Gujarat as well as in Kāthiāwār. Only the more important ones may briefly be mentioned here. The present temple of Limboji Mātā at Delmal (Gujarat), though occupying the site of an older structure, seems to be of comparatively recent date. But the two subsidiary shrines, situated on the south-west and south-east corners of the court and dedicated respectively to Lakṣmi-Nārāyaṇa and Sūrya, “are genuine examples of good old work and are exceedingly neat and complete little structures—chaste in design and ornament.” These subsidiary shrines, essentially of the same style as that at Sunak, may furnish an idea of the date of the original temple of Limboji Mātā which once stood in the centre of the court. The larger of the two shrines at Sandera (Gujarat) is also an elegant piece of work identical in plan and detail with that at Sunak, though smaller in dimensions. The Nilakantā Mahādeva temple at Mānī (Kāthiāwār) may also, from its style, belong to the same group. The temple of Hingloji Mātā at Khandorna (Fig. 52) and that of Jaisalnātha Mahādeva at Asoda (Fig. 53), both in the former Baroda State, belong also to this conception, the latter being an eminent example of this class. The triple-shrined temple at Kasara (Gujarat), now in ruins, is apparently an interesting conception (Text Fig. 18). Round a central maṇḍapa hall with a porch, now gone, on the east, are arranged three shrines, each with a Solanki type of sikhara, the western, facing the porch, being dedicated to Śiva, the northern to Viṣṇu and the southern to Brahmā. The shrines as well as the maṇḍapa are now found in a battered state; but when entire, each was a notable production and the effect of the whole was one of impressive grandeur. The triple-shrined temple at Parbadi (Kāthiāwār) with its central maṇḍapa, now gone, is essentially of the same style as the one at Kasara and may belong to the same date. Another triple-shrined temple, but of a later date and dedicated to Jain worship, is found at Girnār (Kāthiāwār). Besides, several other remains, such as at Kanoda (Gujarat), Gorad (Gujarat), Chaubari (Kāthiāwār), etc. also appear, from the style of the fragments preserved, to be affiliated to

S. E.—38
the Sunak group. As compared to the Sun temple at Mošhera, the temples of the Sunak group have, on the whole, an older appearance, and have to be referred to a period earlier than that of Mošhera, preferably towards the close of the tenth century A.D. The fairly large number of monuments of this epoch suggests a brisk architectural activity even during the early Solākī regime.

In the eleventh century A.D. the Solākī temple reaches its supreme expression, and among the many monuments that were raised there were several notable productions, though unfortunately all of them are more or less dilapidated. Among these, the Sun temple at Mošhera (Gujarat) is the most imposing even in its ruin (Fig. 54). Much of the character of this temple complex lies in its elaborate setting, all elements of the scheme being harmoniously related to one another in an organic architectural entity of the most impressive grandeur. The entire scheme is raised on a paved terrace and resolves itself into three principal components (Text Fig. 19). On the east, to which the temple faces, is situated a large rectangular reservoir (the sacred kuṇḍa) with flagged flights of steps on each side interspaced by small shrines (Fig. 57). Admirable in lay-out and arrangement, this kuṇḍa is itself a noble production. At the head of the steps on the western side stand two richly carved pillars of the kirti-torana or ornamental archway, behind which is seen the open pillared hall of cruciform shape, the sabhā- mandapa as it is known in Gujarāt. This hall, aptly described as "a magnificent pile of pillared splendour," is placed diagonally with the axial line of the next component that consists of the sanctum and its adjoined mandapa as one unit. All these components are skilfully adjusted to one another in a manner that results in the production of an effective unity out of the three seemingly separate compositions.

The sabhā- mandapa (Fig. 56) has four entrances on its four faces through ornamental cusped archways between two pillars. In between the plan is broken up into a number of deep vertical chases at regular intervals. Each angle, so formed, has a dwarf pillar, and the entire system is enclosed by a low wall following closely the indentations of the plan all around. This wall is surmounted by a continuous parapet with kakshāsanas arranged all around. In the upper section the small pillars support the entablature of the roof, in the lowest stage of which runs a continuous eave (chājja). In the interior the pillars are arranged in two rows in the form of a cross, the central complement describing a regular octagon for support of the dome above. Every single part of the design is exquisitely carved, and
in spite of the profuseness of the ornament covering all visible surfaces, both inside and out, there is hardly any idea of exaggeration.

The sanctum and the maṇḍapa, essentially of the same conception as in the earlier temples of the Sunak group, each displays notable advances in design. The first, enclosed within a covered ambulatory, is of the sāndhāra class, while the second exhibits a central complement of pillars grouped in a regular octagon. Over this octagonal nave rises the dome (Fig. 58), the ornamented ceiling of which still remains. Fretted ornamental toranas join the pillars and relieve the harshness of the four-square scheme at the top. A shallow vestibule of four pillars fronts the doorway of the inner sanctum. The maṇḍapa and the ambulatory of the sanctum are each lighted by window openings of an effective design. Externally (Fig. 55), vertical chases are formed in the plan by ratha projections, and the ornament is as varied and rich, both internally and externally, as in the case of the sābhā-maṇḍapa. In each of these elements the superstructures have collapsed. A low pyramidal roof no doubt surmounted each of the halls, the maṇḍapa and the sābhā-maṇḍapa, while a typical Solāṅki sikhara covered the sanctum. Bereft of these necessary accompaniments the scheme now appears in a truncated state. But the structural propriety of the different parts as well as of the whole, the rich and varied ornament that matches and blends beautifully with the architectural lineaments, and the sense of organic unity, all combine to rank it among the supreme creations of Indian genius. A master mind conceived the noble scheme, and master artists carried it to perfection. An inscription in the back wall of the sanctum of the Modhera temple bears a date, Vikrama Sāvat 1083 (A.D. 1026), which may tentatively be taken as the date of the temple.

Mention may be made of two other monuments, apparently also of the eleventh century A.D. One is the Navalāṅkhā temple at Ghumil, both in Kāthiāwār (Text Figs. 20 and 21). The foliated plan of the sanctum of the Sejakpur temple is obtained on the principle of a square rotating round a central axis. Richly carved and in the best proportions of form and design, each of the Navalakhā temples, when in its original state complete with the superstructures, represented a fine conception of eleventh century Solāṅki work. In the Ghumil temple the sanctum is enclosed within an ambulatory and the maṇḍapa is disposed in two storeys, likely parallels of the latter being found in the larger Sas Bahu temple at Gwālīr and in the ruins of the Rudra Mālā at Siddhapur.

The Solāṅki tradition maintains a rich and prolific output in the twelfth century A.D. which saw two eminent royal patrons of build-
ing art in Siddharāja Jayasiṅhā and Kumārapāla. With the former is associated the completion of an imposing conception, the Rudra Mālā or Rudra Mahālaya, at Siddhapur (Gujarat). Unfortunately it is now completely in ruins, but a picture of its former splendour seems to have survived in a Gujarati ballad which speaks of the temple as covered with gold, adorned with sixteen hundred columns, veiled by carved screens and pierced lattices, festooned with pearls, inlaid with gems over the doorways and glistening like flames with rubies and diamonds. Much of this is, no doubt, exaggeration full of rhetoric; but the impressive character of the conception is evidenced by the scanty, though colossal, remains. They consist of groups of columns of the pillared maṇḍapa, which seems to have been in more than one storey, and had three entrance porticos on three sides. The surviving foundations suggest that the conception with the usual appurtenances occupied a space nearly 300 feet by 230 feet. In front there stood a kīrti-torāya of which one column still remains. From the dimensions the Rudra Mālā seems to have been one of the largest architectural conceptions in this area; the rich character of its design is fully evident in the few fragments that remain. The temple that once stood at Vadnagar (Gujarat) might have been larger still, as appears from the size of the surviving richly carved kīrti-torāya (Fig. 51). The famous shrine of Somanātha at Somanātha-pattana (Kāthiāwar) had been built over and over again after periodical demolitions at the hands of the Muslims. The shrine seems to have been old. After its sack by Mahmūd of Ghazni Bhima I appears to have rebuilt it. Traces of this rebuilding can still be seen in the present ruin which dates from the time of Kumarapāla in the latter half of the twelfth century A.D. (Text Fig. 22). It is much of the same design as the Rudra Mālā without, however, the storeyed disposition of the maṇḍapa of the latter, and of nearly the same dimensions. The sanctum was enclosed within an ambulatory. The sculptural decoration has well nigh been defaced, but enough remains to demonstrate the rich character of the design. Near by stand the remains of a few other shrines, of which that of Sūrya, almost entire, has still an imposing effect. The tradition represented by the twelfth century temples seems to have reached a baroque phase foreshadowing the decline.

In spite of a brisk activity in the thirteenth century A.D. much of the vigour and refinement of the earlier works had been lost. The majority of the erections are of Jain affiliation and situated on the sacred hills of Satruṣṭiśvara and Girnar (Kāthiāwar), the eminent patrons of this faith being king Kumāranāla in the twelfth century, and the merchant brothers, Vastunāla and Tejāpāla, in the thirteenth. The monuments on these two hills, on account of constant reno-
vations, have lost much of their original appearance, and are hardly of any interest architecturally. The triple-shrined temple of Vastupāla (Text Fig. 23) at Gīrnar\textsuperscript{116} is, however, interesting as illustrating a rare conception. The imposing pile of the Jain temple at Taringa (Gujarat),\textsuperscript{117} attributed to Kumārapāla, in spite of a restoration in the time of Akbar, seems to have retained its original form and design to a very great extent. But the fineness of form and ornament that characterised the eleventh century Solanki temple had already declined. Even the hall of Tejāpāla at Dilavārā, Mount Abu (Rājputāna), in spite of its being a notable creation in certain respects, fails to impress from the architectural point of view.

E. Deccan

The Nāgara temple style, it has already been observed, extends beyond its canonical limits far to the south. Temples of the Nāgara conception have been found as far south as the Kṛishṇa-Tuṅgabhadrā basin, while a solitary example, the temple of Gaṇapati at Hangal,\textsuperscript{118} indicates an expansion of the conception even far into the interior of the Kannāḍa speaking area. The Deccan temples of the Nāgara conception may be divided into two well-defined groups, one early and the other late. The early group is confined to Southern Deccan in the Kṛishṇa-Tuṅgabhadrā basin, while monuments of the late series are found scattered over the western part of the upper Deccan, mainly in the region of Khāndesh and its neighbourhood. In the history of the Nāgara temple style south of the Vindhyas, they represent two important movements, separated from each other in time and space, as well as, to a certain extent, in respect of stylistic progress.

Temples with early Nāgara form of the sikhara are found side by side with the Drāvida at Aihole, Paṭṭadakal, Mahākūtesvāra and Alampur, all situated in the Kṛishṇa-Tuṅgabhadrā basin. This region seems to have been a sort of meeting ground of the two well-marked temple styles, the Nāgara and the Drāvida, and it is from a blending of the elements and characteristics of the two that one may recognise the evolution of what subsequently came to be known as the Chāḷukyan style which, though hybrid in its origin, later on constituted a separate and well-defined style of great strength and decorative significance.

Aihole and Paṭṭadakal, lying close to each other, are now decayed villages, but a fairly large number of monuments in different stages of preservation still reflect a picture of their ancient prosperity. Aihole in the Bijāpur District has particularly been described as a veritable museum of early structural forms, and the truth
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

of this observation is amply borne out by nearly seventy temples, scattered around the village, which represent an early and prolific phase of building activity, a period of experiments, so to say, in various forms and designs. In this medley of forms the Nāgara conception is prominent in a number of monuments. Temples Nos. 9 (Text Fig. 24) and 24 at Aihole each exhibits a sanctum, triratha in plan, surmounted by a dwarf sikhara of early Nāgara design, and preceded by a pillared hall in front. The sikhara in each case reproduces the fundamental characteristics of the early Nāgara towers, as seen in other parts of India, and the movement naturally represents one among the many widely distributed early activities in Nāgara temple-building. The Nāgara sikhara seems to have been so popular in this locality that temples fundamentally belonging to different conceptions, such as the Durgā and the Huchchimalligudi at Aihole, are each found to be surmounted by a tower of this conception. There is a striking likeness between the sikhara of the Huchchimalligudi at Aihole and that of the Parasurāmeśvara temple at Bhuvaneśvara. The latter is usually assigned to the seventh century A.D. The sikhara of temples Nos. 9 and 24 at Aihole seem to be more archaic in design and appearance. The structural activities at Aihole appear to have covered approximately a period of two hundred years, from the middle of the fifth to the middle of the seventh century A.D., and the archaic sikhara temples in this village may probably be assigned to the close of the sixth or the beginning of the seventh century A.D.

The architectural activities, inaugurated in so promising a manner at Aihole, were continued at Paṭadakal that stands near by. In this insignificant village in the Badami District one may still find old temples crowded among the mean mud houses of the present day. As at Aihole, here, too, shrines representing both the conceptions, the Nāgara and the Drāviḍa, are found side by side. Of the former conception there are at least five examples among which the Pāpanātha appears to have been the most imposing as rivalling in importance the other grand monument at the site, the celebrated Virāpāksha, a magnificent production in the early Drāviḍa style. The temples of Galaganātha, Kāsdīdheśvara, Jambulīgā and Kaśvīvānātha represent each a sanctum, triratha in plan, surmounted by a low Nāgara sikhara which in shape and design resemble those at Aihole and contemporary sikhara temples in other parts of India. In the early sikhara temples of the Deccan a great divergence seems to be presented, however, by the crowning elements, particularly the āmalaka which is a rather insignificant member in comparison with those on their northern prototypes, being much too attenuated in girth to fit in with the bisama over which it
is placed. This individual treatment of the āmalarāja characterises these śikhara as representing a Deccanese version of the early Nāgara śikhara.

In the temple of Pāpanātha127 at Paṭṭadakal (Fig. 60) the sanctum is enclosed within a covered ambulatory and is preceded by two axial halls, the first apparently occupying the position of the vestibule (antarāśā) and the second constituting the forward assembly hall (manḍapā) of square shape with an open portico projected in front (Text Fig. 25). The entire composition is raised over a substantial plinth of several bold string courses. All around, the walls end at the top in a heavy cornice surmounted further by ornamental pavilions. The roof is flat with the śikhara over the sanctum shooting high up at the eastern end. The interior is lighted by ornamental grilles set between pilasters, while the ambulatory around the sanctum has boldly projecting windows, one on each of the three sides. But for the tower which is definitely of Nāgara conception, the entire composition is essentially one of the Drāviḍa and has a general likeness to that of the Virūpāksha temple that stands close by. The refined contour of the tower of the Pāpanātha indicates a date later than that of any other temple of śikhara conception at the site. It may be assigned either towards the close of the seventh or the beginning of the eighth century A.D.

The Sangameśvara temple (Fig. 59) at Mahākūtēśvara,128 lying between Badami and Paṭṭadakal, is a neat little specimen of the Nāgara style. It consists of a sanctum, triśālā in plan, and is preceded by an open pillared portico in front. A collateral shrine on either side of the central ratha projection anticipates the developed paścharātha plan. In this respect the Sangameśvara has a parallel in the Paraśurāmeśvara temple at Bhuvanesvara and may be coeval with it in date.

At Alampur on the west bank of the Tungabhadra there is a group of six temples, all situated within a walled enclosure. In design and composition all the temples are essentially identical and have a general likeness to the Pāpanātha at Paṭṭadakal, and may be dated about the same period or to one slightly later. The best preserved monument of the Alampur group is represented by what is known as the Viśva-Brahmā temple (Fig. 61).129 Though essentially of the same class as the Pāpanātha at Paṭṭadakal, the different adjuncts of the Viśva-Brahmā temple are found to be in much better proportions leading to a far more coherent composition.

With very few exceptions, the above early monuments of Southern Deccan can hardly be said to have belonged wholly to the Nāgara conception. In the majority of these temples, particularly
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

the more ambitious productions, the essential idea that governed the composition was more of the Dráviḍa extraction than of the Nāgara, the impact of the latter idea being however emphatically expressed in each case by the sikhara surmounting the sanctum. Southern Deccan, particularly the Krishna-Tungabhadra basin where such monuments are concentrated, furnished a fruitful meeting ground of two apparently differing conceptions of temples, the Nāgara and the Dráviḍa, and it is from an admixture of the characteristic elements of the two that there evolved in later days an individual style of great prolixity and richness.

A distinctive expression of the Nāgara temple style is recognised in the upper Deccan or Dakhan, as it is designated by Cousens, roughly in the territory between the lower reaches of the Narmada and the upper course of the Godavari. The mediaeval monuments of this region, situated as they are between two important zones of architectural movements—the Solanki in the north and the Chālukyan in the south—bear, in a certain measure, evident signs of their impacts. Nevertheless, they have certain remarkable individual features which separate them from either, as well as from other regional types of the Nāgara temple style. These rank them as a separate expression of no mean interest and significance.

Perhaps the most distinctive characteristic of the Dakhanese expression of the Nāgara temple style is to be noticed in the design of the sikhara which is markedly different from that of any other regional type. Here, the central offset on each face of the body of the sanctum cube is carried up and continued on the body of the sikhara up to its summit as an unbroken vertical band covered all through by rich tracery of chaitya-window motifs. These prominent bands, following the main contours of the sikhara on the four sides, act, so to say, as spines to keep the latter in shape. The segments in between the spines are filled in up to the finial by horizontal tiers of miniature sikhara diminishing in size as they go up. The principle governing the clustering of the aṅga-sikhara round the main one, an inevitable consequence inherent in the logical process of the evolution of the Nāgara sikhara, is, no doubt, felt also in this Dakhanese expression; but here we have a new interpretation of the theme in which the disturbing effect on the contours is effectively held in check by the strongly pronounced vertical spines. The latter, with their emphatic verticalism, keep the aṅga-sikhara subordinated to the principal design. The Orissan builders, while admitting the logic of the aṅga-sikhara, also reached a similar solution, but in a slightly different manner. In Orissa as well as in the
Dakhan the unbroken ascent of the sikhara seems to have been of greater import, and each region evolved a scheme in which the aṅga-sikharas received a treatment whereby they lost their individuality and became transformed into mere decorative detail. Kramrisch is inclined to call this type of sikhara as composite, as in this treatment may be recognised a conscious attempt to combine both the principles—that of the single and unencumbered sikhara with that of one with smaller replicas clustered around.

The temple in the Dakhan usually consists of the sanctum and the maṇḍapa, sometimes having the appearance of being placed diagonally to each other on account of the great diversity in the exterior walls which practically revel in "a great multiplicity of angles". The maṇḍapa has either one approach in the front, or three in the front and at the two sides, each such approach being through a projected porch. Sometimes three shrines are placed round a central maṇḍapa having a projected porch in front to complete the design. The angles in the exterior walls are obtained either by the usual system of ratha projections, or on the principle of rotating a square round a central axis and thereby leading to a foliated star-shaped plan. In the latter case the central buttress on each face runs parallel with the square plan of the sanctum in the interior and carries upward the prominent vertical band that serves as a spine of the sikhara. Like the buttresses the foliated angles in between are carried up and continued on the sikhara. These, no doubt, emphasise strongly the vertical tendency of the entire scheme, and possibly to balance and, to a certain extent, to counteract this emphatic upward urge a close series of horizontal mouldings is laid across the composition in the lower cubical section, while deep passages between the tiers of the aṅga-sikharas repeat a similar horizontal scheme on the body of the tower. The vertical scheme, as well as the horizontal, thus seem to have counterbalanced each other in a remarkably effective manner which allows for ever-changing chiaroscuro effects up and across the entire composition. It has to be noted in this connection that the cubical section, corresponding to the bāḍa, like that in the early Nāgara temple, is divided into three main segments.

The characteristic Dakhanese expression of the Nāgara temple style, as described above, appears before us as fully formed. Unfortunately, no monuments of a transitional stage have yet been found to explain the gradual evolution of the type. Two eminent expressions of the type, possibly also the earliest in date, have been found outside the confines of the Dakhan proper, one in the South and the other in the North. But the type does not appear to have
been characteristic of any of these regions, where they appear apparently as exceptional occurrences. The mediaeval temples of the Dakhan invariably bear the distinctive features of this characteristic type which, from its close and intimate association with this region, seems to have been its particular heritage.

The temple of Ambaranātha in the Thānā District (Bombay), though in a perilously ruinous condition, seems to have been one of the most outstanding monuments of the type (Text Fig. 26). An inscription on the architrave over the northern doorway of the mandapa records its erection in the Saka year 982 (A.D. 1060) during the time of the Silāhāra chief Mummini or Mānvani. The sanctum and the mandapa, seemingly aligned diagonally along the axial line, are characterised each by deep and bold vertical chases as well as by emphatic horizontal mouldings in the plinth and transition (baraṅga). The treatment of the exterior walls thus provides for all possible combinations of light and shade up and across the composition. A greater part of the sikhara has fallen down and the roof of the mandapa is also in a battered state. In the sikhara on each face may be seen the characteristically Dakhanese expression of successive tiers of anga-sikhara in between the vertical spines on the central faces, the rich and continuous traceried ornamentation of the latter being in juxtaposition to the rugged appearance of the segments occupied by the anga-sikhara. In spite of the great diversity, a skilful treatment of the different elements has resulted in a unified design full of animation and vivacity.

Balsane in Khandesh has a group of nine temples, all more or less battered, though no less interesting. Of these, No. 1 (Fig. 62), a triple-shrined temple, seems to have been an outstanding production (Text Figs. 27 and 28). Of the same design as that of the Ambaranātha, except for its triple-shrined composition, this temple at Balsane exhibits the prominent characteristics of the Dakhanese type in a more developed and crystallised state. No. 4 at Balsane consists of the sanctum and its mandapa, disposed in the characteristic fashion, and is notable for the foliated star-shaped plan. The temple of Mahēśvara at Patna (Khandesh) is also similar in composition, but the plan is further elaborated and shows five foliations in between the central bands (Text Fig. 29). In this respect, at least, it resembles the Nilakaṅṭheiśvara temple at Udayapura, perhaps the finest monument of the Dakhanese expression. The Galīśvara temple (Fig. 65) at Sarnāl (Kaira District), though in a mutilated state, also represents an eminent conception.

One of the best preserved monuments of the Dakhanese series may be seen in the temple of Gooḍēśvara (Fig. 64) at Sinnar.
about 20 miles to the south of Nasik. It represents a panchayatana group, the principal sanctuary with the four subsidiary shrines at the corners being situated on a raised terrace (Text Fig. 30). Besides, in front of the principal shrine, dedicated to the god Siva, stands a small pavilion for Nandi, the mount of the god. In design and in treatment each of the subsidiary shrines, with the plain unencumbered sikhara, is nearer to the Nagara form. But the principal temple with its characteristic appurtenances represents the Dakhanese form in a mature state. There is, however, a falling off in the quality of sculpture and a general stiffness of outline, on which account the monument has been assigned to a period later than that of the supreme efflorescence of the type in the latter half of the eleventh century A.D. The Mankeśvara temple at Jhodga (Nasik District) and the Amṛtesvara temple (Fig. 66) at Ratnawāgli (Ahmadnagar District) also belong to this later phase which foreshadows a decline. Many other old shrines are scattered through the Dakhan, but gradually there is a progressive tendency towards heaviness and clumsiness which are very clearly visible in what are known in this region as the Hemāḍpanti temples.

It is interesting to note that the finest monument of the Dakhanese expression of the Nagara temple style is situated far to the north of the Dakhan proper. At Udayapura in the old Gwalior State stands the venerable pile of the Nilakanṭhaśeivara temple built by the Paramāra king Udayaditya, and hence also known as the Udayesvara (Fig. 67). It is in a perfect state of preservation, and in it may be observed the supreme excellence of the characteristic Dakhanese version of the Nagara temple, described above. On a high adhishṭhāna or socle rise the sanctum and its mandapa, the former surmounted by a sikhara in its Dakhanese expression and the latter by a pyramidal roof, also of the same order.

On the exterior the sanctum is of a foliated star-shaped plan, the points of the star, meaning the chases between the central bands on the four faces, being obtained on the principle of rotating squares (Text Fig. 31). The central bands themselves remain parallel to the square of the garbha-grīha. The bāda or the cubical section has a prominent plinth, nearly as high as the jāṅgha above. The socle as well as the plinth consists each of a series of bold mouldings, those of the former spreading towards the bottom as if to hold the ground in a firm grip. The plinth mouldings rise perpendicularly. In shape as well as in treatment these mouldings have a general likeness to those of the Khajurāho temples. But with these the affinity with the typical Central Indian temple ends, and the design, as a whole, follows what has been described as typically Dakhanese. The chases in the jāṅgha are in the shape of faceted pilasters as in the Ambaranāth,
and being angular, because of the star-shaped plan, every one accommodates a sculpture on each of its two sides. The chases are terminated by capital shape mouldings above which a cornice, with a deep recess intervening, serves as the barāṣṭrā or transition from the cube to the śikhara (cf. Fig. 63).

The śikhara rises with a slight curvature, the unbroken vertical spines, in continuation of the central band below, with their richly tracery ornamentation holding it in shape. The vertical as well as the horizontal themes, as seen on the perpendicular cube, are repeated on the śikhara (Fig. 68). The former finds eloquent expression in the firm contours of the spines on the four quarters transcending the limits of the bisama and in the arrays of aṅga-śikharas, in continuation of the chases in the lower section, rising in succession towards the peak. The latter theme is reproduced in the division of the sub-quarters of the aṅga-śikharas into successive tiers by deep horizontal passages in between. The principal scheme of the composition is, hence, “a close correspondence of the structure and superstructure”, as beautifully expressed by Krarmisch, and this is also noticed in the edges of the bisama, repeating the five-pointed star in each of the sub-quarters, and in the rims of the āmalaka-śilā, responding “in its cusps to the angles of the star-shaped temple”. The maṇḍapa roof, pyramidal in shape, is composed likewise of miniature repetitions of itself in successive tiers converging to the pinnacle. The mighty gable over the antarāla, rising again in successive levels, serves as an effective bond between the superstructures over the sanctum and the maṇḍapa, which are essentially of two divergent shapes. Every part is meticulously carved in the most elegant taste and the result is a texture of exquisite delicacy and variety which, instead of overshadowing the structure, emphasises its lineaments in the most effective manner. The entire monument represents a unified design vibrant, so to say, with teeming detail. The temples at Arang and Rahilya and that of Savari-Nārāyaṇa near Kharod (all in Central India) exhibit each certain of the characteristic features of the Dakhanese temple but not in so complete a degree as the Nilakāṇṭhesvara at Udayapura in which one may recognise a supreme manifestation of the Dakhanese conception.

F. Sindhu-Gaṅga Valleys

It is to be presumed that the Nāgora temple, as the prevailing style in Aryavarta and a considerable portion of the South, was also known in the regions of the upper belt of Northern India, particularly in the rich riverine plains watered by the Sindhu and the Gaṅga-Yamunā systems. Unfortunately, very few old temples now
ART

survive. The plains are practically denuded of monuments that could claim a certain antiquity, and when one recalls the iconoclastic fury of the Muslim conquerors from which this wide tract of territory repeatedly suffered, the reason for the extreme scarcity of old architectural specimens would be patent and clear. The few that survive of the old monuments are also sadly ruined. A few dilapidated monuments in brick in the Uttar Pradesh are found to exhibit the characteristics of the early Nāgara design, except for their preference for a circular shape. They have already been mentioned in connection with the monuments of Central India. In the north-west, in the Himalayan regions, are found several temples decidedly of early Nāgara conception, while in the east, in West Bengal and the adjoining region of Chotanagpur, the same conception is illustrated by a few monuments. Very few examples, however, remain to enable us to trace its development in any of these regions. The few extant monuments do not lead us beyond the suggestion that this vast stretch of territory was familiar with the Nāgara temple. But whether there was any sustained and organised activity in Nāgara temple building in any of these areas is a question that still awaits a satisfactory answer. At any rate, there has been found not a single monument in any of these areas that might correspond to the magnificent regional manifestations of the Nāgara style, like the Orissan or the Central Indian, the Solanki or the Dakhanese.

In the Himalayan regions the earliest specimen of the Nāgara design is possibly represented by a series of monolithic temples at Masrur (Kāngrā). These temples, which are cut out of the rock and reproduce the characteristics of the early Nāgara temple, may belong to the eighth century A.D. At Bājnāth (Kāngrā) there is also a group of structural temples of about the ninth century A.D., alike in form and design to those of Orissa of approximately the same date. Among these, one is interesting for its flat-roofed māṇḍapa which has a rekha sikhara embedded at each of its four corners, just as we find in the māṇḍapa of the Vaital deul at Bhubanesāvara (Orissa). At Chāmbā there are, again, several temples of early Nāgara form in which an advancement of the design is noticed in the paśecharatha plan which characterises each one of them. In the larger temples the bāda is divided into five segments along the vertical axis, also representing an advancement over the early form, and this feature connects them with the development of the Nāgara style as found in Orissa, while a shallow string-course round the đmalaka-silā is a feature which is particularly Rajput in occurrence. Further, an impact of the hill tradition is recognised in a few of the Chāmbā temples in the two superimposed parasols, one over the


THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

gāḍī and the other over the āmalaka, each resting on a framework of wood and covered by thin slabs of slate. In the hills such a contrivance is possibly a necessary feature, being eminently suitable for draining off the snow, and is to be found also in the temples of Kedāranātha and Vadarinātha in the snowy heights of the Himalayas. In the temple of Mahādeva (Fig. 69) at Bajaura (Kulu) we have a neat little temple of the tenth century Nāgara design. It is rich in carved ornamental details and is notable for the three side chapels projected from the body of the sanctum, one on each of the free sides, containing fine relief sculptures of Gaṅeśa, Viṣṇu and Durgā. All the temples, described above, are essentially of early Nāgara form and design and hardly any distinctive feature that might have been due to local inspiration is noticeable in any of them.

In Eastern India also the Nāgara temple seems to have been widely known. The monuments that are now extant are, however, confined to West Bengal and the adjoining Chotanāgpur region. In the latter area such temples are mostly found at Telkupi, Pārā, Bōrām, Dulmi, etc., in the Mānbhum District. That the Nāgara temple was also the prevailing form in different parts of Bengal may be inferred from several votive temples in miniature of this design found respectively in Northern and Eastern Bengal. Certain sculptures from Bihār also reproduce the form of the Nāgara temple in relief, thereby indicating its prevalence in the region of Magadha.

Of the extant temples referred to above, a few can be assigned to the period under review, and whether lying in West Bengal or in the adjoining district of Mānbhum, they are found to have many things in common. Apparently they represent one architectural movement. The Mānbhum temples are small and unpretentious and it is in the temples of West Bengal that the movement can be studied more profitably.

The earliest of the temples of the Nāgara design in Eastern India appears to be temple No. IV (Fig. 70) at Barakar (Burdwān District, West Bengal). It consists of a sanctum, the manḍapa in front being a recent addition not included, in all probability, in the original scheme. The sanctum is triratha in plan with a subsidiary niche on either side of the central buttress which anticipates the paṭṭharatha. The central ratha on each face is occupied by a niche capped by a superstructure of tiered stages which is terminated by the cornice at the bottom of the gāḍī. The supplementary niches have similar superstructures which are, however, smaller in height. Otherwise, the walls remain quite plain. The gāḍī rises with a slight ingress and is capped by a spheroid āmalaka-dīlī. The rāhā and the konaka pegas are emphasised. Instead of the interlaced
chaitya-window patterns, the usual decorative motif on the gāndā in the early Nāgara temples, the surface is covered by relief panels, illustrative of various legends, and animal and human motifs.

In the trirātha plan, a cube of three segments, a pābhāga or plinth of three mouldings, and the plain form of the sikhara unencumbered by arka-sikhāras, the temple No. IV at Barakar reproduces the prominent characteristics of the early Nāgara temple and furnishes a general resemblance with the Parasuŗāmeśvara at Bhuvaneshvāra. At the same time there are several features in it which are equally distinctive. In relation to the dimensions of the sanctuary, the sikhara in the Barakar temple is not as low and stunted as that in the Parasuŗāmeśvara. The mouldings of the pābhāga exhibit shallow rectangular offsets that are not to be found in the Orissan temples. The relief panels on the body of the gāndā introduce a new scheme in the ornamentation of the sikhara of the Nāgara temple. The bhūmi-āmalakas are rounded in section, and these as well as the āmalaka-sīla surmounting the gāndā have indentations resembling fluted cusps. In this treatment of the āmalakas as well as in the offset panels on the mouldings of the pābhāga, the temple No. IV at Barakar appears to have parallels, not in Orissan temples, but in temples of Western India, particularly in Gujarāt. Two other interesting features which seem to connect this temple with those of the west may also be referred to. The rāhā-paga on each face is divided into two vertical halves by a recessed line along its centre. Again, in the upper stages of gāndā, the rāhā-paga is furnished with sectional āmalakas. Both these features appear in the temple at Pashthar (Kāthiawār), described above. These clear affinities of this temple with those of the distant west are difficult to explain in the present state of our knowledge. Moreover, its link with the typical Orissan temple is furnished by the bold and emphatic miniature sikhara shown on the rāhā-paga on the front face. The temple No. IV at Barakar, as it now stands, offers many problems of which no satisfactory solution is possible at present. Its date, hence, also seems to be a problematic one. From the general architectonic form, however, it does not appear to have been much later in date than that of the Parasuŗāmeśvara.

The brick temple (Fig. 71) at Sat Deuliā (Burdwān District, West Bengal), also of the Nāgara conception, is again interesting in certain respects. The ratha plan and the curvilinear tower reproducing in its pagas the ratha shape of the sanctuary cube evidently connect it with the Nāgara conception of temple. The interlaced patterns of a variation of the chaitya-window motif on the pagas and the unbroken and emphatic contours of the latter are likewise distinc-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

tive characteristics of the early Nāgarā temple. The apparent division of the bāda into five vertical segments connects it with the Orissan development of the Nāgarā design. At the top the bāda ends in several courses of inverted offsets forming a projected cornice over which the gāndhā is placed. The top of the sikhara has tumbled down and the surface has an extremely battered appearance. In contrast to the sikhara with its rich tracered ornamentations with ridge-like terminations on the edges of the pāgas, the body of the sanctum cube appears rather plain except for the ratha facets. The projected cornice with the remains of a continuous recess below, coupled with the plain appearance of the bāda, may suggest that the sanctum was originally enclosed by an ambulatory which has now vanished. What is interesting is the absence of bhūmi-āmalakas demarcating the stages of the gāndhā, and also probably of the usual āmalaka-śālā as the crowning member of the sikhara. The absence of such features from the scheme of the sikhara constitutes definite departure from the usual Nāgarā design of the temple. Whatever the explanation of such curious features, the affiliation of the temple fundamentally to the Nāgarā design is clear and explicit as noted above, and from its general shape, refined contours and decorative scheme it appears to be dated about the tenth century A.D.

One of the finest monuments of the Nāgarā design in this part of India is represented by the Siddhesvara temple (Fig. 72) at Bahu­larā (Bānkurā District, West Bengal). It is made of brick and is situated on a low mound, being originally surrounded by eight small subsidiary shrines and enclosed by a compound wall, all of which are now in ruins. The temple is of the single-celled type, and the sanctum is approached by a vestibule in the thickness of the front wall with a triangular corbelled arch opening. It rests on a plinth which consists of several courses of elaborate mouldings and is of the ratha plan. The bāda or the sanctum cube is divided into five segments by three horizontal bands forming the bändhanā and dividing the jāṅgha into two halves. Besides the division of the plan into rathas the plainness of the walls is relieved by niches, those on the central rathas being capped by miniature sikhāras. Several courses of projected mouldings separate the bāda from the gāndhā. The latter has a chaste and refined contour, the corners as well as the edges of the pāgas being rounded off. The whole surface of the gāndhā is covered with intricate traceries of the chaitya-window patterns, scroll-work and other designs. Of the last the most interesting are the tiers of miniature sikhāras in the lower stages of the ratha-pāgas. This is a new interpretation of the logical theme of anta-sikhāras on the body of the main sikhāra, not met with so far; but it seems to have been characteristic of the Nāgarā temples of this region as is evident.
from the temple known as Jātār deul in the Sunderbuns. The top of the temple has tumbled down and the hand of time has been heavy on the mouldings and decorative patterns. Yet, considered as a whole, this brick monument, because of its graceful proportions, elegant contours and chaste style of decoration, seems to constitute one of the outstanding productions of Indian temple architecture. Coomaraswamy assigns the temple to the tenth century A.D. Dikshit thinks this date to be a century or two too early. From general architectonic shape and ornamental style a date in the eleventh century A.D. may not appear to be unreasonable. At Dehār (Bānkūra District, West Bengal) there are two stone temples, of which the sīkharas have gone. The treatment of the cube of the bāḍa in each case resembles that of the Siddheśvara at Bahulārā, and all the three may be regarded as belonging to the same conception and to approximately the same period. The brick temple, known as the Jātār deul (Fig. 73), in the Sunderbuns (West Bengal), when in its original state, seems also to have been an eminent production of this conception. Modern conservation has entirely obliterated its original shape and features, but originally, as appears from an earlier photograph, the temple had considerable architectural merits and closely resembled the Siddheśvara in plan, elevation and decorative treatment.

From a study of the temples of the Nāgara design in this part of India it appears that they are unmistakably related to the Orissan movement. As a class they are nearer to the early group of Orissa than to the typically Orissan, though the link with the latter cannot be entirely ruled out. One or two, as noticed above, may, again, be found to have significant affinities with the distant western movement. These apart, the Bengali temples may also be recognised to have certain individual features. The Bengali architects displayed, to a certain extent, a better sense of reserve and restraint than their contemporaries in other parts of India. They exhibited a more refined taste in the choice of their decorative patterns and their balanced adjustments. The Nāgara temples in Bengal may not have the grandeur of the massive and stupendous stone monuments seen in other parts of India; but they are surely more elegant and graceful, and the brick specimens in particular testify to a fine and mature knowledge of the Bengali builders in the science and art of building.

3. Drāvida Style

The nucleus of the Drāvida temple, as has already been observed, is the storeyed form of the Gupta temple and the rock-cut rathas at Māmallapuram supply an interesting stage in the development of
the Dravida style. The Pallavas were eminent patrons of art and architecture. The early phase of the Pallava rule in the south is an age of great experiments in methods and forms. The "Cave style" of Mahendravarman Vichitrachitta was continued by his son and successor Narasimhavarman Mahâmalla, but the latter initiated a new turn in the rock-cut method by shaping out free-standing monolithic rathas from granulitic boulder-like outcrops in imitation of structural forms. Eight such rathas are still found at Mâmâllapuram, the seaport city founded by him at the mouth of the Pâlar river, 32 miles south of Madras.

Every one of the rathas, except the Draupâdi, exhibits a storeyed elevation of the roof, each storey being terminated by a convex roll cornice ornamented with chaitya-window arches (kuḍus as they are called in this part of the country), each enclosing a human head. The walls of the ground storey are broken up by pilasters and sculptured niches, while the upper storeys are surrounded by small pavilions (pañchârâmas). In spite of this general resemblance there may be recognised great divergences in shape and form which are, to a certain extent, determined by the shape and plan of the sanctum cells. The Nakula and Sahadeva rathas each has a rectangular plan rounded at one end, and correspondingly the storeyed roof is surmounted by a vault with an apsidal back. This form, reproducing the design of the Buddhist chaitya halls, gradually went out of fashion. Among the other rathas we have the square as well as the rectangular plans. In the former the storeyed roof is topped by a domical member, the stûpi or stûpikâ as it is called. The latter has an elongated barrel-shaped vault, with gables at the two ends, as the crowning element of the roof. In these two forms one may recognise the origin of the two fundamental components of the Dravida temple, the vimâna representing the sanctum with its pyramidal tower and the gopuram or the immense gateway leading to the temple enclosure.

Of the square type of rathas, which furnished the starting point for the Dravida vimâna, the Dharmarâja is the most imposing as well as the most perfect (cf. Classical Age, Fig. 27). It consists of a square ground storey, with open pillared verandahs all around, which upholds a pyramidal tower of receding storeys ultimately capped by the octagonal stûpikâ. Each storey is demarcated from the other by a convex roll cornice with chaitya-window arches (kuḍus), and the upper storeys are surrounded by small pavilions (pañchârâmas). Though the sanctum seems to be situated on the second storey, the pillared verandahs round the ground storey have, more or less, an appearance of an open ambulatory. It is not difficult to find in this type an adaptation of the earlier storeyed form of the
Gupta temple enriched by the introduction of new elements in the matter of detail, apparently of local origin. The stūpika or the crowning member is evidently a derivation from those of the miniature rock-cut relief shrines at Undavalli (Guntur District). The roll cornice appears in the caves of the Mahendravarman period and even earlier. The turretted roofs (pancharams) surrounding each upper storey are, no doubt, intended to fill up vacant spaces round the horizontal stages so as to conceal, to a certain extent, the storeyed elevation and to lend the tower a pyramidal shape. The Dharmarāja ratha at Māmallapuram may, in these respects, be clearly recognised to be a typical example in which the distinctive elements of the Drāviḍa vimāna may be said to have emerged and attained their characteristic expression.

Of the two rectangular rathas, the Ganeśa is the more interesting. With its storeyed elevation surmounted by a barrel-shaped vault with a gable at either end and pointed pinnacles at the top, it reproduces, though on a much reduced scale, the distinctive form and characteristics of the immense gopuram or entrance gateway to the spacious temple enclosure. The rectangular plan is eminently suitable for a gateway building and the barrel-vaulted roof is certainly the most effective covering for a building of this plan. As such the type was selected as a convenient prototype for the gateway building, and the fundamental resemblance between the shape and form of the simple type of the rectangular ratha, as illustrated in the Ganeśa, and those of the monumental gopurams of the later days leaves no doubt regarding their evident connection. At Māmallapuram the rectangular and the square types of rathas appear side by side, each as an independent conception. Their association together to form two important elements of the Drāviḍa temple complex is an event that is still to come.

With its beginnings in two distinct types of the Pallava rock-cut rathas of the first half of the seventh century A.D. the Drāviḍa style of temple passes through a long process of evolution and elaboration under different dynasties of kings who came to be politically supreme in the south. From the period of the Pallava rulers till the end of the Vijayanagara empire in the sixteenth century, and even later, the style maintains a prolific activity, and a succession of datable monuments, spread over the southern end of the peninsula, supplies definite landmarks in the development of the style. Confined within a comparatively small area the movement remains, more or less, compact and unilateral in spite of a history of approximately a thousand years. This long period may be divided into several well-marked phases. Each succeeding phase starts
with the heritage of the preceding one, leading the style, along with
a richer elaboration and maturity, to its ultimate logical fulfilment.
In fact, there is no real break in the continuity of the tradition, and
the strongly marked individualities, constituting the distinctive
characteristics of the style, remain prominent throughout.

With Narasimhavarman II, also known as Rājasīhinīa Pallava
(c. A.D. 695-c. 722), the rock-cut method ceased and the ratha type
was replaced by structural temples. The change to the structural
method furnished the builders with greater powers and freedom,
and the results of this change are noticeable in the striking advance
that was made in the building art even within a generation. To
Rājasīhinīa’s reign may be assigned several interesting monuments
of which three seem to have been of immense importance in the
development of the style as a whole. The earliest of these stands
at Māmallapuram and is now known as the “Shore” temple (Fig.
74)157 on account of its being situated on a point of land that juts
out into the sea. A formal temple scheme is found to be already in
a process of formation as the temple proper is placed within a
quadrangular court enclosed by massive walls. The principal
feature of the scheme consists of two shrines, asymmetrically
attached to each other, each having its own pyramidal tower com­
plete with a domical stūpiḍa and a pointed finial. The one to the
east, facing the sea, is larger in dimensions and was apparently the
main shrine dedicated to the god Śiva. The western one was con­
secrated to the worship of the god Viṣṇu. The towered sanctua­ies, each with a storeyed elevation terminated by a dome-shaped
stūpiḍa and with roll cornices and small pavilions at each stage,
clearly reveal a derivation from the square type of rathas best
exemplified by the Dharmaṛaja. Each tower has gained in height
and there is a lightness and soaring quality in the attenuated and
elongated shape of each. It is precisely these qualities which lend
“more rhythm and more buoyancy”158 to these rather loosely knit
forms. A greater freedom, inherent in the structural procedure,
was, no doubt, partly responsible for these qualities; but this alone
could hardly account for the effect produced unless a new aspira­
tion had been there.

This aspiration leads to the unified conception of a temple
scheme in which all the appurtenances, that were to be distinctive
of the Drāvīḍa style of temple, are clearly expressed and harmoni­
ously adjusted to one another. The first example of such a unified
conception may be seen in the celebrated Kālīśanāṭha temple,159
built by Rājasīhinīa Pallava, not long after the Shore temple, at
Kāṇchipuram (Conjeveram), the capital city of the Pallava kings.
ART

from ancient days. This temple complex (Fig. 75), also known as the Rājasainēśvara after its royal builder, consists of the sanctum with a pyramidal tower and a pillared hall or maṇḍapa (maṇṭapam as it is known in this part of the country) with a flat roof, both situated in a rectangular court enclosed by a peristyle composed of a series of cells (Text Fig. 32). The sanctuary stands near the western end of the court and is topped by a pyramidal tower of storeyed elevation of great beauty and graceful contours. This constitutes the principal feature of the entire scheme and is obviously a development from the monolithic prototype of the Dharma-raja ratha. In the pyramidal tower there is a far greater harmony in the different storeyed stages leading to a more effective design of this kind of superstructure (Text Fig. 33). “From the somewhat compressed forms of the monolithic rathas to the more loosely-knit elements of the Shore temple, we now arrive at a further effort to present the sikhara (sic.) in a suitable architectural form, well-proportioned, substantial, yet at the same time rhythmic in its mass and elegant in its outlines.”

A group of supplementary shrines, each repeating on a smaller scale the form of the main shrine and attached to its free sides, may suggest, again, an advancement of the design of the vimāna. There are doubts, however, whether these components were included in the original scheme. The peristyle of cells with its range of cupolas is also an interesting feature apparently connected with the future development of the style.

In the composition of the Kailasanātha at Kāḷīchipuram we have the first example of the unified design of a temple complex with many adjuncts that are to characterise the full-fledged德拉iva temple. Apart from the vimāna, the pillared hall or maṇḍapa, an invariable accompaniment of the德拉iva temple, has already made its appearance and is placed in front of the sanctum, originally as a separate building but later on joined together by an intermediate hall forming the antarāla. The sanctuary and the maṇḍapa stand within an enclosed court to which access is now obtained by two entrances in the eastern wall on two sides of a rectangular building with a storeyed elevation and surmounted by a barrel-shaped vault. This building now serves as a subsidiary chapel. From its position in the middle of the eastern, i.e. the front, wall axially in a line with the maṇḍapa and the vimāna, it is not difficult to find in this building the original entrance to the temple enclosure. The shape of this structure, eminently suitable for a gateway building, and the manner in which it has been built and disposed, leave no doubt about its original function. The chapel, in which form we now see it, represents obviously a later deviation from the original plan. Its derivation from the rectangular type of rathas, like the Gaṇeśa, is also clear.
and explicit. With all the appurtenances, like the walled court, the gopuram, the pillared mandapa and the vimana, all complete and in their proper positions, the Kailasanatha at Kāñcipuram may rightly be regarded as one of the key monuments of the Drāvida style.

The Vaishnava temple, known as the Vaikuntha Perumal, at Kāñcipuram is also attributed to Rājasimha Pallava and might have been begun not long after the Kailasanatha. Here a more developed sense of composition is evident in all the elements of the temple complex being combined into one architectural unit. The temple stands within a court which is approached by a portico in the east (Text Fig. 34). On the outside the walls of the court are relieved by pilasters and niches, while on the inside runs a continuous colonnaded cloister separated from the central complement, the sanctum and its attached mandapa, by an open passage for circumambulation. The mandapa is a square pillared hall having an entrance in front and a vestibule behind which leads to the sanctum cella. The sanctum is also square in plan and has a pyramidal tower of four storeys capped by the octagonal dome of the stūpika with a finial (Text Figs. 35 and 36). Each storey is disposed as a shrine, with two enclosed ambulatories in the lowest, an ambulatory and an open balcony in the second and an open balcony in the third. Each storey is separated on the exterior by roll cornices surmounted by parapets with ornamental cupola shapes at intervals, while the walls of the lowest are relieved by sculptures set between pilasters. In the disposition of the different elements there is noticed not only a sense of unity but also an economy which is responsible for much of the architectural character of the monument. The Drāvida temple style is already in the process of crystallisation.

In the second half of the eighth century A.D. the power of the Pallavas began to decline and the notable advances, made during the previous phase, seem to have received a set-back. Though no ambitious productions were taken in hand, the architectural activities continued, as is evidenced by a number of monuments erected during this later Pallava phase. Of these, the Muktesvara and the Matangesvara at Kāñcipuram and the great temple at Panamalai are essentially of the same mode and style as those associated with the name of Rājasimha Pallava. Certain smaller temples of this later phase, such as the Vadamalliśvara at Oragadam (near Chingleput), the Tiruttanesvara at Tiruṭṭān, and the Paraśuramesvara at Gudimallam, reproduce the apsidal form of the Sahadeva ratha. The movement, however, remained, to a certain extent, static, but the standard, already achieved, was main-
tained unimpaired. The rich heritage of the Pallava building tradition thus passed on to the Cholas who supplanted the Pallavas as the dominant power of the South.

In connection with the development of the Dravida temple in the Pallava period it would be useful to refer to a few productions of the style outside the confines of the Dravida country proper. One of the most significant is the Virūpāksha temple at Paṭṭadakal\(^{167}\) in the Chālukya territory (Text Fig. 37). The temple was built, according to an inscription, for Lokamahādevi, the senior queen of the Chālukya king Vikramāditya II (c. A.D. 733-746) in commemoration of his having thrice conquered the Pallavas of Kāṇči. There is a strong possibility of its design having been inspired by that of the Kailasanātha temple at Kāṇčipuram. There are epigraphic records, both at Paṭṭadakal as well as in the Kailasanātha at Kāṇčipuram, which, read together, suggest that Vikramāditya, after his conquest of the Pallava capital, was much impressed by the latter temple, and so might have brought builders from the south for his own architectural undertakings. The Dravida temple, in its fundamental conception, was not new in the Chālukyan territory and there are two significant examples of earlier dates, namely the Meguti temple at Aihoḷe,\(^{168}\) built in A.D. 634, and the Vijayesvara or Saigameśvara at Paṭṭadakal,\(^{169}\) erected by king Vijayaḍītya (A.D. 696-733), father of Vikramāditya II. Some scholars are, therefore, inclined to recognise in the Virūpāksha temple a natural development of the Dravida conception in the Chālukyan region. But the Kailasanātha temple at Kāṇčipuram and the Virūpāksha at Paṭṭadakal show an essential identity in respect of the plan and composition. Such an identity is difficult to explain unless there had been a closer link between the two. There is every probability, as the inscriptions would tend to suggest, that the former was the prototype of the latter.

In shape and form and in matters of composition the Virūpāksha at Paṭṭadakal seems to be a duplicate of its prototype at Kāṇčipuram. The Vijayesvara temple at Paṭṭadakal belonging to the previous reign was also of Dravida conception, but there the different elements seem to be cruder in setting. In the Virūpāksha a greater co-ordination of the different parts and their refined setting and execution represent a distinct advance on the Vijayesvara, an advance that was, in all probability, due to its contact with its southern prototype. The Trailokyēśvara or Malākārjuna temple (Fig. 76),\(^{170}\) built by Trailokyamahādevi, a junior queen of Vikramāditya II, stands adjacent to the Virūpāksha and is of the same general plan and design as the latter.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

In the Chalukyan territory several temples of the Dravida conception were built during this phase. But the most outstanding monument of this conception in this part of the country, and perhaps a unique creation of Indian architectural art, is the famous Kailasa at Ellora. An entire temple complex (Fig. 78), completely hewn out of the living rock, as it is, it seems to have been a fitting sanctuary for the god Śiva whose favourite abode is the Kailasa mountain. It was built by the Rāṣṭrakūṭa kings who supplanted the Chalukyas in the sovereignty of the Deccan. Possibly begun during the time of Dantidurga, it was completed by Krishṇa (c. A.D. 758-773). The scheme resolves itself into four principal elements repeating the fundamental pattern of a Dravida temple as we find in the Kailasanātha temple at Kāśimipura or in the Virūpākṣa at Pāṭadakal. Seen as a whole, it has a closer alliance with the latter which, it is not unlikely, was its prototype. The differences that are noticed are, in a large measure, due to the necessities of the rock-hewn technique.

The temple itself stands within a rectangular court surrounded by cloistered cells and approached in front by a double storied gatehouse, the precursor of the gopurams of later days. The court measures nearly 300 feet by 200 feet. The principal component consists of the vimāna and the maṇḍapa, the two occupying an area of approximately 150 feet by 100 feet. This unit is raised over a lofty plinth, nearly 25 feet high, which forms, so to say, a ground storey. The plinth is heavily moulded at the bottom and at the top, the intervening space being occupied by a frieze of boldly carved elephant (Fig. 77) and lion caryatids seemingly supporting the massive monument. Over this substantial substructure stand the vimāna (Fig. 79) and the maṇḍapa, the latter approached by grand flights of steps in the front, i.e. the western side. The flat roof of the maṇḍapa is supported on sixteen pillars arranged in small groups of four each at the corners, thus dividing the hall into cruciform aisles. From the maṇḍapa a vestibule leads to the sanctum cella, the tower of which rises in four storeys and ultimately ends in a dome-shaped stūpikā. From the level of the court to the apex the vimāna is 95 feet in height. Around the sanctum cella and enclosing the ambulatory, so to say, are arranged five lesser chapels, each repeating, on a smaller scale, the principal theme standing in the centre.

In front of this unit and on the main axis is, again, a detached flat-roofed maṇḍapa for the bull Nandi, on either side of which stands a free-standing column (dhwaja-stambha) nearly 50 feet high from the level of the court, bearing at the apex the triśūla or the sacred emblem of the god. The double storied gatehouse, forming the façade of the entire composition, is itself an imposing production, and in its gable roof we have possibly, like that of the Kailasanātha

616
ART

at Kanchipuram, the germ of the future gopuram. All these units, though seemingly detached, are connected with one another by bridges. The entire scheme seems to be unified by an organic rhythm that governs the disposition and proportions of each unit.

This vast temple complex, completely hewn out of the rock with all its elaborate appurtenances, strikes the beholder with a sense of wonder and awe when he visualises the stupendous task involved in such a process. From this standpoint it is, no doubt, a titanic production deserving to be ranked as one of the world’s greatest creations. Because of the disadvantages of the rock-cut technique the monument has been set within a deep pit, but those responsible for this unique conception sought to compensate for this defect by raising the monument on an enormously high podium. Due to the technique followed the monument has the appearance of a sculpture on a grand scale than of architecture. There is no doubt that the sculptor’s art is the supreme fact of this conception, more so because of the superb carvings that cover all the free surfaces of the monument. At the same time it is the genius of a master architect that lends unity and rhythm to the entire conception, and in this respect it is also a grand piece of architecture. The unique boldness of its technique and the beauty of its execution have made it widely known, and aptly has the Kailasa at Ellora been described as “the world’s greatest rock poem”. Among the temples of the Drāvīḍa conception this is the most northerly one. Apart from its singular technique, in the vastness of its scheme, in the orderly treatment of its parts and in its superbly graceful execution it is also one of the most eminent productions of Drāvīḍa architecture.

About the end of the ninth century A.D. the Pallavas had to make way for the Chola who became the dominant power in the South. During the regime of the Chola the Drāvīḍa style of temple architecture enters a brilliant and distinctive phase. The productions of the early phase of the Chola rule are usually small, yet each represents a complete formation in which the relation with the Pallava tradition remains clear and unmistakable. When compared with the productions of the last days of the Pallavas, those of the early Chola phase display a certain freshness of spirit that may indicate a revivifying of the style from the dormant state in which it had fallen. These initial attempts represent a transition from the Pallava to the Chola development of the Drāvīḍa temple style.

Of the monuments of the early Chola phase, the Vijayālaya Cholaśvara temple at Nattamalai is interesting for its circular shrine chamber enclosed within a square ambulatory. The erection of this temple is usually attributed to Vijayālaya, the first of the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

imperial Cholas. The circular shrine is rather an unusual design in this class of temples, but the pillared mānḍapa, the storeyed tower of the vimāna topped by the stūpiṇī, and the diversification of the external walls by pilasters and recesses belong evidently to the Pallava tradition.

The initial phase of the Chola development of the Dārāvāha temple is best exemplified in the Koraṅganātha at Srinivasanallur (Trichinopoly District). It possibly belongs to the reign of Parāntaka I (A.D. 907-953). It is of modest proportions and consists of the sanctuary and its attached mānḍapa, the two covering a total length of 50 feet. The conception is essentially Pallava. But at the same time a more rational attitude is recognised in a simplification of its parts that emphasises the “value of plain spaces together with due sense of the character and correct location of the architectural features required for purposes of embellishment.” There have also been significant changes in the design and form of the pillars. The wall surfaces are divided by pilasters into niches, each occupied by a full-length figure sculpture in very high relief, resembling almost a statuesque in the round. Another interesting and distinctive feature, unknown in the previous phase but a characteristic element in the decorative scheme of a Dārāvāha temple of the subsequent periods, is the string-course with a row of griffin-heads in the stylobate. Fundamentally of the same conception as the Pallava temples, the Koraṅganātha at Srinivasanallur heralds also a new phase in the development of the Dārāvāha temple style under the great Cholas.

The Chola power reached its zenith under Rājarāja the Great (A.D. 985-1014) and his son Rājendra Chola (A.D. 1012-1044), and it is to these two monarchs that we owe two supreme creations of the Dārāvāha temple style. Conscious of their unrivalled supremacy and vast resources, these two monarchs set about erecting two stupendous monuments as lithic testimonies, so to say, to their religious devotion and dignified majesty. The first of these was built at Tanjore, the seat of Chola sovereignty, by Rājarāja the Great, and is known as the Bṛhaddēvara, otherwise called Rājarājeśvara after its royal builder. According to the temple records the construction was begun some time about A.D. 1003 and completed in A.D. 1010. The second was erected about A.D. 1025 by Rājendra Chola in the new capital city of Gangaikōndacholapuram which this monarch founded in commemoration of his extensive conquests. It is in these two grand and lofty temples that one may visualise the mighty resources of the Chola power at its height.

The Bṛhaddēvara temple at Tanjore stands within a walled...
quadrangle, 500 feet by 250 feet, which is preceded by an outer court, 250 feet square (Text Fig. 38). The latter, originally intended for minor shrines and residential appurtenances, is of very little architectural interest. The present gopuram in front, i.e. the eastern wall, is, again, a much later erection. A second gopuram, situated axially to this outer gateway, leads to the principal quadrangle with a colonnaded cloister all around. Near the back end of this court rises majestically the great vimāna (Fig. 80) with the forward complements of the temple complex—a large mandapa, a pillared portico and a Nandi shrine—combined axially in front. All these structures are, by themselves, sufficiently important productions, functionally as well as architecturally, but in no way do they interfere with the effect of the grand and massive pile of the vimāna towering above everything in its vicinity. Together they cover a total length of 180 feet, while the pyramidal vimāna rises to a height of 190 feet. In dimensions alone the Brihadiśvara temple at Tanjore is one of the boldest and most daring conceptions of Dravīḍa architecture. No less impressive is the architectural treatment of the whole. There is a clarity in the disposition of its parts, each organically related to the other. This, coupled with a correct sense of decorative scheme, leads to the creation of a superb monument, distinguished alike for its rhythm, poise and dignity.

The magnificent pile of the vimāna, which constitutes the dominating feature of the entire composition, may be divided into three principal sections, namely the upright cube enclosing the sanctum cela with its ambulatory, the lofty and massive pyramidal body ascending in thirteen diminishing zones, and the crowning element, the graceful dome-shaped stūpiṅgī (Text Fig. 39). The first is 82 feet square rising to a height of 50 feet from the base. Along the horizontal section this huge mass is broken up by five projecting bays alternating with recesses, and this theme, continued right up to the top of the pyramidal tower, emphasises the vertical aspect of the conception. Along the vertical axis the wall section is divided into two equal stages by a bold and heavy cornice-like moulding that casts a deep horizontal shadow. The bays, above and below, are occupied by image-niches with the sides treated like pilasters separated by deep recesses. The pyramidal section of the vimāna is evidently a derivation from the Pallava prototype, the gradually diminishing zones in its composition being clearly reminiscent of the storeyed elevation of the earlier towers. In the Tanjore vimāna, however, the horizontal aspect of the storeyed stages has been suppressed for the sake of an emphatic vertical contour. The shallow horizontal lines separating the zones, intersecting with the vertical bays of the lower section continued on the tower, create a beautiful
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

architectural pattern, the fundamental idea of which is vertical to all intents and purposes. In this massive pyramidal pile there is a sense of strength and stability, and at the same time a rhythmical quality of soaring verticalism, accentuated further by the dome-shaped śrūpikā which, poised over the four-square top of the pyramid “like a light but substantial globe”,¹７８ by its contrast and with flamboyant niches at the sides, appears to impart an effect of airy lightness to the entire composition. “Unquestionably the finest single creation of the Dravidian craftsmen”, rightly observes Percy Brown,¹７９ “the Tanjore vimāna is a touchstone of Indian architecture as a whole”.

Within the precincts of the Brihādiśvara temple stand a few other structures, all subsequent accretions of different periods. Of these, the temple of Subrahmaṇya represents an exquisite piece of decorative architecture, richly carved, that equally attracts the admiration of the visitor. It belongs to a late date, about the eighteenth century A.D.

About A.D. 1025 Rājendra Chola constructed another stupendous monument in his new capital city of Gaṅgaikonḍacholapuram.¹８０ Built within a quarter of a century, it resembles fundamentally the great conception of his father. Unfortunately, it has suffered much, and not a little of its spoliation has been due to what K.A. Nilakantha Sastrī¹８１ describes as “modern predatory engineering”. It now stands amidst the mud huts of the desolate village, a mere stranded shell of its former prosperity.

Like its predecessor, the great temple at Gaṅgaikonḍacholapuram is also contained within an immense walled quadrangle, and the remains of a substantial bastion at the south-east angle would indicate that this was disposed in the shape of a fortress enclosure. Much of the surrounding walls has now disappeared. Within the court the principal composition occupies a rectangle, about 340 feet by 100 feet, with its long axis from east to west, and consists of a large maṇḍapa, 175 feet by 95 feet, and the massive vimāna, 100 feet square, with a connecting vestibule. The main entrance in the middle of the eastern wall of the maṇḍapa is designed as an impressive portal, while two subsidiary entrances are provided in the northern and southern walls of the vestibule, each in the shape of a deeply recessed doorway flanked by two domineering figures of dvārapālaś on the two sides. The maṇḍapa is a relatively low building with a flat roof supported on a cluster of pillars, more than 150 in number, arranged in colonnades in the interior of the hall. In this pillared hall, substantial in dimensions, one may recognise the nucleus of the “thousand-columned maṇḍapas” that were to consti-
tute a distinctive feature of the Drāviḍa temple-complexes of the subsequent ages. An individual appearance is imparted to the interior by the division of the platform supporting the colonnades along its centre by a wide passage at the ground level, with a similar passage carried round the entire inner circuit of the hall. The vestibule connecting the two principal components, the flat-roofed maṇḍapa and the pyramidal vimāṇa, has two rows of massive square piers. Its roof rising above the level of that of the maṇḍapa contributes an effective ensemble to the exterior elevation of the entire composition.

The vimāṇa, though larger in horizontal dimensions than the Tanjore one, is only 160 feet high. The treatment of the lower upright section is essentially the same as that at Tanjore. But in the tapering body above, which consists of eight diminishing zones, the introduction of curves, in place of the strongly pronounced straight lines in the previous example, adds a richer note to the creation of Rājendra Chola. The Chola power in the time of this monarch had reached its most affluent state, and this is reflected in the increased richness and exuberance of this later structure. As Percy Brown aptly comments: "There is a voluptuousness in the later structure, the beauty of ripe femininity, in contrast to the masculine strength of the earlier type. But in comparing these two architectural productions they present much more than a difference in kind. Stately and formal as an epic may epitomise the Tanjore vimāṇa while the later example has all the sensuous passion of an eastern lyric, but it seems to go even deeper than that. Each is the final and absolute vision of its creator made manifest through the medium of structural form, the one symbolising conscious might the other sub-conscious grace, but both dictated by that 'divinity which has seized the soul'."

In these two eminent productions of the two greatest monarchs of the Chola dynasty the Drāviḍa temple style reaches its supreme expression. In the mighty sweep of the Tanjore vimāṇa there has been achieved a complete balance between stupendous architectural mass and aspiring verticality. Here the form dominates the composition, all ornament, however exuberant, being subordinated and complementary to it. At Gaṅgākōṇḍacholapuram also the architectural form remains dominant in the conception, but the ornament has grown richer and, though still subservient to the architectural lineaments, predicts a restless impatience that seems destined to overstep its limits and overflow in plentiful growth.

After Rājendra Chola the vigorous days of the expanding power of the dynasty were over. The style also loses much of its force
and tends to become more and more ornate and florid. After the supreme upheaval it enters a baroque phase in which the activities, though practically undiminished, were concerned with productions of no more than ordinary interest. In the twelfth century A.D., the Chola power was on the decline and in its last stage, engaged in a life and death struggle with the rising power of the Pāṇḍyas and refractory feudatories. This led to the collapse of the dynasty in the second half of the thirteenth century A.D. and the Pāṇḍyas for a time gained dominance in the south. During this Chola-Pāṇḍya phase a semblance of the former achievement of the style is noticeable in two productions, the Airāvatesvara at Darasuram\textsuperscript{183} and the Kampaharesvara or Tribhuvanesvara at Tribhuvanam,\textsuperscript{184} both in the Tanjore District. The two seem to have been close to each other in time and to denote a revived impetus to building art. But this impetus is concerned, not so much with the production of any robust architectural form, as with the creation of an effect by reiteration of the same elements and by increased elegance and richness of ornamental detail. The temple-complex grows more elaborate, and the formal scheme of the vimāna and the maṇḍapa is surrounded by several accessory shrines and maṇḍapas, all forming a compact group within an enclosure or a number of concentric enclosures, each approached by a gopuram or gopuras. The Darasuram temple seems originally to have a number of such enclosures with a gopuram for each. In this temple one of the maṇḍapas, axially in front of the principal scheme, is designed in the shape of a chariot drawn by elephants. During this phase, and particularly in the Pāṇḍya period, increased importance is given more and more to the temple precincts than to the main scheme, with the result that the latter dwindles in importance in relation to the former, more exuberant in design and execution. The gopuram comes to occupy a more prominent position in the temple scheme and gradually grows to imposing size and dimensions, until with its soaring height it dwarfs the vimāna standing in the midst of the enclosure. The tendencies, noticed in the Pāṇḍya period, find their fullest expression in the Vijayanagara epoch, during which the exuberance of the late Chola and Pāṇḍya phases leads, so to say, to an unrestricted extravagance.\textsuperscript{185}

4. Chēḻukyan Style

The Vesara style of Indian temple architecture, according to the Śilpa texts, was prevalent in the region between the Vindhyas and the river Krishnā. This style, it has already been observed, has been equated by some scholars with what is known to the archaeologists as the Chēḻukyan style which flourished in the southern parts
of the Bombay State, or, more precisely, the Kannada country. The style seems to have emerged under the rule of the Later Chalukyas who dominated the politics of the Deccan for a little over two hundred years beginning from the later part of the tenth century A.D. It is known to have reached its ripest expression in the Mysore territory under the Hoysalas of Dvarasamudra.

The Chalukyan style cannot, however, be said to have an independent origin of its own, but represents "an outgrowth of the earlier Dravidian style, so modified in its development by the Western temple-builders as to have attained a separate style in their hands." The genesis of the development may be traced back to the days of the early Chalukyan kings in the seventh and eighth centuries A.D. when, at Aihole and Pattadakal, Dravida as well as Nagara temples were being erected side by side. It is the simultaneous co-existence of activities in Dravida and Nagara temple-building that provided an opportunity for a certain amount of admixture of the ideas of the two. The result is a development that leads to the emergence, under the aegis of the Later Chalukyan rulers, of a separate and individual style which has been referred to as intermediate between the Indo-Aryan (Nagara) and the Dravidian (Dravida) and described as a mixed or hybrid one. But in the making of this style the Nagara conception played a relatively less important part. It is the Dravida conception that forms the nucleus of future developments. The influences of the Nagara style are felt in the occasional introduction of a few motifs, in treatment and ornament, which, however, do but little change the form and character of the Chalukyan temple that remain fundamentally Dravidian.

The Chalukyan temple, like the Dravida, consists of the two principal components, viz. the vimana and the mandapa, with sometimes an additional open mandapa in front. The former is surmounted by a pyramidal tower of storeyed elevation with a dome-shaped crowning member, while the latter are covered by flat roofs supported on pillars. In course of time there is a marked tendency to compress the heights of the storeyed stages of the vimana. At the same time ornamental niche motifs, repeated one above the other up the ascent of the tower, simulate the vertical bands of the northern spire. In this is felt, no doubt, an inspiration from the Nagara sikha. The Chalukyan temple presents further an essential divergence from the Dravida in not having its cells enclosed within a covered ambulatory. The mandapas, again, are usually wider in dimensions than the vimanas. In the treatment of the exterior walls there seems to have been a blending, again, of Nagara and
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Dr̥avīḍa ideas. The walls are broken up by ratha offsets in the characteristic Nāgara fashion, further spaced at regular intervals by pilasters in accordance with the usual Dr̥avīḍa mode. The recesses, thus formed, are usually filled up by niches with super-structures of the Nāgara or of the Dr̥avīḍa style, thus producing a refrain of great artistic beauty. A further elaboration is noticed in the stellate plan based on the system of rotating squares. In the Chālukyan territory there is only a single example of this plan in the temple of Doddā Basappa at Dāmbal. In the Hoysala temples of Mysore the star-shaped plan becomes the usual fashion. A few of the Chālukyan temples are distinguished for their multiple-shrined compositions in which two, three or four shrines are found arranged around a central maṇḍapa hall. Such a composition with its multiple towers presents, not unoften, an extremely pleasing view, and in this respect a few of the Hoysala temples constitute notable and impressive productions. Apart from architectural treatment, the Chālukyan temple, or its descendant the Hoysala, is also characterised by an exuberant plastic ornament covering all the external surfaces which seem to have a richly fretted appearance, from the base to the top. In the interior the pillars and the door-frames, as well as the ceilings, are also exuberantly treated in the like manner. The pillars themselves sometimes bear evident traces of being turned on lathes. All ornaments, whether on the pillars, door-frames or ceilings, have usually been imparted a highly lustrous polish so as to glow in the dim light in the interior. Considered as a whole, the Chālukyan temple represents one of the most ornate and florid expressions of Indian architecture.

Of this style there are innumerable remains within the old Chālukyan boundaries. The Hoysala mode, its later offshoot, is also represented by a large number of temples in the Mysore territory. Indeed, there is hardly any village in either of these regions that does not contain an old monument, either complete or mutilated, and a few of the notable centres usually have more. It is possible, therefore, to refer only to a few significant examples which help us in following the development of the style. The emphasis is more on stylistic sequence than on chronological implications.

At Kukkanur in the Hyderābād State there is a number of old temples of which the Kalleśvara188 is important as marking an advance over the older prototype of the Dr̥avīḍa temple towards the direction of the Chālukyan. It consists of the vimāna and the maṇḍapa with a connecting vestibule between the two and a projecting Nandi porch in front (Text Figs. 40 and 41). The exterior walls are effectively broken up by slender pilasters at regular inter-
vals with occasional insertion of a shrine or an identical structural motif in the recesses so formed. The introduction of structural motifs in place of figure sculptures, characteristic of this part of the scheme in the Drāvida temple, represents a notable modification in the scheme. Further, the storeyed stages of the tower are reduced in height, and the domical apex, with a double curve, also introduces a significant innovation. Again, a gable-shaped motif in the middle of each storeyed stage on each face indicates the beginning of that simulated vertical band up the height of the tower which is so distinctive of the later Chalukyan temples. In these respects the Kallēśvara at Kukkanur, though retaining a distinct Drāvida shape and outline, exhibits a leaning towards the Chalukyan form that is soon to emerge.

The next notable step in the formation of the Chalukyan style is supplied by the Jain temple at Lakkundi or Lokkigundi, as it was known in the ancient days, situated seven miles to the southeast of Gadag in the Dharwar District. Coarse-grained sandstone of the earlier prototypes is replaced in this temple by a fine-grained black chlorite schist, and the size of the masonry is also much reduced. This change, continued in the later temples, enabled the artists to treat the surfaces in greater detail and ornament, and the tendency henceforth is towards a rich and florid expression which lends such a distinctive character to the style. "The change in the material," Cousens observes, "was conducive to the change in the style".

The Jain temple at Lakkundi (Text Fig. 42) seems to have been the earliest among a number of old monuments at the place and its style is not far removed from that of the Kallēśvara at Kukkanur. It consists of the vimāna, an intermediate vestibule and a mandapa with a forward open pillared hall, all axially combined. The treatment of the exterior surfaces is generally of the same manner as that in the Kalleśvara, but a greater ornamental effect has been introduced by a rich motif which takes the shape of a small pilaster surmounted by a turret and arched over by a cusped scroll of the most beautiful character rising from two slender pilasters at the flanks. The wide projecting eave, with a straight-edged incline, around the open pillared hall, is not only a useful feature but also a notable innovation in as much as it becomes a characteristic feature of the later development of the style.

Of this formative phase there are many other examples in different parts of the Chalukyan territories. The Mukṭēśvara temple at Chauddadampur on the eastern boundary of the Dharwar District is a neat little structure that indicates a further advance

S. R.—40
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

in the development of the style (Text Fig. 43). The wide eaves over the porches are now double curved in outline, and in conformity with this a smaller eave of the same character runs around the rest of the building. Such eaves henceforth constitute regular features in the temple scheme. It is interesting to note that the pillared porches of the mandapa are enclosed by kakshiisanas, evidently a northern feature. The ornaments on the exterior walls are far richer and bolder and a greater amount of surface decoration is applied to the mouldings of the plinth. The tower has attained the typical Chalukyan form. Thestoreayed stages, now considerably reduced, are fairly obscured by the exuberant plastic detail that covers the surfaces. The niche-facets in the middle are fully emphasized and, repeated one above the other, simulate more completely the vertical band that characterizes the northern sikhara. The domical crowning member "sits closer down upon the top" and has a double flexion with a horizontal band in the middle.

Of the same formative phase as the Muktesvara are the temples of Siddheshvara at Haveri (Text Fig. 44), Someśvara at Harahalli and Siddharāmeśvara at Niralgi, all in the Dharwar District. Among these the Someśvara with its triple towers has an impressive appearance, and the three, along with the Muktesvara at Chauddadampur, might belong to the close of the eleventh or the beginning of the twelfth century A.D.

In the twelfth century A.D. the style reaches its maturity and supreme expression. This phase is illustrated by a fairly large number of temples in different parts of the Chalukya country. One of the most significant temples that illustrate the style at its best is that of Kāśīviśvesvara at Lakkundi, which in its present shape dates from the latter half of the twelfth century A.D. It is a double-shrined temple, the second shrine facing the principal complex axially on the east (Text Fig. 45). The storeyed arrangement of the tower is, no doubt, there, though a superabundance of decorative detail almost masks the horizontality of its conception. Moreover, in the centre of each side the diminishing repeats of trefoil niches up the ascent of the tower emphasize strongly a vertical urge just in the manner of the prominent vertical bands of the northern sikhara. From the base to the top the entire exterior surface is encrusted with rich ornamental detail, bold in design and exuberant in expression. The deep and crisp plinth mouldings produce a sparkling effect of light and shade. On the walls may be seen the usual motifs characteristic of the style, but treated with a sense of volume and depth unknown in the monuments of the
earlier phase. The embellishment of the tower, rich as well as vari­
ed, is far more delicate and refined, while the decorative treatment
of the doorways excels anything seen up till now. Each doorway
(Fig. 83) is a perfect example of delicate and intricate chiselling,
and some of the bands are so undercut as to resemble fine filigree
or lace work. The temple of Kāśivīśeśvara, on this account, has
been regarded as one of the most eminent productions of decora­
tive architecture. There might have been a certain idea of volup­tuousness in its exuberant ornamentation, but the scheme, as a
whole, is perfectly balanced so as to express the style at the zenith
of its power.

An equally effective production, expressive of the high water­
mark of Chālukyan style, may be seen in the temple of Mahādeva
at Ittagi197 in the Hyderabad State, built in A.D. 1112. It forms
the central scheme of a number of structures raised on a terraced
platform, and is the only one now in a fairly tolerable state of
preservation. The inscription recording its erection styles the
temple as devālaya-chakravarti or ‘the chakravarti among temples’,
and this title seems to be fully deserved. In the balanced and
harmonious proportions of its parts, in the orderly disposition of its
exuberant ornamentation, all elegantly wrought, the Mahādeva
temple at Ittagi may rank as one of the best examples of its class.
Cousens describes it as “probably the finest temple in the Kanarese
districts after Halabid in Malsur”.199

The Mahādeva temple at Ittagi is larger in dimensions than
the Kāśivīśeśvara at Lakkundi and its decoration seems to be even
more elaborate than that of the latter. It consists of the usual com­
plements of the sanctum, the vestibule and the maṇḍapa, together
with another open hypostyle hall in front, aligned axially from west
to east (Text Fig. 46; Fig. 81). The hypostyle with its original range
of sixty-eight pillars199 of varied and complicated designs is itself an
imposing conception. A central complement of four pillars of the
most bewildering pattern supports a coffered ceiling, the triangular
space left at each corner being worked out into a rich fretwork of con­
volved arabesque of the most spirited workmanship. A small anta­
rāla with the figure of the bull connects this hypostyle with the maṇ­
ḍapa which is of the usual design with two approach porticos on the
two opposite sides. The carving of the doorway is, again, a marvel of
decorative workmanship. With regard to the ornamental work on
the pillars and door-frames Meadows Taylor200 says, “no chased
work in silver or gold could possibly be finer”, and this description
is fully deserved. The exterior walls of the maṇḍapa as well as of
the vimāna (Fig. 82) carry the usual decorative scheme, bold and
richly wrought, and the tower above is, again, a rich fretwork of sculptured designs. The rich and elaborately worked trefoil repeats successively one above the other, the soft and graceful curves in the contours and the breaking up of the prominent roll mouldings of the earlier temples by deep cusps with ornamental repeats are all designed to accentuate the verticality of an otherwise horizontal conception. In the appearance of this tower, superbly conceived and delicately wrought, one may recognise the nearest approach to that of the Hoysala temple which represents the ripest manifestation of Chalukyan style.

Among the many temples of this mature phase of the style a few other monuments deserve special mention. One is the temple of Mallikārjuna at Kuruvatti in the district of Bellary (Text Figs. 47 and 48). It consists of the sanctum, the connecting vestibule and the mandapa, forming a compact group, together with a large pavilion for Nandi, which is a separate structure, placed axially in front. The pillars in the interior of the mandapa as well as in the portico are richly patterned in the usual manner, but particularly interesting are the boldly carved leaning figure brackets on the upper parts of the pillars supporting the architraves above. Such flying brackets had also been employed in other temples, but they have mostly been removed. At Gadag (Dhārwar District) there is, again, an important group of temples, mostly in a mutilated state. Of these, the temple of Sarasvati is interesting as showing the plan of an inner sanctum within a covered ambulatory, this being the only occurrence of such a plan among the Chalukyan temples. The temple of Somesvara (Text Fig. 49; Fig. 84) is also an interesting one. In the division of its wall section into two stages, in the introduction of the figure sculpture as a decorative element of the wall, and, to a certain extent, also in the treatment of the plinth mouldings it supplies definite points of contact between the Chalukyan temple and its offshoot, the Hoysala.

The only specimen of a star-shaped plan within the Chālukya territory is the temple of Dodda Basappa or Dodda Vasavanna (Fig. 85) at Dambal (Dhārwar District), and in this respect it supplies another point of contact with the Hoysala temple, in which the stellate plan is the usual one. The principle governing the stellate plan has been discussed more than once. A square rotating round a central axis and stopping at regular intervals in course of the rotation would result in a plan of foliated points, like those of star, touching the periphery of a circle at points equidistant from one another. This plan, wherever found, is characteristic of the sanctum only, but here at Dambal not only
the sanctuary, but also its attached *mandapa*, is star-shaped in plan. The former is designed by the square stopping at six equidistant points and the latter at eight. The result would be twenty-four foliated angles in the plan of the sanctum and thirty-two in that of the *mandapa*, the two giving an outline, as Cousens says,204 "of a serrated 8" (Text Fig. 50). But because of the junction of the two components and the introduction of the two entrances in the latter on the south and the east, the former has only nineteen and the latter only twenty-one foliated angles. The angles of the plan, carried up the walls and continued on the tower, result in a sparkling effect of light and shade along with an accentuation of the verticality of the conception. The temple seems to have been the furthest from the Dravida conception which forms the starting point in the development of the Chalukyan temple, and if the intermediate stages had not been known, it would have been difficult to establish its link with the prototype. The storeyed stages have now been transformed into mere string-courses, but the serrated angles effectively break up the horizontal conception with the prominent vertical offsets that are carried right up to the top of the tower. The topmost member of the tower, now much compressed, has also the serrated indentations, in conformity with the plan of the lower section, and looks not unlike the ribbed *amalaka-sila* of the northern *sikhara*. The predominantly angular scheme may likewise be recognised in the treatment of the pillars of the southern portico. The date of the temple is uncertain, but from its style it may be placed somewhere about the latter half of the twelfth century A.D. In the Dodda Basappa temple at Dambal we have perhaps an extreme manifestation of the Chalukyan temple which already seems to have lost its early vigour and tends to become insipid.

The Chalukyan style reaches its highest development and the peak of plastic ornamentation in the Mysore territory under the Hoysalas of Dvarasamudra. There are nearly eighty temples in the Hoysala mode in different parts of this territory, and their link with the Chalukyan temple is clear and obvious. The scheme of the Hoysala temple is, on the whole, similar to that of the Chalukyan. Multiple shrines grouped round a central *mandapa* constitute a favourite composition in the Hoysala modes and with this the Chalukyan temple is also familiar. What the Hoysala builders did was to elaborate the design to the extreme, as apart from double and triple-shrined compositions there may be seen also quadruple and even quintuple-shrined temples. In the grouping of a number of shrines in a single composition the Hoysala mode cannot, hence, be said to be distinct205 from the Chalukyan. For the sanctuaries the Hoysala builders usually preferred a stellate plan, and of this the Dodda
The struggle for empire

Basappa temple at Dambal in the Chalukyan style furnishes a notable instance. The stellate plan, as noted above, is also met with occasionally in several of the regional expressions of the Nāgar temple style. The typical Hoysala temple usually stands upon a high and wide basement with its sides aligned to those of the building it supports. The wide terrace left around served the purpose of an outer ambulatory, there being none in the interior.

In the architectural treatment of the surfaces the Hoysala temple presents, no doubt, certain divergences, but these divergences result not so much from the practice of an altogether different mode as from an attempt to impart a greater plastic exuberance to the walls. The lofty plinth, sometimes nine or ten feet in height, is divided by a number of prominent horizontal bands with exquisitely carved designs, animal as well as floral, each band being separated from the next by a deep recessed shadow. Friezes of elephants, horses, grotesques, birds, narrative panels, etc., occasionally alternating with floral arabesques, occupy these bands, the place of each being defined by a specific convention. The beginnings of such a treatment of the plinth may be recognised in a few of the eleventh century Chalukyan temples, as noted above, but in the Hoysala temple the bands have increased in number and variety, and are characterised by an amazing plastic exuberance, the like of which has not been met with before.

A continuous cornice or projecting eave around the entire structure terminates the wall section. In the mandapa this section is in a single stage and is occupied by kakshānas with perforated grilles above, each between moulded pillars regularly spaced. In the vimāna the wall surface is divided in two stages by a lesser cornice. The upper stage, patterned by pilasters and mural shrines, follows a conception already established in the Chalukyan temple. The treatment of the lower one signifies a notable development. This stage is occupied by a continuous frieze of sculptures, representing divinities, apsarasas, etc., each under a foliated canopy. Each is an independent element, exquisitely carved with a minute elaboration of detail, and can scarcely be regarded as an architectural piece. In the Hoysala temple the vimāna walls supply a vast sculptured panorama of Hindu mythology in all its manifold details. It is to be noted that such a treatment of the vimāna walls, apart from the plastic exuberance which is typically Hoysala, seems to have been anticipated in the Somesvara temple at Gadag mentioned above.

The tower of the Hoysala temple is, no doubt, derived, in the ultimate analysis, from the Drāva, the horizontal tiers of mouldings, diminishing as they go up, being clearly reminiscent of the storeyed
stages of the latter. At the apex the much compressed parasol-shaped member may also be recognised to have its prototype in the dome-shaped stūpakā of the Drāviḍa vimāna. At the same time the Chālukyan tendency of emphasising the vertical aspect is equally evident in the chases of the stellate plan below being carried up and leading to a fluted texture of no mean artistic beauty. The horizontal and the vertical systems that make up the tower may seem to have balanced each other; but the succession of miniature turret-like motifs on each fluted chase registers an emphasis on a vertical tendency. An extreme variegation of the principal compositional elements by numerous facets, string-courses and the like, though exquisite as specimens of applied art, eventually results in a dissolution of every purposeful form and outline. Moreover, compared to the horizontal dimensions the Hoysala temple seems to have a much too low elevation. But this apparent defect is, to a certain extent, minimised by its situation within an enclosed court which prevents its contrast with larger objects. Within the court the temple has the appearance of a richly carved casket in sandal wood or ivory, and in works of this kind the Mysore craftsmen had been justly famous for centuries past.

A study of the typical features of the Hoysala temple leaves no doubt as to its being an offshoot of the Chālukyan. It illustrates a rich and exuberant expression of those tendencies which characterise the Chālukyan movement. Nevertheless, the Hoysala temple fails to impress the visitor architecturally. The general idea conveyed by a temple of the Hoysala mode is that it is the work, not of a builder, but of a sculptor. The amount of decorative work and sculpture distributed over the surfaces of a single temple is enormous. The Hoysalesvara temple at Halebid, one of the latest in the series, will sufficiently illustrate this. Each decorative band of the plinth extends to a length of over 700 feet, the lowest alone having as many as 2,000 figures of elephants in various attitudes and moods. And to realise more fully the enormity of the task involved one has to note that there are nine such bands constituting the plinth (cf. Fig. 86). In the lower stage of the vimāna the frieze of sculptures, each of more than half life-size (cf. Fig. 87), occupies a length of some 400 feet. The upper stage of the vimāna walls, the cornices, and the maṇḍapa with its richly patterned pillars, kākṣśānas and perforated screens are likewise covered with an exuberant incrustation of plastic detail. Every work is deeply undercut and intricately chiseled with a dexterity that seems to be unrivalled. Technical skill apart, one wonders when he realises, perhaps with a sense of awe, what stupendous labour and patience have been expended in the production of a single monument. It is not without a sense of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

appropriateness that the Hoysala temple has been described as "sculptors’ architecture". As Percy Brown says, "these Mysore temples owe their character more to the sculptor than to the mason. Gone is the structural basis, the fundamental framework evolved through the experience of the previous workers in the field, and in its place is an arrangement of manifold planes, projections and courses of masonry, each intricately carved and beautiful in itself, even beautiful in aggregation, but not, as a whole, amounting to a work of significant architecture in the full sense of the word."

There is a large number of temples in the Mysore territory illustrating this sculptors’ architecture. Many of the more important conceptions are without any superstructures, which were either never completed or have fallen down. In most cases it is the substructures, i.e. the plinths and the walls, which alone remain. These with their amazing display of sculptural exuberance enhance in a greater measure the plastic character of the style. The most typical and well-known examples which enable one to have a complete picture of the style are the Kesava temple at Somnathpur, the Chenna Kesava at Belur and the Hoysalesvara at Halebid.

Of these the first was erected about A.D. 1268 and is one of the latest of the series, but it is still in a perfect state and illustrates the Hoysala mode in its full maturity. It has a triple-shrined composition and is situated within a quadrangular court with a cloister of cells all around. The temple (Text Fig. 51; Fig. 88) stands on a high terrace and, with three shrines arranged on three sides of a central mandapa which is projected in front as an open hypostyle, it assumes the shape of a cross, the greatest length and breadth respectively being 87 and 83 feet. Each of the shrines is of a stellate plan, the wide terrace below also following its indentations. Each of the shrines is surmounted by a tower, also stellate in shape, which rises to a height of 30 feet. The dimensions of the building are, no doubt, moderate, but all parts are perfectly balanced in their proportions and completely in accord with one another. The effect of the whole, set within a cloistered court, is elegant as well as pleasing. The fundamental scheme and the disposition and embellishment of its parts are in the characteristic Hoysala manner, already described.

The Chenna Kesava temple at Belur is a much larger conception. Here we have a number of temples and other accessory structures enclosed within a walled court, measuring 390 feet by 425 feet and approached by two gateways in the eastern wall. The principal temple, that of Chenna Kesava, dates from A.D. 1117 and is situated in the centre, with other temples and structures distributed around it without any symmetrical arrangement. Nevertheless,
on account of their rich embellishment the assemblage on the whole looks picturesque. The Chenna Kesava consists of a sanctum of stellate plan and a pillared mandapa, having deeply recessed sides, with a connecting vestibule between the two, the whole being raised on a substantial terrace following the indentations of the complex in all its details (Text Fig. 52). Both inside and out there is a rich overlay of ornamental detail; but with the tower over the sanctum gone, the appearance cannot be said to be architecturally much impressive.

The Hoysalesvara temple at Halebidū has been regarded as the "highest achievement of the Chalukya-Hoysala school of architecture". Halebid or Halebidu, now a straggling village in the Hassan District of Mysore, represents the site of the ancient city of Dvārasamudra, the capital seat of the Hoysala kingdom for nearly two centuries. The ancient city is marked by the walls that once enclosed it; but there is nothing within, except the remains of a number of temples, Brahmanical as well as Jain, which now constitute the only records of its former splendour and intense religious activity. One of these was the Kedāresvara, perhaps the 'chapel royal' of the Hoysala kings. A drawing of the temple, made in the beginning of the nineteenth century A.D. and now in the Mackenzie collection (Library of the Commonwealth Relations Office, London), shows the building as complete. Fergusson described it as "a gem of Indian architecture" and had deplored the state of utter neglect which left it a prey to rank vegetation that had already begun to eat into its core. In spite of his warning and recommendation for protective measures, nothing practically was done to save this important monument of antiquity.

The Hoysalesvara (Fig. 89) is the principal temple in this city of ruins. It was, no doubt, a grand conception, but much of its architectural character has been impaired by the total absence of its superstructure which had probably never been completed. It is usually assigned to the middle of the twelfth century A.D. But the style of its elaborate plastic work already shows a certain loss of early quality and vigour marking a decline in the tradition. This might indicate a rather late date for the beginning of the conception which remained incomplete, the work having probably been stopped with the fall of the kingdom in the early years of the fourteenth century A.D.

In double-shrined temples it is the usual practice to place the two shrines facing each other with the mandapa connecting the two. But the scheme of the Hoysalesvara consists of two temples of the same dimensions, situated side by side and joined to each other by
their adjoining transepts (Text Fig. 53). Cut into two halves, each would be a complete structure with a sanctum and a pillared mandapa with an intermediate vestibule between the two and a detached pillared pavilion in front. Each sanctum is of a stellate plan and the attached mandapa has recessed sides, the two being skilfully joined by a substantial buttress on either side. The entire scheme is raised over a wide terrace closely following the indentations of the elaborate plan above. The pavilion in front of the southern sanctuary is a more ambitious and elaborate structure. That of the northern is much smaller in dimensions and simpler in disposition. It is in these frontal adjuncts that one may recognise some lack of harmony in an otherwise balanced configuration, and the question remains whether these frontal pavilions were parts of the original conception.

The effect of the interior with closely set pillars of overwrought detail is one of congestion, if not of confusion. But the exterior elevation (Fig. 89) has certain redeeming features in spite of the exuberance of plastic treatment. The different sections along the vertical axis are beautifully adjusted to one another in their harmonious proportions. The numerous vertical chases, textured by horizontal sculptured bands and friezes of plastic shapes (cf. Figs. 86 and 87), all deeply cut with minute elaboration of detail, lend to the exterior a variegated effect of light and shade. The plastic quality, however, with signs of tautness and stylisation, is not of very high order. Still, the treatment is good enough for effect. An “unending wealth of relief work”, says Percy Brown,213 “was distributed over the exterior surface of this temple, but it is the incredible intricacy with which each detail of this extensive conception was treated that is so overwhelming, filling the spectator with astonishment. In the marvellous minuteness of its technique alone, there is no thought of time, space or limitations of any kind. . . . The temple at Halabid is the supreme climax of Indian architecture in its most prodigal plastic manifestations.”

5. Exotic Types

Apart from buildings of the three styles, described above, there are types of structures which are either entirely exotic in shape or form, or represent developments that are quite significant. In the secluded valley of Kashmir Lalitādiya Muktāpiḍa (c. A.D. 724-760), one of the most famous of the Kashmir monarchs, inaugurated a golden era of building activity. The earliest monuments of this phase belong to Buddhism, and of these, the group of buildings at Parihāṣapurapura—a stūpa, a monastery and a chaitya—was conceived
ART

in imposing dimensions. Each of these buildings reproduces the characteristic form of the type and calls for little comment.

The most prolific activity of this classical phase is recognised in the erection of Brahmanical temples. The type, once established, remained uniform throughout. The typical Kashmir temple is peripteral in composition. The temple is situated within a quadrangular court enclosed by a peristyle of cells and approached by one or three porticos. The portico itself is a monumental composition, and the peristyle a broad and imposing conception. This kind of conception is also noticed in India proper, and in Kashmir this composition might have been derived from the Buddhist establishments. But apart from this, the Kashmir temple has a special character of its own which excludes it from the general course of Indian architectural movement, as outlined above. To a certain extent, the temple in Kashmir has a distinctly un-Indian appearance, and this is particularly emphasised by its pillars, the treatment of wall surface, and the elevation of its superstructure. It has a double pyramidal roof obviously derived from the usual wooden roofs common in Kashmir. There is a triangular pediment enclosing a trefoil niche on each of the three sides with a similar pediment over the doorway in front, the pediments being repeated on each stage of the pyramidal roof. The pillars are fluted and surmounted by capitals of the quasi-Doric order. Another speciality is the ceiling of the roof, either of wood or of stone, which takes the form of a lantern formed by overlapping intersecting squares. These features lend a distinctive character to the Kashmir temple and betray certain extra-Indian inspiration. One of the earliest conceptions, and perhaps the most impressive even in its ruins, is the celebrated Sun temple of Martaṇḍī (Text Figs. 54 and 55), built by Lalitāditya, and this appears to have been the model for the subsequent ones. Other typical temples may be found at Vāṅgāth, Avantipura (Avantīsvāmi and Avantīsvāmi, the latter (Text Fig. 56), like the Martaṇḍī, constituting another touchstone of the type), Pātan, Payār, Bunār, and Purāṇādhiśthāna or Pāndrethān. The type was confined within the limits of Kashmir. Its influence on the design of the Gop temple in Kathiawār cannot be proved, as noted above.

In the other extremity of Northern India the excavations at Pāhārpur (Rajshāhi District, North Bengal) have laid bare the remains of a temple which some scholars declare to be of a type entirely unknown to Indian archaeology. The colossal structure, measuring 356' 6" from north to south and 314' 3" from east to west, occupies nearly the centre of the immense quadrangle forming the monastery, the far-famed Somapura mahāśāhāra of old. The
ground-plan\textsuperscript{216} consists of a gigantic square cross with angles of projection between the arms (Text Fig. 57). The temple (Fig. 90) rose in several terraces, with a circumambulatory gallery, enclosed on the outer side by a parapet wall around the monument, in each of the two upper terraces. Access to the first and second terraces was obtained by the extensive staircase provided on the north.

This apparently complex plan becomes very simple when the monument is examined and studied from the top downwards. Dikshit\textsuperscript{217} appears to be right in observing that "the plan of the Pāhārpur temple was the result of a pre-meditated development of a single central unit, in which future expansion was in a sense predetermined in a vertical direction, that is in the setting up of new floors, etc. but not laterally". A hollow square pile in the centre, shooting high up above the terraces, provides the pivot round which the entire plan of this stupendous monument has been conceived. The walls of this lofty central unit form a sharp square, and in order, most probably, to relieve this monotony, provision was made in the second upper terrace for a projection, consisting of a chamber and an ante-room, on each face, leaving out a portion of the whole length of the square at either corner. This arrangement resulted in a cruciform shape with one projecting angle between the arms of the cross. The circumambulatory passage with the parapet wall was made to run parallel to the outline of this plan. A similar rectangular projection on each side was also added on the first, i.e. the next lower, terrace thus variegating the plan still more. The basement conformed to the alignment of the first terrace structure with the result that the angular projections in the plan of the first terrace and that of the basement were three each between the arms of the cross, to which an additional projection was added by the staircase landing just in the middle of the northern arm. An enclosure wall, strictly conforming to the basement plan, with only a slight deviation near the main staircase, runs round the monument. There are reasons to believe that this complete plan from the basement to the top, along with the different component elements, belongs to a single period of construction, and the evidences of later repairs, additions and alterations did not fundamentally affect the general arrangement and plan. An earlier prototype of the Pāhārpur temple has been reported to have been discovered at Lauriya Nandangarh in North Bihār.\textsuperscript{218} But so far as can be gathered from the published reports and reproductions, the angles of the Nandangarh monument appear to be purely decorative and to have originated from an entirely different conception. The disposition of the angles is different at Nandangarh, and every re-entrant
angle has been strengthened with a buttress. The peculiar arrange-
ment of the projections of rectangular structures round the base-
ment at each lower level, which resulted in the projecting and re-
entrant angles that we see at Pāhārpur, is absent at Lauriya
Nandangarh. The Pāhārpur monument may be said to have its own
distinctive characteristics and no exact parallel has so far been found
elsewhere in India. It should be noted that the existing basement
of a later structure within the monastic quadrangle219 at Pāhārpur
seems to be a close replica of the main temple. Here the plan is
more perfect and symmetrical with the provision of approach-steps
in all the directions, instead of in the north only as we have in the
main temple.

It has been suggested by Dikshit220 that the main shrine of this
colossal edifice was situated at the top, i.e. on the third terrace, and
consisted of a square cela with a circumambulatory verandah all
round. The evidence, now before us, is, however, against any such
inference, and in view of the extremely mutilated condition of the
monument at the top it is difficult to follow Dikshit’s line of argu-
ment on this point. If such had been the case, the grand staircase
on the north ought to have extended beyond the second terrace to
reach the third. There are definite indications, however, that it ter-
minated with the second terrace and no access to the third terrace,
if there had been any, had been provided for in the original monu-
ment. The hollow square pile forming the central unit of this stu-
pendous structure exhibits a brick-paved floor inside “roughly at the
level” of the second terrace with its projected chambers. But no
access to this inner square from the chambers has been found, nor
is there any evidence that there was originally such an access which
had been blocked up at a later period. Under the circumstances,
the paved platform in the centre of the hollow square, which had
been strengthened by a deep soling of bricks and several courses of
offsets, does not appear to have served any function, except to add
to the solidity of the foundation of the lofty walls of the central
square. So far as the arrangement of the temple goes the sanctu-
ary could have neither been situated at the top nor inside the cen-
tral square pile.

Regarding the plan of the temple Dikshit has made one plausi-
ble suggestion that a four-faced (Chaturmukha, Chaumukha) Jain
temple, which existed very likely at the site, might have furnished
the barest model221 of the present structure. This is a pertinent
suggestion which is worth more serious consideration than has been
given to it. In this connection we should also take into account a
particular type of temples at Pagan in Burma,222 which may be re-
garded as an adaptation of the Chaumukha shrines of the Jains. The type represents a square temple with four figures of Buddha, set in recessed niches, on the four faces of a solid masonry pile standing in the centre of a surrounding corridor or corridors and approached by entrance vestibules on one or more of its faces. The Pagan temples seem to offer a striking analogy to the plan of the second terrace of the Pâhârpur temple, and may be compared with profit for the many problems that surround this unique Indian monument. The walls of the central square pile at Pâhârpur do not exhibit any evidence of being provided with niches, but, bearing in mind the analogy of the Pagan temples and of the Chaumukha shrines, a suggestion that images were installed in the ante-rooms on the second terrace does not appear to be quite improbable. It is to be noted that these ante-rooms still bear traces of brick platforms abutting on the walls behind, and these were probably intended as pedestals of the images that were once set on the four sides of the central square pile.

The walls of the temple were built of well-burnt bricks, laid in mud mortar, and considering the materials used, it is remarkable that after a lapse of so many centuries parts of it are still standing to a height of about 70 feet above the ground level. The plainness of the walls is relieved on the outer face by projecting cornices of ornamental bricks and bands of terracotta plaques, set in recessed panels, which run in a single row all around the basement and in double rows around the circumambulatory passage in the upper terraces. In contrast with these terracotta plaques, the lower part of the basement is embellished with a number of stone sculptures in high relief, which are almost wholly Brahmanical, but extraordinarily varied in style.

The main fabric of the temple belongs to a single period of construction, most likely to the time of Dharmapala who was responsible for the foundation of the monastery around it in the latter part of the eighth or the beginning of the ninth century A.D. The temple has been exhumed in an extremely fragmentary state and the form of the superstructure, the method of roofing, and other details are difficult to ascertain now. Marshall assumes the temple to have been a “garbha-chaitya” or a hollow pagoda. Such was also the view of R. D. Banerji who described the main shrine of the temple as consisting of a “hollow-roofed chamber”. But hollow-roofed shrines are extremely rare, if not unknown, and it is reasonable to infer that the temple was capped by some sort of superstructure. The terraced arrangement of the structure would appropriately suggest a roof rising in receding tiers over the vaults spanning the different
The square masonry pile in the centre, on the analogy of the Pagan temples, may be said to have supported a curvilinear sikhara as the crowning element of this colossal edifice. This sort of roof and superstructure suits not only the analogy of the Pagan temples, but also the evidence of shrines shown in relief in East Indian sculptures or sketched in miniature in East Indian manuscript illuminations. At Pagan the central pile is solidly designed. But at Pāhārpur, probably to reduce the weight of the stupendous building and to guard against resultant sinking, it was left hollow, though sufficient stability for the accumulating weight, as the monument rose up, has been ensured in the enormous girth of each of the four walls.

The temple type at Pāhārpur has been frequently described as entirely unknown to Indian archaeology. The Indian literature on architecture, however, often refers to a type of building, known as sarvatobhadra, which should be a square shrine with four entrances at the cardinal points and with an ante-chamber on each side (chatuhsāla-griha). It should have uninterrupted galleries all around, should have five storeys and sixteen corners and many beautiful turrets and spires. The temple at Pāhārpur, as now excavated, approximates in general to the sarvatobhadra type as described in Indian texts on architecture. It is a many-terraced temple, each terrace approximating to the height of a storey, consisting, perhaps, of a votive shrine in each of the four projected faces and surrounded by a continuous circumambulatory passage in the second terrace, with further projections and passages at the next lower terrace to extend the building commensurate to its height, a measure that results in so many projecting and re-entrant angles of the ground plan. Thus in Indian temple architecture the type does not appear to have been quite unknown. It is only the disappearance of the other examples that has been responsible for the view that the Pāhārpur type is a novel one in Indian temple architecture. The Śāstras enjoin such a type for the kings and the gods, and if our reconstruction of the elevation of the temple is accepted, a fair popularity of the type in Eastern India is evidenced by representations of this type of shrines in the sculptures and paintings hailing from this region. Many of the mounds in Bengal, that can still be traced as rising in terraces, may perhaps reveal, on excavation, other remains of such a type of temple. The ruins of a temple, generally similar to the Pāhārpur plan, but of much smaller dimensions, have accidentally been laid bare at Birat (Rangpur District, North Bengal). From the standpoint of elevation, with a tiered roof of several stages surmounted by a curvilinear tower as the crowning superstructure, the Pāhārpur temple seems to have combined two distinctive fea-
tures of two of the prominent types of Indian temple architecture, the Bhadra and the Rekha as they are known in Orissa, and may, for the sake of convenience, be described as the Bhadra-Rekha type of temple. From the representations of similar temples in the sculptures and paintings, the type may be taken to have been characteristic of Eastern India.

The importance of the type of temple laid bare at Paharpur in the history of Indian colonial art and architecture in South-East Asia is immense. Unfortunately, it is not possible here to enter into a detailed discussion of this question. It is sufficient to say that this type of temple in Eastern India profoundly influenced the architectural efforts of Further India, specially Burma and Java, the origins and associations of which had been taxing the archaeologists since the time of James Fergusson. The square temples at Pagan in Burma present remarkable points of similarity with the Paharpur temple. The points of divergence between the two are also many, and though the shape of the Paharpur monument might have afforded a possible scope for imitation by the Burmese builders, there must be recognised a fundamental difference in the general conception and arrangement of the Pagan temple as a whole. Dikshit refers to Chandi Loro Jonggrang (Fig. 91) and Chandi Sewu in Central Java as offering the nearest approximation to the plan and superstructure of the Paharpur temple. "The general view of the former", Dikshit writes, "with angular projections, truncated pyramidal shape and horizontal lines of decoration reproduces the prominent characteristics of the Indian monument." The plan of the main temple of the Chandi Sewu also strikingly resembles the plan of the second terrace of the Paharpur temple. To this may be added further the terraced elevation and unbroken circumambulatory galleries in both the Javanese monuments, exactly as we find them at Paharpur. The Paharpur temple belongs clearly to an earlier period, and the close connection between Eastern India and the Archipelago is an established fact. In view, therefore, of the closer similarity between the Paharpur temple on the one hand and the two Javanese ones on the other, "the possibility is clearly suggested of the Indian monument being the prototype."

II. SCULPTURE

1. GENERAL REVIEW

A. Growth of Regional Schools

The eighth and ninth centuries saw the consolidation of that process of conscious regionalism that had made itself felt already in the seventh century. For a whole millennium, roughly from about the
ART

third century B.C. to about the seventh century A.D., Indian art admits, despite local variations due to local tastes and visions, of a common denominator at each different stage of evolution and fulfilment. Towards the end of the seventh and beginning of the eighth century A.D. the regional spirit gradually asserts itself. The classical tradition of an all-India art lingers for one or two centuries, but the regional spirit gradually gets the better of the Indian. This regional outlook reacts on other aspects of culture as well. The local scripts and dialects begin slowly to take shape, with a strong accent on the autochthonous traits, during the next two centuries, and it is in this period that we have to seek for the genesis of all major scripts and languages of mediaeval and modern India.

B. Mediaeval Trend

Plasticity of the fully rounded and modelled form had been the most significant characteristic both of classical Indian sculpture and painting. A movement now starts towards summarising the rounded volume in the direction of flat surface and linear angles. Swelling and smooth round lines develop sharp edges; compositions tend to become linearised with emphasis on sharp angles, horizontals, verticals, and diagonals; and curves that had so long been convex turn into the concave. Already in some of the reliefs of the fifth and sixth centuries (for example, in a few fifth century reliefs from Nagari, Chitor; sixth century Dhamek stûpa frieze of abstract geometric patterns; early seventh century relief on a bronze bowl illustrated by Coomaraswamy), one witnesses the presence of certain of these traits. But sculpture being essentially and intrinsically three-dimensional, and plasticity of the fully rounded and modelled form having been the most important exponent of the classical tradition, it resisted for long the intrusion of these 'mediaeval' elements. But painting, which is essentially two-dimensional, offered much less inherent resistance to the new conception of form. In the ninth century wall-paintings at Ellora we find these traits asserting themselves so emphatically and exuberantly as to suggest past practice over a considerable period of time. Here the gliding modelled lines are replaced by sharp and thin lines, modulated curves by sharp and pointed angles, and roundly modelled surfaces by flat coloured spaces. It did not take long for sculptural art to be touched by this new art form which evidently opened up a new field for further exploration. Both in painting and sculpture (mainly in terracotta) this new conception of form had far-reaching results in store. How they were registered through the ages will be evident from a consideration of West-Indian and Râjput sculptures.
of the tenth-twelfth centuries, West-Indian, mainly Gujarati, book and textile illustrations of the twelfth-fifteenth centuries, Burmese painting of the eleventh-thirteenth centuries, early Rajput miniatures of the sixteenth-seventeenth centuries, Bengal terracottas and wood-carving of the seventeenth-nineteenth centuries, and certain Deccani and Orissan miniatures of the seventeenth-nineteenth centuries, to mention only a few.

The 'mediaeval' trend was not valid for the whole of India, nor was its impression registered everywhere at the same time. It was most visible in Western India, namely Gujarat, Rajputana, Central India and certain Himalayan tracts. But, despite isolated instances of earlier date, the mediaeval conception of form does not become general in these regions before the tenth century, and then it grows with time within the regions just referred to. So far as sculpture is concerned, other regions of India, mainly Eastern India, Deccan, the Far South, remain more or less untouched by this conception and draw in the main from the rich heritage of the classical tradition.

C. Cult-images and Canonisation

The pivot of early mediaeval sculpture is the human figure, both male and female, in the form of gods and goddesses and their attendants. Such gods and goddesses were there in the preceding centuries as well, when their iconography came to be formally fixed according to basic principles of mathematical proportion, balance, and other relations on the one hand, and laksha and lāṅchhanas required by the myths, legends, and ideologies of respective cults on the other. This fixation of the iconography of cult-images—whether in the garbha-grīha or on the walls of temples—was the result as much of creative artistic experience as of the integration of the religious experience by the artist himself. The value of the image during the Gupta and post-Gupta periods does not lie simply in its being an intermediate symbol to help realising an ultimate object; it is realisation itself, both artistically and spiritually, and since it is so, the value is connected with artistic quality as well. What was thus born from within the creative genius came now to be fashioned in strict accordance with minute regulations laid down in the canonical texts. The cult-image was mainly conceived as an object to be used by the devotee to help concentrating his mind for realisation of an ultimate object outside the image itself. The image had thus no inherent relation either with the devotee or with the artist; it existed apart and was identical neither with his inner experience nor with his ultimate object. Such instrumental and intermediary value of
the cult-image conditioned in the main the attitude of the artists, as they usually worked for the devotees who happened to be their patrons. With ever-increasing demands such images had to be turned out in hundreds, and since their value lay solely in the service they rendered as an instrument, they did not call for transference of the artist's creative or spiritual experience into the object of his creation.

In a situation like this, the majority of the cult-images that were meant to be worshipped, especially those that were popular and hence in great demand, namely, Viṣṇu, Śrīva, Umā-Śaiva, Buddha, etc., did not attain a very high degree of artistic excellence. A procession of endless monotony of form uninformed by any inner experience and without any registration of individual creative genius, meets the eye. It is only in rare instances that images were expressions of the artist's creative genius and attained high artistic standards. But such examples are few and far between. Yet, it cannot be denied that the standard of average cult-images of the period maintains a fair level even as objects of art; that they do so was to a great extent due to accumulated knowledge of a high order and inheritance of a rich and prolonged experience on the one hand, and well and correctly laid regulations of mathematical relations, of artistic proportion and balance, and of ritual and iconography on the other. In elasticity and transparency, in illumination and depth of feeling and experience, therefore, early mediaeval sculpture can bear no comparison with that of the classical age to which these qualities belong. Canonisation of past experience—creative and spiritual—ultimately resulted in thinning the experience itself, and a thinned experience, though capable of producing good art, cannot produce great art.

Since the cult-images of early mediaeval art rest on the assured foundations of a regulated and canonised structure of form, it maintains a more or less uniform standard of quality in all art-regions of India. There is hardly any major deviation anywhere, any evidence of a novel experience or any tangent shooting in any new direction. Everywhere the art moves within the limits of established practice and within canonical injunctions; and within each art-province it moves forward along the arrow line of time in more or less uniform pace. Curiously enough, the creative climax of each art-region is not reached at one and the same time all over India, but at different periods. In Bihār and Bengal it is reached in the ninth and tenth centuries; in Orissa in the twelfth and thirteenth; in Central India in the tenth and eleventh; in Rājputāna in the tenth; in Gujarāt in the eleventh; and in the Far South in the tenth. 
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

centuries. It is in the Deccan alone that the story is one of increasing torpor and petrifaction; indeed, Deccan ceases to be a sculptural province after the eighth century.

Since the image is an object to help concentration of the mind, it faces the devotee full and square, and its attributes, flexions, and attitudes are all gathered on the surface, so as to draw the devotee's eyes straight on them and fill his mind with its entire and total presence. Whether the image is a relief in various grades or worked in the round, it is always conceived and executed in term of the surface as well as of the vertical plane. In seated and standing figures the vertical direction is obvious, but even in reclining images the emphasis is more on the verticality than on the horizontal rest. The attendant deities or pārvā-devatās, whether accompanying the main image in the sanctum or appearing separately in the niches of the outer walls of temples, are also treated on the same principle as those of the cult-images themselves; in rare instances there is a relaxation of canonical and iconographic injunctions. They are also relaxed where minor deities like dikpālas are concerned.

D. Non-iconic Figure Sculptures

A large part of the art of these centuries is primarily religious, and whatever secular themes are handled and find place on the outer walls of the temples are accepted as serving the needs of a life religious in aim and inspiration. It therefore reflects inevitably the experience of past centuries as well as of contemporary life; not the experience of any individual but the integrated experience of the cults and communities themselves. It is not the cult-images alone that have well-established types which are hardly ever transformed by any peculiar personal artistic experience, but other figures also conform to more or less standardised types within each art-province, and hardly reveal any personal attitude or experience of the artist.

The multitude of figures relate themselves to a large variety of motifs and subjects. There are narrative reliefs, legendary illustrations, historical or semi-historical scenes, music and dance scenes, mithūna couples in a variety of poses and attitudes, toilet scenes, domestic scenes and scenes of daily life, array of warriors and animals, drummers, flute-players, etc., the rampant leogryph, and the woman and the tree (śalabhāṭṭikā), among many other motifs. Some of these, as for example, the woman and the tree, the leogryph, the dikpālas, and the mithūna couples are repeated almost ad nau-seam, to impress on the onlooker, it seems, the insistence and ever-
ART

presence of certain fundamental principles of life. Floral and vegetal devices are almost conspicuous by their absence; even when, if at all, they make their appearance, they are formally mechanical and stereotyped, and have hardly any place or importance in the entire composition. They are relegated to the borders or to the background whence they impart but a decorative value to the reliefs. On the other hand, early mediaeval art is rich in abstract geometrical devices, throwing deep light and shade and with lines cut in flat and sharp angles and edges. Such devices are to be found in abundance, endlessly repeated either as border decorations or independently by themselves. Like the floral-vegetal devices, they have hardly any relation with the composition of relief. Animal or human figure, tree or floral-vegetal design, abstract devices, etc. — all receive in the hands of the artist equal share of importance; accent is distributed evenly over all or on none; but since the figure sculpture, mainly human figure, is the pivot round which everything moves, it catches the eye before anything else, not by its accent but by its quantity and recurrence. Grouping of these figures is, however, thoroughly disintegrated; they are juxtaposed in relation to space but are not inherently related with one another by psychological and narrative ties. Figures are shown as if loosely distributed on the surface of the stone; they do not emerge from it and have thus lost the direction of forthcoming from the stone itself. They just exist there against the ground of the stone without any effort, and have to be accepted as granted, as it were. Despite gaiety and movement of the subjects, clever display of light and shade in the reliefs, variety of poses and attitudes in front, profile, and more frequently, three-quarter views, and difficult, agitated, nervous, sensuous, flexions of the body there is no evidence of the dynamic urge of the stone itself to blossom into such forms. The centuries of dynamic becoming of form from unformed depths have been left behind.

By the beginning and middle of the twelfth century, all reserves of experience seem to have completely been drawn upon. Indeed this century witnesses complete disintegration of Indian creativeness. Attention to meticulous details, elaboration of essentials and non-essentials alike, over-ornamentation, and canonisation of basic creative principles led to a sort of mechanical grace, elegance, and perfection, and exhibited superb mastery of the craft itself. But the end of Indian creativeness was already drawing near when Islam finally swept it away. In isolated regions, as in Orissa, the persistence of the classical mind and tradition, the irrepressible urge of the Indian mind to express itself in terms of a living and dynamic naturalism and sensuous love of the physical body with
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

all the ecstasy it is capable of, postponed the disintegration till as late as the thirteenth century (in Konarak, for example). In the South also, it was checked by a new experience of religious emotionalism of a new type of bhakti that flowered in a series of portraits, in metal, of Śaiva and Vaiṣṇava saints till as late as the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.

2. EASTERN INDIA

A. Bihār and Bengal

Generally speaking, East Indian sculptures of the period are carved out of black chlorite (kasha-pāṭha), either of fine or of coarse grain. Metal images are cast in brass or octo-alloy (aṣṭa-dhātu). A few images of gold and silver have also come down to us, and wood-carvings also are not unknown. But, whatever the material, it does not, as a rule, determine the characteristics of art which are common to stone, metal and wood. Little or no concessions are made to the material itself except in such items as ornaments which, in metal, are wrought with more precision and fineness, or the linear direction which, in wood, is shown as following its grain.

The pivot is the human figure, in the full bloom of youth, radiant and vibrant, and combining in itself both spiritual and mundane suggestiveness, frankly physical and sensuous. It is not unlikely that this sensuous suggestiveness of a really spiritual mood was due at the bottom to an inner experience of erotic nature derived from sexual yoga or Tantrik inspirations, doubtless canonised by the respective cults.

Eastern India, comprising Bihār and Bengal (also Mayurbhanj and to a large extent Orissa), carries on, almost uninterrupted and without any intrusion of the mediaeval trend, the classical tradition of vision and experience as well as of form, albeit much thinned and superficial. Indeed, nowhere else did the classical tide and tradition of the past centuries persist with such tenacity and strength and for so long a time. The more important specimens of East Indian sculpture are all cult-images, worked more or less strictly according to formulas enunciated by authors of the dhānas. Nevertheless they maintain, in varying degrees in different regions and at different times, a classical dignity and serenity in their bearing, and yet their charm and sensuousness have a spell of allurement that is at once physical and spiritual.

Eighth century East Indian sculpture may be regarded as belonging to the final phase of classical Indian tradition. The facial and physiognomical type is a Gupta survival. A boldness of com-
position in solid masses, more noticeable in the stone sculptures than in the bronzes, with a tender modelling of heavy bodily forms characterises the work of this transitional phase. In Bihār this tide and tradition persist for a longer period, far into the ninth and tenth centuries, and the Western part of Bengal shares in this persistence for some time yet. In South, North, and Eastern Bengal, however, the regional element of sensuousness and refinement asserts itself with power and strength earlier than was the case in Bihār and West Bengal. A considerable difference in facial features, emotional characteristics, and decorative details is also to be admitted throughout between the products of Bihār and Bengal, but this does not disturb the common denominator to any appreciable extent.

The ashta-dhiitu (made of eight metals) images of Nalanda (cf. stone image of Avalokiteśvara, Fig. 93) and Kurkihār (Fig. 94) mark the creative climax of ninth century plastic vision and idiom. Sturdily conceived, the physiognomical mass is modelled with a soft pliability, and the facial expression is one of tender affection and allure. Even in stone sculptures, despite a metallic ring, the modelling suggests a contented and calm sensuousness. Boldness of plastic conception persists and the swelling of plastic masses is more evident in the metal images than in the stone ones. The ideal art form is one of soft fleshiness within definite outlines.

Out of the soft fleshiness controlled within definite outlines the tenth century evolves a powerfully massive form of the body which is shaped with a disciplined vigour, and shows a conscious strength that seems to swell the outline from within (cf. Fig. 92). In isolated instances this is controlled by a strict discipline even to the extent of petrification of the flesh (Fig. 95), but in most cases it is a soft and tender discipline, and the vigour is spread out on to the surface. This vigour transformed the softness of the fleshy form into mighty roundness. Almost all specimens are moulded into high relief and the trunk limbs are all pregnant with the subdued vigour of a robust form. Throughout the century East India retains this high quality and standard. The modelling still retains its sensuousness, though expressed within a disciplined form. In other respects the tenth century retains, to a large extent, the quality of the ninth. The facial type is the same, equally full, but sometimes a bit longish. The flexions of the body are slightly on the increase, so that we have increasing curves in the outlines of the figures.

The end of the tenth and the beginning of the eleventh century transform the vigour and strength of bodily form into one of cons-
cious gracefulness and elegant mannerism (Fig. 96). Understandably a slender bodily type comes to be favoured. The deep broad outlook of the tenth century becomes somewhat thin and circumscribed, and the elegance of the physiognomical form gradually becomes more evident. The legs have stiffened to a great extent and given up all elasticity, even in postures that suggest movement. The elegance of the modelling and sensitiveness of the facial expression, however, persist throughout.

In the twelfth century the slender body-type and the formal treatment of the preceding century are retained, but the modelling becomes petrified. The sensitiveness of the facial expression disappears and is replaced by a serious heanness; the legs become almost column-like without any elasticity. The relief, in three or four architectonic units, is covered by dense and heavy multitudes of accompanying figures and decorative details which grow more and more sumptuous and elaborate, and ultimately cover the compositional scheme altogether (Fig. 98). Not only the modelling but also the volume becomes petrified and gradually loses its plastic significance. Ornaments are inordinately lavish and sumptuous, and are not organically connected with the figures. Flexions of the body are extended to the utmost limit; bends are employed to their last possibilities (Fig. 97), but the expression of movement is only that of pattern without any suggestiveness. Despite voluptuous and full curly lips and doubly curved eyebrows, facial features become pointed almost to a triangle, and rigid, without any deep spiritual significance (Fig. 100).

Here and there one, however, comes across a new artistic inspiration, a new creativeness amid a system that was already on its way to suffocation by material exuberance. A spontaneous power of modelling in a completely round form inspires a tough and vigorous artistic form in some rare specimens, and in spite of sumptuousness of ornaments and a precise outline it reveals a conscious dignity and strength, a freshness of elemental experience that could yet save the art from final stagnation. But that was not to be. Left to itself, the art could yet find out new channels or new experiences, but all chances were set at rest by the rapid rush of Islam.

East Indian art of the twelfth century represents mainly the art of the period of the Senas, and a cross-section of the literature and culture patronised at the Sena court reveals the attitude of material exuberance that one notices in Sena sculptures. Even religious themes — both in art and literature — are endowed with a worldly consciousness and almost physical charm and grace (Fig. 99). The Gita-govinda of Jayadeva, for example, may be regarded as
a literary counterpart of the voluptuous sensuousness of the Sena art. In its origin it had no doubt a religious inspiration, but there is also no doubt that what was basically a spiritual experience came to be overshadowed by a worldly trend developed in the Sena court. Sensuousness and grace were properties of earlier periods of Bengali art as well, but it was left to the Senas to allow and encourage them to degenerate into mere worldly lavishness.

It is not impossible that the explanation for this mechanical worldly lavishness of Sena sculptures is to be found in the strain of their foreign blood. Contemporary South-Indian sculpture is equally lavish in its worldliness, mechanical and rigid in vision and execution, but lacking the grace and animation of Sena images which were direct legacies from earlier Pala sculptures.

The art-form of Eastern India during these four long centuries proceeds in a wavering line; sometimes favouring a fleshly form frankly sensuous, sometimes an abstract form equally sensuous, not frankly but suggestively, both tendencies working within the strict rigours of canonical tradition. The art seems to have derived its charm and peculiar character from an oscillation between the reality of the flesh and the reality of abstraction, perhaps between two minds, one deeply imbued with the *sādhanā* of the Tantra that knows this physical body to be the abode of heavenly bliss, and the other aspiring to abstract the godliness in man out of his material body itself—the *sādhanā* of Brahmanical Hinduism. In striking contrast to this ideological oscillation between the two tendencies, is the gradual evolution of the composition. It begins with quite simple flexions and attitudes of the body and simple decorations and ornamentations; but with the progress of time the flexions and attitudes of the body become excited and agitated, decorations and ornamentations, playful and frivolous. This tendency from simple and quiet to agitated and frivolous general appearance proceeds in a steady straight course. In any case this tendency seems to have worked itself up to such exaggerations that it came to sit heavily on the art itself, and when finally Islam came and with it came also a change in the Court, and for a time, in the socio-religious institutions and establishments, the art was suffocated, if not to immediate death, at least to immediate stagnation.

Summarily speaking, the four centuries and a half of the rich Eastern school of Bihār and Bengal are characterised by high technical accomplishment and a kind of mechanical grace and elegance. The outlines are sharp and clear and the modelling is almost metallic. The school sent its reverberations to Kāshmir, Nepāl, Tibet and a few sub-Himalayan tracts in the north; nearer home to Mayur-
bhanj; and, beyond the seas, to Burma, Siam, Java, Sumatra, and Ceylon. The more important centres of the school were Nalanda, Kurkihar, Bodh-Gaya, Rajagriha and Champä in Bihär; Rajshahi, Dinajpur and Bogra, in North Bengal, and Dacca, Tippera and Sylhet in East Bengal, all now included in East Pakistan. Regional variations in facial type and expression and in appearance and treatment are noticeable, but they do not reach out of the lines of the common denominator. West Bengal products and those of Bihär go together, while South Bengal cultivates a sort of happy and subtle contentment different from the alluring charm and elegance of North and East Bengal.

B. Orissa

As in Bihär and Bengal, so in Orissa, the flow of Gupta classical tide persists with consistent vigour. The soft and mellow lines and curves and full but delicate and subtle plasticity of volume continue in subdued vigour till they are replaced by flowing but firm sinuous lines, quicker flexions and tough, firm, round, modelling of a sturdier plastic volume—elements that presumably were the gifts of a new vision, a new ideal other than that of the bygone age. Indeed, onwards from roughly about the tenth century, not only in Orissa but throughout India, the birth of a new vigour is unmistakable in its plastic expression which retains the balanced proportion of the classical frame, but bids good-bye to its cultured refinement, spiritual grace, and subtle elegance, and seeks to produce instead a sturdier physiognomical type held within firm but ample, flowing lines, and gripped by a large, round and tight modelling. This is true as much of the cult-images as of the non-iconic figure sculptures, including those of animals.

From the specimens collected so far, and from the extensive ruins strewn all over and around Lalitagiri, Udayagiri and Ratnagiri (Cuttack District), it is clear that the locality was once, in the seventh and eighth centuries, an important Buddhist centre that encouraged and patronised the art of sculpture in embellishing its temples and monasteries. Wrought in decomposed khondalite or chlorite schist the Buddhist images from these sites, notably from Lalitagiri and Kendrapara, carry on, on the whole, the East Indian classical tradition, especially in the essential linearism on which not only the slight triibhaâga attitude but the rhythm of the entire composition rests, including that of the lotus stalk. But they lack the subtle delicacy and spiritual grace of contemporary Nalanda work, for example; instead, they are more expansive and spread out on
the plane, more stern, and held by a more firm and solid composi-

tion.

Contemporary or slightly later (i.e. ninth century) sculptures
from Udayagiri and Ratnagiri, whether Buddhist or Brahmanical,
are heavier in appearance and treatment, though yet generously
graceful in their slight abhaṅga and triḥaṅga attitudes. Not only
are they heavier, they are also more sturdily built, fully but tightly
modelled; at the same time they retain the pliable amplitude and
flowing sinuosity of their outlines. Relatively, they are slightly
shorter and perhaps also coarser in physiognomy than the compara-
tively slenderer figures of Lalitagiri. From the tenth century on-
wards the sculptural art of Udayagiri and Ratnagiri, and of Jāipur
and Chauduar, is a part of the contemporary art of Baudh and Bhu-
vanesvara, Puri and Konārak, and may be viewed together. The
only point of difference to be noticed is the more intimate relation
of the former group with the contemporary art of Bihār and Ben-
gal, especially in the manner of modelling almost fully in the round
and that with a metallic smoothness. At this stage, too, the sculp-
tures of this group retain their ample sinuosity of the outline. A
second point to remember is that the mediaeval tradition, unlike
the Bhuvaṇeśvara-Puri-Konārak group, but like contemporary
Bihār and Bengal, made no intrusion in Cuttack till as late as the
thirteenth century.

Khiching, the old seat of the patron goddess of the early Bhājā
kings, Kīčhakeśvari or Khijjingesvari, in Mayurbhanj, was another
important seat of Orissan sculpture, lying geographically as well as
artistically between Bengal and Orissa. Datable in the tenth and
eleventh centuries, these sculptures, Brahmanical in affiliation, are
all modelled roundly, tightly, and largely. Indeed, their breadth,
fullness, and amplitude of modelling and movement impart to them
a sturdiness of form and appearance, accentuated further by their
relative dimensions, and marked by almost metallic sharpness, pre-
cision, and smoothness which is lightened, however, by an emotional
expression spread over the face in a smile and distributed over the
surface of the whole body. While the qualities of largeness and
round amplitude of modelling and movement are shared by Khiching
with the rest of contemporary Orissa, the psychological expression
of the faces and the metallic smoothness and precision are more
closely related to contemporary Bihār and Bengal.

Typically Orissan sculptural art can best be viewed and studied
at centres like Bhuvaṇesvara, Baudh, Puri, and Konārak. Together
they cover a period of five centuries, from the eighth to the
thirteenth, and except in the case of the cult-images either installed
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

at the sanctum in the garbhā-griha or placed in the important niches sunk in the exterior of the temple, the figure sculptures constitute an essential part of the temple-surface and can be understood only in that context. As Kramrisch says, 'architecture in Orissa is but sculpture on a gigantic scale'. In other contemporary monuments, the temples do not themselves blossom in figure sculptures and images; rather the latter are applied on the exterior walls and in the niches as decorations or according to śāstric injunctions; even the almost roundly modelled sculptures and panel-like reliefs in frames, as the case may be, seem as if they were applied on to the walls from outside. But in the monumental structural temples of Orissa, the relationship between the temple body and the figures is altogether of a different order. To begin with, in the eighth (or seventh) century reliefs of the Pāraśurāmeśvara temple (Fig. 101), for example, the figures, though very free in their agile movements, are yet very much bound down to the plane of the temple-surface. As time moves forward the pagaś and the rekhaś of the deul23 begin to thrust themselves forward from the ground base of the temple-body; a deeper contrast in surface and depth results and the ornamental decorations keep pace with it. Simultaneously the figures, too, which are part of the temple-body, seem to step out in increasing roundness of volume, so that in the reliefs of the Rājarāni (Fig. 103) and the Lāṅgarājā (Figs. 104 and 106) the figures are connected with the ground by a vertical line of thread as it were. The figures are thus fully thrust out in the open space. Still later, at Konārak, where everything is on an epic scale, the consummation is reached in the thirteenth century, when the figures in relief are still more fully exposed, and independent figures are cut out in completely round volumes of the temple-body itself as it were. Indeed the magnificent singing and dancing figures on the upper storeys (Fig. 105) of the Arka temple are part of the temple-body and yet apart and away from it, fully, roundly and independently emerged into space.

Unless they are meant to be dignifiedly static, also perhaps somewhat mechanical, as the Sūrya images of Konārak, even the cult-images (Fig. 102), despite iconographic regulations of a rigid order, are informed by a dynamic vitality, and a monumentality of composition and largeness of form and bearing—effects that are directly due to an amplitude of movement and dignified modelling. These qualities are seen at their best in the large-size images of Kārttikeya, Gāṇeśa, and Mahiśaśuramardini in the exterior niches of the Lāṅgarājā temple, in certain images from Jāipur and Chauduar, Puri and Khiching. In all such cult-images, the pliability and
amplitude of the sinuous outline is a distinguishing feature which is in a great measure responsible for the sturdy vitality.

The non-iconic figure sculptures, which are much more numerous at Bhubanesvara, Puri and Konarak, have all these qualities and some others besides. They are further characterised by a delightful abandon of feeling, emotion and action, an almost innocent but ecstatic joy of living, a rich luxuriousness of appearance, an intense love for the human body and all that this body is capable of yielding in terms of life-experience.

So much ado has been made about the frank eroticism of the figure-sculptures of Puri and Konarak that a word need be said here. Mithuna subjects have never been taboo in Indian art, and a creative sensuousness has ever been regarded as an important source of energy, of vital urge in life—as much in religious and spiritual quest as in the quest for expression—in certain schools and aspects of Indian sadhāna. Sāñchī and Amaravati knew it, Mathurā was more than conscious about it, and in the Ellora scene of Śiva and Pārvatī in rapturous yet self-forgetful kissing embrace the mithuna idea of this sadhāna finds a most creative expression. Indeed it was accepted as a normal, nay essential part of life without any shame or secrecy attached to it. So is it at Puri and Konarak, where admittedly the eroticism is not only in the sensuous suggestiveness but in the depiction of sexual acts in the widest possible varieties of poses and attitudes known to the Kamaāstras. But what is remarkable at Konarak, if not at Puri—the difference is presumably as much due to the attitude of the artist as to his efficiency as a craftsman—is the fact that even in those scenes that depict a sexual act there is a sort of delightful detachment in the actors themselves. They take it so easy and in such a nonchalant manner that there is not the slightest suggestion of a mischief being done or a shameful act being gone through.

The temples of Orissa and Khajurāho show the extent reached by Indian craftsmen in giving concrete form to this very subtle and complex view of life. It is true that contemporary Orissa was touched by the Tantra, and the sensuous love of, and joy in, the human body as caught hold of in the figures of Orissan temples may have been due to Tantrik inspiration; but it is not necessary, in the light of the interpretation set forth above, to explain the erotic scenes and scenes of sexual acts by referring them to Tantrik practices about the currency of which we have no definite evidence in contemporary Orissa, much less at Khajurāho. The present writer can bear witness to the fact that he has seen Oriya villagers of the present day look at the panorama of life stretching before their eyes on
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

the walls of Konārak with as much unconcern and detachment as belong to the figures themselves, while the middle-class educated students either shrink or glance at them through a corner of their bashful eyes!

In the eighth century reliefs of the Parasurāmeśvara temple (Fig. 101), the figures are physiognomically short and, since the temple surface binds them closer to its ground, are treated in somewhat flattened volumes. This results in a sort of heaviness which is partly compensated by free and round movements of the body. In the ninth century this heaviness persists despite increasing freedom of movement and luxurious vivacity of mood and appearance, for example, in the reliefs of the Vaital deul. In the tenth century a refined elegance not only in the physiognomical form but also in the plastic treatment of the rounded volume lends to the figures of the Rājarāji (Fig. 103) temple a decidedly sophisticated grace. In the following century, however, this elegance is translated in terms of sturdiness and strength, and in the reliefs of the Lāṅgarāja (Figs. 104 and 106) and Brahmeśvara temples figures are fully rounded and the sensuous modelling of the volume is informed by a vigour born from within. The twelfth century retains this quality (the reliefs of the Kedāreśvara temple, Bhuvaneśvara, of the Jagannātha temple, Puri), but in a slightly coarser manner. The thirteenth century recaptures the grace and elegance and also the tough roundness of the eleventh and pushes them to their natural consummation in the reliefs of the Arkā temple at Konārak. Indeed grace and elegance have ever been a distinguished quality of Orissa sculptures, but it was left to the artists of the Rājarāji, Lāṅgarāja and Konārak to exploit them to the fullest limit.

Simultaneously, decorations in details of the temples in general and of the reliefs and figures in particular were steadily on the increase. Each succeeding century added to the profusion of details and ornamentations, both architectural and decorative, till by about the thirteenth century, grace and elegance were both suffocated to extinction, if not at Konārak, at least in other contemporary temples. Whether these devices are floral-vegetal, or geometrical, or stylised and patternised architectural elements like the chaitya-window, the Orissan artists' attempt to exploit them to the best advantage for the purpose of intricate display of light and shade, makes itself known even from such early temples as the Parasurāmeśvara. Added to the deep contrasts in light and shade afforded by the decorative devices were the pāpas and rekhas stepping out more and more on to open space so that all intervening spaces also were intricately alternated by deep contrasts of light and darkness. Such
interplay of light and darkness, accentuated further by the stepping out into open spaces of the figures as well, build up a consistency that is at once balanced and harmonised. It is this consistency of the interplay of light and shade that makes the Orissan temple a living organism and lends to the figure sculptures their intense liveliness. Taken out of their context the decorative devices and the figures lose much of their live reality.

Mediaeval trends in Orissa do not seem to make themselves felt earlier than the eleventh century, and when they do, as in certain reliefs of the Liṅgarāja and Brahmēśvara temples and also in certain reliefs now stored in the Konārak Museum, they may and often do occur side by side with reliefs, or even in the same relief side by side with figures that are frankly inspired by the classical tradition.

A word must be said in respect of the animal sculptures of Orissa. At Konārak we have some of the best elephant reliefs of Indian art, though in smaller dimension, on the walls of the immense base-structure. The large, almost life-size, ones are imposing and impressive more by their volume than by their inherent artistic quality. The huge and spirited caparisoned steeds that drag the twelve wheeled chariot forward, are equally impressive, more by their bearing and straining mood than by the concretised vision of their dynamic naturalism or by the sensitivity of their plastic volume. An antelope frieze on the walls of the Muktesvara temple is, however, endowed with these very qualities and catches the animals in their essential form.

3. GANGĀ-YAMUNĀ VALLEY

Specimens of sculpture, belonging to the ninth and the three succeeding centuries, are extremely rare, so far as the Punjab plains and the Gaṅgā-Yamunā valley are concerned. This is mainly due to devastation wrought by Muslim iconoclasts from the days of Mahmūd of Ghazni to those of Aurangzeb. If a small (26 inches) Mathurā Viṣṇu relief, datable towards the end of the tenth or beginning of the eleventh century, and a few broken or damaged pieces from Mīrzāpur and Sārnāth can be relied upon as furnishing indications, it seems the Gaṅgā-Yamunā valley belonged to the common denominator of the contemporary art of Bihār and Bengal, more closely of Bihār to which the region was geographically contiguous. These cult-images, mainly Brahmanical, are characterised by the same physiognomical type and form, the same precision of features, and the same almost metallic smoothness that distinguish the stone sculptures of contemporary Bihār and Bengal. An earlier,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

perhaps early tenth century, version of the same East Indian tradi-
tion is reflected in a Vishnu statue from Sultanpur (Etah District) charac-
terised by a softer modelling and not so conscious elegance of eleventh century examples. Like the East Indian tradition again the Gangā-Yamuna valley remains throughout untouched by mediaeval trends (Figs. 107-110).

4. CENTRAL INDIA

Occupying, geographically, an intermediate position between the East and the West, Central India—extending from the borders of Rājputāna and Gujarāt in the west (roughly from Ujjaini and Mandasor) to Allahābād in the east—holds an intermediate position, artistically too, in the history of mediaeval sculpture. Her products, from the tenth to the thirteenth, turned out under the aegis and patronage of the Chandellas of Jejakabhukti and the Paramāras of Dharā, reflect an admixture of both the East Indian tradition of Bihār and Bengal and that of Rājputāna and Gujarāt where the mediaeval trends found their most congenial home. While Garhwa, Mahobā and Khajurāho preserve the more important relics of the Chandellas, the Paramāra tradition is stored at Dhar and Mandor in Indore and Gwalior. Formally and psychologically they are different, though a common denominator is admissible.

Throughout, in Central India of the Chandellas and the Para-
māras as in Mahākosalas of the Haihayas, classical volume has be-
come ampler, but grows increasingly stereotyped, which means a thinning down of the inner vision and consequent and correspond-
ing loss of plastic sensitivity. But it reveals the sensuous charm that resides in the physical body (Figs. 111 and 116) and imparts to all figures a somewhat mechanical grace and conscious perfection. The modelling has definitely become stagnant, but has a smooth-
ness that gives elegance to the somewhat dull volume. With in-
creasing loss of plastic sensitivity and growing dullness of the am-
ple and round volume, conscious movements and flexions of the body round its axis show a corresponding increase to create an im-
pression of more and more intensity of feeling and life (Fig. 115). The living breath that endows the body with the dynamism of life has now ceased and the flesh moves no longer; instead the conscious flexions and movements, often violent and intense, of the body are now the only exponents of life consciously passionate and arduous.

This is nowhere more in evidence than in the Buddhist sculp-
tures, all turned out presumably from the workshop of one chitra-
kāra, in this case, a sculptor, Śrī Satana, described in one of the in-
scriptions as sakala-śilpa-vidyā-kuśalāḥ (adept in all arts), of Mahot-
savanagara, modern Mahoba, associated with the Chandellas of Jejākabhukti, and known for long to have also yielded Brahmanical and Jain sculptures. A smooth and placid charm and a sort of mechanical grace and perfection worn round the balanced and full round contours of the body are unmistakable in the images of Śūlānādā Lokesvara (Fig. 119) and Padmapāṇi Lokesvara, and also, though in a lesser degree, in that of Tārā. That this charm and grace are more in the bhaṅgas and bhaṅgis, i.e. in the flexions and modes, than in the plastic quality which is itself stilled into a placid sheet over the body, will be evident from a comparison of these figures with that of the Buddha seated in bhūmi-sparsa-mudrā. In the latter case where there is no scope for presenting the body in flexions, the figure fails to catch the grace and charm of the other figures, yet it happens to be a work presumably by the same artist. But while in all such examples the character of the ‘classical’ volume and the amplitude of vision and form persist with vigour and meaning, in others, mainly Jain cult-images and decorative fragments, the specifically mediaeval trends of sharp outlines and pointed angles, formed by jerking limbs flung with vigour and by sharp noses and angular chins thrown forward, are equally potent and active and lend to the composition a somewhat different colour and meaning.

Garhwa sculptures are also characterised by the same grace and charm of a still, placid modelling, and of conscious flexions and movements of the body. But Chandella figure-sculptures can be seen at their best on the walls of the Brahmanical and Jain temples of the temple city of Khajurāho in Bundelkhand, a city which in the richness and magnificence of its architecture and sculpture, stands very near to the temple-city of Bhuvanesvara. The temples of Khajurāho pulsate with human activity (Figs. 114 and 115) but the figures, including those of human beings and animals (śārdūlas, for instance), do not belong to the temples themselves in the sense the Orissan figures do. They are fully and roundly modelled, if not in the amplitude of dimension as in Orissa yet in large proportions, but are, for all practical purposes, independent of the flat ground of the temple. The outlines are deep and sharp, but have not the ample sinuosity of the Orissan outlines, an evident consequence of the ‘mediaeval’ grip into which Khajurāho found itself caught. The treatment of the plastic volume is generally tight and still, which is sought to be somewhat compensated by the sharp and pointed movements of the stiff limbs that are otherwise without any sensitiveness. Yet in the flexions and movements, there is a conscious intensity that is often violent and seems to turn the body in all its joints to their utmost breaking point, with an evident eye to emotional, frankly erotic provocation. The Khajurāho figures are
consciously and purposely erotic and sensuous; this they express suggestively and not by innocent and hence frank and unashamed libidinous acts as in Orissa. The coquettish languor of Khajuraho has nothing to compare with the innocent detachment of Orissa or with the creative and virile sensuousness of earlier Mathurā and Vēgī regions of the post-Christian centuries.

Decorative ornamentations at Khajuraho, indeed in Chandella art in general, show an amalgam of 'classical' and 'mediaeval' grammar and composition existing side by side, often in one relief, some time separately, some time integrated into one complete pattern. Besides Khajuraho, there were other centres in Bundelkhand where the 'mediaeval' grip was equally, if not more, potent, as for example at Chandpur in Jhansi. Here, in some of the sculptures of the Mahādeva temple (twelfth century) the entire plastic context is broken up into rectangular and triangular fragments and the whole composition is sharpened by linear and angular movements. Evidently the mediaeval tendencies were gradually getting the upper hand. But in some examples from Khajuraho the persistence of the classical tradition is shown at its best and purest in the subtlety of modelling, in the sensitivity of the linear movement, and in the largeness and consistency of composition. Such examples are no doubt rare, but prove nevertheless the strength and vitality of the tradition.

Paramāra art was prolific in its sculptural output, but hardly did it ever reach a high tide of aesthetic achievement. Though bound geographically to what was known as Western Malava, its products really belong to the contemporary Rajputāna idiom. The greatest builder and lover of art of the dynasty was Rāja Bhoja (c. A.D. 1000-1055). The image of Sarasvati (Fig. 117), installed by him in the main hall of his Sarasvati Mandir (temple), a sort of a university of learning at Dhārā, his capital, shows Paramāra sculpture at its best. Other specimens can be seen at Māndū, at the local museum at Dhār, on the walls of the Nilakaṇṭha or Udāyāesvara temple at Udāyapur, built by Udāya-dīya Paramāra, within the enclosures of the Mahākāla temple at Ujjaini, and other places including Indore.

Largely and vigorously conceived and modelled in ample dimensions, the figures are informed by 'classical' value of form. They are free from jerky movements and intense flexions, and do not seem to feel the weight of the heavy roundness which characterises their youthful body. The face, also fully and vigorously modelled, wears an expression of blankness and is lighted up neither by any pleasure of the senses nor by any inner experience, urge or inspiration. Despite youthfulness and vigorous round modelling, plasticity hangs in suspense or is stilled into stagnation; this
ART

goes along with a pair of rigid and heavy legs equally lifeless. Mediaevalism touches ornamental devices and jewelleries; the latter are sharply cut and are just laid on the body with which they have no organic relation; ‘classical’ decorative ornamentations are also flattened and linearised as far as possible, while specifically northern patterns of sharp and flat contrast in light and darkness (as in chessboard and diamond patterns) are common.

5. VINDHYA AND MADHYA PRADESH

In the region extending from Allahābad to Jabalpur, the temple-building activity was carried on on a considerable scale, under the aegis of the Haihayas of Tripuri, in the tenth and eleventh centuries, at Bherāghāt (near Jabalpur), Satnā, Dudhahi (Lalītpur District), Rānipur (Sambalpur), Rewa and other places.

It should be remembered that this entire region has ever been the home of a large segment of our aboriginal population, and it is significant that they have stamped a strong impress not only in the physiognomy but also on the form and medium of the mediaeval Haihaya art. On the ground of the common mediaeval denominator of north-Indian art the aboriginal element is deeply marked. Not in a few figure-reliefs a new facial type, squarish in cut, with swollen cheeks, big mouth and eyes closed as if in solemn pride in its own importance, goes hand in hand with a short-featured body that is swelled into heavy round masses as if by pressure from within, and which is borne on a still pair of legs. Though controlled by sharp outlines deeply cut, the bulging plastic mass, fully modelled, is frankly reminiscent of the ‘classical’ volume, but the sharp bends of joints of limbs, particularly at the knee and the elbow, of the main and subsidiary figures, and sharp facial profiles of the latter with their pointed noses and chins (Fig. 113) are clear manifestations of the specifically ‘mediaeval’ trends. Moreover, the subsidiary figures are conceived and executed in an altogether different manner, thinner and sharper in appearance and form, very much unlike the heavy and swelling roundness of the main figures. But the most distinguishing characteristic of Haihaya sculptures is the overcrowding of the reliefs with such a multitude of things as not to leave any space for breathing as it were. Indeed they are so many and so heaped one on the shoulder of another—men, women, architectural and decorative elements, all in heavy round volumes in high relief,—that the reliefs appear heavy and cumbersome. Crowded details seem to sit heavily on the composition and it looks as though the structure would fall to pieces by their very weight.
Mediaeval Rajputana sculptures hail from such diverse sites as Vasantgarh and Devangana, both in the old Sirohi State, Paltà (Bikaner), Osia Dilwārā (Mount Abu) (Figs. 118 and 121), Harshagiri (Jaipur), (Figs. 112 and 120), Chitor, and Mandor, among other places, and are spread over practically the whole of the mediaeval period, from the tenth to about the seventeenth century. In point of style they range from full recognition of ‘classical’ values side by side with acquiescence to ‘mediaeval’ pressure to complete negation of the ‘classical’ and full assertion of the ‘mediaeval’.

At Vasantgarh, from the stylised sun-window of a temple of the tenth century, peeps out the head of a Buddha distinguished by a largeness of treatment and a sensitivity of modelling comparable only to similar faces from Khajuraho. The pure, organic and consistent quality of the face unmistakably betrays the debt it owes to the ‘classical’ vision and form as interpreted by contemporary artists in Central and Eastern India, including Orissa. A series of rich floral-vegetal designs encircle the face just referred to. These designs are evidently borrowed from the ‘classical’ store-house, but, at the same time, it is seen at once that they are not roundly modelled, but are flattened out on the surface with sharp perpendicular cuts at the edges. This flattening out of modelled volumes and deeply and sharply cut edges are directly traceable to ‘mediaeval’ pressure. Much more than anywhere else in Rajputana, contemporary (i.e. tenth century) Osia sculptures adhere more closely to the classical tradition with its vigorous modelling of a youthful body spreading itself in the amplitude of its mass. The same vigorous and also tough modelling gives life and strength to the reliefs of the Purñā Mahādeva temple of Harshagiri, also belonging to the tenth century.

About this time, i.e. the tenth century, Chandrāvatī, in the old Brijnagar state, in Eastern Rajputana, seems to have become a great centre of artistic activity, where one can follow the history of the art of Central India and Eastern Rajputana in its finest manifestations throughout the mediaeval period. A number of Chandrāvatī-Patan sculptures, now in the Brijnagar State Museum, and a few in situ, can stylistically be assigned to the tenth and eleventh centuries. By their heavy roundness of the weighty mass with hardly any suggestion of flexibility and linear movement, they belong more to contemporary Central Indian idiom than to that of Rajputana. Impressive in largeness and amplitude of the plastic mass, they are somewhat stolid and withdrawn in their facial and physiognomical expression, due no doubt to the stagnated modell-
ing; but the outlines are less sharp and more flowing and sinuous than average contemporary Rajputana products. Classical values persist in the following i.e. eleventh century Rajput sculptures, but while the pliability of the soft modelling continues, the linear element grows harder and stiffer so that the flexions of the body appear to be rigid, and an elaboration of jewelleries and decorations takes place. These are cut in sharp edges and are not plastically conceived, so that when the jewelleries are laid on and round the large round volumes, they do not become their integral parts. Thus the 'classical' and the 'mediaeval' tides enter into an incongruous combination. The reliefs of the original Mokalji's temple at Chitor, rich in sculptural wealth, are datable in the eleventh century.

In the twelfth century a conscious elegance sets in and makes the figures and their composition thinner and lighter by sharper outlines, deeply cut, and pointed lines and angles. The concave curve in the bodies and legs—a resultant effect of the 'mediaeval' pressure on the line—is also on the increase. The stele composition is also broken up into small fragments, with reference to the main figure, and loses thus the dynamic integration and coordination of 'classical' composition; undoubtedly this, too, has been due to the emphasis on the sharp linear arrangement.

In the thirteenth century this thinning down of the plastic context by an increasing emphasis on the sharp and pointed angularity of the limbs and features of figures and on the solely linear and fragmentary aspect of the composition, is in the ascending grade along with the increasing concavity of curves. An elaboration of details of decoration and ornamentation, very skilfully, delicately and minutely worked out, goes side by side with a cumbersome and crowded composition. Nowhere are these characteristics so clearly and subtly brought out than in the ceiling reliefs of the Neminatha Temple (Jain) of Mount Abu, built by Teja\pāla in A.D. 1230 (Figs. 41, 118 and 121). It must be remembered that the entire temple and its decorations are worked out of white marble which made possible chiselling or scraping in such a delicate and minute manner. But when Coomaraswamy says that this minute and delicate decorative work is "one of those cases where exuberance is beauty", he pays a tribute that does not seem to be fully deserved. The exuberance of the Teja\pāla temple decoration is not the exuberance of fertile and dynamic nature that one sees at Sānci\r, for example, essentially creative by its very nature and character. The very deeply undercut and delicately scraped designs with their sharp edges and deep contrasts in light and darkness result in a kind of
mechanical grace, and are clear evidence of very skilled workmanship, but are hardly any evidence of creative endeavour. The figure sculptures, too, are mechanically conceived and executed, and are hence thin in creative experience. Over-elaboration crowds and encumbers the compositional context, and the richness of design is not, in this case at any rate, born of an exuberant, vibrant life full to the brim and overflowing it.

The Mount Abu decorative and figure sculptures betray undoubted 'mediaeval' characteristics some of which persist in Rajput sculpture through the subsequent centuries, and in Rajput painting as well, in an altogether different context, till the nineteenth. The sharp emphasis on the line and its pointed angularity and on the concave curve can be witnessed in a Rāṣa-līlā relief from the palace of Bir Singh Deo Bundela at Datia built in the early seventeenth century (A.D. 1605-27), appearing in the context of contemporary features and fashions.

But mediaevalism in the art of Rajputāna has a history earlier than even the tenth century, particularly in decorative devices, patterns and designs. Details of decoration, of an old temple at Mandor, show very clearly and pointedly how 'classical' themes and designs were made to shed off the rounded plasticity of their volumes and were gradually thinned and flattened out and sharpened in the edges, which human faces, turned in their sharp profiles, were made to thrust their beak-like noses into space. The Mandor temple and its decorations are datable in the eighth century.

7. GUJARAT

Gujarat has been one of the earliest targets of Muslim iconoclasm and throughout the late mediaeval period she suffered from periodic devastations of her numerous shrines. Almost all the older temples have been all but entirely destroyed; but from the ruins of temples and temple-cities, scattered all over Gujarat and the adjoining territories, ruled over by the Chaulukyas from the middle of the tenth century, one can form an idea of the rich architectural and sculptural achievements of the region from about the eleventh to about the seventeenth century and later. The more important centres are Siddhapura, Moḍhera, Taraga which is not very far from Siddhapura, Gīrnār, Satrujāya, Dabhoi, and Jhinjuved.

Not much need be said about the mediaeval art of Gujarāt, for what has been said about the contemporary art of Rajputāna applies to a great extent to this westernmost branch of mediaeval Indian sculpture. Indeed part of Western Rājputāna, including Chitór and Mount Abu, really formed, culturally, a part of Gujarāt during the
mediaeval period (and even politically, at times, during the suzerainty of the Chaulukyas), just as Eastern Rājputāna formed a part of the West Mālava country.

Mediaeval features are perhaps more conspicuous in Gujarāt than in contemporary Rājputāna, but this is more manifest in contemporary book-illustrations than in sculpture. Indeed, in Rājput sculptures the line, though sharp, is still flowing in uninterrupted flux as a remnant of the classical tradition, and maintains the balanced poise of the same tradition, but the more one travels further towards the west, the more does one witness the line seized by a nervousness under the stress of which all curves tend to be angular and concave and the poise gets disturbed. A sort of nervousness and tension grips all figures despite their evident vigour and power expressed in the forward thrust of the trunk of the body and overdone movements of the round slender limbs. Due to the nervous sharpness of line and pointed angularity of movements, the composition is broken up into fragments not inherently related by any dynamic and integrated vision. Verticals, horizontals, and diagonals are spread out over the whole surface without much care for the plastic context. In appearance the figures are still endowed with grace and smoothness (Figs. 123 and 124) inherited from past generations, but without much corresponding feeling and understanding.

The decorative devices, jewelleries, etc. tend more and more towards flatness and sharpness, cut deeply and sharply in the edges, and grow increasingly rigid like the figure sculptures themselves, and also intricate and elaborate, without any integrated relation with the plastic body.

And thus finally in the seventeenth century this direction reaches a stage when both Rājputāna and Gujarāt seek a renascence of sculptural art through an unsuccessful appeal to the classical sources.

8. PUNJĀB HILL STATES

The Punjāb Hill States, sheltered by the Himalayas, were not as isolated from the main currents of North Indian life and culture as is often supposed. Chambā, Kāngrā, Kulu, and Kumān have preserved sculptures of images and decorative patterns in relief that originally formed part of temples some of which are still extant, as for example at Brahmor and Chatrārhi in Chambā and Masrur in Kāngrā.

Reference may be made to the wooden door façade of a temple exquisitely carved in relief in what remained of the classical Gupta tradition of the Gaṅgā-Yamunā valley as interpreted in these
remote hill states. Even a century or more later (ninth century), some traces of the suavity, grace and poise of Gupta classicism and its softer, not subtler, treatment of plastic volume in full round forms can still be seen in the reliefs of the monolithic temple of Masrur in the Kangra valley. The simple naïveté of the hill-people seems to have stamped itself in these reliefs in the attitude and expression of these short-featured figures as much as in the somewhat coarse and summary treatment of the modelling. In the following century, or somewhat later, classical qualities are given full value in a number of cult-images in stone from Chambā (Bhagavati image in the village shrine of Svaim in Himagiri pargana and Siva figures on the Chandrasekhara temple at Saho, for example). The masks of Muñjunidevi from Kulu and the Siva from Harsar (Chambā) also belong to the same conception of form. Whether carved fully in the round or nearly so, these figures are powerfully, though coarsely, modelled, in heavy and stately proportions, fully expressive of concentrated energy to which the face responds with a calm dignified composure. The jewelleries and the decorations are as much integral parts of the modelled mass as of the stelae composition. Here in these images lineaments drawn from Hellenistic Gandhāra are clearly perceptible in the treatment of the drapery and in the proportion and treatment of some of the reliefs. Hardly a touch of the ‘mediaeval’ factor is perceived in these reliefs which seem to have stored up the classical values with feeling and understanding, and yet that in a manner very much different from what was happening in contemporary Eastern India.

But alongside, and earlier than anywhere else in the North, the ‘mediaeval’ factor makes itself felt in a number of inscribed metal images from Chambā. On palaeographical grounds most of them are datable towards the beginning of the eighth century, and a few in the ninth and tenth centuries. The eighth century images, executed by a craftsman (karmīvā) named Gugga, and the tenth (or eleventh) century ones of Vishnu and Kālī, from Sahu and Markuta, all in Chambā, are mechanically conceived and characterised by sharp outlines deeply cut and a hard petrified treatment of the plastic volume of a somewhat elongated physiognomy. Indeed, the emphasis on the sharp and incisive outline gives definitive character to these figures that register the ‘mediaeval’ impact, though in a very thin and subdued way.

Yet, from these hill states, particularly Chambā, have come down to us the biggest series of fountain stones cut into low flat reliefs showing abstract patterns and not so much icons, except in the later ones, or scenes of edification, enjoyment and activity. In-
deed such weaving of mere patterns in square and rectangular panels with floral, vegetal and geometric designs and human and animal figures (serpent forms playing an important part) is unknown to the ‘classical’ conception. This pattern-making, as we see in these fountain stones, seems to reflect a very ancient art-practice, and Kramrisch is right in assuming that “the earliest and simplest of these stones could be ancestors of the roundels of Bharhut,” although those that we have cannot be dated earlier than the tenth-eleventh century. The floral and vegetal designs, undoubtedly of ‘classical’ origin, are flattened out, sharply incised, and made to fit in with the flat geometrical designs of square and diamond shapes equally flat and sharply incised. The non-iconic and some of the iconic figures are also similarly treated. These low reliefs of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are indeed the progenitors of later Rājput painting; and it is in these that we witness ‘mediaeval’ features in their relatively unadulterated aspect, particularly in the decorative patterns on the skirts of female figures on such fountain stones as those of Ajayapāla (A.D. 1225) at Sai Churah. They are on a par with almost similar designs on the contemporary Jain miniatures from Western India.

9. KĀSHMIR, NEPAL AND TIBET

Kāshmir had intimate relations with the Punjāb Hill States, especially in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, if not earlier still. Her geographical position made her amenable to influences from the Hellenistic west on the one hand and Tibet on the other. From about the end of the seventh and beginning of the eighth century Eastern India was also drawn within the orbit of her intimate relations. Her art therefore reflects the impressions that her people were able to receive from these historical associations. But very few of sculptural records of pre-Muslim centuries have survived the zeal of iconoclasts that were not always Muslims. The numerous idols of gold and silver installed by Lalitāditya, on which Kalhana bestows so much praise, were all destroyed, more than two centuries before Muslim rule was established in the Valley, by Harsha, “that Turushka,” as Kalhana calls him, “who appointed a special official called devotpājana-nāyaka or ‘prefect for the destruction of gods’.”

Recent excavations, mainly at Harwan, have unearthed terracottas and stucco fragments belonging to different periods, that frankly betray Gandhāra Hellenistic inspiration from the north-west side by side with such Gupta classical qualities as are witnessed in Buddha and Bodhisattva figures of the fourth and fifth centuries from Hāḍḍā and Bāmiyān. All such earlier examples, including
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Buddha-Bodhisattva figures from Pândrethán, are explainable by the common denominator of contemporary Indian art.

It is very significant—a fact not yet sufficiently known and understood—that the Himalayan countries of Kāshmir, Nepal and Tibet come out of their mountain seclusion and enter the arena of Indian history and culture, almost simultaneously, from about the seventh century onwards. Kāshmir maintained this intimate association till she was overrun by the Muslims, and Nepal and Tibet, until very recent times. It is equally significant that all these regions, more particularly Nepal and Tibet, for reasons well known, were in more intimate cultural contact with Eastern India than with other regions of this vast sub-continent. The seclusion and conservatism of the hills helped Nepal and Tibet retain and store up whatever was received from Eastern India of the Pālas during the eighth and the three subsequent centuries and more, and carry on the East Indian mediaeval tradition of art, almost untouched and uninfluenced by any other element, till very recent times.

In mediaeval sculptures of Kāshmir (ninth to twelfth centuries), too, contemporary East Indian tradition stamps its strong impress, in form and treatment as well as in physiognomy. There is evidence to show that images from Bengal were imported into Kāshmir during these centuries. But the East Indian elements of mechanical grace and elegance and metallic precision are interpreted in Kāshmir, at least in a few instances, in stolid and clumsier terms. Others are merely a local rendering of typical East Indian stone sculptures and bronzes, to such an extent that without a label or definite information it is difficult to say whether a particular specimen is Kāshmiri or East Indian. The elegant bronze group of Padmapāñjñā accompanied by his two Śaktis, with an inscription of the reign of Queen Diddā (A.D. 980-1003), is an instance in point. But even at this stage Gandhāran suggestion of Hellenistic drapery remains potent.

Side by side, mainly in the Brahmanical sculptures from Avantipura (Fig. 125), there runs a current of artistic tradition which reflects the contemporary art of the Punjāb Hill States, Rājputāna, and Gujarāt. A short-featured physiognomy, stiff and somewhat heavy in appearance, is treated in a manner not very far removed from petrification of its plastic mass. This is held by an equally heavy and coarse outline.

The excavations at Harwan have yielded large quantities of moulded tiles, datable in about the fifth century A.D., representing horsemen in northern caps and cloaks; men and women seated in balconies or standing in graceful poses, or moving with Gandhāran
cornucopias etc., or dancing and drumming; fighting cocks, running
deer, lotuses and fleur-de-lys motifs etc. Reminiscences of Hellenis-
tic Gandhāra are easily seen in some of the facial types, head-dresses
and ear-ornaments, not the least in the drapery. But what is more
interesting is the fact that all these are executed in very low relief
with very little of modelling; the decorative devices, whether floral
or vegetal, are linearised as far as possible, and pure geometrical
designs are not also rare. Northern inspiration behind these designs
and moulded decorations is perhaps undeniable, and it is not un-
likely that they entered Kashmir in the wake of the Yueh-chis, the
Sakas, and the Kushāṇas, from Central Asia and China.

Nepalese stone sculptures of the ninth and the four succeeding
centuries are rare but not altogether unknown. They belong frankly
to the denominator of contemporary East Indian art and do not call
for any special attention. What really counts are the metal images
(cf. Fig. 126), generally of brass or copper, or some other kind of
powerful alloy, of very competent craftsmanship and of refined
elegance and precision. They are quite numerous and distributed in
various museums and private collections in India, Europe and Ame-
rica. These images seem to have been turned out of workshops in
considerable numbers in order to satisfy the demands of a growing
Buddhist and Brahmanical laity. Stylistically they belong to the
Paṇa tradition of Eastern India, but are often of superior workman-
ship. From about the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, with in-
creasing hierarchisation and stabilisation of Lamaistic Buddhism
which Nepāl came to share with Tibet, a hieratic stylisation of artistic
form set in; the sap exhausted itself and what was once organic and
vital slowly degenerated into a mechanical and stereotyped form.
But, as already pointed out, the seclusion and conservatism of the
hills helped to store up to a very large extent the accumulated expe-
rience of centuries till very recent times, and this evidently accounts
for those highly meritorious metal images of skilled workmanship,
produced in considerably later periods, that meet our gaze from time
to time. The number of such images is, however, very small, and
the large majority of Nepalese metal images of later dates are
mechanical and highly stylised.

Contemporary Tibetan art, too, is best known by its metal
images, but it should be remembered that they are, for the most
part, of Nepalese origin inasmuch as they happen to be works exe-
cuted by artists brought from Nepāl. But the Tibetan metal images,
even at their best, are qualitatively at a lower level than those of
Nepāl. Stylistically, they too are inspired by, and affiliated to, the
East Indian tradition, but those recently brought to light by Tucci
from Western Tibet, though formally East Indian, reveal nevertheless a vitality and strength that seem to be born of a living experience of the cult they professed and practised.

Till Tucci’s explorations in Western Tibet our knowledge of Tibetan art was confined to the metal images alone, and to a considerable number of paintings of a later period. We now know of stone sculptures, terracottas, and paintings, besides metal images, that can be dated in the early mediaeval period, i.e. from about the ninth and tenth to about the thirteenth century. They all belong to the well-known East Indian tradition. The terracottas are almost all Buddhist seals and are so much like contemporary seals found at different sites of Bihār that some of them at any rate seem to have been imported from Eastern India. The stone sculptures are of the usual East Indian variety in style and form, but more coarsely executed and tend towards increasing stylisation of which the late mediaeval Tibetan metal images, despite violent gestures and movements and good craftsmanship, are typical examples.

10. DECCAN

By about the end of the eighth century all creative inspiration and effort in the Deccan sculptures had entered a stalemate after ceaseless activity of very deep and abiding significance for about three centuries. Yet temples were built and decorated with sculptures and images made for purpose of worship. In Ittagi and Gadag in the Dhārwar District, as well as in Hyderabad, under the aegis of the Western Chālukyas of Kalyāna, and at Somnāthpur, Belur, Halebid, and Palampet, all in Mysore, under the aegis of the Hoyasalas, early mediaeval Deccan has left a crop of sculptural art by no means poor in output, but certainly so in creative achievement and potentiality.

What at Ellora, Aurangābād, and Bādami was conceived in immeasurable depth, strength and superhuman power, and formed in vigorous breadth and expansiveness, is now in Western Chālukyan art, conceived mechanically without any inner ‘elan’, that is, without any corresponding experience, and the broad expansiveness is just in space to suit decorative purposes. The decorative and ornamental devices that frame or encase such compositions are evidences of intricate and skilled craftsmanship no doubt, but are often overcrowded and cumbersome and seem to hang heavily on the figure-compositions as well. The figures are all in very high relief, in certain instances, in the round for all practical purposes, and deeply undercut, and also elaborately decorated. But life has gone out or them; the modelling has hardened to a considerable degree, poses
and attitudes are stiff despite traditional movements in appearance, and distended limbs and gestures lack the power and vigour of eighth century Deccanese composition. The bracket figures of many temples afford instances on the point; descendants of the early and well-known woman-and-tree motif they are intended to be sensuous, but their stiff and hard treatment as well as over-ornamentation render them lifeless, and they fail to convey any feeling of voluptuousness or even suggestive sensuousness. They are just appearances, not creative forms.

The skill, richness, and intricacy of decorative devices and ornamentations reach their fullest abundance in the temples of Balagami and Halebid. "... In the unfinished Hoysaleswara temple at Halebid the unstinted labour expended in carving a stone that is soft when quarried but hardens on exposure has clothed the entire building in an almost incredibly abundant parure." The long and elaborate friezes of animals (Figs. 86 and 87), real and mythical, and of scenes from the Rāmāyaṇa, and large panels of images (Fig. 122) and bracket figures, carved in high and frequently in altogether round relief, all appear as if pressed on to the surface, and are almost suffocated by elaborate and intricate, but stagnant and ponderous ornamentation. Despite gestures and movements of vigorous action the composition is static, absolutely uninformed by any inherent dynamism. A hardened modelling makes the plastic mass look heavy like a load, made heavier and more static by the unorganic relation with the body, of the intricate and heavy jewelleries formed by deep and sharp cuts. Indeed, the sharp and intricate carvings, certainly evidence of highly skilled craftsmanship, are artistically very poor and without any significance. Whatever plasticity was still left is choked by them. The end is not very far off.

11. SOUTH INDIA

South India, on the other hand, carries on the 'classical' tradition, as transmitted by the Pallava idiom, in a purer form, sounder conviction and a more vital manner; and this is done through centuries, save for slight and occasional intrusion by the 'mediaeval' factor, till as late as the end of the eighteenth century and even later. The inheritance, artistic skill and creative urge of the artists and craftsmen exploited the patronage of the Cholas of Gangaikōṇḍapuram (c. A.D. 850-1100), the Pāṇḍyas of Madurā (c. A.D. 1100-1300), the Yādavas and Tuluvas of Vijayanagar (c. A.D. 1350-1600), and the Nāyakas of Madurā (c. A.D. 1600-c. 1700 and later). The main centres of Chōla activity were Gaṅgai-kōṇḍapuram itself and Śrīnivāsa-nalur; the Pāṇḍyan monuments are principally situated at Śrīraṅgam,
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Chidambaram, Tiruvannamalai and Kumbakonam; the Yadavas and Tuluvas built, among other places, at Kāśchipuram, Velīr and Vijayanagara; and the Nāyakas concentrated chiefly at Madura. The lofty and massive vimānas and gopuras of these magnificent temple cities are all covered with elaborate and sumptuous reliefs of figures deeply and roundly cut; and these figures constitute in the main the South Indian store-house of stone-sculptures during all these centuries.

All Chola sculptures of the tenth and eleventh centuries are endowed with a tough vitality and are modelled vigorously, but leave the surface as if in a state of animated flexibility. Plastically they have relation with contemporary Deccanese sculptures, but reach a much higher level which is maintained throughout successive centuries. The Pallava idiom is here given a new interpretation in tougher and more dignified rendering of plastic mass, treated in full roundness of form and arranged in graded relief. With their full weight on the ground, these figures of disciplined strength, marked by inner composure, and modelled with all the smooth tenderness of live flesh, are eloquent expressions of that natural dynamism of life that had ever been the aim of Indian sculpture. The same attitude is marked in the organic relationship of the body and the jewelleries which are treated as a part of the body-modelling itself,—a conception of form which was one of the planks on which the 'classically' Indian modeller took his stand.

Towards the end of the eleventh or beginning of the twelfth century, in certain instances, somewhat slight hardening of treatment seems to have set in, and parts of the body are accented in modelling. But on the whole there is no lowering of artistic integrity nor any lessening of creative vision. Indeed, in some of the examples, said to be from the Karnātak which is evidently doubtful, and once belonging to the Loo collection of Paris (illustrated by Rene Grousset), Chola stone sculptures reach the highest level of 'classical' form in an age when 'classical' values everywhere else in India were rather at a very low ebb. Here is indeed what seems to be a renascence of the seventh-eighth century art of Mamallapuram and Ellora in a more soft and sedate version. A slender and elegant physiognomical form is here upheld by steadied curves; the powerfully built body is mellowed by the softness of the linear movement as well as by a slowly gliding outline defining the limits of the plastic mass treated with a subtle softness of touch. Indeed, South India since the days of the Pallavas had never experienced such noble conception of form, so happy and yet so supple. Rene Grousset dates them in the four-
teenth-fifteenth centuries; presumably they cannot be later than the twelfth.

The Vijayanagara stone sculptures of the fourteenth-fifteenth-sixteenth centuries have two different directions, and both can be met with on the walls of the monuments of the royal citadel. The rectangular panelled reliefs of the Amman shrine of the Hazāra Rāma Temple or the panel of the Throne Platform representing the Holi festival, for example, are deeply cut and the figures are all but roundly formed. They are still characterised by whatever was left of the modelled mass and mannered stiffness of the movements of the body and the limbs. But what is important is that there are compositions (e.g. the Holi scene) which are characterised by sharp angular movements that jerk the 'classical' rhythm, very much like the jerky movements in the Kathakali dance. Here is indeed a different vision creeping in or making itself felt, but is not fully co-ordinated yet. In other compositions, e.g. in the reliefs on the Amman shrine, the classical rhythm is continued with whatever plastic flexibility was still attainable. The reliefs on the Sati stones belong to this category, but reflect the folk-version of the same. The decorative devices are, as a general rule, flattened out and are cut sharply at the edges, a sure sign of the 'mediaeval' idiom.

But the specific 'mediaeval' factor is more conspicuous in the reliefs of the Throne Platform where all figures are flattened out in very low reliefs with sharp outlines. Especially in the human figures are the acuteness and pointed angularity of lines most marked and some of the female figures at any rate are but translations in stone, as it were, of contemporary Gujarāti miniatures. Compositionally, too, the figures lack plastic connectedness as in Gujarāti miniatures. Of all segments of South Indian art during all these centuries, it is in such Vijayanagara reliefs that the 'mediaeval' factor asserted itself, more or less in an isolated way.

The subsequent art of Madura ignores the 'mediaeval' factor altogether and takes up the thread where Vijayanagara left it and brings it up to date. But already in the meanwhile ossification had set in, and now the plastic feeling increasingly becomes more and more deadened. Modelling becomes hardened and overstrained, outlines sharp and hard and yet more heavy in feeling, and the linear movement still and rigid. Side by side intricate over-elaboration of decorative devices and ornamentations and sharp and stiff rendering of jewelleries, as if laid on the bodies as separate volumes, are also on the increase. All these disturb and destroy the plasticity of form, and eventually pronounce the judgment of death on plastic creativity altogether. This is what happened in Madura of the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

seventeenth and the following century, at least so far as stone sculptures and wood carving were concerned.

South Indian art of the tenth and the six or seven subsequent centuries is particularly known, and deservedly so, by its metal images which, by virtue of their special importance, have to be discussed separately. They are mostly cast in copper or bronze, though rarely also in brass. Dated or datable Chola metal images are not hitherto known, but Coomaraswamy suggests that images of Saiva saints, said to have been set up in temples by Rajaraja Chola, may have been really metal images, and Kramrisch dates at least one metal image of Kali\textsuperscript{233a} from Senniyaṉavidū, Tanjore District, early in the tenth century. Coomaraswamy and Arunachalam date the great series of metal images in South Indian style found at Polonnaruva in Ceylon in the thirteenth century; Aiyangar places the series of Vaishnava metal images of South India also in the same century. The great series of typical Nataraja images (Figs. 127 and 129) in metal seem to begin from about the eleventh or twelfth century during the Chola period, not earlier, and continued to be made till as late as the early nineteenth century. The main types represented in the remarkable galaxy of South Indian metal images are the various forms of Siva (Fig. 133), especially the Nataraja (Figs. 127 and 129); Parvati (Figs. 128 and 131); the Saiva saints, Māṇikkavāchakar, Tirujñā-sambandar, Appar, and Sundarar (Fig. 132), all of whom lived before the tenth century; Vishnu and Lakshmi; Krishna; Rāma; the Vaishnava saints called Ālvārs; and figures of royal donors.

The question of dating and, necessarily also of stylistic evolution, of these figures, mostly cult-images, is relatively unimportant, for the simple reason that their artistic form and style throughout these long centuries hardly go through any process of evolution, but maintain a certain high level where they seem to have become fixed. And yet, generally speaking, quite a considerable number of images are informed by a vigour or fervour and an artistic efficiency which unmistakably reflect the mutual response the artist and the created object enjoyed between themselves. Standardisation certainly is there, but not stylisation of artistic form, and the objects are not just image patterns divested of creative urge. To maintain a fixed artistic form at high level, with relatively full creative urge, through almost a millennium of changing circumstances, is indeed a phenomenon in the history of art, as much in the history of human progress, which is worth consideration. Presumably it presupposes a life and society that maintained unimpaired their original faith and conviction in certain forms and feelings, emotions, and ways of
ART

Life, irrespective of the changing social and economic pattern into which their lives were set. But it is the more surprising, so far as South India is concerned, since while contemporary stone sculptures show signs of ossification and exhaustion, the metal images are wrought, not mechanically but with considerable amount of creative vigour and skill.

These images, being cult-images, are almost invariably presented in full frontal view, but are modelled fully in the round; the backs and sides receive almost as much attention as the front, and there is a definite tendency to twist the figures in slow and graceful flexions and round off the contours and volumes. The purity and smoothness of the body surface and the line add charm to the otherwise tight modelling of the plastic mass that seems to be disciplined by exercise. These qualities are maintained through centuries, though in later images of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries there is an attenuation of the physiognomical form and the outline grows more and more sharp; but, throughout, an elegant poise and a sort of dignified balance—both heritages of the classical tradition—are steadily maintained.

Two series of South Indian metal images may be singled out for special mention: the Naṭarāja series and that of Śaiva saints and Vaishnava Alavars. The Naṭarāja (Figs. 127 and 129) is the formal symbol, the visual image, of the cosmic dance of Śiva. In the most consummate realisations by the artists of the profound symbolism of the dance, there is a poise, rhythm, and balance that can only be compared with that of the Buddha images of Sārnāth and the monumental Mahēśamūrti of Elephanta. But while the Buddha image symbolises the 'pure Being', the Naṭarāja symbolises the 'Becoming', as Coomaraswamy puts it. 'Becoming' connotes eternal flux which is in the dance itself, and yet, in the eyes of the artist and the devotee, it is held as rest that is within the divinity himself even while dancing. This very difficult and profound symbolism has been nevertheless concretely visualised by the South Indian artist and interpreted in terms of line and plastic volume. While compositionally the movement of the dance is spread out in space dynamically, the linear movement itself is gracefully and steadily poised and balanced, and the plastic treatment of the volume shows no accent or tension at any given point. Dynamic movement or eternal flux is thus admirably integrated with accentless, tensionless inner rest and calmness.

In the equally significant, if not equally spectacular, figures of Śaiva and Vaishnava saints—also cult-images from the point of view of the artist and the devotees and actually worshipped—the element
of bhakti supplies the creative urge that endows these figures with a charm unique in character. These mortal beings, bathed in humility and devotion (cf. Fig. 130) and surrendered in body and soul to the One they held as the Supreme Being, came to be regarded as saints in later times, and inspire the same emotions of humility, devotion and surrender in the hearts and minds of multitudes who hold them in respect and adoration. It is these emotions of a pure heart that are interpreted in contemporary plastic terms, in suggestive and significant flexions and gestures and individualised expressions as reside in the eyes and the mouth and the general demeanour of the face.

12. GENERAL CONCLUSIONS

It is now clear that the specifically 'mediaeval' factor was accepted and interpreted in different ways, according to the degree of consciousness of mental and emotional responses, or in accordance with the depth of impact felt and understood, in the various regions of this vast sub-continent. How it was done and what principles were followed in the respective provinces of art have been sought to be briefly laid bare in the foregoing pages.

It is further clear that the two storehouses of the classical values and tradition were Eastern and South India which, through centuries, drew upon their respective stores, the latter till the store was run out, the former till its career was cut short by the Muslims. Everywhere else in India the 'mediaeval' impact was felt in varying degrees, and it is significant that those were the regions where the northern ethnic stock was most potent, especially in Mālava, Rājputāna and Western India. But nowhere does the undiluted 'northern' or 'mediaeval' factor make an impress except in painting and textile designs, before the sixteenth or seventeenth century. Indeed, the creativity in the rich and complex structure of early mediaeval sculpture (till the thirteenth century) lies in the balance it is able to maintain between the flowing and plastic aspect of the 'classical' tradition and the linear and angular aspect of the 'mediaeval', and the degree of success or failure in this task is a sure measurement of the artistic merit of the sculptors.

The words 'classical' and 'mediaeval' have only qualitative, i.e. attributive significance, and are chronologically invalid in the present context. 'Classical' qualities of plasticity, viz. accentless distribution of rounded volume and a flowing naturalism, persist in South India for centuries even after the thirteenth, i.e. in a period labelled 'mediaeval' chronologically. Elsewhere also these qualities appear sporadically in different regions of India in the chronologically so-
ART
called ‘mediaeval’ period, as for example, in a wooden figure of
Krishna, the flute-player, now preserved in the Calcutta Asutosh
Museum. On the other hand ‘mediaeval’ or northern qualities begin
to be potent from about the eighth century in Rājputāna (sculpture)
and the Deccan (painting), and become effective and pervasive by
about the tenth and eleventh centuries, at any rate so far as North
India is concerned, and as time pushes forward, assert themselves
more and more, especially in painting and textile designs, though
less in sculpture, sculpture being three-dimensional. Yet to what ex-
tent this three-dimensional art can be flattened out on to the surface,
and interpret subjects in terms of sharp lines and angles and create
a new vision and experience of life, may be seen in the terracottas of
seventeenth and eighteenth century Bengal, in the Gujarātī book-
illustrations of the twelfth and the following four centuries, in
Rājasthānī and Pāhāri miniatures of the sixteenth and the following
three centuries, in the textile designs of Gujarātī beginning from the
thirteenth, and in those of Bengal (Murshidābād Baluchar Sādās),
Orissa (Sambalpur designs), and Madras (Calico prints), to cite only
a few examples.

Except in the South of India, all creative utterance in plastic
terms came practically to a standstill after the thirteenth century,
and there have been no great and original formulations since then.
The essentially humanist emotional movements of the sixteenth
and seventeenth centuries in Northern India (as for example, the
Chaitanya movement in Bengal and of Kabir, Dādu and Nanak else-
where) and the bhakti movement of the South have been responsible
for a considerable amount of plastic work of average standard in
wood and terracotta and also in stone, but they are at their best
informed by a lyrical quality and a homely warmth, not unoften
monotonous in their repetition of themes and patterns. A cross-sec-
tion of contemporary literature in the different provincial languages
of India also shows that this, too, was characterised by similar
emotional qualities and certain set themes and patterns. A stag-
nation in the fundamental life-process is perhaps undeniable, and
this was presumably inevitable in a life essentially rural and agri-
cultural in outlook and actual living. That the South retained its
classical vitality longer than the North is perhaps due to the fact
that the South, for historical reasons, successfully maintained,
through her maritime trade, outside contacts that helped to keep
her in a state of relatively more quickened consciousness. Literary
works like the Rāma-charita-mānasā of Tulsiyāda and Chaitanya-
charitāmrīta of Krishnadas Kavirāja—the only two great North
Indian works, both surcharged with the emotional contents of bhakti
—are great so far as they are rich in classical values of dignity and
poise and largeness of proportion. But such works are rare and they have no counterpart in contemporary plastic art. Indeed creative plastic formulations of three-dimensional volume as a quest for expression and beauty have long ceased to be, so far as this vast sub-continent is concerned.

And here is a point in the history of Indian life and culture that does not yield to a sufficiently reasonable explanation. The plea of rural-agricultural life and outlook is only a tentative one and can hardly be emphasised even as a sufficiently important, far less determining, factor at the present state of our knowledge.

III. PAINTING

1. THE 'MEDIAEVAL' FACTOR

Plasticity of the fully rounded and modelled form had been the most significant characteristic, as much of Indian painting up to the last phase of the work at Ajañā and cognate centres, as of Indian sculpture, till about the eighth century A.D. This is a quality which may legitimately be called 'classical', and this vision and tradition, we have seen, show themselves at their best at Ajañā, Bāgh and Bādāmī. The most essential formal characteristics of this tradition are: (a) the modelling quality of the line that brings out in full the three-dimensional rounded volume of the mass as well as its plasticity; (b) the modelling quality of colour obtained by the employment of colour-shades and colour-tones and by laying on high lights, wherever necessary, to suggest different planes; (c) the quality of brush work which is always free and firm and aims at bold, sinuous and rounded flexibility, especially at the outlines; and (d) a flowing and mellow linear rhythm. These are indeed the pivotal qualities of early Indian painting and they impart that sculpturesque plastic roundness which is such an essential characteristic of the murals of Ajañā, Bāgh and Bādāmī (fifth to seventh century A.D.). But these murals do not represent the total exhaustion or the end of the classical tradition. Under-currents of this tradition or its continuity, albeit within smaller range and in subdued intensity, can, for example, be witnessed in the paintings on the walls of the Kailāsa temple (eighth century A.D.) of Ellora in the Deccan, the Jain shrine at Śiṭāṇḍavaśālī (seventh century A.D.), the Viṣṇu shrine at Trumalai-puram (seventh century A.D.), the Kailāsaśāthī temple at Kāḷīchāl-puram (eighth century A.D.) and the Bṛhadisvara temple at Tanjore (eleventh century A.D.), all in South India, but more pronouncedly in the now well-known MSS.-illustrations of Bihār and Bengal, Nepal and Tibet (tenth to thirteenth century A.D.).
The mediaeval tradition is more complex in character, more expansive in geographical connotation, and also more immediate in ethnic significance. The essential characteristics of this tradition are: (a) sharp, acute line without its modelling capacity, and also without the steady flow of the 'classical' period. This line—quickly and sharply drawn—is the main exponent of the 'mediaeval' tradition; (b) sharp, jerky, and pointed angles, particularly sharp and pointed limbs when and where they form angles—for example, at the elbow and the shoulder—the sharp and peaked nose, the crescent lips with angles acutely turned upwards, the eyebrows, and long wide swollen eyes projected sharply and pointedly beyond their actual extension; (c) jerky movements, in angles and curves, of the body and its distended limbs, that produce a nervous animation quite different from the composed energy and latent dynamism of the 'classical' tradition; (d) total absence of colour-modelling and hence, also, of plasticity, which results in an appearance of flatness of the volume of the contour that resides entirely on the surface; (e) richness of variegated patterns, motifs, and designs, all gathered and adapted to the grip of sharp curves, angles, and points; and (f) an intense preference for designs and patterns of decoration that are basically and essentially geometrical and abstract, as distinct from decorative designs and patterns in steadily moving, swaying and deeply cut, modelled, and rounded curves, curls, scrolls, etc. of the 'classical' tradition, derived basically from the vegetal and animal world.

These specific characteristics were presumably being borne on the shoulders of the northern peoples, perhaps even from pre-Christian centuries, more particularly from the days of the Sakas and Kushānas, in recurrent waves of immigration, and are hence, for convenience' sake, called 'northern'. Modern researches, mainly by Strzygowski and his colleagues, have sought to show that the sharp curves and point pattern and the sharp-quick line of nervous agitation with their logical concomitants were widely prevalent among the nomads of Central Asia, especially among those of Turk and Mongol extraction. These Turk and Mongol nomads, at any rate, seems to have been the most active carriers of this aesthetic vision and artistic tradition. But the manner in which they reached India, the stages through which they passed, and the definite elements of which they were composed, can only be guessed, and not determined as yet with any amount of certainty. That the elements which we see in India were the accumulated results of a continuous ethnic fusion of northern racial elements that poured into the plains of India from the steppes of Central Asia, hardly admits of any doubt. The Sakas and the Yueh-chis (of whom the Kushānas...
were only a facet), the Abhiras, the Hūnas and probably also the Gurjaras were all Central Asian nomads. By about the fifth and sixth centuries A.D. the Hūnas came to disturb the social and political fabric of a large part of India and presumably to introduce certain elements of nomadic forms into India as well as into Afghanistan and Iran with which countries India, especially Western India, maintained intimate relations through centuries. It is most likely that the heterogenous elements of perhaps more than one tradition, brought in by repeated waves of immigration, spread over more than half a millennium, resulted in a very slow but steady fusion. Indeed, it must have been a long process of history for these peoples and their culture to send their roots deep down into the soil of the land where their lot was cast, and then grow from within, as a plant indigenous to the soil itself. The art forms that are most expressive of the specific 'northern' traits are not thus exactly what one sees in 'northern' nomadic art, but as modified by the impact of, and response to, the 'classical' measure that had hitherto been all-pervasive in India. Already in some of the reliefs of the fifth and sixth centuries one witnesses certain definite northern traits; but sculpture being essentially and intrinsically three-dimensional, and plasticity of the fully rounded and modelled mass having been the most important exponent of the 'classically' Indian tradition, it resisted for long the infusion of the 'mediaeval' or 'northern' emphasis on the linear accent, the stiff concave curves, and sharply cut edges and angles. On the other hand, the classical tradition had by the seventh and eighth centuries all but exhausted its potentialities and was now ready to welcome new conceptions of form. Those were ready by the hand and were already available in stray instances and isolated regions.

But, painting, which is two-dimensional, offered much less inherent resistance to the 'northern' conception of form. In the ninth century murals at Ellora we find these traits asserting themselves so emphatically and exuberantly as to indicate past practice over a considerable period of time. Here the gliding and modelling lines of Ajanta are replaced by sharp and thin lines, modulated curves by sharp and pointed angles and roundly modelled surfaces by flat coloured spaces. With Ellora, however, the 'mediaeval' tradition came to stay, and steadily through centuries built up within the confines of India and also outside—in Burma, Siam, and Java, for example—a history of its own. For some time after Ellora the tradition flowed as an undercurrent but nevertheless influenced and transformed the classical tradition by helping the gradual subsidence of the impact and consistency of its modelling and diminution of its volume by sharpening the modelled and rounded line, and by the
ART

introduction of certain geometric forms and motifs. This stage is reflected in the mural paintings of the Jain shrine at Sīṭānagāvāsal and the first layer of paintings on the walls of the temple at Tirumalaipuram, both in the South. By about the eleventh century it begins to make itself felt in some of the miniatures of Eastern India (Nepal, Bihar and Bengal); but from the twelfth to the fifteenth century the tradition is seen actively at work at different localities spread all over India. In murals, so far as extant examples go, it is registered in the earlier layer of paintings at Tirumaruttikunram and the second layer of paintings at Tirumalaipuram, both in South India, and in the Paśčatantra paintings on the ceiling of a maṇḍapa of a Vishnu temple at Madanpur in the Lalitpur District of Central India,—to mention only a few examples. In book illustrations it was extensively in use in West Indian, mainly Gujarātī, miniatures, and in limited range, in East Indian MSS., illustrations and copper-plate drawings. Simultaneously it makes itself felt in Javanese sculpture of Panataran temples, of which the later Javanese Wayang Beber is a lineal descendant, also in contemporary murals in Pagan, Burma, and in Siam. Textile surfaces offered a very rich field for the practice of this tradition, and at least from the thirteenth century onward West Indian textile designs, and later, those of the Deccan, the South, Orissa, and Bengal, register its import in clear unequivocal terms. In Rājāsthān and Pāhāṛī miniatures of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, this mediaeval tradition had been the most dominant inspiration and perhaps the most important stylistic determinant,—a fact which has not yet been sufficiently understood and recognised. This remark applies equally to the Deccanese and Orissan miniatures, roughly, and perhaps wrongly, designated as Deccani Mughal, and belonging to the seventeenth and subsequent centuries. That the large majority of terracottas and wood-carvings, and a very large segment of pāṭā (wooden book-covers) and pāṭa (scroll) paintings of the seventeenth to nineteenth centuries also belong to the same phase of Indian art has also to be remembered in this connection.

Here, then, is a new culture and civilization with a new vision and aesthetic creed which, basically, was ethnically conditioned, and must have coloured and transformed the Indian way of life and thought in other directions also than in art. But the lineaments of this integration have not yet been clearly and sufficiently made out. In plastic art, at any rate, classicism from now onwards is only a heritage which is certainly never forgotten altogether but which is no more informed by any creative urge at the same time, and surrenders its place to the ‘mediaeval’ or ‘northern’ factor which becomes the
common denominator, particularly in painting, drawing, and decorative designs. The factor no doubt feels the pressure and strength, in varying degrees in the various regions and schools of art, of the classical heritage; they interact, but at the same time each remains separately cognisable from now on, till the end of the nineteenth century.

2. ELLORA (c. A.D. 750-800)

A number of temples excavated from the living rock at Ellora (Kailåsa, Indrasabhå, Gåneå and Lankesvara temples, for example) have their ceilings painted in panels. There are also traces of painting left on the ceilings of the Daśāvatāra and Dhumar temples, on the lintel and door jambs of the Kailåsa temple and on the walls of the three storeyed excavation, as well as on those of the Indrasabhå temple, besides others, all at Ellora. There can be no doubt that these represent only a fraction of the paintings of a religious establishment of deep cultural significance, one of the richest in contemporary India.

While Ajanṭå affords a study in depth and solidity, and emphasises the diagonal direction of coming forward of the figures from the deep formless, and emerging on the surface as forms, the paintings on the ceiling of the western porch of the Kailåsa temple at Ellora present a study in surface and is a simple statement of collateral existence on the plane. In the latter case, figures are not born of any impact of coming forth from depths; they are just visible and look as if laid out weightlessly on or in between conglobulated cloud patterns (or aquatic decorative devices), equally thin and shallow and hence weightless. Not alone the clouds that form the ground of the paintings, but the figures, too, seem to float or swim or emerge or soar effortlessly and look as if all volume and heaviness and density have been pumped out of them and replaced by weightless vapour. The conglobulated clouds look so many weightless masses of carded wool or cotton bordered by globular or cusped, and thin or deep black outlines; the figures have legs that have not to carry the weight of the body, but bent in acute angles; they also soar or float like the arms and hands, and the slim weightless bodies look as if suspended in space. Whatever roundness of modelling and density the clouds or the figures have is only by way of inheritance or remembrance of a past practice; they are all thin and shallow in texture and lay-out, and do not reside in the dense, consistent and surcharged atmosphere of Ajanṭå. And, since the vaporous clouds, thin and shallow figures, decorative devices, and everything else reside on the
ART

surface, practically without any modelling, the line in its varied rhythms becomes the most important exponent of these paintings.

The composition of these Ellora paintings is measured out in rectangular panels with thick flat borders; they have been conceived within given limits of frames that hold the paintings. In this matter, so far as the paintings on the ceilings are concerned, they followed the architectural scheme of the division of the ceiling into a large-size central lotus, on the four outer sides of which are two huge rectangles, an inner and an outer one. What was originally conceived as murals laid out on the limitless expanse of the walls, was thus made to fit within bordered rectangular panels, not only on the ceilings but on the walls as well. Space in the sense of Ajanta does not exist at Ellora. In the former case all spaces are surcharged with a density born of the impact of the figures bodys forth from the depths; in the latter there is nowhere any density or consistency, and this is sought to be compensated by filling up the entire ground with all sorts of figures, men and women, decorative devices, clouds, fantastic animals, etc.

The technique of preparing the ground for these murals is the same as that of Ajanta, and the colours too are the same; black, white, yellow and earth reds (Indian red, terre-verte or buff earth) and buff, all applied rather thinly and without any modelling. In the first layer of paintings, however, the colours are darker than in the second. The outlines are drawn sharply in thick black or deep red.

The two layers of paintings on the ceiling of the western porch of the Kailasa temple are separated in time by about a century; but the above remarks apply equally to both, despite stylistic variations in detail in one and the same layer, which shows, incidentally, that different styles commingled irrespective of the age of the two layers. This means that the two layers belong to one and the same tradition.

Two main varieties of stylistic form and treatment are clearly discernible in these paintings of the Kailasa temple. The majority of the figures and movements belong to the classical tradition of Ajanta, that is, they are somewhat roundly modelled in colour and have also a modelled outline, but with considerable thinning down of the consistency of the modelling itself. Nor is there any sign of the impact of coming forward as in Ajanta. Correspondingly with the figures, the clouds in such panels are also roundly modelled masses with modelled outlines in deeper shade of the same colour or in deep red; coloured in dark or white they contrast sharply with the white or dark colour of the figures. But they have not the
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

density or consistency of Ajanta clouds and are considerably thinner. The paintings in the Lañkaévara, Indrasabhã and Ganesã cave temples belong to this variety. The physiognomical type of the figures in such compositions is closely related to those of the Pallava rock reliefs of Mâmallapuram and the reliefs of the Virupaksha temple at Pattadakal. A slim attenuated body endowed with agile and smooth limbs and a longish face is lightly borne by a pair of long slender legs. The body and the supple limbs seem to be suspended from the strong pair of shoulders and the expanded chest wherein lies the centre of gravity. Despite the comparative roundness of the volume brought about by the livingness of breathing, the bodies seem to soar or float weightlessly and gracefully, as if poised in mid-air (compare the figures in the Gangavatarama relief at Mâmallapuram) in the midst of the floating clouds which constitute their abode. Light and transparent draperies and flying scarves only emphasise this flying vision of the figures themselves. In one aspect at least some of the painted figures at Ellora (Kailãsa temple) try to emulate the corresponding type in stone sculpture; it is in the convex curve of the chest and abdomen brought about by the forward thrust of the chest. In sculpture, this curve, which reflects the energy and strength of the figures, is attained by modelling the plastic volume; in painting, which doubtless is slighter in total effect, it is the work of the outline drawn with zest and power.

The other form and stylistic variety is to be seen in a type of figures and clouds mainly linear in treatment and practically without any modelling of the plastic volume, i.e. bodies from which volume has all but evaporated. Such figures and clouds are defined by thick and desiccated outlines in black, and the clouds turn themselves on to edges formed of deep or shallow curves entwined by cusps, scrolls, and dots. It is in such compositions that the 'mediaeval' factor is comparatively more pronounced than in the other variety. In the latter also the general thinning down of the roundness of volume and outline has been due to the impact of the 'mediaeval' tendency. Indeed, at Ellora, the line is the main exponent and not the modelled mass, which can directly be attributed to the mediaeval grip.

Yet, the 'classical' tradition of modelling of the mass and the outline as well as the illusion of the impact of coming forward from the depths is not ignored altogether. They are, to begin with, accepted so far as they are remembered as a heritage, and then, stage by stage, they are caught by the 'mediaeval' grip that causes steady subsidence of the classical values.

For example, in the paintings in the inner rectangle of the
ceiling of the western porch of the Kailāsa temple (Fig. 134) there is the scene of a lotus pool on the wavy waters of which large-sized lotus leaves are tossed and turned upon themselves, and elephants madly sport in joy in their midst—a favourite theme in literature. Here the figures of elephants appear emerging somewhat from the depths; they are toughly and roundly modelled. The turning back of the cup-shaped lotus leaves is also treated in round but tight plasticity; their rims are round and heavy. Certainly the echoes of Ajañṭā are listened to with attention; but at the same time flatness of the human faces, the peak-pointed nose, the disposition of the arms and the palms on the surface and increasing disregard of foreshortening have all been due to the intrusion of the mediaeval factor.

In the paintings of the outer zone of the rectangle, however, there is practically an all but complete subsidence of the impact of the modelling of the mass as well as of the line. The latter is drawn sharply, fluently and incisively, and as outline to the cloud-formations it is fixed with curves and dots. Figures of Ajañṭēsque affiliation are nowhere; they generally belong to the Pallava form, and in a few instances the local idiom of Ellora is employed. But the most characteristic features of these figures are the sharp twist of the head and pointed angular bends of the arms, both away from the body animated by jerky angular movements, the concave curve of the closed lips, the sharp peaked and projected nose, the long-drawn wide-eyes. Here is then a new vision of form, a new source of energy that not only transforms the figures in their lineaments, but transforms the composition correspondingly where everything else also responds equally fluently and vibrantly.

This ‘mediaeval’ grip slowly and steadily settles down and, stage by stage, not necessarily in chronological sequence, the different phases can be followed in the paintings on the ceilings and walls of the cave-temples of Ellora. The ‘mediaeval’ grip is not all pervasive, but it transforms the classical vision and is itself transformed by it.

There can be no doubt that despite the rich significance of a new creative vision that asserts itself with force and insistence, the paintings of Ellora do not, at any stage or in any of its phases, reach the level of those at Bāgh, Ajañṭā and Bādāmī, either aesthetically or intellectually. Ellora employs all the glowing colours and tones with subtle nuances known to Ajañṭā, but much of the charged density and consistency of the latter has evaporated, and a preference for conspicuous contrasts makes the paintings appear somewhat frolicky.
3. SOUTH INDIA (c. A.D. 1100-1300)

Remnants of Indian wall-paintings south of the Deccan plateau and belonging to this period are still to be found, for example, on the walls of the Vijayalaya Choliśvara temple at Narttamalai in the old Pudukkoṭai State (c. A.D. 1100), of the Bhāhadiśvara temple (Fig. 135) at Tanjore (c. A.D. 1100), on the brick built walls affixed in front of the cave (c. A.D. 1100), and also on the cave walls (c. A.D. 1300-1350) at Tirumalai in North Arcot, on the walls of the Sangita-maṇḍapa at Tiruparuttikunram, Kāṇchipuram (c. A.D. 1387-88), and the Uchayappa-maṇḍapa at Anegundi of about the same date. It is not unlikely that paintings of the period, yet unknown to us, exist on the walls of other South Indian temples. Caves and temple walls were painted over as soon as they were excavated and built; and, generally speaking, the dates of paintings are roughly those of the monuments themselves. But in certain instances, as for example in the Vijayalaya Choliśvara temple at Narttamalai where repairs had to be undertaken at a later period, or where the first layer was painted over by a second or more layers of painting, the fixation of dates of later paintings becomes a difficult problem, and one has to take recourse to the question of stylistic evolution and variation.

The Vijayalaya Choliśvara temple at Narttamalai seems to have been built originally in the ninth century; subsequently it was struck by lightning, necessitating extensive repairs, presumably towards the end of the eleventh or beginning of the twelfth century. To judge from their style, the paintings that are all spread on the walls of the ardha-maṇḍapa of this temple, seem to have been executed not long after the repairs to the temple were carried out. From the meagre vestiges that are still preserved, it is clear that the temple was Śaiva; large-scale painted figures of Mahākāla, Devī, and Śiva Nājaśāja are still visible, along with other minor figures. Stylistically the figure of Mahākāla is stereotyped, but its affinity with the slightly earlier painting of Śiva as Tripurāntaka in the Bhāhadiśvara temple at Tanjore is unmistakable. Later Chōla characteristics are also evident in the form and shape of hair decoration, karacśa mukuta, costumes, etc. of the Devī. Outlines of figures are invariably in red, and the colours extensively used are terre-verte, yellow and red of varied tones, green, black, and white; high lights in white are used on finger tips. Chōla forms and physiognomy are apparent, and ‘classical’ values of full rounded volume are gratefully remembered, though with lessened consistency of colour-modelling. A flattening on the surface, clearly perceptible, is due certainly to pressure of the ‘mediaeval’ factor; but while the classical plastic form and treatment of modelling
ART

persist in such examples as in a fragment of a standing female figure with folded hands, the finger tips of the hand being touched by high lights (to the right, in the second recess from entrance), the mediaeval form makes itself felt nowhere so strongly as in another fragment of two rows of flying figures whose faces and busts, flattened out on the surface, are shown in three-quarter profile, and noses, eyes, and mouths are drawn in sharp, pointed angular lines (in the second recess, to the right, from the entrance). Undoubtedly the latter is more vital and vibrant in its diction and mood. The former, that is the classical type or whatever residues are left of it, is closely related to the almost contemporary (eleventh century) wall-paintings in the Brihadiśvara temple at Tanjore built by the great Rājarāja I.

The paintings of the Brihadiśvara temple are tucked away under its 190 ft. high vimāna in a dark passage around the main cela of the temple. There are two layers of paintings on the walls, of which the upper layer is slowly peeling off, exposing to view the lower, i.e. the earlier one. To judge from style, there does not seem to be a long lapse of time between the two layers of paintings. Like that of the Narttamalai, the subject matter of these paintings is frankly Saiva, and the scenes representing Śiva in his abode of Kailāsa, with his saintly devotees, as Nataraja and Tripūrantaka, in the company of gajas, gandharvas, apsaras, and so on, are laid on the walls in large and forceful compositions. The technique, as usual, is that of tempera, and the paintings are executed on a surface of soft lime plaster—presumably composed of powdered conch-shell or mother of pearl—of uniform thickness of an egg-shell. The outlines are drawn in light red or brown, later on deepened by black or reddish browns. Pigments used for contours, backgrounds, and decorations are yellow ochre, red ochre, terre-verte, brown earth, white, black, and lapis lazuli blue. Much of the ‘classical’ consistency and depth of colour application have somewhat evaporated, making the figures look flatter and thinner in the context of volume. Nor, compositionally, are the figures connected in any inherent relationship; some of the groups are schematically arranged in horizontal panels, one below the other. Exceptions are rare, as in the two panels representing Śiva and saint Sundara, and Śiva as Tripūrantaka, respectively.

But, as in those of the Narttamalai, the classical volume is still remembered and there is a conscious attempt at giving it as much value as possible, with the help of broadly modelled lines, ample curves and colour tones. Seated figures have still their graceful, though conventional, bhaṅgas, and dignified movements; but the
standing figures are devoid of any inner plasticity and look stiff and inelastic. The grip of the ‘mediaeval’ factor is, however, unmistakable in the treatment of the face, shown invariably in three-quarter profile, with fish-shaped eyes drawn sharply to pointed angles in both directions, long beak-like sharply pointed nose and pointedly angular chins—all set on a squarish face and contrasting sharply with a pair of roundly modelled, fully plastic lips drawn in double curves. The two modes and visions, ‘classical’ and ‘mediaeval’, thus commingle in these paintings and, acting and reacting on each other, transform themselves. But, on the whole, the South adheres more tenaciously to the former than adopt and integrate the latter.

Almost contemporary with the Narttamalai and Brihadiśvara (Tanjore) temple paintings are those of the first layer on the brick walls of the outermost chamber on the second storey of the Lakshmīśvara maṇḍapa at Tirumalai. But stylistically they belong to a slightly different diction and variety than those of the Narttamalai paintings. The subject matter of the Tirumalai paintings is Jain in inspiration. In the preserved vestiges on the back wall and the adjacent one, against dark black background, Devas, Devis, Gaṇḍharvas, and nuns, animals, etc. are arranged in panelled sectors bordered by rows of haṁsas, festoons and lotuses, and surrounded by gaṇḍharvas and kimpurūshas. Full frontal or three-quarter faces with eyes wide open look out intently towards a definite point; the hands of figures are held in aṣṭājali pose. But whether the subject is human beings, demigods, animals, or vegetation, the treatment is invariably flat, and volumes are gathered on the surface; hardly anything is left of the body-shaping colour modelling of the classical tradition. The lines, too, have lost much of their modelling quality, and despite good draughtsmanship, also much of their bold vigour. The mediaeval grip is evident in the sharp lines and angles, beak-like pointed noses, up-line curves, and flat treatment of ornaments. White has been extensively used at Tirumalai along with different varieties and grades of ochre and terre-verte, also grey and red; use of mixed and impure colours, mainly in ochre and terre-verte, and black background seem to have been a special feature at Tirumalai. The paintings on the outside of the brick façade also belong to the same category.

The second layer of paintings at Tirumalai is still visible on the ceiling of the outermost chamber, referred to above, and on the walls of the adjacent rock-cut cave. Here the volume has thinned out further and the figures are completely gathered on the surface. The lines have become further sharpened and the bhaṅgas have all lost their plastic flexibility.
4. WESTERN INDIA (c. A.D. 1100-1300)

From all that we know of the settlements of ‘northern’ peoples from the beginning of the Christian era to about the eighth century A.D., their impact seems to have been strongest in Western India, mainly in Gujarāt and West Rājputāna, and to an extent, also in Western Mālavā. It is thus in the nature of things that ‘northern’ or ‘mediaeval’ traits are most marked in those regions, especially in Western India and Rājputāna, and this is true more in the realm of painting than in that of sculpture. But, despite isolated examples of earlier date, the ‘mediaeval’ conception of form does not become general and all-pervasive before the twelfth century A.D.

The geographical position of Gujarāt and the adjoining territories made them centres of great international trade, whence the arterial routes to the heart of Northern India lay through Mālavā and Rājputāna. The inland trade was mostly in the hands of the Jains who had always been zealous guardians of past traditions and great patrons of their religion, art, and culture. Their monastic establishments of which bhāṣāḍāras or libraries were invariable integrals, especially those of Mārwār on the one side and Kāthiāvār on the other, were not only important centres of artistic activity, but also provided, at a later date, much needed asylums to artists and others who fled from other parts of Gujarāt in the worst days of Muslim invasion and oppression, and enabled them to organize new art-centres and continue the tradition more or less uninterrupted. Even before the Muslim invasion of Gujarāt, the fertility of her central alluvial plains and the wealth of her trade and commerce helped the growth of a rich art under the aegis of the Chaulukyas. Indeed, Chaulukya sculpture and architecture are much more elaborate and sensitive than those patronised and brought into existence by the Paramāras or the Chāhamānas. Quantitatively also the Chaulukyas seem to have reared up monuments far greater in number and richer in the profusion of sculptural and decorative details. Their political and cultural suzerainty in the twelfth century extended to Kutch and Saurāśṭrā on the one hand and Mālavā and Mārwār on the other, and the Chaulukya art spread in Rājputāna as far as Chitór, Bīkaner, and Oṣīa. In A.D. 1222 the Chaulukyas were superseded by the Vaghelas who, so far as Rājputāna is concerned, continued the Chaulukya tradition, though somewhat decadent by now. The invasion of Qub-ud-dīn Aibak in A.D. 1197 and the conquest of Gujarāt by the Khaljīs a century later led to the disintegration of the Chaulukya and Vaghela art-centres of the country, and fleeing of artists to such places as Kāthiāvār, Iḍar, Mī. Abu, Achalgadh, Dungarpur, and Pāwāgadh where...
local Hindu rulers offered successful resistance to the Muslims up to the fifteenth century. In these localities and particularly in the Jain monasteries and temples, the rich heritage of Chaulukya art, mainly Jain in religious inspiration, was given a new span of life, though in a rather degenerate and complicated manner. Sheltered within the monasteries and cut away from the general life of the people, the art was stylised and increasingly influenced by hieratic conventions.

The first thing that arrests one's attention in the Gujarati paintings is that these are all invariably MSS. illustrations in miniature, executed on palm-leaf, and later, from about the middle of the fourteenth century, on paper which was gradually supplanting palm-leaf as a writing material. But palm-leaf was not altogether given up till the beginning, at any rate, of the fifteenth century. A connected sequence of these paintings is available in a large number of MSS. both dated and undated (to which approximate dates can be ascribed on stylistic considerations), that range from about the beginning of the twelfth to about the end of the fifteenth century.

More than four centuries of these MSS.-paintings in miniature, despite a common denominator that belongs to the strong 'mediaeval' factor, do not, however, represent one integrated style in a regular process of evolution. The common denominator is easily known by the sharp, pointed lines flatly laid in thin or thick strokes, by the almost flat laying of colours in two-dimensional effect with but the slightest suggestion of modelled plasticity, by the treatment of the eyes, nose, and body-joints that are given an accentuated appearance and effect by an emphasis on sharp pointed angles and lines, by the flat treatment of all decorative and architectural devices, and no less by certain geometrical decorative designs that are typically 'northern'. It is needless to point out that all these stylistic characteristics and the flat, essentially two-dimensional, aesthetic vision and treatment are 'mediaeval'.

Despite this common denominator, the long and rich series of West Indian miniature painting shows varieties of style that merit consideration. There is one class of painting the compositions of which are relatively simple, with but few figures set against a background which is also simple and without any accessory details of architecture, room-hangings or other decorations; details of jewellery and intricate designs of costumes being rather suggested than actually worked out. The line-strokes in such examples are relatively thick, the curves are full and steady, and the drawing sure and unfafltering. Of human figures, profiles and three-quarters are given preference, and eyes, noses, chins, beards, costume-hangings

688
or frills, finger-points, etc. are all drawn in sharp pointed angles. A very characteristic feature is the treatment of the eyes which are drawn in two parabolic curves with sharp pointed sides set on the same level, the eye-lashes being drawn in sharp and extended bow-like curves. Even in profiles or almost profiles both eyes are shown, with one eye drawn projectedly somewhat out of its context. Earliest examples of this class are a couple of paintings in a palm-leaf MS. dated in A.D. 1127 (Śantinātha Temple Bhāṇḍār, Cambay; MS. No. 6.2). In this version the West Indian miniatures have certain parallels with contemporary East Indian miniatures, especially in poses and attitudes of figures, the quality of the line, and slight suggestion of plastic modelling of the body-contour.

There is yet another style of West Indian miniature painting, known already from about the middle of the twelfth century A.D., which reflects the 'mediaeval' tendency in a still more pronounced manner. In the examples of this style the lines are equally sharp but have not the fineness of the class just referred to above. They are moreover broken and somewhat desiccated, not drawn in one sweep; they are also joined in pointed angles which do not integrate. Nor is there any attempt to crowd the composition with too many details; the few accessories that fill the spaces as well as the main figures themselves are all summarily and perhaps somewhat roughly worked out. There are also definite evidences, in some examples, of shading which is done by the use of colour and a shaded line. In the poses and attitudes as well as in the formal appearance and treatment there is unmistakably a conscious vigour which seems to be partly traditional, partly drawn from some submerged folk style. A peculiar treatment of the eyes seems to be characteristic of this class of miniatures. They are drawn not horizontally on one level, but separately on different levels; this is clearly noticeable at the nose where the corners of the eyes meet, one inside corner placed considerably below the level of the inside corner of the other. Earliest examples of this class of paintings can be seen in a MS. (No. 1155), dated A.D. 1161, belonging to the Viravijayaji Śrī Jaina Śvetāmbara Jñāna Mandir Bhāṇḍār at Chavi, near Baroda.

To whatever class of the common denominator these paintings belong, and despite their pictorial and decorative quality, their glowing colours of red, yellow, blue, and gold, West Indian miniature painting is highly stylised and conventional, cold and mechanical. They are intellectually conceived and despite their bright and glowing pigments there is little of emotional warmth in the general effect. But technically they are examples of perfect craftsmanship and of pure pictorial significance. In their generally cold and mechanical
effect, they perhaps reveal the inner meaning and psychology of Jainism to which the majority of the paintings owe their origin and inspiration.

5. EASTERN INDIA (BENGAL, BIHAR), NEPAL AND TIBET

Specimens of painting datable earlier than the Pāla culture-period have not yet been found anywhere in Eastern India or Nepal. Extant specimens of early paintings in Eastern India, up to the thirteenth century at any rate, are illuminations on palm-leaves and paper of MSS. and on wooden covers of MSS. Besides, so far as Bengal is concerned, we have at our disposal at least three engraved drawings on copper-plates that may be said to belong to about the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The MSS.-illuminations are almost all, with but rare exceptions, of Vajrayāna Buddhist inspiration; but the engraved drawings are all Brahmanical.

Since there is hardly any appreciable major stylistic difference between the illuminations of Bihār and Bengal or Bengal and Nepal, at least till as late as the thirteenth century A.D., they may conveniently be studied as belonging to one and the same school. These miniatures, it is important to remember, do not represent a separate style of book-illustration; they are, in fact, mural paintings in reduced dimensions, and can in no way be compared with the truly characteristic phase of book-illustration that constitutes a fascinating chapter in the history of painting in Persia, China, mediaeval Europe and late mediaeval India. Nor can they be said to have anything to do with primitive or folk-painting; in fact they reveal an already developed form and technique intimately linked with an art practice and tradition that must have existed in the form of large wall-paintings or MSS-illuminations that carried the earlier tradition of Bāgh and Ajanta in an uninterrupted sequence. These small-scale paintings, executed within the narrow dimensions of a MS. page, may easily be thrown mechanically on the wall in any magnified scale and yet would not suffer in the least in either the movement of the line, for example, or the compactness of the composition. Truly speaking, these paintings are large scale murals in reduced dimensions.

The colours used are orpiment yellow, white, indigo blue, Indian ink-black or kajjol, cinnabar red, and green which appears to be a mixture of orpiment and indigo, unlike the green of Ajanta. All these colours are used in different shades. The general colour arrangement, on the whole, of the divinities at any rate, is mostly determined by iconographic requirements. Neither Indian red or any ochres nor ultramarine seems to have been used. Tonality of colours is
practically unknown, but high lights are given by the application of white. The outline is drawn either in black or red, and seems to have been sketched out first and later on filled in with colour.

Usually the composition of these illuminations follows certain well-known schematic principles of balance. In most of them the main divinity, always relatively larger, stands or is seated in the centre, against a background either of an architectural design or of an oval or semi-round aureole, or inside a terraced temple decoration, flanked evenly on two sides by lesser divinities of the maṇḍala, in single or double, straight or circular, rows as their number may require. When the main divinity occupies one side, the lesser ones of the maṇḍala occupy another. Vacant spaces are filled by flying semi-divine beings, vegetal and ornamental decorations, architectural motifs, or similar other devices.

With the help of dated MSS. it is possible to arrange these miniatures in a rough chronological sequence, but such a sequence would be hardly worth while, for it hardly shows any stylistic evolution. Formally and psychologically they are conventional, and inevitably betray a traditional outlook. Indeed, the trend and tendencies seem to have remained fixed, more or less, during the three centuries beginning from the eleventh. Life seems to have remained stagnant all the while within the confines of the monasteries.

East Indian miniature paintings are, stylistically speaking, painted equivalents of contemporary plastic art of the Pālas and Senas, both in outer form and inner meaning. So far as the plastically modelled mass is concerned, what the sculptor achieves by gradations in three dimensions at his disposal, the painter does with his colours applied with varying degrees of thinness or consistency, as well as with the help of linear inflexions. The modelled mass is held by definite but sinuous lines, flowing steadily and modelled; the flowing curve of the contour of the body and the lower abdomen as well as the sensitivity of the finger curves are unmistakable heritages of the classical tradition. The best specimens of this tradition can be seen, for example, in the illuminations of two Prājñā-pāramitā MSS. executed in the 5th and the 6th year of king Mahipāla (Cambridge Univ. Coll. No. Add. 1464 and ASB. Coll. No. 4713—Figs. 140 and 141—respectively), the Gaṇḍavyūha MS. (Fig. 136) in the possession of Roerich, and another Prājñā-pāramitā MS. (ASB. Coll. No. A. 15) dated in the Nepalese era 191 (A.D. 1071). In the best examples, subtle transmission in the modelling of colour is fully valid (Fig. 142); equally valid is the modelling quality of the sinuous line increasing and decreasing in thickness in accordance with the degree of the surging roundness of the contour. But even in such
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

examples there are indications of increasingly thinning down of the plasticity or stagnation of the plastically modelled treatment. The modelling quality of the line in such examples may or may not be left untouched. In the Cambridge MSS. referred to above, the faint and stereotyped colour modelling does not, however, affect the line which is still vital in its modelling capacity. The illuminations of a MS. in the Boston Museum (No. 20589) dated in the 4th year of Gopál (III ?), of the well-known Sawamura MS. and of the Vredenburg MS. (Fig. 137), for example, belong to this category. But in certain illuminations, for example, in the Cambridge MS. No. Add. 1643 dated A.D. 1015, the lines are weak, brisk and faltering; they seem to be broken or desiccated and have lost their steady uninter-
rupted flux. In some examples they are even sharp and hectic. Also, whatever modelling in colour is evident, is desiccated and disintegrated. But in the same MS., e.g., the one with the label "Samata je Jayatunga Lokanatha," the line is not so crisp and short-featured, but is equally unrefined by any grace or sentiment. Modelling in colour is also faint and thin (cf. Fig. 138). This is equally evident in the illuminations of another MS. (ASB. No. 4203) dated in the Nepalese era 268 (A.D. 1148). They seem to have a distinctly Nepalese flavour and idiom which is marked by the absence of any trace of modelling in the coloured surface, the upward stiffening of the pale-like erect bodies, and the curt and broken, almost stagnant, character of the line. In certain ex-
amples, even of earlier date, the tendency towards linearisation is unmistakable, and this tendency appears side by side, sometimes even in the same painting, with the thoroughly 'classical', i.e. plastic treatment—undoubtedly an evidence of the 'mediaeval' interpenetration into the 'classical' conception. An illumination, reproduced on pl. XXXIII (right topmost panel) of Coomaraswamy's Portfolio of Indian Art, illustrates, even better than those already referred to, this 'mediaeval' element in East Indian painting. But the clear character of this 'mediaeval' factor can best be seen in a few twelfth and thirteenth century copper-plate drawings, those from Sunderbans and Chittagong, for example.234 In both these drawings the modelling quality of the line is fully valid; it is still flowing, alert and sweeping; but wherever there is the slightest pre-
text, it loves to indulge in brisk curves and pointed angles. The lines of the face, when shown in profile or three-quarters, form angles or sharp curves in a beak-like nose or in an almost angular chin, and the bow-like curves of the brows or rims of the upper lips are extended as far as they would permit, much in the same manner as in contemporary West Indian miniatures.

It is easy to discover a superficial resemblance between this
linear tradition of East Indian miniatures and drawings and that of Western India and Rajputana. Certainly both belong to the 'mediaeval' conception and manner of treatment, but there is yet a marked difference. The line in the Western tradition is flaming and pointed, angles are sharp almost to a geometrical point, and though there is the same predilection for brisk and extended curves, they are not unoften broken and are drawn without any warmth of feeling or emotion. On the other hand the East Indian line is sensitive and emotional, and has a melodious lyricism even in its sharpness and desiccation. The 'Western' line has nothing but flat and hardened surface to control within its limits, but the East Indian line, with its sensitiveness, tempered lyricism, and short or extended curves as the case may be, shows off the roundness of the mass that is confined within its boundaries. The rich and glowing and summarily laid colours of West Indian miniatures have nothing to compare with the subdued tones and modelled plasticity of East Indian colours, thinly or consistently applied.

East Indian manuscript-illuminations refer to the regnal years of the Pala kings, but those from Nepál are invariably dated in the Nepàlese era, and Nepàlese paintings comprise not only MSS.-illuminations but also prabhás, painted banners, and painted wooden MSS. covers. Dated and illuminated MSS. are known onwards from the eleventh century and dated banners from the sixteenth, though painted Nepàlese banners, ascribed to dates onwards from A. D. 900, were discovered at Tun-huang.

The Tun-huang painting banners are but painted counterparts of contemporary East Indian sculpture, and that in an inferior version. The figures are thin, as if without a substance. The line is alert, round and sweeping, but there is hardly any modelling of colour which is usually massed together in blotches or distributed on flat surfaces. Whatever the postures, the attitude of the figures has hardly any inner meaning—or even an artistic significance. Indeed, these are some of the essential features that characterise Nepàlese paintings from the very outset.

These features are also evident in the MSS-illuminations; in the earlier ones (eleventh century A.D.) the line has a largeness, a simple vivacity, and some kind of an emotional quality. At this stage Nepàlese painting is but a component of contemporary East Indian MSS. painting. The paintings of the ASB. MS. No. A. 15 (Fig. 138) and Cambridge MS. Add. 1643, for example, belong to this phase. But already in the twelfth and succeeding centuries there is a progressive desiccation of colour-modelling, and a lessening of the modelling capacity of the line which, moreover, has a tendency to-
wards becoming crisp, dry, and brittle; curves, too, become shorter and clipped. Sharp and hectic 'Western' lines and pointed angles also make their intrusion. Not only do Nepalese paintings at this stage throw aside the refined elegance and exuberance and the continuous, sensitive flux of the 'Eastern' line, but compositionally, too, they bid good-bye to the continuous and sweeping rhythm of the East Indian composition and adopt one that is clipped and divided in single units. The figures stiffen increasingly; they are erect and vigorous, and yet without any substance, accentuating their angles whenever they bend sideways. These are characteristic Nepalese tendencies that are evidenced till as late as the sixteenth century, as applied to Indian themes and formulations. The paintings of the ASB. MS. No. 4203 (dated N. S. 268 = A. D. 1148), of the Durbar Library MS. of the Nityāṅkātaka (dated N. S. 515 = A.D. 1395), and that on the wooden cover of a MS. of about A.D. 1200, for example, belong to this phase.

1. Ṣārkiṣa, Chaps. XIX and XXI; ISGD, Patala XXX; Tantra-samuchchaya, Patala II; Suprabhadra, Chap. XXX (Keśara of this text is apparently a mistake for Vesara); Kāmikāgama, Patala XXIX; Kāyapa-sūrya, Chap. XXI; SR, Chap. XVI; Samarpindangatanāthā, Chap. LVII (this text replaces Vesara by Vairati); Ap.-p. (MS. in S. K. Roy collection, Fol. 31) omits Vesara and mentions, along with Nāgarī and Driyā, Lāti and Vairā; an inscription from Holā (Bellary District) adds Kālīga to the list of Nāgarī, Dravidā, and Vesara (Annual Report of the Assistant Archaeological Superintendent, Southern Circle, for Epigraphy, for 1915, pp. 40-90).

2. Sarvam sarvadheṣu bhavant-ityapi kechana (ISGD); Sarvam sarvatra samātām (Kāmikāgama).

3. ISGD; SR; Kāyapa-sūrya; Kāmikāgama. The Ap.-p. confines the Nāgarī (Nāgarī) style to Madhyadeśa (Nāgarī Madhyadēsa) and mentions Lāti (Lāti Lāti prakṛiti) and Vairā (Vairā Vairā tu avadājā), evidently of Lāti and Vairā regions, as separate styles, along with the Nāgarī and Dravidā. On the evidence of the monuments Lāti and Vairā should be considered as ramifications of the Nāgarī style. Kālīga of the Holāl inscription is, likewise, a regional manifestation of the Nāgarī style.

4. ISGD; SR.

5. Kāmikāgama; ISGD; SR. The interchange of the Dravidā and the Vesara regions, as we have in the Kāyapa-sūrya, is evidently a mistake.

6. SR; Tantra-samuchchaya.

7. Kāmikāgama; Ṣārkiṣa. Here stūpi means the top of the śikhara and should not be confused with the domical crowning member (technically called stūpi or stūpakā) of the Dravidā temples.

8. Chaturāntāpyataṃ yam-Nāgarī pari-kṛtānaṃ-Śrīśastra; Ṣārkiṣa.

9. IC, VII, pp. 74-75.


11. Driyāsthāpita doḷa Driyādak śūnyā cānakā — ISGD; SR.

12. Kāmikāgama; ISGD; Suprabhadra; Tantra-samuchchaya; SR; Kāyapa-sūrya.

13. Kāmikāgama; Ṣārkiṣa.

14. The description of the ISGD that a Dravidā temple may also be square below the neck and octagonal above has a general likeness with the early mediaeval temples of the Dravidā country.


604
23. JRASBL, XIII, pp. 63-73. See above, p. 211.
24. Another temple of this type may be seen in the Dakra Bhimesvara at Bhuban-
25. HIEA, p. 115. This date is usually accepted by scholars.
26. The author is indebted to Sri N. K. Bose, Calcutta University, for this informa-
27. JASB, VII, pp. 828-29, pI. XL.
28. Information kindly supplied by Sri N. K. Bose, Calcutta University.
29. ASI, 1927-28, pp. 14. This date is usually accepted by scholars.
31. For a general account of the Orissan temples the following may be consulted:
32. ASC, XIII, pp. 63-73. See above, p. 211.
33. ASC, XIII, p. 64.
34. ASC, XVII, p. 64; ASC, XXI, p. 141; HIEA, pp. 184; Br. I.A., p. 133.
35. It should be remembered, however, that the śindhiira garbhagriha and ānga-
36. ASC, XVII, p. 63; ASC, XXI, p. 64; Br. I.A., p. 133.
37. MASI, No. 23, pp. 61-62, pI. XVIII (a).
38. Ibid., p. 66, pI. XVIII (b).
39. HIEA, II, pp. 121-122.
40. For temples at Amarkantak, MASI, No. 23, pp. 63-65, pIs. XIII-XVI.
41. For temples at Amarkantak, MASI, No. 23, pp. 63-65, pIs. XIII-XVI.
in Vikrama Saniwat 1075 (A. D. 1019) the ornamental torana was set up by two individuals whose names are lost. The style of the temple with the sikhares of the sanctum surrounded by clusters of anga-sikhares belongs to the eleventh century A.D., though the evidence of the earlier history of the shrine is fully supported by the varied forms of the pillars of the mandapa, of the porch and of the torana in front. The sikhara itself was put together with old materials about a century back, but it essentially retains the form of the eleventh century A.D. The original shrine of Sachiya Mata may go back to the eighth century A.D. But the present temple can hardly be earlier than the twelfth when, according to an inscription, dated Vikrama Saniwat 1234 (A.D. 1177) the jangighara was furnished with certain sculptures by a banker of the name of Gayapala.

65. KHT, II, pl. LXXVI.
66. Stella Kramrisch, Art of India, pls. 132-33.
68. For a general account, reference may be made to HIEA, II, pp. 36-43; Henry Cousens, AAWI, pp. 46-49; Percy Brown, Br. I.A., pp. 147-48, 149.
69. Henry Cousens, AAWI, p. 46.
70. Ibid, p. 47.
71. Henry Cousens, Somnath, p. 37.
72. The author is grateful to Sri N. K. Bose, Calcutta University, for this information.
73. Henry Cousens thinks they were made of stone—Somnath, p. 37.
74. Ibid, p. 6.
75. HfA, p. 82.
77. James Burgess, Report on the antiquities of Kathiawar and Kach, p. 7; HfA, p. 82; Br. I.A., p. 159. Recently a radio-carbon test of the wood fragment, found in the Gop temple, was conducted by Dr. Syamadas Chaterji in the physics laboratory, University college of science and technology, Calcutta. According to the test, Dr. Chaterji reports, the wood fragment is approximately 1400 years old. The view of the archaeologists, who place the temple in the sixth century A.D., is thus confirmed by a scientific method of dating objects.
78. H. D. Sankalia (AG, p. 59) is inclined to ascribe the temple to the fifth century A.D.
79. Henry Cousens, Somnath, pp. 6-7.
80. Ibid, pl. XLVIII.
82. Ibid, p. 40.
84. Henry Cousens, Somnath, pp. 28-29; H. D. Sankalia, AG, pp. 60, 63.
86. H. D. Sankalia, AG, p. 60.
89. Ibid, p. 41.
91. Henry Cousens, Somnath, pl. XC.
92. Ibid, pp. 53-54, pl. LV.
93. H. D. Sankalia (AG, pp. 83-84) is inclined to include the Banki Devi temple at Wadhwon and the above-mentioned temple at Sandera among the examples of the Solanki temple. But the above distinctive features, characteristic of the early NagaTa temple, are too emphatic, and it is difficult to class them otherwise.
94. Henry Cousens, Somnath, pp. 51-52, pls. LI, LIV.
95. Ibid, p. 53.
96. Ibid, pl. LI.
98. H. D. Sankalia, AG, p. 74.
99. James Burgess, AANG, p. 88, pl. LVII.
101. Henry Cousens, Somnath, pp. 69-70, pl. LXXVII.
103. Henry Cousens, Somnath, p. 62, pl. LXXI.
104. HIEA, II, pp. 133-34, Fig. 281. Triple-shrined temples, though rare in con-
ception, are found over a wide region, as for example, in Central India, in
Khandesh, and in the Kannada districts.

105. James Burgess, AANG, p. 110. Only the mandapa is now left. From three
entrance porticos H. D. Sankalia is inclined to class it with the triple-shrined
group (AG, p. 43). But neither the plan, nor the character of the remains
would warrant such an assumption.

106. James Burgess, AANG, p. 11.


108. James Burgess, AANG, pp. 75 ff; HIJA, p. 111; Henry Cousens, AAWI, pp. 37-
39; Percy Brown, Br. I.A., pp. 145-47; H. D. Sankalia, AG, pp. 73, 84 ff; Ben-
tjamin Rowland, AAI, p. 178.


109a. An individual feature of the typical Somnathi temple is the beaded
imalaka surmounting the Sikhara. That such a member was also the crowning element
of the Sikhara of the sanctum of the Mother temple is indicated by the frag­
ment of a huge imalaka found among the ruins that lie scattered round about.


111. Henry Cousens, Somnath, pp. 57-58; AAWI, pp. 42-43; Percy Brown, Br. I.A.,
p. 148.

112. James Burgess, AANG, pp. 60-69 and pls.; Henry Cousens, AAWI, pp. 36-37;

113. James Burgess, AANG, p. 84 and pls.; Henry Cousens, AAWI, pp. 36, 37.


115. Henry Cousens, Somnath, pls. XII-XIII.

116. HIEA, II, Fig. 281.


118. Henry Cousens, CAND, p. 25, pl. LXXXVII.

119. Ibid, pp. 41-44, pls. XIII-XV, XXII.

120. Ibid, pls. IX, XI.

121. Ibid, pls. XII, XIII.

122. Ibid, pls. XI, XLV.

123. Ibid, pp. 72-73, pl. LII.

124. Ibid, p. 73, pl. LIII.

125. Ibid, p. 72.

126. Ibid, pp. 68-70, pls. XLI-XLII; Henry Cousens, AAWI, pp. 24-25; Percy Brown,
Br. I.A., p. 83, pls. XLV, XLVII.

127. Henry Cousens, CAND, pl. XXVI; Stella Kramrisch, Art of India, p. 203, pl. 37.

128. Ibid, p. 205, pl. 76.

129. For mediaeval monuments of the Dakhan reference may be made to Henry
Cousens, MTD; AAWI, pp. 51-57; Percy Brown, Br. I.A., pp. 152-55.


132. James Ferguson, HIEA, II, p. 147; Henry Cousens, MTD, pp. 13-18 pls. III-V,
IX; AAWI, pp. 52-54, pl. 43; Percy Brown, Br. I.A., pp. 153-54, pl. XLV.

133. Henry Cousens, MTD, pp. 52-54, pls. XVI, XXI, XXII; AAWI, p. 57, pl. 46; 

134. Henry Cousens, MTD, pp. 24-25, pls. XVIII, XX; AAWI, p. 57; Percy Brown,

135. Henry Cousens, MTD, pp. 28-29, pls. XXV, XXVII, XXVIII.

136. James Ferguson, HIEA, II, pp. 144-46, pl. XXV, Figs. 343, 344; Henry Cousens,
MTD, pp. 89, 90, pls. XLII, XLIII; AAWI, pp. 54-55, pl. 44; Percy Brown,
Br. I.A., p. 154, pl. XCIX.

137. Henry Cousens, MTD, pp. 41-43, pls. LII, LIV; Percy Brown, Br. I.A., pl. XLV.

138. Henry Cousens, MTD, p. 55, pl. LXXX.

139. ASC, VII, pl. VI; James Ferguson, HIEA, II, p. 147; Stella Kramrisch, KHT,
I, p. 256, II, pp. 389-96, pls. XLIII-LII.

140a. See above, p. 68.

140b. Percy Brown (Br. I.A., p. 139) thinks that the Udayapura temple shows "by
its style an affinity to the Chandella group of temples at Khajuraho." But
none of the temples at Khajuraho exhibits this characteristic design which is
pre-eminently Dakhanese.


THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

144. ASR, 1905-06, pp. 17 ff.
145. For Chamba temples reference may be made to ASC, XIV, pp. 109-114.
146. ASC, 1909-10, pp. 18-24.
147. JISOA, II, pp. 135-36; HBR, I, pp. 499-500, figs. 82, 84, 104.
148. R. D. Banerji, Eastern India School of Medieval Sculpture, pls. XIX(b), XCI(a), XCV(b).
149. ASC, VIII, p. 154; JISOA, I, pp. 125-27, pl. XXXVI; HBR, I, p. 498, fig. 81.
150. JISOA, III, p. 19; ASC, VIII, p. 202; ASR, 1921-22, pp. 84-85; 1922-23, pp. 58-59; A. K. Coomaraswamy, HIIA, Fig. 233; JISOA, II, pp. 126-40; HBR, I, p. 501, fig. 86.
151. ASC, VIII, p. 154; JISOA, I, pp. 125-27, pl. XXXVI; HBR, I, p. 498, fig. 81.
153. ASR, 1927-28, p. 41.
154. JISOA, II, pp. 140-41; HBR, I, p. 501, fig. 88.
155. JISOA, II, p. 141; HBR, I, pp. 501-02, fig. 89.
165. Ibid.
166. Ibid.
170. Ibid, pp. 66-68.
175. See above pp. 324 ff.
179. Ibid.
181. Colas, p. 713.
186. Henry Cousins, CAKD, p. 17.
187. The only excursion is the Sarasvati temple at Gadag (Dharwâr District). See ibid, pp. 110-12; pl. CXX.
188. James Fergusson, HIEA, I, pp. 426-27; Henry Cousins, CAKD, pp. 75-76; AAWI, p. 28; Percy Brown, Br. I.A., pp. 773-76.
190. Henry Cousins, CAKD, p. 17.
192. Henry Cousins, CAKD, p. 83.
ART

194. Ibid, p. 89.
198. Cousens speaks of the hall as having sixty-eight pillars. Percy Brown also follows his description. But the published plan (Henry Cousens, CAKD, pl. CVI) shows only fifty-six pillars, twenty-six of which support the roof, while the remaining, over the kakshiisanas, carry the eaves.
204. Henry Cousens, AAWI, p. 32.
205. Percy Brown would class the Hoysala temple as "distinct from all others" because of this conformation. Br. I.A., p. 168.
216. ASI, 1930-34, pl. xviii; Paharpur, pl. I.
218. ASI, 1933-36, pp. 55-66, pl. xix-xxi; 1936-37, pp. 47-50, pl. xxi.
219. Paharpur, p. 25; pl. xx(b).
221. Dikshit uses the word 'outline' (Ibid, p. 7) which pre-supposes an earlier structure that served as the nucleus for additions and amplifications at different periods. As it stands now, the temple belongs wholesale to a single period of construction and if any earlier structure existed it served as a model for the present monument, which was conceived on a much grander scale, and not as a nucleus for later additions and accretions.
222. JGIS, IX, pp. 5-28.
223. The problem of the occurrence on the basement of stone sculptures of varied style, a few of the earlier dates, has been discussed in detail by the present writer in IC, VII, pp. 35-40 and sketch, and also in HBR, I, pp. 508-69.
226. Bhabat-samhita, LII, 36 also relevant commentary; Matsya Purâṇa, Ch. 269, 34-35; JSOA, II, p. 137.
227. ASI, 1923-24, p. 112.
228. JGIS, IX, pp. 5-28 and plates.
230. OZ, 1930, Pl. 53.
231. See above, pp. 336 ff.
232a. HILÁ, Fig. 273.
233a. KIS, Fig. 112.
234. HBR, I, 505.

699
Fig. 3
Nurpur Fort, Temple: Plan
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 4
Khajuraho, Devi Jagadambā temple: Plan

Fig. 5
Khajuraho, Kandora, Mahādev temple: Plan
Fig. 6
Khajurāho, Kandarya Mahādeo temple: Section

Fig. 7
Khajurāho, Brahmā temple: Plan

Fig. 8
Khajurāho, Mridang Mahādeo Temple: Plan
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 9
Chandrehe, Circular temple: Plan

Fig. 10
Rājpur Jhartāl, Circular Yogini temple: Plan

Fig. 11
Khajurāho, Chaukhand Yogini temple: Plan
Fig. 12
Dilwâr, Vimala’s temple: Plan

Fig. 13
ViHesvara, Śiva temple: Plan

Fig. 14
Villesvara, Śiva temple: Elevation
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 15
Satrapada, Sun Temple: Elevation

Fig. 16
Miani, Ganga and Mahadeva temples: Plan and Elevation

706
Fig. 17
Sunak, Nilakantha Mahadeva temple: Elevation

Fig. 18
Kasara, Triple-shrined temple: Plan
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 19
Morjoba, Sun Temple: Plan

Fig. 20
Ghumli, Navalikhā temple: Plan

708
Fig. 21
Sejakpur, Navalakhya temple: Plan

Fig. 22
Somanathapattana: Somanatha temple: Plan
Fig. 23
Girnār, Triple-shrined temple: Plan
Fig. 24
Aihole, Temple No. 9: Elevation

Fig. 25
Pattadakal: Papanatha temple: Plan
Fig. 26
Ambanadha, Siva temple: Plan
Fig. 27
Balsane: Temple No. 1: Plan

Fig. 28
Balsane, Temple No. 1: Elevation

718
The Struggle for Empire

Fig. 29
Patna, Mahabodha temple: Plan

Fig. 30
Sinnar, Konseibara temple: Plan
Fig. 31
Udayagira, Nilakanthesvara temple: Plan
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 32
Kăuchipuram, Kailasanatha temple: Plan

Fig. 33
Kăuchipuram, Kailasanatha temple: Section
Fig. 34
Kâśchipuram, Vâlkuntha Pêrûnal temple: Plan
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 35
Kāśichipuram Vaikuntha Perumal temple: Section

Fig. 36
Kāśichipuram Vaikuntha Perumal temple: Section
Fig. 37
Pattadakal, Virupaksha temple: Plan and Elevation

Fig. 38
Tanjore, Brihadishvara temple: Plan
Fig. 39
Tanjore, Brihadeeswara temple: Elevation
Fig. 40
Kukkanur, Kallesvara temple: Plan

Fig. 41
Kukkanur, Kallesvara temple: Elevation

S.E.—46
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 42
Lakkundi, Jain temple: Plan

Fig. 43
Chauddadampur, Muktesvara temple: Elevation
Fig. 44
Haveri, Siddhesvara temple: Elevation

Fig. 45
Lakkundi, Kāśivēdēśa temple: Plan
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 46
Ittagi, Mahādeva temple: Plan

Fig. 47
Kuruvatti, Mallikārjuna temple: Plan
Fig. 48
Kuruvatti, Mallikârjuna temple: Elevation
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 49
Gadag, Someswara temple: Plan

Fig. 50
Dambal, Dodda Basappa temple: Plan

726
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Fig. 54
Mārān, Sun temple: Plan

Fig. 55
Mārān, Sun Temple: Section
Fig. 56
Avantipura, Avantivarāṇi temple: Elevation

Fig. 57
Pāharpur, Great temple: Plan
CHAPTER XXI

COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION

1. DECLINE AND FALL OF THE SAILENDRA EMPIRE

The rise of the Sailendra Empire in South-East Asia has been described above. At the beginning of the eleventh century A.D. this mighty empire was being ruled by Sri Chudamani-varmadeva. In A.D. 1003 he sent two envoys to China who reported that a Buddhist temple had been erected in their country in order to pray for the long life of the Emperor. This probably means nothing more than a common courtesy shown by one Buddhist king to another, but may be taken as an evidence of friendly and frequent intercourse between the two countries.

Chudamani-varman also maintained friendly relations with the great Chola Emperor Rajaraja the Great. An interesting evidence of this is furnished by a very long record engraved on twenty-one copper-plates, now preserved in the Leiden Museum, and therefore known as the Leiden Grant, or rather Larger Leiden Grant, to distinguish it from another—Smaller Leiden Grant—in the same Museum, recorded on three plates. The Larger Grant, written in Sanskrit and Tamil, records that Chudamani-varman, king of Kadaram, commenced the construction of a vihara or Buddhist monastery at Nagapattana, modern Negapatam, and a village was granted for its upkeep by the Chola king Rajaraja in the twenty-first year of his reign, i.e. A.D. 1006. The monastery, which was named after the Sailendra Emperor, was, however, actually completed by his son and successor Sri Maravijayottunga-varman. Rajaraja also probably died in course of the construction, for the actual edict for the grant was issued, after the death of Rajaraja, by his son Rajendra Chola.

This interesting record naturally recalls to our mind the similar activity of another Sailendra Emperor, Sri Balaputra, more than a century and a half earlier. He, too, built a vihara at Nalanda and received a grant of five villages from the Pala Emperor Devapala. These two instances serve as unique testimony to the long and familiar intercourse between the Sailendras and their motherland.

Sri Maravijayottunga-varman ascended the throne some time before A.D. 1008 when he sent three envoys to China. The Larger
Leiden Grant has preserved some particulars about him. It informs us that he was 'born in the Sailendra family, was the lord of Sri-vishaya, had extended the suzerainty of Kaţaţa and had Makara as the emblem of his banner.' Sri-vishaya is undoubtedly the same as Sri-Vijaya, mentioned before, and Kaţaţa—written as Kaţaram in the Tamil portion—is now represented by Keddah in the Malay Peninsula. As Chudamaţi-varman is referred to as the ruler of Kaţaram only, it may be concluded that Keddah was the main seat of the Sailendra Empire which included Sri-Vijaya.

The friendly relation between the Sailendra Emperors and the Cholas is proved not only by the Leiden Grant, but also by references in old Tamil poems to the commercial relations between their countries. An old Tamil poem refers to ships with merchandise coming from Kâlagam to the great port situated at the mouth of the Kaveri river. Kâlagam, which a later commentator equates with Keddah, is almost certainly to be identified with Keddah.

In view of all this it is somewhat strange that ere long war broke out between the Sailendras and the Cholas. The cause of this war is unknown and we are dependent for such information as we possess of it on the Chola records alone. The earliest reference to it occurs in a Chola record, dated A.D. 1017-8, which tells us that Râjendra Chola's forces crossed the ocean and conquered Kaţaţa. Full details of this expedition are given in several inscriptions of Râjendra Chola, dated between A.D. 1024 and 1043, in almost identical words which may be translated as follows:—

And (who) (Râjendra Chola) having despatched many ships in the midst of the rolling sea and having caught Sangrâmavijayotturângavarman, the king of Kaţaram, along with the rutting elephants of his army, (took) the large heap of treasures, which (that king) had rightfully accumulated; (captured) the (arch called) Vidyâdhara-torana at the “war-gate” of the extensive city of the enemy; Sri-Vijaya with the “Jewel-gate,” adorned with great splendour, and the “gate of large jewels;” Paņnâi, watered by the river; the ancient Malaiyâr (with) a fort situated on a high hill; Mâyirâgâm, surrounded by the deep sea (as) a moat: Ilaṅgâsokâ undaunted (in) fierce battles; Mappappâlam, having abundant (deep) waters as defence; Mevilimbângam, having fine wails as defence; Valâippandûru, possessing (both) cultivated land (?) and jungle; Talâittaikkolâm, praised by great men (versed in) the sciences; Mâdamâlîgâm, firm in great and fierce battles; Ilâmurîdeśam, whose fierce strength was subdued by a vehement (attack); Mânaikkârâm whose flower-gardens (resembled) the girdle (of the nymphs) of the southern
region; Kaḍāram, of fierce strength, which was protected by the
neighbouring sea."

Most of the conquered countries, mentioned in the above pass-
age, cannot be definitely identified, but Malaiyūr is undoubtedly
the same as Malāyu (or Jambi) in Sumatra, Māṇakkavāram is
Nikobar Islands, and Kaḍāram is of course Kaṭāha or Kedāh. As
to the rest, most of them have been located with great probability
either in Sumatra or in Malay Peninsula. The passage seems to
indicate that Rājendra Chōla first conquered various subject-states
of the Sailendra Empire, and then concluded his campaign by
taking possession of Kaḍāra itself. It is probable, but by no means
certain, that there was an encounter at the very beginning, between
the main forces of the Šailendra Emperor and Rājendra Chōla, in
which the former was defeated. This defeat was followed by the
other Chōla conquests which extended practically over the whole
of the eastern coast-region of Sumatra and the Central and South-
er parts of Malay Peninsula, including the two capital cities Kaṭāha
(or Kaḍāra) and Śrī-Vijaya. The view that the conquered countries
were vassal-states of the Šailendras is confirmed by the fact that
many of these are included in the list of subject-states of the Šailen-
dra Empire by the Chinese writers of a later date, such as Chau Ju-
Kua, to whom reference will be made later.

As the detailed account of this oversea campaign occurs for
the first time in an inscription dated A.D. 1024-25, which otherwise
repeats the accounts of the (inland) conquests given in earlier re-
cords, it is probable that the great and decisive victory took place
not long before that date. This may appear to be inconsistent with
the fact that the conquest of Kaṭāha is already referred to in a record
dated A.D. 1017. But it is just possible that the war was a prolong-
ed one. It commenced in or shortly before A.D. 1017 with a success-
ful Chōla naval attack against Kaṭāha in that year and ended with
the decisive victory, mentioned above, five or six years later. We
learn from a record of Virarājendra, a successor of Rājendra Chōla,
that the latter burnt 'Kaṭāha, that could not be set fire to by others'.

It is as difficult to account for the sudden outbreak of the war
as for the almost complete collapse of the Šailendra power. But
a few salient points may be noted. In the first place, the Chōlas had
completed the conquest of the whole eastern coast of India up to the
mouth of the Gaṅgā, before sending the oversea expedition on a
large scale. Secondly, the geographical position of the Šailendra
Empire enabled it to control almost the whole volume of maritime
trade between Western and Eastern Asia. Perhaps the dazzling
prospect of securing this rich volume of trade for himself prompted
Rajendra Chola to undertake the hazardous conquest, as soon as the possession of the naval resources of the entire coast of India placed at his disposal well equipped ships and sailors necessary for this purpose.

But whatever may be the cause, the Chola success was complete for the time being. But it could hardly be of long duration. Apart from the inherent difficulty of maintaining hold upon distant lands beyond the sea, the internal troubles of the Cholas referred to above made the task almost an impossible one. Nevertheless, the successors of Rajendra Chola tried hard to maintain, at least the nominal suzerainty, if not effective power over these lands. Thus Virarajendra (A.D. 1063-70) claims to have conquered Kadaram. But this very fact shows that in spite of the great victory of Rajendra Chola and his claim to have destroyed Kadara, that kingdom did not cease to exist and must have shaken off even the nominal suzerainty of the Cholas. According to the record of Virarajendra, he conquered Kadaram, but ‘was pleased to give (it) back to (its) king who worshipped (his) feet.’ But this did not end the struggle. For Kulottunga Chola (A.D. 1070-1120) again claims to have destroyed Kadaram, while a Chinese account represents the Chola as a vassal of the Kadara kingdom or its succession state in the second half of the eleventh and the beginning of the twelfth century. These contradictory statements indicate the continuance of the struggle with alternate success and reverse of both the parties.

But even during this period occasionally there was quite friendly relation between the two. The Smaller Leiden Grant dated in the 20th year of Kulottunga Chola (A.D. 1089-90) says:—

“At the request of the king of Kadara, communicated by his envoys Rajavidyadhara Samanta and Abhimannottunga Samaanta, Kulottunga exempted from taxes the village granted to the Buddhist monastery called Sailendra-Chudamani-varma-vihara (i.e. the one established by King Chudamani-varman as referred to in the Larger Leiden Grant).”

After Kulottunga Chola we have no further evidence of any pretension of the Chola rulers over their oversea empire. The internal history of the Cholas during this period, sketched above, also does not make it likely. We must therefore admit that after fruitless efforts of a century the Cholas finally abandoned their claims over Sumatra and Malay Peninsula. Thus ended the first and the last enterprise of an Indian ruling family to maintain suzerainty over countries beyond the sea.

The Chinese evidence leaves no doubt that the kingdom of Kadara or Kadaram continued and soon became again very powerful.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

But although we can trace the existence of this kingdom, called San-fo-tsi by the Chinese, for nearly three centuries more, we hear no more of the Sailendra dynasty. It is true that the kingdom of the Sailendra rulers, noted above, is called San-fo-tsi by the Chinese, and Zābag by the Arab writers, and these names figure continuously in the Chinese and Arab documents from tenth to fourteenth century A.D. It is, therefore, not unlikely that the Sailendras continued to rule over it in the twelfth century or even later, but of this we have no positive evidence. The name Sailendra occurs only in the records of India, Java and Malay Peninsula, but as these sources fail us, so far as the history of this kingdom is concerned, we cannot be sure if the rulers still belonged to the Sailendra family. It would be, however, convenient to designate the kingdom of San-fo-tsi or Zābag as the Sailendra Empire up to the very end in order to emphasise the continuity of the State of which there is no doubt. The Arab writers Edrisī (A.D. 1154), Kazwīnī (thirteenth century), Ibn Sa‘īd (thirteenth century) and Dimaskī (fourteenth century) all refer to the power and glory of Zābag, but it is not certain whether they refer to conditions in their own time or merely quote from old writers. The Chinese chronicles are more helpful. Reference is made to two embassies in A.D. 1156 and 1178 showing that San-fo-tsi still maintained diplomatic relations with China. Some time about A.D. 1225 a Chinese official named Chau Ju-Kua wrote a very interesting account of this kingdom, based exclusively on oral information furnished by Chinese and foreign traders. According to him San-fo-tsi was a great centre of trade and the seat of a powerful empire. The possession of the Strait of Malacca enabled it to control the maritime trade between the Eastern and the Western World. Chau Ju-Kua also gives a list of fifteen States which were dependent upon San-fo-tsi. These were mostly in Malay Peninsula, but a few were situated in Java and Sumatra. We may thus hold that at the end of the twelfth century A.D. and the beginning of the thirteenth, San-fo-tsi was a rich and powerful kingdom. The name of a king of this period Mahārāja Śrīmat-Traīloka-rāja-mauli-bhūṣaṇa-varma-deva is known from an inscription, dated A.D. 1183, found at Chaiya in Malay Peninsula. The names of the Sailendra kings also ended in varma-deva, but it is difficult to say whether Traīloka-rāja was a remote descendant of Chiḍāmāni-varma-deva.

Another king Chandrabhānu is known from an inscription at Chaiya, dated A.D. 1230, and the Ceylonese chronicle Chiḷḷāvaṭṭa. We learn from the latter that a king of Jāvaka, called Chandrabhānu, sent two expeditions against Ceylon between A.D. 1236 and 1256. On the first occasion he devastated the whole island but
was forced to withdraw. On the second occasion Chandrabhānu's army was reinforced by a large number of Pāṇḍya, Chōla and other Tamil soldiers. After some initial success Chandrabhānu was completely defeated and fled with his life leaving his family and treasures behind.

There is no doubt that Jāvaka is the same as Zabag, the Arab name of the Sailendra Empire. It is to be noted that Ceylon is included among the vassal states of San-fo-tsi by Chau Ju-Kua, and however incredible it might appear at first, the above account of the Ceylonese chronicles offers a satisfactory explanation. It may be presumed that Chandrabhānu's success, grudgingly admitted by the Ceylonese chroniclers, was more substantial at least for some time, though it ended in a disaster. In any case, the strange episode preserved in the Ceylonese chronicles testifies both to the substantial accuracy of Chau Ju-Kua's account and of the great power of the Sailendra Empire in the first part of the thirteenth century A.D.

But the foolish enterprise of Chandrabhānu must have cost the empire dear. In an inscription, dated A.D. 1264, Játaśvarman Viśa Pāṇḍya claims to have defeated and killed the Sāvaka king, and in another, dated the following year, he includes the king of Kaḍāram among the host of rulers conquered by him. There is hardly any doubt that the Sāvaka, or the Jāvaka, king and the king of Kaḍāram refer to one and the same ruler, and he is most probably Chandrabhānu himself or his successor. It is also very likely that the enmity between Chandrabhānu and the Pāṇḍya ruler was not unconnected with the ill-fated expeditions to Ceylon. The defeat and death of Chandrabhānu also most probably took place in India, after his disastrous retreat from Ceylon, for had Játaśvarman sent a naval expedition against Malay Peninsula there would have been more explicit references to it.

It appears from the Chaiya Inscription that Chandrabhānu was originally the ruler of a vassal state of San-fo-tsi and seized supreme power by a successful rebellion. Similar defection of another vassal state about the same time is noticed by Chau Ju-Kua. The disruption thus begun was hastened by the catastrophic end of Chandrabhānu, and full advantage was taken of it by the two rising powers—the Thai state in Siam and the kingdom of Malāyu, backed by Java. Hemmed in between these two powerful neighbours in the north and the south, San-fo-tsi lost its position of supremacy and sank into a local power. It continued this inglorious existence till its conquest by Java some time before A.D. 1377. From the beginning of the fifteenth century A.D. San-fo-tsi
passes from our view. But the Annals of Keddah, ancient Kaḍāram or Kaṭāha, the homeland of the Sailendra Emperors, have preserved the traditional account of seven Hindu rulers of the State, the last of whom adopted Islam in A.D. 1474. Such was the ignoble end of the great maritime empire which was established by the Hindus in the eastern sea and ruled in glory for more than five hundred years.

2. DECLINE AND FALL OF THE KAMBUJA EMPIRE

The death of Jaya-varman V in A.D. 1001 was followed by civil war among several rival candidates to the throne till Śuryavarman I finally triumphed over his rivals about A.D. 1010. In order to prevent a similar situation in future the king made his district officers, numbering more than four thousand, to take an oath, in the presence of the sacred fire, the Brāhmaṇas and the ēchēryas, offering unswerving and lifelong homage and allegiance to the king and dedicating their lives to his service.

The king probably adopted Buddhism, for his inscription contains invocation to Buddha as well as to Śiva, and he had the posthumous name Nirvāṇapada. He is also described as a great scholar, versed in Bhāṣya, Kavya, six Dārsanas (systems of philosophy) and Dharmāśastras.

The precautions adopted by this scholarly king against civil war and revolution proved illusory. Troubles broke out immediately after his death in A.D. 1049. He was succeeded by Udayaditya-varman who “was crowned emperor by his ministers”. In other words there was no legitimate or peaceful succession, but an influential party in court placed its nominee on the throne. Revolutions broke out almost throughout his reign, and there was a disastrous invasion by the king of Champa. In the midst of all this tragedy the king died in A.D. 1066, and the royal guru (preceptor), along with the ministers, placed his younger brother Harsha-varman on the throne.

Harsha-varman’s reign is chiefly noted for his two unfortunate foreign expeditions. On an invitation of the Chinese Emperor he sent an army in A.D. 1076 to help the Chinese military expedition against the Annamite kingdom in Tonkin. But it had to retreat after the defeat of the Chinese. Some time before A.D. 1080 he sent an army to invade Champa, but it was defeated and its commander fell into the hands of the enemy.

These disasters probably worsened the internal political situation in Kambuja, and we find a rival king Jaya-varman VI ruling
in the north and north-east in A.D. 1082. This political division continued till Surya-varman II, the second successor of Jaya-varman VI, again brought the whole kingdom under his authority.

Surya-varman ascended the throne in A.D. 1113. The Kambuja inscriptions refer to his great victories in general terms and add that he marched into the countries of the enemies. Although very vague, the claim was not without foundation, for details of his several expeditions to Annam and Champā have been preserved in the records of those countries.

Surya-varman's efforts to conquer the kingdom of Annam, to the north of Champā, however, proved disastrous. We learn from the Annamese Annals that between A.D. 1128 and 1150 he sent no less than four armies with auxiliary fleet, which also received help from the Cham army. But they had all to retreat with serious loss. At last when Champā made a separate peace with Annam, Surya-varman decided to punish her and, to make amends for his failure in Annam, invaded Champā. His early expeditions were successful, and the northern part of Champā was made a vassal state of Kambuja, known as the kingdom of Vijaya. But his attempt to reduce the southern part of Champā proved a costly failure. He sent two expeditions, in A.D. 1147 and 1148, but both were defeated by king Jaya Hari-varman of Champā. Then the latter took the offensive and defeated the Kambuja forces. The Kambuja ruler of Vijaya, a brother-in-law of king Surya-varman II, as well as a number of Kambuja generals fell in the battle.

But in spite of these reverses Surya-varman must be regarded as a powerful king ruling over a vast empire. He resumed diplomatic relations with China which were interrupted since the eighth century A.D., and sent two embassies in A.D. 1117 and 1121. The Chinese Emperor conferred high titles on the king of Kambuja whose dominions are said to have extended from Champā to Lower Burma and included the northern part of Malay Peninsula up to the Bay of Bandon. He is also said to have maintained 200,000 war elephants. The Chinese account thus shows that in spite of internal troubles the Kambuja empire had been growing in power and extent since the eleventh century A.D.

The great glory of the empire stands today before the world in the shape of its monuments. Surya-varman II has earned undying fame by constructing the famous temple known as Angkor Vat, which is justly regarded as one of the wonders of the world. We know a great deal of the religious life of the king. He was initiated into the mysteries of Vrah Guhya (the Great Secret), probably a Tantrik cult, by his guru Divākara Pāṇḍita and performed
various sacrifices including Koṭi-homa, Laksha-homa and the Mahā-homa.

The last known date of Sūrya-varman is A.D. 1145. The history of Kambuja during the next 35 years is very obscure. There were revolutions at home and disasters abroad. Several expeditions were sent against Champā, but in spite of initial successes they ended in costly failures. Then the king of Champā, Jaya Indra-varman VII, took the aggressive and invaded Kambuja with a big army. For seven years the war went on without any decisive result. At last the Cham king equipped a fleet and sent a naval expedition in A.D. 1177. He seized the capital city, plundered it, and then retired, carrying an immense booty with him. The king of Kambuja, Tribhuwanaditya-varman, was killed in course of this conflict or shortly after, and was succeeded by Jaya-varman VII in A.D. 1181.

Jaya-varman VII was the last great ruler of Kambuja, and fortunately we know a great deal of his military campaigns, religious foundations and works of public utility.

The most notable event of his reign was the long-drawn war with Champa. In A.D. 1190 Jaya Indra-varman VIII, king of Champā, invaded Kambuja. The Kambuja king sent against him a strong army under Śri Śūrya-varma-deva, a refugee from Champā living in his court. The Kambuja general obtained a complete victory and even captured the king of Champā. Champā now lay prostrate before the victor. Jaya-varman VII divided the kingdom into two parts. He appointed his own brother-in-law, Śūrya Jayavarman-deva, ruler of the northern part with Vijaya as its capital, while the victorious general Śūrya-varma-deva was placed in charge of the southern part with his capital at Rajapura.

But soon a successful revolution in the north placed a local chief Rasupati on the throne of Vijaya. Jaya-varman VII sent an expedition against Vijaya, and desiring probably to conciliate the Chams by making the captive king of Champā ruler of Vijaya, sent him along with the expedition. The Kambuja troops were joined by Śūrya-varma-deva, and under his leadership won a complete victory. Rasupati was defeated and killed and Vijaya was captured. But Śūrya-varma-deva now ascended the throne of Vijaya and united the whole of Champā under him. The disappointed Cham king Jaya Indra-varman VIII advanced against Śūrya-varma-deva but was defeated and killed.

In A.D. 1193 and 1194 Jaya-varman VII sent two expeditions against Śūrya-varma-deva who had so flagrantly flouted his autho-
COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION

But the latter gained an easy victory. For nearly ten years he was left in peace. But a third expedition was sent under Dhana-patigráma, an uncle of Súrya-varma-deva, who also was a refugee in Kambuja court. Dhana-patigráma defeated his nephew and became the ruler of Champā in A.D. 1203.

But the new ruler had a hard time before him. Revolutions broke out in various parts of the country, and as soon as these were put down war broke out with the Annamites in A.D. 1207. A series of battles followed during the next eleven years or more in which victory more often inclined to the Annamites.

The almost continuous series of wars in Champā since A.D. 1190 must have proved a great burden to Kambuja and at last, in A.D. 1220, the Kambujas evacuated the country. Most probably Jaya-varman VII was not alive at this time and the defeat and disgrace of Kambuja, both in Annam and Champā, followed a few years after his death. But in any case he is entitled to the credit of conquering Champā and making it a vassal state, thereby extending the frontier of the Kambuja empire to the China Sea on the east.

On the west also Jaya-varman VII seems to have attained conspicuous success. For according to the Chinese chronicles Pagan was annexed to Kambuja towards the close of the twelfth century A.D. Pagan was at that time the seat of a powerful kingdom including nearly the whole of Burma. It is not likely that the whole of it was conquered by Jaya-varman VII, and he probably annexed only the southern part of it, adjacent to Siam, which was then subject to Kambuja. Jaya-varman VII thus ruled over a vast empire which touched the Bay of Bengal on one side and the Sea of China on the other, and included the central regions of Indo-China and the northern part of Malay Peninsula.

The religious foundations and works of public utility undertaken by Jaya-varman VII were on a scale befitting the mighty empire over which he ruled. The account of royal donations contained in the Ta Prohm Inscription makes interesting reading and reveals the magnitude of the resources and depth of religious sentiments of the king. It concerns the Rājavihāra, i.e., the temple of Ta Prohm and adjuncts where the king set up an image of his mother as Prajñā-pāramitā. It is not possible here to record all the details but a few facts may be noted. Altogether 66,625 persons were employed in the service of the deities of the temple and 3,400 villages were given for defraying its expenses. There were 439 Professors and 970 scholars studying under them, making a total of 1409, whose food and other daily necessaries of life were supplied. There were
altogether 566 groups of stone houses and 288 groups of brick. Needless to say that the other articles, of which a minute list is given, were in the same proportion, and they included huge quantities of gold and silver, 35 diamonds, 40,620 pearls and 4,540 other precious stones. All these relate to a single group of temples. The inscription informs us that there were 798 temples and 102 hospitals in the whole kingdom, and these were given every year 117,200 kharikiis of rice, each khariikā being equivalent to 3 maunds 8 seers. In conclusion the king expresses the hope that by his pious donations, his mother might be delivered from the ocean of births.

Of the 102 hospitals mentioned above, the site of 15 can be determined by means of inscriptions which record their foundations. These inscriptions are almost identical and lay down detailed regulations about the hospitals. They give us a very good idea of the system of medical treatment organised by the state, but require separate treatment and cannot be discussed here.

An inscription in the temple at Pra-khan also supplies similar details. It refers to the establishment of 121 vahni-grihas for the convenience of pilgrims and other travellers. These were evidently of the nature of dharmasālās in India. Reference is made to the images of deities, 20,400 in number, made of gold, silver, bronze, and stone; the royal endowments for their upkeep including 8,176 villages and 208,532 slaves; and 514 separate temples and 2,066 minor or accessory constructions. It is said that the water for ablution in the annual festival of the temple was carried by Suryabhatta and the other Brāhmaṇas, as well as by the kings of Java and Annam, and the two rulers of Champā.

A very interesting reference is made to the queen of Jayavarman in one of his inscriptions. When the king first went to Champā she showed her conjugal fidelity by performing hard austerities of diverse types and of long duration. She was then initiated to Buddhism by her elder sister. It is said that the queen performed a ceremony by which she could see before her the image of her absent husband. After her death the king married her elder sister and asked her to teach the Buddhist doctrine in various convents.

The reign of Jayavarman VII marks the end of the most glorious period in the history of Kambuja which may be said to have comprised the eleventh and twelfth centuries A.D. It was during this period that the Kambuja empire reached its widest extent and produced the most notable monuments which still extort the admiration of the whole world. These will be discussed elsewhere in this chapter. It will suffice here to state that Jayavarman VII made no small contribution in this direction, if, as is now generally held,
he really built the famous capital city of Angkor Thom whose ruins cannot fail to evoke, even today, a mixed feeling of awe and reverence in the minds of the visitors.

As noted above, the date of the death of Jaya-varman VII cannot be fixed with certainty. He was succeeded by Indra-varman II who died in A.D. 1243. The next king known to us is Jaya-varman VIII who abdicated the throne in A.D. 1295-96 in favour of his son-in-law Srindra-varman. The son of Jaya-varman VIII made an attempt to seize the throne, but was defeated by Srindra-varman who mutilated and imprisoned him and ascended the throne in A.D. 1296. This king also abdicated in A.D. 1308 and was succeeded by Srindra-Jaya-varman the same year. Another king Jayavarma-Paramesvara ascended the throne in A.D. 1327. He is the last king referred to in the Kambuja inscriptions. The subsequent history of Kambuja is only known from Khmer chronicles of a late date which cannot be regarded as trustworthy sources.

The history of Kambuja during the thirteenth century is thus veiled in obscurity. The withdrawal from Champa and defeats in Annam undoubtedly indicate the loss of power and authority, while frequent abdications, struggle for succession, and paucity of information suggest a troublesome period. The occupation of Siam by the Thais, to which reference will be made later, also tells the same tale. As a matter of fact the growing power of the Thais on the west and the Annamites on the east ultimately spelt ruin to Kambuja. But, nevertheless, Kambuja remained a powerful kingdom down to the end of the thirteenth century A.D. When Kublai Khan, the great Mongol Emperor, conquered Champa and sent envoys demanding allegiance of Kambuja, she had the courage to resist. Next an ambassador was sent to Kambuja in A.D. 1296, evidently with the same purpose. Cheu Ta-Kuan, who accompanied the ambassador, and wrote a very interesting memoir on Kambuja, says that the embassy achieved its object. But this may be doubted, for a Chinese historian, writing in A.D. 1526, positively asserts that neither Java nor Kambuja paid homage to the Imperial court even once during the Mongol period. Cheu Ta-Kuan's description of the capital city and of the wealth and splendour of the king and the nobles leaves the impression that Kambuja was still a powerful kingdom with a well-organised administrative system. But the palace intrigues and conspiracies which were particularly rife in his time exercised a baneful influence on the government. All this will be evident from Cheu Ta-Kuan's graphic account of the king (Srindra-varman) which may be summed up as follows:

741
"I have heard it said that formerly the kings seldom went out of their palace; for they were afraid of assassins. The new king is the son-in-law of his predecessor, who was very fond of his daughter. She stole the golden sword (insignia of sovereignty) and carried it to her husband. Her brother revolted but was defeated by the new king who cut off his toes and kept him confined in a dark dungeon. The new king always covers his body with a coat of mail which neither knife nor arrow could pierce. Thus clad he dares go out of his palace. During my stay for more than a year I have seen him come out only on four or five occasions. When he goes out the procession is led by a body of horsemen, followed by flags and music. Then come a troop of palace-girls, 300 to 500 in number, clad in embroidered clothes and with flowers in their hair. They carry big torches (or candles) which are lighted even in day time. These are followed by two other troops of girls, one carrying precious vessels and ornaments of gold and silver, and the other, the body-guards of the king, carrying lance and shield. Then follow carriages, decorated with gold, drawn by goats and horses, princes, mounted on elephants, queens and royal concubines in palanquins and carriages or on elephants. Lastly comes the king on elephant, holding the precious sword by his right hand and surrounded by a large number of men on elephants and horses to protect him. The elephants have golden trappings, and hundreds of white and red parasols, decorated with gold, and some of them, with staff of gold, add to the beauty of the procession."

Cheu Ta-Kuan mentions that in the recent wars with the Siamese the region round Angkor was utterly devastated. As we shall see later, this refers to the growing power of the Thais, who had conquered Siam and, under their great king Ram Kambeng, carried their victorious arms to Lower Burma on the west and to the heart of Kambuja on the east, toward the close of the thirteenth century A.D. The Annamites also gradually conquered nearly the whole of the kingdom of Champā by the fifteenth century. Being hard pressed by these two pitiless aggressive neighbours Kambuja was gradually shorn of power and prestige and sank into a petty state. At last the king of Kambuja threw himself under the protection of the French in A.D. 1854 and the once mighty kingdom became a petty French Protectorate.

3. FALL OF CHAMPA

For nearly half a century Champā enjoyed the respite from Annamite invasions brought about by the conciliatory policy of Hari-varman II. Regular embassies were sent to China, and though
in A.D. 1021 the Annamites made a sudden raid on the camp of Bo Chanh which protected the northern frontier of Champa, the relation between the two countries was on the whole a cordial one. But there could be no doubt that the Annamite court was a source of potential danger to Champa. When civil war broke out in Champa during the reign of Vikrānta-varman IV, at first his son, and then the entire garrison of Bo Chanh sought refuge with the Annamite Emperor (A.D. 1038-39). But the final rupture was brought about by the insolent aggression of Jaya Siṅha-varman II who ascended the throne in A.D. 1041. In A.D. 1043 he harassed the Annamite coast with his navy but was forced to retreat. Phat Ma, the Annamite Emperor, now sent a joint expedition by land and sea which completely routed the Cham army. The king lay dead on the battlefield with 30,000 soldiers and the capital city was ravaged by the victorious army. The Annamite Emperor returned with a huge booty and a large number of prisoners, including all the women of the palace. It is said that one of these, when summoned to the royal vessel, threw herself into the sea, preferring death to dishonour, and the Emperor, admiring her fidelity, gave her a posthumous title meaning “very chaste and very sweet lady”.

With Jaya Siṅha-varman II ended the dynasty which came into power in A.D. 989 after the Annamite usurpation. It was not till A.D. 1050, six years later, that we find a new king Jaya Paramēśvara-varma-deva Āśvamūrti, who was descended from the old royal family of Champa. The new king was faced with a heavy task. The repeated incursions of the Annamites had exhausted the resources of the kingdom and weakened the central authority. Taking advantage of it the provinces, particularly Pāṇḍurāṅga in the south, repeatedly rebelled, and the Kambuja rulers also invaded the kingdom twice, during the last half of the tenth century A.D.

The new king sent a powerful army against Pāṇḍurāṅga and completely subdued it. It is said that “all the people of Pāṇḍurāṅga were seized, together with oxen, buffaloes, slaves and elephants,” and though half were later released in order to re-establish the city, the other half were distributed as slaves to various religious establishments.

The king next turned his attention to Kambuja which was then being distracted by civil wars. He sent an army under Yuvarāja Mahāsenāpati, who had distinguished himself in the campaign against Pāṇḍurāṅga. The Yuvarāja inflicted a crushing defeat upon the enemy and took the town of Sambhupura. He destroyed a large number of temples there and distributed the Khmer captives among the temples of Champa.
Jaya Paramesvara-varma-deva also considerably repaired the damages done to religious institutions during the preceding period. He re-installed the image of the famous goddess of Po Nagara, and a large number of temples and vihāras were restored or newly built and suitably endowed. He maintained friendly relations with both Annam and China and sent regular embassies to these courts.

The reign of Jaya Paramesvara-varma-deva was thus a very successful one and largely healed the wounds from which Champa was suffering. Great credit is due to the king who found the kingdom suffering from total disintegration and left it a happy, peaceful, united, and powerful state. He died in or shortly after A.D. 1059.

Unfortunately the peace and prosperity of the kingdom tempted Rudra-varman, the new king of Champa, to throw off the yoke of the Annamites. In A.D. 1062 he sent an ambassador to China asking for help against the Annamites, but without any success. Nevertheless he openly commenced hostilities in A.D. 1068. The result was disastrous. The Cham army fought bravely, but was routed, the king himself was made a prisoner, and the Annamite Emperor celebrated his triumph in the capital city Vijaya. After burning this city and its suburbs, he returned to Tonkin with the royal captive and 50,000 prisoners of war (A.D. 1069).

Rudra-varman obtained his release by ceding three northern districts of his kingdom which included the whole of Quang Binh and the northern part of Quang Tri. It was a great blow to the power and prestige of Champa, and paved the way for the final conquest of this kingdom by Annam.

On his return to Champa Rudra-varman found that several persons had proclaimed themselves kings in different parts of the country. This state of chaos and confusion continued for nearly ten years, after which Hari-varman, one of the rival claimants, established his authority over the greater part of the kingdom.

Hari-varman IV was now faced with the task which had confronted Jaya Paramesvara-varma-deva twenty years before, and acquitted himself with almost equal credit. He successfully resisted the Annamite invasion of A.D. 1075. He defeated the Kambuja troops at Someśvara and captured the prince Sri Nandana-varma-deva who commanded the army. He re-united the whole kingdom, with the probable exception of Pânduraṅga in the south. He then restored the temples, as well as religious institutions and endowments, and also re-established the edifices and the city of Champa which had suffered so much in the hands of the Annamites. He probably assumed the title Ut크p 이미 (good king) at the time of his coronation, and there is probably a great deal of truth in the official
panegyric that 'the king of Champā became prosperous as of old'. In A.D. 1081 he abdicated the throne, at the age of 41, and took to religious life. But he died within a month and was followed on the funeral pyre by 14 of his wives.

The young son of the king, a boy of 9, ascended the throne under the name of Jaya Indra-varman V, but the distracted kingdom required a strong man at the helm of affairs. So, we are told, the boy king with all the generals, Brāhmaṇas, Kshatriyas, Paṇḍits, astrologers, learned men, masters of ceremonies, and the wives of the late king Hari-varman IV, approached his younger brother, Yuvarāja Mahāsenāpati Prince Pāṇa with a request to assume the royalty. The Yuvarāja ascended the throne under the title Parama-bodhisattva and gave a good account of himself. He quelled the disturbances in the kingdom and recovered Pāṇḍuraṅga after completely defeating the usurper who had been wielding authority there since the conquest of Champā by the Annamites in A.D. 1069. The king, who thus once more restored the unity of Champā, maintained friendly relations with Annam by sending regular tributes.

On the death of this king in A.D. 1086 his nephew Jaya Indra-varman V, who had abdicated in A.D. 1081, again ascended the throne. Once more the peace and prosperity of the kingdom tempted the Cham king to try his strength with Annam in order to recover the three northern districts ceded in A.D. 1069. As usual, he tried to induce the Chinese Emperor to make a common cause with him against Annam, but failed. Nevertheless, being instigated by a refugee from Annam, and misled by his false statements about the internal dissensions in that country, Indra-varman invaded Annam in A.D. 1103 and conquered the three ceded districts. But he was soon defeated and compelled to abandon them. To avoid further troubles he immediately sent tribute to Annam and lived in peace.

For more than thirty years after this Champā enjoyed peace and prosperity. But troubles broke out again in the reign of Jaya Indra-varman VI who ascended the throne in A.D. 1139. As noted above, Sūrya-varman II, the contemporary king of Kambuja, was involved in a long-drawn war with the Annamites and could easily enlist the sympathy and support of Champā. But when the joint expeditions repeatedly proved a failure, the king of Champā (the predecessor of Jaya Indra-varman VI) withdrew from the alliance with Kambuja and resumed payment of tribute to Annam. Sūrya-varman therefore decided to punish the faithless ally and invaded Champā in A.D. 1145. He gained a great victory and made himself master of Vijaya. Jaya Indra-varman VI was either killed or made a prisoner. In any case he passes from our view. But a new king
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

arose in Pândurânga in the south, and on his death in A.D. 1147 his son and successor Jaya Hari-varman VI continued the struggle against Kambuja. The Kambuja general Saṅkara, aided by the troops of Vijaya, advanced against him, but was signally defeated in A.D. 1147. Next year "the king of Kambuja sent an army thousand times stronger than the previous one", but Hari-varman again completely defeated them.

Hari-varman now felt powerful enough to take the offensive and advanced towards the north to reconquer Vijaya. The Kambuja king hastily consecrated Harideva, the brother of his first queen, as king of Vijaya and "commanded various generals" to protect him. In the battle that followed "Jaya Hari-varman destroyed Harideva with all his Cham and Kambuja generals." Then the victorious king was duly consecrated and ascended the throne in A.D. 1149 with due pomp and ceremony.

But the troubles of Hari-varman were not yet over. The barbarous mountain tribes of Champa, collectively known by the general designation of 'Kirātas', invaded the kingdom, probably at the instigation of the Kambuja king. Although the Kirātas were defeated in a pitched battle, Vaśārāja, brother of Hari-varman's queen, joined them and was proclaimed king. Although Vaśārāja was defeated along with his Kirāta allies, he sought protection in the Annamese court. The Annamese Emperor declared him king of Champa and sent him back with a large army which was, however, completely defeated by Hari-varman in A.D. 1150. Then civil war broke out, first at Amaratvi (A.D. 1151) and then at Pândurânga (A.D. 1155), but was successfully put down. Having thus completely triumphed over both internal and external enemies the great and heroic king lived in peace, devoting his attention to the restoration of temples and the repair of damages.

Hari-varman was far-sighted enough not to assume a haughty attitude towards Annam in spite of his victory. He maintained friendly relations by sending tribute and rich presents. He also demanded, and received, from the Chinese emperor the same dignity which his predecessors enjoyed.

It is fortunate that no less than seven inscriptions of this great king have been preserved which enable us to follow in minute details his truly remarkable career. A hero of hundred fights, he showed remarkable ability alike in war and peace. He saved the kingdom when it was threatened with ruin, and once more set it on the way to peace and prosperity.

Hari-varman died shortly after A.D. 1162 and the kingdom was soon occupied by an usurper named Jaya Indra-varman VII. He
paid regular tributes to Annam and sent an ambassador to China asking for investiture from the Emperor. The presents which the ambassador offered were all plundered from Arab merchants. As soon as the Emperor came to know this, from the complaints of the merchants themselves, he refused to accept the presents or to invest the king. This is an interesting incident illustrating the international etiquette of those days.

The most notable event in the reign of this king was his long-drawn war with Kambuja ending in the capture of its capital city by means of a naval expedition in A.D. 1177 which has already been described above. The king also made rich donations to various temples, and it seemed as if the old power and prosperity of Champā were revived. An interesting record of this reign contains the text of an oath of allegiance taken by three dignitaries of the realm to the effect that they and their children will fight for the king in case of war as long as they live. There was a similar institution in Kambuja where a class of chiefs, called Sanjak, were bound by oath of allegiance to defend the person of the king or prince. We have actual records that the life of a prince was saved on two different occasions by the deliberate self-sacrifice of four Sanjaks. The king not only bestowed wealth, favours and honours on their families, but also installed their statues in a shrine. When the prince died his statue was also placed in the same shrine by the side of those of his four faithful Sanjaks.

The aggressive policy of Jaya Indra-varman VII was followed by the next king known to us, viz. Jaya Indra-varman VIII. But the ruler of Kambuja with whom he had to fight was made of different stuff. The Cham king was not only defeated but taken captive to Kambuja (A.D. 1190) and his own fate and that of his kingdom have been described above.

When the forces of Kambuja withdrew from Champā in A.D. 1220 after an occupation of thirty years, a grandson of the famous king Jaya Hari-varman VI ascended the throne under the title Jaya Paramesvara-varman IV. The whereabouts of this king and his father, whom his records refer to as king Hari-varman, during the reign of the two usurpers Jaya Indra-varman VII and VIII are unknown to us. But he probably concluded a peace with Kambuja where he had lived as an exile for some time, and was formally consecrated to the throne in A.D. 1226. He ruled in peace and was succeeded by his brother Jaya Indra-varman X, who was murdered by his sister's son in A.D. 1257. The regicide then ascended the throne and was formally consecrated in A.D. 1266 under the name Indra-varman XI.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

His reign is chiefly memorable for the Mongol invasion. When the great Kublai Khan invited the king of Champa (and other rulers of Asia) to come and pay homage, the latter offered submission. Kublai thereupon treated Champa as part of his empire and appointed two viceroys to administer it. Although the king submitted, even to this humiliation, his proud son Harijit refused to yield. He organised the people and the viceroys left the country. The Cham king gave further provocation to the Khan by arresting and imprisoning his ambassadors to Siam and Malabar. Kublai now sent a powerful expedition under Sagatu, and as Annam refused passage, the troops were carried in 1,000 vessels. They landed unopposed, and a pitched battle took place in January 1283. The Chams fought obstinately for six hours and then retreated. Sagatu conquered a large part of the country, but Indra-varman retired with his army to fastnesses of mountains and refused to yield. It was also reported to the Mongol camp that he had sent embassies to Annam, Kambuja and Java asking for military aid. Sagatu attacked the entrenched position of the king on the mountains and inflicted great losses on the enemy, but Indra-varman eluded his grasp. In A.D. 1284 Kublai sent further reinforcements, but things continued as before. Kublai thereupon decided to send a strong army by land, and as the Annamese Emperor again refused homage to the Khan and passage through his territory, he declared war against Annam. The Mongol troops advanced from China in the north and Champa in the south, but were decisively defeated by the Annamite Emperor.

Champa was thus saved from further troubles and Indra-varman placated the great Khan by sending rich presents. The king, who heroically sustained this arduous struggle, died shortly afterwards and was succeeded by his son, the brave prince Harijit, who ascended the throne under the name Jaya Simha-varman IV.

The new king dispensed with all marks of vassalage of Kublai Khan and also stopped the usual payment of tribute to Annam. He had married a princess of Java, named Tāpasi, and was eager to marry a princess of Annam. The court of Annam coldly received his proposal, but he was so much infatuated that he even ceded two northern provinces of his kingdom as price of this marriage. Thus was Champa dismembered a second time in favour of Annam.14

Jaya Simha-varman IV died in A.D. 1307, soon after this marriage, and was succeeded by his son Mahendra-varman. The cession of the two northern provinces rankled in the minds of the people and frequent incursions and rebellions followed. Thereupon the Annamite Emperor invaded Champa and gained an easy victory. Mahendra-varman was made prisoner and his brother was entrusted
COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION

with the government of Champā as “Feudatory Prince of the Second rank” (A.D. 1312).

The kingdom of Champā had now practically become an Annamite province. The new ruler made an attempt to throw off the Annamite yoke, but being defeated took to flight. Thereupon Champā was ruled by military chiefs as viceroys of the Annamite Emperor. These viceroys, however, soon declared themselves independent and carried on a prolonged warfare with Annam, with occasional truce, for 150 years more. In A.D. 1470 the Annamite Emperor sent a fleet containing 100,000 men and himself marched at the head of 150,000 soldiers against Champā. He seized the capital city Vijaya and annexed all the territory up to cape Varella. The petty chiefs that ruled over the small territory that yet remained (viz. the modern districts of Khan Hoa and Binh Thuan) were at the absolute mercy of the Annamites, but they still bore the proud name of the king of Champā and received Chinese investiture as such. One of them made a last desperate effort in A.D. 1543 to get rid of the Annamese yoke but was defeated and put in an iron cage. The Annamites annexed the Cham territory up to the river of Phanrang and the seat of the kingdom of Champā was removed to Bal Chanar at Phanri. In A.D. 1822 the last phantom king of Champā, unable to bear the oppression of the Annamites, took refuge in Kambuja with a colony of exiles. Thus ended the long and glorious history of the Hindu kingdom of Champā which lost its very name and was called Annam after the conquering tribe.

4. JAVA

Java was rescued from the great catastrophe, which overwhelmed it in A.D. 1007,15 by the exertions of Airlangga, the son-in-law of the late king Dharmavairṣa. Airlangga, then only sixteen years old, hid himself in a monastery with only a few followers, for three years. In A.D. 1010 some people, evidently partisans of Dharmavairṣa, met him there and hailed him as the legitimate king. He was formally consecrated in A.D. 1019 and probably established his authority over a small strip of territory extending from Surabaya to Pasuruan. By A.D. 1028 he grew sufficiently powerful to make an attempt to recover the lost kingdom. He had to fight with a number of chiefs who set up as independent rulers in different parts of the country, and after almost continuous warfare for seven years, succeeded in re-establishing his authority over the whole of Java (A.D. 1035).

Airlangga next devoted his attention to restoring the material prosperity of the country. He improved trade and agriculture and
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

one of his inscriptions gives a long list of foreign countries whose people used to visit Java for purposes of trade or other reasons. They include a large number of localities in India as well as Annam and Cambodia. Airlangga was a great patron of literature, and in his old age, abdicated the throne and took to religious life (A.D. 1042). The details of his life, given in an inscription now preserved in the Calcutta Museum, show that he possessed a unique personality and had an eventful career. He was probably buried at Belahan, and it is generally believed that the fine image of Vishnu on Garuda, found at that place, is the actual portrait of Airlangga, and the first of a long series of divine images, depicting royal portraits, which have been found in Java.

Before his death Airlangga had divided his kingdom into two parts and bestowed them upon his two sons. Of these the western kingdom with its capital at Kañirí rose into greater importance and ultimately absorbed the other. We know the names of a large number of kings who ruled at Kañirí during the twelfth century A.D. Among them Jayavarsha, Kámeśvara (I or II) and Jayabhaya have been immortalised by the great poets who flourished in their courts. Indeed the Kañirí court witnessed the most flourishing period of Indo-Javanese literature to which reference will be made later.

It appears from the account of Chau Ju-Kua that the kingdom of Kañirí (which he refers to as Sho-po or Yava) was very powerful and ruled over the whole of Java with the exception of Sin-to, i.e. Sunja in W. Java, which was a dependency of San-fotsi, and Su-ki-tan which cannot be exactly located. Chau Ju-Kua gives a list of 15 states, in and outside the island of Java, which were all dependencies of Sho-po. Eight of these were situated in islands whose inhabitants were mostly barbarous. The two most important of the states were the island of Bali and south-western part of Borneo, and the rest probably refer to the smaller eastern islands of the Archipelago.

The Kañirí period, which thus laid the foundations of the Javanese Empire, also witnessed a high degree of development both in art and literature. It may thus be regarded as a prominent landmark in the political and cultural history of Java.

Kritajaya, the last king of Kañirí, met with a tragic end. A detailed account of this is given in Peraraton, a historical chronicle of Java, which is not, however, always reliable. It is said that the king asked the clergy to make obeisance to him and so they left in a body and sought refuge with Angrok, the son of a peasant and a highway robber in early life, who had murdered his
master, the governor of Tumapel, married his widow, and made himself ruler of the territory to the east of Mount Kavi. Taking advantage of the quarrel between the king and the clergy, Angrok openly declared himself king under the title Rājasa. He twice defeated Kritajaya in A.D. 1222 and annexed Kaḍri. The new kingdom which united nearly the whole of Eastern Java came to be known as Singhasari, after the name of its capital.

The end of the royal dynasty of Kaḍri, which traced its descent from the old house of Mataram, snapped the bond with old traditions and Central Java. This is probably the reason why, with the foundation of Singhasari, the old Hindu culture and civilisation gradually faded away and purely Javanese elements came into prominence.

Rājasa, as well as his two sons who succeeded him, were assassinated. Then came Vishnu-vardhana, who died a natural death in A.D. 1268. He was succeeded by his son Kritanagara whom he had already anointed king and associated with his government in A.D. 1254.

Kritanagara was a remarkable king in many respects and had an eventful reign. Unfortunately the two texts, Nāgara-Kritāgama and Pararaton, which form our main sources of information, differ radically in their estimate of the king. The latter represents him as a foolish and worthless debauchee who spent all his time in eating and drinking, and left the cares of government in the hands of wicked men. The former, which is also the earlier text, on the other hand describes him as "well-versed in the sixfold royal policy, expert in all branches of knowledge, quite at home in Buddhist scriptures and eminently righteous in life and conduct". The truth, as always, seems to lie in the middle. Most probably the king was an ardent follower of Tantrayāna form of Buddhism to whom drinking wine and some other obnoxious practices were parts of religious rites and ceremonies.

As to his political capacity, Kritanagara undoubtedly was a powerful king who established his position securely at home and sent expeditions to foreign countries. He re-established the supremacy of Java over Bali, whose king was brought prisoner to Java in A.D. 1264. There is no reason to doubt the statement in Nāgara-Kritāgama that his authority was established over Pahang (Malay Peninsula), Malayu (Central Sumatra), Gurun (Gorang), Bakulapura (S. W. Borneo), Sunḍa (W. Java) and Madhura (Madura island). Marco Polo (A.D. 1292) also describes Java as a prosperous kingdom, under a great king. It was very rich and noted for its trade and commerce.
The first expedition against Malayu, which was sent in A.D. 1275, established the authority of Java in the very heart of Sumatra. An inscription, dated A.D. 1286, found at Padang Roco in the Batanghari District (Sumatra), clearly proves that the kingdom of Malayu which extended far into the interior of Sumatra formed a vassal state of Java. As subsequent events proved, it was from this military stronghold in Sumatra that Java ultimately extended her authority over the whole of that island. As such it may be regarded as a great achievement of Kritanagara.

The Pararaton, however, attributes the downfall of the king to this unwise military expedition. For while Java was thereby denuded of troops, Jayakatvang, the governor of Kadiri, revolted and marched against the capital city. The king sent his main army under his two sons-in-law against the rebel army coming by the northern route, which was defeated and driven back. But a more powerful rebel army coming stealthily by the southern route suddenly reached the capital and stormed the palace. The king and his minister, who were found drinking wine, were both killed on the spot, and Jayakatvang established (or re-established) the supremacy of Kadiri over Java.

Whatever we might think of the details in the above account of Pararaton, the main facts seem to be correct. The king, passionately devoted to Tantrik Buddhism, evidently neglected administration, for we hear of at least two other revolutions before the final coup de grace given by the governor of Kadiri.

The success of Jayakatvang of Kadiri was, however, shortlived. Vijaya, one of the two sons-in-law of Kritanagara who led the royal army against the rebels in the north, founded a small principality at Majapahit and entered into a conspiracy with the governor of the island of Madura. But the end of Jayakatvang was really brought about by a series of strange events.

In A.D. 1281 the great Mongol Emperor Kublai Khan had invited the king of Java to come in person to the Imperial court to pay homage to him. Kritanagara refused, and at last, irritated by repeated orders, sent back the Chinese ambassador after mutilating his face. Kublai thereupon sent a big military expedition to Java in A.D. 1292. Vijaya, in order to utilise the expedition to his favour, offered submission and joined the Mongols against Jayakatvang who made preparations to defend his country. Jayakatvang’s army was, however, defeated; his capital city was stormed, and he himself was made a prisoner and later killed (A.D. 1293).

Vijaya, freed from Jayakatvang, now left the Chinese camp on some pretext, collected a large force and attacked the Chinese army.
COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION

on its way back from Kadiri. Vijaya was forced to fall back, but the Chinese generals could not come to any agreed decision about their future action; so they got the troops in the ships and returned to China (A.D. 1293).

With the death of Jayakatvang, the kingdom of Kadiri came to an end and Vijaya became undisputed master of Java with Majapahit as its capital. By a strange irony of fate the Mongol expedition, which came with the avowed object of punishing Kritanagara, really avenged his foul murder upon his enemy and helped the re-establishment of his family. No less strange is the fact that Vijaya, who betrayed the Imperial army, succeeded in establishing friendly relations with the Chinese Emperor and sent embassies in A.D. 1297, 1298, 1300 and 1308.

The kingdom of Majapahit, which was brought into existence in A.D. 1293 amid strange circumstance, ere long became the nucleus of a mighty Hindu empire which continued its existence till the sixteenth century A.D.

5. BALI

The island of Bali enjoys the unique distinction of being the only ancient Hindu colony in the East which still follows the Brahmanical religion. Bali imbibed Hindu culture and civilisation from quite an early period as has been noted above. It was intimately connected with Java and very often politically subordinate to it, but there is no doubt that originally it derived its culture directly from India and was in no way a mere product of the Indo-Javanese colony or civilisation, as is supposed by many. This is best proved by a large number of inscriptions on stones and copper-plates, and other antiquities going back to the eighth century A.D. Both the language and subject-matter of these records leave no doubt that the civilisation flourishing in Bali had a distinctive character of its own and was not merely an offshoot of Indo-Javanese culture.

These inscriptions have preserved the names of no less than five Hindu kings and a queen ruling in the tenth century A.D. The earliest of these is Ugrasena whose known dates are A.D. 915 and 933. Then follow Tabanendra-varma-deva (A.D. 955), Chandra-bhayasingha-varma-deva (A.D. 962), Janasadhuvarma-deva (A.D. 975) and queen Sri-Vijaya-mahadevi (A.D. 983). Another inscription, without date but probably belonging to the tenth century, mentions Sri Kesari-varman, lord over all neighbouring provinces, who overcame Gurun and other localities. Neither the relation between these kings nor any further particulars of their reign are known.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

As mentioned above, Bali was conquered by Java towards the close of the tenth century A.D. and was ruled by Mahendradatta, alias Guṇapriyadharmapati, along with her husband Udayana (or Dharmodayana-varma-deva), the parents of the famous king Airlangga. The queen died before A.D. 1011, and the latter alone ruled till at least A.D. 1025. Next we hear of Marakatapangkaja-Sthanottunggadeva, but whether he was an independent king or acknowledged the supremacy of Java, it is difficult to say. Airlangga no doubt ultimately asserted his full suzerainty over Bali, and the king, mentioned in ten copper-plates with dates ranging between A.D. 1049 and 1077, was most probably his younger brother.

Bali probably regained independence in the twelfth century and we know the names of several kings such as Śrī Śūrādhīpa (A.D. 1115-1119), Śrī Jayaśakti (A.D. 1133, 1150), and Paduka Śrī Mahārāja Haji Jaya Pangus. The last named is known from 13 inscriptions (one dated in A.D. 1177 and the rest in A.D. 1181) which describe him as the suzerain king ruling over a circle of seven states in Bali (Bali-dvipa-maṇḍala), but the genuineness of these records is not beyond question. Next we hear of two other kings, Sakalendu (A.D. 1201) and Bhāṭāra Paramēśvara (A.D. 1204). Shortly after this Bali must have been conquered by Java. Chau Ju-Kua includes it among the vassal states of Java, though he expressly says that Bali and Taimjungpura (S. W. Borneo) were the most important among them. Bali became independent again soon after the fall of Kāliri and we know of king Adilalachana ruling in A.D. 1250. But Kritanagara conquered it again and captured its king.

The tragic end of Kritanagara once more enabled Bali to throw off the yoke of Java. The generals of Kublai Khan, while returning from the expedition to Java in A.D. 1293, brought to the Emperor a letter in golden characters and rich presents from the king of Bali. For nearly half a century Bali remained an independent state. But the growing empire of Majapahit tried to reestablish the supremacy over this island. The king of Bali fought hard to maintain his independence, but was totally routed by a strong force sent from Java in A.D. 1343. Henceforth Bali formed an integral part of the Majapahit Empire for nearly a century and half. Then, towards the close of the fifteenth century A.D., the king of Majapahit, unable to stem the tide of Islam, took refuge with his followers in Bali. His example was followed by many Javanese who wanted to retain their old religion and culture. The history of Java was thus continued in Bali which retained its political autonomy till the Dutch established their suzerainty over the whole of...
COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION

the island and incorporated it in their empire in A.D. 1911. But Bali received a large influx of Javanese element after the fall of Majapahit and soon became the last stronghold of Indo-Javanese culture and civilisation, a position which it happily maintains even today.

So strong has been the historic association with Java that most of the inhabitants of Bali style themselves with pride as “men of Majapahit”, and only a few primitive tribes are called, by way of contrast, “indigenous people of Bali.”

6. BURMA

Popular tradition or philology derives the word Brahma (the original of the anglicised form Burma) from the Sanskrit word Brahma. It is, however, more probable that it was the Sanskritized form of the tribal name Mramma (var. Myamma and Bhama).

The Mrammas form the principal element in the population of Burma, which is undoubtedly a mixture of many peoples and tribes. They came from their original homeland in Tibet along the valley of the Brahmaputra and Chindwin rivers, and it has been suggested that the tribal name was derived from the Brahmaputra. In any case, it is certain that the Burmans are ethnically connected with a large number of tribes, now living on the eastern border of India, such as the Nagas, Kukis, Mishmis, Lepchas, Abors and Bhutiyās. It is probable therefore that they came into contact with Indian culture on their way to Burma. If the traditions, narrated above, are to be believed, they received one or more bands of Indian colonists among them after they had settled in the country. Later, the Mrammas came into contact with the Hinduised Pyus, Mons and other primitive tribes, and all these coalesced into the modern Burmans.

There is no doubt that even up to the tenth century A.D. the Mrammas were rude and unlettered, as compared with the Pyus and Mons. How they first came into prominence it is difficult to say. The most likely explanation seems to be that when the power of the Pyus declined on account of pressure from the Thais in the north and Mons in the south, the Mrammas poured in large numbers and gradually acquired political ascendancy.

The Burmese national era starts from A.D. 638 and is generally believed to commemorate the foundation of the Mramma power in Pagan. But this is very doubtful. The association of the Mrammas with Pagan probably does not go back beyond the ninth century A.D., and according to some chronicles the city was founded by king Pyaṅpya in A.D. 849. The Burmese chronicles contain
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

legends of a number of kings of Pagan, but it is not till the eleventh century A.D. that we can clearly follow the main outline of their history with the help of contemporary inscriptions. These inscriptions enable us to correct the dates given in the chronicles and to restore the Indian form of royal names. To take a concrete example, the chronicles tell us that Anawratha became king of Pagan in A.D. 1010. But we know from the inscriptions that the king's name was Aniruddha and that he ascended the throne in A.D. 1044; further, that the classical name of Pagan was Arimardanapura.

The accession of Aniruddha may be said to have introduced a new era in the history of the Mrammas. Although the prevailing religion was a debased form of Tāntrik Buddhism the king was converted to the pure Theravāda by a Brāhmaṇa monk of Thaton, and gradually this new form ousted the old. He asked for the cooperation of the Mon king of Thaton in this great religious reform, and sent an envoy asking for copies of the sacred texts. The request was refused and the envoy was insulted. Thereupon Aniruddha marched with an army, completely conquered the Mon country, and brought its king captive to Pagan. But the defeated Mons really conquered the Mrammas. Aniruddha brought back with him from the Mon country all the Buddhist monks along with sacred texts and relics carried by 32 elephants, as well as a large number of artisans and craftsmen. This brought about a complete transformation of the culture of the Mrammas. They adopted the Mon religion and scripture and learnt the art of writing with the help of the Mon script. Thus the Mon form of Hindu culture commenced a new career in Pagan. Even the classical example of vanquished Greece captivating Rome was surpassed by the way in which the Mrammas thoroughly imbibed the Hindu civilisation from the Mons.

Aniruddha extended his kingdom in all directions. Nearly the whole of Burma, excluding Tenasserim, was brought under his rule; even the Shan chiefs in the east acknowledged his suzerainty. He conquered N. Arakan and probably advanced within the frontiers of India. The Burmese chronicles represent Paṭṭikerā in Tippera District, Bengal, as bordering on his kingdom. The king married an Indian princess and the chronicles give a long account of her journey to Burma.

The two outstanding achievements of Aniruddha were the political union of Burma and the introduction of the Hinayāna form of Buddhism which still prevails in that country. He carried out great irrigation works and built numerous temples and monasteries. His name and fame spread to the island of Ceylon whose
king asked for his help in both political and religious matters. He set Burma on the path to regeneration through Hindu culture which it has followed ever since.

On the death of Aniruddha in A.D. 1077 the Mons of Pegu made an attempt to recover their independence. They advanced up to Pagan and killed the new king. But they were defeated by Kyanzitha, another son of Aniruddha, born of the Indian princess, who was formally crowned in A.D. 1084 under the title Sri Tribhuvanaditya-dharmaraja. During his rule many Buddhists and Vaishnavas from India settled in Burma. The king is said to have fed eight Indian monks with his own hands for three months, and on hearing from them the description of Indian temples designed the famous Ananda temple. Whatever we might think of this story, there is no doubt that this masterpiece of Burman architecture was designed on Indian model. The king not only built other temples, but also repaired (‘newly constructed’ according to chronicles) the holy temple of Bodh-Gayā in India. He married a Chola princess and sent a diplomatic mission to China which was given precedence over that of the Cholas. He sent an expedition to South Arakan which acknowledged his supremacy. Tenasserim was also added to his kingdom.

Kyanzitha was succeeded by his daughter’s son Alaungsithu (A.D. 1112-1167). His reign was full of troubles. Rebellions in South Arakan and Tenasserim were suppressed, but the king in his old age was murdered by his son Narathu who also killed many members of the royal family including his step-mother, the princess of Pattikera (Tippera District). The father of this lady took revenge by sending eight of his best guards, who entered the palace in the disguise of priests and killed Narathu (A.D. 1170). His son Narasimha succeeded him, but was killed after three years by his younger brother Narapatisithu. During the reign of this king Ceylonese Buddhism was introduced in Pagan in A.D. 1192, and ultimately replaced the Mon Buddhism which had prevailed since the days of Aniruddha.

The three kings who reigned after Narapatisithu were all devoted to religious activities, and one of them, Jayasinha, built the Mahābodhi temple in imitation of the famous temple at Bodh-Gayā. The next two kings were of opposite character. The second of these, Narasinhapati, who ascended the throne in A.D. 1254, boasted that he swallowed three hundred dishes of curry daily and had three thousand concubines. In A.D. 1271 Kublai Khan sent envoys asking Burma to accept his suzerainty. Not only did the Burmese king refuse the demand and execute a Chinese ambassador sent to
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

him in A.D. 1273, but he also twice invaded some border states which had submitted to China. On the second occasion (A.D. 1283) the Burmese army was defeated with heavy loss and the king fled from his capital city. Revolt broke out on all sides and the king was murdered (A.D. 1287). The Mongols now struck a decisive blow. A grandson of Kublai Khan marched to Pagan which perished “amid the blood and flame of the Tartar terror”.

The Mongol conquest was followed by a complete political disintegration and cultural decay. The country was divided into a number of petty principalities and the stories of the interminable fights, intrigues, cruelty and treachery of their chiefs fill the pages of the chronicles. Thus passed away the united kingdom of Burma, set up by Aniruddha, after a glorious existence of more than two centuries, and nearly three centuries elapsed before it regained anything like its former position in the sphere of politics and culture.

7. SIAM

The beginnings of Hindu colonisation in Siam may be traced to the first two centuries of the Christian era. Archaeological remains and other evidences leave no doubt that here, too, as in the neighbouring regions in Indo-China, the Hindu culture and civilisation were firmly established and entirely transformed the character of the people. But our knowledge of its political history is very meagre. Its northern part came under the influence of the Mons, and we have referred above to the kingdom of Dvāravatī that flourished in the seventh century A.D. and various small principalities, known from local annals, that grew up in Laos in later times. The southern part of Siam formed a part of the kingdom of Kambuja from early times and, as noted above, the Kambuja empire at its greatest extent included the whole of that country. It is only after the decline of that empire in the thirteenth century A.D. that Siam became an independent political unit. But this was accomplished, not by the children of the soil, but by a new race of immigrants from the north, known as the Thais. As this race dominated the history of Indo-China during the next five centuries and caused the overthrow of the Hindu kingdoms of Kambuja and Champa, it is necessary to review their history at some length.

The Thais are a Mongolian tribe, probably ethnically related to the Chinese, and originally lived in the southern and south-western part of what is now known as China. They migrated in early centuries before and after the Christian era, and set up various principalities spreading over the whole of the uplands of Indo-China to the east of Burma and the north of Siam, Kambuja and Champā. Two
groups of these, which settled in Yunnan and Tonkin, came to be more powerful than the rest. The latter, known as the Annamites, whose long struggle with Champā has been referred to above, derived their civilisation from China. The former, however, came under the influence of Hindu culture and civilisation from an early period. Their country, corresponding to modern Yunnan in South China, was called Nan-chao by the Chinese, but it was known in Indo-China as Gandhāra. One part of it was also called Videha-rājya, and its capital was known as Mithilā. The people used an alphabet of Hindu origin. Local traditions in Yunnan affirm that Avalokiteśvara came from India and converted the region to Buddhism.

It is said that when, towards the close of the eighth century A.D., the ruler of this kingdom became enamoured of Chinese civilisation, seven religious teachers of India rebuked the king. In the first half of the ninth century A.D. a Hindu monk named Chandragupta, born in Magadha and therefore designated Māgadha, led a brilliant career of a thaumaturgist in Yunnan. There was in Yunnan the famous Pippala cave, the Bodhi tree, the sacred hill Gridhrakūṭa and many other localities associated with Buddhism. A Chinese traveller of the tenth century A.D. refers to a local tradition that Sākyamuni obtained Bodhi near Lake Ta-li in Yunnan. The Buddhist influence in Yunnan is still attested by two bells of the eleventh century with inscriptions in Chinese and Sanskrit. The king of Nan-chao had the title Maharājā and also another Hindu title, which means the king of the east. According to local tradition the royal family was descended from Aśoka. Rasid-ud-din, writing in the thirteenth century, not only calls the country Gandhāra but asserts that its people came from India and China. All these demonstrate that the Thais of Yunnan had imbibed Hindu culture and civilisation to a very large extent.

The Thai kingdom of Nan-chao or Gandhāra threw off the yoke of China about the middle of the seventh century A.D. and soon grew very powerful. A century later the state was strong enough to invade China and, after repeated successes, its ruler assumed the title of Emperor in A.D. 850. The T'ang Emperor took this as an insult to him and a prolonged war followed, in which China was repeatedly defeated. In A.D. 884 the Emperor of Gandhāra married a daughter of the Chinese Emperor and peace was established between the two powers.

The Hinduised Thai kingdom of Gandhāra flourished till A.D. 1253 when it was conquered by the Mongol Chief Khublai Khan. The extinction of this great Thai state coincides with, and perhaps accounts for, the general movement of the Thais towards the south and west. One branch of them, the Ahoms, proceeded north and
conquered Assam, while another, the Shans, got possession of Upper Burma. A third branch went south and conquered gradually the whole of Laos and Siam.

There were Thai kingdoms on the eastern borderland of Burma, as well as in the Mekong valley, long before the thirteenth century. But these were petty principalities, and it is not till the thirteenth century that we find powerful Thai states in both these regions. The history of the Thais in Burma (known as the Shans) need not detain us here, as we are concerned here with the Thais in Siam.

The first Thai kingdom of importance was that of Sukhodaya (Sukotai) in central Siam. It was then the seat of Kambuja governor in Siam. When a revolt broke out, the Kambuja general sent to quell it was defeated by two Thai chiefs who occupied the town. One of them, Kun Bang Klang, was consecrated as king of Sukhodaya with the title of Indraditya, some time about the middle of the thirteenth century A.D. During his reign the country received a tremendous wave of Thai immigrants, presumably those who fled from Nan-chao or Gandhāra after its conquest by Kublai Khan.

Partly on account of these reinforcements, and partly on account of the weakness of Kambuja, Indraditya was able to extend his dominions on all sides by constant fights with his neighbours. But it was during the reign of his son Ram Kamheng that the new kingdom reached its widest extent. This king, whose known dates are A.D. 1283 and 1292, has left a long inscription which gives us a detailed account of his life and reign.

The record gives a long list of conquered countries which include a number of Thai states in Siam, Hāimsāvati or Pēgu in Lower Burma and Nakhon Sri Thammarat in Malay Peninsula. It appears that after the Kambujas had lost their power in Siam, in the thirteenth century, a number of independent Thai states arose there and probably most of them had to acknowledge the suzerainty of Ram Kamheng. Two Thai states, which sent many embassies to China between A.D. 1282 and 1323, are called by the Chinese Si-en and Lo-hu. There is no doubt that they represent respectively Shyam and Lyv or Lopburi. Shyam, which has been anglicised into Siam, originally denoted only the northern part of the country, and stands here for the kingdom of Sukhodaya. It is no doubt due to the supremacy of this kingdom that gradually the whole country came to be known as Shyam or Siam. But the Chinese account shows that even towards the end of the thirteenth century, Lopburi, to the south of Sukhodaya, in the Lower Menam Valley, was an important state, and bore a separate name. But in spite of the existence of one or more such independent or semi-independent states we may well
believe that Ram Kamheng established a very powerful kingdom whose influence was felt as far as Lower Burma in the north and Malaya Peninsula in the south. It was almost certainly Ram Kamheng who carried his victorious arms to Kambuja and devastated the region round Angkor as testified to by Cheu Ta-Kuan.\(^27\)

But these brilliant victories alone do not constitute the sole claim of Ram Kamheng to the title ‘Great’. His record gives a long list of his works of public utility which would do credit to any ruler. He erected large and beautiful temples and placed in them bronze images of Buddha, one of which was 18 cubits high. Palaces, monasteries, lakes, parks and groves of fruit-trees beautified the city and the people enjoyed peace and prosperity. In a long passage the king enunciates his ideals of charity and justice. In particular he mentions the device of hanging a bell in front of the gate by ringing which all petitioners for justice could have direct access to the king.

Ram Kamheng also claims to have introduced the art of writing among his people. Although the words of the inscription are not quite clear, it would seem that he did not invent the Thai script but a particular style of it which was known after him and came into general use. This Ram Kamheng script is derived from a cursive form of the Khmer script of Kambuja and was a great improvement upon the Thai script which was in use before his time.

Even making due allowance for the natural exaggerations in a royal praisefi, the long record of Ram Kamheng, found at Sukho­daya, presents before us a unique personality, great in arts of war and peace, and an enlightened ruler with progressive ideas much in advance of his age.

It is not necessary for our present purpose to follow the subsequent history of the Thai kingdom in full details. The grandson of Ram Kamheng took the pompous name Suryavasīsa Rāma Mahādharmājādhirāja at the time of coronation in A.D. 1347. He was a devout Buddhist who studied the Tripitakas and at the same time set up images of Śiva and Viṣṇu. But he was not successful as a ruler and gradually the Thai principality of Uton, which took the place of Lopburi after conquering it, rose into importance. In A.D. 1350 its ruler proclaimed himself to be an independent king. He transferred his capital to a new city called Ayodhyā (Ayuthia) and assumed the title Rāmādhipati. Soon Ayodhyā became the leading state and the rulers of Sukhodaya became, at first vassal chiefs, and then merely hereditary governors.

The kingdom of Ayodhyā gradually extended its authority over Laos and a considerable part of Kambuja. It occasionally suffered serious reverses in the hands of Burmese kings, and the city of
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Ayodhya was destroyed by one of them in A.D. 1767. The capital was then removed to Bangkok where a representative of the old dynasty still occupies the throne. As in Burma, Buddhism is still the prevailing religion in Siam, and this has kept up her cultural association with India and Ceylon.

8. CULTURE AND CIVILISATION

The Hindu civilisation, which had taken deep root in the soil, continued its progress unabated during the period under review, practically in all the countries whose political history has been discussed in the preceding sections. The general picture of society and religion, sketched above, mostly holds good for this period also, and we shall therefore confine ourselves to a few characteristic features which distinguish this period.

1. Religion

Of the three principal religious sects, Saivism still maintained the dominant position, but Buddhism made a great headway in Kambuja. King Sūrya-varman I had the posthumous name Nirvānapada. It was a fairly general practice to give such posthumous names, indicative of religious persuasion, to deceased kings. We may, therefore, regard him as the first Buddhist king of Kambuja. Another great Buddhist king was Jayavarman VII, the grand monarch of Kambuja. The Ta Prohm Inscription throws a great deal of light on the principles and practices of Buddhism. After mentioning the rich donations made to a temple the king expresses the hope that as a result of this piety, “his mother might be delivered from the ocean of births.” It is full of noble sentiments befitting a pious Buddhist king. The motive which inspired him to establish the hospitals, 102 in number, is described as follows:

“The bodily pain of the diseased became in him (king Jayavarman VII) a mental agony more tormenting than the former. For the real pain of a king is the pain of his subjects, not that of his own (body).” This noble sentiment combines the idealism of the Kautilyan king with the piety and humanity of Asoka.

But the darker side of Buddhism also made its appearance. The degraded form of Mahāyāna, known as Tantrayāna, took deep root in the soil, especially in Java and Sumatra. Its influence can be traced in the eleventh and twelfth centuries A.D. by the parts played by Tāntrīk teachers during the reigns of Airlangga and Jayabhaya. The further progress of this debased form of religion in the thirteenth century is illustrated by king Kṛtānagara. This great king was undoubtedly endowed with talents of a high order,
and was believed to be an incarnation of Jina, but he indulged, perhaps in sincere faith, even in such obnoxious practices as pānchamakāra and sūdhana-chakra. A terrible and repulsive image of Bhairava, now at Leiden, is regarded by some as a representation of this king, but whether this is true or not, this hideous, naked and corpulent figure, amid human skulls, personifies the obnoxious religious faith of the time.

It is probable that this Tantrik form was introduced from Bengal where we find similar degradation of Buddhism during the later Pāla period. As in Bengal, here also Tantrik ideas permeated Śaivism, and there was a rapprochement between the two, notably in Kambuja and Java. The process reached its logical conclusion by the identification of Śiva, Viṣṇu and Buddha, as well as of their Saktis (goddesses). In modern Balinese theology Buddha is regarded as a younger brother of Śiva, and a similar Śiva-Buddha cult also existed in Java.

This syncretism is well illustrated by king Kritanagara who was known both as Narasimhā-mūrtti (an incarnation of Viṣṇu) and Śiva-Buddha, and was represented after his death by an image of Śiva-Buddha. His father was also represented, after death, by the images of both Śiva and Buddha, and the latter’s cousin, though called Narasimhā-mūrtti, was represented by an image of Śiva. These not merely indicate toleration of, and even faith in, different gods, but also a belief that these different gods are identical.

We have many other instances of the apotheosis of the kings and queens, and the construction of divine images, named and fashioned after them. The queen of Angrokh, and the queen-mother of Jayavarman VII were represented as the Buddhist goddess Prajñāpāramitā, the Viṣṇu of Belahan probably represents Airlangga, while the Hari-Hara image of Simping preserves the physical features of king Kritanagara. There are probably other portrait-images of gods and goddesses which cannot be definitely identified.

It may be due to the influence of the Tantrik ideas, that the royal gurus (preceptors) occupied a pre-eminent position. In any case we come across quite a large number of them, particularly in Kambuja, who wielded great power and authority even in political matters. Saṅkara Panḍita had played a leading part in placing Harsha-varman III on the throne, while Divākara Panḍita was a prominent figure during the reign of Jayavarman VI and his two successors. Sometimes we hear of kings getting priests from abroad in order to perform special ceremonies. An inscription records how such a priest was brought by a fleet of barges and grand festivities.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

held in his honour were attended by kings from other islands. Most likely this priest was brought from India, for intimate association continued between these countries. Achārya Chandrakirti, the High Priest of Suvarṇadvīpa, proceeded to Vījāśana (Bodh-Gayā) in order to acquire a thorough knowledge of the Dharma. His fame was so great that even Dipankara38 went to Suvarṇadvīpa and stayed there for twelve years as his pupil.

To what extent pomp and ceremony became a part of Buddhism is indicated by the description of the spring-time festival in seven verses of the Ta Prohm Inscription of Jaya-varman VII.39 It was celebrated every year from the 8th to the 15th day of the bright half of the month of Chaitra. Dancing by girls formed an important part of the ceremony, and offerings were made to the three gurus, thousand Devatās, and to the 619 divinities, while 1000 learned persons such as Bhikṣhus and Brahmans were entertained. Bhagavān and Bhagavati, together with the gods Vira, Śakti and others, were to make the pradakṣīṃa (circumambulation).

The account of Cheu Ta-Kuan40 also shows that Buddhists no longer followed the puritan code of old times. The monks ate fish and meat and offered them to the Buddha. Some of them had palanquins with golden pole and gold-handled umbrellas and the king consulted them about serious affairs. There were no Buddhist nuns.

The same authority tells us that the Taoists, i.e. the followers of the Brahmanical sects, are called Pa-sseu-wei, which probably stands for the Pasupatas. They worshipped only a block of stone (i.e. a linga) and their religion was not so prosperous as Buddhism. There were, however, Taoist nuns.

It would thus appear that towards the close of the thirteenth century A.D. Buddhism was growing at the cost of Śaivism. Evidently this process continued till, in course of a few centuries, Buddhism ousted all other forms of religion, as we see in Cambodia today.

In Burma, too, Brahmanical religion was completely ousted by Buddhism. Here, as in Siam and Ceylon, the prevalent form was Theravāda or Hinayāna Buddhism, though the Mahāyāna or Tantrayāna doctrines, which so strongly affected Sumatra, Java, Kambojja and Champa, were not altogether unknown. There is another common feature in Burma and Ceylon. Both the countries adopted Pāli, the language of the sacred texts, as a classic which has evolved a new literature and continued its unbroken career down to the present time. The same thing is also true of Siam, though to a much less extent.
COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION

2. Social and Economic Condition

The caste system still formed the basis of the society. The Buddhist king Sūrya-varman I is said to have 'established the division of castes', while Harsha-varman caused the duties of the four castes to be strictly observed. But the rules about the inter-marriage were somewhat different as we find even Brāhmaṇa girls being married to Kshatriyas.

The social condition on the whole does not differ substantially from that in the preceding period. But fortunately we have a detailed account of the manners and customs of Kambuja, the most flourishing Indian colony at this period, written by Cheu Ta-Kuan in A.D. 1296-97. Such an account by a discerning eye-witness is of inestimable value in forming a correct idea of the culture and civilisation of a people, and we may therefore quote a few important points from his sketch.

The king, the nobles, and the high officials formed an aristocracy which was sharply distinguished from the mass of people. Even the size and structure of a house were determined by the official rank of its owner. The common people did not dare use tiles for their roofs which were thatched.

The most striking thing about the dress of the people was that women as well as men (including king and queen) kept the upper part of their bodies uncovered and walked barefooted. Rich and poor alike used only a loin cloth, adding a scarf when they went out. All had their hair tied up in a knot.

Cheu Ta-Kuan describes the wealth and luxury of the upper classes. The palace and other buildings were magnificent. He refers to a golden bridge with two golden lions on each side, golden Buddhas, golden towers, golden window frames, tiles made of lead and square columns with 50 mirrors in the council chamber. Pearls and jewellery were worn by the rich in profusion while the highest officials used palanquins with a golden pole and four umbrellas with golden handles.

The king maintained a big harem in addition to five queens. He sat with his principal queen at the golden window of his palace so that the people from below might see them. There were various amusements and festivities in the palace such as fire-works on New Year eve, bathing of Buddha images, collected from all over the country, on a particular day in the fifth month, music, dancing, boar and elephant fights in the eighth month, and a jovial procession of the people before the palace in the ninth month.

The king personally tried cases. Trial by ordeal was in vogue
and for serious crime the accused was buried alive in a ditch, or mutilated.

Four harvests were gathered in a year. The valuable products were ‘plumes of the king-fisher, ivory, horn of the rhinoceros and wax.’ The chief imports were gold and silver, silk stuffs, tin, porcelain, vermilion, paper and saltpetre. The trade was carried on chiefly by women.

Astronomy was very popular and even women could make calculations about auspicious and inauspicious days.

The monks were in charge of the education of the laity, and even the school-going children were instructed by them. The general spread of education is testified to by inscriptions, from which we learn that knowledge was held in high respect, and even many of the kings were highly learned. We get frequent reference to learned divines and a large number of eminent Brāhmaṇa families who for generations kept up a high standard of scholarship. The ministers and high officials, including ladies, followed in the footsteps of the kings and the high traditions of the earlier period were fully maintained.

But in spite of the high level of culture there were disquieting signs of the coming doom. It was evident that the source of the stream that fed up the civilisation of the colonies in this distant region was gradually being dried up. Indian inspiration being gradually weakened, the primitive indigenous elements began to assert themselves. This can be easily discerned in the gradual transformation of art and literature. In general the indigenous language came to the forefront and began to replace Sanskrit, and new local elements introduced in art led to its rapid degradation. Though all this was not fully apparent during the period under review, signs of the coming change were not wanting.

In the social and moral life also we come across some elements which seem to be an assertion of primitive instincts over artificial refinements introduced by Hindu civilisation. Reference may be made for instance to certain customs which are noted by Chou Ta-Kuan as being common among all classes of people in Kambuja. We are told that men and women of the family, without any clothes on, took their bath together in a big cistern. Sometimes even two or three families used the same cistern and bathed together in this way. Even in the river outside a town thousands of naked women, including those of noble birth, took their bath before the full gaze of the public who could “see their whole body from head to foot”. Even more obnoxious was the practice, universally prevalent, whereby a virgin had to be deflowered by a monk, either Buddhist
or Saiva, who was specially engaged by the parents for the purpose. Customs like these were not absolutely unknown in India, but they were confined to a very small section of people and looked upon with opprobrium. Whether Kambuja owed them to India, or made a gift of them to the motherland, it is difficult to say. It would also appear from what Cheu Ta-Kuăn says that the ideal of chastity, even among the married women in Kambuja, was not very high. On the whole there is hardly any doubt that there was a great lowering of the ethical standard specially in relation to sexual morality.

3. Literature

The study of Indian literature was widely prevalent in all the colonies, but nowhere else, except in Java, it led to the growth of a powerful indigenous literature. The Indo-Javanese literature passed through three distinct stages. Its earliest phase is generally known as Old-Javanese literature which flourished for nearly five hundred years from A.D. 1000 to 1500. This phase came to an end with the passing away of Hindu rule in Java and was replaced by what is called New-Javanese literature. The phase of literary activity in Bali, introduced by the Javanese who had migrated to that island after the Muslim conquest, is known as Middle-Javanese.

The Old-Javanese literature, with which alone we are concerned here, derives its subject-matter mainly from Indian literature, though there is often considerable deviation from the Sanskrit original texts with which we are familiar today. Its poetry follows rules of Sanskrit metre and it has a strong predilection for using Sanskrit words and quoting Sanskrit verses.

The earliest specimen of this literature, so far known, is an Old-Javanese version of a Sanskrit work Amaramālā, a lexicon like Amarakośa, written under the patronage of king Jitendra of the Sailendra dynasty who is not known from any other source. But the most famous work in this literature is the Old-Javanese Rāmāyaṇa which was probably composed by Yogiśvara in A.D. 1094. It is not a translation of the Sanskrit work, but is based on the story of Rāma which ends with the reunion of Rāma and Sītā at Lāṅkā, and shows some divergence from the text of Vālmiki.

Next in point of importance is the prose translation of Mahābhārata which closely follows the original epic but is more condensed. The three parvās, Ādi, Viṇāṭa, and Bhishma-, were written under the patronage of Airlangga towards the beginning of the eleventh century A.D. while five other parvās were added later.

Then follow a large number of political works known as Kaka-
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

win (from Kavi meaning Kavya), based on some epic theme. The Arjuna-vivāha (eleventh century) gives the story of Arjuna's asceticism and his fight with Siva, disguised as a hunter, and Nivāta-Kavacha, the demon who attacked the gods, as well as his amours with Menakā, Suprabhā, Tilottamā and others. The Krishnāyana deals with the famous episode of the abduction of Rukminī by Krishna and his consequent fight with Jarasandha. The death of Indumati, the queen of Aja, as soon as a garland of flowers fell from heaven upon her body, forms the theme of Sumanasaṁtaka. Both works were written at the beginning of the twelfth century. The greatest work of this class, which has always enjoyed a very high reputation in Java, is Bhārata-yuddha written by Mpu Sedah in A.D. 1157. This, as well as Harivamsa, deals with the well-known episode of the Mahābhārata, and was written during the reign of Jayabhaya, king of Kāli. Among other works of this class may be mentioned Smaradahana (burning of the cupid by Siva), Lubdhaka (glorification of Sivarātri festival), Bhokakāya (defeat of Naraka by Krishna), and Krishnāntaka (death of Krishna and the destruction of his family). All these, except the last, were written during the Kāli period. There are many other works of this class which cannot be dated even approximately. In addition to these, there are other Kakawins not dealing with epic themes. These include lexicons, works on metre, and works of didactic, philosophic and erotic character.

There is also a large number of prose works. Some of these are based on themes derived from the epics. Others belong to the Purāṇa class of which the most important is the Brahmāṇḍa-purāṇa which closely follows the Sanskrit model, and even repeats the usual preamble, viz. the recitation of the text by Romaharshana, during the rule of Adhistamakrishna. The other Purāṇas, such as Adi-purāṇa and Bhūvana-purāṇa, contain many well-known Puranic myths and legends but we cannot trace these texts to any Sanskrit original.

The texts dealing with religious doctrines, mode of worship and philosophical principles form an important class of Old-Javanese literature. The secular works include historical, linguistic, medical and erotic texts. It is impossible even to refer to them in the short compass of this chapter. But enough has been said to indicate the vast mass and the varied contents even of the first phase of the Indo-Javanese literature, known as Old-Javanese literature. It may be added that the stories contained in the Sanskrit original or the Old-Javanese works based on them, were illustrated in sculptures in Java. In Kambuja and other colonies also we find
the themes of the two great epics illustrated in sculptures. All these show the great influence which Indian literature exercised upon the art and literature of the various colonies.

4. Art

(i) Kambuja

In the domain of art Kambuja towers head and shoulder above the rest. A general view of the city of Angkor Thom and of the monuments round about it creates a solemn impression of dazzling brilliancy which does not suffer any diminution on a closer examination of the remains. Indeed it may be said with perfect truth, that no other equal space on earth can show anything comparable to Angkor monuments in massive grandeur. It is not possible here to attempt such a description, even of the most famous monuments of Kambuja, as would convey a fair idea of their nature and artistic excellence. I shall therefore refer only to a few typical specimens.

The Angkor Vat is justly regarded as the grandest of the monuments in Kambuja. The name simply means the temple (Vat) of the city (Angkor=nagara). It was built by Surya-varman II and dedicated originally to god Vishnu. The whole monument looks like an island in a lake, being surrounded by a moat, still full of water. This moat, which runs round the boundary walls of the temple, has a total length of two miles and a half, and is more than 650 feet wide. It is spanned by a stone causeway, 36 ft. wide, which leads to a huge gopuram or gateway of large dimensions. A paved avenue, 520 yds. long and raised some 7 ft. above the ground, connects this gateway with the temple situated in the centre of an extensive courtyard.

The main temple consists of a series of concentric courts, rising in several stages, one above another, from the centre of the topmost of which rises the shrine with a high sikhara that dominates the whole. Each of the courts is surrounded by a gallery, i.e. a long running chamber with vaulted roof supported by a wall on one side and square columns on the other. It has a verandah on the inner side with a half-vaulted roof of lower height. The first or lowest gallery measures 265 yds. from east to west and 224 yds. from north to south. A staircase from it leads to the second gallery which is similar in character, but supports four grand towers at the four corners. A grand staircase leads to the third or highest gallery which supports a conical tower at each corner and encloses a square courtyard measuring 200 ft. on each side. The sanctuary, placed...
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

in the centre of this courtyard, and connected by four galleries with the four sides of the third gallery, is crowned by a sikhara or tower which rises to a height of 215 ft. and dominates the whole surrounding area by its majestic grandeur.

In addition to the principal galleries there are other connecting galleries, and the walls of all of these are covered with continuous friezes of bas-reliefs and other sculptures. The scenes, largely drawn from the Indian epics, cover a wide range, embracing almost all phases of human and animal lives, and are full of life and movement. The vast lengths of galleries, covered by these graceful and refined bas-reliefs, show the decorative art of Kambuja at its best. The Angkor Vat thus combines vastness of dimension with minute decoration, and it may be truly said of its artists that they conceived like giants and finished like jewellers.

There are many other temples of huge dimensions, marked by the two chief features which distinguish Angkor Vat, viz. the pyramidal character and the galleries. But there is no space to refer to them, except Bayon, which is regarded as the masterpiece of Kambuja architecture. It has the form of a pyramid of three stories crowned by a tower. The first storey consists of a gallery about 500 ft. long from east to west and 330 ft. from north to south. The plan is complicated by porches in the second gallery with other smaller galleries running at right angles to the main gallery. The third storey supports a central tower, conical in shape and with a circular base. It has balconies on all sides and is crowned by four diademed heads, probably of Brahma. Its summit is at a height of about 150 ft. from the ground-level. There are terraces, balustrades, cells, verandahs and separate buildings in the courtyard and the sculpture is of a high quality.

No description of the monumental grandeur of Kambuja can be concluded without some account of Angkor Thom, the capital city built by Jaya-varman VII, about a mile north of Angkor Vat. We have a description of this city from the pen of Cheu Ta-Kuan who was deeply impressed by its wealth and grandeur. The actual remains today also convey a fair idea of its past glory.

The town was surrounded by a high wall made of limonite, and just beyond it, by a ditch about 110 yds. wide. There were five huge gates in the wall, two on the east and one each on the other sides, which gave access to the heart of the city by means of five grand avenues each 33 yds. wide. Each gateway was preceded by a paved causeway over the ditch.

The ditch has a total length of nearly 8½ miles and its sides are paved with enormous blocks of stones. The balustrade of the
CAUSEWAY was made of figures of giants pulling at the body of a huge serpent whose expanded hoods must have formed its ends. But all these are now ruined.

The gateway consists of a huge arched opening more than 10 yds. high and 15 ft. wide with chambers on both sides. This opening is surmounted by four huge heads placed back to back, with smaller figures in the intervening spaces, and in a line below the chins. Lower down, the opening is flanked on either side by a small projection composed of a nicely decorated figure of an elephant with three heads, its huge broad feet trampling on lotus leaves and the three trunks plucking at aquatic flowers. This decoration, the huge opening and the majestic figures of heads above render the gate of Angkor Thom one of the most impressive and artistically superb in the whole world.

The old capital was almost square in shape, each side measuring nearly two miles. The grand avenues passing through the gates on the south, west and east (centre) converge towards the temple of Bayon described above which occupied almost the central position of the city.

To the north of the Bayon is the great public square, a sort of forum about 765 yds. long and 165 yds. wide, the border of which is occupied either by monuments or their principal gateways. Two grand avenues, one from the northern and another from one of the eastern gateways, converge to this forum. The buildings around it are the Bapuhon, the Phimeanakas, the Terrace of Honour, Prah-Pithu and two other structures, commonly, but not very accurately, referred to as the ware-house and the terrace of the leprous king. To the north of the enclosure of the Phimeanakas are the ruins of an edifice known as Prah-Pahlay. These are all Brahmanical structures. But a few Buddhist chapels are found scattered about all over the dense jungles which now spread everywhere over the ruins of this splendid city of old.

No great town has probably suffered greater devastation from man and nature than Angkor Thom. This magnificent city, which would favourably compare with Rome in the days of Nero, was for centuries entirely covered with vegetation and forests. But the huge quantities of potteries, bricks and tiles scattered all over the area indicate the density of population in the palmy days of the city. From a study of the extant ruins it has been inferred that the people mostly lived on the five grand avenues and round the numerous tanks whose beds still lie scattered over the whole area.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(ii) Other Colonies

The undoubted grandeur and brilliance of the monuments of Kambuja should not blind us to the fact that the period under review witnessed great activities in art in almost all the colonies. In Java the end of Sailendra dynasty closed a brilliant epoch such as never occurs twice in any country. But great monuments were built in Eastern Java such as the temples known as Chao Chidi, Chao Singhasari and Chao Jago, all built in the thirteenth century. The roof of the first, which is the earliest of the three, is built of horizontal courses, but its pyramidal shape gives it a distinct character and introduces us to a new type of art in which we can clearly mark the triumph of local ideas over Indian tradition. The plan of the other two and the reliefs of the third are still more East-Javanese in character, and mark a definite break with the art-traditions of Central Java. Thus began the decadence which was not, however, fully manifest till the subsequent centuries. The same conclusion may be drawn from sculptures, but with an important exception. The sculptured reliefs show a very much debased character, and a great gulf—greater than in architecture,—separates them from those of Central Java. But curiously enough the divine images in the round are of old style and show considerable excellence and continuity of art tradition. The Vishnu of Belahan and the Harihara of Simping, both representing royal features, are very beautiful, but the finest in the whole series is the image of Prajñāpāramitā found in a Singhasari temple, and now at Leiden. Her lovely form and calm divine expression recall the best days of Javanese art, but the rapturous praise, sometimes bestowed upon it, seems to be somewhat extravagant. For it lacks the vitality, refined elegance, and the mystic touch of divinity that clearly distinguish the Buddha images of Barabar. It is a great work of art, but much inferior to the masterpieces of Central Java.

Many temples and images were made in Champa, but none of them is of conspicuous merit or calls for any special consideration. In Burma, the rise of the kingdom of Pagan in the eleventh century ushered in a great period of artistic activity, and many pagodas or temples were built by successive kings. There are remains of no less than 800 or 1000 temples in the city of Pagan itself which extended along the Irawadi with an average depth of two miles. The greatest of them all is the Ananda Temple of Pagan, which was built by Kyanzittha and is justly regarded as the masterpiece of Burman architecture. It occupies the centre of a spacious courtyard which is 564 ft. square. The main temple, made of bricks, is square in plan, with a gabled porch projecting from the centre of each face,
and the total length, from end to end, on every side, is about 290 ft. It contains a colossal standing Buddha image, 31 ft. high. The walls of the temple, 39 ft. high, are crowned by a battlemented parapet above which rise in succession two roofs having a curvilinear outline. Above these are four receding narrow terraces which serve as the basement of a North Indian sikhara crowned by a complete stūpa instead of an āmalaka. There are ringed pagodas, small stūpas and figures at the corners of the successive stages of the roof. Apart from the graceful proportion and the symmetry of design, the beauty of the Ananda temple is enhanced by sculptured stone slabs and glazed terracotta plaques that adorn its walls. The stonereiefs, eighty in number, and some of the plaques illustrate the principal episodes of Buddha’s life, and 926 plaques depict the Jātaka stories.

In spite of the somewhat unique character of the plan there is no doubt about its Indian origin. This is clearly emphasised by Duroiselle who has made a special study of the subject in recent times and written a monograph about it. He remarks:

“There can be no doubt that the architects who planned and built the Ananda were Indians. Everything in this temple from sikhara to basement, as well as the numerous stone sculptures found in its corridors and the terracotta plaques adorning its basement and terraces, bear the indubitable stamp of Indian genius and craftsmanship... In this sense, we may take it, therefore, that the Ananda, though built in the Burmese capital, is an Indian temple.”

We do not know much of the early artistic activities in Siam, but the remains clearly indicate that Indian art served as the main influence and model, both in architecture and sculpture. The most distinctive architectural type in Siam is what is known as Prang, a square temple with a very high roof consisting of a number of low stages which, taken together, have the aspect of a curvilinear sikhara. This has been a fashionable mode of building since the fourteenth century, and was no doubt evolved from earlier examples which were made up of a curious blend of the sikharas of North and South India.

2. See above, p. 254.
7. See pp. 246 ff.
8. See above, p. 258.
10. See above, p. 736.
11. See above, p. 736.
12. See p. 738.
16. See above, p. 734.
17. See p. 734.
18. See above, p. 734.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

23. See p. 751.
24. See p. 753.
26. See above, p. 741.
27. See above, p. 741.
28. Vol. IV, Ch. XIV, VI.
29. See p. 736.
30. See above, p. 738.
31. See above, p. 740.
32. See p. 731.
33. See p. 750.
34. See p. 740.
35. See p. 750.
36. See p. 736.
37. See above, p. 736.
40. See above, p. 741.
41. See p. 736.
42. See p. 736.
44. See above, p. 742.
45. This practice still prevails in Bali, and was evidently also true of Java in old times.
46. Vol. IV, pp. 441 f.
47. See p. 740.
48. See p. 750.
49. See p. 741.
50. See p. 737.
51. See pp. 736, 743.
52. See p. 757.

774
LIST OF BIBLIOGRAPHIES

GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

I. Original Sources: Literary Texts and Translations.

(1) Indian Sources:

(A) Brahmanical:

(i) Epics;
(ii) Purāṇas;
(iii) Philosophy
  (1) Mīmāṃsā
  (2) Nyāya
  (3) Sāṅkhya
  (4) Vaiśeṣika
  (5) Vedānta
  (6) Yoga
(iv) Dharmasastra;
(v) Historical Works;
(vi) Polity;
(vii) Lexicography;
(viii) Grammar;
(ix) Astronomy, Astrology and Mathematics;
(x) Medicine;
(xi) Poetics, Dramaturgy and Metrics;
(xii) Erotics, Music, Architecture, etc.;
(xiii) Prose Romances and Champūs;
(xiv) Kathā;
(xv) Anthologies;
(xvi) Belles-Lettres.

(B) Buddhist:

Pāli and Sanskrit

(C) Jain:

Māhārāṣṭrī and other Prakrits

(D) Apabhramśa:

(E) Muslim:

(2) Non-Indian Sources:

(A) Arabic

(B) Chinese

(C) Tibetan

II. Original Sources

(1) Inscriptions

(2) Coins

III. Modern Works

(1) Histories of the Period

(2) Histories of Literature

(3) Religion and Philosophy

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Chapter I

Chapter II

Chapter XXI

775
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

I. ORIGINAL SOURCES:

LITERARY TEXTS & TRANSLATIONS

(1) Indian Sources

(A) BRAHMANICAL

(i) EPICS

Mahābhārata


Rāmāyaṇa


(North-Western Recension) Ed. by Pandit Ram Labhaya, Bhagavad Datt and Vishva Bandhu Sastri, Lahore, 1923-47.

776
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

(North and South) Ed. with the comm. of Ramabhirami by Vasudevacharya. Bombay, 1902.

(South) Published by R. Narayanaswami Aiyar, with the help of S. Kuppuswami Sastrigal, S. Krishna Sastrigal, Padmanabha Sastrigal and Ramachandra Dikshit. With Index. Madras, 1933.


(ii) PURANAS

Agni Purana

Bhagavata Purana

Bhavishya Purana
Published by Venkateswar Press. Bombay, 1910.

Brahma Purana

Brahmanda Purana

Brahmavaiavarta

Byhanaradiya

Garuda Purana

Harivamsa

Karma Purana

Liha Purana
Ed. by J. Vidysagar. Calcutta, 1885.

Markandeya
Matsya Purāṇa
Ed. by J. Vidyasagara. Calcutta, 1876.
Ed. ASS. Poona, 1907.

Padma Purāṇa

Śiva Purāṇa

Skanda Purāṇa

Varāha Purāṇa

Vāyu Purāṇa
Ed. ASS. Poona, 1905.

Vishnu Purāṇa
Bombay, 1889.

Vishnudharmottara Purāṇa

(iii) PHILOSOPHY

(1) Mīmāṃsā

Pārthasarathi Miśra
Sēstradipikā. Ed. with two comms. by L. S. Dravid. Ch. SS. Benares, 1913-16.
Eng. trans. of Tarkapadā. Ed. by V. Venukataramayya. GOS. Baroda, 1940.

(2) Nyāya

Anandajīna

Gaṅgeśa

Kesava Mīśra

Vardhamāna

(3) Sāṅkhya

Vijñānabhikṣhu
Sivâditya


Vardhamâna


(4) Vaiśeṣika

Amalânanda


Madhva


Nimbârka


(5) Vedânta

Râmânuja


Srîharsha

Khâyaṇa-khaṇḍa-bhâṣya. Ed. with the comm. of Anandapûrṇa, etc. by Ganganatha Jha. Ch. SS. Benares, 1904-14.

Srîkaṇṭha

Saiva-bhâṣya, a comm. on the Vedânta-sûtras. Ed. in Pandit, vi-vii.

Vallabha


(6) Yoga

Bhoja


779
Aniruddha

Hāralatā. Ed. by Kamalakrishna Smrītītīrtha. BI. Calcutta, 1900.

Aparārka


Ballalasena


Bhavadevabhāṣṭa


Devanabhāṣṭa


Govindarāja

Comm. on Manu-smṛiti (Printed in Manu-smṛiti with the comm. of Medhatīthi, etc. Ed. by V. N. Mandlik. 3 vols. Bombay, 1896).

Halayudha


Hemādri


Jimūtavāhana

Dēśa-bhāga, with the comm. of Kṛṣṇa Tarkālaṅkāra. Calcutta, 1829.

Govindarāja

Comm. on Manu-smṛiti (Printed in Manu-smṛiti with the comm. of Medhatīthi, etc. Ed. by V. N. Mandlik. 3 vols. Bombay, 1896).


Kullūkabhaṣṭa


Lakshmihāra


I. Brahmachāri-kāṇḍa, 1948.
II. Grihaśīlā-kāṇḍa, 1944.
III. Niṇayakāla-kāṇḍa, 1950.
IV. Śraddha-kāṇḍa, 1950.
V. Dāna-kāṇḍa, 1941.
VIII. Tīrthāvivekāna-kāṇḍa, 1942.
IX. Vṛata-kāṇḍa, 1953.
X. Śuddhi-kāṇḍa, 1950.
XI. Rajadharmā-kāṇḍa, 1944.
XII. Vyavahāra-kāṇḍa, 1953.
XIV. Moksha-kāṇḍa, 1945.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

(v) HISTORICAL WORKS

Arisinha
Sukrta-satikirtana. JASS. Bhavnagar, 1917.

Balaachandra Suri

Bilha


Hemachandra


Ed. by G. H. Ojha and C. S. Guleri. Ajmer, 1941.

Jayanaka

Ed. by G. A. Stein. Bombay, 1892.

Kalhana
Rajatarangini. Calcutta, 1835 (also consists of the works of Jonaraja, Srivara and Prājya-bhaṭṭa). Ed. with critical notes by M. A. Stein. Bombay, 1892.

Ed. by Durgaprasad. BSS. 2 parts. Bombay, 1892-94.


THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Merutunga
Ed. by Muni Jinvijaya. SJS. Santiniketan, 1933.

Padmagupta alias Padmamukha
Parimala

Sandhyākaranandi

(vi) POLITY

Bhoja

Chaṇḍeśvara
Niti-ratnakara (or Rājaniti-). Ed. by K. P. Jayaswal. Patna, 1924. 2nd Ed. Patna, 1936.

Hemachandra

Sukra

(vii) LEXICOGRAPHY

Bhoja

Dhananjaya

Hemachandra
Ed. by Böltlingk and Rieu. St. Petersburg, 1847.

Keśavasvāmin

Mahēśvara

Mahāpa

Maṅkha
Maṅghakāśa. Ed. with extracts from the commentaries and three indices by Th. Zachariasen. Vienna, 1897.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Medinikara
Medinikosa, Calcutta, 1884; Kashi SS. Benares, 1916.

Purushottama

Yādavaprakāśa

(viii) GRAMMAR

Anuhūtisvarupā-pacharya

Bopadeva

Hemachandra

Kshirasvamin
Kṣirasvāmin (comm. on Pāṇini’s Dhātupāṭha) Ed. by Br. Liebich. Breslau, 1930. See below under “Sarvananda”.

Lakshmīdhara

Mārkanḍeya

Purushottama

Purushottamadeva

Sarapaideva

Sarvananda
Tīkāsarvasvā (Amarakosā, ed. with Amara-kāśīdghātana of Kshirasvāmin and Tīkāsarvasva of Vandyaghatiya Sarvananda by T. Kanapati Sastri. TSS, Trivandrum, 1914-17).

Trivikrama

Vardhamāna

(ix) ASTRONOMY, ASTROLOGY AND MATHEMATICS

Ballālasena

783
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Bhāskarāchārya

Satānanda
Bhāṣavatī. Benares, 1883.

Sridhara

(x) MEDICINE

Bhoja

Chakrapāṇidatta

Pālakāpya
Hastīyāyurveda. Ed. by Śivadatta. ASS. Poona, 1894.

(xi) POETICS, DRAMATURGY AND METRICS

Allarāja

Bhoja

Hemachandra
Chhandoṇuśasana. Bombay, 1912. Chs. IV-VII. Ed. by H. D. Velankar. JBBRAS, XIX.27-74; XX.1-46; also in “Jayadāman” (see below).

Hemachandra and others

Jayadeva

Jayakirti
Chhandoṇuśasana. (See above under “Hemachandra and others”)

784
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Kedāra

Kshemendra
Auchityavichārchachā. Ed. in KM, i. 115 ff. Ed. in Haridas SS. Benares, 1933.

Mahimabhaṭṭa

Mammaṭa

Rāmchandra and Guṇachandra

Ruyyaka
Alokanāra-sarvasva. KM, 35. Bombay, 1893. Trans. by H. Jacob. ZDMG, LXII.

Sāradātanaya
Bhāsaprakāśana. Ed. with an intr. and notes by Yadugiri Yatiraja Swami and K. S. Ramaswami Sastri. GOS. Baroda, 1929.

Sobhākara Miśra

Vāgbhaṭa

Vidyādharā
Ekṣedāli. Ed. with the comm. of Mallinātha, intr., notes, etc. by K. P. Trivedi. BSS. Bombay, 1903.

(xii) EROTICS, MUSIC, ARCHITECTURE, ETC.

Ballālasena

Bhoja

Jyotirīvara

Kokkoka

S.E.—50

785
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Narapati
Narapatti jayacharyā. Meerut, 1900.

Pārvatadeva

Śāṅgadeva

Somēśvara

(xiii) PROSE ROMANCES AND CHAMPUS

Bhoja

Oḍeyadeva

Soḍjhala

Vidyāchakravartin

(xiv) KATHĀ

Budhāsvāmin

Kṣemendra

Pūrṇabhadra

Somadeva

(xv) ANTHOLOGIES

Amitagati

Jalhana
Svaṃṭīmuktaśā. Ed. with intr., appendices, etc., by E. Krishnamacharya. GOS. Baroda, 1938.

786
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Sridharadāsa

Vallabhadeva

(xvi) BELLES-LETTRES
(Note: References to important published works are given here. Full details about published works and MSS. will be found in Histories of Sanskrit Literature by De and Das Gupta, Keith, Krishnamachariar, Winternitz, etc. Jain authors have been included in this section as also earlier under historical works, polity, lexicography, grammar, poetics and anthologies.)

Abhayachandra

Abhayadeva

Amarachandra

Arishīna
Sukrita-saṁkirtana. Ed. in JASS. Bhavnagar, 1917.

Bilhaṇa


Dhanaṇjaya

Dharmakūmāra

Dhoyi

Govardhana
Āryāsaptaśati. Ed. with the comm. of Ananta by Durgaprasad and Parab. NSP. 2nd Ed. Bombay, 1895.

Gumāṇi
Upadeśaśāsata. KM, ii. 20 ff.

Hastimallā

Jalhaṇa
Mugdhapadeśa. KM, vili. 125 ff.

Jayadeva
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher/Editors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaviśrāja</td>
<td>Rāghava-Pāṇḍavatīja</td>
<td>Ed. with the comm. of Premachandra Tarkavāgīśa. BL. Calcutta, 1854 (Reprinted by Bhavadeva Chatterjee, Calcutta, 1892). Ed. with the comm. of Saādhuvara by Sivadatta and Parab. NSP. Bombay, 1897. Ed. in Granthāmālā with the comm. of Lakṣmīnara Sūri. Bombay, 1889.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kshemendra</td>
<td>Bhāratamañjarī</td>
<td>Ed. by Sivadatta and Parab. NSP. Bombay, 1878.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chārucharīya</td>
<td>KM, ii. 128 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Darapadalana</td>
<td>KM, vi. 66 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deśopadesa and Nārmanālī</td>
<td>Ed. with intr. by Madhusudan Kaul. Poona, 1923.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kalāvīśa</td>
<td>KM, i. 34 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rāmāyana-mañjarī</td>
<td>Ed. by Bhavadeva Chatterjee. Bombay, 1903.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Samayamātrīkā</td>
<td>Ed. by Durgaprasad and Parab. NSP. 2nd Ed. Bombay, 1925.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Śenyasvāvakopadesa</td>
<td>KM, ii. 79 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kulaśekhara</td>
<td>Subhadrā-Dhananjayā</td>
<td>Ed. by T. Ganapati Sastri. TSS. Trivandrum, 1912.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tapatī-Sāvīvarana</td>
<td>Ed. by T. Ganapati Sastri. TSS. Trivandrum, 1911.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lakṣmīnara Āchārya</td>
<td>Chāṇḍyukapacīśākā</td>
<td>KM, ix. 80 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lollimbarāja</td>
<td>Harivilāsa</td>
<td>KM, ix. 94 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maladhrārī Devaprabha Sūri</td>
<td>Pāṇḍava-charita</td>
<td>Ed. by Sivadatta and Parab. NSP. Bombay, 1911.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mankha</td>
<td>Śrīkaṇṭha-charīta</td>
<td>Ed. with the comm. of Jonarāja by Durgaprasad and Parab. Bombay, 1900.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nāgarāja</td>
<td>Bhāvaśataka</td>
<td>KM, IV. 37 ff.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Odeyadeva
Vādībhāsinīha
Prahlādanadeva
Rāmabhādra
Rāmacandra
Rāmacandra


Rāmacandra
Kaviṛhārati
Ravivarman

Śaṃbhu
Prākārāja
Śaṅkhadhara
Kaviṛāja
Somadeva
Sometvara
Śri Harsha
Subhaṭa

Udāyaprabha Śūri
Sukritakīrtikalloliṇī (App. to Hammira-madavardana, GOS, Baroda, 1920).
Umāpatidhara
Utprekshāvallabhā
Bhikṣāḥṣāna. KM, xii. 54-163.
Vāgīṭhaṭa
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Vastupāla  

Vatsarāja  

Vidyānātha  

Vijayapāla  
Draupadīvayāntīvera. Ed. by Muni Jinavijaya. JASS. Bhavnagar, 1918.

Visaladeva  

Yaśāpāla  
Mokārājaparājya. Ed. by Muni Chaturvijaya. GOS. Baroda, 1918.

Yaśaśchandra  

(B) BUDDHIST:

PĀLI AND SANSKRIT

(Note: Important references to published works are given here. Further particulars will be found in Geiger, Law and Winternitz given under "Histories of Literature" below.)

Abhidhammattha-sāṅgāha of Anuruddha  

Abhidhānappadīpikā of Moggalāna  

Anāgatavānaśa of Kassapa  
Ed. by J. P. Minayeff. JPTS, 1886. 33 ff.

Attanagaluḥāranaśa  

Bhaktiśataka of Rajamchandra Kaviḥārati  

Bodhivānīśa of Upatissa  
Ed. by S. A. Strong. PTS. London, 1891.

Chāvānīśa (being the more recent part of the Mahāvānīśa)  

Dāṭhāvānīśa of Dhammakitti  
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Jinacharita of Vanaratana Medhaṅkara

Jinālāṅkāra of Buddharakkhita
Ed. and trans. by James Gray. 1894.

Nēmarūparichchheda of Anuruddha
Ed. by Buddhadatta. PTS. London, 1914.

Padaśādhana of Piyadassīn
Ed. by Dhammānanda and Nāpissara. Colombo, 1887.

Pajjamadhū of Buddhapiyā

Rasārūdhini of Vedeṭhātera

Rūpasiddhi of Buddhapiyā
Ed. by A. Grünwedel. Berlin, 1883.

Saddalakkhāṣa of Moggalana
Ed. by H. Devamitta. Colombo, 1890.

Saddanīti of Aggavamsa

Saddhammopīyana
Ed. by Richard Morris. JPTS, 1887. 35 ff.

Subodhālanīkāra of Saṅgharakkhita

Teḷakapahāgātāḥ
Ed. by E. R. Goonaratne. JPTS, 1884. 49 ff.

Thāpovāṇīsa of Vāchissara

Vuttodaya of Saṅgharakkhita

(C) JAIN

(Note: Important works in Māhārāṣṭrī and other Prakrits are included in this list. For works in Sanskrit by Jain authors, see earlier under (vi) Polity, (vii) Lexicography, (viii) Grammar, (xi) Poetics, etc., (xvi) Belles-Lettres, etc. For further particulars and full details of published works reference may be made to Winternitz, History of Indian Literature, Vol. II; for details about MSS., reference may be made to Velankar, Jinaratnakosa.)

Dhanesvara

791
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

**Gușachandra**

**Hemachandra**


**JinachandragaI.**

**Lakshmanagāṇi**
*Samāsā-vali*. Ed. by Pandit Haragovind Das Seth. Benares, 1918.

**Rāmaśarman**
*The Sauraseri and Magadhī Stabakas of Rāmaśarman*. Ed. by G. A. Grierson. IA, LVI. 1ff; LVII. 21ff; 41ff; 49ff.

*The Apabhrāṃśa Stabakas of Rāmaśarman*. Ed. by G. A. Grierson. IA, LI. 13ff; 21ff; LII. 1ff.

**Siṣhatarāja**

**Somaprabha**

(D) **APABHRĀṃśA**

**Abdul Rahamān**

**Haribhadra**

**Jinadatta Sūrī**
*Kālaśvarūpakahānām* (pub. in *Apabhraṃśa-Kāvyatrayi*). Ed. by L. B. Gandhi. GOS, 37. Baroda, 1927).

**Mahēśvara Sūrī**

**Yogīṇu**
*Paramātmaprakāśa* and *Yogasāra*. Ed. with critical intr., Sanskrit Chhaya, etc., by A. N. Upadhye. Bombay, 1937.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

(E) MUSLIM

Ain-i-Akbari of Abū'l Fazl

Divān-i-Salmān of Khwaja Mas'ud bin Sa'id bin Salmān
Ed. by Abu'l Qāsim Akhwani. Tehran, 1879. Extracts Trans. HIED, IV.

Futūh-us-Salṭān of Isāmī
Ed. by A. M. Husain. Agra, 1938.

Gulshan-i-Ifrāhīm of Muhammad Qāsim Fīrūshtā

Habīb-us-Siyār of Khvānd Mir

Khulāsāt-ul-Akhbār of Khvānd Mir

Kitāb-ul-Hind of Al-Birūnī

Kitāb Zain-ul-Akhbār of Mahmūd Gardīzī

Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh of ‘Abd-ul-Qādir Būḍaunī

Rauzat-us-Safā of Mir Khvānd

Tabaqāt-i-Akbari of Nizām-ud-din Ahmad

Tabaqāt-i-Nāṣirī of Minhāj-ud-din b. Sīrāj-ud-dīn

Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir of Hasan-un-Nizāmī
Extracts trans. HIED, II. 204-43.

Ta’rikh-i-‘Alā (Khażīrīn-ul-Futḥā) of Amīr Khusrau
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Ta’rikh-i-Baihaqi of Abū-’l-Fazl Baihaqi

Ta’rikh-i-Firishta of Muhammad Qāsim Firishta

Ta’rikh-i-Firuz Shāhi of Shams-i-Sirāj ‘Afīf

Ta’rikh-i-Firuz Shāhi of Ziya-ud-din Barani

Ta’rikh-i-Guzida of Hamd-Ullāh Mustaufi Qazvini

Ta’rikh-i-Yamini of Al-’Utbi

Elliott, Sir H. M. and Dowson, John

Hodivala, S. H.

(2) NON-INDIAN SOURCES:

(A) ARABIC

Buzurg ibn Shahriyar

Ferrand, G.

(B) CHINESE

Chau Ju-Kua
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

(C) TIBETAN


II. ORIGINAL SOURCES:

(1) Inscriptions

Aiyer, K. V. Subrahmanya

Bhandarkar, D. R.

“List of Inscriptions of Northern India”. Appendix to EI, XIX-XXIII.

Butterworth, A.


Chhaabra, B. C., and Chetty, Venugopal

“Ten Years of Epigraphy (1937-46)”. Ancient India, No. 5, pp. 46 ff.

Hiralal

List of Inscriptions in the Central Provinces and Berar. 2nd Ed. Nagpur, 1932.

Hultsch, E.

South Indian Inscriptions. 3 vols. (ASI, NIS, Vols. 9, 10 and 29). Madras, 1890-1929.

Krishnamacharlu, C. R.

Bombay-Karnataka Inscriptions. Madras, 1940.

Majumdar, N. G


Miraishi, V. V.

Inscriptions of the Kalachuri-Chedi Era. CHI, Vol. IV. Ootacamund, 1895.

Panchamukhi, R. S.

Karnataka Inscriptions. 2 vols. Dharwar, 1941, 1951.

Peterson, P.


Rangacharya, V.


Rice, Lewis


Sastri, H. Krishna


Sewell, R.


Sreekovasachar, B. P.


Subramaniam, T. N.


(Also Epigraphia Indica, Epigraphia Carnatica, Annual Report on South Indian Epigraphy, Annual Report on Indian Epigraphy, etc.)

795
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(2) Coins

BANERJI, R. D. Prāchīna Mudrā (in Bengali). Calcutta, 1322 B.S.
BROWN, C. J. Coins of Mediaeval India from the seventh century down to the Muhammadan Conquest. London, 1894.
RAPSON, E. J. Indian Coins. Strassburg, 1897.

III. MODERN WORKS:

(1) Histories of the Period


(2) Histories of Literature

GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

De, S. K.  

Frazer, R. W.  
*Literary History of India.* London, 1898.

Geiger, W.  

Gowen, H. H.  
*History of Indian Literature.* New York, 1931.

Kane, P. V.  

Keith, A. B.  

Krishnamachariar, M.  

Law, B. C.  

Macdonell, A. A.  

Winternitz, M.  

(3) Religion and Philosophy

Bhandarkar, R. G.  

Brattipacharya, H. D. (Ed.)  

"  "  

Das Gupta, S. N.  
*History of Indian Philosophy.* 5 vols. Cambridge, 1932-55.

Farquhar, J. N.  

Kane, P. V.  

Radhakrishnan, S.  

Vidyabhusana, S. C.  
*History of Indian Logic.* Calcutta, 1921.

Zimmer, H.  

BIBLIOGRAPHY

(Note: In the Bibliographies to the different chapters, full references to the Original Sources and Modern Works, mentioned earlier, are not given save in exceptional cases.)

797
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

CHAPTER I

GHAZNAVID INVASIONS

Original Sources

Al-Birūnī


Al’Utbi

Ta’rikh-i-Yamini. Lahore. Extracts trans. HIED, II. Extracts trans. in Medieval Indian History (pp. 34-66) by Sri Ram Sharma (1958).

Baihaqi, Abū’l-Fazl

Ta’rikh-i-Baihaqi. Bl. Calcutta, 1862. Extracts trans. HIED, II.

Farrukhī

Diwan. Extract in Nazim’s Life and Times of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna, Appendices K. and M.

Firishta, Muhammad Qasim


Hamd-Ullah Mustaufi Qazvini


Ibn-ul-Asir

Al-Ta’rikh ul-Kāmil. Ed. by Tornberg. Extracts trans. HIED, II.

Khwānd Mīr


Mahmūd Gardīzi


Minhāj-ud-dīn b. Sirāj-ud-dīn Ahmad


Nizām-ud-dīn ‘Unsuri


Modern Works

ELLiot, Sir H. M. and Ross, E. Denison

The History of India as told by Its own Historians. 1867-1877 (vol. II, p. 434, Appendix, “Mahmud’s Expedition in India”).

HABIB, M.


HAIG, Sir Wolseley


NAZIM, M.

The Life and Times of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna. Cambridge, 1931.

SKEIN, F. H. B.

GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

CHAPTER II
NORTHERN INDIA DURING ELEVENTH AND TWELFTH CENTURIES

(i) DYNASTIES OF BENGAL

Original Sources: Literary and Inscriptions

Ancient Sources

Dhôvi


Maîtreya, A. K.


Majumdar, N. G.


Minhâj-ud-dîn B.


Sandhyākarânaṇanda


Sumpa Mîhan Po


Modern Works

Banerjî, R. D.


Chanda, R. P.

- *Gauḍa-râjamālā*. Rajshahi, 1319 B.S.

Das, S. C.


Ganguly, D. C.

- "Origin of the Varman and Sena Dynasties". IHQ, XII. 607-12.

Majumdar, B. C. (Ed.)


Paul, P. L.


Ray, H. C.

- *Dynastic History of Northern India*. Vol. I. Calcutta, 1931 (Ch. VI).

Sarkar, J. N. (Ed.)


Taranâtha


(ii) DYNASTIES OF ASSAM

Original Sources: Inscriptions

Bhattacharyya, P. N.


Modern Works

Barca, K. L.

- *History of Assam*. Shillong, 1933.

Gait, E.


Ray, H. C.


(iii) DYNASTIES OF NEPAL

Original Sources: Literary

Bendall, C.

THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE


Modern Works

Ray, H. C.  Dynastic History of Northern India. Vol. I, Ch. IV.

(v) DYNASTIES OF BIHAR

Levi, Sylvain  Le Nepal. Vol. II.
Ray, H. C.  DNHI, I, Ch. VI.

For the Gupta dynasty, cf. JBORS, V. 582 ff.

(v) DYNASTIES OF UTTAR PRADESH

Original Sources

Jayānaka  Prithvirāja-vijaya. See above, under "General Bibliography". I, A, v, "Historical Works."
Hasan-un-Nizāmī  Tāj-ul-Ma'āshr. Extracts trans. HIED, II.
Ibn-ul-Astr  Al-Ta'rikh ul-Kāmil. Ed. by Torner. Extracts trans. HIED, II.
Khwaja Mas'ūd bin Sa'id bin Salmān  Duran-i-Salman. Ed. by Abu-l Qāsim Akhvan. Tehran, 1879. Extracts trans. HIED, IV.

Modern Works

Ganguly, D. C.  "Early History of the Gāhaḍavālas". PAIOC, VII. (IHQ, IX. 951-8).
"  "  "Historical Information in the Prākrit-Pāñ-galam". IHQ, XI. 564-9.
"  "  "The Historical Value of Diwān-i-Salman". Islamic Culture, XVI.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

RAMKARA


RAY, H. C.

"Gādañjāvālas of Vārānasi and Kānyākubja". DHNI, Vol. I, Ch. VIII.

RAY, BISHESHWAR NATH


SAYAL, N. B.

"The predecessors of the Gādañjāvālas of Kanauj" JASB, 1925. 103-106.

SUR, A. K.

"Gādañjāvālas of Kanauj". IHQ, V. 86-102.

SYAMAL DAS

"The Antiquity, Authenticity and Genuine-ness of the Epic called Pṛitivirāja Rāsa, and commonly ascribed to Chand Bardi". JASB, 1837. LV. 5-65.

TRIPATHI, R. S.


(vi) THE KACHCHHAPAGHĀTA AND THE YAJVAPĀLA DYNASTIES

Original Sources

CUNNINGHAM, A.

Minhāj-ud-dīn Tabāqāt-i-Nāsirī (See above, under "General Bibliography").

Muhammad Qāsim Firishta

Tārīkh-i-Fīriṣhtâ, Vol. I. Eng. trans. by J. Briggs (See above, under "General Bibliography").


Modern Works

GARVE, M. B.

"The Jajvapāla or Jajapellas of Narwar". IA, XLVII. 241.

Mitra, R. L.

"Vestiges of the kings of Gwalior". JASB, 1862. 391-424.

(vii) THE CHANDELLA DYNASTY OF JEJAKABHUVTI

Original Sources

CUNNINGHAM, A.

Hasan-un-Nizāmī Taqī-ul-Naṣīrī. Extracts trans. HIED, II.


Minhāj-ud-dīn Tabāqāt-i-Nāsirī (See above, under "General Bibliography").

Muhammad Qāsim Taqī-i-Firisiha (See above under "General Bibliography").

SMITH, V. A.


Modern Works

BOSE, N. S.


RAY, H. C.

DHNI, Vol. II, Ch. XI.
(vii) THE KALACHURI DYNASTY

Original Sources

Cunningham, A.ASC, IX, XVII.

HiralalList of Inscriptions in the Central Provinces and Berar. 2nd Ed. Nagpur, 1932.


Modern Works


Ray, H. C.DHNI, II, Ch. XII.

(viii) THE PARAMARA DYNASTY

Original Sources


MadanaPârijitamâñjari. EI, VIII. 96-122.


PrahladanaPûrthaparakrama Vîjâyapopa. GOS. Baroda, 1917.

SomevâraSurâhotasava. Bombay, 1902.

Modern Works

Ganguly, D. C.History of the Paramâra Dynasty. Dacca, 1933. DHNI, II, Ch. XIV.

Ray, H. C.

(ix) THE CHAULUKYAS AND THE VAGHELAS

Original Sources


Hasan-un-NizâmiTéj-ul-Ma‘âsir. Extracts trans. HIED, II.

GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Jayasiṅhha


Vastupāla-Tejahpāla-prāsasti (Hammira-mada-mardana, Appendix I).

Merutuṅga


Minhāj-ud-dīn

Tabaqāt-i-Nāṣirī. Trans. by Raverty.

Nizām-ud-dīn


Rājaśekhara


Somaprabhāchārya


Someśvara


Śrāvathāsva. Bombay, 1902.

Udayaprabha


Modern Works

Bhamavallal, Indeja-Ji


Majumdar, A. K.


Ray, H. C.

DHNI, II, Ch. XV.

(x) THE CHAHAHMĀNA DYNASTY

Original Sources

Chand Bardai


Chandraśekhara


Hasan-un-Nizāmī


Jayānaka (?)


Lakshmidhara

Prabandha-chintāmaṇi. SJS. Santiniketan, 1933.

Merutuṅga


Minhāj-ud-dīn

Muhammad Qūsīm Firishta


Muhasota Nūnei ki Khyātā


Nayachandra Sūrī


Modern Works

Bhandarkar, D. R.

"Chāhaṃānas of Marwar". EI, XI. 67 ff.

Ganguly, D. C.

"Historical information in the Prākṛita Pahalgaṇam." IHQ, XI. 564-9.

THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

HALDAR, R. B.  
“Some Reflections on Prithvirāja Rāṣa”.  
JBRAS, 1927. 203-11.

RAY, H. C.  
“Some Reflections on Prithvirāja Rāṣa”.  
JBRAS, 1927. 203-11.

SYAL DAS  
“The Antiquity, Authenticity and Genuine- 
ness of the Epic called the Prithvirāja Rāṣa, 
and commonly ascribed to Chand Bārdai.”  
JASB, 1887. 5-65.

TOD, J.  
Annals and Antiquities of Rajasthan.  

(xi) THE GUHILA DYNASTY

Original Sources

Amir Khusrav  
Ta’rīkh-i-‘Alī. Ed. by Syed Moinul Haq. Ali- 
garh, 1927. Extract trans. HIED, III. Ex- 
tract Trans. by M. Habib. JIH, 1929, 369-75.

Malik Muhammad Jāyāsī  
Padmāvātī. Ed. by G. A. Grierson and S. 

Muhammad Qāsim  
Ta’rīkh-i-Fīrīṣṭa. Trans. by Briggs. Vol. I. 
London, 1827.

Modern Works

Banerjee, A. C.  
Rajput Studies. Calcutta, 1944.

Dutt, S. C.  
“History of Rajputana (Hindi).” Ajmer, 1936 ff.

OSHA, G. H.  
Annals and Antiquities of Rajasthan. Ed. by 

(xii) YAMINI DYNASTY

Original Sources

Abu’l-Fazl Baihaqi  
Ta’rīkh-i-Baihaqi also known as Ta’rīkh-i- 
HIED, II.

Abu Sa’id ʿAbdu- 
llah Baizāwī  
Nizāmu-t-Ta’rīkh. Extracts trans. HIED, II.

Hamd-Ullah  
Ta’rīkh-i-Guzīda. Text and abridged Trans. 
E. J. W. Gibb Memorial Series. Vols. I and 
II. London, 1911, 1914.

Khwaja Mas’ūd bin  
Sa’id bin Salmān  
Dīwān-i-Salāmān. Tehran, 1879. Extracts 
trans. HIED, IV.

Mināḥ-ud-dīn  
Tabaqīt-i-‘Akbārī. Trans. by B. De. Calcutta, 
1913.

Muhammad Qāsim  
Ta’rīkh-i-Fīrīṣṭa. Trans. by Briggs. London, 
1827-29.

Fīrīṣṭa  
Nizām-ud-dīn  
Ahmad  
“Historical Value of the Dīwān-i-Salāmān”.  
Islamic Culture, XVI.

904
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

HAIG, SIR WOLSELEY  The Cambridge History of India. Vol. III.
Cambridge, 1928.

(xiii) DYNASTIES OF KASHMIR

Original Sources


Kalhaṇa  Rājatarāgni. Ed. and Trans. by M.A. Stein.
Bombay, 1892; Westminster, 1900.

LIST OF IMPORTANT INSCRIPTIONS

Pālas of Bengal

[A large collection of inscriptions will be found in Gaugā-lekha-
māla by A. K. Maitreyā.]

Bāngarh Copper-Plate of Mahipāla I. EI, XIV. 324.
Sārnāth Stone-Inscription of the reign of Mahipāla I. IA, XIV.
Gayā Krishnadārvikā Temple-Inscription of the reign of Nayapāla.
JASB, LXIX. 190.
Nimdighi (Manda) Stone-Inscription. IHQ. XVII. 207.
Manahali CP. JASB, LXIX, Pl. I. 68.
Dinājpur (Bāngarh) Pillar-Inscription. JASB, N.S., VII. 619.
Irā C.P. of Kamboja Nayapāla. EI, XXII. 150.
Kamauli CP. of Vaiḍyadeva. EI, II. 350.

Varmans of East Bengal

Samantasar CP. of Harivarman. Bhāratavarsha, 1344 (Bengali Sam),
Bhuvaneswar SI. of the time of Harivarman. IB, III. 25.
Belāva CP. of Bhojjavarman. IB, III. 14.

Senas of Bengal

[A large collection of inscriptions will be found in Inscriptions
of Bengal, Vol. III by N. G. Majumdar.]

Deopārā SI. of Vaiṣyasaṇa. EI, I. 305.
Naihāti CP. of Vallīlaśena. EI, XIV. 156.
Rājāvādi CP. of Lākshmanasena. EI, XXVI. 1.
Mādāṅkāṇaṇ CP. of Lākshmanasena. IB, III. 106.
Edilpur CP. of Keśavasaṇa. IB, III. 118.

Devas of Samatata and Vaiṣaṇa

Chittagong CP. of Dāmodara. Saka 1165. IB, III. 158.
Mehar CP. of Dāmodara. S. 1156. EI, XXVII.
Aḍāvaṇi CP. of Daśaratha. IB, III. 180.

Dynasty of Paṭṭikeraṇa

Maināmati CP. of Raṅgavaṇkasamala. S. 1141. IHQ, IX. 282.

Assam

Bargaon CP. of Ratnapāla. JASB, LXVII. 99.
Assam CP. of Vaiḷabhadeva. EI, V. 181.

Rāṣṭrakūṭas of Kanauj

Budaun SI. of Lākhaṇapāla. EI, I. 61.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Gāhadaśālas of Kānauj and Banaras

Chandravati CP. of Chandrādeva, V.S. 1148. EI, IX. 302.
Basahi CP. of the reign of Madanapāla, V.S. 1161. IA, XIV. 101.
Rahāy CP. of the reign of Madanapāla, V.S. 1166. IA, XVIII. 14.
Sāmāth SI. of the reign of Govindachandra. EI, IX. 319.
Benares College CP. of Jayachandra, V.S. 1232. IA, XVIII. 129.
Machhliṣāhr CP. of Hartīchandra, V.S. 1255. EI, X. 95.

Kaṭekhāpaṭagātas

Sasbahu temple inscription of Māhīpāla, V.S. 1150. IA, XV. 33.
Dublund Inscription of Vikramasīrīla, V.S. 1145. EI, II. 232.

Chandellas

A fragmentary SI. of Harsha (?). EI, I. 121.
Khajurāho SI. of Dhaṅgā, V.S. 1011. EI, I. 122.
Nanyaura CP. of Dhaṅgā, V.S. 1055. IA, XVI. 201.
Deogarh Rock Inscription of Kirttivarman, V.S. 1154. IA, XVIII. 237.
Augasi CP. of Madanavarman, V.S. 1190. IA, XVI. 202.
Mau SI. of Madanavarman. EI, I. 195.
Semra CP. of Paramardī, V.S. 1223. EI, IV. 153.
Baghari SI. of Paramardī, V.S. 1252. EI, I. 207 (Bateśvara).
Kālanjir SI. of Paramardī, V.S. 1258. JAOS, XVIII. 313.
Garra CP. of Trailokyavarman, V.S. 1261. EI, XVI. 272.
Rewah CP. of Trailokyavarman, V.S. 1297. IA, XVII. 231.
Rewah CP. of Trailokyavarman, V.S. 1298. IA, XVII. 235.
Ajasīgarh Rock Inscription of Viravarman, V.S. 1337. EI, I. 325.
Dahi CP. of Viravarman, V.S. 1337. ASC, XXI. 74.
Ajasīgarh Rock Inscription of Bhojavārman. EI, I. 330.
Charkhari State CP. of Hammīravarman, V.S. 1346. EI, XX. 137.

Kalachuris

[A large collection of inscriptions will be found in Inscriptions of the Kalachuri-Chedi Era by V. V. Mirashi.]
Kahla CP. of Shōqhadeva of Sarayūpāra, V.S. 1135. EI, VII. 85.
Kasia SI. of Bhuṭhāna II (?) of the Kasia branch. EI, XVIII. 121.
Bilhari SI. of Yuvarāja II of Dāhala. EI, I. 231.
Beraṇa CP. of Karṇa, K.E. 793. EI, II. 297.
Goharwa CP. of Karṇa. EI, XI. 139.
Rewah SI. of Karṇa, K.E. 812. MASI, No. 23. 130.
Khairha CP. of Yaśahkarṇa, K.E. 923. EI, XII. 205.
Bheraghat SI. of Alhaṇadevi, K.E. 907. EI, II. 7.
Rewah CP. of Jayasīrīla, K.E. 926. IA, XVII. 224.
Karanbel SI. of Jayasīrīla. IA, XVIII. 214.
Rewah CP. of Vijayasīrīla, V.S. 1233. IA, XVII. 227.
Amoda CP. of Prithvīdeva of Thūruṇā, K.E. 851. EI, XIX. 75.
Ratnapur SI. of Jājalladeva, K.E. 866. EI, I. 32.
Rajim SI. of Prithvīdeva II, K.E. 896. IA, XVII. 135.
Koni Inscription of Prithvīdeva II, K.E. 900. EI, XXVII. 276.
Kharad SI. of Ratnadeva III, K.E. 993. IA, XXII. 82.

Paramāras

Harsola CP. of Sivaka II. V.S. 1005. EI, XIX. 236.
Banswara CP. of Bhoja, V.S. 1076. EI, XI. 181.

806
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Tilakwada CP. of Bhoja, V.S. 1103. PAIOC, I, 319.
Udepur SI. of Udayaditya, EI, I, 222.
Dongargoon SI. of Jagadeva, V.S. 1034. EI, XXVI.
Jainad SI. of Jagadeva. EI, XXII. 54.
Nagpur SI. of Naravarman, V.S. 1161. EI, II. 180.
Piplianagar CP. of Arjunavarman, V.S. 1267. JASB, 1836, V. 371.
Dhar Praśasti of Arjunavarman. EI, VIII. 96.
Mandhata CP. of Devapala, V.S. 1282. EI, IX. 103.
Mandhata CP. of Jayavarman II, V.S. 1317. EI, IX. 117.
Vasantgadh SI. of Pūrṇapāla of Mt. Abu, V.S. 1099. EI, IX. 10.
Ajahari SI. of Yasodhavala, V.S. 1202. IA, LVI. 12.
Abu SI. of Dhārāvarsha, V.S. 1220. IA, LVI. 50.
Abu SI. of Somasīniha, V.S. 1287. EI, VIII. 204.
Paṇārāyaṇa SI. of Pratāpasiṇīha, V.S. 1344. IA, 1916. 77.
Arthuna SI. of Chāmuḍārāya of Vāgāḍa, V.S. 1136. EI, XIV. 266.
Jālor SI. of Visala of Jāvālipura, V.S. 1174. PR, ASI, WC, 1909. 54.

Chaulukyas

Balera CP. of Mōlarāja, V. S. 1051. EI, X. 76.
Radhanpur CP. of Bhīma I, V.S. 1086. IA, VI. 193.
Sunak CP. of Karṣa, V.S. 1148. EI, I. 316.
Ujjaśn SI. of Jayasiṇīha, V.S. 1195. IA, XLII. 258.
Dohad SI. of Jayasiṇīha, V.S. 1196. IA, XX. 158.
Chitorgadh SI. of Kumārāpāla, V.S. 1207. EI, II. 421.
Vadnagar Praśasti of Kumārāpāla, V.S. 1208. EI, I. 293.
Veraval Praśasti of Bhāva Bhṛhaspati, Valabhi Sam. 850. WZKM, III. 1.
Udayapur SI. of Ajayapāla, V.S. 1229. IA, XVIII. 344.
Bombay Secretariat CP. of Ajayapāla, V.S. 1231. IA, XVIII. 80.
Brahmanwada CP. of Mōlarāja II, V.S. 1252. Important Inscriptions from the Baroda State, I. 71.
Veraval SI. of Bhāva Bhṛhaspati of the time of Bhīma II. Prakrit and Sanskrit Inscriptions of Kāṭṭyavar, 208.
Kadi CP. of Bhīma II, V.S. 1263, 1287, 1288, 1293, 1296. IA, VI. 194 f.
Abu SI. of Bhīma II, V.S. 1287. EI, VIII. 200.
Kadi CP. of Jayantasiṇīha, V.S. 1280. IA, VI. 196.
Dabhol SI. of Visaladeva, V.S. 1311. EI, I. 20
Veraval CP. of Arjuna, V.S. 1320. IA, XI. 241.
Citra SI. of Sāranḍadeva, V.S. 1343. EI, I. 271.
Surat grant of Trilochanapāla, S. 972. IA, XII. 201.

807
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Chākānānas

Dholapur SI. of Chapdamaṇāṣena, V.S. 898. ZDMG, XL. 39.
Haras SI. of Vigrāhāraja II, V.S. 1030. El, II. 119; IA, XLII. 60.
Ajjmer SI. (Lalita Vigrāhāraja nāṭaka) of the reign of Vigrāhārāja IV. IA, XX. 201 ff; Göttinger Festschrift, 1901, pp. 1-15.
Ajjmer SI. (Harakēti-nāgaka) of Vigrāhāraja IV. IA, XX. 201 ff; Göttinger Festschrift, 1901, pp. 16-30.
Delhi Siwalik Pillar inscriptions of Vigrāhāraja IV, V.S. 1220. IA, XIX. 215.
Hānsi SI. of Prithvirāja II, V.S. 1234. IA, 1912. 17.
Madanpur SI. of Prithvirāja III, V.S. 1239. ASI, XXI. 173.
Manglaa SI. of Balbāna, V.S. 1272. IA, 1912. 85.
Balvan SI. of Hāmmira, V.S. 1345. El, XIX. 45.
Surdā Hill SI. of Chāchīgadēva, V.S. 1319. El, IX. 70.

Guhilas

Samali inscription of Śhādītīya, V.S. 703. El, XX. 97.
Atpur inscription of Saktikumāra, V.S. 1034. IA, XXXIX. 191.
Chitor SI. of Tejasinīha, V.S. 1324. JASB, LV. Part I, 46.
Abu SI. of Sāmaraśīvasa, V.S. 1342. IA, XVI. 345.
Sādā Sī. of Rācā Kumbhā, V.S. 1496. ASI, 1907-08, p. 214.
Chatsū SI. of Bālādītīya, El, XII. 10.

Māхаṇās of Chambā

Kulait CP, inscription of Somavarmā. ASI, 1902-03, 184.
Chambā State Museum CP. of Somavarmā and Asatā. IA, XVII. 11.

CHAPTER III
THE AGE OF PRITHVIRĀJA III

Original Sources: Literary Works

Chand Bardai

Chandraśekharā

Firisha

Hasan-un-Nizāmī
Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir. Extracts trans. HIED, II. 204.

Jayānaka

Lakṣmīdharā

Mērutunga
(See above under “General Bibliography”).
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY


Muni Jinavijaya (Ed.) Prithvirajajvabandha. Published in the Purā­tana Prabandha-Samgraha, Singhi Jaina Granthamala.


Nizām-ud-din Ahmad Prahlādana Tabaqūt-i-Akbarī. Eng. trans. by B. De (See above under “General Bibliography”).

Prithvītarjuna-Prabandha. Published in the Puritana-Prabandha-Saritgarha, Singhi Jaina Granthamala.


Tod, J. Modern Works


SARMA, DASARATHA "Prithvirāja III: The last Hindu Emperor of Delhi". IC, XI. 51-73.

SYAMAL DAS "The Antiquity, Authenticity and Genuine­ness of the Epic called the Prithvī Rāsa, and commonly ascribed to Chand Bardai". JASB, 1887, LV, 5-65.

LIST OF IMPORTANT INSCRIPTIONS


Madanpur (Jhansi Dist., U.P.) S1. of the time of Prithvirāja III, dated V.S. 1239. ASC, X, 98; XXI, 178, 174.

Victoria Museum, Udaipur, memorial S1. of the time of Prithvirāja III. PRAS, W, 1905-06, p. 62, No. 2224.

CHAPTER IV

THE TURKISH CONQUEST OF NORTHERN INDIA

Original Sources


809
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Firishta, Muhammad Qasim
Guishan-i-Ibrâhimi. Lithographed at Bombay, 1832.

Ghulâm Husain Salim
Riyâź us-Salâtin. Ed. by ‘Abdu'l-Haq Abid.

Hamd-Ullâh Mustauffi Qazvîni
Târîkh-i-Guzîda. Text and abridged trans.

Hasan-un-Nizâmi
Tâj-ul-Mâ’âsir. Extracts trans. HIED, II.

Khvând Mir
Habîb-us-Siyar. Extracts trans. HIED, IV.

Minhâj-ud-din b. Sirâj-ud-din

Mir Khvând

Nizâm-ud-din Ahmad
Tabaqât-i-Akhbâr. Text and trans. BL. (See above under “General Bibliography”).

Sayyid Ahmad Khan, Dr. Sir
Aṣâr-us-Sanâdîd. Cawnpore, 1904.

Modern Works

ELLIOT AND DOWSON
See above under “General Bibliography”.

LANE-POOLE, STANLEY

MAJUMDAR, R. C.

TATE, G. R.

THOMAS, EDWARD

CHAPTER V

MAMLÛK SULTANS OF DELHI

Original Sources

Futûh-us-Salâtîn
By Isâmî (Pen-name). Edited by A. M. Husain. Agra, 1938.

Hammâra-mahâ-kâvyâ
By Nayachandra Sûrî, an abridged English translation in 1879. Also see above, under “General Bibliography”.

Prîthvârâja-vijaya-kâvyâ
By Jayânaka, an English abstract in JRAS, 1913. Also see above, under “General Bibliography”.

Qirânuus-Sadain
By Amir Khusrau, Lithographed. Lucknow, 1845; an English abstract by Cowell in JASB, 1880.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Sirāt-i-Jalāluddin
Mangbarnī

By Nūrūddīn Muḥammad Zaidarī al-Nessāwī.

Tabaqāt-i-Naṣirī

By Abū Umar Mīnḥāb-ud-dīn Uṣmān bīn Sirāj-ud-dīn-al-Juzjānī, known as Mīnḥāb-ī-Sīrāj.

Taj-ul-Maʿāṣir

By Ḥasan Nizāmī. India Office MSS. Nos. 1468 and 209; British Museum MSS. Add. 7623 and Add. 7624.

Taʾrīkh-i-Fakhhr-ud-dīn Mubārakshāh


Taʾrīkh-i-Fīrūzshīhī


Taʾrīkh-i-Guzīda


Taʾrīkh-i-Jahān-Gushā


Taʾrīkh-i-Mubārakshāhī


Zafar-ul-Udīh


Modern Works

HABIBULLAH, A. B. M.

Foundation of Muslim Rule in India. Lahore, 1945.

ISHWARI PRAKAS

History of Medieval India. Allahabad, 1950.

LANE-POOLE, STANLEY


" " "

Mediaeval India under Mohammadan Rule. London, 1903.

SHIVASTAVA, A. L.

The Sultanate of Delhi. 2nd Ed. Agra, 1953.

CHAPTER VI

LATER CHALUKYAS AND KALACHURIS OF KALYANA

Original Sources: Literary and Inscriptions

Basavapuraṇa JBBRAS, VIII.
Epigraphia Carnaticae Lewis Rice, B.

811
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Hyderabad Archaeological Series, Nos. 8, 13.
South Indian Epigraphy, Annual Report on Vikramāditya-charita by Bilhana. Ed. by G. Bühler (See above, under “General Bibliography”).

Modern Works

ALTEKAR, A. S. “The Silāhāras of Western India”. IC, II.
GANGULY, D. C. Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts. BG, Vol. I, Part II.
KAYARE, S. L. History of the Paramāra Dynasty. Dacca, 1933.
VENKATASUBBAIAH, A. “The Chronology of the Western Chalukyas of Kalyāṇi”. IA, XLVII, XLVIII.
VENKATARAMAN AYYAR, A. V. “The Life and Times of Chalukya Vikramāditya”. IA, XLVII, XLVIII.

LIST OF IMPORTANT INSCRIPTIONS

Sogal Inscription of Taila II, S. 902. BG, I, ii. 428.
Saundatti Inscription of Taila II. JBBRAS, X. 204.
Nilgund Inscription of Taila II, S. 904. Canarese Desa Inscriptions, 1. 85.
Sogal Inscription of Taila II. EI, XVI. 1; XVII.
An Inscription of Taila II, S. 915. ASI, 1930-34, p. 241.
Hottur Inscription of Satyasraya, S. 929. EI, XVI. 73.
Khārapattan grant of Satyasraya, S. 930. EI, III. 269.
Kauthem grant of Vikramāditya V, S. 932. IA, XVI. 19.
Inscriptions of the reign of Somesvara I. EI, XVI.
Sudi Inscriptions of Somesvara. EI, XIV. 104.
Gawarwad Inscriptions of Somesvara II. S. 993 and 994. EI, XV. 337.
Gadag Inscription of Vikramāditya VI. EI, XV. 349.
Nilgund Inscription of Vikramāditya VI. EI, XII. 144.
Sorab Tāluk Inscription of Vikramāditya VI. EC, VIII. Sb. 325.
Sudi Inscriptions of Vikramāditya VI. EI, XV. 100, 103.
Arslkere Tāluk (Hassan Dist.) Inscription of Vikramāditya VI. EC, V, No. 102a.
Sikarpur Tāluk Inscription of Vikramāditya VI. EC, VII. Sk. 137.
An Inscription of Vikramāditya VI. ASI, 1936-37, p. 109.

812
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Sikarpur Tāluk Inscription of Somesvara III. EC, VII, Sk. 100.

Kurgod Inscription of Somesvara IV. EI, XIV, 266.

An Inscription of Somesvara IV. ASI, 1926-27, p. 192.

Minajgi Stone Inscription of Somesvara IV. ASI, 1929-30, p. 171.

CHAPTER VII
THE YADAVAS OF DEVAGIRI

Original Sources

Amir Khusrau Ta’rikh-i-Ālā. Extracts Trans. HIED, III, 67
(See also under “General Bibliography”).

Barani, Ziyā-ud-dīn Ta’rikh-i-Firuz Shāhī. BI. Extracts trans. HIED, III, 93 (See above under “General Bibliography”).


Hemādri Vratakhaṇḍa, BG, I, ii, 266.

Jalhaṣa Sākthinuktaṇātali (See above under “General Bibliography”).


Sāṅgaradhara Sāṅgitaratnākara (No. 979, Collection of 1887-91). See above under “General Bibliography”.

Somesvara Kṛttikāsuddhi. Ed. by Kathvate. BSS, No. XXV. Bombay, 1883 (See above, under “General Bibliography”).

Modern Works


Ganguly, D. C. History of the Paramār Dynasty. Dacca, 1933.


THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

LIST OF IMPORTANT INSCRIPTIONS

Sangamner Inscription of Bhillama II, S. 922. EI, II. 217.
Kalas-Budruk Inscription of Bhillama II, S. 948. IA, XVII. 120.
Bassein Inscription of SeuQ-achandra II, S. 991. IA, XII. 119.
Gadag Inscription of Bhillama IV, S. 1113. EI, III. 219.
Managoli Inscription of Jaitugi. EI, V. 29.
Pätna Inscription of Singhaña. S. 1125. EI, I. 341.
Bhal Inscription of Siśghaṇa, S. 1144. EI, III. 112.
Kadakol Inscription of Siśghaṇa. IA, XII. 100.
Chikka-Bágowáḍi Inscription of Krishna. S. 1171. IA, VII. 304.
Arjunavada Inscription of Krishna, S. 1182. EI, XXI, 9.
Mandappur Inscription of Krishna, S. 1172. EI, XIX. 19.
Paithan Inscription of Ramachandra, S. 1193. IA, XIV. 315.
Thākā Inscription of Ramachandra, S. 1194. EI, XII. 198.
Davanagere Téluk Inscription of Ramachandra (A.D. 1280). EC, XI, Dg. 70.
Davanagere Téluk Inscription of Ramachandra (A.D. 1280). EC, XI, Dg. 58.

CHAPTER VIII

DYNASTIES OF EASTERN DECCAN

(i) KĀKATIYAS OF ANMAKONḌA

Original Sources

‘Afīf, Shams-i-Sirāj Ta‘rīkh-i-Fīrūz Shāhī. Extracts trans. HIED, III (See above under “General Bibliography”).
Amīr Khusrau Ta‘rīkh-i-Alā‘ī. Extracts trans. HIED, III (See above under “General Bibliography”).
Barānī, Ziyā-ud-dīn Ta‘rīkh-i-Fīrūz Shāhī. Extracts trans. HIED, III (See above under “General Bibliography”).
Lakshmanaraya

Parisodhaka

Mandali,

Hyderabad

(Pub.)

Sreenivasachar,

B. P.


Modern Works

DAS GUPTA, N. N. “Kākatiya Rudradeva”. IC. VIII.
DESIKAR, SOMASUNDAR “Kākatiyas in Tamil Literature”. JAHR, VIII.

814
RAO, M. RAMA

“Political History of the Kākatiyas”. JAHRS, V ff.

YULE and CORSIERS


(ii) EASTERN CHĀLUKYAS

Original Sources

Kaliāgattupparayi Extracts trans. IA, XIX. 333.
Vikramāskadeva- By Bilhana. Ed. by Bühler (See above under
charita “General Bibliography”).

Modern Works

FLEET, J. F. “Chronology of the Eastern Chālukyas”. IA. XX.


.. .. History of the Paramāra Dynasty. Dacca, 1933.

KRISHNARAO, B. V. “History of Rajahmundry”. JAHRS, IV and V.

RANGACHARYA, V. Inscriptions of the Madras Presidency. Vols.

I, II, III.


(iii) GANGAS OF ORISSA

Original Sources

‘Afif, Shams-i-Sirāj Ta‘rikh-i-Firāz Shāhī. BL, Calcutta, 1887
(See above under “General Bibliography”).

Firishta, Muhammad Qāsim Gulshan-i-Ibrāhīmi. Eng. Tr. Briggs, I (See above under “General Bibliography”).


Modern Works


815
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(iv) SOMAVAMŚIS, NAGAS, RĀSHṬRAKŪTAS, ETC.


MAHIMAN, B. C. "Orissa in the Making". Calcutta, 1925.

MISHRA, B. "Dynasties of Medival Orissa". Calcutta, 1933.


Sircar, D. C. "The Médalā Pāṇi and the pre-Sūryavahāni History of Orissa". JIH, XXXI. 233 ff.


"Some Southern Dynasties of Madhya Pradesh and Orissa". QJM, XLIV. 1 ff.

"Some Kāraśāsanas of Ancient Orissa". JRAS, 1932, pp. 4-16.

"A Rāṣṭrākūṭa Ruling Family of Orissa". JAHRS, XIX. 131 ff.

"Genealogy of the Somavāṃśis". IHQ, XX. 76-82.


LIST OF IMPORTANT INSCRIPTIONS

(i) Kākatiyas


Hanamakonda Plates of Rudradeva, S. 1084. Ibid, p. 3.


Nagalapadu Plates of Pratāparudra, S. 1225. Ibid, p. 94.


Kulpak Plates of Rudradevi, A.D. 1279. Ibid, p. 82.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

(ii) Eastern Châlukyas
- Ranastipundi grant of Vimaladitya. *EI*, VI, 331.
- Rayali Plates of Vijayaditya VII. *JAI*, V, 41.

(iii) Gangas of Orissa
- Vizagapatam grant of Anantavarman Chodaganga, S. 1040. *IA*, XVIII, 165.
- Bhuvarasvara Inscription of Narasimha II. *EI*, XIII, 150.
- Kendupatna grant of Narasimha II. *JAS*, LXV, 229.

(iv) Somavaras, Nagas, Râshtrakutas, etc.
- *OHQ*, I, 4. pp. 301-03; *HHQ*, XXXI, 81-84.
- Kumarasimha plates of Somevara II. *JHRS*, I, 229 ff.
- Upalada plates of Ramadeva. *EI*, XXIII, 141 ff.

For some inscriptions of the Chhindaka Nagas, see South Indian Inscriptions, Vol. X, Nos. 643-50 (the transcripts published here are in many cases faulty).

For some Somavaras' inscriptions published earlier, see *JPSB*, 1905, pp. 5 ff; 12 ff; 16 ff; *EI*, III, 341 ff; 347 ff; 351 ff; IV, 258 ff; VII, 141 ff; XI, 96 ff; *JBORS*, II, 52 ff.

CHAPTER IX
HOYSALAS
Original Sources

Annual Reports on South Indian Epigraphy
Epigraphia Carnatica
Epigraphia Indica
Mysore Archaeological Reports
Pudukkottai State Inscriptions
South Indian Inscriptions

Modern Works
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

(iv) SOMAVAMSI, NAGAS, RASIṣṬRAKṢAṬAS, ETC.


Bimalalal List of Inscriptions in the Central Provinces and Berar. 2nd Ed. Nagpur, 1932.


“Some Southern Dynasties of Madhya Pradesh and Orissa”. QJMS, XLIV. 1 ff.

“Some Karasasanas of Ancient Orissa”. JRAS, 1932, pp. 4-10.


“Genealogy of the Somavasnis”. IHQ, XX. 76-82.

“A Note on the Later Somavasnis”. Ibid, XXII. 300-07.

LIST OF IMPORTANT INSCRIPTIONS

(i) Kēkatīyas


Nagalapadu Plates of Pratāparudra. S. 1225. Ibid, p. 94.


Kulpak Plates of Rudradevi, A.D. 1279. Ibid, p. 82.

816
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

(ii) Eastern Chalukyas
Ranastipundi grant of Vimaladitya. EI, VI. 351.
Bayali Plates of Vijayaditya VII. JAH, S. V. 41.
Teiki Plates of Räjaraja, S. 1006. EI, VI. 339.

(iii) Gangas of Orissa
Dirghasi Stone Inscription of the reign of Räjaraja I Devendra-varman. EI, IV. 314.
Vizagapattam grant of Anantavarman Choja-ganga, S. 1040. IA, XVIII. 165.
Chatesvara Stone Inscription of Anaçagbhiima III. JASB, LVII. 1698, p. 317.
Bhuvanesvara Inscription of Narasimha II. EL XIII. 150.
Kendupatna grant of Narasimha II. JASB, LXV. 229.

(iv) Somavamsi, Nágas, Raśtrakútas, etc.
Brahmesvara Temple Inscription. JRASB, L. XIII. 122-125; OHRJ, I. 4, pp. 301-05; IHQ, XXXI. 61-84.
Balangir Museum plates of Mahábhavagupta Yuyáti I. JAS, I. XIX. 117 ff.
Two plates from Kelga. EI, XXVIII. 321 ff.
Two Grants from Dasapalla. Ibid, XXXIX. 123 ff.
Banda plates of Parachakrasályá. Ibid, XXX. 136 ff.
Patna Museum plates of Someśvara II. Ibid, XIX. 97 ff.
Inscriptions from the Bastar State. Ibid, IX. 160 ff; 174 ff; 311 ff; X. 25-43.
Kumarísimha plates of Someśvara II. JKHS, I. 229 ff.
Upalada plates of Rämadeva. EI, XXIII. 141 ff.
Kalibhana plates of Mahábhavagupta Janamejaya. IHQ, XX. 237-50.
Sonepur plates of Mahábhavagupta. EI, XXIII. 250 ff.
Kesarkella Grant of Mahábhavagupta (Uddyotakesarí). EI, XXII. 138 ff.
For some inscriptions of the Chhindaka Nágas, see South Indian Inscriptions, Vol. X, Nos. 643-50 (the transcripts published here are in many cases faulty).
For some Somavamsi inscriptions published earlier, see JPASB, 1905. pp. 5 ff; 12 ff; 16 ff; EI, III. 341 ff; 347 ff; 351 ff; IV. 258 ff; VIII. 141 ff; XI. 96 ff; JBORS, II. 52 ff.

CHAPTER IX
HOYSALAS

Original Sources

Annual Reports on South Indian Epigraphy
Epigraphia Carnatica
Epigraphia Indica
Mysore Archaeological Reports
Pudukkottai State Inscriptions
South Indian Inscriptions

Modern Works

THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

COELHO, WILLIAM
DERRETT, J. D. M.
FLEET, J. F.
JOSHI, B. II.
KRISHNA, M. II.
RICE, LEWIS
SASTRI, H. KRISHNA
SASTRI, K. A. N.
SASTRI, S. SRIRANJHNA
VENKATARAMAN, K.
VENKATASUBBAIAH, A.


CHAPTER X
CHOLA HISTORY AND ORGANISATION

Original Sources

RAG, G. V. SHINIVASA
SEWELI, R.
SUBRAMANIAM, T. N.

SH, XIII. Madras, 1953.

Modern Works

AIYANGAR, S. KRISHNASWAMI
ATYER, K. V. SUBRAHMANYA
AROKIASWAMI, M.
COELHO, WILLIAM
MAHALINGAM, T. V.

The Bājas in South Indian History. Madras, 1932.
The Colas. Madras, 1955 (2nd Ed.).

Foreign Notices of South India. Madras, 1939.

818
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY


LIST OF IMPORTANT INSCRIPTIONS

Larger Leiden Grant of Rājarāja I. K. V. S. Iyer, El, XXII, No. 34.

Tiruvenkādu Inscription of Rājarāja I. SīI, V, No. 929.


Tiruvvetjigudi Inscription of Rājarāja I. SīI, V, No. 625.

Trukkovalūr Inscription of Rājarāja I. SīI, VIII, No. 863.

Tanjore Inscription of Rājarāja I. SīI, II, No. 59.

Māṭoṭām Inscription of Rājarāja I. SīI, IV, No. 1412.

Tiruvālanjūli Inscriptions of Rājarāja I. SīI, VIII, Nos. 222, 223, and 237.

Tiruvaiyaru Inscription of Ulagamadevi, Queen of Rājarāja I. SīI, V, No. 521.

Udaiyarkudi Inscription of Rājakesari Varman, A.D. 988. K. A. N. Sastri, El, XXI, No. 27.

Tiruvaṅgāḍu Plates of Rājendra Chola I. SīI, III, No. 205.

Tiruvōrṇiyūr Inscriptions of Rājendra I. SīI, V, Nos. 982 and 1354.

Kūrūr Inscription of Rājendra I. SīI, No. 860.

Konerirājapuram Inscription of Rājendra Chola I. Ins. No. 642 of 1906.

Sembiyān Mādevi Inscription of Rājendra Chola I. Ins. No. 482 of 1925.

Eṉāyiram Inscription of Rājendra Chola I. Ins. No. 333 of 1917.

Vṛūḍḍaṣṭhala Inscription of Rājendra Chola I. Ins. No. 54 of 1918.

Brahmadeśam Inscription of Rājadhirāja I. Ins. No. 260 of 1915.

Mindīlaya Inscription of Rājadhirāja I. H. Krishna Sastri, El, V, No. 23.

Tirūkkālar Plates of Rājadhirāja I. SīI, III, No. 208.

Truppangili Inscription of Rājadhirāja I. SīI, IV, Nos. 537 and 539.

Tripāṇkādu Inscription of Rājadhirāja I. SīI, V, No. 978.

Trūvvasirar Inscription of Rājadhirāja I. SīI, V, No. 320.


Tiruvandai Inscription of Rājadhirāja I. Ins. No. 258 of 1910.


Trumalapadi Inscriptions of Rājendra II. SīI, V, Nos. 644 and 647.

Kanaḍara Koyale (Ceylon) Inscription of Rājendra II. Ins. No. 1408.

Eriyana (Ceylon) Inscription of Rājendra II. SīI, IV, No. 1415.


Tiruvenkādu Inscription of Vīra Rājendra Chola. SīI, V, No. 976.


819
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Kanyā Kumārī Inscription of Vira Rājendra Chola. T. A. Gopinatha Rao, EI, XVIII, No. 4.
Polommaruvu Inscription of Adhi Rājendra Chola. SII, IV, Nos. 1388 and 1392.
Smaller Leiden Plates of Kulottunga Chola I. K. V. S. Iyer, EI, XXII, No. 35.
Bhimavaram Inscription of Kulottunga Chola I. E. Hultzsch, EI, VI, No. 20.
Drākṣhārāma Inscription of Kulottunga Chola I. K. V. S. Iyer, EI, XXII, No. 23.
Cape Comorin Inscription of Kulottunga I. R. Vasudeva Pèduval, EI, XXVI. 274-75.
Bapatla Inscription of Kulottunga Chola. SII, VII, No. 763.
Pennagadadam Inscription of Kulottunga Chola. SII, VI, No. 167.
Chellur Plates of Vira Chola. SII, I, No. 39.
Tirukkoyilūr Inscription of Kulottunga Chola. SII, VI, No. 137.
Alangudi Inscription of Kulottunga Chola. SII, IV, No. 445.
Tiruvogiyur Inscription of Kulottunga Chola. SII, V, No. 1358.
Srīnivasa Nallur Inscription of Kulottunga Chola I. Ins. No. 608 of 1904.
Tiruvudaimarudur Inscription of Kulottunga Chola I. Ins. No. 384 of 1907.
Shiyall Inscription of Kulottunga Chola I. SII, V, No. 990.
Tiruasalam Inscription of Kulottunga Chola I. SII, VII, No. 538.
Two Inscriptions of Vikrama Chola. E. Hultzsch, EI, VI, No. 21.
Tiruvavaduturai Inscription of Vikrama Chola. Ins. No. 158 of 1925.
Dindivanam Inscription of Vikrama Chola. SII, VII, No. 832.
Tiruvārūr Inscription of Vikrama Chola. SII, V, No. 453.
Alangudi Inscription of Vikrama Chola. SII, V, No. 458.
Tirumānikiḷi Inscription of Kulottunga Chola II. SII, VII, No. 780.
Kālechipuram Inscription of Kulottunga Chola II. SII, IV, No. 813.
Tiruvārūr Inscription of Kulottunga Chola II. SII, IV, No. 397; VII, No. 485.
Tirumalavadi Inscription of Kulottunga Chola II. SII, V, No. 645.
Tittagudi Inscription of Rājarāja Chola II. SII, VIII, No. 283.
Magaral Inscription of Rājarāja Chola II. SII, VII, No. 422.
Pallavarayan Pettai Inscription of Rājakūṭalā Chola II. V. Venkataśubba Iyer, EI, XXI, No. 21.
Tiruvālangadu Inscription of Rājakūṭalā Chola II. V. Venkataśubba Iyer, EI, XXII, No. 14.
Tirukadavur Mayanam Inscription of Rājadhīrāja II. Ins. No. 261 of 1925.
Arappakam Inscription of Rājadhīrāja II. SII, V, No. 456.
Tiruvottur Inscriptions of Kulottunga III. SII, VII, Nos. 87 and 88.
Tirumānikiḷi Inscription of Kulottunga III. SII, VII, No. 797.
Nellore Inscription of Kulottunga III. SII, V, No. 492.

820
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Tiruvakkara Inscription of Kulottunga III. Ins. No. 190 of 1904.
Karur Inscription of Kulottunga III. Sfl, III, No. 23.
Sri Rangan Inscription of Kulottunga III. Sfl, III, No. 88.
Nellore Inscription of Kulottunga III. Sfl, V, No. 496.
Kudumiyan Malai Inscription of Kulottunga III. Pud. Ins., No. 163.
Seranur Inscription of Kulottunga III. Pud. Ins., No. 163.
Tiruvanangalam Inscription of Kulottunga III. Ins. No. 534 of 1904.
Vayalagam Inscription of Kulottunga III. Pud. Ins., No. 176.
Tirukkadavur Inscription of Kulottunga III. Ins. No. 255 of 1925.
Tiruvallangadu Inscription of Kulottunga III. Ins. No. 462 of 1905.
Somangalam Inscription of Kulottunga III. Sfl, VII, No. 283.
Tiruvannamalai Inscription of Kulottunga III. Sfl, VIII, No. 151.
Tiruppambaram Inscription of Kulottunga III. Ins. No. 86 of 1911.
Tiruvendikulam Inscription of Rajaraja III. E. Hultzsch, El, VII, No. 23.
Shiyali Inscription of Rajaraja III. Ins. No. 393 of 1918.
Tiruvankadu Inscription of Rajaraja III. Ins. No. 506 of 1918.
Sivapuram Inscription of Rajaraja III. Ins. No. 297 of 1927.
Tiruparantakam Inscription of Rajendra III. Ins. No. 201 of 1905.
Sivayam Inscription of Rajendra III. Ins. No. 49 of 1913.
Mahadapuram Inscription of Rajendra III. Sfl, VIII, No. 703.
Tiruvanikkut Inscription of Rajendra III. Ins. No. 73 of 1937/38.
Tiruvannamalai Inscription of Rajendra III. Sfl, VIII, No. 88.
Tirukkoyilur Inscription of Rajendra III. Ins. No. 186 of 1908.
Sri Rangan Inscription of Rajendra III. Sfl, IV, Nos. 511 and 512.

CHAPTER XI

LATER PANDYAS

Original Sources

SEWELL, R.  

SUBRAMANIAM, T. N.  

Modern Works

AIYANGAR, S. KRISH-  
South India and Her Muhammadan Invaders. Madras, 1921.

NASWAMI  
AIVY. K. V. SUBRAH-  

MANYA  
EILLOT AND DOWSON  
The History of India as told by its own Historians. Vol. III. London, 1871.

MAHALINGAM, T. V.  
The Pandyas in South Indian History. Madras, 1952.

PANDRAPHAR, T. V.  

SADASIVA  

SANTHA. K. A. NILA-  
Foreign Notices of South India. Madras, 1939.

KANTA  
CHAPTER XII

CEYLAN

Original Sources

(i) PALI

\textit{Attanagalu-vahasa}\textsubscript{1916} \\
\textit{Chala-vahasa}\textsubscript{1916} \\
\textit{Dathu-vahasa}\textsubscript{1916}

\textsubscript{1916}

(ii) SIMHALESE

\textit{Attanagalu-vahasa}\textsubscript{1916} \\
\textit{Dalgadapujavaliya}\textsubscript{1916} \\
\textit{Daladattiriita}\textsubscript{1916} \\
\textit{Nikaya Sangraha}\textsubscript{1916}

\textsubscript{1916}

(iii) INSCRIPTIONS

\textit{Ancient Inscriptions in Ceylon}. London, 1883.


Modern Works


\textit{History of Indian and Indonesian Art}. London, 1927.

\textit{Ceylon}. Wiesbaden, 1898.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

HULTÉSZ, E. "Contributions to Singhalese Chronology". JRAS, 1913. 517 ff.
SAPARAMADU, S. D. "The Polonnaruva Period" (Special Issue of the Ceylon Historical Journal, IV, 1954-55).
TURNOUR, G. An Epitome of the History of Ceylon. 1836.

CHAPTER XIII

POLITICAL THEORY AND ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANISATION

Original Sources

(i) LITERARY

Yājñavalkya-sūtrā with the comm: (i) Mitāksharā by Viśnudēvāru Bhukṣu, (ii) Vīramitrodaya by Mitramiśra, and (iii) Dipakalikā by Śūlapāṇi. Trans. by J. R. Gharpure. 6 vols. 2nd Ed. Bombay, 1936-44.

(ii) EPIGRAPHIC

Annual Report of the Mysore Archaeological Survey
Epigraphia Indica
Indian Antiquary

823
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Modern Works

AIYANGAR, S. KRISHNANASWAMI

AULADAR, A. S.

BHARADWASAJ, S.
State in Ancient India. Allahabad, 1928.

DIKSHITAR, V. R. R.

GHOSHAL, U. N.

History of Hindu Political Theories. 2nd Ed. Calcutta, 1927.


MAHALIK, V. T.

SAH, K. A. N.

The Theory of Pre-Muslim Indian Polity. Madras, 1912.

SEN, B. C.

CHAPTER XIV

LAW AND LEGAL INSTITUTIONS

Original Sources

LITERARY

Dāyabhāga
By Jimūtavāhana. See above under “General Bibliography”.

Mītakṣarā
By Vijñāneshvara. See above, Ch. XIII.

Smṛiti-chandrikā
By Devanabhatta. See above, under “General Bibliography”.

Modern Works

KANE, P. V.

MAYNE, JOHN D.
Hindu Law and Usage. 10th Ed. Madras, 1933.

SEN, PRAVANAPATI

CHAPTER XV

LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

(A) SANSKRIT, PĀLI, PRAKRIT AND APABHRĀMSA

(Note: A select list of important published works in Sanskrit, Pāli, Prakrit and Apabhraṃśa has been given above in “General Bibliography”. Further particulars about individual texts and full bibliographical material about published works and MSS. will be found in “Histories of Literature” mentioned...
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

in “General Bibliography” and also in Aufrecht, Gode, Peterson, Raghavan and Velankar, given below).


AUFRECHT, TH. Catalogus Catalogorum. 3 vols. Leipzig, 1891-1903.

AVVANGAR, P. T. S. Bhōja Raja, Annamalainagar, 1931.


... The Life of Hemachandrāchārya. Eng. trans. from the original German by M. Patel. SJS. Santiniketan, 1936.


... “Sanskrit Literature under the Sena Kings of Bengal”. Thomas Comm. Vol., pp. 50-70.


... “Hymns in Prakrit”. JUB, III. 3, pp. 45 ff.

... “Narrative Literature in Jain Mahārāṣṭra”. ABORI, XVI. 26 ff.


HAAS, G. Dālīraṣa. New York, 1912.

HARYA, R. C. Studies in the Puriṇic Records on Hindu Rites and Customs. Decca, 1940.

THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

" " " Apabhraśa Bhāṣā ur Sāhitya" (in Hindi) (Apabhraśa Language and Literature).
NPP, 50, pp. 1-8; 160-121.


" " " Hindu Astronomy. Calcutta, 1924.


" " " Bruchstücke indische Schauspiele in Inschriften zu Ajmere. Berlin, 1901.


KRIHNNAMACHARIAR, M. Prolegomena zu Trivikrama's Prakrit-Grammatik. Halle, 1912.


MAYRHOFER, M. Die Dharmapariksha des Amitagati. 1903.


" " " Grammatik der Prakrit-Sprachen. Strassburg, 1900.

" " " Materialien zur Kenntnis des Apabhraśa. Berlin, 1902.


RAY, P. C. History of Hindu Chemistry, etc. Calcutta, 1887.

SARMA, RAMAVATARA Kalpadrukośa. Intr. GOS. Baroda, 1928.

826
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

SCHUBRING, W.

SCHUYLER, M.

SHAHIDULLAH, M.
"Buddhist Mystic Songs". DUS, IV. 1 ff.

SPETER, J. S.
Studies about Kathāsārītāgāra. Amsterdam, 1908.

SURYA KANTA TAGARE, G. V.

THIBAUT, G.

VELANKAR, H. D.

WINTERNITZ, M.

ZACHARIAE, TH.
Citate in Kramadīśvara’s Samkṣiptasāra. Göttingen, 1882.

( ) MARĀṬHĪ

(a) Reference Books

Mahārāṣṭrā Santa-Kavi-Kavya-Śūcī
By G. K. Chandorkar. Dhulia, 1915 (for published and unpublished works of authors ranging from Saka 1100 to Saka 1740).

Marāṭhī-Grantha-Śūcī
By S. G. Date. Poona, 1943 (for printed Marāṭhī works).

(b) Mahārāṣṭrā and Marāṭhī

“Ancient Civilization and Geography of Mahārāṣṭrā”
By P. V. Kane. JBBRAS, OS, XXIV. 613-657.

Formation de la langue marāṭhī

Introduction to Jñānairī

Introduction of Jñānadīśa (Adhyāya I)

Introduction to Marāṭhī Bhāṣhecha Vyutpattikaśa


Mahārāṣṭrā Bhāṣabhāṣā
By Y. R. Date. Poona, 1939.

“Mahārāṣṭrāchā Vasāhatakāla”

“Marāṭhī Bhāṣhecha Kālanirnaya”
By C. V. Vaidya and P. D. Gune. VJV, 1922.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Prâchîna Mahârâşhîra
By S. V. Ketkar. Poona, 1935.

(c) History of Literature

Mahânbhäviya Marâthi Vâsmeja

Mahârâshîra-Kavi-Charitra

Mahârâshîra Sârasvata
By V. L. Bhave. 4th Ed. Supplement by S. G. Tulipule. Poona, 1931.

Marâthi Bhâshechâ va Vâmâyâchâ Itihâsa (Mënbhâva akher)
By B. A. Bhide. Poona, 1933.

Marâthi Vâmâyâchâ Itihâsa

A Short History of Marathi Literature
By M. K. Nadkarni. Baroda, 1921.

For short biographical notices of the poet-saints, cf. the works of Mahipati; Bhaktîrîjaya, Bhaktâlîmritâ, Santalîmritâ, Santavijaya, etc.

(d) Texts and Editions

1. Mukundarâja:
   (iii) Paramanîjaya—Publisher B. L. Pathak. Bombay, 1910.

2. Natha-sampradâya:
   (i) Navanâthâbhaktiśâstra—By Narahari Målu. NSP. Bombay, 1934.
   (iii) For songs, Abhaṅgas and minor works see Śrî-Râmâdâśi-Saṅgadhâna, Vols. I and II, Index. Dhulia, Saka 1855 (1933), 1938.

3. Jânesvara:
   (i) Jânesvarâ—Eds. Rajwade, V. K.; Madgaonkar, R. V. (Bombay), 1907; Dandekar, S. V. (Poona 1953).
   (ii) Amrîtalabhâsra—Edns. with the commentaries of Śivas卡尔yaṇa, Nirañjana-Raghuñâthu, Haṁsarâjasvâmi. Sârtha—Sakhare. Poona, Saka 1827 (1905).
   (iii) Gâthâ—Ed. R. B. Godbole; T. H. Apte; V. N. Sakhare.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

(vi) Life and Works: Sri Jñānadeva—S. V. Dandekar (Poona, 1932); L. R. Pangarkar (Poona, 1912); S. R. Bhingar­kar (Poona, 1886); Bharadvāja (Poona, 1931).

4. Mahānubhāva-sampradāya:
(iv) Mahānubhāvāchāra Tattvajñāna—V. B. Kolte.
(v) Mahānubhāvāchāra Āchāradyāna—V. B. Kolte.
(vi) Mahānubhāvācāra Pauṭha—Balkrishnasastri.
(vii) Vachchaharana—by Dāmodara—Edn. V. L. Bhave (Thana, Saka 1846=A.D. 1924) and D. S. Pangu (Poona, 1927).

(viii) Narendranāthī Raktwījānayanītara—Ed. V. B. Kolte.
(ix) Śiṣṭāpośādha—V. L. Bhave. Thana, Saka 1848 (1926).
(x) Govindaprabhu-charitra—V. B. Kolte.
(xi) Adya Marāṭhi Kavayitrī—V. N. Deshpande.
(xii) Bhāskarabhūta Borikar—V. B. Kolte. Amraoti, 1935.
(xiii) Śāmītištāhalī—V. N. Deshpande.

5. Nāmādeva and Contemporary Poets:

(B) BENGALI

General Reference


Sarkar, H. P. Śāduktiśkarāmītrī. Lahore, 1933.


THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

**Sen, Sukumar**


**Shahidullah, M.**


**Thomas, F. W. (Ed.)**


(D) **GUJARATI**

**Original Texts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Edition/Publication Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jīvandayā-rāsa. Ed. by Jina Vījaya Muni. BV (Hindi-Gujarātī), III. i, July 1944, pp. 201-209.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śālibhadra</td>
<td>Bhārata Bāḥubalī-rāsa (in Gujarātī), Ed. by L. B. Gandhī. Śrī Jain Dharmanābhuddaya Granthā-mālā, No. 5. Baroda, 1940.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Modern Works**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Edition/Publication Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Language of Gujarāṭī (from earliest times to c. 1300 A.C.)&quot;. BV, VIII. 1947, pp. 289-318.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dave, T. N.</td>
<td>&quot;The Language of Mahā-Gujarāṭī&quot;. JGRS, X. ii, April 1948, pp. 80-134.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

DESHAI, M. D.

GANDHI, L. B.

KATRE, S. M.

MAJUMDAR, M. R.

MUNI JENAVIJAYA AND BILVAYAN, H. C. (Eds.)

MUNSHI, K. M.

NAHTA, A. AND NAHTA, B. (Eds.)


PANHAK, R. V. AND PANCHAL, G. R.

RAVAL, A. M.

SANGESARA, B. J.

SHASTRI, K. K.

TESSATORI, L. P.
"Notes on the Grammar of the Old Western Rajasthani with Special Reference to Apabhramsa and to Gujarati and Marwari." IA, XLIII-XLV, 1914-1916.

(E) DRAVIDIAN LITERATURE
(Tamil, Kannada and Telugu)

AYAR, C. P. VENKATATARAMI
Kamban and His Art.

BARASANAL, S. S. AND IVENGAR, K. R. SHIVNATH
Musings of Basava, A Free Rendering. 1940.

CHENCHEHA, P. AND RAJJU. M. BHUJANGA RAO

KAVITTA VREDHI
Andhra Vahnyma Charitra Sanigraham (Telugu).

NANDIMATH, S. C.
A Handbook of Viraasivism. Dharwar, 1942.

NARBHACHARYA, R.
History of Kannada Literature. Mysore, 1940.

PILLAI, K. SCHRAMANIA
Karnataka Kavi Charite (Kannada).

The Metaphysics of Siva Siddhanta System.

831
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

PILLAI, M. S. PURNAKENGA

Tamil Literature. Tinnevelly, 1929.

RAJAGOPALACHARI, C.

Bharat Milap. Delhi, 1955.

RAJU, P. T.

Telugu Literature. Bombay, 1944.

RAO, C. NARAYANA


RAO, T. RAJAGOPALA

A Historical Sketch of Telugu Literature.

RICE, E. P.

Andhra Vamanya Charitram (Telugu).

SHYAPADASUNDARAM, S.

Kanarese Literature, 2nd Ed. London, 1921.

SASTRY, K. A. N.

The Saiva School of Hinduism. London, 1934.

SITARAMAIAH, K.

A History of South India. (Ch. XIV). Madras, 1955.

SOMAYAJI, G. J.

A Handbook of Telugu Literature.

Andhra Bhasha Vikasam (Telugu).

CHAPTER XVI

RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

Original Sources

(See Epics, Puranas, Philosophy, Dharmasatra, Buddhist, Jain under "Original Sources", and Religion and Philosophy under "Modern Works", in General Bibliography above)

(A) GENERAL

Modern Works

BANERJEA, J. N.


BARNETT, L. D.


BARPF, A.

The Religions of India (Eng. trans. by J. Wood. 5th Ed. London, 1921).

BHARDWAJ, R. G.


Cultural Heritage of India. Published by the Ramakrishna Mission Institute of Culture, Calcutta, 1937, 1953, 1956.

ELIOT, SIR CHARLES


FARQUHAR, J. N.


HOPKINS, E. W.

The Religions of India. Boston, 1895.

KONOW, STEN AND TUXEN, PAUL

Religions of India. Copenhagen, 1949.

KUMARASWAMI, SRI

Buddha and Basava. Dharwar, 1956.

MONIER-WILLIAMS, M.


(B) BUDDHISM

Original Sources

(See "Buddhist" under "Original Sources", and "Religion and Philosophy" under "Modern Works" in "General Bibliography").
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Modern Works

BAPAT, P. V. (Ed.)
2,500 Years of Buddhism. Delhi, 1956.

BARUA, B. M.

BHATTACHARYYA, B.
An Introduction to Buddhist Esoterism. Bombay, 1932.

" "

" "
"Tantric Culture among the Buddhists". Cult. Her., II. 208-221.

BOSE, P. N.
Indian Teachers of Buddhist Universities. Madras, 1923.

CORDIER, P.

DAS, S. C. (Ed.)

DAS GUPTA, N. N.

DAS GUPTA, S. B.

" "

GETTY, ALICE

SASTRI, K. A. N.

VASU, N.

VASU, N. AND SASTRI, H. P.
Modern Buddhism and Its Followers in Orissa. Calcutta, 1901.

VIDYABHUSHANA, S. C.
History of Medieval School of Indian Logic. Calcutta, 1909.

(C) JAINISM

Original Sources

(See "Jain" under "Original Sources" and "Religion and Philosophy" under "Modern Works" in "General Bibliography").

Modern Works

AYYANGAR, M. S.

RAMASWAMI AND RAO, B. SUDHIRE

BARODIA, U. D.

BÜHLER, G.
The Life of Hemachandrâchârya (Trans. from the original German by M. Patel. SJS. Calcutta, 1936).

" "

838

S.E.-S3
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

DESHAI, M. D. Jain Sāhityano Sanakshipta Itihasa (In Gujarati) (Short History of Jain Literature). Bombay, 1933.


SHARMA, S. R. Jainism and Karnataka Culture. Dharwar, 1940.


" " The Jainas in the History of Indian Literature". IC, I. 143 ff.

(D) VAISHNAVISM

Original Sources
(See "Epics" and "Purāṇas" under "Original Sources" and "Religion and Philosophy" under "Modern Works" in "General Bibliography").

Modern Works


GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY


(E) SĀIVISM

Original Sources

Modern Works

(F) PHILOSOPHY

Original Sources
Saṅkara, Rāmānuja, Nimbārka, Madhva, etc. Vedānta-sūtra-bhāṣya (See above, under "General Bibliography").

Modern Works
DASGUPTA, S. N.  History of Indian Philosophy. 5 vols. Cambridge, 1932 ff.
GHALE, V. S.  The Vedanta. Poona, 1926.
HIKIYANNA, M.  Outlines of Indian Philosophy. London, 1932.
JHA, GANANATHA  Pūrva Mīmāṃsā in its sources. Benares, 1942.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keith, A. B.</td>
<td>Buddhist Philosophy in India and Ceylon</td>
<td>Oxford, 1923</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indian Logic and Atomism</td>
<td>Oxford, 1921</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Karma Mimāmsā</td>
<td>London, 1921</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radhakrishnan, S.</td>
<td>Sāṅkhya System. 2nd Ed.</td>
<td>London, 1924</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sastri, S. Kuppuswami</td>
<td>A Primer of Indian Logic</td>
<td>Madras, 1932</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirifasachari, P. N.</td>
<td>Philosophy of Bhedābhedā</td>
<td>Madras, 1950</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stevenson, Mrs. S. Stevenson</td>
<td>Heart of Jainism</td>
<td>Oxford, 1915</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vedavyahubhaya, S. C.</td>
<td>Indian Logic</td>
<td>Calcutta, 1921</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winternitz, M.</td>
<td>History of Indian Literature. Eng. trans. by Mrs. S. Ketkar</td>
<td>Calcutta, 1927, 1933</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. Islam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdul Haqq</td>
<td>Akhbār al-Akhyār</td>
<td>Delhi, 1889</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'A'fī, Shams-I-Sirāj Azad</td>
<td>Ta'rikh-i-Firūz Shāhī</td>
<td>Bl. Calcutta, 1888-91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghulam 'Ali</td>
<td>Ma'āṣir al-Kirām</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badānī</td>
<td>Subḥat al-Mīrjān</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Muntashab-ut-Tawārikh</td>
<td>Bl. Calcutta, 1864-69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barānī</td>
<td>Ta'rikh-i-Firūz Shāhī</td>
<td>Bl. Calcutta, 1860-62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulbadan Begum</td>
<td>Humsayyān Nāma. Trans. by Mrs. A. S. Beveridge.</td>
<td>London, 1902</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ikram, Shaikh Mohd.</td>
<td>Chashma-i-Kauthār</td>
<td>Lahore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khusraw, Amir</td>
<td>Ashīqa. Aliqarh, 1917</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Matla al-Anwār</td>
<td>Aliqarh, 1926</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nuh Siphr. Calcutta, 1948</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Qirān al-Sā'dāin</td>
<td>Aliqarh, 1918</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Taghluq Nāma</td>
<td>Hyderabad, 1933</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ta'rikh-i-Sindh.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Modern works

Ahmad, M. G. Z. India’s Contribution to Arabic Literature.

Ashraf, K. M. Life and Conditions of the Peoples of Hindustan 1200-1550 A.D.

Crooke, W. Elliot and Dowson Islam in India.

Ghani, M. A. History of India as told by its own historians. Vols. II, III.


Prasad, Ishwari History of Medieval India. Allahabad.

Tara Chand Thomas, E. Influence of Islam on Indian Culture.


Thomas, F. W. Mutual Influence of Muhammadans and Hindus in India. Cambridge, 1892.


CHAPTERS XVII-XIX

SOCIAL CONDITION, EDUCATION, AND ECONOMIC CONDITION

Original Sources

I. LITERARY

1. Smriti commentaries and Digests


Smityaarthasūra by Sripāra

Pub. ASS. Poona, 1912.


2. Lexicons

Abhidhâna-chintāmaṇi by Hemachandra. Ed. by O. Büttlingk and Ch. Rieu. St. Petersburg, 1847.

THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

3. Miscellaneous Works

**Brihaddharma Purāṇa**
Ed. by H. P. Sastri. BI. Calcutta, 1887-97.

**Deśopadeśa** by Kshemendra (and Narmamāla)
Ed. with intr. by M. Kaul Sastri. Poona, 1923.

**Hammira-Mahākāvya** by Nayachandra Sūri
Ed. by N. J. Kirtane. BSS. Bombay, 1879.

**Kathāśaritsāgara** by Somadeva
Ed. by Durgaprasad and K. P. Parab. NSP. Bombay, 1915.

**Mēnasollāsa** by Somesvara

**Pṛithvirāja-viśaya**
Ed. with the comm. of Jonarāja, by G. H. Ojha and C. S. Guleri. Ajmer, 1941.

**Vikramāditya-cherita** by Bilhaṇa
Ed. by G. Bühlcr. BSS. Bombay, 1875.

II. ARCHAEOLOGICAL

**Annual Reports on South Indian Epigraphy** (upto 1944-45)
**Annual Reports on Indian Epigraphy** (1945-46 onwards)

**Annual Reports of the Mysore Archaeological Department**


**Epigraphia Carnatica**

**Epigraphia Indica**

III. FOREIGN TRAVELLERS AND HISTORIANS

**Alberuni's India**

**Chau Ju-Kua**
His work on the Chinese and Arab trade in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, entitled Ch’un-chi. Trans. from the Chinese and annotated by Fredrich Hirth and W. W. Rockhill. St. Petersburg, 1912.

**ELLiOT AND DOWSON**

**HODIAYA, S. H.**
**Studies in Indo-Muslim History.** A critical commentary on Elliot and Dowson’s History of India. Bombay, 1939.

**FERRAND, GABRIEL**

**NAINAR, S. M. H.**
**Arab Geographers’ Knowledge of Southern India.** Madras, 1942.

**SASTRI, K. A. N.**
**Foreign Notices of South India.** Madras, 1939.

**YULE, SIR HENRY**

838
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Modern Works

AIYANGAR, K. V. "Aspects of Ancient Indian Economic Thought."
RANASWAMI

ALTEKAR, A. S. "Position of Women in Hindu Civilisation."

GHOSHAL, U. N. "Contributions to the History of the Hindu Revenue System."

GUPTA, K. M. "The Agrarian System in Ancient India."

KANE, P. V. "History of Dharmasāstra."

MACKENZIE, J. "Hindu Ethics."

SASTRI, K. A. NILAKANTA

VENKATESWARA, S. V. "Indian Culture through the Ages."

YULE, COL. HENRY AND BURNELL, A. C. "Hobson-Jobson."

CHAPTER XX

ART

Original Sources

Aparējitaprichchā of Bhuvanadeva

Isāna-siva-guru-deva-paddhati of Isānāsīvaguru-deva Miśra

Mayamata of Mayamuni

Samarāṅaga Śātradhāra of Bhoja

Śilparatna of Kumāra

Vīṣṇudharmottara, part III

Modern Works

(B) ARCHITECTURE

BANERJII, R. D. "History of Orissa."

The Haihayas of Tripuri and their Monuments (MASI, No. 23).

839
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Banerji, R. D.</td>
<td>Eastern Indian School of Mediaeval Sculpture.</td>
<td>Delhi</td>
<td>1933</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codrington, K. de B.</td>
<td>History of Indian and Indonesian Art.</td>
<td>London.</td>
<td>1927.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coomaraswamy, A. K.</td>
<td>Architectural Antiquities of Western India.</td>
<td>London.</td>
<td>1926.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somnath and other Mediaeval Temples in Kathiawad.</td>
<td>Calcutta.</td>
<td>1931.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cunningham, A.</td>
<td>Mahabodhi or the Great Buddhist Temple at Buddhagaya.</td>
<td>London.</td>
<td>1892.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fergusson, James and Burgess, James</td>
<td>Cave Temples of India.</td>
<td>London.</td>
<td>1880.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganguly, M.</td>
<td>Orissa and her remains, ancient and mediaeval.</td>
<td>Calcutta.</td>
<td>1912.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India, Archaeological Survey</td>
<td>Reports by Alexander Cunningham. Vols. II, VII, VIII, IX, XIII, XVII.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India, Archaeological Survey, Western Circle</td>
<td>Annual Report, 1903-04.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Kramrisch, Stella


Longhurst, A. H.


Majumdar, R. C. (Ed.)


Mitra, R. L.


Mukherji, P. C.


Rah Raj


Rea, A. Benjamin


Sarkar, H. D.


Saraswati, S. K.

Archeology of Gujarat (including Kathiawar). Bombay, 1941.

Sastri, K. A. N.


" " " Date of the Paharpur Temple (IC, Vol. VII). Calcutta, 1940.


Smith, V. A.


Swarup, B.

Konarka, the Black Pagoda. Cuttack, 1910.

Vogel, J. Pd.

Antiquities of the Champa State. Calcutta, 1911.

Zimmer, Heinrich


(B) SCULPTURE

Banerji, R. D.

Eastern Indian School of Mediaeval Sculpture. Delhi, 1933.

Chanda, R. P.


Codrington, K. de B.

Ancient India. London, 1926.

Corn, W.


Coomaraswamy, A. K.

History of Indian and Indonesian Art. London, 1927.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE


" " Dance of Siva. New York, 1918.


DIEZ, E.  Die Kunst Indiens. Potsdam, 1925.

DRIKSHIT, K. N.  Excavations at Paharpur (MASI, No. 55). Delhi, 1938.


GANGLY, M.  Orissa and her Remains, ancient and mediaeval. Calcutta, 1912.

GAROD, M. B.  Archaeology in Gwalior. Gwalior, 1934.


" " Ideals of Indian Art. London, 1911.


KRAMER, STELLA  Indian Sculpture. Calcutta, 1933.

" " Grundzuge der Indischen Kunst. Hellerau, 1924.

" " Pala and Sena Sculpture. Calcutta, 1929.


ROWLAND, BENJAMIN  Catalogue of the Museum of Archaeology at Sarnath, Calcutta, 1914.


842
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>An early passage on Indian Painting (Eastern Art, Vol. III).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abhasa (JAOS, Vol. 52).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theory and Technique of Indian Painting (Technical Studies).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moti Chandra</td>
<td>Jaina Miniature Paintings from Western India. Ahmedabad, 1949.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smith, V. A.</td>
<td>Discovery of Frescoes in South Indian Temples (ABIA, 1931). Leiden, 1933.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHAPTER XXI**

**COLONIAL AND CULTURAL EXPANSION**

**Modern Works**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Sino-Indian Relations&quot;. SIS, I. 65-84; 161-166.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Hindu Colony of Champâ. Adyar, 1926.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE


Cordes, G.  India and Java. Calcutta, 1933.


DE BOER, T. J.  Contributions on the Religion, History, etc. of Tibet. JASB, 1881, 187 ff; 1892, 1 ff; 87 ff.


HIJTI, P. K.  History of the Arabs. 1937.


SAstri, K. A. N.  Foreign Notices of South India. Madras, 1939.


GENEALOGY

Note: The names in italics did not reign.

1. The Yaminis of the Punjab or the Ghaznavids

1. Sabuktigin
   3. Mas'ud
      2. Isma'il
   4. Muhammad
      5. Mas'ud I
         9. 'Abd-ur-Rashid
      6. Maudud
         10. Farrukhsad
            11. Ibrahim
      7. Mas'ud II
         13. Shirzad
      12. Mas'ud III

2. The Palas of Bengal (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, pp. 520-21).

1. Mahipala I
   2. Nayapala
      3. Vighrapala III
   4. Mahipala II
      5. Suraipala II
         7. Kumarpala
            9. Mudanpala
      6. Ramaipala
         8. Gopala III
            Govindapala (?)

3. The Yadavas of East Bengal

Vajravarman
   Jatavarman
      Harivarman
         Smalavarman
            Bhojavarman

845
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

4. The Senas of Bengal

Siimantasena
Hemantasena
Vijayasena
Valikiasena
Lakshmanasena

Vijayarupa sena
Kevasena

Kundrasena
Purusottamasaena

5. The Deva Dynasty of East Bengal

Purusottama
Madhusudana alias Medhumathara
Vasudeva
Dvarodara
Dasharatha

6. The Pala of Assam

Brahmapala
Ratnapala
Purnarupala
Indrapala
Gopala
Harsapala
Dharmapala

7. Dynasty of Bhaskara (Kamarupa)

Bhaskara
Royvideva
Udayakarna
Valabhudevya

846
GENEALOGY

8. Dynasty of Kharavāga (Srihatta)
   Kharavāga
   Gokuladeva
   Nārāyana
   Kesāyadeva
   Sānadeva

9. Dynasty of Guḍakāma (Nepāl)
   Guṇakāmadeva I
   Udayadeva
   Nīrīhīya
   Rudradeva
   Bhoja
   Lakṣmīkāmadeva
   Joint rule
   Bhoja
   Lakṣmīkāmadeva

10. The Ṭhākuris of Nayakot in Nepal
    Bhaskaradeva
    Ṭaladeva alias Balavantadeva
    Pradhunmukhākāmadeva alias Padmadeva
    Nāgarjunadeva
    Śaṅkaraadeva
    Śivadeva
    Indra alias Mahendra
    Mānadeva
    Nārendradeva
    Anandadeva
    Rudradeva
    Amritadeva
    Ratnadeva
    Someśvaraadeva (son of Mahendra)
    Guṇakāmadeva II
    Lakṣmīkāmadeva
    Viṣṇyakāmadeva

847
11. The Thakuris of Patan in Nepal
   Vamadeva
   Harshadeva

12. The Mallas of Nepal
   Arimalladeva
   Rana-deva
   Abhayamalla
   Jaya-deva
   Jaya-bhima
   Jaya-ramamalla
   Anantamalla
   Jaya-anandadeva
   Jaya-rudramalla
   Jaya-rimalla
   Jaya-rjadeva
   Jaya-rijunamalla

13. The Karnatak Dynasty of Mithila
   Nanyadeva
   Gahadeva
   Nrisimha
   Ramasimha
   Suktisimha
   Bhujolasimha
   Harisimha

14. The Gupta Dynasty of Bihar
   Yasodevagupta
   Dvararagupta
   Devagupta
   Rujcdityagupta
   Krishnagupta
   Saṅgramagupta
   848
GENEALOGY

15. Khayaravala Dynasty of Bihar

Khadirapila

Sahava

Ranadhavala

Pratapadhavala

Sahava

Vikrama

Indradhavala

Pratapa (?)

16. The Rashtrakuta Dynasty of Kanauj and Budsun

Chandra

Vigrahapala

Bhuvanapala

Gopalas

Tribhuvanapala

Madanapala

Sarlapala

Bhimapala

Devapala

Amritapala

Lakhanapala

Bharahadeva

17. The Gahadavala Dynasty of Kanauj and Vara§asi

Yasovgraaha

Mahachandra

Chandradeva

Madanachandra

Govindachandra

Aspho$tachandra

Rajapala

Vijayschandra

Jayachandra

Hariochandra

Adakkanalla

S.E.—54
18. The Yaduvarna Kings of Bayana-Sripatha

Jaitapāla
- Vijayapāla
- Tāhānapāla
- Dharmanpāla
- Kunwarpāla
- Ajayapāla
- Haripāla
- Sōhapāla or Sahapanpāla
- Arunapāla
- Prithvipāla
- Rājapāla
- Trilokapāla

19. The Kachchhapaghāta Dynasty of Gwalior

Lakshmana
- Vajradāman
  - Mathapālaraśa
  - Kirtiraśa
  - Māladeva
  - Devapāla
  - Padmapāla
  - Mahipāla
  - Ratnapāla

20. The Pratihāra Dynasty of Gwalior

Vigraha

Malayvarman
- Nrivarman
- Dewbal
- Harirāja
GENEALOGY

21. The Kachchhapaghāta Dynasty of Dubkund
   Yuvaraj
   Arjuna
   Abhimanyu
   Vijayapāla
   Vikramasiniha

22. The Kachchhapaghiita Dynasty of Narwar
   Gangaśimha
   Saradāsinha
   Virasīhha

23. The Yajvapāla or JajapeUa Dynasty of Narwar
   Yajvapāla
   Ya(P)ramādirāja
   Cāhāja
   Prīvarman
   Asaladeva
   Gopāla
   Ganašati

24. The Chandellas of Bundelkhand (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, p. 522).
   1. Dharija
   2. Gopāla
   3. Vidyādhara
   4. Vijayapāla

   5. Devendravarman
   6. Kirttivarman

   7. Sallakshanavarman
   8. Jayavarman

   9. Prīthvivarman
   10. Madanavarman

   11. Yasovarman II
   12. Paramardī
   13. Trailokyaivarman

   14. Bhōjavarman
   15. Hinniravarman
   16. Viravarman II
25. The Kalachuris of Tripuri (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, p. 522).

|---------------|-----------------|--------|-------------|-------------|

26. The Kalachuris of Ratanpur

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kokalla I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a younger son)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Karuagaraja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Kamularaja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. RatnaraIja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Prithvideva I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Jajalladeva I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Ratnadeva II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Prithvideva II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Jajalladeva II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Jagaddeva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Ratnadeva III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Prithvideva III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Pratapamalla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENEALOGY

27. The Paramārās of Mālava (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, p. 523).

Sindurāja

1. Bhoja 3. Udayāditya
2. Jayasimha

4. Lakshmīdeva alias (?) Jagaddeva 5. Naravarman
6. Yāsovarman

10. Arjunavarman

11. Devapāla

16. Bhoja II
17. Mahālakṣadēva

855
# THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

## 28. Paramaras of Mt. Abu

1. Aranyaraja (son of Vakpati-Muṣḍa)
2. Krishnaraja
3. Dharāṇīvaraha
4. Mahapāla alias Dhruvabhaṭa
5. Dhandhaka

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13. Yasadhavala</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Dharāvarsha</td>
<td></td>
<td>15. Prahlādana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Somasiriha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Krishnaraja</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Pratipasiriha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Arjuna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 29. The Paramaras of Vāgaḍa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dambarasiriha</th>
<th>Dhanika</th>
<th>Chṛchchha</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chachapa</td>
<td>Satyagṛha</td>
<td>Limbāraṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandalika</td>
<td>Chāṇuḍaṛaka</td>
<td>Viljarāja</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

854
GENEALOGY

30. The Paramāras of Jalor

Chandana (son of Vākpati-Muṅija)
  → Devarāja
  → Aparājita
  → Vijjala
  → Dhāravarsha
  → Visala
  → Kuritapāla

31. The Paramāras of Bhinmal

Dāsala (son of Sindhurāja) (Vol. IV, p. 523).
  → Devarāja
    → Krishnarāja
    → Socarāja
    → Udayarāja
    → Somēvara
    → Janusūha
    → Salakhā

32. The Chaulukyas of Anahillapātaka

1. Mūlarāja I
2. Chamunḍarāja
3. Vallabharāja
4. Durabharāja
5. Bhīma I

Mūlarāja
  → Karṇadeva
  → Devarājula
  → Tribhuvanapāla

Mālapāla
  → Kumārapāla
  → Prerulādevī
  → Devulādevī

9. Ajayapāla

10. Mūlarāja II
11. Bhīma II
12. Tribhuvanapāla

855
33. The Vaghelas of Gujarāt

Dhavala

Viratovara

Pratapamalla

1. Virama

2. Visala

3. Arjuna

4. Sārāṅgadeva

5. Karuṇadeva

Dēvatadevi

34. The Chāhāmanas of Sākambhari (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, p. 525).

1. Durlabhārāja II

2. Govindārāja II

3. Vākapatiārāja II

4. Viryārāma

5. Chāmundaśārāja

6. Sīlghāta

7. Durābhārāja III

8. Virasīttha

9. Virahārāja III

10. Prithvirāja I

11. Ajaśarāja

12. Aparāja

13. Jugadeva (?)

14. Virahārāja IV

15. Aparā-Gāṅgeya

16. Prithvībhaṭa

17. Somesvara

18. Prithvirāja III

Harikīja
### GENEALOGY

#### 35. The Chāhamānas of Raṇastambhapura

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Govindarāja (a descendant of Prithvirāja III)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Bālāna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Prahlāda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Vīrānārāyaṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Vāgbhaṭa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Jātraśāṁha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Hammira</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lakṣmīnāra</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Šohīta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bālāra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Āśvapāla aśa Asāla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Āhīla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Anabhīla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Bālaprasāda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Jīndurāja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Prithvipāla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Jojala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Āśaraṇa aśa Ālvarāja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Ratnapāla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Bānapāla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rūḍrapāla</th>
<th>Anūṣṭapīla</th>
<th>Suhajapīla</th>
<th>Pīnapākashādeva</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11. Kartudėva aśa Kartukarāja</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Aṭhānādeva</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Mānīkāya</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayatāśāṁha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Kelhana |
| Gejurāṇa |
| Kīrtipāla |
| Vījanāṃha |

#### Additional Details

- 837
37. The Chāhāmanas of Jālor (Sonigarā)

Kirttipala (son of Alha lā)

1. Samarasimha  Rudaḷadevi  Lakhaspala  Abhaṣapala

Māνeṣṭasimha

2. Udayasimha  Līḍadevi

Pratīpā

Devarāja-Vijāda

3. Chāchīga  Chāmanjārīga  Vālangānīha

4. Sāmantasimha  Rūṣadevi

5. Kāṇhāda

Vīrama

38. The Chāhāmanas of Satyapura (Sānchor)

Vijaṭasimha (son of Alha lā)

Padmasimha

Sobhita

Ṣālha

Vikramasimha

Bhima  Soṇgrāmasimha

Pratīpasimha

39. The Chāhāmanas of Mt. Abu (Devaḍā Branch)

1. Devarāja-Vijāda

2. Lūṅga  Lūṅga  Lakhaṇa  Lānaṇavarna

4. Tejanjīha

5. Kāṇhādaṇeva

838
40. The Guhilas of Medapāta (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, p. 527).

1. Śaktikumāra


varman 6. Kṛṣṇivarman (Yānivarman)

7. Yogartīja
8. Vairata
9. Harisapāla
10. Vairisirihā
11. Vījayasiṁha
12. Ārisiṁha
13. Choḍasiṁha
14. Vīkrāmasiṁha
15. Rāpasīṁha elēs Karpō

16. Kaḥmaśiṁha

17. Sāmantasiṁha
18. Kumarasiṁha
19. Mathanasiṁha
20. Pādmasiṁha
21. Jalirasīṁha
22. Tejasīṁha
23. Samarasīṁha
24. Ratnasīṁha

859
41. The Guhilas of Sisodiyā

Rāhapa (son of Karāa)
Narājati
Dinākara
Jasakarna
Nāgāpāla
Karṇāpāla
Bhuvānasimha
Bhīmāsimha
Jayāsimha
Lakṣhapāsimha
Araśi (Aristiśiha)
Gomināra

42. Kashmir: First Lohara Dynasty

Vigraharāja 1. Samgrāmarāja

2. Harirāja 3. Ananta

4. Kalāśa

5. Utkarsha 6. Harsha  Vijayamalla

Bhoja  Bhīskhechāra

43. Kashmir: Second Lohara Dynasty


Sahana  Lohana  Malātrjuna

Bhoja  Vigraharāja

Gahana  4. Paramāṅuka

5. Vantideva

860
44. Line of Vuppadeva

- Vuppadeva
  - Jasaka
  - Jagadeva
  - Râjadeva
  - Samgrâmadeva
  - Râmadeva
  - Lakhmadeva

45. Line of Sirhadeva

- Sirhadeva
  - Sûhadeva

46. Mamlûk Sultâns of Delhi

1. Qutb-ud-din Aibak

2. Aram Shah

3. Iltutmish = (Daughter)

Nâsir-ud-din

4. Firûz

5. Râsyâya

6. Mu'izz-ud-din

Bahram

Mahmûd

7. 'Alâ-ud-din Mar'âd

8. Nâsir-ud-din

9. Balban

Muhammad

10. Kaigibâd

Shams-ud-din Kayûmars
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

47. Chalukyas of Kalyana

1. Taila II

2. Satyadeva

3. Vikramaditya V

4. Ayyana II

5. Jayasimha II

6. Somevara I

7. Somevara II

8. Vikramaditya VI

9. Jayasimha

10. Jagadekamalla II

11. Taila III

12. Somevara IV

48. Kalachuris of Kalyana

[Kannama

Raja

Ammugli

Santhana I

Joguna

Perma (or Hemma)]

1. Bijjala

2. Somevara

3. Santhana II

4. Ahavamalla

5. Singhana

49. Silaharas of the South Marathi country

Gandaraditya

Vijayaditya

Bhoja II

862
50. Yadavas of Devagiri

Seuachandra

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Karla</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Bhilama V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Jaitugi I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Singhaa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jaitugi II | Sa(m)arpâni

| 4. Krishna |
| 5. Mahadeva |
| 7. Ramachandra (or Ramsdeva) |
| 6. Amaa |

51. The Kakatiyas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Beta I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Prola I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Trihuvanamalla Beta II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 5. Rudra I |
| 6. Mahadeva |
| 7. Gopapati |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rudrâmâ (m. Châlukya Viralhadrâvâra)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mumudâmâ (m. Mahâdeva)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pralâparâmâ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Genapâmâ

52. The Eastern Chalukyas (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, p. 531).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dâsârâmaa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Saktivarman I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Vimalâdityya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 4. Râjâraja I |
| 5. Vijâyâditya VII |
| 7. Kulottunga Chola I |
| 6. Saktivarman II |

863
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

53. Later Gaṅgas of Kaliṅga (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, pp. 142, 532).

1. Vajrabhasta IV

2. Kāmārava VI

3. Guṇḍama II

4. Medhukāṃkaraṇa V

5. Vajrabhasta V

6. Rājarāja I

7. Anantavarman Chodaganga

8. Kāmārava VII

9. Bāghava

10. Rājarāja II or Anangabhīma

11. Rājarāja III

12. Anangarbāhīma III

13. Narasimha I

14. Bhānu-deva I

15. Narasimha II

16. Kamarāla VI

54. Somavamsis (For earlier kings see Vol. IV, p. 533).

1. Yayāti Mahāśivagupta I

2. Bhimarakha Mahābhavagupta II

3. Dharmarāja (Mahābhavagupta II)

4. Nabhūta (Mahābhavagupta III)

5. Chandraḥara-Yayāti Mahāśivagupta III

6. Uddyotakesarī (Mahābhavagupta IV)

7. Karnakesarī

55. Chhindaka-Nāgas of Bastar

1. Nripati-bhūshaṇa (?Kahti-)

2. Dhāraśvarha Jagadekabhūshaṇa

3. Madhurāntaka

4. Somēvara I (Son of 2)

5. Karhara

Rājarāsha Somēvara II

Jagadekabhūshaṇa Narasimha

Jayasimha

Harichandra
56. Telugu-Cholas

Challama

Yasoraja I

Someśvara I

Chandrāditya

Yasoraja II

Someśvara II

Dhāraśadēva-varman

Someśvara(devavarman) III

57. Hoysalas

1. Nripakāma

2. Vinayaditya

3. Ereyanga

4. Ballāla I

5. Vishnuvardhana (or Bittiga)

6. Vijaya Narasimha I

7. Ballāla II

8. Narasimha II

9. Someśvara

10. Narasimha III

11. Ballāla III

865
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

58. Cholas (For earlier kings, see Vol. IV, p. 534).

1. Rajaraja I

2. Rajendra I


8. Vikrama Chola

9. Kulottunga II

10. Rajaraja II

11. Rajasekharaja II (grandson of 8)

12. Kulottunga III

13. Rajaraja III

14. Rajendra III

59. Later Pandyas

1. Jatavarman Kulashekhara Pandy I

2. Maravarman Sundara Pandy I

3. Maravarman Sundara Pandy II

4. Jatavarman Sundara Pandy I

5. Maravarman Kulashekhara Pandy I
GENEALOGY

60. Ceylon

1. Vijayabahu I Srisanghabodhi
2. Jayabahu (brother of 1)
3. Vikramabahu II (son of 1)
4. Gajabahu (son of 3)
5. Parakramabahu I
6. Vijayabahu II (sister's son of 5)
7. MahendravI (of the Kalinga clan)
8. Nihashankama or Kiritabhanika (son of Jayagopa of Kalinga)
9. Virabahu II (son of 8)
10. Vikramabahu III (or II) (brother of 8)
11. Chodaganga (sister's son of 8)
12. Lilavati (first mahishi of 5)
13. Sahasamalla (step-brother of 8)
14. Kalyanavati (first mahishi of 8)
15. Dharmasoka
16. Anirudha (father of 15)
17. Lilavati (again) (No. 12)
18. Lokesvara (of South India)
19. Lilavati (again) (Nos. 12, 17)
20. Parakrama Pandya
21. Magha (from Kerala)

(End of Polonnaruva period)

1. Thakuris of Patan overthrew the Thakuris of Nayakot in the latter part of the eleventh century A.D.
2. According to another account, Sohapiila's successor was Kunwarapala who was the predecessor of Ajayapala. Anangapala may be the successor of Kunwarapala (p. 56 above).
CHRONOLOGY

c. 695-722 Narasimhavarman II Rajasimha, Pallava (p. 612).
   696-733 Vijayaditya Chalukya (p. 615).
   724-760 Lalitaditya Muktapida, Kashmir (p. 634).
   733-746 Vikramaditya II, Chalukya (p. 615).
   749 Foundation of ‘Abbasid Caliphate (p. 1).
   756-773 Krishna I, Rashtrakuta (p. 616).
   813-833 Al-Ma'mun (p. 1).
   820 Tahir made governor of Khurasan (p. 1).
   849 Foundation of Pagan by king Pyaipyu, acc. to some Burmese Chronicles (p. 755).
   872 Tahirids superseded by Safrids (p. 1).
   903 Samanids wrest Khurasan from Safrids (p. 1).
   907-953 Parantaka I, Chola (p. 618).
   913-943 Nasr II, Samanid (p. 1).
   963 Alphtgin establishes independent kingdom after conquering Ghazni from Abu Bakr Lawik (p. 2).
   973-907 Taila II, Chalukya (p. 161).
   977 Accession of Sabuktigin (p. 3).
   980-1003 Didda, of Kashmir (p. 666).
   985-1014 Rajaraja the Great, Chola (pp. 234, 281, 618).
   987-1036 Bhaskara Ravivarman of Kerala (p. 234).
   988 Accession of Mahipala I (p. 24).
   990 Ilak Khans of Turkistan capture Buhara (p. 2).
   996 Last known date of Taila II (p. 164).
   997 Death of Sabuktigin (p. 5).
   997-1008 Satyashraya, Chalukya (p. 164).
   998 Accession of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni (p. 5).
   999 Accession of Saktivarman I, son of Dnarahaya, E. Chalukya (p. 203).
   1000 Chola Rajaraja starts a great land survey (p. 235).
   1000 Accession of Paramara Bhoja (p. 66).
   1000 Mahmud leads first expedition against India (p. 6).
   1000-1015 Bhimaratha Mahabhavagupta II, Somavainshi (p. 209).
   1000-1055 Bhoja Paramara, of Dhar (pp. 331, 658).
   1001 Death of Jaya-varman V of Kambuja (p. 736).
   1003 Sri Chodramanivarmeda of the Sailendras sends two envoys to China (p. 730).
   1004 Mahmud's invasion of Bhautya (p. 7).
   1005-1006 Mahmud's expedition against Multan (p. 8).
   1006 Mura-Vijayottunga-varman, Sailendra ruler, founds a Buddhist monastery at Negapatam (p. 239).
   1007 Mahmud captures NawaShah and his treasures (p. 8).
CHRONOLOGY

1007  King Nirbhaya rules jointly with Rudra in Nepal (p. 45).
1008  Mahmūd’s war with Anandapāla (p. 8).
c. 1008-1014  Vikramaditya V, Chālukya (p. 166).
1009  Mahmūd’s expedition against Nārāyana (p. 10).
1009-1010  Accession of Chaulukya Durjñabhārāja (p. 74).
1010  Completion of the Rājarājesvara temple at Tanjore (pp. 236, 618).
1010  Mahmūd’s expedition against Multān (p. 10).
1011  Mahmūd leads an expedition against Thaneswar (pp. 10, 23n 7).
1011-1018  Vimaladitya, E, Chālukya (p. 235).
1012  Chola Rājarāja associates his son Rājendra in the government of the empire (pp. 235-6).
c. 1012  Death of Anandapāla (p. 11).
1012-1044  Rājendra I, Chola (pp. 236, 618).
1013  Mahmūd advances with his army to Nandana, capital of Trilochanapāla (p. 11).
1014  Death of Chola Rājarāja (p. 239).
1015  Mahmūd attacks Kashmir valley (p. 12).
c. 1015-1020  Dharmarātha, Somavamsi (p. 209).
1015-1043  Jayasimha II, Chālukya (pp. 166, 237).
1016-1017  Birth of Rāmānuja (p. 437).
1018  Rājārāja, E, Chālukya (p. 204).
1018  Rājendra Chola makes his son Rājādhirāja heir apparent (pp. 236, 240).
1018  Mahmūd marches to attack Kanauj (p. 13).
1018  Chola Rājendra conquers Ceylon (p. 238).
1018-1052  Rājādhirāja I, Chola (p. 240).
1019  Consecration of Airlangga of Java (p. 749).
1019; 1022  Mahmūd of Ghaznī invades Kālaṇḍa (p. 58).
1020  Paramāra Bhoja conquers Konkan (p. 86).
1020-21  Mahmūd advances to India to chastise the Chandella Vidyādhara (p. 16).
c. 1020-1025  Nahusha, Somavamsi (p. 209).
1021  Chola Rājendra defeats Chālukya Jayasimha (p. 238).
1021  Mahmūd leads an army against Lohkot (p. 18).
c. 1021  Chola invasion of Bengal (p. 25).
1021-22  Mahmūd’s second expedition against Chandella Vidyādhara (p. 18).
1022  Coronation of Rājārāja, E, Chālukya (p. 204).
c. 1022  Chaulukya Durjñabhāb abdicates in favour of his nephew Bhimadeva I (p. 74).
1025  Mahmūd plunders Somanātha (pp. 20, 74).
c. 1025  Rājendra Chola’s expedition to Kaḷāram (pp. 239, 495).
c. 1025-1055  Chaṇḍihara, Somavamsi (p. 209).
1027  Mahmūd marches to punish the Jāts (p. 21).
1028  Harirāja of Kashmir (p. 97).
1029  Vijayaṅī performs his coronation ceremony (p. 204).
1030  Death of Mahmūd (pp. 22, 92).
1031 Accession of Mas'ūd (p. 92).
1031 Completion of the Adinātha temple at Abu (p. 92).
1034 Ahmad Niyālī ģīn invades Banaras (pp. 25, 61).
1034 Kalachuri Gāṅgēyadeva bears the brunt of an attack of the Muslims (p. 61).
1035 Airlaṅga establishes his authority over the whole of Java (p. 749).
1036 Mas'ūd sends his second son Majdūd as the governor of the Punjāb (p. 93).
1038 Coronation of Vajrāhasta V, Ė. Gāṅga (p. 205).
c. 1038 Death of Mahipāla I, and accession of his son Nayapāla (p. 27).
1038-70 Anantavarman Vajrāhasta III, Gāṅga (p. 212).
c. 1039 Dipaṅkara Aṭīṣa visits Nepāl (p. 45).
1040 Mas'ūd proceeds towards Hindustān (p. 93).
1040 Assassination of Mas'ūd (p. 93).
1041 Accession of Jaya Susha-varman II (p. 743).
1042 Airlaṅga of Java abdicates and takes to religious life (p. 750).
1043 Indian chiefs form a confedera cy under the Rājā of Delhi (p. 94).
1043-44; Chola invasions against Chālukyas (pp. 167, 168).
1051-52 Somesvara I, Chālukya (p. 167).
1044 Chola Rājādhirāja performs a horse sacrifice (p. 241).
1044-77 Aniruddha of Burmā (p. 756).
1047-1101 Hoysala Vīṇāyāditya (p. 175).
1049 Death of Maudūd (p. 94).
1052 Battle of Koppam (p. 241).
1052-1064 Rājendrā Chola II (pp. 240, 241).
c. 1055 Death of Paramāra Bhoja (p. 67).
c. 1055 Malava falls into the hands of the Kalachuris and Chaulukyas (pp. 67, 172).
c. 1055 Vigrāhapāla III succeeds his father Nayapāla (p. 27).
1055-1080 Udōyotakesarī Mahābhāvagupta, Somavānūśi (p. 211).
1058-59; 1063-64 Chālukya Somesvara leads expeditions against the Cholas (pp. 168, 170).
1059 Ibrāhīm ascends the throne of Ghaznī (p. 94).
1060 Vijayāditya usurps the Veṣṭī throne (p. 204).
1060 Death of Rājārāja I, Ė. Chālukya (p. 242).
1061 Coronation of Saktivarman II, Ė. Chālukya (p. 204).
1062 Rājendra Chola II defeats Chālukya Somesvara (p. 241).
1063 Ananta of Kashmir abdicates in favour of his son Kalaśa (p. 98).
1063-1064 Chālukya Somesvara I leads an expedition against the Cholas (p. 170).
1063-1070 Virarājendra, Chola (p. 241).
C H R O N O L O G Y

c. 1064  Chaulukya Bhima hands over sovereignty to Karṇa (p. 75).
1067  Virarājendrā erects a pillar of victory on the banks of the Tungabhadrā (p. 241).
1067-1068  Chālukya Vikramāditya marches against Gaṅga, gaikoḍha and plunders it (p. 171).
1068-1069  Virarājendrā leads an expedition against Chālukya Somesvara II (p. 173).
1068-1070  Adhirājendra, Chōla (p. 241).
1068-1076  Somesvara II, Chālukya (p. 173).
1070  Coronation of Rājarāja I Devendravarma, E. Gaṅga (p. 205).

c. 1070  Death of Vigrahapāla III, and accession of his son Mahipāla II (p. 28).
1070-1078  Rājarāja I, E. Gaṅga (p. 212).
1070-1120  Kulottunga I, Chōla (p. 242).
1072  Death of Kalachuri Karṇa (p. 51).
1072  Death of ‘Alī bin ‘Uṣmān al-Hulwārī, founder of the Sūfī cult in India (p. 467).
1075  Ibrāhīm appoints his son Mahmūd governor of the Punjab (p. 94).
1075  Divya ascends the throne of Varendri (p. 29).
1076  Kulottunga Chōla I annexes the Andhra country (p. 204).
1076-1126  Vikramāditya VI, Chālukya (p. 174).
1077  Death of Aniruddha of Burma (p. 757).
1077-1120  Ramapāla (p. 415).
1078-1150  Anantavarman Chōdagaṅga, E. Gaṅga (p. 205).
1079  Ananta of Kashmir settles at the Tirtha of Vijayeśvara (p. 98).
1081  Ananta of Kashmir commits suicide (p. 98).
1084  Accession of Kyanzittha of Burma under the title of Śri Tribhuvanāditya-dharmarāja (p. 757).
1084-1088  Rājarāja Chōdagaṅga, viceroy of Veṅgi (p. 205).
1085  Vijayabahu of Ceylon declares war against the Chōlas (p. 262).
1086  Chōla Kulottunga orders a land survey (p. 244).
1088-1094  Paramāra Lakshmīdeva (p. 206).
1088-1172  Hemachandra (pp. 345, 428, 433).
1090  Kulottunga Chōla receives an embassy from Kājāram (p. 243).
1090-1110  Someśvara, Chhindaka Nāga (p. 214).
1094  Composition of Old-Javanese Rāmāyana by Yogisvara (p. 707).
1094  Accession of Chaulukya Jayasimha (p. 75).
1094  Accession of Vijayasena (p. 36).
1096; 1110  Kālinga expeditions of Chōla Kulottunga (p. 243).
1097  Nānyadeva of the Karnēṭaka dynasty establishes his supremacy over Mithilā (p. 47).
1098  Death of Harṣhadeva of Nepāl (p. 46).
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Kulottunga reconquers Veṅgi from the Chālukyas (p. 174).

Mas'ūd III succeeds his father Ibrāhīm (p. 95).

'Alā-ud-Daulah Mas'ūd III (p. 52).

Death of Harsha of Kāśmīr (p. 99).

Death of Hoyasa Vinayāditya and accession of his son Ballāḷa I (p. 228).

Kulottunga makes another land survey (p. 244).

Death of Vijayabāhu of Ceylon (p. 262).

Death of Uchhala of Kāśmīr (p. 100).

Accession of Sūrya-varman V of Kambuja (p. 737).

Earliest known date of Kākatiya Prōla II (p. 196).

Kāmal-ud-Daulah Shīrāzīd succeeds his father Mas'ūd III (p. 95).

Vikramabāhuba II of Ceylon (p. 262).

Bahram captures Ghazni (p. 95).

Veṅgi comes under the control of Vikramāditya VI (p. 244).

Bhikshāchāra, king of Kāśmīr (p. 100).

Rāmapāla commits suicide (p. 31).

Kalachurī Ratnadeva II (p. 208).

Sussala recovers the throne of Kāśmīr after defeating Bhikshāchāra (p. 100).

Birth of Lakshmanaṇasena, acc. to Minhāj (p. 40).

Sussala of Kāśmīr abdicates in favour of his son Jayasiṁha (p. 100).

Birth of Busava (p. 367).

Death of Kumārapāla, Bengal (p. 32).

Death of Chālukya Vikramāditya VI (p. 177).

Someśvara III, Chālukya (p. 177).

Death of Sussala of Kāśmīr (p. 100).

Jayasiṁha of Kāśmīr (pp. 190-1).

Chandella Madanavarman (p. 53).

Mānasollāsa of Chālukya Someśvara III (p. 352).

Kulottuniga II, Chola (p. 245).

Death of Vikrama Chōla (p. 245).

Hoysala Vishnupūrvaḍhāna performs the Tulāpūruṣa (p. 230).

Death of Rāmaṇuja (p. 438).

Jagadekamalla, Chālukya (p. 178).

Anantavarman, E. Gaṅga, crowns his son Kāmarāva VII (p. 207).

Chālukya Jagadekamalla together with Hoysala Narasiṁha invades Mālava, dethrones Para­mārṣa Jayavarman and places Ballāḷa on the throne (p. 178).

Close of the reign of Chauṭukya Jayasiṁha-Siddhārāja (pp. 53, 76).

Madanapāla, son of Rāmapāla, succeeds Gopāla III (p. 32).
Surya-varman II of Kambuja invades Champâ (p. 745).
Rājarāja II, Chola (p. 245).
Foundation of the Kharataragachchha (p. 432).
Kāmārāja VII, E. Gaṅga (p. 207).
Bhahram reconquers Ghazni (p. 96).
Chaulukya Kumārapāla leads an expedition against Chāhamāna Arjorāja of Śakambhari (p. 77).
Last known date of Chāluṣkya Jagadekaṇalla II (p. 178).
Taila III, Chāluṣkya (p. 178).
Death of Bhahram and accession of his son Khusrav Shāh (p. 96).

Parākramaśāhu I of Ceylon (p. 263).
Paramāṅkuka of Kāshmir (p. 101).
Bijjala, Kālaḥuri (p. 180).
Kalāchuri usurpation of the Deccan (p. 179).
Composition of Bhārata-yuddha by Mpu Sedaḥ (p. 768).
Rāghava, E. Gaṅga (p. 207).

Khusrav Malik succeeds his father Khusrav Shāh (p. 96).
Kalāchuri Jājalla II of Ratanpur (p. 65).
Prataparudrā of Warangal (p. 444).
Accession of Ghiyās-ud-dīn Muhammad (p. 117).
Death of Chāluṣkya Taila III (p. 179).
Rājādhirāja II, Chola (p. 245).
Paramardi, Chandella (p. 122).
Vantardeva of Kāshmir (p. 101).
Kulaśekhara, Pāṇḍya (p. 264).
Bijjala abdicates the throne in favour of his son Someśvara (p. 181).
Chāhamāna Someśvara (p. 194).
Civil war between Parākrama Pāṇḍya and Kulaśekhara Pāṇḍya (p. 245).
Vallālaśena completes Dānaśīgar (p. 37).
Assassination of Narathu of Burma (p. 757).
Jayachandra succeeds his father Vijayachandra (p. 54).
Death of Chāluṣkya Kumārapāla (p. 78).
Rājārāja II, E. Gaṅga (p. 207).
Ghiyās-ud-dīn wrests Ghazni from the Ghuzz (p. 97), and makes his brother Shihāb-ud-dīn (Mu‘izz-ud-dīn) the governor of that province (p. 117).
Hoysala Ballāla II (p. 247).
Mu‘izz-ud-dīn wrests Mūltān and Uch from the Qaramitah chiefs (p. 117).
Accession of Chaulukya Mālarāja II (p. 78).
The Cham king sends a naval expedition against Kambuja (p. 738).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1177</td>
<td>Last known date of (Kalachuri) Somesvara and the earliest known date of his successor Sanjana (p. 181).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. 1177</td>
<td>Death of Chahamana Somesvara (p. 104).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1177</td>
<td>Chahamana Prithviraja III succeeds Somesvara (p. 83).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1178</td>
<td>Accession of Lakshmaçasena (p. 38).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1178</td>
<td>Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad Ghuri attacks Gujarat (pp. 78, 105).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1178</td>
<td>Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad reaches Kiradu and takes possession of Nagol (p. 105) and plunders it (p. 97).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1178</td>
<td>Mu'izz-ud-din repulsed by Mularaja II (p. 109).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1178</td>
<td>Mu'izz-ud-din takes Peshwar (p. 118).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1178-1216</td>
<td>Accession of Chaulukya Bhima II (p. 76).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1178-1216</td>
<td>Kulottunga III, Chola (p. 246).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1180</td>
<td>Accession of (Kalachuri) Ahavamalla (p. 182).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1181-c. 1189</td>
<td>Somesvara IV, Chalukya (p. 182).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1181</td>
<td>Death of Muslim saint Sayyid Ahmad Sultan Sakhi Sarwar (p. 467).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1181</td>
<td>Accession of Jaya-varman VII of Kambuja (p. 738).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1181; 1184; 1186</td>
<td>Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad invades Lahore (p. 97).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1182</td>
<td>Chahamana Prithviraja goes out for digvijaya (p. 107), defeats Paramardi and devastates the Chandella kingdom (p. 108).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. 1182</td>
<td>Kulottunga III dethrones Vira Pandyya (p. 246).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. 1182</td>
<td>Sumra chief acknowledges Mu'izz-ud-din's suzerainty (p. 117).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1183-1184</td>
<td>Siângaça (Kalachuri) acknowledges the supremacy of Chalukya Somesvara IV (p. 182).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1185</td>
<td>Siâlkot falls to Mu'izz-ud-din (p. 118).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1185-1193</td>
<td>Yadava Bhillama (p. 282).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1186</td>
<td>Mu'izz-ud-din overthrowas Khusrav Malik (p. 118).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1186-1187</td>
<td>Vijayabahu II of Ceylon (p. 285).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1187-1196</td>
<td>Kirthinshanka or Nihalkamala of Ceylon (p. 285).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1188-1189</td>
<td>Hoysala Ballala II inflicts a severe defeat upon Bhillama V (p. 186).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1189</td>
<td>Last known date of Chalukya Somesvara IV's supremacy over Bellary and Shimoga Districts (p. 183).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. 1189</td>
<td>Kulottunga III defeats Vira Pandyya who takes refuge in Quilon (p. 246).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1190-1191</td>
<td>First Battle of Tarain (p. 110).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1190-1216</td>
<td>Jañavarma Kulašekhara (p. 256).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1191-1192</td>
<td>Conquests of Hoysala Ballala II (p. 187).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1192</td>
<td>Second battle of Tarain and defeat and death of Prithviraja (p. 112).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1192</td>
<td>Khusrav Malik and his son Bahram were put to death (p. 97).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1192</td>
<td>Introduction of Ceylonese Buddhism in Burma (p. 737).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHRONOLOGY

1192   Anaṅgabhima, E. Ganga (p. 207).
1193   Anasāla Bāllala II declares himself independent ruler of his territories (p. 231).
1194   Last known date of Yādava Bhīllama (p. 187).
1195   Mu'izz-ud-din Muhammad Ghūrī defeats Jaya-chandra near Chandawar (p. 54).
1193   Conquest of Ajmer by Qutb-ud-din (p. 114).
1193   Qutb-ud-din makes Delhi his capital (p. 119).
1193   Ikhtiyār-ud-dīn Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī takes up a soldier's job (p. 122).
1193-1194   Qutb-ud-din occupies Ajmer (p. 79).
1195   Chaulukya Bhīma sends an army to help the Mhers against the Muslims (p. 79).
1195   Mu'izz-ud-dīn returns to annex Bāyāna and Gwalīor (p. 120).
1196   Muslims conquer Gwalīor (p. 56).
1196   Mu'izz-ud-dīn defeats Kunwarpāla (p. 56).
1196   C. 1196   Kulottuṅga III recovers Kāṭchhī from his Telugu-Choṇḍī feudatories (p. 246).
1197   Dhāṛāvārśa suffers defeat at the hands of Qutb-ud-dīn's general Khusrav (p. 73).
1197   Qutb-ud-dīn invades Gujarāt (p. 79) and Yādava Jaitugī comes into conflict with him (p. 188).
1198   Accession of Kākāṭīya Gānapati (p. 206).
1199-1200   'Alā-ud-dīn Khvāraẓm Shāh (p. 117).
1200   Accession of Yādava Śīṅghāṇa (p. 188).
1200   Ikhtiyār-ud-dīn commences raids on the Maga-dha territory (pp. 122-3).
1201   Ghūrīds occupy Khurāsān and conquer Nāshāpūr, but 'Alā-ud-dīn Khvāraẓm recovers Nāshāpūr and other Ghūrid conquests (p. 124).
1202   Qutb-ud-dīn invests Kāḷaḷājrāja (pp. 59, 122).
1202   Death of Ghiyās-ud-dīn and accession of his younger brother Mu'izz-ud-dīn (p. 124).
1202   Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī conquers Nādiya (p. 40).
1202-1203   Hariṇāḷadeva Ranavānēmallā ascends the throne of Pāṭalijērā (p. 41).
1205   Khvāraẓmians defeat Mu'izz-ud-dīn at Andhkhūlī (p. 124).
1205   Last known date of Lakhmananasena (p. 40).
1205   Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī advances for the conquest of Tibet (p. 43).
1205   Kulottuṅga III sends the third expedition against Jātvārmaṇ Kulaśēkhara Pāṇḍīya (p. 246).
1205-1206   Rājarāja III, E. Ganga (p. 207).
1206   Assasination of Mu'izz-ud-dīn (p. 124).
1206   Assasination of Muhammad Bakhtyār Khaljī (p. 124).
1207   War of Champā with the Annamites (p. 739).
1208   Kulottuṅga III despatches an expedition to Andhrā-ḍēśa (p. 246).
1210   Death of Qutb-ud-dīn Aibak (p. 131).
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

1210-11
Accession of Aram Shah (p. 56).

1211
Yadava Singhans launches an expedition against Hoysala Ballala II (p. 188).

1214
‘Ala-ud-din Khvārazm Shah drives out Ghūrīds (p. 117).

1215
The Ahoms start from Maulung under their leader Sukāphā (p. 44).

c. 1215
End of the Ghūrī empire in Ghaznī (p. 125).

1216-1235
Anāṅgabhīma III, E. Gaṅga (p. 207).

1216-1238
Mārasvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya (p. 256).

1216-1246
Rājarāja III, Chōla (pp. 200, 247).

1217
Hoysala Ballala II compels Sundara Pāṇḍya to restore the Chōla country to its rulers (p. 231).

1220
Forces of Kambuja withdraw from Champa (pp. 739, 747).

c. 1220
Death of Hoysala Ballala II (p. 231).

c. 1220-1234
Hoysala Narasimha II (pp. 231, 247).

1222
Angrok defeats Kṛṣṇaṇa and annexes Kādrī (p. 751).

1223-1252
Abhayamalla of Nepal (p. 46).

1226
Malik Nasir-ud-din Muhammad Shah overthrows and kills Bartu of Awadh (p. 55).

1226
Iltutmish conquers Ranthambhor (p. 84).

1226
Ghiyāṣ-ud-din ‘Iwaz, Sultan of Lakhnāwati, makes an abortive attempt to conquer Vāṅga (p. 40).

1227
Ghiyāṣ-ud-din ‘Iwaz makes an abortive attempt to conquer Kāmarūpā (p. 44).

1228
Foundation of Tapāgachhā (p. 433).

1229
Accession of Uktai to the Supreme Mongol Khanate (p. 142).

1229
Iltutmish receives investiture from the Caliph (p. 136).

1229-1278
Kop-Perunjiṅga or Mahārājaśiṁha (p. 248).

1230
Completion of the Neminatha temple at Abu (p. 428).

1231
Hoysala Narasimha II defeats Sundara Pāṇḍya and releases and restores to throne Rājarāja III (p. 231).

1231
Kop-Perunjiṅga defeats Rājarāja at Tellaṛu and imprisons him at Sṛndamāṅgalam (p. 248).

1233
Iltutmish conquers Bhiṣa and plunders Ujjain (p. 71).

1233-1234
Iltutmish plunders Mālava (p. 191).

1234
Yajvapatā Chāhādadeva defeats Malik Nusrat-ud-din Tayasā (p. 57).

1234-1263
Hoysala Somesvara (p. 231).

1236
Death of Iltutmish (p. 135).

1236
Sangrāmadeva succeeds his father Rājadeva of Kashmir (p. 101).

1236-1240
Ruziyra (p. 139).

c. 1236-1271
Parākramabāhu II of Ceylon (p. 267).

1238-1264
Narasimha I, E. Gaṅga (p. 551).
CHRONOLOGY

1240-42  Mu'izz-ud-din Bahram (p. 138).
1242-46  'Ala-ud-din Mas'ud (p. 139).
1243  Accession of Visala (p. 80).
1243  Kop-Perujiinga assumes titles indicative of independent status (p. 248).
1243  Narasinha I, E. Ganga, attacks the Lakhnawati frontier (pp. 144, 208).
1243  Death of Indra-varman II of Kambuja (p. 741).
1246-1265  Sultan Nasir-ud-din Mahmud (p. 140).
1246-1279  Rajendra Chola III (p. 247).
1247  Accession of Yadava Krishna (p. 192).
1248; 1253  Ulugh Khan invests Ranthambhor (p. 85).
1250  Balban invades Malava (p. 71).
1250  Kop-Perujiinga assumes titles indicative of independent status (p. 248).
1251  Balban defeats Yajvapala Chahadadeva (p. 57).
1251-1268  Jatavarmann Sundara Pandyia I (p. 257).
1252  Ramaudeva succeeds his father Saingramadeva of Kashmir (p. 102).
1252-1253  Kop-Perujiinga defeats the Hoysalas at Perambalur (p. 248).
1253  The Ahoms settle at Charaideo (p. 44).
1253  Mongol Emperor Kublai Khan conquers the Thai kingdom of Gandhara (p. 759).
1253-1275  Jatavarmann Vira Pandya (p. 258).
1254  Balban’s expedition against the Katehriyas (p. 147).
1254  Accession of Narasinhapati of Burma (p. 757).
1254-1279  Yajvapala Asalladeva (p. 57).
1255  Jatavarmann Sundara Pandyia reduces Kop-Perujiinga to vassalage (p. 249).
1257  Ikhtiyar-ud-din Yuzbak Tughril Khan invades Kamarupa (p. 44).
1257  Suktimuktavali of Jahlana (p. 306).
1258  Balban conquers Gwalior (p. 57).
1258-1259  Rudramba associated with the government of the Kakhaliyas (p. 202).
1260  Kop-Perujiinga takes possession of Kanchi (p. 202).
1261-1270  Yadava Mahadeva (p. 202).
1262  Pandyia Jatavarmann kills the Hoysala Somesvara near Srirangam (p. 258).
1263  Foundation of the Mahanubhava sect by Chakradhara (p. 353).
1264-1279  Bhannudeva I, E. Ganga (p. 209).
1265  Accession of Balhan (p. 140).
1267  Yadava Sa(m)rankapati rules Panurigala under Kakhaliya Rudramba (p. 192).
1268  Death of Vishnuvardhana of Java (p. 751).
1268-1310  Nararvarman Kulasekara, Pandyia (p. 258).
1271  Kublai Khan sends envoys asking Burma to accept his suzerainty (p. 757).
1271-1273  Vijayabahu IV of Ceylon (p. 267).

877
1273  Brāhmaṇa Lakshmadeva, adopted son of Rāma-
deva of Kāshmir, succeeds the latter (p. 102).
1274  Chaulukya Sāraṅgadeva succeeds Arjuna (p. 81).
1279  Pándya Mārarāvarman Kulasekhara defeats Hoy-
sala Rāmanātha and Chola Rājendra III
(p. 232).
1279-1306  Narasimha II, E. Gaṅga (p. 209).
1279-1307  Anantamalla of Nēkal (p. 47).
1281  Death of Suteupha of the Ahoms and accession
of his son Sabinphā (p. 45).
1281  Mongol Emperor Kublai Khan invites the king
of Java to pay homage (p. 752).
1283  Hammīra of Ranthambhor succeeds his father
Jayasimha (p. 85).
1283  Sultān Balban comes to Sonārgāon and enters
into an agreement with Danuj Rai (p. 42).
1284  Kṛitanagara of Java establishes supremacy over
Bali (p. 751).
1286  Death of Muhammad, Balban’s eldest son (p.
155).
1286  Kajjala, a Muslim, kills Lakshmadeva of Kāsh-
mir (p. 102).
1287  Death of Balban (p. 155).
1287-1289  Sultān Kaṅqubād (p. 156).
1289-1290  Sultān Kayūmars (p. 158).
1289  Hammīrarāvarman succeeds Bhojavarman (p. 69).
1290  Kākatiya Rūdrāvānā associates Prataparūdha
with the government (p. 202).
1290  Fīrūz proclaims his accession as Sultān Jalāl-ud-
dīn Fīrūz (p. 158).
1291  Death of Hoyasala Narasimha III (p. 232).
1291-1296  Yajvapala Gaṇapati (p. 58).
1291-1342  Hoyasala Ballāla III (pp. 232, 260).
1292  Kublai Khan sends a military expedition to
Java (p. 752).
1293  Establishment of the kingdom of Majapahit
(p. 753).
1293  Accession of Sukhāṅgbha of the Ahoms (p. 45).
c. 1293  Venetian traveller Marco Polo visits Motupalli
(p. 202).
1294  ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khalji invades Devagiri (p. 195).
1295-1296  Jaya-varman VIII of Kambuja abdicates in
favour of his son-in-law Śrīndra-varman
(p. 741).
1296  Kublai Khan sends an ambassador to Kambu-
ja (p. 741).
1296  Karnā succeeds Sāraṅgadeva (p. 81).
1296-1316  Sultān ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khalji.
1299  Ulugh Khān and Nusrat Khān defeat Karnā and
capture his queen Kamālādevi (p. 81).
1301  ‘Alā-ud-dīn Khalji captures Ranthambhor after
defeating and killing Hammīra (p. 86).
c. 1302-1310  Parākramabāhu III of Ceylon (p. 267).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1303</td>
<td>Sikandar Khan Ghazi conquers Sylhet (p. 44).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1303</td>
<td>'Ala-ud-din marches into the fort of Chitor (p. 91).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1305</td>
<td>'Ala-ud-din Khalji invades Málava (p. 72).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1305</td>
<td>Hoysala Ballalla leads an army against the Yáda­vas (p. 195).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1307</td>
<td>Death of Jaya Sinha-varman of Champá (p. 748).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1307</td>
<td>'Ala-ud-din Khalji sends Malik-Náib Káfur against Yádav Ramachandra (p. 196).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1308</td>
<td>Abdication of Srinda-varman of Kambuja and accession of Srinda-Jaya-varman (p. 741).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1309</td>
<td>'Ala-ud-din Khalji wrests Damoh District from Hammiravarman or his successor (p. 60).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1309-1310</td>
<td>Malik Káfur invades Warangal (p. 203).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1310-1311</td>
<td>'Ala-ud-din defeats and kills Kanháda and his son Viráma and captures Jalóor and Sánchor (p. 88).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1313</td>
<td>Malik Náib Káfur invades Devagiri and kills Sankaradeva (p. 198).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1314</td>
<td>Chandésvara conquers Nepál for his master Harisíňha and performs Tulápurusha (p. 48).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1324</td>
<td>Traditional date of the conquest of Nepál by Harisíňha (p. 48).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1327</td>
<td>Accession of Jayavarman Parameśvara of Kambuja (p. 741).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1332</td>
<td>Death of Sukhánpála of the Ahoms (p. 45).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1337</td>
<td>Káňhaďadeva of the Devaḍa branch of Cháha­mánas succeeds his father Téjasíňha (p. 89).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1343</td>
<td>Javanese forces rout the king of Bali (p. 754).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1347-1355</td>
<td>Jayárajadeva of Nepál (p. 47).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1350</td>
<td>Death of Námadeva, the poet-saint of Mahá­rásástra (p. 365).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1350</td>
<td>The ruler of the Thai principality of Uton proclaims himself as independent king (p. 761).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1363</td>
<td>Date of composition of Śrímadvárapaddhati (p. 85).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1363-1376</td>
<td>Jayáľunjamalla of Nepál (p. 47).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1471</td>
<td>Annamite Emperor conquers Champá (p. 749).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

A

'Abbasids (Caliph), 1.
'Abd-al-Malik. 6.
'Abd-ur-Rashid, 92.
'Abd-ul-Malik. 6.
'Abdullah Ta'i, 9.
'Abdu-Rahman, 350.
Abhayadeva, 98.
Abhayadeva, 344.
Abhayadeva, 301.
Abhayanda, 108.
Abhayadeva, 89.
Abhayadeva (poet), 301.
Abhayagupta, 418.
Abhayamalla, 46.
Abhayanandi, 319.
Abhidhammattha-samgaha, 342.
Abhidiinachintamani, 318, 387.
Abhilashitiirthachintamani—See Miina-
Abhidnapidipi, 342.
AbhidMnappadipiki, 343.
Abhimiinottun<;a Samanta, 733.
Abhindiinachintama11Ji, 318, 397.
Abhisheka, 406.
Abid Ali, 159.
Abid-al-Harb, 504.
Abigail, 181.
Aboriginal Pural),a, 380.
Abors, 755.
Abraiman, 493.
Abraiman of Lar, 497.
Abu, Mt., 67, 69, 72-73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 81,
AdbhutQsiigara, 38, 40, 330, 334, 338.
Aden, 468.
Adbhisajjara, 38, 40, 330, 334, 338.
Aden, 259.
Adbhal-din-ká-Jhongpüd, 120.
Adbul Fida, 528.
Adbul Fazl, 426.
Adbul Fazl, 494.
Abyssinia(ns), 137.
Acha II, 175, 176, 178.
Achalgarh, 687.
Acharya Jinesvara Suri, 396.
Achita, 336.
Achugi II, 229.
Achya-Nayaka, 194.
Achya-Nayaka, 354, 358.
Acharya Chandrakirti, 764.
Acharya Jnanesvara Suri, 296.
Adi-Buddha, 417.
Aditya (General), 264.
Aditya II, 254.
Adityavarman, 184.
Adityavarman, 362.
Adityavarman, 274-286.
Adityavarman, 274-286.
Adityavarman, 184.
Adityavarman, 274-286.
Adityavarman, 274-286.
Adityavarman, 184.
Adityavarman, 274-286.
Adityavarman, 274-286.
Adityavarman, 184.
INDEX

Adya Marthi Kesaatri, 387, 89(n).
Agha Khan, 468.
Agra, 94, 350.
Agra, 252, 510.
Agriculture, 516.
A History of South India, 469, 8(n).
A History of South India, 89, 90, 91.
Ahavaamalla (Chaulukya), 70, 72, 78, 89.
Ahavaamalla (Poet), 318.
Ahilya (Yaduvaamsi), 55, 56.
Ahjayapala (Yaduvanad), 55, 56.
Ahjayapala, 23.
Ahjayapala, 365.
Ahnika, 332, 334, 486.
Aiken, 77.
Aikat, 77.
Aikat, 279.
Aikat, 279.
Aikat, 279.
Ailah, 279.
Ailah, 279.
Alavi, 279.
Ailm, 279.
Al-Ma'mun, 363.
Allama Prabhu, 367, 370.
Allan, 367.
Allan, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
Albani, 367.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Arya, 303, 305, 346.
Arya Chakravarti, 259.
Aryadesa, 262.
Aryasaptasati, 303.
Arya srutakirti, 320.
Aryavarman (Kadamba), 164.
Aryaivarta, 502.
Aryavarta style, 534.
Arzbadan, 160.
Asa (Bhilla), 75.
Asadhara (Poet), 71, 109, 113, 434.
Asala, 87.
Asalladeva, 57.
Asapalli (Asaval), 75.
Asaraja (Chahamana), 69, 76, 77, 86, 87.
Asata, 98.
Asaucha, 334.
Ashta-dhiitu, 646, 647.
Ashtamahisthiina-chait)Ja-vandanii-stava, 419.
Ashtasiihasrikii Prajniiipiiramitii, 418.
Axe—See Asni.
Asiga, 394, 395.
Asightigin, 9.
Asikii—See Hansi.
Asni, 15, 54, 119, 122.
Asoda, 593.
Asokaiyan, 169.
Asokavalla (or Asokachalla), 426.
Asphotachandra, 54.
Asrmas, 525.
Asras, 531.
Asrava, 346.
Assam, 31, 42-45, 123, 130, 206, 358.
See also KamarUpa.
Assassins, 468.
Ashtiivarana, 368.
Assam tribes, 380.
Astronomy, 328-329, 511.
Atmasiddhi, 437.
Atreya Ramanuja, 439.
Atu, 103.
Atu, 117.
Atula, 308.
Atunagala, 340.
Ayyalar, 476.
Ayyal).a II (Chalukya), 165, 166.
Ayyavole, 525.
Ayyavides, 159, 1(n).
B
Babii Fakhr-ud-din, 469.
Bachcharana—See Vichchaya.
Bii;li, 37.
Bagevaldi, 446.
Bagevadi, 161, 165, 185.
Bagh, 676, 693, 690.
Baghbd, 1, 2, 116, 124.
Baghelkhand, 50, 61, 64.
Baghdad, 81.
Bhadada, 76, 77.
Bahar-see (Chalhamana)—See Vagbhata.
Bahai-ud-din Sarm, 96, 97.
Bahai-ud-din Tugjirl, 56, 120.
Bali-ud-din Ushfi, 504.
Bahlal-ud-din Zokariy, 468.
Bahlkas, 42.

884
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Basawanal, S. S., 388, 104(n).
Bassam, 196.
Basa, M., 359.
Basanghari, 752.
Batisna, 466.
Baudhāś-Dhamma-o-Sahitya, 470, 19(n).
Bashul, 56, 651.
Basduth Stave, 540.
Bhai, 359, 126.
Baysale Ke Nānayya, 181, 182.
Bhaiyā-nāēu, 227.
Bhaiyā-nīrājul, 368.
Bayānā-(Śūpūtha), 55-56, 109, 119, 123, 134, 148.
Bay of Bandon, 737.
Bayon, 770, 771.
Beas, 13, 132, 143, 144, 151, 153.
Beddanna, 377.
Bedwara, 376.
Begmati—See Karatoya.
Bekal, 518.
Bekī (=ka1), thā, 537, 549, 558.
Belagutti, 215.
Belahan, 750.
Belava copper plate, 33.
Belava, 194.
Belgami, 167, 188, 189.
Belgaum, 164, 177, 189, 191, 192, 515.
Belupura, 178.
Belur, 228, 632, 668.
Belvola, 300 161, 165, 166, 172, 175, 191, 192.
Bendall, Cecil, 46, 48, 472, 114(n).
Bengal, Bay of, 251.
Bengali-Assamese, 357.
Bengali, 357-361.
Bengali-Bhūmibol, 356.
Bengali-Bhukti, 354.
Bengali-Pāli, 357.
Bengali, 357.
Bengali-Assamese, 357.
Bengal, 357.
Bengal terracottas, 642.
Benjamin of Tudela, 521, 533.
Bener, 69, 188, 191, 320, 352.
Bera I, 198.
Bebaramatikulam, 226.
Bhadānaka, 106.
Bhadāt, 170, 640.
Bhadāvī (pihō deul), 336, 337.
Bhadāvīlāt, 75.
Bhadra-Rāja, 172, 198.
Bhadrapattana, 217.
Bhadresvara, 80.
Bhadrapāla, 39, 417.
Bhadrapāla—See Āṅgī.
Bhaḍāvāsa, 311, 334, 335, 356, 337.
Bhaḍāvācampaḻi, 313.
Bhaḍāvāca Pūrti, 337, 554, 556, 403, 436.
Bhaḍāvāca, 525, 550.
Bhaḍāvācā, 357.
Bhaḍāvācārī, 313.
Bhaḍāvācārī, 388, 96(n).
Bhaḍāvācārī, 313.
Bhakti, 395, 317, 353, 354, 644, 674, 675.
Bhaktī-ekāpp, 403.
Bhaktā, 133.
Bhaktapura, 46, 48.
Bhaktiśāstra, 304, 385.
Bhakta, 755.
Bhaka, 323.
Bhakta, 323.
Bhakta, 186.
Bhānana, 105.
Bhānaka, 311.
Bhānara, 65.
Bhānak—See Bhaḍrāppattana.
Bhāndāgāra (Bhānjarak), 274, 275, 276.
Bhānora (Bhāṇḍāgāra), 194.
Bhānd Dewal, 574.
Bhāndākār, D. R., 63, 87, 103, 22(n).
Bhāndākār, H. G. 185, 50(n), 197, 1(n), 223, 4(n), 472, 140(n).
Bhānuma, 299.
Bhānuma, 631.
Bhānuma, 258.
Bhāravājī, 332, 387.
Bhāravājī, 50, 53, 135.
Bhārata (King), 394.
Bhārata (Poet), 89, 322, 325.
Bhāratanampātīlālō, 213.
Bhārata-mātārī, 259.
Bhārataśālā, 349.
Bhārataśāstri, 442.
Bhārata-gūḍhā, 678.
Bhāratanārā, 430.
Bhāratanārā-Pattāl-pālā, 393.
Bhāratanārā-Pattāl-pālā, 393, 396.
Bhāratisūkta-Nāgī-sūkta, 88.
Bhārati, 567.
Bhāranti, 56.
Bhārati, 299, 310.
Bhāravā—See Sūkhrāchārya.
Bhārūh, 555, 685.
Bhārūh, 477.
Bhārthinār, 302.
Bhāruri, 56.
Bhārū, 314, 434.
Bhāšā, 347.
Bhāšā—See Māyavālācśinī.
Bhāskara, 43.
Bhāskara-Māyavālācśinī, 377.
INDEX

Bhāskara RVivarpaim, 254.
Bhāskaravaśīvāra, 573.
Bhāṣeri, 267, 229.
Bhāṭārī Śaivaśīvāra, 754.
Bhāṭa, 277.
Bhāṣagoc—See Bhāṣatkūpura.
Bhārāṇḍa, 7, 119, 121, 122, 127, 143, 144, 148.
Bhāventa, 7.
Bhāṭa, 167, 272.
Bhāṭa—Bhāndeva, 34.
Bhēṣṇuputra, 277.
Bhēṣṇavṛtti, 511.
Bhāva, 364, 325, 324, 325.
Bhāskeśana, 346.
Bhāvabhūtu, 459.
Bhāvadeva, 424, 484.
Bhāvadevabhāttā, 331.
Bhāvakar, N. II, 287, 32(n).
Bhāvaprākāśa, 323, 325, 397.
Bhāvamānta, 304.
Bhāvavēṣṭēgīteśa, 346.
Bhāvavīra, 415.
Bhāve, V. L, 85, 87, 89(n).
Bhāyaprakāśa, 323, 325, 397.
Bhāvikastaka, 304.
Bhāvavairīgītastaka, 346.
Bhāvaviveka, 415.
Bhāve, V. L, 387, 85, 87, 90(n).
Bhavnagar Inscriptions, 160, 42(n).
Bhāyarāja, 69, 100, 101.
Bhāyikā, 573, 576.
Bhāyakāhāra, 69, 100, 101.
Bhāyakāsa, 303.
Bhīma (Chilukya), 161.
Bhīma I (Chaulukya), 20, 21, 23, 42, 43, 47, 68, 72, 74, 75, 76, 88, 181, 172, 428, 581.
Bhīma II (Chilukya), 70, 73, 78, 79, 80, 88, 108, 109, 114, 121, 183, 186, 188, 189.
Bhīma (River), 161, 168.
Bhīma (Chilukya), 70, 73, 78, 79, 80, 88, 108, 109, 114, 121, 183, 186, 188, 189.
Bhīma (of Varendri), 29, 30, 47.
Bhīma I (Chaulukya), 70, 73, 78, 79, 80, 88, 108, 109, 114, 121, 183, 186, 188, 189.
Bhīma II (Chaulukya), 70, 73, 78, 79, 80, 88, 108, 109, 114, 121, 183, 186, 188, 189.
Bhīma I (Chaulukya), 20, 21, 23, 42, 43, 47, 68, 72, 74, 75, 76, 88, 171, 172, 428, 581.
Bhīma II (Chaulukya), 73, 78, 79, 80, 88, 108, 109, 114, 121, 183, 186, 188, 189.
Bhīma (River), 161, 168.
Bhīma (of Varendri), 29, 30, 47.
Bhīma I (Chaulukya), 20, 21, 23, 42, 43, 47, 68, 72, 74, 75, 76, 88, 171, 172, 428, 581.
Bhīma II (Chaulukya), 70, 73, 78, 79, 80, 88, 108, 109, 114, 121, 183, 186, 188, 189.
Bhīma (River), 161, 168.
Bhīma (of Varendri), 29, 30, 47.
Bhīma I (Chaulukya), 20, 21, 23, 42, 43, 47, 68, 72, 74, 75, 76, 88, 171, 172, 428, 581.
Bhīma II (Chaulukya), 70, 73, 78, 79, 80, 88, 108, 109, 114, 121, 183, 186, 188, 189.
INDEX

Burges, J., 696, 77, 90, 99(n), 697, 105, 106, 108(n).
Burg—See Burga.
Burmese chronicles, 41.
Burmese painting, 642.
Burlas, 476.
Burmese—See Burya.
Burya, 94.
Bust, 4, 96.
Byzantine, 116.
Cail (Kayal), 480, 495, 520.
Calatu, 521.
Calico prints, 675.
Caliphs (Caliphate), 1, 2, 21, 116, 124, 135.
Cambodia—See Kambuja.
Cantons, 260.
Cape Comorin, 533.
Cape Varella, 749.
Cardamum, 517.
Carmathians (Qaramita), 468.
Caspian, 116.
Caste and Race in India, 505, 26(n).
Catalogue Du fonds Tiblitain de la Bibliotheque Nationale, 470, 26(n).
Celestial Bride', 16.
Central Asia, 116, 117, 125, 130, 132, 135, 667, 677.
Central India, 135, 212, 352, 557.
Central Magadhan (speech), 358.
Ceylon Historical Journal, 267.
Ceylonese, 522.
Chachcha (Paramiira), 73.
Chiichiga (Chiihamiina), 80, 82, 88.
Chadobha—See Dubkund.
Chiijii(ladeva, 57, 135, 146, 159.
Chiijimun<;iariija (Chiihamana), 82.
Chal}.<;iiirjuna, 29.
Chanda war, 54, 55, 119, 121.
Chand Bardai, 105.
of Sákmabhari, 81-93.
of Rasastambhamapura, 83-86.
of Nícul, 86-87.
of Jatishicona (Jiilor), 87-88.
of Satyasura (Sánchó) and Devadá, 88-89.
Administrative Organisation of 277.
Chalér Meqilá, 507, 187(n).
Chahri Beg, 116.
Chaitanya, 337, 403, 675.
Charitás arches, 583, 585, 586.
Charitás window, 558, 610, 654.
Charuta, 784.
Chájá, 581.
Chakrakota, 353, 387.
Chakradhara-Siddhiinta-Sutre, 354.
Chakradurga, 68.
Chalukya Keisava temple, 576.
Chalukyan monuments, 557.
Chalvi, 426.
"Chalukyan" style, 530.
Chamarvájra, 311.
Chamarwájra, 311.
Chambio, 605, 663, 664.
Chambal, 134.
Champa, 98, 650, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 744, 758, 772.
Champánar—(q.v.), 47, 53, 63.
Champlar, 312-313, 375.
Chamunda (of Sesa-desia), 192.
Chamunda (of Vánanatháli), 80.
Chánumardaríja (Chánumáríja), 82.
Chánumardaríja (Cháulúkya), 67, 74, 163, 164.
Chánumardaríjaija (General), 168, 170, 171, 172, 352.
Chánumardaríja (Gupta)—See Dámo-darágupta.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chatapana (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
Chánumaríja (Paramára), 73.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Chandhara (Yayūti), 209, 210, 211.
Changi Jago, 7, 12.
Chandil Kidal, 772.
Chandi Lori Jonggrang, 640.
Chandika, 438.
Chandī-luchā-prāchāśālikā, 304.
Chandi Sewu, 640.
Chandi Singhakuri, 772.
Chānder (Chandrindrītyapura), 185.
Chandekar, 19, 76, 74(n).
Chandpur, 42, 658.
Chanda, 319.
Chāndī Jāgo, 772.
Chāndi Kidal, 772.
Chandi Loro Jonggrang, 640.
Chandikii, 458.
Chandi Cholkuchāpanchīsikii, 302.
Chandi Sewu, 640.
Chandī Singhasari, 772.
Chandrī (Chandriidityapura), 185.
Chandrapur, 42, 658.
Chandra, 319.
Chandra (Gaha9aviila), 53.
Chánda (Riśtrakīita), 50.
Chandrabhanu, 267.
Chandrabhanu (Sailendra), 734, 735.
Chandra-bhayasingha-varma-deva, 753.
Chandrachūjima71,i-Sataka, 367.
Chandradeva (of Kanauj), 51, 52, 64, 95.
Chandradeva (of Anga), 32.
Chandradevi, 40.
Chandradeva, 216, 217, 219, 220.
Chandragachchha, 345.
Chandragupta Maurya, 315, 493.
Chanda Riii, 15, 16.
Chandrakulinagachchha, 344.
Chandralekhii, 174, 176.
Chandriiloka, 324.
Chandrapil Bhir, 15.
Chandra PaJ:l.9itadeva, 429.
Chandrapmbha-charita, 345.
Chandraprabhamahattara, 344.
Chandrariija, 109, 367.
Chandras (vamsa), 24, 33, 43.
Chandrasekhara, 664.
Chandravatī, 72, 79, 119, 344, 660.
Chandrehe, 573.
Chal9ugideva, 182.
Chandwar, 135.
Chandwir, 350.
Changadeva, 191.
Changalvas, 181, 228.
Changaniic;l, 431.
Chankot, 46.
Channabasava, 367, 368, 446.
ChannabasavapuriiT}Q, 180.
Channagiri, 169.
Chippas, 477.
Chippotkatas, 309.
Charaideo, 44.
Charaka, 245, 328.
Charkh, 3.
Chirucharyii, 305.
Charairongba, 383.
CharJliipadas. 358, 359, 360, 361.
Chattula-griha, 639.
Chaturbhuj (Temple), 966, 573.
Chaturangakūti, 546.
Chaturase, 531.
Chaturstūriyati, 531.
Chaturbhāṣā, 311.
Chattumukha, 637.
Chaturvimsati (Chaturvims- tikii), 304.
Chauhari, 582.
Chaucer, 376.
Chaudasilampur, 625.
Chaudilas, 651, 652.
Chauhans—See Chilahamānas.
Chau Ju-Kuz, 485, 494, 507, 517, 525, 519, 520, 529, 532, 529, 725, 723, 750, 754.
Chauhukyas, 20, 42, 50, 53, 59, 63, 64.
Chau Jāgo, 772.
Chaukāsakā, 637, 638.
Chaukātii, 192.
Chaukātii Yogini, 575.
Chaukātii Yogini temple at Khajuraho, 575.
Chaukātii Yogini temple at Mitauli, 575.
Chaturangasaktiñāli, 302.
Chaturvedihārāvanī, 277.
Chauvarasana, 166.
Chauvānnes, M., 470 (n).
Chāvunḍa II, 180, 181, 182.
Chāvunḍatasra, 194.
Chordi(s), 58, 59, 61, 64, 180, 274.
Chennā, 13, 124, 123, 127, 141.
Chetchaol Kumpīna, 383.
Chenchiaj, P., 373, 388, 117(n).
Chenna Kīśānā, 632.
Chennamālikarūpa, 369.
Chen-t$i-n, 278.
Chera(a)(n), 166, 180, 181, 197, 228, 229.
Cherraj, 319, 225, 226, 238, 239, 523, 525.
Cherraj, 225, 742, 761, 770.
Chhekkamavarmā, 349.
Chhindakā, 349, 350.
Chhindakōkhi, 336.
Chhindavāda, 326, 327, 397.
Chhindorāchī, 343.
Chhāpad, 343, 344.
Chhātpur, 39.
Chhāyā-nākaka, 312.
Chhindaka-Chola, 213.
Chhindaka-Nāgas, 210, 214-218, 219, 220.
Chidadharāma, 238, 245, 249, 256, 258, 443, 670.
Chidadharmaratha Muduliār, T. K., 363.
Chhātānīmitra, 328.
Chhātānīmaitryāprakāra, 328.
Chhātkadeva, 194.
Chhōlādarmā, 19.
Chōkātii—See Chhōkātii.
INDEX

China(ese), 1, 53, 117, 142, 250, 258, 260, 267, 520, 521, 522, 667, 690, 736, 741, 744, 747, 748.
China Sea, 739.
Chin dialects, 381.
Chindwin, 755.
Chinese pilgrims, 421.
Chingiz Khan, 132, 159, 503.
Chingleput, 201, 203, 242, 249, 614.
Chin-kiang fu, 522.
Chintamañi Bhatta, 315.
Chintamani Parsvanatha, 429.
Chirakkal, 166.
Chishtis, 468.
Chishtiya, 469.
Chit, 336.
Chitaldroog, 163, 172, 182, 183, 192, 194, 195, 228.
Chitapur, 168.
Chitor, 66, 76, 90, 91, 92, 103, 641, 660, 661, 687.
See also Chitrakuta.
Chitragupta (temple), 567.
Chhakara, 656.
Chitrakuta, 85, 90.
See also Chitor.
Chitral, 473.
Cholamalacchialam, 252, 259.
Chola (Rajaraja), 730.
Choisesvara, 617.
Chotanagpur, 605, 606.
Chou-k'u-fei, 493, 520.
Chronicles (Pali), 340.
Chronicles of the Pathan Kings of Delhi, 159, 12(n).
Chu’a, 100.
Chii-fan-chi, 506.
Chulavamsa, 267, 268, 340, 734.
Chulikapakki, 347.
Chunir, 146.
Circular shrine, 618.
Circular Yogini temple, 575.
Cloves, 522.
Codrington, H. W., 268, 12(n).
Coelho, W., 233, 4(n).
Colombo, 63, 229.
Coins and Metrology of the Sultans of Delhi, 159, 12(n).
Colera, 255, 4(n), 286, 100(n), 471, 100(n).
Coloroom, 231.
Colong incription, 37.
Combats of dogs, 491.
Comedies, Court, 310-311.
Commentaries, 342.
Comilla District, 283.
Comparative Tables of Muhammadan and Christian dates, 166, 44(n).
Concepts of Buddhism, 409, 13(n).
Conjeeveram—See Kafic)
Cooch-Behar, 44.
Coomaraswamy (A. K.), 576, 584, 609, 641, 665, 672, 673, 692, 698, 151, 152(n) etc.
Coorg, 181, 224.
Cordier, P., 470 26(n), 36 etc., 471, 100(n), 472, 115(n).
Coromandel (coast), 251, 319.
Cotton, 517.
Cousens, H., 383, 584, 585, 696, 68, 89(n), etc., 697, 197, 199(n) etc.; 689, 196, 197(n), etc.
Cranmore, 536.
Crusaders, 116.
Cuddalore, 231, 249.
Cuddapah, 167, 177, 179, 201, 202, 203, 220, 223, 258.
Cultural Heritage of India, 472, 138(n).
Cunningham, A., 16, 15, 55, 57, 62, 159, 7(n), 160, 46(n).
Cuttack, 212, 650, 651.

D
Dalhousie, 70, 662.
Dalrymple (varman), 60.
Darca, 40, 42, 650.
Dadagaram, 445.
Dadäravna, 295.
Dhul, 675.
Dhala (mandala), 52, 60, 61, 63, 64, 76, 177, 179, 194, 211, 213.
Daimanies 15.
Dak, 388, 162a(n).
Dakhan, 600, 602.
Dakhatrese (temple), 605.
Dakhistan, 413.
Dakkha Bhilasvarna, 605, 44a(n).
Dakshina-deha, 392.
Dakshinapatha, 25.
Dakshinatya, 42.
Daluya—See Dalaucha.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Dëmsras, 97, 99, 100.
Damarntti, 299.
Daniëteriya, 267.
Dambal, 624.
Dambaramanirá (Paramára), 73.
Dornila—See Tamil.
Dâmudara (Chief), 201.
Dâmudara (Deva), 42.
Dâmudaranvápntta, 46, 305.
Dâmudara (Poet), 354, 387.
Dânob, 63, 336.
Danyuk, 124, 130.
Dâsa, 249, 332.
Dânsirnâva, 203.
Dânsiyâ ama, 37, 334, 338.
Dânsiyâla, 416.
Dânâ-la-lîjîfâns, 423.
Dâmodara (Chief), 201.
Dâmodara (Deva), 42.
Dâmodaragupta, 49, 305.
Dâmodara (Poet), 354, 387.
Dâmodara (Poet), 354, 387.
Dâmodara (Poet), 354, 387.
Dâmodara (Poet), 354, 387.
Dâmodara (Poet), 354, 387.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
Dânûjâma-dhâvála, 429.
INDEX

Epics, 356, 508.
Extraphora Indo-Mesopotamica, 160, 175, 508.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
Era, 198.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Gaṅgārāja, 175, 239.
Gaṅgas, 30, 31, 32, 33, 161, 162, 180, 181.
182, 200, 204, 212, 213, 239, 236, 265.
281, 263, 265, 266, 267, 325.
The Eastern, 205-209.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāvāca (pacăla), 166, 169, 170, 172, 175.
178, 183, 226, 227, 228, 234, 255.
244, 245.
Gaṅgāvatāra relief, 682.
Gaṅga- Yamuna, 604.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 223.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 263.
Gaṅgāvāca (pacăla), 166, 169, 170, 172, 175.
178, 183, 226, 227, 228, 234, 255.
244, 245.
Gaṅgāvāca (pacăla), 166, 169, 170, 172, 175.
178, 183, 226, 227, 228, 234, 255.
244, 245.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāvāca (pacăla), 166, 169, 170, 172, 175.
178, 183, 226, 227, 228, 234, 255.
244, 245.
Gaṅgāvāca (pacăla), 166, 169, 170, 172, 175.
178, 183, 226, 227, 228, 234, 255.
244, 245.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gangavacali (pacali), 166, 169, 170, 172, 175.
178, 183, 226, 227, 228, 234, 255.
244, 245.
Gaṅgāvāca (pacăla), 166, 169, 170, 172, 175.
178, 183, 226, 227, 228, 234, 255.
244, 245.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāsahasi, 57.
Gaṅgāstāta, 328.
Gaنتشر

Ghaznavids, 1-23, 26, 58, 61, 95, 116.
117, 118, 903.
Ghaznavi, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15.
16, 18, 19, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, 51, 56, 58.
67, 74, 75, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87.
90, 109, 111, 113, 117, 118, 119, 121.
122, 124, 125, 130, 131, 132.
Ghatacā, A. M., 386, 39(n).
Ghiz-yū ud-dīn—See Sham ud-dīn
Muhammad.
Ghiz-yū ud-dīn Iwaar, 40, 44, 267.
Ghiz-yū ud-dīn Tughluq, 48, 82, 203.
Ghor, 159.
Ghoshal, U. N., 281, 8(n), 283, 8(n), 286.
5(n).
Ghughula, 60.
117-118, 119, 120, 124-125, 130, 139.
Ghumli, 567, 586, 555.
Ghūrī, 564.
Ghurye, G. S., 505, 26(n).
Gīrīsūrti, 205.
Gīn, 517.
Giri, 53.
Girija-Kalipāna, 370.
Gītā—See Gītāstātaka.
Gīrīm, 394, 518, 662.
Gītāpatha, 40, 302, 309, 337, 360, 436.
648.
Gītā, 437.
Gītāsthāna-graha, 437.
Gīyapūra, 158.
Gīl-dār-mā, 419.
The Glory that was Gūjārādese, 396, 39(n).
Goo, 75, 78, 162, 167, 175, 177, 178, 181.
182, 183, 185, 186, 189, 191, 192.
Gōddāvā, 58, 163, 177, 178, 199.
201, 203, 206, 207, 215, 249.
Gōl, P. K., 300, 325, 385, 32(n).
Gōtāra, 60.
Gōdhrā (Gōdhrā), 349.
Gōlārava (choda), 65, 199.
Gōkula-deva, 44.
Gōls, 329.
Gōmāl, 117.
Gōndāvārā, 603.
Gōnanda, 349.
Gōndā, 50, 52.
Gōnēl, 378, 380.
Gōrī, 477.
Gōrjīya (Chaulukya), 74.
Gōnti, L, 174.
11, 182.
Gōnti, 172, 198.
Gōoty, 190, 196.
Gōn, 583.
Gōpālī—See Gāwīlar.
Gōpālā (of Aṣamā), 42.
Gōpālā (Kachchhpadhātā), 57, 58, 60.
Gōpālā (Pāla), 35.
Gōpālā (Pātra), 50, 51.
Gōpālā (Vassal), 58, 60.
Gōpālā (writer), 270, 284, 286.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gopala III, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gopala (III?), 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gopala-Krisnala, 442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gopalpur, 424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gop class, 588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GopIs, 403, 435, 436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gop type, 586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gopuram, 533, 610, 614, 616, 619, 622, 670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gora, 355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorad, 593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goraksha-gitii, 386, 73(n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorkhali, 381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorakh-Bodh, 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorakh-nath, 352, 353, 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goravadevarasa, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govardhana (poet), 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govardhana, 32, 34, 331, 436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gove-See Goa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindachandra (of Kanauj), 30, 37, 49, 52, 53, 54, 59, 62, 65, 95, 101, 276, 311, 332, 333, 348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindachandra (of Vangala), 25, 32, 33, 328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindachandra-vihara, 427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindapala, 33, 37, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindaraja (Chahamana), 84, 114, 134, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindaraja II (Chahamana), 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindaraja (commentator), 287, 295, 331, 332, 334, 335, 338, 340, 343, 346-347, 511, 512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindaraja (Governor), 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindarasa, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govindava-davat (-vadi), 173, 183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grousa, See Gooty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guvaladeva, 355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guvala II, 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guvaladeva II, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guvalakota, 779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guwai, 18, 36, 37, 60, 66, 85, 169, 192, 193, 131, 134, 153, 144, 146, 147, 159, 535, 656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guvalor Namah, 159, 16(n)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H**

| Habib, M., 103, 27(n) |
| Haidara, 102 |
| Habibullah, A. B. M., 159, 10(n), 169, 50(n) |
| Haidari, 162, 192 |
| Habib, 665 |
| Haidaramoot, 522 |
| Haidri, 564 |
| Haidarshah, 21 |
| Haiz, W., 25, 7(n), 160, 44(n) |
| Haihayas, 104, 167, 169, 171, 205, 656, 659 |
| Haijik, 368 |
| Hetmangkaran, 259 |

"Hāṭhār Bachhārēr Purāṇa Bāṇeḥa "Bhāṣāya Bāṇḍhā Cān O Dōhā"" 

Hāṭāb Tughātūgīn, 25
INDEX

Hinayāna, 405, 413.
Hinjayā—See Brāhmaputra (Chāhamāṇa).
Hirāla, 218, 224, 31(n), 53; 225, 36(n), 44(n).
Hirman Musht, 159, 16(n).
Hirṣa, 169.
Hirḥ and Rockhill, 506, 87(n).
Hisat-ud-din ‘Iwāz Khalji, 133, 151.
Hisar, 82, 93, 109.
Historical Poems, 306-309.
History of Buddhism in Bengal (in Bengali), 469, 17(n).
(A) History of Ceylon, 297, 3(n).
(The Early) History of Ceylon, 268, 12(n).
History of Kanauj, 285, 37(n).
History of the Mediaeval School of Indian Logic, 470, 22(n).
History of the Mongols, 159, 10(n).
History of the Paranu’ira Dynasty, 102, 11(n), 103, 28(n).
History of Rajputana, 103, 27(n).
(A) History of South India, 233, 4(n), 255, 5a(n).
Hitavādins, 524.
Hitopadesa, 316.
Hiuen Tsang, 33.
Hitro, 378.
Hodivala, S. H, 23, 5(n).
Hoffmann, J. 380.
Hoisington, H. R. 367.
Ho-kien fu, 522.
Hollaviir, 215.
Hormuz, 521, 524.
Hosagunda, 196.
Hosangābd, 70, 71.
Hostet, 167.
Howroph, 519, 524.
Hussain Ambar, 388.
Hutton, 280.
Hulakki Bhāskara, 377.
Huligere, 187, 188, 191.
Hulla, 436.
Hulluri, 177.
Humphrey, 380.
Hussain Alvi, 96.
Ibrahim, 96.
Ibrahim Alvi, 96.
Ichchhā-sakti, 456.
Iśā (left hand), 477.
Iśār, 687.
Iśāmān, 165.
Irish, 403, 497, 517, 520, 529.
Iṣa, 449.
Ishāmgu, 310.
Ishāvar-ud-din, Aitgilin, 137, 138, 139.
Ishāvar-ud-din Muhammad Bakhtyār Khalīl, 122-124, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 382.
Ishāvar-ud-din Yuzbak Tughril Khān, 42, 44.
Ismā'il, 473, 147(n), 507, 189(n).
Istawāsm, 266.
Ith Khas, 2, 8, 116.
Ithamandal—See Ceylon.
Ithamandal-ism, 731.
Harihara, 59, 731.
Ithiram, 59, 731.
Ithurim, 149.
Ithutnam, 50, 55, 57, 60, 71, 73, 80, 84, 88, 90, 130-136, 137, 139-140, 141, 144, 146, 147, 148, 149, 152, 155, 158, 160, 161, 189, 503, 504.
Itham-ad-din Ralbān, 140, 142, 143, 160.
India and China, 470, 48(n).
India in the Fifteenth Century, 329, 71-72.
Indian Architecture, 665, 33(n).
Indian Influences on the Literature of Java and Bali, 472, 110(n).
Indian Pandits in the Land of Snow, 470, 39(n).
Indian Philosophy, 473, 144(n).
Indian Teachers of Buddhist Universities, 470, 24(n).
India's Contribution to Arabic Literature, 507, 186(n).
India-Aryan and Hindu, 397, 11(n).
India-China, 739.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Indo-Javanese literature, 767.
Indo-Mongoloids, 378.
Indore, 656, 658.
Indra (pantheon), 271, 300, 309, 315.
Indra (Thakuri), 46.
Indrakshara, 69.
Indramahal, 434.
Indrapala, 43.
Indrasthini, 52, 310.
Indravarman, XI, 747.
Indumati, 768.
Indus, 130, 132.
Influence of Islam on Indian Culture, 4721
Ingalaguppe (-kupe), 186.
Ingleeshwar-Bagevadi, 367.
Inghulesvara-bali, 432.
Inscriptions of Bengal, 469, 49(n).
Inscriptions at Sravana Belgola, 472, 135(n).
Inshii, 504.
Introduction to Tantric Buddhism, 469, 12(n).
Iramadeva, 176.
Iran, 143, 678.
Iranians, 469.
Iraq, 15, 92, 143, 260, 520.
Iraitapdii, 234, 235, 237, 238, 251.
Irawadi, 772.
Irechchayan, 170.
Iron, 522.
Iron-beams, 519.
Iron in Ancient India, 528, 49(n).
Iron-pillar at Dhar, 519.
Jagaiyan, 169, 170.
Irungo Vel, 226.
Irungulachoaa, 178.
Irungula-Cho~a II, 194.
Irupavirupadu, 450.
Isami, 160.
Ittani, 445.
Jagadamba, 44.
Ish-hax, 3.
Jahta-langa, 449.
Islam, 1, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 12, 13, 17, 18 22, 111, 112, 116, 149, 299, 307, 540, 645.
Islamic Culture, 105, 12(n).
Ismaili, 5, 8, 10, 125.
Ismililiva, 468.
Istori, 336, 337.
Istavanbhatta, 437.
Istava-bhupa, 182.
Istavarghosa, 26, 44.
Istavansiddhi, 437.
Itham dii Athtahasika, 386, 67(n).
Ittagi, 627, 696.
Izz-ul-daulah 'Abd-ur-Rashid, 94.
J
Jaháli-pura—See Jélor.
Jahalgur, 60, 61, 63, 194, 575, 650.
Jahnottabott—See Jadhawalat.
Jafna, 297.
Jagaddala Soma Niyakza, 191.
Jagaddala, 416, 417, 511.
Jagadeeva (Kalachuri), 65.
Jagadeva (Minister), 108.
Jagadeva (Paramara), 68, 69, 75, 175, 228, 350.
Jagadeva (Sántara), 178, 179, 180, 183, 199.
Jagadekabhüban—See Dharavarsya.
Jagadekabhüban Narasimha, 218.
Jagadekamalla (Chalukya), 70, 167, 182, 237, 238.
Jagadekamalla II, 178, 179.
Jagadekamalla Jayasimha III, 424.
Jagadekamalla Pratapachakravartin, 329.
Jagadeva, 101.
Jagad, 355.
Jagadgiriya (Jagataiyaya), 264.
Jagama Hubta, 192.
Jagamahesa, 526, 537, 539, 540, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 552, 553, 554, 555.
Jagannatha, 440, 551, 654.
Jagannatha-kshetra, 441.
Jagannatha temple, 207.
Jagapkäla, 65.
Jagat, 357.
Jagadechandra Sori, 433.
Jagatipäla, 261.
Jagadgurur, 214, 215, 216.
Jaida, 194.
Jaini, 320, 460.
Jain Ardhamagadhi, 434.
Jain Aithihyak Gârja Kânya Samachay, 397, 23(n).
Jainendra, 319, 320.
Jain Mahârâstra and other Prakrits, 344-347.
Jain Mahâvira, 577.
Jain temple-complexes at Dîlârâ, 580.
Jain temple at Girâr, 581.
Jain temple at Lakkundi, 625.
Jain temple of Meguti, 354.
Jain temples of Mount Abu, 579.
Jainitas, 383.
Jain Writers, 379.
Jaisaí, 85, 114.
Jajpur, 75, 83, 84, 85, 576, 651, 652, 660.
Jajpiuri, 389.
Jaisalmer, 19, 326, 327, 350.
Jaisalnatha Mahâdeva, 393.
Jâta (Paramara), 105.
Jâsaí, 349.
Jaiânapîla, 55.
Jaiânapalla—See Jaitugjadiwa.
Jaiârâpa—See Jaitugidiwa.
Jaitrasimha, 85.
Jaitrasimha, 492.
Jaitrasimha (Châhamâna), 71, 85.
Jaitrasimha (Guhila), 81, 89, 90.
INDEX

Jaitrasinha (General), 185, 186.
Jaitru Singh, 159.
Jaitugi (Governor), 193.
Jaitugi (Yadava), 70, 79, 81, 187-188, 200, 223.
Jaitugideva (Paramara), 71, 90, 435.
Jajalla, 319.
Jajalla II, 65.
Jajalladeva (of Ranga), 189.
Jajakirti, 326, 327, 346.
Jajapellas—See Yajvapalas.
Jajnagar, 141.
Jajpur, 83, 212.
Jakabba, 164.
Jalal-ud-din Firiiz, 158.
Jalal-ud-din Khalji, 72, 84, 86.
Jalal-ud-din Mahmud, 97.
Jalal-ud-din Mangburani, 132, 133, 159.
Jalal-ud-din Mas'ud, 143.
Jalal-ud-din Yaqut, 137, 138.
Jalandhar(a), 94, 97, 467.
Jalpur, 83, 87-88, 89, 90, 103, 134, 147.
Jalna, 218.
Jalna, 73, 80, 82, 83, 87-88, 89, 90, 103, 134, 147.
Jalna, 218.
Jalpaiguri, 44.
Jambeli, 197, 3(n), 213, 218.
Janamajya Mahabhagavata I, 209.
Jannarai, 171.
Jangala-desa, 108.
Jangamas, 357.
Jangha, 538, 557.
Janka, 13.
Janki, 13.
Janyani-siltra, 457.
Jaspita, 49.
Janta, 371.
Jarka, 371.
Jasraceshvara, 768.
Jasraceshvara, 768.
Jayabahu, 261, 262.
Jayadevashala, 46.
Jayadevamalla, 46.
Jayadevamalla, 46.
Jayaditya, 335.
Jaya-Hari-varman, 737.
Jayakama (of Nepal), 45.
JayakarD-a, 177.
Jayakatvanga, 752, 753.
Jayakirti, 326, 327, 346.
Jayakarma, 177.
Jayakayang, 732, 733.
Jayadeesin (Kadambar), 75, 172, 175.
Jayadeesin II, 176, 178, 229.
Jayadeesin III, 183, 185, 189.
Jayakriti, 326, 327, 346.
Jayakesin, 201, 202.
Jayakesin II, 185, 202.
Jayakesin III, 183, 185, 189.
Jayakriti, 326, 327, 346.
Jayakriti, 326, 327, 346.
Jayambalas-See Yajvapalas.
Jayamangala, 330.
Jayamandala, 420.
Jayaramchala, 198.
Jayarastra, 48-49, 84.
Jayasena, 49.
Jayasimha (Chhindaka), 218.
Jayasimha (Guhila)—See Jaitrasimha.
Jayasimha (Kalehuri of Chedi), 189, 274.
Jayasimha (of Karnata), 36.
Jayasirilha (Guhila)-See Jaitrasirilha.
Jayasirilha (Kalachuri of Chedi), 180, 274.
Jayasirilha (of Karkota), 36.
Jayasirilha (of Malava), 67, 68, 85, 172, 204.
Jayasirilha (Sisodiya), 91.
Jayasirilha (of Tripura), 64.
Jayasirilha (Usurper), 79.
Jayasirilha, 435.
Jayasirilha II, 429.
Jayasirilha II (Chalukya), 61, 63, 66, 82, 96, 103, 166-167, 169, 170, 172, 173, 174, 176.
Jayasirilha II (Paramara), 71, 103, 173, 193.
Jayasirilha-Siddharaja, 53, 59, 63, 69, 70, 74, 75, 77, 107, 176, 329, 345, 443.
Jayasirilha II (Chaulukya), 434.
Jayasirilha-varman II, 743.
Jayasirilha-varman IV, 748.
Jayatasiha (Chahamiina), 87.
Jayatirtha, 442.
Jayavarman (Chandella), 58, 59.
Jayavarman (Paramara), 70, 71, 76, 178.
Jayavarman II (Paramara), 71, 103.
Jayavarman V, 736.
Jayavarman VI, 736, 737, 763.
Jayavarman VII, 738, 739, 740, 741, 762, 763, 764.
Jayavarman VIII, 741.
Jayavarman-Parameva, 741.
Jayendra, 419.
Jayendra-vihara, 419.
Jayagaur—See Jayapura.
Jayabhukti-rukamala), 59.
Jayabhukti, 564.
Jesu, 406.
Jesu—See Jaiyapura (Guhila).
Jesu, 92.
Jeta, 417.
Jeta, 417.
Jeevar, 422.
Jeeva, 530.
Jeevendu, 520.
Jeeva, 466.
Jeeva, 194.
Jeevabart, 68.
Jeevar, 577.
Jeevabart, 577.
Jeevan, 346, 347.
Jeevan, 145.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanka (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Guhila), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
Jeevanadeva, 434.
Jeevan, 349.
Jeevanadadeva, 434.
Jeevani, 58, 59, 134, 135, 146, 159, 658.
Jeevanadadeva (Orissa), 418.
Jeevan Rai, 120.
Jeevan, 132, 124, 133.
INDEX

Kachari (Dimasa), 380.
Kachchepa (Kachchhipha), 18, 56-58, 109, 477.
Kachchhavah, 104, 105, 106, 108.
Kadamba-kula, 471, 96(n).
Kadambalige, 100, 163, 165, 167, 195.
Kadambavasa, 104, 105, 106, 108.
Kadvar, 586.
Kafiristan, 18.
Kailasa, 570.
Kali Age, 474, 508.
Kaliikunda (general), 167, 168.
Kaliikunda (poet), 399, 344, 396, 434.
Kallar, 174, 183, 226.
Kalasvar pakulakam, 348.
Kaliyogavati, 44, 379.
Kalindi, 32, 32, 37.
Kalipas, 624, 625.
Kaltiesvara, 624, 625.
Kamalabhava, 372.
Kamaladevi (Kowladevi), 81.
Kamal-ul-Daulah Shirzad, 95.
Kamandaka, 46.
Kamayun, 426.
Kamal-ul-Imrahal Shurrad, 95.
Kāmāra, 272, 272.
Kāmāra, 272, 272.
Kānadhāti, 479, 653.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Kamaṭṭha, 330.
Kanāṭa, 45.
Kamban, 265, 362, 363.
Kambha fūpas, 362, 363.
Kambha, 526.
Kambaja, 24, 362, 363.
Kambu, 264, 266, 736, 743, 745, 746, 747, 758, 761, 764, 765.
Kambojā, 708.
Kampaharesvara, 579.
Kanaka, 150.
Kampili, 167, 168, 173.
Kiimpilya-Mahavihiira, 424.
Kampanas, 279.
Kampil, 150.
Kampili, 167, 168, 173.
Kiimpilya-Mahavihiira, 424.
Kampanas, 279.
Kamriid-See Kanarupa.
Kamsa, 300.
Kanaibarshi, 44.
Kanakanandideva, 430.
Kanakasena Vadiriija, 301.
Kanama, 179.
Kanara, 229.
Kanarese Literature, 388(n), 108.
Kanas, 222.
Kanauj, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 50-55, 56, 77, 69, 63, 55, 105, 107, 109, 119, 121, 135, 147, 172, 194, 244, 298, 311, 322, 333.
Kānchanaideva, 82, 83.
Kānda, 98.
Kāṭajā, 332, 334.
Kandahar, 102.
Kandahat-See Kāthakot.
Kandai:pa, 99.
Kandarya Mahadeo, 489, 561, 564, 565, 568, 569, 570, 572.
Kandisāyī, 65.
Kārdī, 378.
Kante, F. V., 284, 1(n), 285, 1(n), 294, 6(n), 333, 334, 384, 4(n), 385, 37, 38, 40(n) etc., 386, 67(n).
Kārānakas, 431.
Kānρ, 61, 62, 68, 102, 333, 663, 664.
Kesha, 949, 363.
Kāndhadeva (Chāhamāna), 88, 89, 91.
Kānchhara II (Kānchhara), 218.
Kānho Pāṭuk, 387, 91(n).
Kohargur, 60.
Kāthā sharman, 38.
Kāšmāda (Kāñchhā), 35, 36, 74, 215, 219, 222, 228, 278, 379, 290, 293, 318, 327, 623.
Kāmbada (Poetry), 362.
Kāmbada language, 367.
Kāmbada literature, 367.
Kāmman, 179.
Kānnaradeva, 194.
Kānnagali, 175.
Kānoka, 395.
Kānpur, 15, 32.
Kānnas, 436.
Kāntalai, 282.
Kāntara, 65.
Kānthakot, 20, 21, 23, 74.
Kāntipura, 99.
Kāntiraja (Lobhara), 99.
Kāpurā-gūpta, 432.
Kānva Sakkhā, 334.
Kān̐yakumāri, 330.
Kānyakushta-See Kānua.
Kāparakundalā, 459.
Kāparikās, 403.
Kāparikāsudāvīpa, 172.
Kāparil, 226.
Kāparilavāstu, 421.
Kāpaddi, 446.
Kārād (Kārahātaka), 176, 180.
Kārādikai, 173.
Kārād-Chāmunāri, 459.
Kārā-Manukpur, 413, 414, 147, 193, 208.
Kārānawali-Shāh, 329.
Kārēsā, 279.
Kārā Dāhāriyā, 562.
Kārās, 218.
Kārātāyā, 45, 145.
Kārahi, 184.
Kārikā, 322, 324, 325.
Kārak, 430.
Kārarālahshel, 198, 219, 230.
Kārti[Z]agā, 190.
Kārtarālagirī, 83.
Kārakā (Rāsthra[kupā], 161, 162.
Kārīkota, 308.
Kārīmaprasyā, 346, 433.
Kārman, 346.
Kārman, 1.
Kārmanālī, 123.
Kārīmaprasyā, 331.
Kārmane, 109.
Kāripikā, 427.
Kārmapadātānāpadātā-See Pātri-
apaṭā.
Kārma (Chaudhurya), 68, 69, 75, 81, 82, 86, 173, 176, 310, 320.
Kārma (Guhilā), 89, 91.
Kārma (Kalacārta), 27, 34, 36, 51, 58, 62, 63, 64, 67, 75, 94, 102, 122, 205, 274.
Kārma (Bhuvana), 185, 191.
Kārma (Vāghela), 195.
Kārmanā, 101.
Kārmanādi, 31, 205, 206, 212.
Kārnapāla (Guhila), 91.
Kāramāyā, 372.
Kārmanāvadi, 316.
Kārmanāta[spinā], 29, 35, 47-48, 53, 75, 163, 169, 171, 201, 211, 225, 258, 670.
Kārmēntaka Bhāsā Bhāgā, 371.
Kārpi[spinā]-chāna, 311.
Kārpi[spinā]devi, 104.
Kārra, 421.
Kārttavīrya I, 164.
Kārttavīrya III, 190.
Kārttavīrya IV, 189.
Kārttikēyā, 549, 652.
INDEX

Karugodu (Kurugodu), 194.
Karnā, 405, 406, 407, 408, 411.
Karnākara (Taoismāna), 205, 243.
Kēswā, 321.
Kārangīntaka, 124.
Kāsandara, 97, 106.
Kashf al-Me'kāb, 467.
Kāshī Khān, 140.
Kāshmir Śālīvām, 442.
Kāśmīrī shrines, 576.
Kāśmīrī śāk First, 524.
Kāsmīr, 140.
Kāśmīrinām, 467.
Kāśmīrī śākṣītā, 646.
Kāśmīrī śūtris, 584, 585, 633.
Kāśmīrī śūtrivivāra (at Lakkūrd), 626, 627.
Kāśmīrī śūtrivivāra (at Lakkūrd), 626, 627.
Kāsapa, 341.
Kāśapa, 319, 335.
Kāśapa, 64, 66.
Kāśā, 319, 335, 483.
Kāśā, 124, 149.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
Kāśāyana, 598.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Khasa, 172, 181.
Khaliq, 17.
Khajurao, 377.
Khayyam, 49, 54.
Kheer, 88.
Khem Chronicles, 741.
Kherwari, 378.
Kheda, 88.
Khiching, 651, 652.
Khidrapur—See Koppam.
Khitragaur—See Koppam.
Kherwari, 378.
Kheda, 88.
Khiching, 651, 652.
Khidrapur—See Koppam.
Khitragaur—See Koppam.
Kundamarasa, 165, 166, 167.
Kundamayam, 169.
Kun Bang Khan, 170.
Kundai, 232.
Kundav, 204, 205, 206, 242, 445.
Kunj, 164, 189, 192.
Kundur, 500, 165.
Kurag, 63.
Kunta, 63, 64, 163, 164, 166, 171, 172, 173, 174, 176, 180, 181.
Kuntala (Poet) 321.
Kunwarpala, 55, 56, 120.
Kupanapura—See Koppam.
Kurari, 574.
Kusinara, 421.
Kusumadeva, 304.
Kutch, 20, 21, 74, 81, 749.
Kuvatayamili, 389.
Kuvalayavati, 303.
Kuvi, 378.
Kyanzittha, 175, 772.
Lad Khan, 333.
Laghubhirata, 40.
Laghukaumudi, 320.
Laghu-salika, 433.
Laghv-Arhaniti-siistra, 269, 270, 327.
Lakhalapala, 51.
Lakshmi-Narayana, 593.
Lakshmivara manjapa, 686.
Lakshnavarman (Paramara), 71.
Lakshya, 321.
Lakuligama-Samaya, 444.
Lakurile, 444.
Lala, 526.
Lala Jas Raj, 473, 149(n).
Lālī Pātra (Songs of the Cradle), 373.
Lalitāditya; Muktiipic;la, 419, 634, 635.
Lamghan, 3, 4, 5.
Lamri (Ulimuridesam), 239.
Lānersa—Vīrākṣa-rāja, 83.
Lātī-ratnākara, 365.
Lakshmanarāja, 558.
Lakshmanasinha (Guhila), 91.
Lakshmanavati—See Kshinavati.
Lakshmanwar, 187.
Lakhmi, 390, 401, 402.
Lakshmideva, 189.
Lakshmidevī, 230.
Lakshmikama (deva), 45.
Lakshmikāmadāvā (Thakuri), 46.
Lakshmikarnā, 481.
Lakshmimatī, 436.
Lakshmi-Nārāyana, 593.
Lakshmidīrā, 29, 36.
Lakshmi-Varman (Paramārā), 71.
Lakṣīgha, 321.
Lakṣīgama-Samāyo, 444.
Lakshīgura, 444.
Lālī, 526.
Lālī Jas Raj, 473, 149(n).
Lālī Pātra (Songs of the Cradle), 373.
Lalitāditya; Muktiipici;la, 419, 634, 635.
Lalitagiri, 650, 651.
Lalitapattana, 46, 427.
Lātarānasmālī, 234, 21(n).
Lātīra—Vīrākṣa-rāja, 83.
Lātīra, 310.
Lamgian, 470, 39(n).
Lomghan, 3, 4, 5.
Lemri (Ulimuridesam), 239.
Lātīra, 234.
Lātīra, 310.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
Lātīrvānāmara, 680, 682.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mahmiid</td>
<td>495, 499, 513, 520, 565, 655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahmiid (Governor)</td>
<td>51, 58, 68, 94, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahmiid (Ghiiri)</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahmiid (Sultan)</td>
<td>3, 5-23, 50, 56, 58, 67, 74, 81, 92, 94, 97, 116, 117, 118, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahmiidis</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahmiid Shah</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahoba</td>
<td>59, 76, 107, 108, 122, 146, 443, 575, 657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahotsavanagara</td>
<td>656-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahur</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVfaifUadevi</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mailigideva'</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamamati Hills</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maisur</td>
<td>576, 627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamitrapada</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maitreya</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaprabha</td>
<td>446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malas</td>
<td>453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malavyadevi</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaya</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaya hills</td>
<td>303, 517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaya hills</td>
<td>512, 513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaya Peninsula</td>
<td>236, 239, 493, 731</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaya Mahasamudra</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaya Varman</td>
<td>58, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaya Varman</td>
<td>732, 753, 752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malda</td>
<td>32, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malévés</td>
<td>225, 237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málépas</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maleya</td>
<td>526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malíi—See Madanachandra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Aliyáyiya</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Nasir-ud-din Aghúl Bak</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Táj-ud-din Husain</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Kachhan</td>
<td>137, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Náh Káfur</td>
<td>196, 203, 222, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Nasir-ud-din Muhammad Sháh</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Nasrat-ud-din</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Nasrat-ud-din Táyasál</td>
<td>57, 69, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Saif-ud-din</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Sháh</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Shah (Saljúq)</td>
<td>116, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Surkha</td>
<td>157, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Túbakí</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Yaghbash Firúz—See Jalál-ud-din Firúz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malik Ziyá-ud-din</td>
<td>109, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malíhed—See Mánakrete</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malla</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malleri</td>
<td>19, 76, 87, 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málérajuna (Lalhára)</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malus</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malla Setú</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Máléya—Náyaka</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málédeva</td>
<td>188, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málédeva Chója-Máháriya, 183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málékamáloarinda</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málékárjuna (author)</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málékárjuna (of Kályána)</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málékárjuna (of Kókáná)</td>
<td>72, 77, 83, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málékárjuna temple</td>
<td>615, 628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málékárjuna Maháta, 377</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málénavíra—chárti, 345, 349</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málénavíra Purúṣó, 370</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malvári</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málto</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Málwá</td>
<td>433, 434, 510, 518, 519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also see Málava</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánakrém</td>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánalladevi</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánalpuram</td>
<td>612, 670, 682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánal Súbhá, 139-140, 503, 504</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánaká, 422</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánama, 397</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánamata, 299, 321, 322, 323, 324, 332, 338, 385</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánvarí, 602</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánábharána</td>
<td>261, 262, 263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánádeva, 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánákavíram, 731</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also see Nicobars</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mészáro, 329</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánávcakam—káładórá, 451</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánavásinthá (Chálmánsiá), 58, 89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánávára, 293</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánbárí kín Bendha, 387, 386, 76(n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánbhum, 696</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mánchari, 377</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mándá II, 206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Mandalas), 275, 460, 466.
Mandakas, 251.
Mandalevora, 278, 280, 281, 283.
Mandali, 172.
Mandalka (Paramara), 73.
Mandapcchala, 434.
Mandara, 206, 212.
Mandasar, 656.
Mandavyapura—See Mandor.
Mandaver, 134.
Mandor, 65, 656, 660, 662.
Mandovara, 501.
Mandukka-yathoda, 432.
Mandu (Mandapa), 66, 72, 85, 171, 658.
Mangalaraja, 56.
Mang'avelada (Mangalvedha, Mangalaveshataka), 179, 186, 442.
Mangalore, 518.
Mandaveraga, 278, 279.
Mangalika, 275.
Mangalika (Paramara), 73.
Mangalivada (Mangalvedha, Mangalaveshataka), 179, 186, 442.
Mankha (-ka), 299, 317, 323.
Mankesvar temple, 603.
Mankha, 15.
Manthanya, 237.
Mantramadhyamakacintin, 386.
Manvarthamuktiivali, 295, 335.
Manyakheta, 161, 167, 185, 237.
Mappalam, 239, 731.
Markanda, 366.
Markan<;ieya, 347.
Markarika-Purii~a (in Telugu), 377.
Markapur, 165.
Markuta, 664.
Maroth, 84, 85.
Marsh, J., 638.
Marv.2.
Marwari, 66, 73, 74, 78, 106, 108, 109, 277, 290.
Masavii<;ii, 165, 98.
Maski, 166, 209, 237.
Masunidesam—See Bastar.
Mattangalilii, 329.
Matangas, 82, 83, 101, 102, 312.
Matangesvara temple, 614.
Mathanadeva (Rashtrakuta), 28, 29, 31, 32, 34, 54, 68.
Mathanathasa (Guhila), 89.
Matharas, 209.
Mathematics, 328-329, 511.

Maru, 377.
Maranjiemura, 210, 211.
Marusimha (Bihara), 176.
Marusimha II (Goa), 161, 162.
Marutha, 184, 278, 283, 332.
Marzhii, 351-354.
Marzhi bhadresha, 67(n).
Marzhi bhadr, udgama vo vikshas, 386, 67(n).
Marzhi Catalogue (Tanjore Library), 386, 66(n).
Marzhi-Grunthi-vrutchi, 386, 65(n).
Marzhi Vrtnagachchila, 387, 94(n).
Marzedas, 40, 190.
Maravarman Kulasekhara Pandy, 233, 259-260, 267.
Maravarman Sundara Pandy I, 213, 246, 258-259.
Maravarman Sundara Pandy II, 248, 257.
Maravarman Vikrama Pandya, 259.
Mavijayottunga-varman, 258, 259, 730.
Marvan, 170.
Marbalalitha, 229.
Maro Polo, 202, 258, 259, 260, 268, 470, 497, 509, 517, 519, 521, 522, 523, 527, 528, 539, 751.
Marved, 373, 374.
Marug (old Reva State), 561, 564, 565.
Marulji, 90.
Marsandeya, 347.
Marsunderu-Purua (in Telugu), 377.
Marskapur, 165.
Markuta, 664.
Marutha, 84, 85.
Marsh, J., 638.
Marvan, 584, 635.
Maruv, 389.
Marula, 367.
Marulavisidha, 445.
Maruv-sthalana-mandala, 73, 82, 98, 177.
Marsh, J., 2.
Marsvadi, 165, 188.
Maski, 166, 209, 238.
Maruv (Kangra), 605, 663, 664.
Mataro, 336.
Mestek, 535.
Mestukel, 465.
Mas'ud I, 92, 93, 94.
Mas'ud II, 94.
Mas'ud III, 50, 95, 141, 142.
Mas'ud bin Sa'd bin Salman 503.
Mashindelam—See Bastar.
Masticulli, 329.
Masug, 82, 83, 101, 102, 312.
Matangavaram temple, 614.
Mataram, 751.
Mathanadeva (Rashtrakuta), 28, 29, 31, 32, 34, 54, 68.
Mathanathasa (Guhila), 89.
Matharas, 209.
Mathematics, 328-329, 511.
INDEX

Mathurā, 13, 14, 55, 60, 74, 146, 196, 197, 403, 633, 650, 658.
Māthura-saṅgha, 349.
Matsagāra, 320.
Mātrigupta, 325.
Māñjū, 291, 395.
Mātrikā-chālīpa, 395.
Mātēyā Purūrā, 330.
Mātasyātmakā, 252.
Mātāyāyunisyā, Sect, 573.
Mau, 32.
Māudud, 93, 94.
Maulung, 44.
Maurya period, 357.
Māvakasiha(va), 65.
Māwaraur-n nahr, 13, 15.
Mayagalasirha, 29, 43.
Mayamata, 329, 694, 1, 7, 8(n) etc.
Mayideva, 185.
Mayirw;iingam, 239, 731.
Mayne, 296, 8(n).
Māyikha, 333.
Mayurbhanja, 425, 646, 649, 650, 651.
Mayiravarman, 167.
Mayiravati, 425, 646, 649, 650, 651.
Māyāravaman, 167.
Mazu War (of Trichinoroli), 469.
Mech, 380.
Moda(s), 199, 476.
Modak, 195, 200.
Medapata, 72, 78, 79, 85, 87.
Medhatithi, 269, 332, 335, 484.
Medicine, 328, 512.
Medinikara, 318, 319.
Mediterranean, 116.
Meerut, 118, 147.
Megasthenes, 493.
Megha, 320.
Meghaduta, 303, 434.
Meguti temple, 533, 615.
Mehara, 42.
Mekong, 760.
Mehran, 32.
Memorials of the Archaeological Survey of India, 160, 40(n).
Menaka, 768.
Medini, G. C, 268, 12(n).
Mers, 384.
Mers, 78.
Mēru, 78.
Mēru, 291.
Merukandara, 261.
Merutuilga, 64, 75, 107, 275.
Merv, 116, 124.
Megasthenes, 493.
Mēru, 125.
Meghatranda Travidyadeva, 430.
Mehadra, 303, 434.
Mokalji's temple, 661.
Mahārāṣṭra, 389.
M. L. Pembour Commemoration Volume, 129, 8(n).
Modern Indo-Aryan, 360.
Modhera, 593, 594, 662.
Mongul, 335.
Mon-Khmer, 357.
Monolithic rathas, 610.
Mongoloids, 357.
Moon, 271, 272.
Morpur, 274.
Moss, G. M., 471, 96(n).
Mornant, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141.
Morphology, 339.
Mottaiyan, 169.
Motupallii, 201, 202, 516.
Mount Kavi, 751.
Mpu Sedah, 768.
Mricchakatkāśika, 311, 487.
Mricchakāśikā, 267.
Mricchā-vṛtti-charitra, 434.
Mridavallavī, 163.
Mridang Mahādeo, 573.
Mridavājaya Mahādeva, 573.

Mitric Speeches, 381.
Mihana, 328.
Military exercises, 490.
Mills, 380.
Mīndānādey, 246, 251, 321, 322, 333, 335, 499, 511, 512.
Mīndānād普alaśa, 385, 52(n).
Mīnduq-dim, 39, 40, 41, 43, 44, 85, 141, 208, 503.
Miraj, 184.
Miræ, 6.
Miran, 6.
Miran, 390.
Mīrvār-ī-Jehnd-Nūn, 111, 2(n).
Mīr Kīvānd, 139, 5(n).
Mīrāpur, 55, 655.
Mīrīms, 733.
Mīra, B., 224, 24(n).
Mīrā, Parhāshārū, 391.
Mīrā-Shāh, 177, 260, 266, 291, 332.
Mīrā, 33, 34, 33.
Mīthilā, 39, 32, 33, 34, 47-48, 53, 61, 62, 222, 238, 332, 333.
Mīthunā, 633.
Mīthunā couples, 644.
Mītā, 201, 262.
Mīrā, P. L., 36, 3(n), 693, 33(n).
Mītrādēvā, 46.
Mītrānī, 297, 331.
Mītrānādu, 311.
Mīčchhakāśīka, 311, 487.
Mōchi, 436.
Mīsūr, 593, 653.
Moghenprājya, 312, 487, 489, 506.
Mokalji's temple, 661.
Moksha, 346.
Mokshākṣaragūpta, 416, 518.
Moghenprājya, 312, 487, 489, 506.
Mongol, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141.
Mongul, 117, 122, 123, 126, 127, 129, 141, 142-144, 150, 152, 153, 155, 156, 157, 203, 77, 79.
Monguloids, 337.
Mūnā-Klamer, 337.
Mōnolētic sarhas, 610.
Mōn (s), 756, 756, 757, 758.
Moon, 271, 272.
Mōpur, 274.
Morsen, G. M., 471, 96(n).
Morsen, 549, 562, 569, 569.
Morphology, 339.
Mōtāsīya, 109.
Mōtānū, 261, 292, 516.
Mount Kavi, 731.
Mount Sedah, 755.
Mounts, 755.
Mrahchchhakati, 311, 487.
Mṛīcchakāśikā, 267.
Mṛīcchā-vṛtti-charitra, 434.
Mṛīdāvallavī, 163.
Mṛītang Mahādeo, 573.
Mṛīyulyājaya Mahādeva, 573.

S. E.—49

913
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

MSS. Catalogue of the Bharat Itihasa Sansodhak Mandal, 386, 96(n).
MSS.-illustrations, 676, 679.
MSS.-paintings, 688.
Mubarak, 196.
Mudgere, 226.
Mudgakand (Mudgakand-Cholapuram), 249, 255.
Mudgaddhir, 276.
Mudradhakesha, 311.
Mudrās, 406.
Mudrakṣaṃvahendra, 311.
Mudgāt, 201.
Mudgakara (Mudgakara), 160, 170.
Mudgali, 232.
Mudgalī, R. S., 388, 97(n).
Mudgā, 320, 335.
Mudgopadeśa, 305.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mudgā-ud-din-See Tughril.
Mubarak, 202.
INDEX

Nâda, 251, 252, 279, 282, 516.
Nâgabhartri VishnuUBhatta, 334.
Nâgachandra, 370, 371.
Nâgadeva (Chaulukya), 74.
Nâgadeva (General), 152, 171, 172.
Nâgadevâchâryya, 333, 334.
Nâgadevi, 307.
Nâgadevi (Lohara), 100.
Nâgapiila (Guhila), 91.
Nâgapiila (Lohara), 100.
Nâgapiila (Negapatam), 730.
Nâgar (a) KhâI, 138, 139.
Nâgar (town), 46.
Nâgarams, 252.
Nâgarjuna (Chahaminâ), 106, 107.
Nâgarjuna (Silahara), 171, 313.
Nâgarjuna, 417.
Nâgârjuna-Mahâbhâvagupta III, 318, 338.
Nârâyanâ, 11, 12, 23, 333, 335.
Nârâyana, 69, 169, 194.
Nârâyanâ, 26, 34, 647, 650, 730.
Nârâyanâ (Ganga), 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 193, 194, 195, 325, 327.
Nârâyanâ (Kalachuri), 64.
Nârâyanâ-See Narendradeva.
Nârâyanâchaturvedimangalam—See Maddur.
Nârâyanâ (Kalachuri), 64.
Nârâyanâ—See Narendradeva.
Nârâyanâbhucharuvadhyanagalam—See Madur.
Nârâyanâ, 768.
Nârâyanâ, 208, 298, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 208, 298, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
Nârâyanâ, 207, 208, 209, 325, 341.
INDEX

Nivata-kavacha, 768.
Nivruttinatha, 353, 387.
Nizam-ud-din, 156, 157.
Nizam-ud-din Ahmad, 13, 16, 23.
Nizam-ud-din Hasan Nizami Nishapuri, 503.
Nolambas, 230.
Nolambavali, 63, 172, 175, 177, 178, 179, 180, 183, 187, 192, 226, 227, 228, 229, 234, 235, 244.
Norton invasion, 398.
North Arcot, 684.
North Assam Speeches, 381.
North Bengal, 635.
North Bihar, 636.
Northern India, 4, 19, 24-103, 116-129, 208, 238, 284, 295, 305, 332.
Administrative Organisation, 274-277.
Law and Legal Institutions, 287-290.
North-West Frontier, 26, 316.
Nottrott, A., 380.
Nrialgi ins., 173.
Nripa, 269.
Nripaka, 175, 227, 233.
Nripatibhusha, 215.
Nrisirigha, 48.
Nrisimha Purusha, 375.
Nritya, 325.
Nrivarman, 57.
Nuh II, 3, 5.
Nub Siphr, 197, 9(n).
Nulumba, 168, 169.
Nur, 18.
Nurpur fort, 556.
Nishtigin Hijib, 94.
Nusrat Khan, 81.
Nuzvid, 199.
Nyasa, 320, 343, 511.
Nyaya, 269, 335, 336.
Nyayanibandhaprakasa, 336.
Nyayatir, 254.
Nyaya-Vaiseshika, 460.
Nyaya Vinischayavivarta, 435.
Octo-alloy, 646.
Obcure Religious Cults as Background of Bengali Literature, 469, 17(n).
Old Bengali, 358, 359, 360, 361.
'Old Bhils', 380.
Old Brahmi, 117.
Old Carvaka, 356.
Old Gujarati, 389, 390, 391.
Old Hindi, 361.
Old Indo-Aryan, 390.
Old-Javanese literature, 767.
'Old Khyani', 381.
'Old Ko' (Old Kherwar), 380.
Old Naga, 381.
Old Savara, 390.
Old Shan, 381.
Old Siamese, 381.
Old Thai, 381.
'Old Western Râjâsthâni', 389.
Omgud, 224.
Ooragudum, 614.
Ooran, 378.
Oriental Conference, Proceedings of the 7th, 21(n).
Origin (of Telugu), 372.
Origin and Development of Bengali Language and Literature, 358, 360.
Origin of the Andhras, 372.
Orissa and her Remains—Ancient and Medieval 694, 19(n).
Orissan miniature, 642.
Orissan movement, 619.
Orissan style, 605.
Orissan temples, 560.
Orny, 557, 558.
Orumalai—See Warangal.
Osia (Rajputana), 541, 553, 576, 377, 378, 669, 677.
Ottoman, 159, 1(n).
Oudh—See Awadh.
Oxus, 2, 116.

P
Pathâ Hose, 338, 543, 557, 558.
Penchur, 247.
Peda, 340.
Pûdâbhâga, 358.
Pûdâchaukha, 359.
Pûdahamaî, 319, 335.
Pûdâgumo, 752.
Pûdâksharma-bhagavagroha, 335.
Pûdârthas, 366.
Pûdârthopadî, See Rûpadî.
Pûdabhadana, 343.
Pûdabhati, 65, 365.
Pûdârthopadî, 375.
Pûduma, 342.
Pûdunchindra, 311.
Pûduma-cherita, 434.
Pûdumadeva—See Pradyumnakâma-deva.
Pûdumaghata, 340.
Pûdumkhî, 348.
Pûdumkumara, 319.
Pûdûrâbhâbhatte, 333.
Pûdûrâbhâbhatte, 441.
Pûdûrârayâ Mahâkâla, 302.
Pûdûrâmî, 336.
Pûdûrâmî, 56.
Pûdûrâmî, 666.
Pûdûrâmî-Lokeîâma, 657.
Pûduma Padûs, 217, 339, 387.
Pûdûrârâs, 397.
Pûdumshina (Châhâmâna), 88.
Pûdumshina (Guhîla), 89.
Pûdumshina, 91, 103.

917
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Paduka Sri Maharaja Haji Joya Pangus, 754.
Padua, 29.
Paduchitdhami, 348.
Padva-Koddamba, 299.
Paqi's, 310, 343, 349, 652, 654.
Pagan, 526, 570, 730.
Pagan temples (in Burma), 637, 638.
Paga-Sem-Lon-Zeng, 470, 637(n), 471, 103(n).
Pahang, (Malay Peninsula), 539, 545, 549, 652, 654.
Pagan, 526, 679, 739.
Pagan temples (in Burma), 637, 638.
Paijamadhu, 341, 343.
Pajju-jaka, 348.
Pakhal, 199, 223.
Pakhangba, 383.
Pakshika-Saptati, 432.
Pajaiylirai, 255.
Palakapya, 329.
Palrunpet, 201, 668.
Palandvipa, 262.
Palanpur, 20.
Pallavas, 24-33, 35, 36, 37, 38, 44, 47, 49, 52, 53, 61, 62, 206, 212, 238, 274, 276, 277, 666, 667, 690, 691, 693.
Palembang, 528, 61(n).
Pallika(s), 76, 82.
Palm, 660.
Pampa II ("Abhinava Pampa"), 370.
Pampa-Ponna-Ranna, 367.
Pandya, S., 285, 108(n).
"The" Pandya Kingdom, 286, 108(n), 469, 7(n).
Pangarkar, L. R., 387, 94(n).
Papacharyavadya, 445.
Papanatha temple, 598, 599.
Papanchas'Udali, 342.
Parabala, 281.
Parachakrasalya, 221, 222.
Parakkamo, 340.
Parakrama, 245, 264, 266.
Parakrama (Arising in the south), 245, 246, 252.
ParakramaSudradaya, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Parakrama Sudradaya, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta (in the south), 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
Paracakravatta, 245, 246, 252.
INDEX

Parama-Guru - Dharmananda-Matihariya, Sribhadra, 427.
Paramaditya - Paramaditya, 352.
Paramananda (Lohara), 101.
Paramesvara, 13, 14, 28, 51, 52, 57, 58, 59, 61, 63, 64, 66-74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 89, 90, 94, 95, 100, 103, 104, 121, 134, 163, 164, 172, 175, 176, 183, 185, 186, 188, 189, 190, 192, 198, 204, 206, 213, 228, 295, 310, 319, 658, 659, 687. of Rajputana, 72-74.
of Malava, 66-72.
of Mt. Abu, 72-73.
of Vija~a, 73.
of Jalor (Jiibiilipura), 73.
of Bhinmiil, 73-74.
Administrative Organisation of, 275-276.
Paramandideva, 423.
Paramandin (Kadamba), 78.
Paramitii-naya, 406.
Paramitiiyiina, 406.
Piranavitana, S., 267.
Panjis, 364.
Parantaka I, 238, 245, 252, 256.
Parasuramesvara-Muktesvara group, 547.
Parasuramesvara temple, 536, 540, 545, 548, 554, 559, 614, 652, 654.
Parauli, 574.
Parbadi, 593.
Pari, 226.
Paribhiisha, 317.
Parichchheda, 322, 344.
Parjani-pasu-piisa, 366.
Patita, 289.
Pathak, S., 387, 76(n).
Pathakas-See vishayas.
Pathari (Gwalior), 557.
Pathindah-See Sirhind.
Pathaka, 109, 115, 167.
Patli, 130.
Patli-jaina, 455.
Patli-pata-plain, 366.
Patli, 289.
Patli, 44.
Patna, 27, 52, 54, 149, 219, 220, 221, 602.
Patan State (old), 556.
Pattadakal, 585, 597, 598, 599, 623, 682.
Pattana (Patel), 275, 276.
Pattikera (Paitkera, Pattikera), 41-42, 383, 426, 756.
Pattana, 88.
Pauamaph, 348.
Pavanadiita, 40, 303, 469, 517.
Pavanavijaya, 352.
Pavuluru Mallanna, 376.
Pavvura, 189.
Pavvura, 587.
Pavvura, 605.
Pavvosa, 40, 303, 469, 517.
Pavvus, 348.
Pedimental arches, 584.
Pegu, 757, 760.
Pennang, 239.
Pepper, 317.
Pera, 320.
Perumal, 92.
Perumalpattinam, 242, 248.
Pervige, 219, 280.
Periyarpura, 365.
Periyar Aghasiri Pillai, 440.
Perianadai Madrasa, 169.
Perumal, 179.
Perumaladeva-See Vikramaditya VI.
Perumaladeva (Sindu), 178.
Perusa, 1, 92, 118, 117, 149, 223, 690.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Persian Gulf, 250, 259, 260, 495, 520, 521, 523.
Persian(s), 2, 117, 523.
PerumakkaJ, 253.
Perundaram, 250.
Perundevanar, 362.
Peruva~is, 250.
Peshawar, 5, 6, 8, 93, 94, 111, 118.
Peterson, P., 305.
Pethac;la-rasa, 394, 396.
Peyiya Saha.t.1i, 185.
Phdgu, 396.
Phalgugrama, 40, 41.
Phat Ma, 743.
Philosophy, 336-337.
Philosophical Literature, 330-337.
Phimeanakas, 771.
Piawan inscription, 62.
Pilu, 540, 541.
Piilai, V. K., 170.
Pillamari, 200, 201.
PiHai Lokacharya, 440.
Pilupati, 276.
Pimpalner, 189.
PinbaJagiya PerwnaUiyar, 440.
Pipla Devi, 579.
Pippala, 759.
Pirai, 3.
PiryiishavarSha-See Jayadeva.
Playfair, 380.
Plays, Erotic and Farcecl, 311.
Plays, Legendary, 309-310.
Plays, Semi-historical, 311-312.
Podur Dravidas, 372.
Poems, Shorter, 305-306.
Poetics, 321-325, 322, 343.
Puls (Polavasa-desi), 190.
Politics, 327-329.
Politics Theory, 269-274.
Prakrama, 400.
Polonnaruva, 235, 243, 261, 262, 263, 265.
Pombureha, 430.
See also Huncha.
Pokhara, 744.
Pondicherry, 241.
Poonla—See Khverul.
Pos-sriyam, 252.
Pottiyapadi, 450.
Portuguese, 267.
Potatis, 549.
Potanin, 219.
Potrayan, 170.
Probhakara, 438.
Probhakara-Parmatmavara, 215.
Probhakara, 503, 271(n).
Probhakarchandra, 315, 350.
Probhakarchandra Siuidhantadeva, 430.
Probhakara, 240, 291, 296, 311, 312, 313.
Probhakara-charchita, 315.
Probhakaradeva, 54.
Probhakaradeva, 570.
Probhakaradeva, 278, 293.
Probhakarchandrodaya, 312, 443.
Probhakarabharhiniyagata, 311.
Prasadadandandandodakja, 279, 283.
Praschita - Garjera - Kunga-emphra, 297, 297.
Prashna Mahakshatra, 386, 387(n).
Practical Life, 327-338.
Predelshini (Circumambulatory passage), 332, 383.
Predhama, 278, 279, 281, 283.
Predhama—See Mantri-predhama.
Prepada, 319.
Prepadmabhyudaya, 310.
Prepadmyana-charitra, 435.
Prepadmyanakamsaleva, 45.
Prepadmyana Kumara, 248.
Prepadmyana Suri, 313.
Prepadmyanerva Siva, 37.
Pragvyottaha—See Kamaraupa.
Prakrama, 73, 74, 79.
Praksana, 311.
Prabhada (Chalhambana), 84, 492.
Prabhakara (Paramara), 72, 73, 78, 89, 298, 311.
Prabhasagura, 433.
Prah-Pahlav, 771.
Prah-Pattu, 771.
Prakraya, 400, 407, 408, 409, 410.
Pravakhadra, 417.
Pravrajaramidha, 739.
Prakaranajyekalidasararangaraya-viveka, 225.
Prakaranasa, 311-312, 338.
Prakrataj, 325.
Prakrit, 322.
Prakritakalpataru, 347.
Prakritarilpiivatiira, 347.
Prakritasarvasva, 347.
Prakriti, 438.
Prah-Pahlay, 771.
Prah-Pithu, 771.
Prakritakalpataru, 347.
Prakritarilpiivatiira, 347.
Prakritasarvasva, 347.
Prakritarilpiivatiira, 347.
Prakritakalpataru, 347.
Prakritadhamakaragottama, 314.
Prakritarilpiivatiira, 347.
Prakritarilpiivatiira, 347.
Prakritarilpiivatiira, 347.
Pralambhas-See Salambhas.
Pramanavarta, 336.
Pranamaya, 256.
Pranamaya, 322.
Pranamaya-Pranamaya, 435.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Q

Qabacha, 504.
Qara Khitai, 117.
Qaraqoram, 143.
Qazwlni, 517, 528, 31(n).
Qaraqoram, 143.
Qirat, 18.
'Qualified monism', 461.
Quang Binh, 256, 259, 485, 517, 521.
Quang Tri, 744.
Quang, K.
Quarters, Regents of the, 271.
Quilon, 234, 246, 259, 485, 517, 521.
Quara, 504.
Qusdar, 3.
Qutb-ud-din Bakhtyar, Kaki, 467.
Qutb-ud-din Hasan Ghiiri, 84.
Qutb-ud-din Husain, 139.
Qutb-ud-din Muhammad, 96.
Qutlugh Khan, 142, 143.
Quwwat-ul-Islfun, 120.
Rachamalla (Ganga), 162, 352.
Rachamalla (Sinda), 182.
Rachamalla, 100.
Raddhu-See Ratha.
Raj, 16.
Rajabhiishal),a Somesva:ra II, 218.
Rajadhiraja I (Chola), 170, 204, 212, 240, 242, 248, 250, 251, 255, 256, 264, 618, 672, 685.
Rajadhiraja III (Chola), 200, 231, 247-248, 257.
Rajadhiraja I (Devendravarman) (Gan)., 204, 205, 261.
Rajadhiraja II (Gan)., 181, 207.
Rajadhiraja III (Gan)., 207.
Rajadhiraja Narendra, 375.
Rajadhiraja temple, 344, 625, 626.
Rajadhiraja, 262.
Rajah, 273.
Rajas, 731.
Rajah Sarbjit, 376.
Rajahsinha II, 206.
Rajahsinha Pallava, 612, 614.
Rajahsinha -vara temple, 613.
Rajasandhi, 679.
Rajasandhi miniatures, 675.
Rajasmati, 200, 244.
Rajapatih, 411.
Rajasekharacharya, 17, 100, 30(n), 207, 298, 357, 470, 49(n).
Rajasekharachary, 274, 276.
Rajasekharacharya, 733.
Rajendra-ChoJa II, 180, 181.
Rajendra Chola II, 173, 312.
Rajendranarsapire, 308.
Rajmali, 395.
Rajmur, 30, 308.
Rajput, 665, 662.
INDEX

Râjputâña, 10, 55, 72, 118, 130, 131, 134, 147, 148, 296, 402, 576, 583, 645, 648, 660, 682, 686, 688, 675, 687, 689.
Râjputāne-fol-thîthîs, 179, 7(n), 505, 27(n).
Râjput minatures, 642.
Rajputs, 56, 110, 120, 121, 134, 135, 146, 147, 148, 150, 159, 267, 275, 277.
Rajput sculptures, 641.
RajriinUi, 547.
Rajshahi, 34, 37, 635, 650.
Rajwade, V. K., 386, 119(n).
Raju, P. T., 388, 119(n).
Rajwade Sarhsodhana MandaI, Dhulia, MSS catalogue of, 386, 66(n).
Rajyapala (Chahamana), 77, 86.
Rajyapala (Gahavatria), 54.
Rajyapala (Pala), 31.
Rajyapala (Pratihara), 14, 15, 153, 158.
Rakkasa-Gangarasa, 201.
Raksha, 264.
Rama (Bhagavan), 300, 305, 309, 313, 320, 355, 672, 767.
Rama (of Dera), 11, 23, 13(n).
Rama (General), 191.
Rama (of Gujarat), 81.
Ramabhadra, 311.
Ramachandra (of Gujarat), 435.
Ramachandra (of Kashmir), 102.
Ramachandra (Scholar), 78, 293, 309, 311, 253.
Ramachandra (of Kashmir), 102.
Ramachandra (Scholar), 78, 293, 309, 311, 253.
Ramachandra (temple), 566, 573.
Ramachandra-charitn-pûcina, 370.
Ramachandra (Yadava), 71, 88, 193, 194-196, 197, 232.
Ramachandra (Yadava), 71, 88, 193, 194-196, 197, 232.
Ramadas, G., 224, 12(n).
Ramadas, G., 224, 12(n).
Ramakrishna Kavi, M., 376.
Ramalarahasya, 330.
Ramananda, 337.
Ramanatha, 232, 259.
Ramanuja, 229, 242, 317, 336, 378, 403, 484.
Ranasimha, 48.
Rana-asurã (of Nepal), 46.
Rana-asurã (of Râjput), 25, 62.
Rander, 468.
Rehg—See Seringapatam.
Rangacharya, V., 224, 10(n).
Rangakshita, 371.
Rangpur, 639.
Rântipur Jharial (Patna State), 555, 556, 579.
Ranum (Kannada poet), 429.
Ranthambhor, 71, 83-86, 90, 114, 119, 131, 134, 147, 148, 159.
Rao, Subba, 224, 12(n), 388, 116(n).
Rapson, E. J., 285, 37(n).
Ranga—See Seringapatam.
Raghavendra, 393.
Rântipur Jharial (Patna State), 555, 556, 579.
Rântipur, 639.
Rântipur Jharial (Patna State), 555, 556, 579.
Rântipur Jharial (Patna State), 555, 556, 579.
Rântipur Jharial (Patna State), 555, 556, 579.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Ratnadeva (Thakuri), 46.
Ratnadeva II (Kalachuri), 32, 65, 206, 213.
Ratnagiri, 650, 651.
Ratnakara Santi, 417.
Ratnapala (Chahamana), 86.
Ratnapala (Kachchhapaghata), 56.
Ratnapala (Pala of Assam), 42, 13, 14, 443.
Ratnaparikshī, 330, 520.
Ratnagiri, 192, 517.
Ratnagiri, 650, 651.
Ratnaraja, 65.
Ratnakara, 91.
Ratnaratna-vilUira, 419, 420.
Ratnavali, 261.
Ratna sikhara, 531, 544.
Ratna sikhara, 651.
Ratnakar, 332.
Ratnapal1i, 186.
Ratnarai;mi-vilUira, 419, 420.
Rattapali-See Kuntala.
Ratnapura-See Ratanpur.
Rattaraja (SiHihara), 162.
Rattas, 164, 180, 186, 189, 191, 192.
Rattapala, 341.
Ravals, 89.
Ravana, 312.
Ray, H., 159, 179, 409, 505, 279.
Rayamukuta, 318, 319.
Rayarideva (Trailokyamalla), 37, 43.
RayavaMiya, 349, 350.
Rahuladeva, 261, 263, 264.
Rohina, 261, 263, 264.
Rohini-mriga-saha, 433.
Rohitashgarh, 146.
Romaharsana, 768.
Romances, Chera, 313.
Romances, Prose, 312-313.
Romapada, 329.
Rotating squares, 624.
Royal marriages, 479.
Ruchidasata, 336.
Ruduka, 29.
R(a)utra I, 199, 200, 223.
Rudrasattra, 210, 211.
Rudra (deva), 45, 177.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudra-Mahakāla temple, 76.
Rudra Mahālaya, 396.
Rudra Madhav, 396.
Rudrambhā, 39, 177.
Rudrakshāhīka, 179, 200.
Rudradeva (Kakatiya), 46.
Rudra (deva), 45, 177.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudra (deva), 45, 177.
Rudrakshāhīka, 768.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudradeva (Kakatiya), 179, 200.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudra-Mahakāla temple, 76.
Rudra Mahālaya, 396.
Rudra Madhav, 396.
Rudrambhā, 39.
Rudrakshāhīka, 179, 200.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudradeva (Kakatiya), 179, 200.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudra-Mahakāla temple, 76.
Rudrā-Siva, 402.
Rudrata, 323, 324.
Rudras, 164, 180, 186, 189, 191, 192.
Rattas, 164, 180, 186, 189, 191, 192.
Rati, 32.
Rati, 322, 323, 324.
Rati, 322.
Ratna, 261, 263, 264.
Rohini-mriga-saha, 433.
Rohitashgarh, 146.
Romaharsana, 768.
Romances, Chera, 313.
Romances, Prose, 312-313.
Romapada, 329.
Rotating squares, 624.
Royal marriages, 479.
Ruchidasata, 336.
Ruduka, 29.
R(a)utra I, 199, 200, 223.
Rudrasattra, 210, 211.
Rudra (deva), 45, 177.
Rudradeva (Kakatiya), 179, 200.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudra-Mahakāla temple, 76.
Rudra Mahālaya, 396.
Rudra Madhav, 396.
Rudrambhā, 39.
Rudrakshāhīka, 179, 200.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudradeva (Kakatiya), 179, 200.
Rudradeva (Thakuri), 46.
Rudra-Mahakāla temple, 76.
Rudrā-Siva, 402.
Rudrata, 323, 324.
Rudras, 164, 180, 186, 189, 191, 192.
Rattas, 164, 180, 186, 189, 191, 192.
Rati, 32.
Rati, 322, 323, 324.
Rati, 322.
Ratna, 261, 263, 264.
Rohini-mriga-saha, 433.
Rohitashgarh, 146.
Romaharsana, 768.
Romances, Chera, 313.
Romances, Prose, 312-313.
Romapada, 329.
INDEX

Sadayappa, 362, 366.
Sadsivagadi, 361.
Saddapar-anthithi, 363.
SaddalakkajJa, 343.
Saddaniti, 342, 343.
Saddhammopiiyana, 341.
Sadjuru Ragale, 370.
Sadhu, 67, 86.
Sadhananda, 404, 407.
Sadhava, 48.
Sadha, 49.
Saduktharamanritam, 40, 365.
Sadyojata, 445.
Sadyojyotis, 365.
Sadyovadhu, 482.
$affar / $affarids, 1.
See also Ya'qub ibn-Layth al-$affar.
Saffron, 517.
Sahajapala (Chahamana), 87.
Sagar, 137, 183.
Sahajar-Dharmamrita, 434.
Sahat Mahet, 50.
SikhityadarJJa, 388.
Sahula, 349.
Sahyadri, 386.
Sai Churah, 665.
Sailendra-Chulamani-varma-vahara, 733.
Sailendra Empire, 730.
Sailendra Literature, 365.
Sadaksharabhisheka, 344.
Samasthanidhipati, 283.
Samapakapatha, 434.
Samasthali, 434.
Samasajjana, 322.
Samasthali-purva, 242.
Samantacana, 56.
Sambandha (Chahamana), 98.
Sambandha (Guhila), 73, 78, 84, 85, 89, 90, 108, 113, 124, 147, 163, 277, 310.
Sahara, 667.
Sakalendu, 754.
Sakis, 667.
Saktas, 403, 404, 409.
Saktu hymns, 369.
Sakti, 460, 467.
Saktikumara (Guhila), 89.
Saktimath, 498.
Saktitvarman I, 203, 205.
Saktitvarman II, 204.
Saktirajadhipacitra, 447.
Sakalaj, 283.
Sakya-bhadra, 457.
Sakya-sikshika, 423.
Sakyanunja, 729.
Sakya-raghava, 416.
Sali, 97.
Sali—See Naripakama.
Salimahajja, 644.
Salgopana, 320.
Salakha (Paremara), 74.
Saliambha, 42.
Salar Husain, 96.
Salieta, 502.
Saliwabana—See Sali.
Salem, 63, 239.
Salha (Chahamana), 88.
Salha, 100, 101.
Sali Bahadur, 143.
Salbhadra, 302, 393, 394.
Salihotra, 328, 329.
Salvabana, 315.
Saliwabana, 315.
Salamalakot, 213, 214.
Sallakshana, 120.
Sailukha-nauvarman (Chandella), 58, 64, 65, 69.
Sailukhanavaran (Kaurava), 60.
Saliwabana, 430.
Salokya, 430.
Sallakshana-varman (ChandelJa), 58, 64, 65.
Sallakshana-varman (ChandelJa), 58, 64, 65.
Sallakshana-varman (ChandelJa), 58.
Sai Churah, 665.
Sallakshana-varman (ChandelJa), 58, 64, 65.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
Samanta-Bhoja, 201.
Sainavadi, 283.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Sūtras, 302.
Suraśī—See Sarasvatī.
Sūrya, 373, 641, 653.
Sūrya Jayā-varmā-deva, 738.
Sūryakapuṣa, 420.
Sūryamati, 97, 98, 314, 483.
Sūryapala, 56.
Sūryasena, 102.
Sūryavamśa Rāma Mahādharma-dhiraja, 761.
Sūryavarmā-deva, 738, 739.
Sūryavarman I, 736, 762, 765.
Sūryavarman II, 737, 738, 745.
Sūryavarmottara, 255, 317, 507, 149(n).
Sūryavarmottara, 522, 764.
Sūryasena, 102.
Sūryavarman I, 736, 762, 765.
Sūryavarman II, 737, 738, 745.
Svācchanda, 328.
Svācchandottara, 418.
Svācchandottara, 418.
Svāpativāsa, 44, 45.
Svāpativāsa, 44, 45.
Svāpativāsa, 44, 45.
Svāpativāsa, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
Svāpatyūra, 44, 45.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Tooth Relic, 252, 263, 349.
Tori(a)gal(e), 162, 167, 178.
Tora'(ta, 540, 579.
Tosali-See Orissa.
ToHaviiriyam, 252.
Trailokyamahadeva, 615.
Trailokyaraja -mauli- bhushaI_la- Varma deva, 734.
Trailokyavarman(-malla), 55, 59, 60, 183.
Trailokyasvara, 615.
Transoxiana, 1, 2, 19, 503.
Travancore, 256, 257, 308.
Tmvels of Marco Polo, 286, 106(n).
Trefoil arches, 584.
Tribhuvana, 50.
Tribhuvanaditya-dharmaraja, 757.
Tribhuvanam, 247, 622.
Tribhuvanamalla, 183, 189.
Tribhuvanesvara, 548, 622.
Tribhuvani, 241.
Trichinopoly, 203, 220, 232, 233, 238, 242, 244, 248, 257, 618.
Trigarta, 98, 523.
Trikalinga, 210, 224.
Trikii'(tg,asesha, 317.
Tl'ilinga', 373.
Trilochanadasa, 320.
Trilochanapala (Chaulukya), 74, 76, 80, 81, 97, 98, 102, 171.
Trilokapiila, 56.
Trilokasundari, 261, 263, 267.
Trinetresvara, 589.
Tiruparuttikunram, 684.
Tripitaka, 419.
Triple-shrined temple, 597.
TripU1:'a, 299.
Tripuradiiha, 311.
Tripurantaka, 684, 685.
Trisankupati 51.
Triratha, 537, 539, 558.
Trivist, 328.
Triyogasimha, 42.
Uch, 7, 106, 117, 132, 133, 142, 143, 144, 468.
Uchchhala, 29, 99, 100.
Udayagiri, 650, 651.
Udayakarl).a Nil,lsankasimha, 43.
Udayamartana, 257.
Udayana (Minister), 76, 77, 194, 254, 257, 349, 474.
Udayana (Writer), 336.
Udayapura, 175, 228, 229.
Udayapura, 175, 228, 229.
Udayaraja (Officer), 106, 111, 115.
Udayaraja (Paramara), 74.
Udayasimha (Chahamana), 80, 87, 88.
Udayesvara temple, 658.
Uddhavagitii, 354.
Uddhatins, 354.
Uddhayakarna Mahâbhavagnuta IV, 205, 209, 211, 212, 213, 214, 218, 546.
Udrepur, 68.
THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

Vajrāchārya, 450.
Vajrāscanda, 56.
Vajrārdhara, 411.
Vajraśanta (Anantasvarman) V, 63, 172, 285.
Vajrāsna, 27, 417.
Vajrāstiva, 411, 412.
Vajrāsattvādī, 411.
Vajrāsena, 205, 205.
Vajraśāntara, 411.
Vajrāshasta (Anantavarman) V, 63, 172, 205.
Vajrasana, 27, 417.
Vajrasattva, 411, 412.
Vajra-sattvatmika, 411.
Vajrāsena, 393, 394.
Vajravarman, 33, 34, 62.
Vajrāsana, 27, 417.
Vajrāsattva, 411, 412.
Vajra-sattvatmika, 411.
Vajrāsena, 393, 394.
Vajravarman, 33, 34, 62.
Vajrāsana, 27, 417.
Vajrāsattva, 411, 412.
Vajra-sattvatmika, 411.
Vajrāsena, 393, 394.
Vajravarman, 33, 34, 62.
Vajrāsana, 27, 417.
Vajrāsattva, 411, 412.
Vajra-sattvatmika, 411.
Vajrāsena, 393, 394.
Vajravarman, 33, 34, 62.
INDEX

Venas, 476.
Vençõa, 383.
Veṣa-sāgara, 429.
Veṅkaṭa-varana, 385.
Veṇu, 480.
Veṅgāma—See Belgoum.
Veṣeru, 520, 531, 622.
Veṭāla-keśavavirāṇi, 314.
Viḥāge, 389.
Viḥāra, 347.
Viḥāra, 485.
Viḥūdhi-śantra, 416.
Viṅchaṅgaya, 167.
Viṅka, 365.
Viṅchīṭavīra, 208, 214.
Viṅdarāha, 177.
Viṅdasīha, 101.
Viṅdasīlakṣaṇa, 310.
Viṅca-nāīya, 739.
Viṅchāka, 212.
Viṅchāka-sūra, S. C., 470, 471(n), 34.
Viṅchāra-vartanī, 313.
Viṅchāṭhara (Chandella), 16, 17, 18, 57, 58, 66.
Viṅchīṣṭha, 101.
Viṅchīṣṭha, 312.
Viṅchāṭhara (Chandella), 470, 32(n), 34.
Viṅchāṇa, 313.
Viṅchāṇa (Chandella), 16, 17, 18, 57, 58, 66.
Viṅchāṇa (Chandella), 440.
Viṅchāṇa, 69.
Viṅchāṇa (Chandella), 58, 61.
Viṅchāṇa (Kachchhapaghata), 57.
Viṅchāṇa (Poet), 310.
Viṅchāṇa (Pratihāra), 56.
Viṅchāṇa (Pratihāra), 60, 64.
Viṅchāṇa (Sūrī), 343.
Viṅchāṇa—See Pāṇḍuṇḍuṇījarī.
Viṅchāndā, 171, 241.
Viṅchāndā, 68, 655.
Viṅcha (Pasunārā), 73, 402.
Viṅchāraka (Paramara), 72, 73, 77.
Viṅchāraka, 189.
Viṅchārakasūtra, 27, 525, 532, 257.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
Viṅchāraka, 29.
Viṅchāraka-monastery, 27, 415, 417, 511.
### THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yedatore Tāluk</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yelavare</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yelburga—See Etambarage</td>
<td>196, 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yelgandal</td>
<td>468, 523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yenom</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ye-ses-hod</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yegna</td>
<td>333, 465, 407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogachaśa school</td>
<td>427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yog-pithas</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogarāja (Guhila)</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogarāja (Paramāra)</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogāstra</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogāśhwara</td>
<td>80, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogachandra Muni</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogat-centre</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogaviya</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogasura</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogasastra</td>
<td>80, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogachandra Muni</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yogisvara</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yodjaka</td>
<td>297, 298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yudhika-Malla</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuseh-chila</td>
<td>667, 677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuganadha</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuktikulpotara</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yule, H.</td>
<td>470, 47(n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yunnan</td>
<td>759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yusuf</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuvārāja</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuvārāja Mahāsenāpati</td>
<td>743, 745</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yūzbās</td>
<td>141, 145, 208</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Z*

Zābag                | 734, 735     |
Zābul                | 1            |
Zābulistan           | 2            |
Zarāntīng (Old Jaintia)| 98          |
Zanzībar             | 522          |
Zatī-Žabakhāsh       | 469          |
Zayton (Chwan-Chau or Chinchew in Fu-Kien) | 522 |
Zinda Pir.            | 473, 149(n)  |
Ziyā-isd-din Barāni  | 48, †77      |
Zoroastrian/4.1      | 496          |
Zubaid Ahmad         | 597, 186(n)  |
Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh   | 115, 2(n)    |
Fig. 7. Bhuvanesvara, Siddhesvara Temple: General View

Fig. 8. Bhuvanesvara, Brahmesvara Temple: General View
PLATE V

Fig. 9. Bhubanesvara, Raudraji Temple: General View

Fig. 10. Bhubanesvara, Raudraji Temple: Detail of Shikara
Fig. 21. Baroli, Sikhsa Temple

Fig. 22. Amarkantak, Patalievara Temple
Fig. 33. Khajuraho, Ghaṭāṭ Temple

Fig. 34. Osia, Temple No. 1
Fig. 37. Kumbharia, Pārvanātha Temple: Interior

Fig. 38. Dilapidā, Tēṣābhūjā's Temple: Interior
Fig. 43. Gop, Old Temple

Fig. 44. Kalsar, Temple of Gop Type
Fig. 47. Pashthar, Sikhar Temple
Fig. 48. Wadhwan, Rani Devi Temple
Fig. 49. Ghumb, Sikhar Temple
Fig. 55. Modhera, Sun Temple: Detail of side view
Fig. 56. Modhera, Sun Temple: Detail of Sabha-mandapa

Fig. 57. Modhera, Sun Temple: Shrine on steps of the tank

Fig. 58. Modhera, Sun Temple: Ceiling of Mandapa
Fig. 59. Mahākāśīvara, Saṅgamaeśvara Temple

Fig. 60. Paṭṭadakal, Pāpandatta Temple
Fig. 61. Alempur, Visva-Brahmā Temple

Fig. 62. Balane, Temple No. 1
Fig. 63. Udayapura, Nilakantheivara Temple: Detail of wall

Fig. 64. Sinnar, Gondeivara Temple: General view
Fig. 65. Sarnol, Galtesvara Temple

Fig. 66. Ratanuddi, Amritesvara Temple
Fig. 71. Sat Deuligai, Sikkara Temple
Fig. 72. Bahulagai, Siddheghara Temple
Fig. 73. Sunderbans, Bher Deul
Fig. 74. Mamallapuram, Shore Temple

Fig. 75. Kanchipuram, Kailasa Natha Temple
Fig. 76. Pattadakal, Mallikarjuna Temple

Fig. 77. Ellora, Kailasa Temple: Elephants
Fig. 80. Tanjore, Brihadiwara Temple

Fig. 81. Itagi, Mahadeva Temple: General View
PLATE XLI

Fig. 84. Gadag, Somsivar Temple

Fig. 85. Dambel, Dodda Basappa Temple
Fig. 88. Somnathpur, Krsna Temple

Fig. 89. Halebid, Hoyateivara Temple
Fig. 90. Pāhārpar, Great Temple

Fig. 91. Prambanan (Java), Chandi Loro Jonggrang
Fig. 92. Ujāni, Buddha (Dacca Museum, East Pakistan)

Fig. 93. Nālandā, Avalokiteśvara

Fig. 94. Kurkshīr, Tārā (Patna Museum)
Fig. 105. Konārak, Sun Temple: Nāyikā

Fig. 106. Bhuvaněśvara, Leśgerāja Temple: Wall decoration
Fig. 107. Uttar Pradesh, Navagraha slab (Worcester Art Museum, U.S.A.)

Fig. 108. Uttar Pradesh, Twelve-armed goddess (British Museum, London)

Fig. 109. Nokhe, Rukmini
Fig. 112. Harahagiri, Dancers and Musicians (Shiker Museum, Rajasthan)

Fig. 113. Central India, A Chedi head

Fig. 114. Khajuraho, Kandarya Mahadeo Temple: Jānägha sculptures
Fig. 118. Dilwara, Tejpal's Temple: Part of a ceiling.

Fig. 119. Mahoba, Sinhagad, Lokesvara (Lucknow Museum)

Fig. 120. Harshagiri, Liśćendhava Mūrti (Rajputana Museum, Ajmer)
PLATE LV

Fig. 121. Dilcārā, Tejasālvā's Temple: Part of a ceiling

Fig. 122. Halebid, Hayamālīvar Temple: Laksāmī-Nārāyana
Fig. 123. Modhera, Sun Temple: Pillar Sculpture

Fig. 124. Temple Sculpture

Fig. 125. Avantipura, Avantisvami Temple: Sculpture

Fig. 126. Nepali Padmapārī (Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, U.S.A.)
Fig. 127. South India, Siva Natārāja (Museum von Asiatisehe Kunst Amsterdam)

Fig. 128. South India, Devi (Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, U.S.A.)

Fig. 129. South India, Siva Natārāja
Fig. 130. South India, Sāiva devotee (C.W.F. Cotton collection, U.K.)

Fig. 131. South India, Pārvatī (Cleveland Museum of Art, U.S.A.)

Fig. 132. South India, Śiva (Colombo Museum)

Fig. 133. South India, Śiva (Vindhyā, Museum Guimet, Paris)
PLATE LX

Fig. 136. Painting in a Ms. of Gandavyūha, c. 11th century A.D.

Fig. 137. Vasudhārā: Painting in Vredenburg Ms. of Ashtasahasrika Prajñāpāramitā
PLATE LXI

Fig. 138. Tārā: Painting in a MS. of Ashtaśaḥaśārika Prajñāpāramitā copied in year 4 of Rāmapāla (Collection: Bharat Kala Bhavan, Hindu University, Banaras)

Fig. 139. Mahātārā: Painting in a MS. of Ashtaśaḥaśārika Prajñāpāramitā copied in N.S. 1017/A.D. 1071 (Collection Asiatic Society, Calcutta, No. A. 12)
Fig. 136. Painting in a Ms. of Gandavyūha, c. 11th century A.D.

Fig. 137. Vasudhāra: Painting in Vredenburg Ms. of Abhasākāsikā Prajñāpāramitā
Fig. 138. Tāra: Painting in a MS. of Ashtasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā copied in year 4 of Rānapāla. (Collection: Bhārat Kala Bhavan, Hindu University, Banaras)

Fig. 139. Mahātārī Tārā: Painting in a MS. of Ashtasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā copied in N.S. 131/A.D. 1071 (Collection: Asiatic Society, Calcutta, No. A. 15)